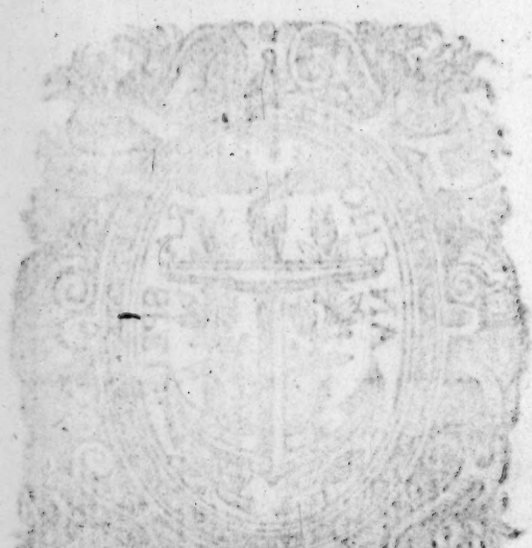
THE METHOD OF PHISICK, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES, AND CVRES OF INWARD DISEASES IN MANS BODY FROM THE HEAD TO THE FOOTE.

Whereunto is added, the forme and rule of making remedies *and medicines, which our Phyſitions commonly* vſe at this day, with the proportion, quantitie, and names of each medicine.

By Philip Barrough.

The third Edition corrected and augmented, with two other bookes newly added by the Author.

Imprinted at London by Richard Field, and are to be ſold in Paules Church yard at the ſigne of the braſen Serpent. 1596.



TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD AND MASTER THE LORD Burghley, high Treasurer of England, Knight of the most Noble order of the Garter, and one of the Queenes Maiesties most honorable priuie counsell. P. B. wisheth all health, with long life and encrease of honor.

THE chiefest thing (Right Honorable and my singular good Lord) that emboldneth men to dedicate their labours vnto any personage, is the affinitie betwene the matter of the vvorke vvhich they offer, and the mind of him to vvhom it is presented. And as the ancient comicall Poets vvere vvont to pen such Enterludes, as they thought would be plausibly heard of their auditorie: so our common vvriters doe fashion and shape the subiect of vvhich they entreat, according to the affection of him, vvhose patronage they require in countenancing their writings: this (I say) though it be practised of all writers now a dayes, and might haue serued as a fit president for me to haue followed: yet haue I swarued and digressed from so generall a custome, in preferring this labour of mine to the view of your Honor (the matter so farre dissenting from your Honors dispositions) so that as it may perhaps not without some colour be obiected, that I might haue prouided farre better (had I beene any way sufficient) both for the acceptation of my labour, and also for the fit answering of your Honors affection, if I had treated of the politike gouernment of our countrie,

and of the weilding of a common wealth: to the neceſſitie of vvhich calling, not Fortune the Queene of the olde Philoſophers, but God himſelfe hath called, or rather enforced you, if that opinion of Plato be true, that euery good Magiſtrate taketh vpon him his office vnwillingly. But that obiection vvill ſoone be taken away, if vve conſider how fooliſh a thing it vvere to inſtruct him vvith his imaginarie precepts, vvhom (beſides a great light of nature) moſt happie experience hath made a perfect and abſolute gouernour. Plato that moſt graue and vviſe deemer of the ſtate tyrannicall, vvas ſo many times convicted of follie, how often he aduentured in the preſence of kings to diſcourſe of the regiment of a common wealth. Dionyſius (of whom it was doubted, whether he did more harme by his extreme crueltie, or good by his prouident vviſedome, which both he left a like to his ſucceſſors to imitate) called that notable Philoſopher (whom I euen now named) into Scicilia of purpoſe to heare him, & vvith great patience liſtned to him, as he diſputed of mans felicitie, and admired him as he handled thoſe morall vertues, vvhich Socrates his maſter vvas feigned to haue brought from heauen, and as he treated of the frame and machine of the world: but on a time (taking aduantage by the kings attention) vvhen he had ſtolne into the diſcourſe of pollicie, Dionyſius felt himſelfe ſo moued, that he had exerciſed his tyrannie againſt him alſo, if Dion and Ariſtomanes had not recouered him out of his iawes, and ſo ridde him out of the land, by ſelling him to Polis the Lacedemonian Marchant. And this was the verdict, that the wiſe king (vvhen his furie vvas ſomewhat calmed) gaue of that moſt learned Philoſopher for his holeſome counſell (as he thought) namely, that his diſcourſes ſeemed vnto him to be the prattles of idle old men: ſo much experience diſdaineth to be controlled by arte, and ſo impatient is he of inſtitution, vvhoſe knowledge is acquired Vſu & Memoria (the two ancient parents of wiſedome.) What a great argument of follie therefore ſhall he giue, that ſhall go about to lay a plot for your Honor, from whence you may deriue an example of gouernment, vvho haue ſo many yeares in ſo troubleſome a common wealth, and to the moſt wiſe and vertuous Princeſſe in the world, beene retained as a moſt honourable and graue counſeller? I will not ſay, as Zopyrus vnto Darius, or as Cineas vnto his Pyrrhus, or as Creſus vnto his Cyrus, the one of which by pollicie aduiſed his king to circumuent his enemies, the other allured them to

his

his subiection by his eloquence, and the third by his owne vnfortunate experience directed him how to conuey any daungerous enterprise. All which serued their Princes to none other vse, but to helpe them to purchase the worst part of glorie by bloudie oppression: but rather as a Nestor vnto his Agamemnon, as a Zenophon vnto his Cyrus, and as a Plutarch vnto his Traian, vvhich thought it not so glorious to tie their enemies to them by forced feare, as their friends and neighbours by peaceable amitie, the strongest guard that Princes can trust vnto. I must needes confesse that these comparisons doe faile in representing so much as I doe conceiue, for that I may not feare the suspition of flatterie in so manifest a truth, can the whole Scene of mans life so gorgiously and stately set foorth by the Historians of seuerall ages, shew vs at one time, on one stage two such notable actors, namely, so redoubted, so peereleſse, and so vertuous a Princesse holding the scepter, so graue, so wise, and so prouident a counseller susteining the person of Eubolus? I would I might (my credit saued with your Honor) persue your praises yet farther, but I know very well, that you (who with an vnwearied affection doe not cease continually to commit such vertuous deedes as deserue to be eternized for euer) are soone tyred, when you heare them remembred by another. And truely I would not haue spoken so much for feare of offence, but that I know for a certainetie, that you ascribe the being of your vertues to God the giuer of all good things, before vvhom to extenuate our graces, I know not whether it be more blame worthie, then shameleſly to assume vnto our selues, vvhatsoeuer is wrongfully attributed vnto vs by our flattering friends. But to what end (will you say) are all these words? namely to this: to excuse my selfe, in that I haue not laboured to fit your affection in the presentment of this my labour, vvhich is so impossible, in respect of your singular knowledge in all kind of good learning, that there is no man so selfewise or loftie, which feareth not to come vnder your learned cēsure. Which excellencie of yours when I had looked into, and had found my selfe altogether vnable to answere: I purposed (as I thought) more politikely to assay your humanitie, vvhich (indeede) graceth all the rest of your vertues, which (I thought) I might soone abuse in offering such a subiect, in which some studie and industrie (besides many yeares) had made me in part able to iudge, and such a one, as the earneſt affaires of the common wealth, in which you are alwayes busied,

together with the inconuenient vneasinesse of the studie hath kept your Honor from being acquainted with. Which bold attempt of mine, your wisedome shall so much the easier be brought to pardon, by how much the more earnestly your rare clemencie encouraged me to enterprise it: for I do plainely confesse, that I haue not thought this Booke of mine worthy to be perused of your Honor, as well because of mine owne vnabilitie, who am altogether insufficient to performe any thing that your Honor may like of, as also in respect of those manifold graces, vvherwith the Lord hath filled you: by the vertue of which you could in a tongue (farre more eloquent then this of ours) discerne and know the secrets of Phisicke which I haue now in part reuealed: If the commonweale of vs all did not rather carrie you away, than that delight vvhich is otherwise reaped by priuate studie. And yet neuertheless, when I consider with my selfe, that it was not the affection of any popular praise, but an honest zeale to benefite my countriemen, vvhich begot in me this desire to publish this worke, and also (if I may without the suspect of vaine glorie seeme to diuine of the issue of my labours) perceiuing that they might bring some commoditie vnto the more ignorant sort of our common Practitioners and Æmperiques (if they vvere with diligence perused:) and thirdly, vvhen I perceiued in my selfe a certaine earnest willingnes vvhich I haue alwaies had (though of late it hath beene more vehemently inflamed) to commend some peece of seruice vnto your Honor: (I say) these causes meeting thus together did especially adduce me (though many doubts stept afore me in mine enterprise, offring to reinforce my ouer presumptuous determination) vvith such a bold confidencie as it were to rush into your presence, and to demaund vvithout any shew of merite, your Honours most fauourable Protection, that this booke of mine (vnable of it selfe) may runne vnder your Patronage, vvhich as it were Gorgon his buckler, I will obuert and turne against all the venimous bytings of slanderous tongues. The Lord God, (who hath made you a notable instrumẽt to worke the aduancement of his glorie, the furtherance and propagation of good learning) lengthen & protract your life beyond your fatall period, and giue you a will to liue, a desire still to beare vp that burthen vvhich her Maiestie hath laid vpon your shoulders, & with these, all good successe in this world, and eternall happinesse in his kingdome.

Your Honors most humble seruant,
PHILIP BARROVGH.

The

The Preface to the Reader.

WHen God had perfited the wonderful work of his (I meane the frame of the world) and had aſcribed to euerie parte thereof his ſpeciall dutie: namely to the water to harbour fiſhes, to the aire to vphold all fethered foules, to the earth to foſter beaſtes, and to produce and bring forth good and wholeſome herbes and trees: and ouer all theſe, as regent and gouernour, had appointed man his laſt and nobleſt creature: he demanded of his Angels who were preſent with him at this worke, what might be deſired in this ſo rare and ſtrange a workmanſhip: who anſwered, nothing but a tongue to vnfold the ſecretes of his labours, to talke and commune of them, with the which alſo, he, as workeman of all, might be extolled and magnified, who partly moued with this ſuggeſtion, perceiuing it to be a notable meanes to aduaunce his glorie, as before he had infuſed into man a conceiueable minde, apt to vnderſtand his myſteries: ſo now he gaue him a tongue, able to vtter the ſundrie conceptions of the heart, whatſoeuer it imagined. This fable proceeding (I know not from what braine) is remembred of *Philo* the Iewe in his treatiſe of the world, which ſeemeth to imply thus much, that as there is nothing within this mortall circuite, that God hath, as it were kept to himſelfe, and not made ſubiect to the induſtrious capacitie of man: ſo there is no meanes by which a man can approch nearer vnto the perfection of that nature which he firſt enioyed, and then loſt by his fall, then by the painefull indagation of the ſecretes of nature, or any way, whereby he may more truly glorifie his maker, then in his life-time with his tongue to communicate that knowledge which he hath by his induſtrie atchieued, and to haue a care alſo, that it may be faithfully commended to his poſteritie. And doubtleſſe this was the conſideration, that moued the wiſe king *Salomon* to wade ſo farre in the ſearching of the cauſes of things, who abandoning all thoſe gliſtering ſhewes which his riches and kingdome profered him, applyed his mind to the ſtudie of nature, and compiled a great volume, wherein he largely diſcourſed not onely of birds and beaſts, but of all herbes & trees, euen from the cedar of Libanon, to hyſope that groweth out of the wall. And the ſelfe ſame opinion of the excellencie of that kinde of life, hath from time to time inuaded the mindes of many kings and noble perſonages, vowing to themſelues without anie light of their forefathers, to go through the cloudie darkeneſſe of nature. And although they ſometime ſtumbled, yet are they to be pardoned, if we conſider both the obſcuritie and the length of the way they went in. *Zoroaſtes* the reputed ſonne of *Noah* was the firſt, that of many confuſed experiments, began to faſhion out and as it were to delineate the beginning of an art, by ſetting downe certaine

precepts of the ſame, and after him *Oſiris* the King of Ægypt, and *Zeſoſtris* alſo King of the ſame countrie (though rudely) layed the foundation of Aſtronomy by demonſtration of the courſe of the heauens, and of phiſicke, by opening the nature of many herbs, and alſo the ſecrets of their water of *Nilus*. To the worthineſſe of which ſecret, *Plato* that great Philoſopher did willingly ſubſcribe, when falling into a grieuous maladie in Ægypt, and being not able by his own experiments (though he had aſſayed many) to cure himſelfe, he was preſerued by the Prieſtes of that countrie, who taught him the vertue of their water, wheras after, in remembrance of this benefit, he wrote this verſe rehearſed by *Laertius*: *Mare vniuerſa proluit hominum mala*: the ſea doth waſh away all the infirmities of man. So that by this we may ſee, that this noble and learned Philoſopher had neuer brought vs newes out of Ægypt, either of their policie and gouernment of their countrie, or of the rare and exquiſit knowledge in Aſtronomie, if he had not taſted of the benefite which the phiſicke of that time afforded him. But we will remember ſome of thoſe Kings, who had an eſpeciall fantaſie to this Art, whoſe names are deuolued and brought vnto vs by the ſucceſſion of ages, though their workes haue not eſcaped the wracke, but haue periſhed in the ſeagulfe of antiquity, which hath ſwallowed the doings of many men. And *Mithridates* the King of Pontus ſhall be the firſt, who at one time vndertooke two mightie battels, the one with the Romanes, the other with nature. In the laſt of which, the more dangerous, he preuailed like a conqueror, and in the firſt he dealt ſo valiantly, that the glorie of his forepaſſed victories ſuppreſſed and killed the remembrance of his laſt ouerthrow. The which (as *Plinie* remembreth) was a like profitable to the common wealth, and to mans life: for in his manour where he lay, there were found many bookes written by his owne hands, both of the vertues of herbes, and of the conſtitution of mans body, with remedies of many infirmities of the ſame. *Euax* alſo the king of Arabia wrote a booke of the effects of ſimples, which he dedicated to *Nero* the Emperour. But what ſhould I reckon particularly the names of euery one, when in former ages there was no king, either of Æthiopia, Ægypt, or Arabia, who did not himſelfe either write ſomewhat concerning this Arte of phyſicke, or elſe by his liberalitie encouraged others to employ their time in the ſame? which may make much (no doubt) to the credite of the Arte, when as Kings haue appropriated it to themſelues, and haue thought themſelues honoured by the profeſſion of the ſame. And as many argumentes do induce me to beleeue beſides the witneſſe of the Hiſtorians, that phyſicke is the Arte, wherein many Kings haue trauelled and delighted: ſo nothing more ſtrongly then this, that whereas other gods were tyed to their ſeuerall places, as *Iupiter* to Elis, *Diana* to Epheſus, *Apollo* to Delos, & ſo forth. *Æſculapius* the ſon of *Apollo* by the daughter of *Phlegias* made a god for his cunning in phyſicke, hath his temple & altars euery where, in Corinth, in Lacædemon, in Athens, in Thebes, in Epidaure, in Arcadia, Meſſenia, and in many other countries (as *Pauſanias* remembreth) all which honors which were done to him (no doubt) were inſtituted by the Kings and rulers of thoſe countries, who eſpecially fauoured that Art, thinking it great reaſon, that he who inuented an art ſo generally auailable for mankind, ſhould be generally honoured of all men. And (I pray you) how much

much inferiour was the renowne of *Hippocrates*, who descended of his lyne, saying that the one was placed amongst the Gods in heauen, and the other reuerenced as a mortall god vpon earth? Did not he make Coos, the place where he was borne, of an inglorious Iland, a famous countrie, onely by the accesse of other nations, who were brought thither by the report of his wonderful skil in Physicke? what familiaritie had he with Kings? what estimation among the Philosophers of that time, as *Democrates* and others? and to conclude, how was his fame spread vniuersally throughout all Greece? I will not tarry vpon the recitall of the famous Physitions, who haue liued before vs in seuerall ages, as *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Paulus Aetius*, *Ægineta* and others. For it will easily appeare of what credit this noble science of physicke was in times past, if you consider the insolencie and pride of ancient Physitions, whereof many of them disdained the fellowship of Kings, and some of them emboldned onely by the credit of their science purchased amongst men, grew to such impudēcie, that they wold haue ceremonies and rites performed vnto them as vnto gods. One such was *Themison Ciprius* the daintie of *Antiochus*, another was *Thessalus* whom *Galen* maketh mention of, who went about to innouate and change the method of Physicke set downe by *Hippocrates* and others. But the most famous of all was *Menecrates* the Syracusan, who foolishly vsurped the name of *Iupiter*, oftentimes boasting, that by his Arte he could breath life into mortall men, after the manner of *Iupiter*: which arrogant title the people neuer went about to derogate from him, but rather supposed that it was deserued on his part, because he cured many of the falling euill, which disease especially raigned in his time. This *Menecrates* in a certaine epistle which he wrote to *Philip* the King of Macedonie, vseth these wordes: Thou art King of Macedon, and I of Physicke, it lyeth in thy power at thy pleasure, to destroy men which enioy their health, and in mine to preserue sicke men, and restore dead men to life, and to keepe the health of men vnspotted, euen vnto their old age, if they will obey me. Vnreasonable surely and monstrous was the pride of this man, and it was so fedde with the applause and approbation of his citizens, who wondred at his rare cunning, that he marched in the citie with a trayne of goddes after him: one in the habite of *Hercules*, another in the shape of *Mercurie*: another tooke vppon him the forme of *Apollo*, and he himselfe supereminent in the middest resembling *Iupiter*, woare a purple robe, and a crowne of golde vppon his head, and helde in his hand a mightie scepter. The opinion of this science did so possesse the mindes of the people in those dayes, that they imagined the professor of the same to be sent immediatly from heauen, for the commoditie of the whole countrey, and for the preseruation of mankinde: which made them not to doubt to do vnto them all superstitious reuerence that might be, whereof grew this excessiue pride, which hath arested as it were the mindes of many Physitions. I would not wish that the Physitions of our time should draw this vnto an example, but rather with all lowlinesse to visite euen the poorest, when their helpe is required, for seeing that the life of the most miserable vassall is as deare in the sight of God, as the life of the most renowmed Monarch, shall not the Physition looke to haue a shrewd checke at Goddes hande, if he either hath

proudly denied his helpe to the poore, or negligently visited them? I will not descend into this common place, though (to speake the truth) the arrogancie of many of our Physitions might giue me sufficient occasion, wishing them to leaue off to imitate the swelling insolencie of *Menecrates* and the rest, and to tract rather in the steppes of *Hyppocrates* and *Galen*, of whom it is thus written: that they neuer disdained to shroud themselues vnder the simplest roofe in their countrie, to do the poorest man good: and as they themselues said (besides the glorie that they purchased by their courteous benignitie) they added alwaies to their cunning, and by experience confirmed their Arte and knowledge, which might well stagger, if you respect the infinite varietie of diseases, & the strange diuersities of mens dispositions. And truly if nothing else, yet the enriching of their knowledge, which is gathered especially by long experience, might be cause good enough to attract and draw them to lay hold of any occasion to go to the diseased person. And in mine opinion, the neglecting of this, which proceedeth either from couetousnesse or pride, hath bene the onely cause, that euen from the beginning, there haue bene reckoned so few good Physitions: for (exempt only *Hippocrates, Galen, Auicen, Ægineta, Aetius* & *Soranus*, though the number of cõmon Phisitions hath bene great) you shal not find any that haue climed vp to the perfection of their science: nay farre from that, which might chalenge the fift or sixt place. Which although some men will ascribe to the laborious difficultie and confused vastenesse of this Arte especially: yet I dare boldly affirme, that there hath not bene nor is, any such blocke or stay, which hath impeached so much their endeuours, as the defect of experience. And truly I can not more fitly compare our Æmpiriques and practitioners, then to him that purposeth to be a sea-man and traueller, who though he studiously striueth to attaine to the perfection of his Art, though he carefully busieth him selfe about the cosmographicall mappes, though he industriously peruseth the books of Nauigation, nay (that which is more) though he diligently conferreth with verie expert saylers: yet when he hath forsaken the quiet hauen, and launched out into the rough seas, and hath taken vpon him the gouernment of the ship, when he shal behold so many horrible mountaines of water, the roaring of so many huge waues, and the outraging surges of the disquieted monster, he will then confesse that he onely dreamed before, when he imagined of the course of the seas, that his bookes were lame schole-maisters, that the tales of his companions were a great deale lesse then the things themselues: when he shall cast vp his eyes, and thinke that euery starre which he had hoped to haue vsed as guides and directions, had threatned his ruine and destruction, when he shall looke downe and tremble at the rising of euerie waue, when he shall turne him about, and with great feare seeke to eschue those rockes, which he had read were couched in that part of the sea, and to conclude, when he shall consider the hugenesse of the Ocean sea, and the smallnesse of his barke, he will thinke sure the least perrie or gale were of force to ouerwhelme him, notwithstanding his great cunning he had thought he had gained on the land. Euen so fareth it with our common Phisitions, who while they containe themselues within the compasse of their litle studie, where they do as it were, *è tabula pictos edíscere mundos*, where they

they perceiue their ſcience redacted into a method, where they ſee *Galen* reaching his hand to them to lead them throughout the whole bodie of phyſicke, by whom they are taught the conſtitution of the bodie, the diuerſitie of temperature, the varietie of diſeaſes: the cauſes, ſignes, and ſymptomates of the ſame, they ſtraight way imagine, that they haue runne the race, and that they haue acquired as much knowledge as becommeth an Æmerique. But after that, when they ſhall go into the common wealth to practiſe, when they ſhall meet with diſeaſes which *Galen* neuer dreamed of, when they ſhall view the maruellous and ſecret affections and properties of mens bodies, the ſudden and momentanie changes of the ſame (which a man can ſcarcely follow with his mind) when they ſhal perceiue, that in reſpect of the ſtrange temperature of the bodie, & the violent alteration of the ſame, they ſcarſly can aime at the diſeaſe, when they ſhall ſtrike vpon ſo many rocks: beſides their great paines & watchfull induſtrie: will it not (thinke we) amaze them? will they not confeſſe then that their Art is vnperfect? will they not acknowledge (thinke you) that as experience was the ancient beginner of Phyſicke, ſo that now it is the true & ſincere accõpliſher of the perfection of the ſame? Since therfore the caſe ſo ſtandeth, that Arte is weake without practiſe, and that (as *Galen* ſaith) experience is gotten *longo rerum vſu*: let the Phyſition (if he doth not preferre lying fame and vile lucre before true and abſolute knowledge) let him (I ſay) that his minde may be enriched, not leaue the pooreſt houſe vnfrequented. But to ſay the truth, there is nothing derogateth ſo much from the excelling in their ſcience, as doth the opinion of perfection, which is eſpecially gotten by the iudgement of the multitude, the peruerſe determiner of things. For, when a man knoweth his name to flie amongſt them, he ſitteth ſtill and admireth himſelfe: thinking then, that he hath ſtudied enough both for himſelfe and his countrie, when he hath gotten his name enrolled amongeſt the number of excellent Phyſitions by that ignorant and vnaduiſed regiſter. I haue ſpoken this by the way, and the interiection of theſe few lines hath not made me to forget (good Reader) that I before diſcourſed of the glorie of this ſcience, and how it hath bene accounted of in times paſt: the dignitie whereof, though it be ſomething leſſened and empaired (which whether it hath happened by the ignorance of our Phyſitions, or by the ſiniſter opinion of the world, I will not now diſcuſſe) yet if we will vprightly wey with our ſelues, we may perceiue that the iudgement of men hath not any whit detracted from the true dignitie of the thing it ſelfe. For truly, what can be more noble then to preſerue the bodie of a man in a good eſtate, which of the Philoſophers is termed, a litle world, in reſpect of the varietie of his ſeuerall functions? What can be more excellent then to be able to maintaine and keepe in order that beſt workmanſhip of God, and (that which is more) to correct, reforme, and amend it, and as it were a cunning Pylot, to gouerne and rule it as a litle veſſell caſt out into the great Ocean, ſubiect (I do not know) to how many rockes and dangers, if it be not vprightly weilded? And ſeeing there is nothing giuen vnto vs of God, more acceptable then the health of the bodie, how honorably muſt we thinke of the meanes, by which it is continued and reſtored if it be loſt? *Pirrhus* the king of Epire did ſacrifice vnto no other god or goddeſſe, but only vnto health,

to whom he erected a famous temple in his owne country, calling it *Templum ſanitatis*. He contemned, or at the leaſt neglected all oracles which other Princes buſily ſought after, as predictions of the euents and ſucceſſes of the battailes which they attempted, or any other the like enterpriſe. He craued nothing at the handes of the Gods, but onely the fruition of his health, thinking that induſtrie & diligẽce, meeting with the health of the body, were able to atchiue any thing, were it beſet with neuer ſo many dangers. And in mine opiniõ (as the Hiſtoriã very grauely diſcourſeth) men do fooliſhly erre, when they cõplaine of nature, for limiting the age of mã within the cõpaſſe of ſo few yeares, as three or four ſcore: whẽ as truly, if the matter were well expended, we would confeſſe, *Induſtriã potius quàm tempus deeſſe* (as he ſaith) and that there is no arte or ſcience, be it neuer ſo difficult, but might be perfitly knowne within that ſhort precinct, if the greater part of our life did not paſſe and vaniſh away in darkeneſſe (ſlouth and ignorance drowning and ouerwhelming in vs all light of nature) or if the courſe thereof were interrupted and cut off by vntimely death, which is haſtened on our partes by our inordinate and heedleſſe liuing. The young man flouriſhing as it were in the April of his age, cockereth in himſelfe a fooliſh imagination of his owne luſtineſſe, and reputeth it as a diſcredite to him to ſeeme to feare the approch of any diſeaſe, leauing the prouident gouernment of the body to decrepite and withered old age. In the meane time he layeth the reyne vpon his affections, and expoſeth himſelfe to anie inconuenience: either he weltereth in idleneſſe, or is tyred with immoderate exerciſe, or (that which is incident ſpecially to that part of our age) he admitteth vnſeaſonable watchings, ſurfetting bankets, and the vnſatiate executing of the follies of *Venus*, thinking indeede that there is nothing leſſe agreeing vnto youth and adoleſcencie, then to be pliant and obedient to any commendable and wholeſome method of life: yea many of them are of this minde, that the time of their youth is infamouſly ouerſlipped, whẽ they do not ruſh in their voluptuous & inordinat demeanour at what time the luſty prime of their age do ſomwhat enable & ſupport them: & if at any time they be ouertakẽ with any infirmitie (which often happeneth) as vnwilling to be beholding to the ſcience of phiſick, they leaue it to be worn away by the ſtrength of their body, which in deed I confeſſe hideth many diſeaſes, and for the time taketh away the ſence of them, but it neuer vtterly extinguiſheth any: for although in the infancie of the infirmitie, in reſpect of the weakeneſſe of it, it be eaſily depreſſed and ouermaiſtred by the valure of the body (which in youth is ſomething puiſſant and forcible) yet when age comming on with his ſtealing ſteps, or elſe reckleſſe life doth detract from the force of the one, and maketh way for the other to ſpread & gather power, the diſeaſe being as it were the ſuruiuour poſſeſſeth the whole body, and at the laſt procureth his vtter ſubuerſion. And many times it happeneth that a diſeaſe breaketh out in olde age, the cauſe whereof perhappes was giuen in our youth. And it fareth with vs, as it doeth with them which are bitten with that little Serpent of Arabia, which ſtriketh a man, but ſo ſecretly, that he neuer feeleth it, neither doth he know it but by the woũd which ſheweth it ſelfe a long time after the foundation thereof was layed. The opinion that the auncient Phyſitions had of the effect of ſnow water is of force to

perſwade

perſwade this, who haue written, that if ſnow reſolued into water be drunken of a young childe, it will as it were maintaine warre againſt naturall heate, and that with ſuch continuance, as it will not ſhew his effect, vntill he hath attained vnto extreme old age. I do not altogether beleeue this, although the great cold which is naturally in that water, may lead me to thinke, that it is of a mightie operation. But there is nothing more certaine then this, that many men repoſing too much truſt in the ſtrength of their bodies, & ſo being careleſſe in gain-ſtanding & reſiſting the beginnings of maladies (which their diſſolute order of life hath begotten and engendred) haue bene yoked by olde age before the courſe of their yeares did require it, and haue brought it ſo to paſſe, that their bodies haue bene nothing elſe, but ſtorehouſes & manſions of diſeaſes. Which kind of men I may well compare to an euill and negligent tenant, who being ſetled in a faire dwelling houſe by his land-Lord, ſuffereth it to ruinate, and in the end, to fall vpon his owne head for want of repairing: ſo they, when God hath beſtowed their bodies vpon them as gorgeous palaces or manſion houſes, wherein the minde may dwell with pleaſure and delight, do firſt by this euill demeanour ſhake, and diſcraſe them, and then being altogether careleſſe of repairing them, do ſuffer them to run to deſtruction, or elſe while they go about too late to vnderprop thé declining to ruine, (as he that is lodged in an old cabbin feareth, leſt with euery puffe of wind it ſhould be ouerturned) ſo they quake at the leaſt alteration of their body, & at euerie litle paine, do expect a final diſſolution: then they will confeſſe vnto you, that while they rioted vnaduiſedly in their youth, they did but build matter for repentance in age. And what do they elſe but by their examples giue vs to learne, that as the interception & præſciſion of diſeaſes is verie auailable, which carieth a man throughout his race with pleaſure and delight, (ſo that nothing commeth more nere vnto the goodneſſe thereof, then (if by chance when we be plunged into any diſeaſe) carefully to prouide that the beginning therof may be impeached: the which that thou mayeſt the better do, I haue (good Reader) for thy benefit, collected out of ſundry Authors, as it were a breuiary or abridgement of phyſick, & together with thoſe deductions, I haue interlaced experiments of mine own, which by long vſe & practiſe I haue obſerued to be true. Throughout the whole booke I haue bin more curious in preſcribing the ſundrie curations & waies to helpe the diſeaſes, then in explaning the nature of them: my reaſon was, becauſe if my books ſhould come to the hands of the vnlearned a litle would ſuffice (the former being more neceſſarie.) Againe I knew, that the learned would not be contented or ſatisfied with it, though it had bene neuer ſo great: and yet I haue not omitted any neceſſarie ſigne, that the diſeaſe may appeare eaſily to any capable braine. I ſhall ſeeme boldly to haue aduentured the edition of this labour, ſeeing that I ſhall runne into the babble of our countrey Phyſitions, who thinke their Arte to be diſcredited, when it is publiſhed in a baſe tongue, and againe, are loth to haue the ſecrets of their ſcience reuealed to euerie man. Indeed I know that vnder ſome colour they may obiect ſomwhat, but yet they may vnderſtand, that I haue followed the example of many learned Phiſitions both of our Engliſhmen and other countrymen alſo, who publiſhed their practiſes in their mother tong, & in other countries,

especially it is so rife and common, that in Italie and France you shall not find any learned Phy[illegible]tion, that hath not written as much, (nay rather more) in his owne countrie language, then in Latine: yea we haue many bookes in phisicke, that haue first bene set out in French and Italian, and afterward for the commoditie of other nations, haue bene translated into Latine, and so made generall, which before the writer had as it were bequeathed to his countriemen. And no doubt they were all touched with an especiall care to profite their owne countrie, being willing that all men (as indeed it concerneth all) should reape the commodities of their labours. For I cannot see, how that saying of *Quintilian* can be verified in this one Art (which is this) that then all Artes should be truely happie, when the professors of the same should onely iudge of them: but I haue alwaies bene of this mind, that it behoueth euerie man to be cunning in his owne constitution, and to knowe so much as may serue to [illegible] all the comming of many ordinarie diseases, which commonly light vpon the ignorant: yea and sometime to be able to chase away a malady when it hath alreadie caught hold of the bodie: my reason is, both because euerie man may iudge best of his owne bodie, and perceiue the declinings and alterations of the same. And againe we know, how many haue died, and do die continually for want of helpe, (the Physition being not alwaies at their elbowe) whereas in the beginning of their sicknesse, a litle knowledge might haue stopped the passage of the infirmitie. In the old time when Physicke was brought vnder no forme, but consisted onely of a few experiments which passed from hand to hand, young children together with other Artes did receiue certaine precepts and rules, how to order and gouerne the bodie, and learned also preseruaties against poyson, and the receipt of salues to cure any greene wound, and the meanes to helpe certaine ordinarie diseases, which (in deed) were but fewe (the age of man being then farre more strong. We reade how *Linus*, who was schoole maister to *Hercules* when he had instructed him in the Art of wrestling, (which then was honoured especially) and in musicke, that he gaue him the receipt of a certaine balme, which he often vsed in many of his aduentures. And what was it, that gaue matter to the fable of *Achilles*, how his mother *Thetis* had made his bodie impenitrable: but that knowledge of his which he had learned of his maister *Chyron* the Centaure, who taught him the vertue of an herbe, which to this day beareth his name, by which he healed all his wounds he receiued in battell? What an honorable mention doth *Homer* make of *Machao* and *Podalirius* the sonnes of *Æsculapius*, in that they could cure themselues when they were at any time hurt of the enemie? This cunning also had *Mithridates*, and *Fabricius* the Romaine he that vanquished *Pirrhus*, and also *Marcus Curius* and many other who are recorded by histories, whose names I would remember, if I did not see the enlarging of this common place by examples to be altogether vnnecessarie, when there is no man which so farre swarueth from common sense, that will not confesse it to be very expedient and needfull for all to know the estate of their owne bodies. I will therefore forsake the proouing of so manifest a thing, and returne vnto thee (good Reader) whom I haue alreadie offended in exceeding the iust length of a Preface, like vnto that wayfaring man, who when he had purposed to vndertake

take a long iourney, ſtumbled euen in the verie threſhold of his dore. But if it be an offence, I did voluntarily runne into it, chuſing rather to be carped at of the Rethorician for vſing too many words, then to be worthily reprehended of the readers for being too ſparing in vttering the reaſons whereby I was firſt adduced to publiſh this my labour. For I knowe not how it commeth to paſſe, yet we ſee it daily, that ridiculous toies and abſurd pamphlets being put forth without any colour, be neuertheleſſe plauſibly and pleaſingly accepted: whereas a man mooued with an honeſt care to profite his countrie, being willing to leaue a teſtimonie of the ſame behind him, when he offereth any work, if it hath not a delectable ſubiect, it behoueth him to ſhew many graue and ſubſtantiall reaſons of his doings, or elſe they will not yeeld their hoped for benefit, which is to be benignely conſtrued and peruſed with humanitie, ſo that if a man couet to haue his books fauorably accepted and read, he muſt behaue himſelfe ſo in writing, as *Solon* did in framing his lawes, who (as *Plutarch* ſaith) did not faſhion them according to the true line of equity, but ſet down ſuch as he thought the people wold willingly obſerue: euen ſo the iniquity of the time hath brought to paſſe, that thoſe books which are generally peruſed and read throughout, muſt not ſerue the time, but muſt ſatisfie the opinion of men. A man may eaſily diſcourſe of this, but the fantaſies of men are too variant to preuaile a whit in diſſwading them. For mine owne part (that I may now end) I haue not ſought nor hunted after any vaine glorie by the edition of this my labour, but onely I haue endeuored by this meanes (being vnable any way elſe) to do ſome good to my countrie men: which deſire of mine ſhall ſufficiently comfort me, though I want the outward probation of the world. And yet this one thing I would craue at the handes of the learned, that if by chance my books come vnder their cenſure, they will either giue them their good word, or elſe ſuffer themſelues to be iudged of by performing the like labour. And as *Martial* pretily ſung;

Cum tua non edis, carpis mea carmina Leli,
Carpere vel noli noſtra, vel ede tua,

though indeede this ſupplication of mine may rather more fitly be preferred vnto the vnlearned, who think they haue gotten a goodly meanes to purchaſe their owne credit, when they can vnder ſome colour maligne the doings of any man, as though others well doings were as impeachments to their eſtimations, or the errours of other men the ſubiect of their praiſes. Thoſe kinds of ſerpents (I ſay) which do nothing elſe but picke quarrels with Authors, I would aduiſe them either to ſpeake themſelues, or (if their ignorance will not let thē) to lay their fingers on their mouth till other men tell their tale, and not to make their harueſt of other mens offences vnwillingly committed, whilſt they themſelues reſt vnable to do any whit of good. And thus (good Reader) I will abruptly end, expecting the fauourable acceptation of theſe my labours, which expectation of mine (if it be not deluded) I ſhall be further encoraged to conſecrate the reſidue of my ſtudies to thy commoditie.

Philip Barrough.

OF VVEIGHTES.

A briefe declaration of the notes of all thoſe kindes of weightes, which are generally vſed and contained throughout this whole booke, and of the quantitie of them.

FOraſmuch as the true and perfect knowledge in compounding of medicines cannot be attained vnto without the knowledge of the quantitie of weightes, which are at this preſent day moſt commonly vſed in making of medicines: I will therefore here briefly declare the vſe of them: for ſeeing that the weights of ſome medicines be ſo iuſtly and certainly ordained and made, that if any man do chance raſhly to erre in the true quantitie thereof, he doth much hurt to the bodie, and many times putteth the life in ieopardy: you muſt therefore diligently endeuour, and applie your minde to ſtudie and conſider of the medicines, that ſo you may haue the more full and perfect knowledge thereof. The notes which I (following the order of other Phyſitions) haue vſed in this my booke in writing of weightes, be theſe, as followeth.

1. Grana.	*haue this note.*	ℊ.
2. Scrupuli.		℈.
3. Drachmæ.		ʒ.
4. Vnciæ.		℥.
5. Quar.		*qr.*
6. Libræ.		℔.
7. Semis.		ß.
8. Manipuli.		*M.*
9. Pugilli.		*p.*
10. Ana.		*ana.*

A Graine is a barley corne taken in the middeſt of the eare.
A Scruple is twentie barley cornes.
Three Scruples conteine a Drachme.
Eight Drachmes conteine one Ounce.
Quart, ſignifieth a quart of anything.
Libra is a Pound.
Semis, is the halfe of euerie weight.
Manipulus, is a great handfull.
Pugillus, is a ſmall handfull.
Ana, ſignifieth of euerie one a like much.

THE

THE METHOD OF PHISICK, CONTAINING THE CAVSES, SIGNES AND CVRES of inward diſeaſes in mans body, from the head to the foote.

The firſt Booke.

The firſt Chapter of Headach.

GALEN the prince of Phiſitions affirmeth, that there are onely three ſundrie paines in the head: whereof the one is called of the Greeks κεφαλαλγία, *Cephalalgia* and of the Latines *Capitis dolor*, the barbarous ſort of Phiſitions call it *Soda*. In Engliſh it is called cõmonly the headach. The ſecond kinde is called of the Greekes κεφαλαία, and in Latine likewiſe it is called ſo *Cephalæa*. In Engliſh it may be called a long continuing or inueterate headach. The third is called of the Greeks ἡμικρανία, *Hemicrania* alſo is the Latine name. for itIn Engliſh it is called the migrime. Of the two laſt kinds ſhal mention be made hereafter, for now we wil intreate of the firſt kind, declaring only in this chapter, what it is, and what be the generall cauſes thereof, and then in the chapters next folowing, ſhal the ſignes and cures of ech cauſe be declared. Vnderſtand therefore firſt, that *Cephalalgia* is nothing elſe but a laborious and painfull ſenſe, and feeling newly begun in the whole head, through ſome great mutation thereof, this word newly is added to make it differ from *Cephalæa*, which is an old paine that hath long continued: and the whole head is added to make it differ frõ *Hemicrania*, which occupieth but the one halfe of the head. Note alſo that by the head we meane ſo much as is couered with haire, wherin paine is engendred, ſometime without the ſcull, and ſometime within, ſomtime in all the outward parts, and ſometime in all the inward parts, ſometime not in all, but in one part, as in the Arteries onely, or the veynes, or ſinewes, or the filmes, or the skin, or in the braine it ſelfe, but theſe differences, as Galen teſtifieth, be very hard to know. But this may eaſily be knowen, whether the paine be within the ſcull or without it, if you conſider well the headach: for if the paine be extended to the rootes and bottome of the eyes, the paine is within the ſcull, for vnto the eyes are certaine branches deriued from the braine, and from the filmes, & other veſſels that are about it: ſo that the paine will quickly

Differences of paine in the head three.

1

2

3

VVhat Cephalalgia or Soda is.

The diuerſitie of places that paine is in.

VVhether the headach be within the ſcull or without it.

Causes of headach generall.

come from them to the roots of the eyes, but if the paine that is felt, do not extend to the eye roots, then is the ach without the scull. This paine of the head generally (as also all other paines) is caused of an vnequall distempure cõming with humours or without, especially when it is hote or cold, or it is caused by solution of parts coherent, or of both. But as for particular and speciall causes of headach, there be very many. For somtime it commeth only of a simple distempure without any humours, and sometime it commeth through the euill qualitie of humours, sometime it commeth through great abundance of humours, sometime through humours that stop the passage of the vapours and moisture in the head: sometime through windinesse ingendred in some part of the head, being weake. Also sometime headach is caused of some disease in the stomacke: sometime of an outward cause, as of heate of the Sunne, of great cold, of drunkennes, or of some stripe or wound. Hereby it appeareth that the headach is engendred of seuen sundry causes, which are to be knowen by their proper signes, whereof we will speake more at large in the chapters following, for in this chapter they shall be but briefly touched. Note therefore that the headach, which is caused of a simple distempure without humours, is not easie to be knowen, except a man be well exercised in Phisicke, & by much and diligent looking of the griefe: but that paine of the head is most vehement, which is caused of a simple distempure being hote or cold. The headach that is caused of drinesse, is moderate. As for a moist distempure, alone it doth cause no headach, except it be ioyned with heate or cold, or with abũdance of humors, or sharpnesse of them. If paine of the head doth come through abundance of humours, contained in one part of the head, or in two, or in all parts, the paine is more vehement, that commeth of hote humours, or of cold, that which cõmeth of drie things is more moderate, if there be no manifest heate or colde ioyned with them: as for moist things touching their qualitie, do cause no paine at all, but with their quantitie they may fil the passages, & so cause paine. If abundance of all foure humours equally, or of bloud alone, do cause headach without obstruction & stopping of the passages, it maketh the head heauie and full, as it were stretched out and swolne, but if the multitude of humours be with obstruction, it causeth moderate paine if the obstruction be but litle, but if the obstruction be great, there shalbe verie great paine. Also if the multitude of humours haue a sharpe and byting qualitie, according to that qualitie the paine wil be pricking and shooting. If with the heauinesse or stretching of the head, there be beating, and as it were a pulse, it betokeneth inflãmation in the head. But if the stretching be present without heauinesse or pulse, it declareth abundance of windie spirits, and in this kind of headach, there will be noise in the eares. Those that haue headach comming of an externall cause, as of heate of the sunne, cold of the ayre, drunkennesse, stripes, or of any hote sauours, can easily tell them selues the cause thereof. Seeke for signes more particular in the Chapters next following.

Signes of each cause of headach generally.

CHAP. II.

Of headach caused of heate.

Causes.

VNderstand, that by heate in this chapter, is meant a hote distemper without any kind of humour. It is engendred for the most part of the burning heate

heate of the Sunne in Sommer, when any body hath taried long in it. Alſo it is ſometime cauſed of immoderate mouing, or by hote bathes, or by being long nigh the flame of the fire, or through anger, or furiouſnes, or laſt of all through hote diſeaſes, or hote ſauours of outward things. *Signes.* The ſignes which declare headach by burning heate of the Sunne, are, that beſides vehement paine, you ſhall feele their head hote aſſoone as you touch it, and their skinne drier then it was wont to be, their eyes do looke redde, and they are delighted with the ſprinckling or annointing of cold things, and do feele great eaſe by them. As for the other cauſes, they may be knowne by relation of the ſicke. For the cure *Diet.* of this kind of headach, you muſt firſt prouide, that the ayre and the chamber *Ayre.* wherein the ſicke abideth, be very cold of nature, or elſe it muſt be made ſo by your diligence, as by ſtrowing in the houſe, flowers, & branches of cold things (as roſes, violets, water lillie flowers, and vine leaues, bryer boughes, willow, and ſuch like.) Alſo it will coole the ayre well to ſprinckle cold water in the houſe, or to poure it out of one veſſell into another. Great reſpect muſt be had *Sleepe.* to his ſleeping, for he muſt ſleepe longer then he was wont to do, he muſt altogether eſchue long watching, and keepe him ſelfe quiet: he muſt not retaine his excrements, but auoyd them by and by after ſleepe if he can, or let nature be helped to expell them by a lenitiue cliſter, for their retétion increaſe paine in the head. Let him eſchue carnall copulation, exerciſes, and bathes. Let him eſchue all perturbations of the mind, eſpecially anger and furie. Let him haue but litle meate, of good digeſtion: and let it be cold in operation, as *Meate.* is bread dipped in cold water, iuyce of ptiſan, lettuce, endiue, purſelaine, fleſh of chickens, hennes, or pigeons, with veriuyce made of grapes. Fiſhes are good that come out of ſtonie riuers, and that are tender. Alſo almond milke, pomgranates, raiſins, and ripe peares may be giuen to him. He muſt abſtaine from milke, and meates that fume into the head, or that be hard of digeſtion. For his drinke, let him vſe water altogether, if his ſtomacke will beare it, if not, *Drinke.* ſeeth a litle cynamon in it, or coriander ſeed preparate, or mixe with the water, iuyce of ſower pomegranates, or ſyrupe of Endiue, or *Syrupus acetoſus ſimplex* or *oxy ſaccharum*: or if they can not abide that, you may giue them ſmall wine well allayed with water. The paine of the head cauſed of heate, is cured *Cure.* with ſuch things as do coole without manifeſt reſtriction, eſpecially if they be of thinne & piercing ſubſtance. Therefore in the beginning nothing is better then to powre vpon the head good oyle of roſes, made of vnripe oyle, and *Oyle of roſes.* if a litle vineger be added to it, it will pierce the faſter & the deeper. The places that you muſt powre or annoint it on, is the fore part of the head, where the ſeame goeth ouerthwart, for it is the thinneſt place of the ſcull, and the ſeames haue pores in them: alſo you muſt vſe it on the toppe of the forehead, where the haire leaueth growing, and on the ſides of the temples, where the haire groweth towards the eares. The beſt thing next oyle of roſes, is oyle of cam- *Oyle of cam-* momill to be vſed in like wiſe, eſpecially in thoſe bodies, that we would not *momill.* coole too much, as womens, eunuches, children and other that haue ſoft fleſh, and are white in colour. If there be need of greater cooling, you may adde to the oyle of roſes iuyce of houſelike, or purſelaine, or knotgraſſe, or of vnripe grapes, or nightſhade, or ſorrell, or pſillium, or ſuch like. Vſe not iuyce of pop-

pye, or of mandrage in this cause, for they doe hurt: you may make medicines of the former things, or such like, in this sort. ℞. oyle of roses. ℥.ij. rose water. ℥ j. strong vineger. ℥.ß. or iuyce of houselike, or purselaine, or lettuse, ℥ j. and so commixe them. Or thus, ℞. distilled water of houselike, lettuse, and nightshade ana. ℥. ij. water of cammomill. ℥. j.ß. vineger. ℥. j. commixe them and dip a cloth in it, and lay it all ouer the forehead, and the temples where the haire groweth not. But let not this medicine touch the hinder part of the head, for that part cannot suffer cooling without hurt, because the marrowe of the backe bone beginneth there. Those medicines which you will vse for cooling, especially in sommer, must stand a while in very cold water. This also is good for abundance of humours, and vapours, that be lifted vp into the head. In like manner also you may vse other oyles that haue vertue to coole, as oyles of quinces, violets, water lillies, and gourds. Neither will it be vnprofitable to vse a liniment made in this sort. ℞. Of the mucilage of the seeds of quinces, and great mallowes, or of psilium, ana. ℥. iij iuyce of purselaine ℥. j.ß. iuyce of nightshade. ℥ ß. oyle of roses ℥. j: commixe them, and make a liniment: or by putting too waxe and other medicines make an ointment in this sort. ℞. *Vnguenti populeon.* ℥. j. oyles of violets and roses, of ech ℥. iij. drie flowers of white water lillies, and of red roses. ana. ℈. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint it vpon the forehead and the temples. It profiteth also to vse embrocations (that is decoctions made of certaine things to poure vpon any member by litle and litle, or to let it drop downe) they may be made of roses, violets, floures of water lillies, willow leaues, vine leaues, purselaine, barley & such like. You must not apply stupefactiue things to the griefe, because they coole not without hurt, and therefore opium, iuyce of popie, and mandragora are to be eschued. Iuyce of nightshade also because of his stupefaction is not to be vsed at all, or very litle of it at once, as we doe vse in the liniment aforesaid. Also those things that haue manifest astriction and binding with their cooling, are to be refused, except necessitie require it, and therefore the iuyces of sweete pomgranates, quinces, and medlers, are to be auoyded, but iuyce of sower pomgranates is good, because it cooleth more. Hitherto we haue declared what medicines are to be vsed in the beginning of this griefe. Afterward you may vse to mixe with the medicines that do coole and driue backe, such things as do mitigate and digest. Make therefore an embrocation after this sort, ℞. flours of roses and violets. ana. M.ß. leaues of willow, cammomill, and melilot, ana. M.j. seedes of mallowes. ℥. iij. barley husked ℥. j. seeth these in two pound of water, til the third part be consumed, and make an embrocation. Or thus, ℞. mallow leaues, violets, roses, ana. pug. ß. the flours of water lillies. ℥. iij. vine leaues, or the wreathes that they wind about things withall, purselaine, or houslike, of each, M. j. cammomill, melilot, and fenugreeke, ana. ℥. ij. seeth them as is aboue said, and make an embrocha, adding to a litle vineger, especially if the paine be within the scull. Last of all, you may vse most of the discussiue medicines, withdrawing the aforesayd repelling things, such be, Althæa, dill, sothernwood, butter, cammomill, barley meale, fenugreeke, lineseed, lupines, &c. Of these and such like things you may make quilts, or embrocations, or oyntments as you list. For inward medicines (especially

A Liniment.

Vnguentum.

Embrochæ.

Stupefacientia

Note.

Embrochæ.

Alia.

cially if the headach be cauſed of exerciſe, anger, or ſuch like) miniſter Iulep of violets or roſes, or their conſerues, or manus Chriſti, or giue the ſicke ij. or iij. houres before meate in the morning. ℥ j. and ß. of ſyrupe of infuſion of roſes, or of ſyrupe of water lillies with ℥ ij. or iij. of water of borage or cychorie. It is good for the ſicke to ſmell roſe water, mixed with a litle vineger: alſo it is good to ſnuffe it vp in the noſe. *Inward medicines.* *Odours.*

CHAP. III.

Of headach cauſed of cold.

By cold is meant in this Chapter, a cold diſtempure ſimply without the fluxe of any cold humour. This paine in the head is cauſed of outward cold, as when the ayre is very cold, eſpecially when anie bodie tarieth in it long time bare headed, as alſo it may be cauſed by the ſodaine applying of any cold thing to the head. The ſignes of headach cauſed of cold, are contrary to thoſe ſignes that are cauſed of hote diſtempure. For in this, though the paine be vehemēt, yet the head when it is felt, is not hote, nor the face and eyes do not looke redde, nor their face is not drie and ſhruncke, but contrariwiſe full & pale, and their eyes are ſwollen and ſwart. Alſo they neither deſire cold things, nor do feele eaſe by them. Concerning the diet of thoſe that haue this kind of headach, they muſt eſchue cold ayer, and abide altogether in hote ayer. They muſt ſleepe moderately, but not longer then they were wont. They muſt vſe mouing of the whole body, eſpecially walking and riding. Let their bodies be ſoluble, rather then coſtiue, ſo that they may ech day haue a ſiege either by nature or by art, as by a ſuppoſitarie or a cliſter. Let them eſchue ſadneſſe, and deepe cogitations, and other immoderate affections of the minde. Let them eſchue all meates and drinkes that be cold in operation, as milke, fiſh, and ſuch like. Let them eate reare egges, and fleſh of hennes, chicken, partrich, and feſants, and ſuch like. For their drinke, let them vſe wine that is thinne of ſubſtance, for that doth moderatly extenuate & heate. For the ſame cauſe alſo hote bathes are to be vſed; and generally for the cure hereof, you muſt vſe things that be hote in operation. But yet in applying medicines to the head, you muſt diligētly conſider the natural temperature of the braine, for it is ſuch a thing, as cannot ſuffer medicines vehement hote, nor yet vehement cold. Therfore (as Galen affirmeth) if oyle of rewe be powred hote vpon the fore part of the head, it healeth the patient perfectly. But if there be need of greater heating, you may put pepper, or euphorbium into the oyle, or you may mixe ſome oyle of pepper, or oyle of euphorbium with the oyle of rew, or in the ſteed of oyle of rewe, you may vſe oyles of laurell, yreos, dill, or cammomill, of ſpiknarde, ſerpillum, marioram, and ſuch like. Herewith you may annoint the forehead alſo, & the noſthrils, & the holes of the eares. Of the aforeſaid medicines you may make an ointment after this fort. ℞. Oyles of yreos, & rew. ana. ℥. ß. marioram, betonie, pepper, ana. ℈. j. of *Euphorbium*, gra. v. waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint therewith the forehead and the noſthrils, or make an oyntment thus. ℞. of oyle of rewe, cammomill, and nardinum. ana. ℥. j hyſope, lauender, and floures of ſtæchas, ana. ℥. ß. maſticke and frankenſenſe, of ech. ℥. j. waxe a litle, & make an ointment. You may ſometime adde to it, if you will, *Caſtoreum*. ℈. j. Alſo embrocations profit much, if they be made *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Cura.* *Vnguentum.* *Aliud.* *Embrochæ.*

of flowers, of melilot, and cammomill, marioram, origan, betonie, ſage, laurell leaues, ſtæchas, and ſuch like, ſodden in water. It is good for the ſicke to draw vp the vapours of ſuch decoctions by his noſthrils. Alſo a quilt made in this ſort profiteth much. ℞. leaues of laurell, ſerpillum, and marioram. ana. M. ß. floures of roſemarie. M. j. rew. M. ß. cloues and ſtæchas ana ℥. j. penitoyall and calamint ana. ℥. j. ß. beate theſe to powder, & ſew them in ſilke, or fine linnen cloth, & make a quilt, which muſt be layd to the head warme, & firſt ſprinkled with vineger. It is good alſo to vſe a pomander made in this ſort; ℞. of ſtorax calamitæ ℥. ij. cloues, maces, wood of aloes, ana. ℥. ß. lauender ℥. ij. gallia moſchata ℥. j. ß. of muske and amber, ana. gra. iii. powder them & ſerce them, and with water of marioram, and ſtorax liquida as much as ſhall ſuffiſe, make pomanders.

Sacculus.

Pomum odoriferum.

CHAP. III.

Of headach cauſed by drineſſe or moyſture.

BY drineſſe is meant in this place a drie diſtempure of the qualitie alone, & by moiſture, a moiſt diſtempure of the bare qualitie. Neither of theſe qualities alone, except heate or cold be ioyned with them, do cauſe any headach at all (as Galen teacheth in the 5. Chap. of his firſt booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis.*) Therefore we do not make mention here of theſe diſtépures, as though headach might be cauſed of thé alone, but that the ſtudious in phiſicke might haue ſtore of medicines, when headach cometh of heate and drineſſe, or moiſture with heat, or whé cold mixed with drines, or moiſture cauſeth headach. Headach through drynes is cauſed through drynes of the aire, or by dry medicines, by hunger, exerciſe, lecherie, and perturbations of the mind. And headach of moiſture is cauſed by moiſtneſſe of the aire, or by moiſtening medicines, by bathes, hote waters, & other things that moiſten ouermuch. Drineſſe is known by theſe ſignes, if there come few excrements, or none at all out of the noſe, if the eyes be hollow, and the patient haue watched much before. Theſe be ſignes of headach of drineſſe: alſo in it the ſkinne of the head is drier when it is felt, then it is wonted to be, and ſome drie diet hath bene vſed. Alſo in this kind drie medicines do not eaſe the paine, but rather increaſe it. Moiſtneſſe is knowen by theſe ſignes, much filth cometh out at the noſe, the eyes be puffed vp and ſwolne, & the patient ſleepeth much: but of this diſtempure alone there doeth no headach enſue. Thoſe that haue headach cauſed of drineſſe, let them remaine in a moiſt ayer; and let them eate meates that do moiſten, and that be of good iuyce, as the yolkes of egges, cocks ſtones, and the brothes of them, pheſants, partrich, and ſuch like things, that do nouriſh much and moiſten. Let them drinke thinne wine alayed with water. Let them ſleepe largely. Let them eſchue motion of the body and exerciſe, and vſe quietneſſe and reſt. Let them eſchue carnall copulation, hunger, thirſt, and all things that do drye. Let them vſe bathes of ſweet waters that are warme. Let them be merrie, and eſchue all other perturbations of the mind. If headach be cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe the contrary diet to this that is before preſcribed (that is, all ſuch things as do drie, which you may eaſily know by that which hath bene ſayd before.) For paine of the head cauſed of drineſſe, you muſt annoint the former

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

ſeame

ſeame of the head with oyle of ſweete almonds, or with oyle of gourds, or with oyles of violets, and cammomill mixed togethet. It is alſo good to drop ſome of theſe oyles into the noſthrils. You may alſo mixe verie well with the ſayd oyles gooſe greaſe, hennes greaſe, calues greaſe, or freſh butter after this ſort; R. oyles of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥ iii. calues ſuit, hennes greaſe, & freſh butter, ana ℥ ii. commixe them, and make a liniment, and therewith annoint the head. Furthermore embrocations profit not a litle, if they be made of violets, mallowes, & other herbes that haue vertue to moiſten. Againſt headach cauſed of moiſture, you muſt vſe medicines cleane contrarie to the aforenamed, which muſt differ according to the heate or cold which is ioyned to the moiſture. You may finde ſufficient ſtore of ſuch remedies out of the former Chapters. *Linimentum.*

CHAP. V.

Of Headach cauſed of bloud.

Hitherto we haue ſpoken of the cure of headach, which commeth through alteration and diſtempure of the bare qualitie, but now we will ſpeake of that which is cauſed of fulneſſe, and abundance of bloud: we call plenitude in this place that which the Greeks call in their tongue *plethora*, it chanceth whē all the foure humours be increaſed in their proportion, or when bloud alone doth abound. This kind of headach is cauſed of all ſuch things as do ingender great abundance of humours in the bodie, as meates and drinks of great nouriſhment being plētifully taken, as alſo the neglecting & omitting of exerciſes, bathes, ſweatings, & other natural & artificiall vacuations be cauſes of the ſaid plenitude. The ſignes be theſe. The face and the eyes be ruddie, the vaines are ſwolne, ſo that the leaſt & ſmalleſt may eaſily be ſeene, the pulſe is great & vehement, the vrine reddiſh & thick, the vaines of the temples beate, the paine in the head is a heauineſſe. Concerning diet, let the ſicke be in a cold & dry aire: let him eſchue fleſh, reare egges, and ſuch things as nouriſh plentifully: let him vſe ptiſan made of barley, or alica made of barley: let him vſe cold herbes, as endiue, ſcarioll purcelaine, lettuce, and ſuch like: let him eſchue wine, and let him drinke water wherein a litle cinamon or barley hath bene ſodden: let him vſe meane exerciſe; let him be rubbed: let him alſo vſe bathing often, but ſo that his bodie be firſt emptied, and the patient free from a feuer. Let his ſleepe be meane: let him be merie and ioyfull, and let him abſtaine from all other perturbations of the mind. The cure muſt be begun with bloudletting as ſoone as can be. You muſt open the vttermoſt veine, which in the arme is called *humeralis*, or *Cephalica*, it muſt be on the arme which is of that ſide, that the griefe is moſt vehement. For this veine is ſo annexed to the head, that not only by it you ſhal pull backe bloud into a contrarie part, but alſo you ſhall empty out that bloud by it, as Hippocrates, & after him Galen, and Rhaſes do teach. But if age or weakeneſſe do prohibit bloudletting, you muſt vſe boxing, not to the head it ſelfe, but to the parts adioyning, as the ſhoulders and breaſt, to the intent to pull backe the bloud. Theſe being done, you muſt apply to the head, medicines that be cold and aſtringent, whereof we haue made mention before ſufficiently in the ſecond chapter, ſo that they need not here to be repeated.

What is meant by plenitude. πλήθωρα.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Cucurbitæ.

Ventoſe.

Localia.

Furthermore the Phisitiō must haue special regard in this case, that the patiēt be kept soluble. Therfore if the patient be any thing costiue, you may minister this decoction or some such like. ℞. floures of bugloſſe, borage, roſes, & violets, ana. M. ß the foure great cold ſeeds husked, ana. ℥ ij. ſebeſtē, damask proines, of each in number xij. great raiſins, tamarindes, ana ℥. j. barks of mirabolanes, citrinorum, indorum, chebulorum, emblicorum, belliricorum, ana. ℥ iij. liquorice. ℥. j. fumitorie, maidenhaire, ana. M. j. tamariſcus, harts toung, ana. ℥ iij. ſene, and polipodie, of each, ℥ ß. agaricke choſen. ℥. ij. ß. ginger, ℥ ß. Seeth all theſe in a ſufficient quantitie of water, vntill halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it and preſſe it hard. Adde to that decoction ſuger ſufficient to make it ſweet, purifie it with the white of egges, and make a potion, whereof the patient ſhall drinke each morning, ℥. iiij. faſting. And if ſo be that the patients costiueneſſe require a ſtronger medicine, then you may adde to foure ounces of the aforeſaid decoction, ℥. j. ß. of fine reubarbe beaten to powder, and ſpicknard, ℥. ß. or you may diſſolue it in *caſia fiſtula*. ℥. j. ß. newly drawen, or ℥ j of manna, or of diaphenicon. ℥. iij. For the ſame purpoſe alſo it is good to miniſter vnto the patient ſyrupe of violets, and *Acetoſus ſimplex*. After this you muſt apply ſuch medicines to the head, as be able to diſperſe the remnant of the paine & diſeaſe; as is, ſeedes of mallowes, fenugrecke, cammomill, and melilot floures. Alſo oyles of cammomil, dill, and ſuch like, whereof the Phiſition may at his choiſe make liniments, ointments, or emplaiſters in maner aforeſaid. Note here further, that if much bloud abound after you haue let bloud of the *Cephalica*, you may alſo ſtrike the vaine in the forehead: as alſo for that purpoſe it is good to vſe clyſters ſometime very ſtrong, and you may vſe frictions and bindings of the neather parts to pull backe the humours. Moreouer gargariſing & ſneeſing may be vſed in time conuenient, & boxing in the hinder part of the head, with ſcarificatiō, at the diſcretion of the Phiſition, as occaſiō & time ſhal ſerue.

Decoctum purgans.

Diſcutientia.

CHAP. VI.

Of headach cauſed of choler.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

HEadach comming of cholericke humors is cauſed of all ſuch things as do heat and dry the whole body, and eſpecially the head vnnaturally, that is, ſuch things as do ingender choler: (to wit, care, anger, paine, labour, exerciſe, watching, abſtinence, famine, and eating of meates that be cholericke, as garlike, onions, and ſuch like. The ſignes be theſe: the paine is like theirs that haue headach cauſed of burning heat of the ſunne, but they haue a more ſharp and pricking paine, their head is moderatly hote, their face is pale and wanne. Sometime there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, drineſſe of the eyes, noſe, and tong. Moreouer this euill chanceth moſt of all to floriſhing yeares, a hote complexion, and to them that take ouermuch buſineſſe in hand, and ſuch like. Let the patient abide in a cold & moiſt aire, which may be the rather procured by arte, as is taught before in the ſecond chap. by ſprinkling the floore of the chamber continually with water, or by ſtrewing about of floures and branches that are cold & moiſt in operatiō. Let his whole diet be moiſt, let him eat moiſt meats that be of good iuyce, giue him lettuce, & purſlaine, and ſmall fiſhes of freſh waters. Let his drinke be water alone, or water wherein a litle cynamon

hath

hath bin ſodden. Let him altogether abſtaine from wine. Let him be quiet, and vſe long ſleepes, bathes that be temperate, vnctions are good for him, let him be merrie, and refraine from all perturbations of the mind. The cure muſt be begun with purging of the cholericke humour ſtraight way, becauſe choler is thinne & moueable, & therfore will eaſily purge out. But if it chance, that the cholericke humor doth reſt quietly in ſome part of the body, and ſo doth waxe hote, and burne that part, and by that meanes doth prohibite hote medicines (as purging things be) then before the purgatiõ, you muſt miniſter ſuch things as do quench and concoct the heat and burning of choler, that is ſuch things as do alter it. For digeſtion that we ſpeake of now is nothing elſe but an alteration of the humour that cauſeth the diſeaſe. Therfore ſuch medicines muſt be miniſtred each morning faſting before you do purge, vntil good cõcoction appeare in the vrine: For by this meanes choler being concoct, and as it were tamed & made milde, is made ſo obedient vnto nature, that it will ſoone without any griefe be drawen of the purging medicine to conuenient places, that it ſhould auoid by. You ſhall therfore for a preparatiue vſe this or ſuch like medicines. ℞. Syrupe of violets, ℥ j. ſyrupe of water Lillies, ℥ ß. diſtilled waters of Endiue, ſuccorie and roſes. ana. ℥ j. commixe them, & let them be drunke in the morning faſting. For this purpoſe alſo you may miniſter Iulep of Roſes and violets, or *Syrupus acetoſus*, or the decoction of ſeeds of cucumbers, gourds, purcelaine, endiue, rootes alſo of endiue and ſuccorie, roſes, violets, water lillies, lettuce, damaske proynes, Sebeſten, Iuiubes, and ſuch like. You may purge the cholericke humour either by infuſion of wormewood, or of Aloes, or with *Hierapicra* miniſtred alone, or a little ſcammonie mixed with it, or with pilles made of Aloes. Or you ſhall not doe amiſſe to take of the purging decoction preſcribed in the former chapter. ℥ iiij. and to diſſolue therein ℥ iii. of *Electuarium de ſucco roſarum*, or as much of *Electuarium de Pſillio*, & ſo miniſter it. It is good alſo to miniſter infuſion of reubarbe made after this ſort. ℞. fine Reubarbe. ℥ ij. Spikenard. ℈ j. cut them ſmall, and infuſe them in diſtilled waters of endiue, doddir, and bugloſſe, ana. ℥ j. pure ale. ℥ ß. the ſpace of 12. houres, then ſtraine it hard, and put thereto of Electuaries *de ſucco Roſarum* and *Pſillio*, ana. ℥ j. ß. commixe them and make a purging potion. Alſo you may vſe *Pilulæ aureæ*, and *Alephangina*, or pilles of reubarbe, or of *Hiera ſimplex*, and ſuch like, or elſe *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaprunes ſolutiue*. For them that are delicate, you may vſe this bole, ℞ of *Diagridium* ℈ ß. of Maces, cynnamon, and Maſticke, ana. gr. 2. conſerue of violets, and water lillies, ana. ℥ j. ſuger as much as ſufficeth, and make a bole. Further it profiteth now and then to vſe cliſters made in this or like ſort; ℞ Mallowes, Althea, Endiue, Succorie, Violets, ana. M. ß. whole barley, ℥ i. the fower common ſmall colde ſeedes (that is) Lettuce, purcelaine, endiue, and ſcarioll, ana. ℥ iij. Seeth all theſe in running water to the third part, ſtraine them, take of that decoction ℔ j. of the pulpe of *Caſſia fiſtula* ℥ j. of *Hierapiera* ℥ ß. of oyle of violets ℥ ij. oyle of roſes ℥ j. of *mel roſarum* ℥ j. of ſalt ℥ i ß. commixt all together, and make a cliſter. After purging of the cholericke humour, you muſt apply medicines outwardly, which can coole and ſtrenthen the head, wherof you ſhal find ſtore in the ſecõd chapter. If the ſick can not ſleepe, annoint the fore part of the head with oyle of water

Curatio.

Zulapium.

Purgatio.

Dilutum Rhabarbari.

Bolus purgans.

Clyſter.

Localia.

Sleepe

lillies, and oyle of poppie: to them you may for a need adde a litle opium, that sleepe thereby may be prouoked. Note, that boxing without scarification and frictions of the armes and legges may be well vsed in times conuenient.

CHAP. VII.

Of headach caused of fleume.

Causæ. HEadach cõming of fleume, is caused of all such things as ingender fleume in the head, as a cold and moyst aire, meates that be cold and moist, as fishes, milke, rawe herbes, fruite, idlenesse, and sleeping vpon a full stomake &

Signa. such other like. The signes hereof be fulnesse & heauinesse of the head, whitenesse, and moistnesse of the face. Moreouer the sicke will easily fall a sleepe, he is slow, his senees are dull, and his head aboundeth with excrements, as also

Victus ratio. the signes declared in the 3. Chapter agree with this kind of headach. Let the sick remaine in an aire that is hote and dry by nature, or if that cannot be had, let the ayre be made such by certaine odoriferous things, as with cynamon, frankensence, cloues, wood of Alces, and such like. Let his meate that he eateth for the most part be rosted, and let him eat spices with it. For his drinke let him vse thinne and small wine, let his exercise be meane; to be short, let him

Curatio. vse such diet as is prescribed in the third chapter of this booke. The cure must be begun with extenuation & digestion of the flegmaticke humour. Therefore you must minister such medicines as are able to extenuate, make thinne, cut, and deuide humours; such be mel rosarum, oximel simplex and compositum, and scilliticum, syrupe of stæchades, distilled waters of hysope, betonie, marioram, sage, and such like, minister therefore vnto him a medicine made in this

Zulapium. sort. ℞. Of *oximel scilliticum* ℥. j. of syrupe of stæchades ℥. ß. of distilled waters of hysope, percely and marioram ana. ℥. j commixe them and make a potion. Or if the vsing of syrupes & distilled waters do not like you, you may minister

Decoctum extenuans pituitam. this or such like decoction. ℞. of the rootes of fenell, percely & asparagus, ana. ℥. j. rootes of pionie ℥. ij. seedes of anise, fenell, filer montanum ana. ℥. iij stichados, origan, serpillum, marioram, calamint, betonie, sage. ana. M. ß. fine cinamon, maces, ana. ℥. j. ß. Seeth all these in sufficient quantitie of water vntill halfe be consumed, then straine it, and adde suger sufficient to make it sweete, clarifie it with the whites of egges, then put thereto syrupe of hysope, & oximel

Purgatio. simplex ana. ℥. iij. commixe them all together and make a potion. When the humours are extenuate, & made thinne and prepared to be purged, then must

Pilulæ. such medicines be ministred, as are able to purge fleume, for the which cause let the sicke haue these pilles ministred vnto him. ℞. *pilularum coctuarum* ℥. j ß. *pilularũ è hiera composita.* ℥. j. *pil. alephanginarũ.* ℥. ß. agaricke made into trochists ℈. ij. *Mirabolanorum, chebulorum.* ℈. j fine turbith ℈. ß. stichados and ginger. ana. gr. v. masticke gr. vij. seeds of pionie in number iij. Castorei g. iiij. with lauender water make pilles. It is good for them that are thus affected, to be purged not once onely, but twise or thrise, because the grosse and clammie humours will not straight follow a suddaine purgation, but they must be drawne out by litle and litle with often purging. Also clisters are good, not only because they empty out such things as are contained in the intestines, but also for that they

Clyster. pull backe such humours and vapours as ascend to the head. For clisters therfore

fore the decoction before preſcribed is good if you take thereof ℥. xij. and diſſolue therin *benedicte laxatiua* ℥ ß. *Electuarij indi maioris* ℥.iij. diaphœnicon ℥ ij, *mel roſarum* ℥. j. oyles of laurell and rewe. ana. ℥.j. ß. ſal gemme. ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. After the whole bodie is purged, you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as can purge the head, as be gargariſes made in this ſort: ℞. long pepper and nutmegs, ana. ℥. ß. ſeed of ſtauiſacre and pellitorie, ana. ℈. ij. muſtard ſeed, origan, ana ℈. j. beate them to powder, and put thereof in a linnen cloth, and chew it, or with maſticke or honie make trochiskes like lupines, and let the ſicke chewe one of them almoſt halfe an houre. Alſo the head may be purged by iuyce of marioram, blitum, colewortes, and ſuch like. You may alſo for this purpoſe miniſter gargariſes made of the diſtilled waters of hyſope, betony, origan, with *hierapicra* and *oximel compoſitum*, or in this ſort; ℞. pellitorie, long pepper, of each, ℥. j. ß. ſeed of ſtauiſacre, ℥. ß. marioram, peniroyall, hyſope, origan, betonie, ana. M. ß. ſeeth all theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water vnto the third part, ſtraine it, and adde to the licour *mel roſarum*. ℥ j. ß. *oximel ſcilliticum*. ℥. ß. commixe all and make a gargariſe. Alſo medicins to prouoke ſneeſing are good in this caſe. You may make them after this ſort; ℞. marioram ℥. j. nigella, ℥. ß. cloues, white pepper, cubebs, ana. ℈. j. nutmegs, graines, caſtoreum, beleborus albus, ana. ℈. ß. beate them into very fine powder, and prouoke ſneeſing therewith. For them which are rich you may adde muske and amber, ana. gr. ij. It profiteth alſo to hold hote and ſweet odors to the noſe of the patient, or a pomander artificially made, ſuch a one as we preſcribed in the end of the third Chapter. Further you may take *naſalia* (as they call them) things to put into the noſe, ſharpe at one end and great at the other like a ſteeple, after this ſort; ℞. ſtauiſacre, pellitory and white pepper, ana. ℥ ß. nigella, nutmegs, ana ℈. ij. beleborus albus, ℈ ß. powder them, and with roſin & waxe make naſales. After the purging of the head, you may vſe ointments, embrocations, drie quilts, and ſuch like other medicines to diſperſe the remnant of the humour remaining in the head, whereof there be examples ſufficient in the third Chapter before. You may commodiouſly miniſter inwardly, cubebs condite, or diambra, diamoſcha, aromaticum roſaceum, diacuminum, dianthos, theriaca, mithridatum, diacorum, conſerue of marioram, roſemary, betonie, with ſyrupe of ſtichados. Or miniſter theſe lozenges which are ſpecially good. ℞. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*, *dianthos*, ana. ℈. j. cubebs, maces, of each, ℥ ß. woods of Aloes, cloues, and fenell ſeed, ana. ℈. ß. fine cinamon, ℈ ij. ſtichados, ℈. ß. with ſuger molten in the diſtilled waters of pionie floures and lauender make lozenges. And thus much for the cure of headach cauſed of flegmaticke humours. But if ſo be that headach be cauſed of a melancholie humour, then you muſt preſcribe ſuch diet, and vſe ſuch cure as ſhalbe declared in the Chapter of melancholy, or madneſſe. And therefore it ſhould be ſuperfluous to intreate hereof in this place: repaire therefore for cure of headach comming of melancholie vnto the 28 chapter in this booke following.

Gargariſe.

Gargariſmus.

Sternutamentum.

Naſalia.

Localia.

Lozenges.

Of headach comming of melancholy.

CHAP. VIII.

Of headach cauſed of windineſſe.

IF headach be cauſed of windineſſe, the diet vſed before was ſuch as did ingender wind beſides the nature of the body, & other circumſtances were ſuch as

Cauſa.

Signa. were apt to ingender wind. The signes be these, if there be felt distention and stretching in the head without heauinesse & beating, & if there be a sound and noyse in the eares, then doth it betoken windines in the head. The diet of the patient must altogether be such as doth not ingender windines. For the cure, if the windinesse be not only bred in the head, but doth ascend from som part beneath, first of all you must vse such medicines, as do repell and driue backe, such be vineger, pomgranate rindes and floures, wormewood, melilot, mints, plantaine, walwort, bursa pastoris, nutmegges, purcelaine, houslike, lawrell leaues, and such like. Which being moderatly vsed a while, you must then adde to those repulsiue things, some such medicines as do mitigate, concoct, and digest, as be fenugreeke, lineseed, cammomill, yolkes of egges, saffron, hennes grease, goose grease, &c. Last of all ad discussiue medicines, oyles of dill, & rew, barley meale, lupines, lillie roores, nigella, &c. It is good therfore first of all to empty the belly with a strong clister, but that must be made of a decoction that doth dissolue windines, by seething in water anise seeds, & caraway seeds, fenel seed, comin, dry figges, branne, and such like: herein you must dissolue *benedicta laxatiua* ℥.iiij. or *Electuariũ nidum* in like quantity, or *Diaphenicon* ℥.iiij. or *Diacatholicon*, or *hierapicra* ℥.vij. Such kind of clisters do not onely purge the intestines, & the parts about the liuer, but do also pull backe such things as ascend to the head. Afterward you must strẽgthen the affected member, that it do ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomacke, the liuer, the splene, the intestines, or any other member: which being done, if heat abound in the head together with the windines, then apply oile of roses, which is both repulsiue, digestiue, & discussiue, & adde to it vineger which is both repulsiue & discussiue also, & doth extenuat besides. Also rose water or iuice of purcelaine, knotgrasse or nightshade may be vsed & applied with a litle vineger If there be cold in the head with the windines, thẽ vse oiles of cammomil or dill, mixed with a litle vineger: or if the grief increase, apply the iuyce of rew with vineger & oile mixed together, or apply the iuyce of the root of floure de-luce with vineger: or iuyce of laurel berries & rew mixed with vineger is good to be applied. Likewise bitter almonds beaten with vineger & oile, & applied to the forehead in a linnen cloth, are very good when the grief doth first begin to increase. And if you had rather vse drie quilts, you may make them at the first of milium, roses, willow leaues, knotgrasse, nightshade, & purcelaine, & so apply thẽ to the forehead, & forepart of the head. Afterward you may ad to th'aforesaid marioram, serpillũ, hisope, rewe, tender leaues of lawrell, ciperns & such like. It is good also to vse odors & smels, as castoreũ, musk, amber, & such like. To prouoke sneesing, & to minister inwardly to the sicke is good, either *Diacuminum*, or *Dianisum* ℥.j. or as much triacle, or *Mithridatum* profiteth. But if the windines be caused through imbecillitie of some parts of the head it selfe, then you shall not neede to vse repulsiue medicines, but rather concoctiue and discussiue medicins, such as are before declared. As for inward medicins they auaile or profit litle in this case

Vicius ratio.

Cura.

Clyster.

Localia.

CHAP. IX.

Of Headach caused of the stomacke.

HItherto we haue declared the causes, signes, and cures of headach caused principally in it selfe, now it remaineth that we intreat of paine in the head, which

which commeth by consent. And first of that headach which cõmeth through euill affection of the stomacke. And that is caused most commonly when some sharpe humour aboundeth in the stomacke, especially in the mouth of it, from whence corrupt vapours arising do ascend to the head. It may be knowen by the gnawing and byting paine that they feele which haue that headach, and by the desire to vomit that the patient hath. Especially if the mouth of the stomacke be affected. Moreouer in this kind of headach, if the sicke fast, and suffer hunger long, the paine is more vehement, for through long abstinence the malice of the humour increaseth. You must cure those that are thus grieued, not by applying remedies to the head, but to the humours in the stomacke, which raise vp vapours to trouble the head. Therefore you must with speede purge the noysome humours that are in the mouth of the stomacke. They may be purged out by drinking of warme water, if so be the patient can easily vomit: if not, he must thrust his finger or a fether into his throte, and so prouoke the stomacke to vomit. Note that yellow, or pale choler, because of his naturall lightnesse, doth readily ascend to the mouth of the stomack. But the humours that be flegmatique, or soure, or salt, do rather remaine in the middest of the stomacke, then in the mouth of it. It is best when such humours are in the bottome of the stomacke, for then they will easily auoid the stomacke & passe into the guts. It is worst of all when noysome humours do cleaue so fast to the filmes & tunicles of the stomacke, and doth so furre them, that they can scarcely be scoured out. Therfore if any humour doth furre the tunicles of the stomacke, minister *Hierapicra*, which is a soueraigne medecine therfore. And after purging, let the patient haue good meates easie of digestion, and wholsome for the stomacke. And for as much as lacke of good digestion, and weaknes of the mouth of the stomacke, be the greatest causes of increase of noysome humours in the stomacke, it must be prouided that good digestion be procured, and that the mouth of the stomacke may be strengthened by such medicines, as be astrictiue, and haue vertue to strengthen, whereof you shall find plenty hereafter in the third booke, and therefore it were superfluous to recite them here. As we haue in this Chapter spoken of headach caused of the stomacke, and referred the cure to the third booke, so vnderstand likewise if headach be caused of the disease of the liuer or splene, or any other member: for the affects of those members being cured, ceaseth the headach.

Cause.

Signa.

Curatio.

Hierapicra.

Note.

CHAP. X.

Of headach caused by drunkennesse.

THe causes and signes of drunkennesse are euident inough, chiefly hote wines, & strong drinks are causes thereof, for that they fill the braine with vapours, and that so much the more (as Galen sayd) if the braine be hote by nature: sometime also hote humours ascending to the head, do cause drunkennesse. The cure of drunkennesse generally consisteth in two points: that is in euacuation and refrigeratiõ. Therfore if the wine be yet vndigest, & do flow in the stomacke, cause him that hath the headach to vomit by drinking of hote water. But and if the headach do remaine after digestion, you must vse medicines, that do refrigerate, and driue backe vapours which ascend to the

Cause.

Curatio. Warme water, and a litle syr. acetose commixed, causeth vomit.

head. As is oyle of roſes alone, or mixed with vineger, or with iuyce of iuye, or coleworts. Alſo the leaues of coleworts ſteeped in warme water, and bound about the head do naturally reſiſt drunkenneſſe. Moreouer the broth of coleworts being eaten, is good for that purpoſe. To preſerue one frō drunkennes (as *Aetius* ſaith) let him eat v. or vij. bitter almonds faſting, or let him drinke wormwood wine firſt of all. But to take away drunkenneſſe that is preſent, giue the decoction of centory the leſſe to drinke, or harts horne, or the ſeed of veruaine boyled in water. You muſt haue a ſpeciall regard, and procure that the patient do ſleepe and reſt, which being done all day, at night bath him in a bath of ſweet water, & when thou haſt waſhed him, let him eate meats of good iuyce, but not ouer hote. Let therefore his food be ptiſan broth, ſouppings made of *alica*, bread dipped in water, reare egges, and ſuch like. For pot herbes lettuce is of good iuyce and cooleth, and coleworts drieth vp vapours. For drinke let him vſe water only, if he hath bene accuſtomed therto, and can well beare it, otherwiſe giue him ſmall drinke, or a litle ſmall white wine. After his meate, giue vnto him of a pomgranate, or a peare, or a quince, or raiſins. To conclude, let all his diet be meats of good iuyce, pleaſant to the ſtomack, and that driue away vapours. Let him abſtaine from dates, for their property is to cauſe headach. And if it chance that of the vapours and humours aſcending to the head, there remaine part of them impact and ſtuffed in the thinne pores, and ſo do cauſe headach after two or three dayes, then leaue oyle of roſes, & vſe firſt in ſteed of it, oyle of cammomill moderately warme. Afterward apply oyle of ireos. After that, if need require, you may apply things that heat more, commixing with the oyle of ireos, oyle of nard, or *oleum coſtinum*: or other oyles and ointments of that ſort.

Præſeruatio.

Victus ratio.

Dates.

Irium.
Nardinum.

CHAP. XI.

Of headach cauſed by feauers.

Cauſæ.

IF headach do moleſt thoſe that haue a feuer, you muſt diligently examine and conſider, whether the ſame began at the firſt beginning of the feuer, or whether it ſprong the feuer increaſing, for if the headach began not with the firſt fit of the feuer, but afterward while the feuer increaſed, and came nigh to the Criſis: then ſeeke not to remedie it, for it portendeth & foretelleth that vomit, or a decretorie fluxe of bloud at the noſe will follow ſhortly, as *Hippocrates* declareth in his booke of predictions, and Galen in his third booke *de Criſibus*, and in his firſt booke *ad Glauconem Cap. vltimo*: if the headach began at the firſt with the feuer, it commeth of vapours or humours diſperſed abroad through the greatnes of the feuer, and as it were boiling hot eleuate vp to the head, & partly alſo through weakeneſſe of the braine. Therfore if the paine do come of abundance of humours, you muſt let him bloud after the firſt or ſecond fit (if nothing prohibit it) eſpecially in luſtie bodies, & in ſuch as abound with bloud. Alſo you muſt draw the humours a contrarie way, and pull them backe by ſharpe clyſters, ſuch as ſhall be preſcribed in the Chap. of *Apoplexia*, & by often binding and much frication in the neather parts. Moreouer you may ſet cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head, or to the necke. You muſt apply to the head irrigations and ointments, that haue vertue to repell & driue backe

Cura.

backe from it, and afterward you muſt vſe diſcuſſiue medicines, laſt of all ſuch things as do ſtrengthen the braine. To repell and driue backe, vſe oyle of roſes, and other ſuch like as are rehearſed before in the 2. Chapt. vſe them in Sommer time, and in hote complexions, cold and mixed with a litle vineger, but in winter ſeaſon, and in cold complexions, apply them bloud warme. If the feuer be vehement, and ouer much watching do trouble the ſicke, vſe irrigatiõs made of poppie heads, houſelike, and ſuch like medicines as haue vertue to coole and prouoke ſleepe in this ſort: ℞. floures of violets, water lillies, and roſes. ana. M. j. hulled barley. ℥. j. heads of poppie. ℥. ß. houſelike. M. ß. ſeeth all theſe in ſufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, & make an embrocation. Or if the paine continue vehement, take greene leaues of henbane or poppie, with oyle of roſes, a litle vineger and crommes of bread, commixe them, and apply them to the forepart of the head, & to the forehead. When the braine is ſufficiẽtly cooled, then apply thoſe things which can heat the head againe, and ſo auoyd and diſperſe the humours that remaine. And therefore you may vſe oyles of cammomill, dill, or ireos, or decoctions of cammomill, or Althæa, or ſuch like. And if the humours be groſſe and tough, you may boyle with the aforeſaid things *Serpillum*, peniroyall, calamint, mints, or ſuch like. Laſt of all the head muſt be ſtrengthened by oyle of roſes, & ſuch like (that is) betonie, cammomill, melilot, &c. The reſt of the cure of headach cauſed through the vehemencie of the feuer, is to be ſought out in the treatiſe of feuers.

Embrochæ.

Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of inueterate headach.

CEphalæa both in Greeke and Latine is the name of headach which is exceeding painfull, continuing long, and hard to ceaſe, which vpon light occaſions hath very ſharpe and great fittes, ſo that the patient can neither abide noiſe, nor loud ſpeech, nor cleare light, nor drinking of wine, nor ſauours that fill thé braine, nor mouing, but he deſireth for the greatnes of the paine to ſit or lye quiet in the darke, ſuppoſing that his head were ſtroken with a hammer. Alſo ſome of them do feele thoſe things, that are about their head as though they were bruſed or racked. In many the paine proceedeth vnto the rootes of the eyes. This diſeaſe ſometime doth continue painfull alwayes, ſometime it hath fits and intermiſſions either ordinate or inordinate. For in ſome there is intermiſſion in the fits, as is in the falling ſicknes, ſo that for a time they ſeeme to be perfectly whole. This diſeaſe doth vexe women more then men, becauſe of their long haire. In ſome of them the filmes that couer the braine are pained; but in ſome, only the filme that couereth the ſcull is grieued. It is cauſed of abundance of bloud and other humours, or by the ſharpnes of humours or vapours contained within or without the ſcull, and inflaming the head, or it is cauſed through weaknes of the head. The paine that inuadeth the ſick with grauitie and heauineſſe, declareth plenitude and abundance of humours: if it come with pricking, gnawing & ſhooting, it betokeneth ſharpnes of humours or vapours: if it beate like the pulſes, it betokeneth inflãmation: if there be felt diſtenſion and bolning in the head without heauineſſe or beating, it declareth

Signa.

Cauſa.

Signa.

windines. But if there be beating with it, there is inflāmatiō in the filmes of the head: & if there be heauineſſe with the diſtenſion, then it declareth abundance of humours within the filmes. And if the paine be felt ſuperficially, as it were outward, then it betokeneth that the filme which couereth the ſcull is grieued. But if it be felt deepe within, the filmes of the braine are vexed. Note that thoſe that haue paine within the ſcull, they feele griefe at the rootes of their eyes, becauſe that the tunicles of the eyes haue their beginning of the filmes of the braine. And if ſo be that a putrified humour in the head do waxe hotter and hotter, then there is a feuer ioined with the headach. They alſo are vexed with a feuer, which haue headach cauſed by inflāmation. As for diet to be vſed in this griefe, you may eaſily preſcribe it out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes thereof: and therfore I omit it here willingly, leſt I ſhould vſe a fond repetition of one thing often. The cure doth differ according to the diuerſity of the cauſe. For if you find abundance of humours or vapours to be the cauſe, if it be engendred of plenitude of the whole body, you muſt begin with euacuation of the whole bodie. And therefore you muſt let him bloud on the *Cephalica* on the ſame ſide, if his ſtrength will ſuffer it, and no other thing let it. But if the head doth receiue the humours and vapours that do aſcend, for that it is weake: then you muſt pull backe the matter vnto the whole bodie, and ſo remedie the part affected. Therfore you muſt vſe very ſharpe clyſters, and bindings of the armes and legges, and many frictions of the neather parts, & ſometime alſo in this caſe you may let bloud in the arme. And if after that, bloud do ſeeme ſtill to abound, you may open a vaine in the noſthrils, and draw bloud from thence, as much as ſhall be requiſite. Shortly after you muſt purge the bodie with *Hierapicra*, or other things that are preſcribed in the former Chapters. After purging of the whole bodie, you may ſafely come to purging of the head, and in the end vſe medicines to ſtrengthen it. The head is to be purged with Gargariſmes, and with medicines put into the noſe, as iuyce of leekes or of *Cyclaminus*, or ſuch like, which be rehearſed before in the ſeuenth Chapter. To the head it ſelfe you muſt firſt apply things that do repell and driue backe: ſuch be, oyle made of vnripe oliues, and oyle of roſes alone, or applyed with vineger, alſo oyle made of poppie heads and of Iuie berries, and of greene mints, and ſuch like, whereof we haue ſpoken before. But note, if the humors that abound in the head be cold and crude, then apply the former medicines warme, but if the humours abounding be hote & cholericke, then apply thoſe medicines cold. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe medicines that do diſcuſſe and diſperſe humours, as be oyles of cammomill and dill, & ſuch like before rehearſed, but if the humours abounding be thicke and tough, boyle ſerpillum, or peniroyall, or calamint, or mints in oyle, and thou ſhalt extenuate them by applying thereof. Beſides, theſe things do ſtrengthen the part affected, and therefore they are to be vſed vntill the Cure be finiſhed. Aboue all other things veruaine doth diſperſe humours, and mightely corroborate the head, eſpecially being greene. Alſo being drie, and boyled in ale, rootes and all together with ſerpillum, it doth the like, if the head be annointed therewith. Moreouer if you boile veruaine alone in oyle, & do ſprinkle the head therewith, it helpeth all paine of the head of long continuance, if it were

Note.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Reuulſio.

Localia.

Note.

Verbenaca recta.

were cauſed of cold, or of groſſe and viſcous humors, as *Galen* witneſſeth. Lib. 2. *de comp. medicam. ſecundum Locos.* Alſo for the ſame it profiteth much to vſe oile, wherein ſowes, called in Latine *Millipeda* be boyled. And thus much of the cure of *Cephalea* comming of plenitude. As for the cure thereof comming of other cauſes, you may gather it out of the former Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Migrime.

HEmicrania is a painefull euill remaining in one halfe of the head, either on the right half or on the left, and is diſtinguiſhed by the ſeame that runneth a long in the skull, from the midde forehead to the hinder part of the head, this griefe in Engliſh is called the Migrime. This paine commeth often by fits, and in ſome the griefe is felt without the skull, in ſome within deepe in the braine, and in ſome other nigh to the temples in the muſcles there. This paine is cauſed by aſcending and flowing of many vapours or humours either hote or cold, either by the vaines, or by the arteries, or by both. Somtime they only proceed from the partes contained in the skull, that is, from the braine and his filmes, which thruſt out their excrements and ſuperfluities from them, and ſometime from the partes of the body beneath the head, which ſend vp corrupt vapours & humors from them ſelues to the braine. The ſignes wherby you ſhould know whether vapours or humors doe abound, and whether they be hot, or cold, are to be gathered out of the former chapters. As alſo to know in what part of the head the griefe is, whether within the skull or without, read the former chapter of *Cephalea*. Only this I adde here, that if in this diſeaſe, the filme that couereth the skull be affected, then is their paine ſo vehement, that they cannot ſuffer to be touched with ones hand, ſo that it ſeemeth the skinne it ſelfe is affected in this euill. As for their diet what they ſhould vſe, and what they ſhould eſchue, may readily be gathered and preſcribed out of the former Chapters, according to the diuerſity of cauſes: but ſpecially let the patient refraine from ſuch thinges as doe ſend aboundance of ſharpe vapours vp to the head, as be garlicke, oynions, muſtard, radiſh rootes and ſuch like. The cure is diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. And therfore when you wil cure the migrime, conſider diligétly firſt whether the patient needeth bloudletting or purging. For if the griefe come through plenitude and abundance of bloud and humors, then cut the *Cephalica* in the arme on the ſame ſide that the grief is: but if the Migrime be cauſed of aboundance of one humor, then purge that humor by conuenient medicins, which are preſcribed in the former chapters. The whole body being purged, you may come to local & outward medicins, & firſt cauſe the patient either with his owne fingers, or with a linnen cloth, to rubbe and chafe the halfe of his forehead which is grieued, and ſpecially about the muſcles of his temples, vntil it be red and hote, and this muſt be done before the fit of paine commeth. After the fit (as *Galen* teacheth in the end of his ſecond book *De compoſitione medicamẽtorum ſecundum locos*) you muſt apply medicins which of the old Phiſitiãs were called *Hemicrania*, for that they were vſed for the migrime: noting this alwaies, that if with the paine there were much heat felt, then you ought to apply ſuch things as would ſomewhat coole. But

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Localia.

if there were no euident heat felt, then vse those things that are very hot. But you must commixe with either of these, somewhat that is restrictiue, and hath vertue to corroborate and strengthen. This ointment following is a very good remedy in a cold affect. ℞. of oiles of dill and Ireos. ana ℥ ß. of white pepper, and serpillum. ana. ℈ j ß. of *Castoreum*. ℈ j. of *Euphorbium*. ℈ ß. of waxe. q ß. and make an ointment to be applied vpon the halfe of the forehead and the muscle of the temples. Also in this case it profiteth much to poure this oile following into the eare. ℞. Sweete oyle oliue. ℥ j. *Euphorbium*. ℈ j. commixe them and droppe one droppe into the eare warme. You may put in more *Euphorbium* or lesse according as the body is quicke or dull in sense: but beware you vse not this medicine in those that haue the migrime engendred of hote vapours or humours. *Aetius* saith that *Euphorbium* dissolued in vineger, and applied to the left side of the head, if the right side be grieued, or contrariwise on the right side when the paine is on the left side, doth of a certaine hid propertie helpe the migrime. The same author also saith, that earth wormes beaten to powder, and applied to the griefe, as also the flesh of snailes bruised and applied doth profite much. The kernels of peaches bruised and applied vppon the griefe (as report hath bene) doth profit much. *Marcellus* saith that the dung of a goat stamped and commixed with vineger squilliticke, if the forehead and temples be annointed therewith, it ceaseth the paine of the migrime for euer. Also his counsell is, if there be sodaine paine of the migrime, take frankensence, mirrhe, and an egge, beat them together and apply that to the forehead and temples. If the migrime be caused of hote humours or vapours, then vse those remedies which we prescribed before in the cure of headach cõming of heate or of cholericke humours. Here I thinke it requisite to prescribe certaine pilles, good to be vsed against inueterate headach and the migrime. First if choller abound ℞ powder of *Hiera simplex Galeni*. ℥ ij. *pilularum arabicarum*. ℥ iij. trochiskes of *mirabolanes citrinæ*. ℥ j. ß. reubarbe. ℥ j. spicknard. ℈ j. cõmixe them with sirupe of violets, and reserue the composition. When neede requireth minister. ℥ j. or. ℈ iiij. fiue or sixe houres after supper, and let the patient sleepe vpon it. This you may do once in ten daies, or once in fifteene daies at all times (sommer excepted.) But if fleume aboundeth, make your pilles thus. ℞. of Agaricke trochiscate. ℥ iiij. *pilulæ arabicæ*, and *Hiera simplex. Gal.* ana. ℥ j. ß. floures of stæchados, and trochiskes of mirabolanes chebulorum. ana. ℥ j. with sirupe of stæchados and oximel, commixe them, and when occasion serueth, minister ℥ j. or. ℈ iiij. at each time in forme abouesaied. But if melancholy be cause of the migrime, ℞. of the aforesaid *Pilulæ arabicæ*. ℥ ij. of powder of sene and *Epithimum*. ana. ℥ ij. ß. of *Hiera simplex. Gal.* ℥ j. ß. of trochiskes of *Mirabolanes indorum*. ℈ iiij. with sirupe of fumitory and balme water make pilles, and when neede requireth, minister them in forme aforesaid.

Vnguentum.

Oleum.

Note.

Pilulæ.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Vertigo and swimming in the head.

THat which the Latines call Vertigo, is a disease, wherein the patient doth imagine that his head is turned roũd about. There is another disease somwhat like vnto this, which in Latin is called, *Tenebricosa Vertigo*, & that is when the

the patient doth think that all that he ſeeth turneth about, and ſodainly with it, his ſight faileth him, he ſuppoſing that he is compaſſed about with miſt and darknes. It is commonly of the Phiſitians called *Scotoma*; *Fuſchius* doth think that they erre greatly, that make a difference betweene the former kinds, but it may be confirmed out of good authors Hippocrates, Galen and others. Both the aforeſaid kinds be engendred after one ſort, and that is through the inordinate mouing of windy vapours and ſpirites, contained in certaine partes of the braine. This diſeaſe is cauſed either of the braine it ſelfe being diſtépured and euill affected, or of the mouth of the ſtomacke offending the braine. The braine it ſelfe is affected euill, when a groſſe and tough humor is contained in it, from whence a vaporous and windy ſpirit being reſolued by weake heat, is moued inordinatly about in the braine. The mouth of the ſtomacke doth affect the braine, when through corrupt humours being gathered aboundantly in it, vapours and windy exhalations are caried vp to the braine, and ſo turne about the animall ſpirits contained in it. Thoſe that are troubled with this diſeaſe, a darknes and miſt appeareth before the eyes vpon euery light occaſion, ſpecially if they turne about. For it chanceth to them by turning once about, as it doth to other when they turne often, & therefore the patient many times fals downe. Alſo it doth aſtonie him, if he ſee another man, or a wheele, or any ſuch thing turne about, alſo if he ſee whirle pooles in the water turne about: for the viſuall ſpirits beholding a wheele that turneth about, or any ſuch like thing, doth alſo turne about in like ſort, and ſo the mouing of the humour and the ſpirits are troubled vnequall and inordinate. When this diſeaſe doth proceed of the braine being euill affected, then there proceedeth ſound of the eares, vehement paine in the head, and heauines therin. Alſo the ſmelling and the other ſenſes proceeding from the head are hurt. Their fit is then chiefly, when the Sunne doth heate them, or when their head is hote by ſome other meanes, and ſo the humours being diſſolued, do turne about in the braine. When the diſeaſe proceedeth from the mouth of the ſtomack, then they feele before it, a gnawing in the ſtomacke, as it were the hart burne, & a diſpoſition to vomit. This diſeaſe may be diſcerned from the falling ſickneſſe, for that this doth neither take away the ſenſes from the patient, nor it cauſeth not the crampe and writhing of members in the fit. This diſeaſe is not to be lightly eſteemed, for the *Vertigo* (as Galen ſaith) is nigh to the falling ſickneſſe and the *Apoplexie*, and therefore it would be wel looked to. For the *Vertigo* and *Scotoma* will quickly be changed into pernitious diſeaſes, for that they are very nigh to them, ſpecially to the falling ſickneſſe and the *Apoplexie*. And if thoſe things that the patient doth imagine to ſee before his eyes, appeare bloudie and reddiſh, he is apt to fall into madnes, but thoſe that ſeeme to ſee purple colours, are diſpoſed to the falling ſickneſs. The *Scotoma* or darke *Vertigo* becõmeth moſt vehement in winter, or in the beginning of the ſpring. Beſides in many it is a ſigne that the falling ſickneſſe will follow. And many do vſe to call it a litle Epilepſie. As concerning diet: let the patient remaine in an ayer, that is temperate, pure, bright, and cleare, and let him eſchue groſſe & cloudy ayer. Let him eſchue winds, eſpecially South winds: let him alſo auoyd the beames of the Sunne & the Moone: as alſo let him not behold things that moue ſwiftly,

Cauſe.

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Victus ratio.

as running waters, or things that turne about, as wheeles, and ſuch like, or to looke into deepe pits is euill for him. Let him eate meates of good iuyce, and of eaſy digeſtion, and ſuch as engender no windines, as partrich, capon, pheſant, chicken, veale, ſealy fiſhes, and ſuch like, that be eaſie of digeſtion. And let him vſe to eate but moderatly of them, for ſatiety, as alſo long faſting is not good for him. He muſt eſchue all things that cauſe vapours to aſcend into the head, as oynions, garlicke, leekes and ſuch like. And therefore if he drinke wine, let it not be very old, ſmal white wine may be permitted him. After meat it is good for him to eate ſome reſtrictiue thing to ſtop the vapours that they aſcend not to the head, & that ſpecially if the ſtomack be cauſe of this diſeaſe. Let his exerciſe be moderate, let him eſchue ſleepe of the day, neither let him ſleepe within two houres after meate. Let not the place be too hote where he ſleepeth, nor let him not keepe his head too hote. In his exerciſes, let him not ſtir his head much. And therfore it is good for him to vſe frictiõs oftẽ, ſpecialy in the morning before he riſeth, begin at the vpper parts, and end with the nether. He muſt refraine from perturbations and affections of the minde, ſpecially from anger, feare, and ſadnes, as alſo from loud crying, and ſinging. Carnall copulation is not good for him. If he hath not a ſtoole once in a day, you muſt helpe nature either by cliſter or ſuppoſitary. For the cure if the fit be preſent, you muſt reuiue the patient againe with ſweete and odoriferous ſmels, & with frictions and ſuch like. At which time alſo if neede be, you may vſe a ſuppoſitary or a cliſter. Afterward if the party be ſtrong, and no other impedimẽt preſent, let him bloud on the *Cephalica* vaine, whether it be the beginning of the diſeaſe or otherwiſe. But take heed that you draw not much bloud at once, for the patient will quickly fall through euery light occaſion. Therefore you muſt draw away the bloud at ſundry times vntil you haue ſufficient. But if any thing do hinder you from bloud letting, firſt you muſt purge him with a ſharp cliſter, whereof you ſhall haue example afterward in the chap. of *Apoplexy*. Afterward miniſter a purgation according as the humour abounding doth require. But forget not firſt to vſe a preparatiue, when the whole body is ſufficiently purged, you muſt vſe locall things to the head, and firſt apply cupping glaſſes to the hinder part of the head with ſcarification. Afterward vſe to miniſter gargariſmes, and ſternutations to draw reume from the head. Poure into the noſe iuyce of chickweed, beets or cyclaminus. Alſo nitrum beaten with nigella and mixed with old oyle, purgeth well by the noſthrils. Alſo odours made of the decoction of marioram, hiſope, & floures of ſtæchados, a litle *Caſtoreum*, muske, and vineger being added is good. After that let the patient enter into a bath, ſpecially a naturall bath that is of alume, and if his head be ouer hote in the bath, you muſt coole it often with oile of roſes and vineger applied in clothes to it, ſpecially on the fore part of the head, and about the forehead and the temples. And if the diſeaſe doe ceaſe by theſe remedies, then vſe no other. But if it continue ſtill, you muſt cut the arteries that be nigh the temples aboue the eares, ſpecially if the diſeaſe come of hote vapours aſcending to the braine by the arteries. And this is not onely the precept of *Galen*, but alſo of *AEtius* and *Paulus AEgineta*. How the arteries ſhould be cut you ſhall learne of the ſaide *AEgineta* in his 6. booke and 4. Chapter. Albeit *Galen* affirmeth that ſome

Curatio.

Vena ſectio.

Localia.

ſome haue not bene helped by cutting of the arteries, partly for that the hote and vaporous ſpirits doe ſometime aſcend by deeper arteries into the braine, and partly for that a windy ſpirit may be engendred by an inequall diſtemper of the braine. And therfore if the diſeaſe be cauſed by any of theſe meanes before reherſed, the patient ſhall feele ſmall eaſe or none by cutting of the arteries. And therfore be diligent to enquire of the aforeſaid cauſes, before you cut the arteries. It profiteth much to apply this cauterie behind the eares. ℞. of cantarides, their heads, wings and legs being caſt away. ℥ j. ſharp leauen. ℥ ß. with vineger and *aqua vitæ*, commixe them and apply them. If the vertigo be cauſed by the conſent of the ſtomak (that is) if humors cõtained in the mouth of the ſtomacke, doe ſend vp vapours to the braine, and ſo cauſe the vertigo: it muſt be cured by vomit, which you ſhall prouoke in this ſort. ℞. of dill a handfull, ſeed of radiſh and rapes. ana. ℥ ij. roots of radiſh. ℥ ß. boile them in ſufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it & put therto *oximell ſcilliticum*. ℥ j. ß. commixe them and make a potion, and miniſter it blood warm after meat immediatly. & if this ſuffice not, it is good to purge him with *Hierapicra Galeni*: or with pilles that be good for the ſtomacke, called *ſtomachicæ* for that cauſe, or with decoction of mirabolanes citrine or chebuli, or with manna, or ſyrup of roſes ſolutiue, according to the diuerſity of the humour abounding. Let the patient vſe commonly after meat to eat ſome reſtrictiue thing that will cloſe the mouth of the ſtomacke, & hinder the aſcending of vapors vp to the head, as is *Diacotoneon ſine ſpeciebus*, & quinces or reſtrictiue peares, or ſuch like. *Marcellus* ſaith, the iuyce of blacke beetes annointed vpon the temples helpeth the vertigo. Alſo if ſothernwood be boyled in wine, or in oximell, and drunke warme, it is a moſt effectuall remedie to cure it perfectly.

Cauterium.

Cure of the Vertigo that commeth of the ſtomacke.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XV.

Of the freneſie.

PHRENETIS in Greeke and in Latine is a diſeaſe, wherein the minde is hurt, and doth differ onely from madneſſe, which is called in Greeke and Latine *Melancholia*, or *Mania*, for that a feuer is ioyned with the freneſie, and therfore the freneſie may be called a continuall madnes and fury ioyned with a ſharp feuer. Galen ſaith that the frenſie is an inflammation of the braine or of the filmes therof. *Aetius* ſaith that it is an inflammation of the filmes of the braine with an acute feuer, cauſing raging and vexation of the mind. There be three kinds of freneſies (as Galen doth witneſſe in his fourth book *de locis affectis. cap.* 40.) according to the internall ſenſes, which be three in number, that is imagination, cogitation and memorie, which may ſeuerally be hurt. Two of thoſe kinds be ſimple, and the third is compounded of thoſe two. For ſome be freneticke, which can iudge rightly of thoſe things that they ſee as touching common ſenſe and imagination, and yet in cogitation and fantaſie they erre from naturall iudgement. Some other being freneticke are not deceiued in cogitation and reaſon, but only in imagination they erre. There be other ſome frenetick which do erre both in ſenſe and cogitation (that is) both in imagination and reaſon, and doe therewith alſo looſe their memorie. The freneſie is cauſed either of abundance of blood, or of choler, occupying the brain or the

Three kindes of freneſies.

Cauſe.

filmes therof. And if the choller wherof the diſeaſe engendreth be burnt, thē the freneſie is moſt vehement & more pernitious then any other. Thoſe that be frenticke haue a continuall feuer, & be madde, for the moſt part they can not ſleepe. Somtime they haue troubleſome ſleepes, ſo that they riſe vp, and leap, and cry out furiouſly, they babble words without order or ſenſe, being aſked a queſtion, they anſwer not directly, or at the leaſt raſhly, and that with loud voice, eſpecially if you ſpeak gently to them. Their eyes be bloodſhotten and bleared, they rub them often, ſometime they are dry and ſomtime full of ſharp teares. Their tong is rough, and blood will often drop out at their noſe. Moreouer they pull motes & flocks from the bedding & clothes about them. Their pulſes be ſmall & weake, and ſomewhat hard & ſinowy, they fetch their breath but ſeldome. Note that they which haue the freneſy cauſed of bloud, they laugh in their madnes. But thoſe that be frētick through choler, do rage furiouſly, ſo that they cannot be ruled without bands, & ſuch do vſe to forget all things that they doe or ſaye, ſo that ſome of them, when they require the chamber pot, doe forthwith forget to make vrine, or when they haue done it, they remember not to reſtore the veſſell again. As touching the prognoſtication of this diſeaſe, Galen and all other learned Phiſitions do confeſſe that it is moſt ſharp & moſt perilous, and is indeed vncurable & deadly for the moſt part. *Hippocrates* ſaith in his 72, aphoriſme of his fourth booke, that vrine white & cleare in thoſe that do raue, is a very euill and deadly token. Concerning diet let the ſicke be vſed in this ſort. If it be winter, let him lie in a warme place, if it be sōmer, let his lodging be in a coole place, let the aier & light be moderate, and let there not be diuerſe pictures in the place. And for that ſome be troubled with the light, and ſome with darknes, it is beſt to trie them in both, and to lay him in the light, which is afraid of darknes, and contrary he that is offended at the light let him be in a dark place. But if the ſicke perſon do find no difference in the places, then, if he be ſtrong, let him haue light, if weake, keep him in a darke place. Let his deareſt frends come to him, & let thē ſomtime ſpeake gently & ſoftly vnto him, & ſometime rebuke him ſharply. Let his meate at the firſt be ptiſan broth, or husked barley boiled, or the crumme of bread often dipped in *aqua mulſa* (that is) water and hony ſodden together, or in hony of roſes. Boile in his brothes endiue, ſuccory, lettuſe, mallowes, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole and moiſten. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you may giue him ſcaly fiſhes, ſuch as liue in grauelly riuers. If he be very hote within, you may giue him pomegranats and cheries. Let his drinke be water, wherin a litle Cinamon or barly hath bene boyled; you may commixe with it ſirupe of violettes, or of roſes or of water lillies. But beware you giue them not too much at once, nor oftentimes, but ſeldome, and litle at once. When ſignes of concoction appeare in the vrine, & the vehemency of the feuer is ſlaked, if then the ſicke do lacke ſtrength, you may giue him ſmall ale. Moreouer let the ſicke be kept quiet without mouing as much as is poſſible; if he be rich let ſeruants hold him, if poore, bind him, for inordinate mouing diminiſheth ſtrength. Alſo a bath of ſweet water is good for him, if the body be dry and rimpled, but he muſt vſe it blood warme. For ſo it cooleth & moiſteneth, and by that meanes it cureth the drines & ouermuch watching, but

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Victus ratio.

but take heed you vse not bathing before the body be purged. Moreouer perturbations of the mind do hurt frentick persons exceedingly,& therfore you must suffer them to vse nothing that will make them sad, or engender choller in thē. For the cure,if the strength of the patiēt will suffer,let him bleed forthwith,for there is none so present a helpe. You must cut the vttermost veine of the arme called *Cephalica*,and if that appeare not,take the middle veine,and draw out as much blood as strength will suffer. But take heed you let him not bleed vntill he sound,as many rashly doe,for it is better to take lesse then you should doe, the body being much weakened by vehement motion. You must take good heed,least the sicke doe priuily take away the band off his arme,or loose it. Afterward also you may strike the veine in the midst of the forehead. But if age or strength doe forbid blood letting, then vse cupping with scarification,behind in the necke or on the back bone, which be profitable,for that they draw back the humors that flow to the braine. For that purpose also clisters are specially to be vsed made in this sort. ℞. Mallow leaues,violet leaues, endiue,& lettuce .ana. *M*.j. of barley decorticate. ℥.j.sebesten.num.11. seeds of gourdes, melons & cucumbers.ana .℥.iij seeth all these in sufficiēt quantity of water,vntill the third part be consumed,then straine it & take of the decoction. ℥ xij.of *casia fistula* newly drawen. ℥.j.ß.of *mell rosarum*. ℥.j.of oile of violets. ℥ iij.of salt. ℥.j.ß.com mixe them all & make a clister. If you will haue it purge more strongly,put to it of *Hierapicra*,or of *Electuariū de succo rosarū* ℥.ß. Binding of the extreme parts of the body profit much to diuert the humors frō the head. Also *Mathiolus* doth greatly cōmend *stubiū* with the conserues of roses,& I my self haue proued it in this order to be most excellēt as followeth ℞.g.12.made in very fine pouder,& put it into claret wine. ℥ iiij.& let it stand hours.30.& euery 6 or 7 houre shake it:and at the 30 hours end,poure it from the pouder,& let him drink it with a litle sugar. This doth mightily purge the superfluous humors frō the head,as also to rub the feet with salt & vineger & such like. You must sprinkle the hed with oile of roses,or vineger of roses being bloud warme. For the braine or his filmes being inflamed,cannot safely abide actuall cold,nor vehement heat. For the same purpose also you may vse iuyce of nightshade, & of plantain, or the distilled waters of thē,or such like herbs. If the euill be very vehement,moistē his face continually with oile of water, wherin the tops of poppy haue bin soddē. You may also vse odors to his nose of roses,violets,water lillies,& such like. Also annoint his nosthrils within and his forhead ẇ the iuyce of the foresaid hearbs. For you must endeuor to astonie & dull the brain, which burneth extremely by cooling it. If the sick watch ouermuch,then you must apply such things as do prouoke sleep,as this ointment following or such like. ℞. *Vnguenti populeō*. ℥.ij.oile of violets. ℥ iij.seed of henbane,& bark of mandrak roots.ana ℈.ß.of opium g.ij.of saffrō.g.iij.vineger a litle,white wax as much as is sufficient.make an ointment & annoint the temples therwith. Also this embrocation may be vsed blud warme to the head, ℞.flours of violets,red roses, & water lillies.ana. *M*.j. barley decorticate.℥.j. seeds of white popy.℥.ij.seeds of letuce.℥.iij. seeth thē in sufficient quantity of water vnto the third part,& make an embrocatiō. You shall make the decoctiō of more force,if you ad to it leaues of henbane,nightshade, poppy heads,

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cliſter.

A purging potion.

Localia.

Vnguentum.

Embrocha.

mandrak apples,or roots,& a litle vineger. You may alſo lay vnder his pillow, poppy heades, or mandrake apples. You may alſo for the ſame purpoſe, giue him to drink water wherin poppy or henbane ſeed hath bene ſodden, or ſome ſomnoriferous compound,as is regines *Nicolai*,or *philonium*, or ſuch like, in miniſtring whereof,you muſt obſerue,that you giue them not in the vehemency of the fit,but in the declining therof. Beſides note that you muſt eſchue continuall vſe of ſtupefactiue medicines aſwell inwardly as outwardly alſo. For in this diſeaſe,by ouermuch cooling you may turne the freneſie into a lethargie, wherby you may cauſe him to ſleepe ſo,that you can awake him no more. Alſo if the patient be weake,beware how you miniſter ſtupefactiue things to prouoke ſleepe,for in ſuch as be weake(as *Trallianus* ſaith)ſomnoriferous potions doe no ſmall hurte, and ſometime they kill. At the laſt when the diſeaſe is aſwaged,and waxeth more gentle, which for the moſt part chaunceth the third day:you may apply diſcuſſiue medicins which haue vertue to diſperſe the remnant of the diſeaſe. And for that purpoſe you may apply the aforeſaid embrocation, adding to it before, floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, marſh mallowes and ſuch like. There be ſome that at that time (the diſeaſe declining,) doe apply to the head,hennes or whelpes cut in the middeſt, or the loungs of a wether hote. But take good heede that no ſuch thing be applied in the beginning of the diſeaſe,or in the vehemencie therof, for ſo you ſhould increaſe the inflammation and the feuer, and make the ſick in more perill. Moreouer if the euill continue long,you may boile in the embrocation *ſerpillum* that is,wild tyme or ſauery. Alſo in the declination of the inflāmation(as *Galen* teacheth) you may vſe *Caſtoreum*,for that it is of ſubtil ſubſtance,and will worke his force through the ſcul. When the frentick perſon is recouered,let him eſchue drūkennes,idlenes,variety and corruption of meates, and eſpecially the burning heat of the ſunne. Hereby you may learne not onely the cure of the freneſie, but alſo a remedie againſt immoderate watching, and rauing in any ſorte engendred by feuers,when the patient is ſo vexed by them,(although they come by conſent,and be but accidents of the feuers) that it is neceſſarie to remedie them leaſt the braine in time be thereby affected.

Diſcutientia.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Lethargie.

LEthargus in Greeke and in Latin alſo, is a diſeaſe contrary to the frenſie for it cauſeth ſluggiſhnes & an inexpugnable deſire of ſleeping,ſome call this diſeaſe in Latin *Veternus*. They that be take̅ with this diſeaſe, do forget all things,whereupon it hath that name. For *Lethe* in Greeke is forgetfulnes, and *Arges* is ſlothfull or dull, ſo that *Lethargus* is nothing elſe but a dull obliuion, and therefore may be called in Latine *Obliuio iners*. It is cauſed of fleume,which cooleth the braine ouermuch,and moiſtneth it, and thereby prouoketh ſleep. The fleume doth putrify in the brain,& therby cauſeth a feuer which is alwaies annexed with this diſeaſe(as *Galen* teſtifieth in his 13. booke de *Methodo medendi*. Alſo they haue alwayes a profound and dead ſleep. Their pulſe is great,and ſtriketh ſeldome,and is watery(that is)it beateth as it were full of water. They fetch their breath ſeldome & weakly, they are contnually ſluggiſh & ſleepy, and can ſcarcely by any meanes be compelled to anſwer. They will ſomtime open

λήθη.
ἀργὸς.
Cauſæ.

Signa.

open their eyes,if you cry loud to them,and ſhut them again forthwith, they are forgetfull and do raue. They gape and gaſpe often, and ſometime keepe their mouth open ſtill, as though they had forgotten to ſhut it.Ofte̅ times being required to make water,& taking the chamber veſſell,they forget to make vrine. For the moſt part their egeſtions be liquide: but contrariwiſe many are coſtiue. Their vrine is like beaſtes vrine. Some of them do tremble and ſweat all ouer.Let the chamber wherin the ſicke doth lie be light and warm. Let his meates be ſuch as doe extenuate, cut, and dry, and let them be ſeaſoned with *apium*,anyſe, commin, pepper,cinamon cloues, and ſuch like. Let the ſick eat birdes that liue vpon mountaines,and chickens,partrich,thruſh and ſuch like. For pot herbs let him vſe *Aſparagus*, fennell, percely, and ſuch like. Alſo giue him broth made with barley or oatmeale,or *alica*, with oximell or peniroyall. Let his drinke be hidromel (that is) water and hony ſodden together, mead or waterie, thin white wine being aſtringent. After he hath eaten, it is not amiſſe to bind the extreme partes for a certaine ſpace,that the vapours do not aſcend to the head. For the cure(if ſtrength permit,and nothing elſe doe let) it is good forthwith to let blood. You muſt cut the middle veine or the inward veine of the arme, and draw out as much blood as ſtrength will permit. But if you may not ſafely let blud, the̅ muſt the bowels be ſcoured with ſharp cliſters, wherof you ſhal find examples in the chapter of Apoplexia. Afterward the humour abounding muſt be prepared with decoction of Hyſop in hony & water, or with time, peneroyall, *mel roſarum*,or oximell commixed with ſyrupe of borage, or inſuſion of roſes, and waters of hyſope, betony, marioram, & borage. And afterward purge him with ſome medicine that will expell fleume, wherof you ſhall find examples in the next Chap. following. In the meane ſeaſon apply to the head *oxyrhodium*(that is)vineger of roſes,and that in the beginning, for the humour is to be repelled,& driuen back from the head, whatſoeuer it be.For the which purpoſe alſo,it is good to vſe frictions with pellitory,pepper, ſalt & vineger & bindings of the extreme partes. Moreouer apply to his noſethrils odours which will awake him,as be theſe, *Caſtoreum*, the ſnuffe of a candle quenched,tarre, galbanum, ſulphur, harts horne, ſothernwood, or goates horne burnt a litle,and holden to the noſethrils. You may pricke their legges, and their extreme parts,and pull them by the haire violently to awake them. Alſo you may boile tyme,peniroyall,and origan in vineger, and hold that decoction to the noſe of the ſick, that the fume aſcending to the braine may cut, & deuide the tough humours. Alſo annoint the pallat of the mouth with ſtrong and ſharp medicins,as with muſtard and hony, *mithridatum*,theriaca, powder of pellitory. And you muſt endeuour to plucke out the fleume that ſticketh there with your finger. Somtime alſo you may prouoke ſneeſing with *Caſtoreū*, or pepper,or *Eleborus*, and if they can vſe it, let them gargariſe. And if by this meanes the diſeaſe be not diſſolued,then ſhaue the head, and apply to it bags of ſalt or,milium, or ſuch like. Or make this decoction following, & let it runne on high vpon the fore part of the head. ℞. wilde tyme, hyſope & ſauery with a litle *Caſtoreum*, and boile them in oile & vineger,and vſe it. Moreouer it profiteth to apply a ſinapiſmus,made of figges and muſtard ſeed beaten together with vineger. Afterward you muſt apply to the hinder part of the head cup-

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Localia.

ping glasses with great flame, about the first and second ioint of the neck, partly easily and partly with scarification. Also the head must be annointed with castoreum. (And as *Trallianus* saith) *Castoreum* drunke with oximel an houre before the fit, is exceeding good: for (as he saith) he hath knowne many by that one medicine restored to life and health. You may minister. ℥. j. therof with. ℥. j. of oximel, or with so much white wine astringent, or with *aqua mulsa*. Besides you must often prouoke nature to expell excrementes with clisters and such things that prouoke vrine. You must annoint the share with oile of rew, wherin a litle *Castoreum* is mixed, you must giue him in drinke such things as do extenuat and cut grosse and clammy humors, as be the decoctions of Apium, fennell, maidenhaire and such like. You must admonish the sicke to swallow down such potions often, and therefore you may drop it into his mouth with a suckling boxe. In the lethargy it continueth long; if strength do permit you may minister *Hiera ex colocynthide*, and prouoke him to sneese with the medicines aforenamed. At the last when the disease beginneth to decline, gestation on horsebacke, or in a litter is profitable, and bathing is exceeding good at that time, but the head of the sicke may not be wet by any meanes. And if the sicke for lacke of strength cannot abide the heat of the bath: at the least let him be washed at home in a vessell of warme water. Let him be scoured in the bathe with sharpe sope, as with wine lies burnt, with mustard seed, pellitory, pepper, laurell berries, quicke lime, adding double as much nitrum.

Castoreum.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Memory lost.

Causa.

Memoria deperdita, the losse of memory chanceth sometime alone, and sometime reason is hurt with it. It is caused in the lethargy and other soporiferous diseases. It commeth to passe also that the soporiferous diseases being ended, there ensueth forgetfulnes, Which when it chanceth, then a colde distempure is the cause that the memory is perished or grieuously hurt. This coldnes hath sometimes moistnes ioyned with it, and somerime drines: sometime any one of the former distempures may cause this disease alone. Therefore the Phisition must diligētly discerne the causes. The causes of this disease be either external or internal; if they be internal, either abundāce of fleume, or melancholy is cause of it. If there be no signes of those humors abounding, then must it needes come of some externall cause, especially if it come not through extreme old age. The externall causes you may learne by relation of the sicke, and those that are about him, as if any disease be newly passed, and so turned into obliuion, or if medicins were ministred inwardly, or applyed outwardly to the head, which haue vertue to coole extreamely. Or if it came of immoderate labour with study & watching or such like. If the memory be but a little hurt, it betokeneth that the braine is but litle cooled. If reason be lost together with the memory, then the affect is called *Fatuitas* or *stultitia*, (that is) foolishnes or doltishnes, & both these do come of one dispositiō, but that is more vehement where both are hurt. As touching signes, if only a dry distempure occupying the hinder part of the head do cause this euil, then ouermuch watching troubleth the sick. If only a moist distemper be cause of it, then they are heauy and enclined to sleepe, and their sleeps be long and troublesome. If

Signa.

cold

cold be ioyned with moisture, it ingendreth the lethargy and *Carus*, wherof we will entreate in the next Chapter. Therefore in them that haue loſt their memory you muſt obſerue their ſleeps, whether they be ouerſleepy, or in a mean, or ſleepe not at all, for ſo ſhall you finde what diſtempure doth moſt abound. Beſides you muſt marke whether they auoid any thing at the noſe, or whether any thing diſtill from the head by their mouth, or whether thoſe parts be altogether dry. For by them you may likewiſe coniecture the diſtempure abounding. And if fleume be cauſe of the euil, you ſhal perceiue it not only by immoderate ſleepe, and abundance of excrements deſcending from the braine (as is aforeſaid) but alſo by the diſpoſition of the ſicke, by his age, & his cõplexion, by the time of the yere, the region, the ſtate of the aire, & the diet that he vſed before. For all thoſe or the moſt part of them encline to cold & moiſture. Likewiſe if melancholy abounding be cauſe of the diſeaſe, you ſhal know it for that the ſicke is not ſleepy at all, neither doth he auoid any excrements at all from the braine: beſides the ſtate of his body and all other circumſtances aboue rehearſed encline to colde & drineſſe. His diet muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of the cauſes. But whatſocuer the cauſe be, let the aire that the ſicke remaineth in, be inclining to heat, and let his lodging be light, let not his windowes be north nor ſouth, for the one cooleth and the other filleth the head. Let him eſchue much ſleepe, ſpecially in the day time, & vpon a full ſtomack. But note, if the diſeaſe be cauſed of a cold & moiſt diſtempure, then the whole order of his diet muſt be hote and dry. But if the cauſe be cold and dry, then muſt the diet be altogether ſuch as wil heat and moiſten. As touching the cure if loſſe of memory be cauſed by vehement purgations, or other immoderat euacuations, or by ſounding often, & ſo ouermuch drines do hurt the memory, then miniſter no medicines, but onely reſtore the body by good diet. For the body being corroborat, and ſtrength renued, the memory will come againe. If you require to know what things are requiſit for ſuch a diet, you ſhall find it in the Chapter of the feuer hectike. If the memory be loſt by extreme age, then phiſick wil nothing auail. But only they muſt content thẽſelues with diet conuenient: but if the memory faile ſodainly, the other mẽbers of the body being ſafe, then the falling ſicknes is to be feared, or the palſey, or the *Apoplexy*. And therfore in ſuch a caſe you muſt prouide diligently by al meanes, that no ſuch thing chãce as is to be fered. You may preuẽt thoſe diſeaſes by the ſame remedies that you would vſe in the cure of them being preſent. And if the memory faile by means of other diſeaſes, as through the lethargy or peſtilence, thẽ medicins for cure therof are to be vſed. The whole ſcope of curing the diſeaſe, if it come only of a cold diſtẽper of the braine cõſiſteth in heating. You muſt therfore miniſter medicins that haue vertue to heat aſwel inwardly as outwardly. Outwardly you muſt annoint the head with warme oile, & that in ſommer. In winter annoint it with oil of Ireos cõmixed with ſharp vineger, & ſomtime boil wild time, & calamint, & ſuch like in the oile, & ſo vſe it. Some do ad to it pepper, & laurel beries. Alſo *Caſtoreum* is profitable being cõmixed with oile, & annointed ẏpõ the hinder part of the head. Alſo this ointmẽt is very good. ℞ of oile made of tile ſtones, called *Oleũ de Lateribus*, & oile of *Caſtoreũ*. ana ℥ ß. roots of accorus, & valerian ana. ℈. j. pellitory & rew of ech. ℈. j. ß. with waxe ſuffi-

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Sacculus. cient make an ointment, and annoint the hinder part of the head therewith being shauen, and apply this quilt vpon it. ℞. floures of rosemary, balme, and lauender. ana. *M.* ß. floures of Elder. *M.* j. stæchas. ℥. iij. nutmegges, wood of aloes, and mace. ana. ℈. j. powder them, and stich them in silke, and make a quilt. You may make many such like medicines by examples in other Chapters. You may minister inwardly conserues of the floures of betony, rosemary, lauender, spicknard & balme, adding to them pepper, Cloues, Cinamon, & such like odoraments. If memory be lost by cold and moistnes ioyned together, minister *Hierapicra*, which wil purge out nothing that is good, but only that which is noisome. Afterwardes let him vse gargarises, sternutations, and whatsoeuer doth purge by the mouth and the nose. Also a sinapismus may profitably be applied to the head. If obliuion be caused of fleume abounding, then you must first prepare, and concoct that humor, with *mel rosarum*, oximel, sirupe of infusion of roses, with decoctions of betony, marioram, hisope, time, and such like: after the administration wherof, the matter being concoct and prepared, you may purge it with decoction of mirabolanes chebulorum, and agaricke trochiscat, to the which you may adde of the sirupe of infusion of roses, or *Diacatholicon*, or *Diaplœnicon*. And if the matter through his grossenes, will not sufficiently purge at once, then you must prepare it againe, & after purge it with pils, *arabicæ*, *aureæ*, or *aggregatiuæ*, commixing some of them with agarick trochiscat and so make pilles with hony of roses, or sirupe of stæchados. After you may particularly purge the head with gargarises & sternutatiõs. After purging it is good to minister vnto them *Castoreum* or shauing of iuory. ℥. j. with *aqua mulsa*, or as much *Confectio anacardina*, or *aurea Alexandrina*, or *diambra*, *diamoscha dulce*, or *mithridatũ*, or *theriaca* with *aqua mulsa* or white wine. Afterward you may vse outwardly embrocations, and poure them downe from on high vpon the head being shauen, specially nigh to the seame, where the bone is looseſt or thinneſt. You may make your embrocation thus. ℞. of hisope, serpillum, and time, ana.

Embrochæ. *M.* ß. betony, marioram, & floures of cammomill, ana pug. ß. floures of stæchados. ℥. iij. make a decoction, and adde thereto of *Castoreum*. ℥. j. of vineger. ℥. j. & make an embrocation. It is good also to annoint the first and second spondil in the necke, and the hinder part of the head, with *Oleum nardinum*, oiles of nut-

Sacculus. megges, of *Castoreum*, of pepper, or *Oleum costiuum*. And you may apply thereupon a quilt, made in this sort. ℞ hisope, marioram, and floures of stæchados, ana. ℥. j. *Castoreum*, nutmegs, spicknard, mace ana. ℈. j the barks of frãkinsence, masticke, and wood of aloes. ana. ℥. j ß. redde roses dried the waight of al, beat them to powder, and make a quilt. And if the euill cease not by this meanes, then last of all, vse a sinapismus. If memory be lost by aboundance of melancholy, you must first prepare it to expulsion, by sirupe of borage, and fumitory mixed together, and adding sirupe of infusion of roses, and waters of betony, hops and baulme, and such like. Afterward minister this potion following. ℞.

Decoctio. *Mirabolanorum indorum*. ℥. iij. sene, and epithimum. ana. ℥. ij. floures of hoppes, fumitory, & borage. ana. ℥. ij. ß. make a decoction in running water, & hauing strained it, dissolue therein of fine manna. ℥. ij. of *Diacatholicon*. ℥. vij. or *Diasen.* ℥. ß. & make a potion. As touching outward medicins, let them rather encline to moisture thẽ drines. As by adding to the ointments before prescribed, oiles

of

of cammomill, dill, & ſweete almondes. Likewiſe in making embrocations and quiltes, you may withdraw ſuch medicines as dry, & adde moiſt things in their ſtead. Hereby a circumſpect Phiſitian may not onely haue a reaſonable Method, to cure ech kind of obliuion, but alſo to remedy any dulnes or weakenes of the memory. For that it commeth of the ſame cauſes that memory loſt doth come, although they be not ſo vehement, where the memory is weakened.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Carus or Subeth.

CAros in Greeke, and *Carus* in Latin is a diſeaſe, in which both ſenſe & mouing is altogether take away, and yet their breathing remaineth ſafe. The *Arabians* call this diſeaſe *Subeth*. This diſeaſe differeth from the lethargie, for that they will anſwere to a queſtion demanded, that haue the lethargy, and do not lie altogether downe. But they that haue *Carus*, are occupied with deepe ſleepe, and if they be ſtirred or pricked, although they feele, yet they will ſay nothing, nor once open their eyes. Beſides as *Paulus AEgineta* noteth, a vehement feuer doth vſe to go before *Carus*, and in the lethargy it followeth rather. Alſo *Carus* vſeth to ſucceed other ſyntomats & accidents. For it commeth often in the fits of feuers, and in the falling ſicknes, and in preſſing of the braine, as wel when the braine pan is cruſhed together, as alſo if the filmes that couer the formoſt ventricle of the braine, be thruſt downe. But the lethargy hath a certaine peculiar conſiſtence of himſelfe. Alſo *Carus* doth differ from the Apoplexy, for that in it the breathing is very ſtraight, ſo that the ſicke can with much a doe ſcaree breath at all. But he that hath *Carus* (as *Galen* witneſſeth in his fourth booke *de Locis affectis*) hath his breath at liberty. *Carus* is cauſed of a cold, groſſe, and viſcous flegmaticke humour filling the braine. You may eaſily know the ſignes by that which hath bene rehearſed before. For in this diſeaſe they are altogether in a dead ſleep, and their eies alwaies ſhut. As for the diet, & the cure of thoſe that haue *Carus*, it agreeth altogether with theirs, that haue the lethargy: whereof we ſpake before (in the 16. Chapt.) ſauing that in this diſeaſe you muſt vſe things that be of greater force to extenuate, cut, and deuide the groſſe humours. Alſo you muſt apply emplaſters, and other medicines to the ſtomacke which haue vertue to heate, and corroborate it, for becauſe it is ſtuffed with fleume which doth coole it and moiſten it. Wherof you ſhall finde examples in the beginning of the third Booke.

Carus. *Subeth.* *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Victus.* *Cura.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Congelation or taking.

CAtoche or *Catalepſis* in Greeke, in Latine may be called *Occupatio*, *Detentio*, & *deprehenſio*. The new writers in phiſicke doe call it *Congelatio*, in Engliſh it may be called Congelation or taking. It is a ſodaine detention and taking both of mind and body, both ſenſe and mouing being loſt, the ſicke remaining in the ſame figure of body wherin he was taken, whether he ſit or lie, or ſtand, or whether his eies be open or ſhut. This diſeaſe is a meane betweene the lethargy and the frenſy, for it commeth of a melancholy humour for the moſt part, as ſhall be declared afterward. Therefore in reſpect of coldneſſe it agreeth with the lethargy, and in reſpect of drineſſe with the frenſy. Here-

Congelatio.

vpon it commeth that they which haue this diſeaſe, are neither like the frenetick altogether, nor like them that haue the lethargy. This diſeaſe is cauſed ſometime of abundance of bloud flowing to the head and repleniſhing it. But for the moſt part (as *Aëtius* witneſſeth) it is cauſed of a cold and dry melancholicke humour, troubling the hinder parts of the head and braine. This diſeaſe inuadeth a man ſodainly, and taketh away ſpeach and ſenſe from him, he heareth nothing, hee aunſwereth nothing, his breath is ſcarcely to be perceiued, but he lieth as he were dead. His pulſe is ſmall and weake and very thicke. His egeſtion and vrine are detained, or elſe they come forth in ſmall quantity, and that is not in reſpect of drines, for the ſicke ſometime doth abound with much moiſture, but for lacke of ſenſe. Their face is ſometime red, and that is when the euil is engendred of bloud, and ſomtime it is ſwart, and that is when melancholy cauſeth the diſeaſe. Moreouer the eies in this diſeaſe remaine immoueable, as though they were froſen. This euill differeth from *Carus* (as *Galen* ſaith) for that in it the eye liddes are euer ſhut, but in this diſeaſe they ſometime remaine open. The diet in this euill muſt be diuerſe according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Let his food bee ptiſan broth, and ſuch like. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa* well boiled, or barley water or ſmall ale, for ſeeing they fume not into the head, they doe much good. It is hurtful for them to drinke water, for it cauſeth windines, ſwelleth the ſplene, and quencheth not thirſt. As concerning the cure, if the face of the ſicke be ruddy, and bloud ſeeme to abound, if ſtrength permitte and yeares, let him forthwith bleede on the outwardmoſt vaine of the arme, and let him bleede according to his ſtrength. Afterward if the head be hote, apply thoſe things that coole. For that purpoſe you may boile the ſhelles of poppy heads in oile, and annoint the head therewith. But in other, that haue their face ſwart, and ſo haue tokens of melancholy abounding, you muſt firſt cleanſe the guts with cliſters, made of floures of borage, bugloſſe, fumitory, time, epithimum, rootes of polipody, leaues of ſene, adding to it oiles of cammomill, and dill, and *caſia*, *diacatholicon*, *diaſena*, or *confectio hamech* in conuenient quantity. Whereof you ſhall finde examples afterward in the Chapter of *Melancholia*. And if the belly become not ſoluble by this meanes, then it is not amiſſe to boile in the former decoction rootes of *Elleborus niger*. The head muſt be annointed with oile, wherein wilde time is ſodden, or with oile of lillies or dill, or ſuch like, and that you muſt doe chiefly when the head ſeemeth cold. Moreouer if his vrine appeare groſſe and thicke, you muſt giue him to drinke the decoction of dill, apium, calamint, and ſuch like, as haue vertue to extenuate. It profiteth alſo to annoint all their whole body with oile of dill ſpecially in winter. Alſo they that haue trembling with this diſeaſe may haue ℥ i. of *Caſtoreum* commixed with *aqua mulſa*, and poured into their mouth. The reſt that concerne the cure of this diſeaſe, may be gathered partly out of the Chapters of the freneſie and lethargy before, and partly out of the Chapter of melancholy following.

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus.

Curatio.

CHAP. XX.

Of dead ſleepe.

COma in Greeke, *ſopor*, or *grauis & profundus ſomnus* in Latin. It may be called in Engliſh dead ſleepe. It is a diſeaſe wherein the ſicke cannot awake, nor keepe

keepe open his eyes, but doth keepe his eyes continually close shut, and is in a sound sleepe. But there be two kinds hereof, the one whereof we haue already spoken, and that is called simply *coma* or *sopor*, or else *coma somnolentum*. The other is called *Vigilans sopor*, and it is an euill wherein the sicke cannot hold open his eies, though he be awake, but he winketh in hope to get sleepe, and yet is altogether awake. Therefore you must make a difference betweene these two kindes. The sleeping *coma* (as *Galen* witnesseth) is sometime caused by ouer- *Cause.*
much moistening of the braine, as it chaunceth to many drunken persons. Also in feuers only hote and moist vapours ascending from the inferiour partes, and moistening the braine doe cause this euill. Moreouer somtime only cold, occupying the fore part of the braine is cause of this euill. Somtime profound sleepe is caused of coldnes and moistnes ioyned together. The other euill called *Vigilans sopor*, or *coma* (that is) the watching drowsines, it is caused of fleume mixed with choller, & for the most part it commeth for lacke of strength, that they are not able to keepe open there eyeliddes. The party that is vexed with the soporiferous and sleepy Coma, doth sleepe with his neither iaw open, and *Signa.*
as often as he is awaked, he falleth into a new sleepe forthwith. They that haue the watching Coma, they speake they wote not what, and they lye with their whole body out of order, and they haue partly such signes as appeare in the frenesie, and partly such as in the lethargy. The cure is of two sorts, accor- *Curatio.*
ding to the diuersity of the euils. For in the soporiferous and sleepy Coma, you must vse those remedies that are præscribed in the Chapters of *Carus*, and the lethargy, & to speake briefly after the whole body be purged, if the euil be caused of moistnesse, then you must apply such things as will dry the braine made with sharpe vineger and roses, and cammomill commixed, and you may also let the fume thereof go vp into the nosethrils. If it be caused of cold, then apply oile of dill, and cammomil warmed, and if the cold be great, you may somtime boile in oile, penitoyall and dill and vse it. But if the euil be caused of cold and moisture ioined together: then must it be cured, as the lethargy. If it come of weakenes and lacke of strength, then you must vse restoratiues to recouer it againe. Suppositaries are very good to be vsed in these kindes of diseases, for that they stirre and prouoke nature. For the watching *coma*, since it consisteth of mixed and contrary causes, it must be cured by contrary medicines partly as the frenesie, and partly as the lethargy. And to know which of them you must vse most, you may learne that by the humour most abounding. For if fleum abound more then choler, then you must vse most the remedies against the lethargy: but if contrari wise choller doe most abound then must your remedies be for the most part such as are good against the frenesie. And therefore you may seeke conuenient remedies out of those Chapters, as occasion serueth.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Apoplexy.

APoplexia in Greeke and Latin is a disease wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes being affected, euery part of the body doth sodainely loose both mouing and sense. Or it is a depriuing both of sense and

mouing throughout the whole body comming ſodainly with let and hurt of all voluntarie functions. If this ſtopping of the braine come in one halfe of the bodie onely, then it is called *Paralyſis* in Greeke, in Engliſh the Palſey, wherof we will ſpeake in the next Chapter. The Apoplexie is cauſed of a flegmaticke humour, that is cold, groſſe and tough, which doth at one time abundantly fill the principall ventricles of the braine, which humour ouermuch crudities, and chiefely drunkenneſſe doth engender. Alſo it is cauſed by a fall or a blow which ſhaketh and bruiſeth the braine, and cauſeth humours to flow thither. Alſo very cold aire which doth thicke and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine, doth ſometime cauſe this diſeaſe: it may alſo be cauſed of a groſſe melancholy humor. Concerning ſignes, there goeth before this diſeaſe a full and ſharpe paine of the head, and a ſwelling of the vaines in the necke, the *Vertigo*, and brightnes before the eies, alſo cold of the extreme parts without cauſe, panting of the whole body, ſlowneſſe to moue, and gnaſhing of the teeth while they ſleepe. Their vrine is litle in quantity, black, like ruſt and canker in mettall, and hath a reſidence like meale. They that fall into this diſeaſe, do lacke ſenſe altogether, they lye as they were a ſleepe with their eyes ſhut, and doe ſnort. The vehemency and greatneſſe of this diſeaſe may be diſcerned by the impediment that they haue in breathing. For when it is very much differing from naturall order, it betokeneth vehemency of the diſeaſe, and that it is a great and ſtrong Apoplexy. But when there is a litle impediment in the breathing, then you may iudge that there is but litle hurt in the braine, and ſo you may accompt it a ſmall and weake Apoplexie. The worſt and ſtrongeſt Apoplexie is, wherein the breathing is ſo diminiſhed that it can very hardly be perceiued: and that is almoſt as euill, wherein the breath ſtoppeth for a while, and then is fetched with great violence. This diſeaſe for the moſt part doth chance to old men, which be of a flegmatick complexion, and which do vſe ſuch a diet as encreaſeth fleume. But if ſo be it inuade any yong perſon, and that in ſommer ſeaſon, it is moſt perillous. This diſeaſe is vncurable, or at the leaſt is ſeldome cured. And therfore *Hippocrates* writeth in the 24. Apho. of his ſecond booke. It is impoſſible (ſaith he) to cure a vehement Apoplexie, and not eaſie to cure a weake one. For it threatneth ſpeedy death. Beſides if it chance by medicines to be taken away, for the moſt part it departeth leauing the palſey behind it, either in the whole body, or in ſome part thereof. Often alſo it corrupteth the memory, wherupō we may cōclude that remedies are not to be vſed againſt a ſtrong Apoplexie, for that is of nature deadly. But if it be weake, which you may know by the ſignes aforeſaid, although there be ſmall hope to remedy it, yet (as *Galen* reſtifieth) conuenient remedies being miniſtred, it may perhaps be cured, as experience hath proued in ſome. Thoſe therfore whoſe cure is not altogether deſperate if there be ſigns of plenitude & fulnes, & ſtrength permit alſo, muſt be let bloud on both the *Cephalica* veins. But you muſt foretell the perill, for bloudletting doth either kill thē or deliuer thē: ſo that if after bloudletting (as *Aetius* ſaith) both mouing & ſēſe come not vnto him again, there is no more hope. You muſt not draw away much bloud at once, but rather at ſundry times, and you muſt haue regard to his pulſe, the colour of his face, & his breathing. Beſides you muſt prouoke him to the ſtoole with

Cauſe.

Signa.

Prognoſtica.

Curatio.

with sharpe clisters in this sort. ℞. sage, origan, betony, and rew. ana. M. j. calamint, hysope and peniroyall. ana. *M.* ß. seeds of fenell, seselis, and ammi. ana. ℥. iij. centory the lesse. *M.* j. roots of polipody. ℥. vj. fine agaricke. ℥. iij. pulpe of *coloquintida*. ℥. ij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vntill halfe be consumed: then take of that decoction. ℥. xv. of *Hierapicra*, and *Benedicta laxatiua*. ana. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*. ℥. iij. of *Diaphœnicon*. ℥. ij. of *mel rosarum* clarified. ℥. j. ß. of oiles of laurell, rew, and *Castoreum*. ana. ℥ j. of sal gemme. ℥ j. ß. commix them all and make a clister. Also the vse of suppositaries in this disease is very commendable made of *Coloquintida*, agaricke, blacke hellebore, and such like, after this sort. ℞. of hony boiled to a height ℥ ij. of *Colloquintida*, agaricke and hellebore. ana. ℈. ij. of sall gemme. ℈ j beat them into powder, commixe them with the hony and make suppositaries vj. fingers long, & hang a thrid in them, that you may draw them out when you list. You may also put into the suppositaries *Hierapicra* or pils *Cochiæ*. Afterward annoint the whole body with a good quantity of warme oile, wherein wilde time, calamint, dill, and such like haue first bene boyled. Also the extreme parts must be bound strongly, and vehemently chafed with the decoction of the root of floure de luce, many cupping glasses must be fastned to the shoulders. The head must be shauen, & annointed with oiles of cammomill, dill and rew, or with oile wherein the aforenamed hearbs haue bene boiled. You must apply to the nosethrils such things as by their odour can stir and raise vp the sicke, as be opoponax, *castoreum*, *sagapenum*, *galbanum*. Also you may vse medicines to prouoke sneesing made of white hellebore, castoreum, and such others rehearsed in the former Chapters. Or it profiteth much to vse embrocations, made of cammomill, melilote, sage, peniroyall, marioram, origan, calamint, sauery, and hysope boiled in equall portions of wine and water. But yet it is better to vse dry medicins to the head, as be *sinapismi*, made after this sort. ℞. *Olei costini*. ℥. j. oils of *Castoreum* and *Euphorbium*. ana. ℥. iij. mustard seed ℥. ij. *Castoreum*. ℥. j. *sagapenum*. ℥. j ß. *Euphorbium*. ℈. j vineger. ℥. ij. with sufficient quantity of wax, make an emplaister. Also you must open their mouth by force, and put into it your finger, or a fether dipped in oile of Ireos to prouoke vomit, and to cause the grosse humors that be in the mouth to be cast out. Also their fundament must be annointed with such medicines as dissolue windines, as be rew, commin, nitrum & hony. When the euill is asswaged, you must giue him meate of easie digestion, for the most part mixed with hony. If his speech come not yet againe, so that his strength permit, you must fasten cupping glasses to the hinder part of the head with scarification. And in like sort vnder the short ribs, if you may. Afterward let the sicke be caried in a wagon or horslitter. Let his drink be mulsa, or oximell Let him drink no wine. After 21. daies be past the sick may enter a bath, but as touching medicins requisit for the rest of the cure, you shal find them abundantly in the Chap. following. And this may suffice for the cure of the Apoplexy, if so be it be curable.

Clyster acris.

Sinapismus.

Vomitus.

Victus.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Palsey.

PARALYSIS in Greeke, *Resolutio* in Latine: in English the Palsey. It is a disease wherin the one halfe of the body either the right side or the left doth loose

both ſenſe and mouing. Alſo ſometime the palſey chaunceth in one member onely, (as for example) in the hand, the legge, or the tongue. But note here that the palſey which followeth the Apoplexy is particularly called in Greeke Παραπληγία. And therfore the word *Paralyſis* is a more generall name then *Paraplegia*. But whereas in the palſey, ſometime ſenſe onely is loſt, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both ſenſe and mouing: it is ſpecially called reſolution of the ſinewes or palſey, when mouing is loſt. Why ſomtime feeling is loſt only, and ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together, Galen declareth at large in his firſt booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis*, cap. 4. & therfore it need not be here reherſed: notwithſtanding it ſhal not be amiſſe to anſwer briefly to that queſtion. Firſt note that aſwell the faculty of mouing as of ſenſe floweth from the braine as from a fountaine, and is deriued from thence by and in the ſinewes to the inſtruments of motion and ſenſe, & therefore it muſt needs be, if that faculty of the braine be hindred or ſtopped by any cauſe, that it cannot diſcend to the inſtruments of mouing or of ſenſe: that they ſhould loſe mouing or ſenſe according as the ſinewes be affected. And therfore in thoſe members that participate two kinds of ſinewes, as the eyes and the tong doe, the former queſtion is eaſy to be ſoluted, for that they haue one kind of ſinewes for motiõ and another kind for ſenſe, & ſo the one may be hurt, & the other ſafe, or they may be both hurt, and ſo both ſenſe and motion periſh. But in members that haue but one kind of ſinewe, the queſtion is more obſcure to anſwere. In ſuch members therfore, if (the skin being taken away) the muſcle lying naked cannot moue at all, and yet feeling remaineth in it, you may know that the hurt is not great. But if the ſinewes be much ſtopped, then hath it loſt both ſenſe and mouing, for it is vnpoſſible that the ſenſe of a muſcle ſhould be loſt, & the motion remaine ſtill. The reaſon is, for that leſſe of the animal faculty is requiſite for feeling, then for mouing, ſo that there may come ſufficient quantity of that faculty to a muſcle to cauſe feeling in it, and yet not enough to cauſe it to moue alſo, and therfore a naked muſcle, which hath his faculty both of feeling and mouing of one kind of ſinewe, can not moue and lacke ſenſe. But either it hath ſenſe and lacketh mouing, & then his hurt is but litle, or it hath loſt both, and that is when the hurt is great, and the ſinewe is altogether ſtopped. But where there is a member that hath ſinews placed in the muſcles to cauſe mouing, and other ſinewes ſpread in the skinne to cauſe feeling (for the ſinewes that are diſperſed in the muſcles doe not ſend out branches to the skinne as ſome ſuppoſe (I ſay it may come to paſſe in that member, that ſomtime it may looſe feeling alone, and ſomrime mouing alone, and ſometime both together. For it may be that the skin which couereth the muſcle may looſe his ſenſe of feeling, the ſinewe being affected which is diſperſed in it, and yet the ſinewe that runneth in the muſcle may be ſafe, and therefore the muſcle may moue. But if the ſinewe which is ſpred in the muſcle be affected, and the ſinewe that commeth to the skinne remaine ſafe, that member cannot moue, & yet it hath ſenſe and feeling left, & that commeth to paſſe becauſe the ſinewe of the one is hurt, and the other hath his ſinewe ſafe: although they ſpring both from one place, yet they are deuided in the way as they come to the member. And if both the ſinewes be affected, as well that that commeth to the muſcle, as that

Why in the palſey ſometime ſence alone, ſometime mouing alone, and ſometime both together periſh.

that which commeth to the skinne, then both ſenſe of feeling & mouing alſo periſh and are loſt, & that is when the common fountaine from whence they do both ſpring, is affected & hurt. You may diſcern that, whē you know exactly the cōmon original & ſpring of euery ſinew, in cōſidering diligētly whether the brain it ſelf be affected, or the backe bone at the head of it, or in any of his ſpondils beſides. This is to be knowen by the Anatomie of ſinewes, and therfore it behoueth to be well exerciſed therein, for in the palſey there is not one certaine place affected, but diuerſe places. If the braine it ſelfe be affected (I meane not the whole braine: for then is the Apoplexy engendred) but if the right halfe or the left be affected, you ſhall know it, for that the palſey or reſolution will be aſwell on the right or left ſide of the face, as on the right or left ſide of the bodie. But if the face be ſafe, and one halfe of the body be depriued of ſence and mouing, then you may know that the place affected is the vpper end and firſt ſpondils of the back bone, but the one halfe only of the marrow is affected, and that is it that is next to the ſide taken with the palſey. But if all the inferior members, (the face onely excepted) be reſolued and paraliticke, then is the back bone affected in the ſame place, euen in the beginning & vpper end of it, but then is the hurt vehement, for the whole marrow is affected. But if it chaunce one onely part to be reſolued and taken with the palſey, you muſt ſearch from whence the ſinewes come that be contained in it, which you may eaſily find, if you be well exerciſed in Anatomy. For if the marrow of the backe be not affected aboue where his firſt beginning is, but lower among the ſpondils, then if the affect and hurt be great, all the inferiour partes beneath thoſe ſpondils affected, be reſolued & taken with the palſey, but if the hurt be but litle, & the marrow but halfe affected, then only the inferiour partes of the one ſide be reſolued. Therefore you muſt firſt learne by Anatomie to finde the place affected hauing foreknowledge from what part of the backbone the members reſolued haue their ſinewes. The palſey and reſolution of members is ingendred of abundāce of groſſe & clammy humors, which ſtop the ſinews & hinder the animal faculty y it cannot come frō the fountain to the mēbers. It may alſo be cauſed of immoderat cold in ſnow or vehemēt froſt. Alſo it may be cauſed by an inflāmariō, or a *Sirrhus* (which is a hard ſwelling without ſenſe) chācing in the backbone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other ſinowy parts, wherby the ſinewes are cruſhed & preſſed, & ſo ſtopped that the animal faculty cannot paſſe. As alſo the ſinews may be cruſhed together by ſome externall cauſe, as by binding with a cord, or ſuch like meanes & ſo cauſe reſolution, alſo whē there is luxation or fracture in any of the ſpondils of the back, or in other iointes or bones, there may follow reſolution by meanes of compreſſion and cruſhing together of ſinews. Alſo reſolution or palſey may be cauſed by means of a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the backe, or in any particular ſinewes. There neede not many ſignes to know this diſeaſe by: for any may iudge eaſily, that part or member to haue the palſey which is deſtitute of mouing; to know of what cauſe it proceeded, you may partly learn by the relation of the ſicke, and partly by the ſignes rehearſed before in the 7. Chapter fol. 10, where headach cauſed of fleume is intreated of. The palſey is no acute & ſharp diſeaſe, but of long cōtinuance, & for the moſt part curable.

To know if the braine be affected.

To know if the marrow of the backe cauſe the palſey.

Of mēbers particularly taken with the palſey

Cauſe.

Prognoſtica.

It chaunceth for the moſt part in old folke, and in the winter time. The palſey that commeth by a ſinewe ſeperate and cut a ſunder is, (as *Ægineta* ſaith) vncurable, and ſo is that which commeth by ouerthwart inciſions of the back, or by great luxation of it. Moreouer if the member paralaticke do wax leſſe, or chaunge his colour, it is hard to be cured, or rather not curable. For it declareth thoſe parts not onely to be deſtitute of the animal faculty, but alſo of the naturall, and after a ſort of the vitall alſo. Their diet muſt be altogether extenuating and drying. Let the ſicke therfore remaine in an aier, that is hote and drie, and in the firſt three dayes he may vſe altogether abſtinence, or let him content himſelfe with *aqua mulſa*, or a litle priſan broth. Afterward giue him meats of good iuice, light of digeſtion, & let thé be roſted, let him eate chiefly birdes of the mountaines, and partrich, reare egges, almondes and pyne nuttes. For pot hearbes let him vſe fenell, parcely, hyſop, marioram, ſage and ſauorie. Let him eſchew fiſh, fruite, and all things that be colde and moiſt. Let him drinke but litle, for it is good to ſuſtaine as much thirſt, as he can poſſibly. Let him drinke *mulſa*, wherein ſage or Cinnamon hath bene boyled, or let him vſe to drinke, that which the barbarous Phiſitions at this day call Hippocras: made after this ſorte. ℞. of choſen Cynamon ℥. ij. of ginger. ℥ ß. of long pepper, graines, and galingale. ana. ℥ j. of Cardamomes ℥. j. ß of nutmegges, and cloues and mace. ana. ℥ j. boyle them all in three quartes of running water, vntill a pinte and a halfe be conſumed, then ſtraine it hard, and with halfe a pound of ſugar make it pleaſant to drinke, he may drinke no wine at all, vntill he be perfectly cured, but if the patient can hardly be kept ſo long tyme from wine, giue him but a litle in the declining of the diſeaſe, and let it be thinne and alayed. Mouing and exerciſe if he can vſe them, are very good for him. Let him eſchue ſleepe on the day. Let his night ſleepe be in a meane. Let him be mery and flye perturbations of the mind. For the cure, if age, ſtate of the body, tyme of the yeare, and ſuch like permit, it is good to beginne with bloud letting, ſpeciallie if there be ſignes of plenitude. But you muſt drawe awaie bloud moderatelie, leaſt the bodie be cooled ouermuch, and you muſt let bloud on the whole and ſound ſide. Then a fewe daies after bloudletting, you may clenſe the inteſtines with cliſters made thus. ℞. of mallowes, holyhockes, mercury, cammomill, ſage, and betony. ana. *M*. j. of ſtæchas ℥. ß of rewe, and calamint. ana. *M*. ß. of ſeedes of fennell, and ammeos. ana. ℥. ij. boile theſe in ſufficient water vntill the third part be conſumed, then take of that decoction. ℔. j. of *Benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*. ℥. iij. of hony roſes. ℥. ß. of oyles of laurell, lreos, and rewe. ana. ℥. j. of ſalt gemme. ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter. Afterward miniſter vnto him decoctions and ſirupes, which haue vertue to extenuate flegmaticke humors, and make them apt to be purged, whereof you ſhall finde examples before in the 7 Chapter. The humours being thus prepared miniſter medicines which doe purge fleume, beginning with gentle ones, aud proceeding by litle and litle to ſtronger. Beſides thoſe purgations which are rehearſed in the ſeuenth Chapter, aforeſaid you may vſe *pilule azairet, arabice, fetide*, with the which you muſt alwaies commixe agaricke. Neither doth it ſuffice to purge the patient once, but you muſt do it ſo oftē, letting 4. or 5. daies paſſe between ech purging.

Victus ratio.

Ippocras.

Curatio.

Vena ſectio.

Clyſter

The

The next day after he is purged, it profiteth much to giue vnto him *theriaca*, or *mithridatum*. The body being well purged, you muſt vſe ſternutations, gargariſmes, odoraments, & ſuch other like, as are reherſed in the 7. chap. And that ſpecially when the braine is principally affected: for if the braine be not affected, you muſt rather miniſter ſuch medicins as may corroborate & ſtrengthē it in this ſort. ℞. of *diambra*, *plicis*, *archoticon*, & *diamoſchu dulce*. ana. ℈. j. of pouder of ſwallowes preparat. ʒ. ß. of coriander ſeeds preparate. ʒ. j. of ſugar roſet. ʒ. iij. with ſugar diſſolued in roſe water make lozenges, and let the patient hold a litle of one of them in his mouth often. It profiteth alſo in this diſeaſe to take ʒ. j. of *Caſtoreum*, or of *opoponax*, or *ſagapenum*, in *aqua mulſa*. Alſo *diatrion pipereon* is good for them. If the braine be chiefly affected, you muſt annoint the head with hot medecins, as with *Caſtoreum*, mints, laurell berries, oile of Ireos boiled with a litle vineger, & ſuch like. Therfore if coldnes of the wether do not let it, you may ſhaue the hed, & annoint it all ouer the forhead. If the marrow of the back be affected at the vpper end, where he beginneth, then after the former purgation you muſt in the nape of the necke where the marrow of the backe ſpringeth forth of the braine, vſe oiles & ointments which haue vertue to diſſolue & diſcuſſe, but you muſt begin with the weakeſt, as with oiles of cāmomil, dill, ſpike, lillies, Ireos, nard, nutmeg, S. Iohns wort, & earth-wormes, wherwith you muſt annoint the nape of the neck, & the reſolued ſide, ſpecially the halfe of the ridge bone: & you muſt wrap the paraliticke members in warme linnen clothes, or in a fox skin, to keepe them warme: or you may bath them with the decoction of ſage, marioram, cammomill, S. Iohns wort, ſtæchas and roſemary. Afterward you may proceed to ſtronger medicins, as be oiles *coſtiuum*, *vulpinum*. oiles of rew, & bayes, oiles of *Caſtoreum*, *Euphorbium*, & oile of tile ſtones, called *Oleum è lateribus*, or *Oleum Philoſophorum*. To theſe you may ad theſe ointments, *vnguentum aregon*, *vnguentum agrippa*, and *vnguentum martiaton*, and hotte ſimples may be added alſo if you will, as be betonie, ſage, roſemary, galingale, cowſlips, rewe, calamint, pellitory, pepper, *caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. Of theſe you may make an ointment after this ſorte. ℞. of *vng. aregon*, and *martiaton*. ana. ʒ. j. of *vnguentum agrippa* ʒ. ß. of oiles *coſtiuum* and *vulpinum*. ana ʒ ß. of oile of earth wormes. ʒ ß. of oyle of *Caſtor*. ʒ. j. ß. of powders of betony, pepper, ſage. ana. ℈ j. of *Caſtoreum*, and *euphorbium*. ana. ℈. ß. of galingale, or roots of accorus. ℈. ij. with wax as much as ſufficeth, make an oiſtment. Or thus. ℞. of *oleum coſtiuum*. ʒ ij. of oile of pepper. ʒ j ß. oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. ij. of *aqua vitæ*. ʒ ij. ß. of iuyce of ſage, and cowſlips. ana. ʒ. j. ß. of galingale. ʒ. iij. of ſtæchas and roſemary. ana. ʒ. ij. of pellitory and pepper. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. ß. bruſe them and boile them, vntill the *aqua vitæ* & iuices be conſumed, then ſtraine out the oiles & put to the waxe and make a liniment. By example of them you may make a Cerote alſo after this manner. ℞ of bay berries, pellitory & pepper. ana. ʒ. ij. of galingale. ʒ. j. of ſtæchas, betony, and elder. ana. ʒ. j ß. of muſtard ſeed and nigella. ana. ʒ. j. of *Euphorbium* and *Caſtoreum*. ana. ℈. j. of *oleum coſtiuum*. ʒ j. ß. of oile of pepper. ʒ. j. of oile of *Euphorbium*. ʒ. iij. with waxe & roſin ſufficient make a cerote. Alſo you may make a quilt thus. ℞ hiſope, marioram, S. Iohns wort, ſage, rew, and bay leaues, ana. ʒ. ij. ſpike, maſtike, *Caſtoreum* and ſtæchas. ana. ℈ ij. cloues, maces, and nutmegges. ana. ℈. ß. red roſe leaues dried. *M*. ß. beat

Capitis purgatio

Lozenges.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

Cerotum.

Sacculus

them all to powder, and make a quilt with them. Alſo a fomentation may conueniently be made thus. ℞ ſage, roſemary, S. Iohns wort, cowſlips, hyſop, marioram, betony, peniroyall & calamint, of ech. *M.* ß. boile them in white wine, & adde to the decoction of *Caſtoreum*. ℥. ij. of floures of ſtæchas, & lauender. ana. ℥. j. ß. wherewith you may often bath the members affected, before you vſe the afore ſaid ointments or quilt. Moreouer you may ſet cupping glaſſes lightly without ſcarification to the members affected, that they may draw thither bloud, & heat, & ſpirits: & if the members themſelues cannot aptly haue cupping glaſſes applied to them, apply thē at the leaſt to the parts next adioyning. After cupping you may vſe the aforeſaid ointments & cerots, ſo that the mēbers affected be firſt rubbed & chafed: and if the diſeaſe relent not by all theſe meanes (as *Aetius* doth counſell) you may vſe ſinapiſmes or cauterizatiō by fire where the originall of the affect is. Laſt of all a hot houſe or drie bath will profit much, or if they may conueniently come to thē, natural baths which ſpring from brimſtone, alome, & ſalt, ſuch as be the baths in Germany called *Badenia*, *Feriuæ*, *Cellences*, & ours in England at Bath. But it is good for them to vſe before bathing, to be caried vp & downe in a wagon or horſlitter. And this may ſuffice for the cure of the palſey, occupying one whole ſide. But if neither the braine, nor the beginning of the ridge bone be affected, but onely ſome other parts of the marrow of the backe, then you muſt ſearch out that part of the back that is affected. And apply ſuch remedies to it, as are before rehearſed. And in like ſort if any particular ſinew be affected, you muſt find out his originall where he ſpringeth, and there apply the former medecins or their like. Yet remember you muſt neuer altogether neglect the braine, although it be not principally affected, if the palſey be cauſed of extreame cold without humors abounding in the bodie, then the place affected being found out and the medicines before rehearſed being applied vpon it, you ſhall cure it. But you may not altogether neglect the brain, nor the member that is paraliticke, but vſe to them ſuch remedies as are afore taught. Bloodletting, purging, and all other euacuations may be omitted, only vſe remedies to alter and ſtrengthen the members. If the palſey be cauſed by an inflammation or *Scirrhus* of any part, the inflammation or hard ſwelling being cured, the reſolution wil be cured alſo. If any pinching or binding of the ſinewes cauſe reſolution, the bond being remoued, the cure will ſoone enſue. If the ſpondils of the ridge or other bones being out of ioynt or broken do cauſe reſolution, if the reſolution be curable, it will be remedied by their cure. Likewiſe if palſey enſue a wound or vlcer in the head, or backe, or in any particular ſinew: it will be cured by their Cure, except it be altogether vncurable.

Fomentum.

Balneum.

Geſtatio.

Of palſey comming of cold.

Cure of palſey comming of other cauſes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of Palſey in one member.

ALthough any expert man may eaſily gather out of the former chapter the cure of reſolution chancing in any particular member, yet leaſt thoſe that haue leſſe skill, ſhould ſtand in doubt in ſome cauſes, it ſhall not be ſuperfluous to make diſcourſe of certaine particular reſolutions. There is an affect of the face called in Greeke *Spaſmus Cinicus*, and in Latine *Conuulſio camina*, or of ſome

Torture

Tortura oris. The cure of this is like the cure of the palsey that is rehearsed in the former Chapter. For both bloudletting if nothing be against it, and purging, and clisters, and liniments rehearsed in the former Chapter be good for this. Furthermore for the particular cure of this disease you must let the patient bloud in the veines vnder the tongue, & fasten cupping glasses to the shutting of the ioynts, and giue him *Masticatoris* made after this forme. ℞. seeds of stauisacre, masticke, the roote of pellitorie. ana. ℥. j hysope, origan ana. ℥. j. ß. of mustard seed. ℥. ij. powder them and commixe them with turpentine & wax, and make trochisks to chewe. Also it is good for the patient to looke often in a glasse, that he seeing the writhing of his face, may with all his power intend to amend it. Also to the griefe of the patient (that is) to the sinewes that be sprong you must apply the medicins that are in the former Chapter. Also this following is very good. ℞. *Olibanum*, masticke. ana. ℥. ij. *ligi* aloes. ℥. j. cloues, galingale, cinamon, zodoarie, nutmegges, cububes. ana. ℥. vj. mirrhe, aloes, *labdanum*, *sarcocol*, *Castoreum*. ana. ℥. ß. bay berries, pyne nuttes. ana. ℥. vj. Ireos, *Aristolochiæ rotunda dictamus consolide maioris*. ana. ℥ j. gumme *elemni*, *opoponacis*, beniomen. ana. ℥. ij. the iuyce of *camepitius*, and the iuyce of cowslips. ana. ℥ iiij. turpentine. ℥. j. powder all that is to be powdered, and put all in a limbeck of glasse, and distil it with a soft fire. And that which commeth first will be like water which you shall keepe. The next will be thicke like oile, which keepe also, & with this oile annoint the place, and let him drink of the water three or foure ounces at once with a litle wine, this is very excellēt good. But you must note in this place that the cheeke is not troubled with the palsey which sheweth peruerse and ouerthwart, but the other. When the tongue hath the palsey, the body being first purged, you must cut the veines vnder it, and apply a cupping glasse to the chinne. Also let him vse *Masticatoris*, and collusions of mustard seeds and such like. Also let him not neglect exercises of the tongue. And the necke and the hinder part of the head, let them be annointed with sharpe ointments and linements. Also the Phisition may apply cerots and sinapismes, and such like as before. When the bladder hath the palsey, somtime the vrine is withholden, and sometime it goeth away against the patient his will. In this case you must apply remedies to the belly and to the priuiries, oyle of rewe, nard, spike, or oyle in the which is sodden the roote of *Eringium*, rewe, comin, or dill, or such like. All are very good: and you may well commixe with them butter, *Castoreum*, *Galbanum*, *Opoponax*. And there can be no better remedie, then to put these things into the bladder by the yard with a serenge. First therfore if the patient cannot make water, you must get out the vrine, by a fine pipe made of siluer for that purpose called *Cathetera*. Afterward take those medicins that are rehearsed a litle before, and poure them into the bladder with a Serenge, this will do maruellous much good. Also medicines prouoking vrine giuen to drinke be good for it, and so is *Castoreum* likewise. Also plaisters made of laxatiue things are profitable therfore. The palsy of the yard doth let & hinder the flowing of vrine, & sperme, and carnall copulation, therfore you must vse the same remedies which are rehersed for the palsy in the bladder: but priuatly you must apply to the loins and the ioynts of the huckle bones things that will heat, & ye must vse those medecins that haue power to erect the yard.

Curatio.

Note.

Palsey of the tongue.

Palsey of the bladder.

Palsey of the yard.

And *Castoreū* may effectually be ministred, as well for this as for all other palseyes, the sicke must chiefly eschue meates and drinks that be coole. By these examples you may easily find how to cure other members, that be paralitick.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the falling sickenesse.

De Epilepsia.

Morbus comitialis.

Causæ.

1

2

3

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Cure of infants.

Epilepsia in Greeke (as Galen saith) is a conuulsion, drawing and stretching of all the whole parts of the bodie, not continually, but that which chaunceth at sundry times, with hurt of the minde and sense. It is so called because it attacheth both the sense and feeling of the head, & also of the minde. The Latines call this disease, *Morbus comitialis*. There be three differences in this sickenesse or disease. The first is caused, when this sickenesse commeth onely of disease in the braine, as it chanceth when grosse and clammie fleume, or sharp choler doth stop the passage of the spirit in the ventricles of the braine. If this euill cõmeth of a grosse humour, then the disease commeth so dainly, and it is soone gone againe. Secondly it is caused through euill affect in the mouth of the stomacke, (that is) when the braine laboureth to driue away the vapours and humours that ascend vp to it from the stomacke. Thirdly the falling sickenes is caused, when as the patient feeleth a thing like vnto a cold ayer, cõming from some member, and creeping vp to the braine, but this chaunceth verie seldome. There goeth before this euill an vnwise state of the bodie and mind, sadnesse, forgetfulnesse, troublesome dreames, ach of the head, and continuall fulnesse in it, specially in anger, paleness of the face, inordinate mouing of the tong, & many do bite it. As soone as this euill taketh them, the sicke fall downe, and they are plucked vp together, they snort, & somtime they cry out, many do tremble and turne round about. But the peculiar signe of this disease is foming at the mouth. This disease chanceth most to children. Galen saith, that if it taketh any person after 25. yeares of age, he shall haue it til he die. The perfume or smoke of *Bitumen* or *Lapis gagatis*, or of goats horne, will declare & shew them that haue the Epilepsie. Also the liuer of an he goat eaten, or the sauor of the liuer sodden will do the same. It is profitable for them that haue this disease to vse in their diet, things that will attenuate, cut and deuide. Therefore let the ayer wherin the sicke remaineth be hot and dry, specially if the euill be caused of fleume. He must eschue all flesh except birds that flie on mountaines: also he must auoide all kinde of pulses, fish and wine, especially if it be olde and thicke. Let his drinke be mulsa, or thinne ale: the eating of capers doth maruellously profit. Exercise and frictions are good: but rub the head after all the other members be rubbed. Let him not vse too much lecherie: let him sleepe measurably on nights, and let him eschue exceeding sleeping on the day. He must abstaine from garlicke, onions, mustard, and such like fumous things. He must eschue drinking straight after a bath. If a child haue this disease you need not much to study for remedies, for with a moderat diet oftẽtimes the disease endeth by it owne accord: you must appoint a diet for the infant & the nurse. Therforeif the child be not yet weaned, let the nurse vse meats of good iuyce, and let her vse exercise before meat, let her eschue carnall copulation, and let her

her vse for her diet things that be hot and drie, that therby the milke may be hotter and thinner. Annoint the head of the infant continually with oile of dill and Ireos, putting to them the powders of Cipresse, Ireos, maidenhaire, marioram and such like, but neuer wash the head with water whether it be hot or cold. Also giue the child clarified hony to licke. Also this *Ecligma* is praised of many. ℞ fine white sugar. ℥ ij. oile of sweet almonds, as much as is sufficient to make it of the substance of a lohoch, & giue it to the childe to licke. Also it is good to commixe with it miscle of the oke, and vnicornes horne. Also hang about the childs necke the root of piony being greene, for it helpeth maruellously. Moreouer they that fal into this disease after they be past childs age, you must annoint & make straight those members, which are writhed, & plucked out of order in them. Afterward you must opē the mouth, putting a wedge betweene the teeth, and with a fether dipped in oile of Ireos, prouoke vomit to bring out fleume. Also it is good to quicken the senses with odoraments. Also *pencedanum*, or dog fennell, rew, *Bitumen*, and iuyce of *silphium*. The matter continuing very sharply, put into their mouth *Castoreum*, or *laserpitium* with *oximell*. Also when they are raised, you must cast in a sharp clister. They that begin to recouer (their strength being refreshed) purge them with *Hiera Galeni*, or some other conuenient medicine; & this is the cure of a newe and sharpe epilence, therefore now we will treat, how to helpe that which is old. The patient must drinke water long time, or verie small ale, & that in the beginning of the cure, vnlesse any thing do forbid it. Let blood in the veine of the hamme, or the ring finger, and then three or foure daies after you must comfort the body, & it is good to minister preparatiues to extenuate, as sirupes of wormewood, of hysope, of stœcados, *oximell scilliticum*, decoction of hysope, rootes of piony, and others rehearsed before. Afterward purge with purgations (that is) with *pilulæ cochiæ*, *pilulæ de agarico* and such as purge fleume. Also I iudge *stubium* to be of great force in this kind being vsed as is declared before in the xv. Chap. fol. 21. which doth mightily purge the superfluous humours of the head. And also I haue knowen this to helpe many, oile of exitore, and *oleum de lateribus*: with it annoint the hinder part of the head morning and euening warme. Furthermore make a quilt with three sheets of gray paper, & bast vpon it cotten wool, and let the patient weare it day and night, vj. dayes. Then take two frying pans, make them red hot, and hold one of them ouer his head, till it waxeth colde, then take the other and do likewise, do this till the patients head be very hot. And if his griefe take him in thy presence, set the patient on his knees, and let his armes be holden crosse ouer his bodie as may be, and let his head be thus warmed many dayes together, and euerie morning and euening let him take these things. The first daye of the powder of the scull of a man burned, one dramme at once, & the next day of the miscle of the oke, made in pouder. ℥ j. & the third day the powder of piony roots ℥ j. and after those iij dayes, take these powders ech day, till the patient be healed which will be in fortie daies. But if this euill be engendred of melancholie, then seeke medicins to purge it in the Chap. of *Malancholia*: howbeit it is lawfull to take the barke of dry blacke hellebore, and beat it into fine pouder, and to minister one dram at once with *mulsa*, and a litle pepper to it, also you may make pilles therof, and giue them.

Ecligma.

Cure of young folkes.

Cure of Epiēce in old folks.

A purging potion of stubiū.

And when the ſick is purged enough, bring him to a bath, the third day faſten cupping glaſſes with ſcarification to the ſides and ſhoulders, and then many dayes after comfort the bodie, and againe purge him with *Hiera Galeni*. After that, faſten cupping glaſſes to the noddle of the necke. The next day apply to the head like a plaiſter, bread ſodden in *mulſa*, adding to it bitter almonds braied, or *ſerpillum*, or calamints, or mints, or rewe, and do that three daies. Then ſhaue the head, and annoint it with iuyce of *pencedanum*, infuſed in vineger, in which ſerpillum, or Ireos hath bene ſodden. Then againe the bodie being refreſhed, purge the ſicke onely with three drammes of *Hiera*, after thoſe things be done, miniſter ſternutaments, *maſticatories*, and ſuch things as do purge by the noſe, then afterwardes if you thinke good miniſter a cliſter. At the laſt apply ointments, liniments, and emplaiſters, which haue vertue to diſcuſſe and driue away, whereof you may find examples plentie in diuerſe places.

Hiera Galeni

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Crampe.

De Convvlsione.

Spaſmos.

Spaſmos in Greecke, in Latine *Conuulſio*, in Engliſh the crampe, is a diſeaſe in the which the ſinewes are drawen and pluckt vp againſt ones will. There be of it three kinds or differences. The firſt is called in Greecke τέτανος, in Latine *Diſtentio*. It is when the necke remaineth altogether immoueable, and cannot be turned any way, but muſt be holden right forth. The ſecond is called in Latine *Tenſio ad anteriora*. In this diſeaſe the head and the necke be drawn downe to the breaſt. The third is called in Latin *Tenſio ad poſteriora*. In this diſeaſe the head is drawn downe backward to the back & the ſhoulders. For the cauſes of this diſeaſe you muſt note that Hippocrates appointeth but only two (that is) fulnes & emptines of the ſinewes in the body, & ſomtime it commeth with biting or ſtinging of ſome venemous beaſt. If the crampe doth take one that is haild, or by & by aſſoone as the diſeaſe commeth or not long after, then is the diſeaſe cauſed of fulnes, but when the conuulſiõ commeth after many ſweats, vomits, watchings, or drines, then is it cauſed of emptines. The diet of them that haue conuulſion, which commeth of fulnes muſt be hot and drie. But in them which haue the conuulſion cauſed of emptines, the diet muſt be moiſt. Therefore the patient muſt be nouriſhed with ſuppings and fat brothes, and fleſh that is eaſie to digeſt, and that which nouriſheth well. For their drinke let them vſe wine that is thinne and watery, which may quickely be diſperſed into all partes of the bodie, vnleſſe a feuer be preſent: for then iuyce of ptiſan is profitable, or in ſtead of wine miniſter decoction of Cinamon. Alſo prouoke ſleep. Let them eſchue exerciſes & all things that may emptie the body: to be ſhort let his diet be like vnto theirs which haue the feuer Ethick. The cure of the cramp cauſed of fulnes, muſt ſtraight begin with letting of blud, if nothing do prohibit it. It is meet to take away much blood, but it may not be done all at once on heaps, but by litle & litle you muſt let blood on the middle veine on the arme. If after bloodletting it ſeemeth that the ſicke may ſuffer it, waſh the wombe with a ſharpe cliſter. That part which is drawen muſt be ſtrongly kept together, and they muſt altogether eſchue inordinate mouings, and the place muſt be chafed with oyles of rewe, or Ireos, or ſome other ſuch like, or they muſt

1

2

3

Cauſe.

Victus ratio.

Cures of fulnes.

Bloodletting.

Cliſter.

muſt be couered with wooll dipped in the ſaid oiles, or you muſt lay vpon it a broad bladder filled with oyle. And if the conuulſion commeth of fleume, then the fleume muſt firſt be extenuate, and made thinne, and be prepared, that it may be apt to be purged: then by and by miniſter a purgation to purge fleume. Alſo apply cupping glaſſes with ſcarification, for light ones do hurt. If the legges haue the crampe apply it to the haunches, and to the latter knittings of the ioyntes. If the hands be drawen, apply it to the backe and to the ioyntes of the ſhoulders. Moreouer the head muſt be purged with Maſticatories, gargariſes, and ſuch like medicines. Time proceeding it is good to bath him, and therfore euery day twiſe or thrice let him deſcend into water of brimſtone or alome, or ſalt water, but let him not tarry in them, leaſt ſtrength faile him: or if there can not be vſing of naturall bathes, it is lawfull to vſe a hot houſe, or drie bath, or water in which are ſodden laurell leaues, ſothernwood, peniroyall, wormewood, rewe, ſage, S. Iohnswort, marioram & betony, and the places that are drawen ought to be couered with skins of wolues or foxes: alſo apply the ointments which are rehearſed in the cure of the palſey of the vſing of cold things, but miniſter often hote medicins, ſuch as be *Theriaca* and *mithridatios*, and ſuch as be hote. But the ſureſt and beſt of all other is the infuſion of *Caſtoreum* miniſtred the quantitie of one dram: truly not onely the drinking of it but alſo the annointing of it outwardly is good. Moreouer the conuulſion which commeth of emptines & drines is ſuch an euill diſeaſe, as it is almoſt vncurable. Thoſe which are ſo drawen, you muſt nouriſh with hot oile or *hidræleum*. Alſo it is good to bring him to a bath, and ſoft frictions with oile is good, and all their whole cure muſt alwayes be like the cure of Ethicks. If the conuulſion chaunceth by the ſtroke of ſome venemous beaſt in the beginning of the cure: you muſt labour to draw out the poyſon, which you may do by making the wound wider, and by ſcarifying the place round about, ſetting vpon it cupping glaſſes: alſo you may annoint it with leeke ſeed, braied with ſalt, or garlike, or oynions, and after the fall of the ſcurfe, you ſhall keepe the wound xl. or lx. dayes from a ſcarre: to the which if it make much haſte, you ſhall open the ſore againe with aſhes of vrine or of figge tree: and it is good to annoint it with hoarehound or leaues of *Anagallis*. Alſo nouriſh the place with the decoction of the roote of Sorrell. Alſo *Theriaca* infuſed in oile of roſes, and layed to the wound is good, becauſe it doth draw out and purge the poyſon from the bottome Therefore they erre much, which ſay that *Theriaca*, being outwardly applyed, doth driue the poyſon inwards.

The crampe comming of fleume.

Capitis purgatio.

Balneum.

The crampe comming of emptines and drines.

Cura veneni

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Mare.

De Incvbone.

EPhialtes in Greeke, in latine *Incubus* and *Incubo*. It is a diſeaſe, whereas one thinketh himſelf in the night to be oppreſſed with a great waight, & beleeueth that ſomthing commeth vpon him, & the patient thinketh himſelf ſtrangled in this diſeaſe. It is called in Engliſh the Mare. This vice is cauſed of exceſſe of drinking, & continuall rawnes of the ſtomack, from whence do aſcend vapors groſſe and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, letting the faculties

Cauſa.

of the braine to be disperſed by the ſinewes. They that haue this diſeaſe can
Signa. ſcarſe moue, being aſtonied, and feeling in ſleepe imagination of ſtrangling, and as it were the holding of ſome thing, that doth violently inuade them. In this the voice is ſuppreſſed, ſome haue ſuch vaine imagination, that they beleeue they heare the thing that doth oppreſſe them. At the laſt with much trouble the vapours being attenuate and driuen away, and the paſſage of the ſpirits being opened, the ſicke is by & by raiſed. It is good to remedie this euill at the firſt: for if it continue, it inducth and ſheweth before ſome grieuous diſ-
Victus ratio. eaſe, as the *Apoplexia*, the falling ſicknes, or madnes. Let their diet be thin, and ſuch as will not engender windineſſe. Let him vſe no wine, but that which is mixed with water, or none at all but ale. Let him eſchue ſleeping in the day, & let him not go to bed by and by after meat, and to be ſhort, let his whole diet be ſuch as is deſcribed and ſet downe for the falling ſicknes. For the cure if the
Curatio. whole bodie be full, you muſt beginne with blood letting, and you muſt cut the
Venæ ſectio. *Cephalica* veine. But if illiuyce be gathered in the bodie, for lacke of perfect digeſtion, then purge the bodie by purgations: and if fleume abound, you muſt firſt miniſter preparatiues to extenuate the fleume, and then purge it. The whole body being purged, you muſt apply outward medecins, wherof you may find examples before. Black ſeeds of piony doth chiefly helpe them, you may giue them fifteene ſeeds braied with water. And nouriſh the head with oile of dill made hot, and couer the head with a cap, when they go to bed. Miniſter within the body thoſe things which ſtrengthen the head, as *Aromaticum roſatum*, *Diamoſchu dulcis*, *Diamber*, *Dianthon*, *Phriſarcotion*, and ſuch other like.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of madneſſe.

De Insania Et Furore.

Mania in Greeke is a diſeaſe which the Latines call *Inſania* and *furor*: that is madnes and furiouſnes. They that haue this diſeaſe be wood & vnruly like wilde beaſts. It differeth from the freneſie, becauſe in that there is a feuer, but *Mania* commeth without a feuer. It is cauſed of much blood, flowing vp to
Cauſæ. the braine: ſomtime the blood is temperate, & ſomtime only the abundance of it doth hurt: ſomtime of ſharp and hot cholericke humors, or of a hot diſtemper of the braine. There goeth before madnes debilitie of the head, tinkling of
Signa. the eares, and ſhinings come before their eyes, great watchings, thoughts and ſtrange things approch the mind, and heauines with trembling of the head. If time proceed, there is raiſed in them a rauenous appetite, & a readines to bodily luſt, the eyes wax hollow, and they neither wincke nor becken. But madnes cauſed of blood only, there followeth continuall laughing, there commeth before the ſight (as the ſicke thinketh) things to laugh at. But when choller is mixed with the blood, then the pricking & feruent mouing of the brain maketh them irefull, mouing, angry and bold. But if the choler wax groſſe & doth pricke and pull the braine & his other members, it maketh them wood, wilde,
Victus ratio. and furious, & therfore they are the worſt to cure. Let their diet be thin ſoupings liquide, making a good ſtomacke without fulnes, & ſuch things as do engender no blood, & you muſt forbid them altogether drinking of wine. Where

this

this diſeaſe is cauſed of abundance of bloud, you muſt begin the cure with letting of bloud, it is good to cut the vttermoſt vaine of the arme, or if that doe not appeare, then cut the middle vain. In women cut the vaine on the anckles, for that prouoketh menſtruis, you muſt draw out ſo much bloud as ſtrength will ſuffer. Therefore in letting of bloud you muſt continually feele the pulſes. Moreouer after the letting of bloud, nouriſh the head with oiles of roſes & vineger, or iuice of *Poligonum*, or *oleum melinum*, or *vnguentum infrigdans Galeni*. Then apply moiſt wooll, wet in oile to the hinder part of the head. After bloud letting at night prouoke ſleepe, for if after bloudletting, watching do ſtill continue, the ſicke will appeare to be more outragious. Therefore miniſter boldly with iuice of ptiſan *Diacodion*, or mingle it with water, for ſo ſleep is plentuouſly entiſed. And two daies after that miniſter *Trochiſcies de heſteor* with *Diacodion*. Alſo oile of violets with womãs milke is good. Likewiſe an Embrocation made of dry violets, water lillies, willow leaues, and roſes, leaues of lettuce, ſeede of poppy and ſuch like, and other medicines rehearſed in the next chapter. Furthermore, the belly muſt be made ſoluble with conuenient food with cliſters. Theſe things being done, if ther be need, you muſt draw bloud out of the middeſt of the forehead, ſet horſe leaches round about the head, and ſpecially the forepart of the head For the cure of them which haue madnes cauſed of choler mixed with bloud, you muſt miniſter purgations of *Hierapicra*, & other medicins that wil purge choller. The iuice of *Eleborus niger* doth maruellous much profite in this griefe, ſo that you miniſter but ten or 12. graines at once. But if they dote and refuſe to drinke a purging medicine, then that you may the eaſilier deceiue them, commixe the purgation with their meats, or with fat figs, or dates. Alſo the only root of wilde fennell helpeth them, and the ſeed drunk with water. The ſickenes declining, bring the ſicke into a bath, and apply diſcuſſiue medicins to driue away that which remaineth. He that will haue more, let him ſeeke the chapter following *De Melancholia*.

Cure if it come of blood onely.
Blood letting.
Externe medicine.
Embrocha.
Cure of it comming of choller mixed with blood.
Balneum.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Melancholie.

De Melancholia.

Melancholie is an alienation of the mind troubling reaſon, & waxing fooliſh, ſo that one is almoſt beſide himſelf. It commeth without a feuer, and is chiefely engendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is cauſed three kind of waies: for ſometime it is cauſed of the common vice of melancholy, bloud being in all the veins of the whole body, which alſo hurteth the braine. But oftentimes onely the bloud which is in the braine is altered, & the bloud in all the reſt of the body is vnhurt, and that chanceth two waies: for either it is deriued from other places, & aſcendeth vp thither, or els it is engendred in the braine it ſelfe. Alſo ſometime it is engendred through inflãmation, & euil affect about the ſtomacke and ſides: & therfore there be three diuerſities of melancholiouſneſſe, according to the three kinds of cauſes. The moſt common ſignes be fearefulnes, ſadnes, hatred, & alſo they that be melancholious, haue ſtrange imaginations, for ſome thinke them ſelues brute beaſts, & do counterfait their voice & noiſe, ſome think thé ſelues

Cauſe.
1
2
3
Signa.

veſſels of earth, or earthen pots, and therfore they withdraw themſelues from them that they meete, leaſt they ſhould knocke together. Moreouer they deſire death, and do very often behight and determine to kill themſelues, and ſome feare that they ſhould be killed. Many of them do alwaies laugh, and many do weepe, ſome thinke themſelues inſpired with the holy Ghoſt, & do propheey vpon things to come. But theſe be the peculiar ſigns of them that haue melancholiouſnes cauſed through conſent of the whole body: for in them the ſtate of the body is ſlender, black, rough and altogether melancholious cauſed naturally or through certaine thoughtes, or watchings, or eating of wicked meates, or through Emeroids, or ſuppreſſion of menſtruis. But they which haue *Melancholia* cauſed of vice in the ſides, they haue rawnes, and much windines, ſharpe belkings, burnings, and grieuouſnes of the ſides. Alſo the ſides are plucked vpward, and many times are troubled with imflammation, eſpecially about the beginning of the diſeaſe. Alſo there is coſtiuenes of the wombe, litle ſleepe, troublous and naughty dreames, ſwemming of the head, and ſound in the eares Let his diet be ſuch, as doth not engender melancholy. Therefore let them tary in an aire hot and moiſt, and let them vſe meates of good iuice, that be moiſt and temperate, and let their bread be well baked and wrought, let their fleſh be capons, hennes, partriches, feſants, ſtony fiſhes, and ſuch like. Let the ſicke vſe wine that is white, thinne, and not very old, and let them eſchue wine that is thicke and blacke, let their exerciſes be meane, let them ride or walke by places pleaſant and greene, or vſe ſailing on water. Alſo a bath of ſweete water with a moiſt diet, let the ſicke vſe often as one of his remedies, ſleepe is wonderfull good for them, as alſo moderate carnall copulation. Let them be mery as much as may be, and heare muſical inſtruments and ſinging. But when the whole body aboundeth with melancholike bloud, it is beſt to begin the cure with letting of bloud, & you muſt cut the liuer vaine on the arme. But when the melancholicke bloud occupieth onely the braine, the ſicke needeth no bloud letting, vnleſſe there be very much bloud, and therefore let the ſicke vſe often bathings, & moiſt diet of good iuice, which is without windines, and let them vſe delectations of the mind, and let them be cured by theſe without any ſtronger remedies; but if the diſeaſe hath indured long, it requireth ſundry medicins that be ſtrong. Therefore whether the melancholiouſnes be cauſed through vice of the whole body (as is ſaid, the bloud being firſt drawne out) or through the onely euill affect of the braine, you muſt miniſter medicines that wil purge downeward. And a few daies after purging and bloud letting, let the ſicke drinke daily in the morning this decoction. ℞. floures of Borage, Bugloſſe, violets, ana. *M.* j. great Raiſons the ſtones picked out. ℥. j. harts tongue. *M.* j. Fumitory. *M.* ß Barke of the root of Capers, *Tamariſcus*. ana. ℥. iij. roots of fennell, percely, licorice, ana. ℥. j. Time, *Epithimum*. ana. ℥. ß. ſeeth all theſe in three poundes of water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and make the iuice of that decoction ſweete with ſuger, and clarifie it with the white of egges, and adde thereto ſirupe of fumitory, and *Epithimum*, ana. ℥. ij. and make a potion. After that ſort at theſe daies they miniſter ſirupe of violets, and Bugloſſe, putting to them the water of harts tongue, hops, endiue, and Borage. But ſeeing it appeareth that the ſtomack cannot beare very much

Victus ratio.

Balneum.

Vena ſectio.

Cure it ic come of melancholy bloud.

Purgatio.

Decoctum præparans.

much vsing of distilled waters, it is better to vse decoctions of the aforesaid hearbes, commixed with sirupes after this sort. ℞. Sirupe of Borage, ℥ j. sirupe of *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. decoction of harts tongue, fumitory, & endiue ℥. iij. commixe them all and make a potion. After this purge the body with *confectio hamech & diasenæ, pilulæ indæ, pilulæ è lapide armenio*, and such like. Also it is good to vse this purging decoction. ℞. floures of Borage, violets, roses. ana. *M*. j. Raisons the stones picked out, *Tamarindus*. ana. ℥. j. *Mirabolanes citrinæ, nidos, emblicos, belliricos*, ana. ℥. ß. leaues of sene, polipody, ana. ℥. vj. prunes damascene, *numero*. x. seeth them in iust quantity of water vnto the third part: then straine it & make the iuice of that decoction sweet with suger, then minister ℥. iiij. therof in the morning. If this do not sufficiently purge, you may dissolue therein. ℥ ij. of *diasenæ*. Also the infusion of *Epithimum* is maruellously good, being made thus. ℞. *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. infuse it 24. houres in ℥. iiij. of whay made of goates milke, then straine it & wring it hard, & minister it in the morning. Also the infusion of the leaues of sene is good, which may be thus made. ℞. leaues of sene. ℥. ij. prunes damascene *in numero*. xij. bray them and infuse them in whay of goats milke 24. houres, then straine it & presse it, and let it be drunke in the morning. Also it is lawfull to vse this powder. ℞. *Epithimum*. ℥. ß. *lapis armenius*, agarick. ana. ℥. ij. scamony preparate. ℥. j. cloues *in numero* 20. beat them al into pouder, & minister euery weeke. ℥. j. or. ℥. j. ß Also it is good to mollifie the belly with whay, but let it not be that which is strained out of cheese: for that is better which is separate from the milke by some decoction, and let them vse it, vntill the belly begin to be soluble, you may commixe it with hony. Also it is good a few daies after the purgation to vse clisters, and let them be such as this is. ℞. fumitory, hoppes, time. ana. *M*. j. *Epithimum*. *M*. ß. sene, polipody ana. ℥. vj. cartami. ℥. ß. seeds of annise, fennell, ammeos, comin, ana. ℥. ij. seeth all in water vntill the third part. Take of the iuice of that decoction ℔ j. *Casia fistularis* newly drawen ℥. j. *diasenæ*. ℥. ß. oiles of violets and cammomill. ana. ℥. j ß. common salt. ℥. j ß. commixe them all & make a clister. Moreouer if the disease be caused through the stopping of *Emeroides* or menstruis, then we must minister medicines which wil driue away the heauines of the minde, restore strength, & engender gladnesse, as is conserues of Borage, endiue, violets, roses, anthos, *lætificans Galeni Dianthon*, and such like. Also by no meanes you may forget the vsing of Bathes of sweete water. Also you must apply strong *Embroche* to moisten the head, as this, ℞. mallowes, *althæ*, violets. ana. *M*. j. ß. cammomill, *stæchados*. ana. *M*. j. floures of water lillies. *M*. ß. seedes of lettuce. ℥. j. seedes of scarioll. ℥. j. ß. boile them all in iust quantity of water, and sprinckle the head being shauen with the iuice of that decoction. After that sort it is good to vse vnctions of oiles, of violets, water lillies, and such like. Last of all the sicke must labor that the false and wicked imaginations, and great sadnesse may be driuen away by all meanes that can be inuented. But if the griefe bee caused through disease in the sides, they must continually vse to drinke decoction of peniroyall, not onely before purgations, but also after them, and likewise decoction of centory. Afterward also minister continually decoction of wormewood, for it is profitable to the stomacke, and it letteth ingendring of winde in the belly, nor it doth not aswage the bely extremly, but prouoketh vrine, & causeth good

Potio.

Decoctum purgans Melancholiam.

Dilutum Epithini.

Puluis purgatorius.

Clyster.

Embrochæ.

Cure if it come of disease in the sides.

Absinthij decoctum.

digeſtion, ſo that many be healed by this onely remedie. Alſo you muſt miniſter theſe things that prouoke vrine, as aniſe, *daucus*, *aſarum*, *ſmirnium*, the ſeed and roote of wilde fennell, and germaunder, let the water of the decoction of theſe be miniſtred, and miniſter the powder of them ſtrewed in drinke. Alſo it is good that the Phiſitian looke to the cure of the ſides. Therfore nouriſh them with decoction of rew, dill, wormewood, peniroyall, ſeed of *Agnus caſtus*, laurell berries, ſauery, mugwort and ſuch like. Theſe do eaſe paine and driue away inflammation, eſpecially if they be ſodden in oile and applied to the griefe like a plaiſter. Againſt windines in the ſtomacke with pricking, nouriſh the ſtomacke with comin, peniroyall and vineger ſodden together, and make emplaiſters of anniſe ſeeds, *apium*, comin, *ſmirnium*, and ſuch like, ſodden in oile, and ſuffer the plaiſter to lie ſtill a good while, as well before meate as after it. And when the plaiſter is taken away, couer the ſides largely with wooll, or with a light lambs skin, the place being firſt annointed with *oleum nardinum*. Alſo you muſt apply cupping glaſſes lightly without ſcarification. To thoſe with whom this diſeaſe hath taried long, purging by vomits is a preſent remedy. But you may not vſe ſtrong vomites, for they be malicious to the ſtomacke, and cauſe griefe in the belly. Therefore prouoke vomit with hot water, commixed with *oximell*. But if the ſicke cannot vomit by this meanes, then prouoke it by putting a feather or their finger into the mouth. Alſo the onely vomit made with *Eleborus albus* is good for them being made after this ſort. ℞. *Eleborus albus*. ℥.j. cut in ſmall peeces, and put them in a great radiſh roote, and after three daies take out the *Eleborus*, and then ſtamp and wring out the iuice of the radiſh, take of that iuice ℥.vj. hot water ℥.iiij. oximell. ℥.j. commixe them and miniſter it all at once to the ſicke warme. This hath bene proued to be very good. ℞ *ſtibium*, x. or xij. graines made in fine powder, and put the powder into foure ſpoonfull of muſcadell, or malmeſey, and let it ſtand two daies, and let it be ſhaked three times on the day, and when you will miniſter it, poure it out ſoftly, leauing the powder ſtill in the bottom of the glaſſe, and giue but the very wine: which is an excellent thing for this griefe: there be diuers other which I will omit till time more meete and conuenient.

Diairtica.

Fomenta.

Cataplaſmata.

Concurbitulæ.

Vomitus.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of trembling and ſhaking.

De Tremore.

Tremor in Latin, in Engliſh trembling or ſhaking, it is a diſeaſe which is accompliſhed with two ſundry mouings. One is while the member is conſtrained through heauines and griefe to creepe downward. The other, is while the member is caried vpward from his naturall courſe and faculty. This euill is cauſed altogether through weakenes of the ſinewes, which doth plainly declare old age: but priuately it commeth of other cauſes, (that is) of very cold temperature of nature, cold drinke taken out of time or ſeaſon, ſpecially in feuers. Moreouer the aboundance of a cold groſſe & clammy humor, and much vſing of wine that is vnmixt and cleare, old age and feare are cauſes thereof. There neede no ſignes to know neither the euill nor the cauſes of it, becauſe it may be knowen partly by ſight, and partly by the patients words, and the ſtate

Cauſa.

Signa.

of

of the body. Let the diet be ſo ordained that it may be cleane contrary to the cauſes of the diſeaſe, and let his meate be ſuch as will eaſily be diſtributed, firſt brothes, then birds that flie, & tender fiſhes. Againſt abundance of groſſe and clammie humours, it is good to vſe thoſe things which haue power to deuide, extenuate, and cut, but he muſt wholly eſchue all things, which do hurt the ſinewes, and chiefly the drinking of wine that is vnmixt. He muſt drinke wine alayed with water, or *hidromel*, or ale. For the cure, they which do tremble or ſhake through ſome manifeſt error, they muſt altogether abſtaine from things that be hurtfull. They therefore that tremble through drinking of wine, vntill they be cleane deliuered of the diſeaſe, let them drinke in the meane while *hidromel* with the decoction of ſage and betonie. If the ſhaking come of cold and groſſe humours, then miniſter the cure which is aſcribed for the palſey, & the crampe comming of fulneſſe: (letting of blood onely excepted.) You muſt annoint the outward parts of the body with oyles that will heate, & couer it with ſoft wooll. Then faſten cupping glaſſes without ſcarificatiõ from the firſt ſhutting of the ioynts, which may be drawne to the outward part of the ſkin, and ſo thereby humours may the eaſier be diſcuſſed and driuen away. Alſo it is good for the ſicke to drinke dayly fiue graines of pepper with ℥. j. ſ. of *Mulſa*. There be moreouer certaine other ſimple medicines, which being taken doe helpe trembling (that is) *Caſtoreum*, roote of *Althea*, decoction of Egrimony, & the braine of an hare. But what need many words? for the medicines and ſpecially the ointments which are preſcribed in the cure of the palſy are to be vſed as remedies againſt this diſeaſe.

Vſus curatio.

Curatio.

Concurtibula.

Simplices medicinæ.

CHAP. XXX.

I thought it good in reſpect of the worthineſſe of the member, and the manifold diſeaſes to the which it is ſubiect, to ſubnect the diſcourſes of the eye, with the remedies of the infirmities, which by experience I haue found incident vnto it: And the multiplicitie of it is ſo great, that the treatiſe thereof ſtretcheth beyond the bounds of other ordinarie Chapters. But (as I hope) the Reader will not account it as tedious, becauſe of the pleaſantneſſe and neceſſitie of the diſcourſe, though it be ſomewhat long: for God hath as it were packed and beſtowed an infinite varietie of maruels in one litle round ſubiect, which if it be conſumed & diſtributed into his parts, and according to the dignitie of euery one ſufficiently treated of, (I ſuppoſe) it would fill a great volume, and require both an exquiſite Philoſopher to conceiue aright of it, and an excellent Orator might ſeeme alſo neceſſary to lay abroad at length ſuch ſecret and wonderfull notions. But the eye which is wont with curious inſpection to prie into all other things, and to finde out the nature and order of them, hath bene vnable to vnfold his own wonderfull conſtitution, and hath bene alway blind in iudging of it ſelfe, and in foreſeeing the diſcommodities which attend vpon it, or in curing them when

they haue layed hold of it. For mine owne part I will not promise anie absolute worke, but as learned Phisitians haue thought of it, and (as I my selfe haue by experience learned) so I will frame and fashion my Treatise. An eye therefore is a member, round, whole and hard, as the Ball of a foote, or as the scoured new Bason full of cleare water, set in the well of the head, to minister light to the body, by the influence of the visible spirits, sent from the fantasticall Cell by a sinew, that is called Neruus opticus, *with the helpe of a greater light ministred from without, and very fitly is the place where the eye is set, called the* Well of the head, *for the abundance of watery humours and teares, which often do issue out thereof, sometime of sorow and heauinesse of the hart, sometime of ioy and gladnesse, and sometime of the abundance of watery humours caused of frigiditie and coldnesse: and thus haue the Phisitians described the eye. It shall not be vnnecessary also to distribute it into his parts, and therefore (as* Iohannicus *saith) the eye hath seuen coates, which they call* Tunicæ, *foure colours, & three humours. But his opinion concerning the tunicles, by sundry Anathomists haue bene euicted, making but onely sixe: yea and some there be, that (swaruing from the most receiued opinion) haue made roome for a coniecture of their owne, as they thinke by reason, excluding all those ouer-curious diuisions, (namely,* Iris, Cornea, Aranea, *and* Vuea, *and the residue) and imagin but only two coates, the one whereof they tearme* Saluatrix, *because it saueth and keepeth the humors, and the second they tearme* discolorata, *that is, hauing no colour: and they maintaine, that in the eye it selfe there is no colour, but that which is caused of the christalline humour, which if it be planted very neare to the tunicles, then the eye seemeth of no colour: if it lye deepe within, it deferreth three visible colours vnto the beholder, and (as they say) the diuerse placing of this christallin humour begetteth the varietie of colours in sundry eyes, which gaue our Anathomists matter to deuise their distributions, while they referred the colour to the nature of the tunicle, which (in deede) is to be imputed to the humours. For mine owne iudgement, if it be lawfull to iudge in so intricate a cause, (I thinke) I could very well maintaine, that the humours be the causers of the diuersity of the colours, though our blind Anathomistes do impugne in their common bookes. But I haue taken vpon me, rather to cure the malady of the eye, then to define the nature of it, although this litle* Præludium *will not seeme altogether vnnecessary.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.
Of a Cataract.

A Cataract is a corrupt water, congealed like a curde, ingendred of the humours of the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles, & set before the sight of the eye and the Christalline humour. Of these manner of Cataracts be seuen diuers spices or kinds, whereof foure be curable, and three be vncurable. *Foure kindes of Cataractes curable.* The first kind of the curable cataract, is light, right, bright, like white chalke, or as alabaster well polished, & it is caused by a stroke in the eie, either with a stick or a stone, or any other outward violence 1 The second kind is somwhat white, and much like vnto a cœlestiall colour, and this proceedeth from the stomake, & is commonly caused of vnwholsome meats, and vnkind nourishment, wherof a grosse fumosity resolueth, & ascendeth vp into the braine, & from thence falleth downe into the eyes. 2 The third kind is also whitish, but it turneth into the colour of ashes, and is commonly engendred of paine in the head, as of the Migrime, or such like diseases, and it is caused sometime of great sorrow and great heauines, whereof commeth immoderate weeping, and somtime of much cold, and much watching, & such other like. 3 The fourth spice is of a Cytrine colour, and is commonly engendred of excessiue meate and drinke indigest, and also of great labour, and sometime of the humour melancholike. 4 These are the foure curable kinds, but they be neuer healed till they be grown and confirmed, & the signe or token of their full perfectiō is, when the patient seeth right nought, vnlesse it be the brightnes of the Sun by day light, or the light of the Moon by night. Many ignorant persons, neither knowing the cause nor the properties of these manner of Cataracts, haue assaied to cure them with purgations, powders, and plaisters, but they haue bene deceiued: for neither inward medicines, nor outward remedies can any whit preuaile, vnlesse you ioyne to them *artem acuariam*, the art of the needle: which because it is vnknowen to many of our practitioners, I will insert a discourse of it in this treatise. Neuertholes, before you vse the needle, it is requisit that the brain should be purged with *pilulæ Ierosolymitanæ*; which you shall make thus. ℞. Turbith. ℥ij. aloes, hepaticke ℥ ß. mace, quibibes, mastick, & saffron. ana. ℥j. & beat them to powder altogether, & confect them with the iuice of roses, and make pilles therof: and this purgation must be ministred the day before you trie with the needle. And on the next day, while the diseased partie is fasting, about nine of the clock, cause him to sit ouerthwart a stoole in riding fashion, & plant your selfe likewise on the same stoole face to face against him, and bid him holde his sound eye close shut. Encourage him also, and exhort him to be patient, for the tractabilitie of him maketh much to the conuenient dispatch of your labour. Then with your left hand lift vp the ouer eyelid, and with your other hand put in the needle made therefore, on the side farthest off from the nose: and subtillie thirle the tunicle saluatrice, writhing alwayes your fingers to and fro, till you touch the corrupt water (which is the cataract) with the point of the needle; and then beginne by litle and litle to remoue that water from before the sight to the corner of the eye, & there keepe it with the point of your needle, the space of three minutes of an houre, and then remoue your needle

easily from it. And if it happen that it riseth vp againe, bring it back the second time. But this caution you must be sure to haue, that when the needle hath touched the cataract, you do not writh it about with your fingers to and fro, till it be set in his place before named, but that you gently draw it thither: and when you haue brought it thither, thirle the needle about, till it hath gathered the water about it, and then pull it out. (this done) Cause him to shut his eye, and apply thereto a plaister of flaxe and the white of an egge, and cause him to lye in his bed nine dayes together, remouing the plaister three times on the day, and three times on the night without any other stirring of it. Prouided, that he lye in a very darke place, and let his diet be thinne, as rere egs, and white bread. And if he be young and lustie, let his drinke be water, but if his bodie be weake, let him drinke wine well lymphate or small ale. For truly much nourishment would preiudice our cure by engendring much bloud in the eye, which is verie hurtfull now in the beginning of the healing of it. (The ninth day being passed) let him rise & wash his eye well with faire cold water, & he shall enioy his sight by the helpe of God, euen at he did before, although some one of the cataractes be fairer healed then the other, as namely the second kinde and the fourth kind: but that which is caused by a stripe, (though the water be with more ease extracted) yet the eye neuer recouereth his cleareneſſe of sight againe, because it is greatly brused and troubled by the force of the stroke. And the third kind also, though it be soone restored to his olde perfection, yet it abideth not long therin, vnlesse it be continued as well by good dyet, as also by this electuarie, which is called *Diaolibanum solarimitanum*, which is thus confected. ℞, cloues. ʒ.ij. nutmegs of India, and saffron. ana. ʒ.j.ß. and of good *Castoreum*. ʒ j. Let all these be beaten into powder and searced, and confect that powder with clarified hony, and let the patient receiue of this electuarie in the morning fasting, the quantity of a chestnut, or walnut, & at euening to bedward as much. And let him vse digestiue nourishing meats, which ingender good blood, but let him beware of beife and goates flesh, and eeles, and raw onyons, for they are often times vsed to ripen the cataract, which must be done before you striue with it. In winter, let the patient drinke hot wines, in the which let him infuse Sage and rewe. Let him also abstaine from the companie of women, neither let him frequent common bathes, for euery strong fume hurteth him greatly. The aforesaid electuarie of *Diaolibanum* is good to drye teares. It auaileth also against all manner of paine of the migrime which proceedeth of fleume. After this sort are all the curable cataractes healed, (I meane) by the needle, which must be made of gold, siluer, or of cleane Spanish Latten: for Iron or steele are very brittle and frangible. And if the cataract should proue hard in darwing down, the point may easily break, which if it should abide in the eye, it would in time consume the eye through abundance of teares and greatnes of paine.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the three kinds of Cataractes vncurable.

THe first of Cataracts vncurable, the Phisitians call *Gutta Serena*, and the signe of the knowing therof is this, when the pupill of the eye is black and cleare,

cleare, as though it had no ſpot, and the eies are alwaies mouing, and the eielids do tremble as they were full of quickſiluer. This kind of cataract is cauſed of a corruption in the mothers wombe, and therfore they that haue them, are for the moſt part borne blind, and therefore they beſtow their labor in vaine, that aſſay to cure them, for the Nerues opticke be oppilate and mortified, ſo that no medicines can preuaile, although many that haue this kind, do ſee the light of the Sunne, and the ſtature of a man euen to their liues end: we call it *Gutta ſerena*, becauſe it is engendred of a water that falleth from the braine, of the which truely one litle droppe corrupteth and diſſolueth all the humors of the eyes, and ſtoppeth the hollow nerues and ſinewes, ſo that the viſible ſpirites may no more paſſe through them. The ſecond cataract incurable is that which appeareth in the eye of a greene colour, like water ſtanding in waterie places, not much moued nor remoued: this is the moſt dangerous kind of all, if there be any degrees in them, and it is procured by the ouermuch coldneſſe of the braine, and with great buffeting and beating about the head, with great faſting, and ſuch other like. The third vncurable Cataract is, when the pupill of the eie is dilated and ſpread ſo farre, that no circles may be ſeene within the tunicles of the eyes, and the eie ſeemeth all blacke, or elſe all white. And thus are the three kinds of Cataracts vncurable diſtinguiſhed and knowen: which will forbid the practitioners to deale with them.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of diſeaſes which chance to the eyes, by blond, choller, fleume, or melancholy, and of their cures.

NOw after the deſcription of Cataracts, and the number of them which be curable, and which be not, and the curing, and knowledge of the curable and the cauſes of the vncurable, I wil ſpeake of other maladies of the eies cauſed and occaſioned of the foure humors, as bloud, fleume, choler, and melancholy. But firſt I will treate of bloud, through the aboundance whereof oftentimes there groweth a rednes in the eie, with great burning, and afterward it turneth to great itch: and this diſeaſe maketh the haire of the eyelids to fall away, and of many it leaueth not one haire, & if this malady be not cured within one year, it will make the eielids to turne vp, & make the patient blear-eied. But before it commeth to that extremity, it may be cured by this colliry, which they call *Collirium Ieroſolymitanum*, which is made in this wiſe. ℞. Tutty of *Alexander*. ℥ j. and beate it into ſmall powder, and temper it wel with two pounds of white wine, (that is) a quart, and put thereto. ℥ j. of dry roſes, and boile it with a ſoking fire, til the wine be half waſted, & then clenſe it through a linnen cloth, and keepe it in a violl glaſſe, and morning and euening put ſome of it into the eye, and if it be taken betimes, the patient ſhalbe cured within a weeke or two at the moſt. Neuertheleſſe before you apply this colliry, it ſhalbe good, if the patient be yong, to let him bloud on the vein, that is on the midſt of the forehead; or, if he be aged, to purge his braine with theſe pils. ℞. of the beſt aloes, red Sanders, *Eſula*, and rewbarbe. ana ℥. ß. Turbith, *Cataputia minor* and agarick ana. ℥. ij confect them with the iuice of mugworte, and miniſter to the patient according to his ſtrength. And truely theſe pilles are not onely good for the

itch of the eyes, but alſo for all manner of itch or ſcabbe, of what humour ſoeuer it be cauſed. There be other diſeaſes alſo of the eye engendred of blood, as the ophthalmy and pannicles; And theſe kindes of infirmities are tyed to the ſeaſon of the yeare, for they commonly happen about the end of Auguſt, and ſo forth to the end of September, and the rather then, becauſe they proceed of the eating of the varietie of frutes. The Ophthalmy is thus deſcribed: An Ophthalmy is a corrupt blood ingendred of hot humours, and commonly it ſtandeth and appeareth in the white of the eyes, and round about the tunicles and blacknes of the eye, and it proceedeth of immoderate ſorrow and burning, and of abundance of teares, which cauſeth the eyes to ſwell & make them ſo bolne, that from that time forth, the patient may take no reſt nor ſleepe, for euer it ſeemeth to him, that his eyes are full of grauel, or of thornes, or of ſmoke. In this kind of infirmitie it is good to vſe this powder, which many, (in reſpect of the notable vertue thereof) do call *Puluis benedictus*, which is thus made. ℞. white ſarcocall, and beat it to very fine powder, and fill the patients eie with it, and let him lie with it wide open til the powder be conſumed, and in the meane time make a plaiſter of flaxen herds, and waſh it well in cold water, (which when you haue drained out with your hand) lay it on the patient his eye, which he ſhall ſtill keepe open, and it will procure him to take his reſt verie well. Many ignorant practitioners, while they haue endeuored to cure this infirmitie with many impertinent medicines, haue added ſorrow to ſorrow, and haue brought the eye without his lids, and ſo made it vncurable, which by the aforeſaid powder might eaſily haue bene healed. And note that there be ſome which by the occaſion of the Ophthalmie are greatly troubled in their eyes, and haue them fumous & miſtie, which proceedeth of euill keeping, or becauſe they eate contrarie meates. Now if ſuch happen, the braine muſt be purged with theſe pilles. ℞. polipody, *Eſulæ*, *Mirabolani citrini*, and rewbarbe. ana. ℥ j. maſticke, Quibibes, Saffron, Spiknard, *nux Indiæ*, Cinamon. ana ℥ j. confect them with milke or iuyce of Quinces, and miniſter to the ſicke according to his ſtrength, and after this purgation giue him morning and euening of the electuarie of *Diaolibanum ſolarimitanum* as before. And moreouer put into his eye a powder called *Puluis Nabetis*, the making whereof we will ſhew in the cure of the third pannicle. But this muſt be done onely in the morning and euening, put in his eye the powder called *Puluis Alexandrius* as before, and this do till the parient hath recouered his health, keeping him in the meane time from hurtfull meates.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Pannicles.

Cauſæ.

THE pannicles haue the ſame cauſe that the Ophthalmy hath, (that is to ſay) ſuperfluitie of blood. Sometime they are engendred of euill keeping, and ſometime by great paines in the head, as the migrim, where the extremity of paine aſcending into the temples and ſo into the browes, maketh the veines to beat, by which painfull beating the eyes are troubled. *There be foure kinds of pannicles.* There be foure kinds of pannicles: the firſt is, when vpon the tunicle ſaluatrice there groweth a litle pearle, like the ſeed or graine of a corne called in latine *millium*. The ſecond is when it appeareth in the aforeſaid tunicle in the likenes of a ſpot or freckle

1
2

of

of the face, or like the scale of a fish. The third appeareth on the one side of the eye, like as it were a flake of snow when it snoweth. The fourth is when all the eye appeareth white, & then no blacknes, neither of the tunicle, neither of the light appereth. The first pannicle is neither cured with laxatiues, nor pouders, nor collíries, nor electuaries, nor yet with cauteries, for any of these (if they be ministred) do annoy rather then helpe. But you shall make this pretious ointment for the cure of it, which of many practitioners is proued to be of great credit. ℞. fortie tender crops of the bramble, and stampe them small, & a good handfull of rew, powder of Alabaster. ℔. j. ß powder of fennell seed. ℥. ß. oile of Roses ℔ j. all these incorporate well together, put into a new earthen pot with a quart of new white wine, and to all these put. ℥. iiij. of drie flours of cammomill, and of waxe. ℥ j. and then set the pot on the fire, & let it boile with an easie fire, till the wine be consumed, so far forth that it seemeth to frie in, & then put thereto the whites of sixe egges, and alwaies stirre it well, till it be incorporated together, and then straine it through a faire linnen cloth: with this ointment thus made, annoint the temples of the patient, & the forhead downe to the browes, and it will cure this kind of pannicle. This ointment is not onely tied to this cure, but it hath many vertues: some of the which, I will expresse, though it be impertinẽt to this discourse. It is very good against a green woũd for it both purgeth and clenseth it. It is good against the tooth ach or paine in the gums, if the cheeke be annointed therewith. It is good against the paine in the matrice, if it be eaten like an electuarie. It is good for them also who are molested in excesse, if their stomacke be annointed, & their feet together with their hands. It auaileth against the migrime, & generally for euery paine of the eyes, if the patient be annointed therwith vpon the temples as before. The second pãnicle must be cured at the very beginning, for if it be incarnate & hardned vpõ the tunicle, it may not by any subtility be remoued (the tunicle saued) & therfore it is not safe to aduenture to cure it, whẽ by continuance of time, it hath vnited it selfe with the saluatrice. But at the first you shall cure it thus: first make a cautery in the temples with a round cautery, (as shalbe shewed afterward whẽ I speake of cauteries): for fire dissolueth & consumeth the pannicle, & so keepeth it from vniting & incarnating with the tunicle, & maketh the eye fit to be clarified with this medicine following. When the eye is cauterized, put into the eye some of the pouder called *Puluis Nabetus* (which I will teach afterward) & while he lyeth with this pouder in his eye, take four crabs & rost them vnder the embers very well, & then take them, and being pilled and cored, incorporate them with the white of an egge in manner of an ointment, & lay it vpon a cleane flaxen herd, & bind it to the eye with a linnen band, and so renew this plaister morning and euening till you haue absolued your cure. Like as blood begetteth many infirmities of the eye, as namely Ophthalmies and Pannicles: so likewise many maladies are engendred of fleume, but the most notable are foure: the first is procured by ouer abundance of teares, whereby the ouer-eyelids are so softened and mollified, that within there grow haires, which prick the ball of the eye continually, as though there were hogs bristles: which haires though many bold Chirurgions haue plucked out, and so for a time eased them, yet afterward (the haires being hardned with plucking out)

3
4

Maladies cõming of fleume.
1

do gall them farre worſe then before, and ſo in the end the patient being deſtitute of any other aide, leeſeth his ſight, (the haires fretting and conſuming the ſubſtance of his eye.) But in deed the beſt way, which as yet experience hath found out to cure that malady is this. Take two needles of the length of the litle finger, and put a thred through the eyes of both of them, and binde them wel together at both the ends, thē with your fingers lift vp the ouer eye-lidde, and with theſe needles take off the lether where theſe haires grow, that the patient may ſhut and open his eye, and let the needles hang till they fal away, together with the lether which was betweene them: which done you ſhall put no medicine in the wound, for it will heale of it ſelfe: But if any pannicle be ingendred in the eye by reaſon of the vehemency of the paine, it ſhall be cured by *Puluis Nabetus* put into the eye twiſe a day, till ſuch time, as they be clarified and healed. And this powder is made of ſugar Candy of *Alexandria*,
2 which pouder is very auaileable againſt many ſickneſſes of the eie. The ſecond infirmity which happeneth to the eie by fleum, is when the eies appeare troubled and full of veines, ſo cloſed with a pannicle that the patient cannot well ſee, nor diſcerne any thing, and this ſickneſs is called *pannicum vitreum*, which is thus cured: firſt cauſe his head to be ſhauen, & thē cauteriſe him with a round cautery in the ſoft of the head, & with a long cautery in his temples, (which ſo done,) put into his eyes the powder of Candy once in the day, till that he hath receiued againe his full ſight, and twiſe in the moneth purge him with the pils called *Pillulæ Ieroſolymitanæ*, and at his going to bed, let him receiue of the ele-
3 ctuary called *Diacolibanum ſolarimitanum* till he be whole. The third infirmity cauſed by fleume is, when the eie appeareth carnous or fleſhy, the which carnoſity (if it be waxen hard by the ſpace of a yere or two) giueth place to no medicine. But in the beginning cauteries (in that manner that I preſcribed them before) will heale it, ſo that after cauterizing you very warily cut away all the carnoſity with a ſharpe raſor, without offending the tunicle Saluatrice, which whē you haue done, fill the eie full of powder of Candy, & then cauſe the patient to ſhut his eie, and then lay to it a plaiſter of flaxe of the white of an egge, & change the plaiſter twiſe on the day xv. daies, & after xv. daies, make this plaiſter. ℞. a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, & ſtampe it well, & mingle it with half the white of an egge, & ſo make a plaiſter with flaxen herds, & lay it vpon the eye, remouing it twiſe on the day, and after three daies leaue all plaiſters, & let the patient lie with his eye open, & euery day in the morning put into his eye the pouder called *Puluis benedictus*, & at euening the pouder of Cādy til he be perfectly whole: in the meane time let him abſtaine from eeles, onions, beef, and al ſuch meats. The fourth malady cauſed of fleume is, when the eye appeareth
4 all bolne, and alwaies ſheadeth teares, ſo that the patient may not open his eyes by reaſon of the heauines of the eye lids, for there is a fatnes on the ouer eye lid, which troubleth the eye very much, and this diſeaſe is called the ſcab of the eie, & it proceedeth from ſuperaboundance of ſalt fleume, the cure of it is this: you ſhall firſt purge the ſtomack and braine of the patient with this receipt. ℞. Turbith of the beſt Aloes and rewbarbe. ana. ℥ j. then take of the iuice of the roote of walwort. ℔ j. and the aforeſaid things being beaten and reſolued in the ſaid iuice, let it ſtand al night, and in the morning clenſe it, & let the

patient

patient take thereof a good quantity, and the next day ſubtilly with your Raſour pare away the aforeſaid fatneſſe, euen from the one lachrimall to the other, (which done) lay on a plaiſter of herdes and the white of an egge 9. daies after (euery day changing the plaiſter twiſe,) and then let the patient lie with his eie open, and put into it of the Colliry called *Collirium Alexandrinum*, which is taught before in the cure of the third pannicle, and that will heale it very well. I haue heard that women did rub away that fatnes with ſugar, but it returned againe afterward, though for a time they were eaſed. There is an Electuary, very auailable againſt theſe teares which is thus made. ℞ *Olibanum Caſtoreum*, nutmegges, *Nux India*, cloues, quibibes. ana. ℥ j. leaues of laurell, ſpicknard, Saffron, and *Cardamomum*. ana ℥. ij. ſeedes of dill, ſmalladge, baſilicon, Aliſander, aniſe, fennell, foure ſeeds of henbane, white poppy, muske, and champher. ana. ℥. j. all theſe muſt be beaten together to powder ſauing the *Olibanum*, which muſt be boiled with clarified hony till it be molten, and then poure it into a faire large wodden platter together with the pouder before made, and incorporate them together by often ſtirring, and let it abide in the platter ſtill, & when you will miniſter it, giue as much as a Cheſtnut at the patients going to bed. It deſtroieth the teares, together with the fleume, it warmeth the braine, it driueth away the paine of the migrime, it openeth the eies, releueth the eieliddes, and clarifieth the ſight. It is good for them that haue the goute and the palſey, and for them that haue an impediment in their ſpeach.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.

TWo kind of griefs are incident to the eyes by choler: the firſt whereof is that which is cauſed by aboundãce of choler in the ſtomack, from whence ariſeth a corrupt fumoſity into the braine, which annoyeth the braine & troubleth the viſible ſpirits, ſo that the party thus affected, ſhall imagine an obiect planted betweene him and the light in manner of a darke ſhadow. We cannot outwardly iudge of this malady for it hath no euident marke either in the eie, or without the eye, but the cauſe of it abideth in the ſtomacke, which muſt be taken away by an electuary mitigatiue, and apparatiue which will aſſwage the paine, and open the oppilate nerues and ſinewes, whereby the viſible ſpirites may haue free paſſage: you ſhall make it thus. ℞. rewbarbe, *Eſulæ minoris*, red ſaunders, *mirabolani citrini*. ana. ℥. iiij. the roots of fennell, ſpinach, banſci, percely, *Apij Sicacellæ*, ſimory, and maiden haire. ana. *M*. j. polipody of the Oke ℥. ij. boile all theſe rootes in faire water till halfe the water be waſted, and then clenſe it, and take the aforeſaid ſpices well beaten, & put them into the aforeſaid licour with two pounds of good ſugar, and make thereof a ſirupe laxatiue. But you ſhall boile it but litle the ſecond time, for the ſpices will ſoone looſe their vertue, and then clenſe it again the ſecond time, and let the patient take of this twiſe in the weeke. The ſecond infirmity ariſing of choler is, when there appeareth before the tunicle as it were a thinne cloude in a cleare aire, & this is brought by an euill diet, but it happeneth but to thoſe that be cholericke. For the cure you ſhal take a ſaphire, and breake it in a morter, and keepe the powder in a veſſel of gold, and once in the day put this powder in the patients eye,

and he ſhalbe whole in ſhort time. The ſame effect hath the gall of a hare dried and beaten into powder, and ſo put into the eye.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the infirmities of the Eye cauſed of melancholie.

OF the humor of Melancholie be ingendred in ſundrie folks many and diuers ſickneſſes by reaſon of the opilation of the ſpirits viſible, which cõmeth by the diſtéperature of the braine, which is diſquieted by the abundance of melancholy. In theſe diſeaſes therefore it ſeemeth to the patient, that there are flies flying in the aier, and that there are three or foure moones, and three or four faces, when he beholdeth but one: but theſe infirmities happen moſt commonly to aged perſons, which are melancholie, ſuperfluitie of melancholie dimming their eye ſight. There muſt not therfore any medicine be put into the eye of the patient, but make this electuarie mitigatiue & apparatiue which wil open the opilations of the nerues, which did before forcloſe the way to the viſible ſpirits. The electuary is thus confected. ℞. the iuyce of liquorice, ciebright, *ſileris montani*. ana. ℔. ß. the ſeeds of rew baſilicon, nettels that commeth frõ beyond the ſea, or Ceciliã, or fenel, of aliſander, of *apium*, & caraway ſeed. ana. ℥. ij. maſticke, cloues, nutmegs, cinamon, Quibibes, *gummi*, almonds, *Cerache pomi gummorum*, *Aragunton*, and ſaffron. ana. ℥. ß. kernels of quince apples ℥ j. all theſe muſt be beaten together into ſmall powder well ſearced, and then you muſt confect them with good ſugar, & make an electuarie of it, and of this let him receiue morning and euening, till he be healed. It auaileth alſo againſt that dimnes of the eyes which commeth by thought and of much heauines & maketh them to ſee more cleerely, and of that effect it hath his name (that is) *clarificatum oculorum*. There is alſo another infirmitie which cõmeth of melancholie, and that is, when the paine ſuddenly aſcendeth into the eyes, & grieueth ſo extremely, that it ſeemeth to the patient that his eyes would ſtart out: they appeare alſo moſt commonly very bolne. Many which are troubled with this kind of maladie, do looſe their ſight altogether, and many (though there be ſome which do ſee) notwithſtanding but very feebly. But the ſeaſonable applying of remedies preuenteth either diſcommoditie. After this ſort then you ſhall encounter with this euill. You ſhall firſt purge the ſtomacke & the braine with theſe pilles. ℞. Aloes *mirabolani citrini*, turbith, ſaunders citrine, and rew barbe ana. ℥ ß. ſcammony, mirrhe, ſaffron, balſamum, maſticke, *lignum aloes*, *olibanum*, white agaricke, *nux Indiæ*, iuyce of liquorice, ſeed of apium, lettuce, ſuccorie, baſilicon. ana. ℥. j. Beat all theſe to powder, and confect them with the iuyce of roſes, and make pilles of them, and giue the patient after his power. The ſtomake & the braine thus purged, lay vpon the eye this plaiſter; ℞. foure apples or crabbes, and roſt them vnder the embers till they be ſoft, then core them and pare them, and bruſe them wel in a morter, and to foure of them put halfe the white of an egge, and ſo bray them together till they be well incorporate, and ſo lay them vpon flaxen herds, and morning and euening apply it to the eye, and you ſhall find that it will do much good: for it both aſſwageth the ſwelling, leſſeneth the paine, refreſheth the ſight, and with all theſe fixeth alſo the eye in his place. There is another infirmitie alſo which proceedeth

by

by the abundance of melancholy and that they call *Vngula*: for it is much like the naile of a finger, sometime it breedeth in the corner of the eye to the eare ward, & so spredeth ouer the eye if it be not hindred & resisted betimes: sometime also it happeneth that another vngle ariseth in the other corner, and if they meete, it maketh the cure more vncertaine, yet by heedfull skill and discretion it may be healed by the hand. Take therfore a twich of siluer, & therewith lift up subtilly the vngle frō the tunicle, proceding to the lachrimal where it grew, & there cut it away, and then lay the white of an egge and flaxe vpon it ten daies together, remouing it twise on the day, and at the end of ten daies wash his eye with hot water, & put into it *Pulus Nabetus* before named, till the eye be sufficiently cleared. Let him abstaine from such meates as do feed melancholy. It hapeneth also sometime, that the superfluous abundance of melancholy, seated in the braine, begetteth a drines in the eye lids, which afterward turneth to itching & burning. But this disease is cured by letting the patient blood on the middle veine in the forhead, & after with vsing this collity. ℞ forty tender croppes of the bramble, and stamp them small, then put them in a new earthen vessell together with a quart of good white wine, and so boile them till the halfe be consumed, and then clense it and preserue it in a glasse to your vse, and twise in the day put some of it into your patient his eye, till it be whole. Of the like superfluitie of melancholy groweth sometime a corrupt humour without the eye vppon the lidde, the which bolneth all the one side of the face with extreame paine, but with no offence to the sight of the eye. The signes of this disease are these: it maketh the eye lids hard and red, and keepeth the eie so shut, that the patient may not open it. For the cure of it, you shal take fine floure of old wheate & yolks of egs. ana. ℥.j. of saffron. ℥.j. & stamp them well together with womans milke, till it be as an ointment, then make a plaister of it, and apply it, so that none enter into the eye. You may also vse this. ℞. a lillie roote and crabs, and rost them in the embers till they be soft, then taking away the core & the pilles of the crabs, stampe them both of like quantitie with the whites of egges, and so vse it: On the steppe of the wound, where the sore was, lay this oyntment, that it may draw the flesh together, so that no scarre do appeare. ℞. *Aloes*, hennes grease, oyle of bitter almonds, and white waxe, and incorporate them together into an ointment and apply it. It is very good in all the diseases of the eyes, to annoint the temples of the patient, and the forehead with *vnguentum alabastrum* before named, for it asswageth the paine and helpeth the other medecines in their operation. It happeneth manie times in this infirmitie that the patient his eye liddes for want of prouident skill doe reuerse, which is a great bleamish. In this case you must subtillie with the Rasour deuide the eye lid from the wound, and part them with a litle roule made of fine linnen cloth dipped in the white of an egge, which you shall lay betwixt the lid & the sore xv. daies together, changing it daily & then make the ointment of hennes grease & white waxe, and lay of it vpon the roule, and it will consume the wound, so that there shall appeare no Cicatrice. The like cure you shall vse, when the reuersement of the eye liddes is caused of superfluitie of bloud. Of the melancholike humour there is also engendred in many men a sicknes, which groweth betweene the nose & the eye, and it ap-

Signa.

Curatio.

peareth like a peece of lung or light. It is grauelly, and auoideth out alwaye filth. This sore is called *vulgalpus*. For the cure of it, you shall only take a twich, and lift the sore vp subtilly, and with the point of a rasour cut vp the sore by the roote, and cauterize it with a hote iron, and vse the ointment before rehearsed, which they call *vnguentum subtile*, that is, hennes grease and white waxe, & annoint the place with it, till it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of diseases happening to the eye by outward causes, as by blowes, with stickes, staues, or stones.

THe onely thing generally, that you shall vse when the eye is smitten, is the white of an egge and flaxen herds, to the which God hath giuen three especiall properties. The first is to asswage the paine. The second to purifie and cleare the sight. The third is to let and keepe away all superfluous humours which otherwise would fall into the eie. You shall remoue it foure times in the day, and twise in the night, by the space of xv. dayes together, annointing in the mean time the temples of the patient with ointment of Alablaster, which as I told you before, was an adiuuant and aid to all medicins. Now after the xv. daies be expired, if you shall perceiue the tunicle saluatrice to be hurt and broken, you shall then take xij. streines of the new laid egges of white hens, & put them in a morter, labouring them with a pestill, till they be vnited in maner of an ointment, and so reserue it in a glasse, & twise in the day & once in the night put a litle of it into the eye, & it will knit together, & make so nude againe the tunicle if it be broken or hurt: after this manner I haue cured many wounds in the eye, which haue seemed dangerous, and vncureable to the ignorant beholder. But sometime it will happen, that through the force of the blow, there will grow a cataract, and then in the beginning the tunicle must be saued by this forenamed prescript, and the cataract must grow without let to his full perfection, and so be healed by the needle. Some vnskilfull practitioners vse to lay a plaister made of waxe and commin to the eye, if it be smitten, and other some vse *Olibanum* and wormewood, but both those and all such like hote ointments are passing euill, because they consume & wast the substance of the eye. It followeth now that I speake of watery eies and of corrupt humors like teares, which the Phisitians cal *fistoles*, to discerne betweene the *fistula* and the watery profluence of teares. You shall therefore vse this skill: lay your forefinger betweene the nose and the corner of the eye, and straining the place a litle, if it be a *fistula*, you shall see the matter of it runne out at the points of the eye liddes: but if none appeare, then iudge it to be a watery humour. Many boisterous fellowes, (seeing the place of the issue of the *fistula*) haue vsed to cauterize it with a hot iron, thinking by that meanes to haue dried vp the matter, which indeede they haue done, but they haue destroied the sight, and deformed also the place. This therefore is the surest way or course that you can take, to cure the *fistula*. First purge the patient his stomacke with Pilles of Ierusalem, and then with the point of a rasour you shall make a litle incision betwixt the neather eyelidde and the nose so directly that the lidde be not touched: and this incision shall be throughout the skinne in a long wise, & into the same

ſame put in the graine of a fich binding it on with a litle pillow of linnen, and ſo let it lye till the next day: then remouing the fiche, you ſhall in the hole where it lay, put in a litle of ſome powder Corraſiue. After the powder is put in, lay a plaiſter of flaxen heardes, and the white of an egge (the patient alwaies ſhutting his eye for feare of the powder.) In the morning after, you ſhall apply nothing but cleane ſwines greaſe, till the mortified fleſh be raiſed, and when it is raiſed and remoued, put in a peece of a ſpunge as much as the fiche, in the hole which the powder made, and it will purge the drines of the wound and when you ſhall perceiue it throughly dried, leaue the ſpunge, and binde nothing to it elſe but faire drie lint of linnen till the patient be whole. Nowe concerning the teares, they iſſue out of the eye liddes both the vpppr and the neather: but there is difference betweene the cauſes of their iſſuing from both places: for they which proceed from the neather eye lidde, come from the hart, by reaſon of ſorrow, dread, or ſmart, or they be cauſed by ſome manner of violence: but the teares which flow out of the hole of the ouer eyelid, proceed from the braine by reaſon of corruption and abundance of humours, and their courſe ceaſeth not, vnleſſe the matter be purged with electuaries and cauteries, as I haue ſhewed before.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of diſeaſes which come by skipping in of ſtones or chippes by chaunce into the eyes.

THeſe diſeaſes happen eſpecially to Maſons, Millers, Carpenters, Wrights and ſmiths: for if any chiue, chip or duſt skippe into the eye, and through negligence be left behind, it will incarnate vpon the tunicle ſaluatrice, & then can you not cure the eye, but by remouing and drawing the ſaid chiue, which you ſhall do with your needle, deuiding it cunningly from the tunicle. And if it happeneth that there be any pit in the place, where it lay, by reaſon that it abode long time therein: then put into the eyes the ſtreines of egs, ordered as I declared before, twiſe in the day and once in the night, and vpon the eye lay a plaiſter of flaxe, and the white of an egge, & within three dayes it will heale the party diſeaſed. And after this ſort you ſhall alſo remoue the hawe in the eye. But you ſhall in drawing out the hawe, bind two needles faſt together at the toppe, and ſo take the hawe betweene the two points, & ſo caſily rowling the needles bring it away. Sometime it happeneth that the eye is ſtung with a Bee or waſpe, or ſome other venemous thing, or blaſted with an infected ayre: and if any of theſe happen, the eye is much diſquieted and grieued, ſo that the patient may take no reſt, and it bolneth vp that he may not ſee. The onely cure for ſuch and the like accidents is this, as I haue by experience often tried. Take a handfull of *Cardus benedictus*, and ſtampe it ſmall, and temper it well with halfe the white of an egge, and therwith make a plaiſter laying it on flaxen herds, binding it hard to the eye, where it ſhall lie till it be dried, and then apply another: and ſo conſequently vſe it till your patient be throughly whole. Theſe qualities this herbe hath: it aſſwageth ſwelling, and eaſeth the paine, deſtroieth the venime, & putteth away blood from the eyes. This is alſo a preſent remedy for the eies that are bloudſhed, when they burne as though there

were grauell in them. And thus much for the especiall discourses of sundrie diseases, which do most commonly bend to that litle member, the eye, together with their particular cures.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of paine in the eares.

De Avrivm Dolore

PAine in the eares is caused of some through cold taken in iornying by cold windes. Also sometime it is caused of cold bathes and medicinable waters. Also it chanceth to many through hot distempure. Sometime of inflammation. And like as inflammation by stretching out the partes that be inflamed, engendreth paine, euen so a windie vapour, or a humour grosse and clammie, for lacke of passage causeth paine. Also humours that be biting, and like whay and matter, do cause paine in the eares. Paine in the eares caused of colde, is soone knowen by the patients words, & because there is continuall great paine without heauines, or distention, or burning. The paine which is caused of hot distempure is knowen, in that there is felt paine and heat without heauines or bolning. But if heauines, distention, and beating heat and paine be felt in the head then the paine in the eare is caused of inflammation. Onely distension without heauines declareth a windie vapour which cannot find passage out. If there be heauines in the head & the hearing: the paine is caused of grosse & clammy humours. If the paine be caused onely of cold, it will soone be cured by hot remedies, that is, with oile of rew, laurell, nard, dill, lillies, of *Euphorbium*, & spike. Also if you seeth rew, & common oile or pepper, or *Castoreum*, it is a good remedy. Also oile in which garlicke is sodden: or an onyon, dropped into the eares is maruellously good. There are some that do cut out the core of a great onion, then they fill it with oile, and they heate it meanely in hot embers, and poure it into the eares, when it is strongly strained. Also a very litle *Euphorbium* commixed with much old oile, is much commended of Galen. Whatsoeuer you do minister, let it be ministred hote. But when some medicinable water is continued in the passage of hearing, you must continually poure in oyle that is very thinne, that it may be washed: then wipe it with soft wooll, and againe poure in more. The white of an egge mitigateth the paine very much. Also womans milke. Also goose grease profiteth much: likewise foxes grease. But to draw out plentie of water, nothing is better then to sucke and to draw it out with a quill or a hollow pipe holden in the mouth. When paine is caused of hot distempure, then oyle of roses is maruellously good for the head, if it be dropped into the eare, and vineger and oile of roses is good, or the white of an egge, or womans milke, or iuyce of nightshade, or this; ℞. oyle of roses. ʒ.ij. Iuyce of nightshade. ʒ.ij. vineger of roses. ʒ.j.ß. commix them. If the paine be caused of inflammation, or grosse and viscous humours, you must vse medicins which doe deuide and take away obstructions and stoppings: as be all bitter things which purge and clense without Erosion, as is *yrisillirica*; all kindes of *Aristolochia*, bitter almonds, the roote of *nitisalba*, centory the lesse, *polium* & cinamon. Also oile of almonds and other which do purge, clense, wipe, and vnstoppe the passages without griefe. Therfore of those you may make medicins,

Causa.

Signa.

Cure of cold.

Of water

Of heat.

and

and drop thereof into the eares. Among other also the iuyce of leekes dropped into the eare warme is good, or iuyce of leeks mixed with hony. If that the paine be caused of inflammation, you must by and by let bloud on the *Cephalica* veine that is on the same side: and with cliſters you must pull backe the humours that do flow. Afterward you must drop in *oxyrhodinum* warme, or goose grease, or hennes grease, with oyle of roses. But if the inflammation be vehement: then to cease paine drop warme into the eare the white of an egge with womans milke. Also this medicine is good; ℞. iuyce of senegreene. ʒ.ij. oyle of roses. ʒ.ß. vineger. ʒ j.ß. commixe them all, and drop it into the sore eare. Apply those things outwardly which cease paine, and do digest the matter heaped together. If the inflammation be verie vehement, it is necessary to vse those things which do astonie the sense easily, and it is no small danger, lest that the sinewe by which the vertue of hearing is dispersed in the braine, be hurt thereby. But commixe a litle *Opium* with womans milke and the white of an egge. Also temper *Opium* with *Castoreum*: there must be of each a like quantitie, or double as much *Castoreum*. The liquor in which the aforesaid medicins ought to be tempered, being first finely beaten, must be *Sapa*: for it doth cease paine much more then sweet wine. *Sapa* is new wine sodden till it come to the third part. There be somme that commixe *Opium* with oyle of roses, or violets after this sort; ℞. of *Opium*. ℈.j. oyle of roses and violets. ana. ʒ.j.ß. Also the Antidote *Philonium* dissolued in womans milke, & dropped in, is good. Without you must nourish the eare continually with common oyle, or with hote foment, and you must dip wooll in it, and put it into the eare: but in such wise that it may not touch the places that be troubled with inflammation. But whē the paine waxeth old, & turneth to suppuration and impostumation, you shall drop into the eare a medicine of the iuyce of lineseed onely with oile of roses or cammomill mixed with it.

Venæ sectio.

Sapa.

CHAP. XL.

Of sound or noyse in the eares.

De Sonitv Avrivm.

Causa.

NOyse and tinckling in the eare, for the most part is ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammie humours. Also manie times it is caused through an exquisite tardines of the sense of hearing. It is also caused through weakenesse of the members; when it chanceth in the recouering of a disease, some humour is taken into the sinewes of the eares: also it is caused of outward things, as of cold, heate, or a blow on the head. If the euill chaunce through outward causes, it is soone knowne by the patients wordes. Nowe because the noyse commeth by litle and litle, or at one time, or suddenly on a heape, that is also conuenient to knowe the disease by. For if the sounding do come, and then rest for a certaine space, it is euident that a windie vapour is shut in, and cannot get out, and so causeth sounding, and specially when the sick hath eaten windy meats. But if such soūd in the eares do not come suddenly, but by litle and litle, and there is felt withall a heauinesse and waight: then it declareth the euill to be caused of grosse and viscous humours. For the cure, if the sound in the eares be caused of grosse and viscous humours, or of vapours: in

Signa.

Of windie vapours.

Of grosse humours.

Cure if it come of grosse humors or vapors

the beginning purge the head with *Pilulæ Cochiæ* & such like. But first minister before them potions and medicins which haue vertue to extenuate & deuide. Then you must vse masticatories and sternutaments. Moreouer you must drop into the eares oyle of bitter almonds, or oyle in which *Castoreum* is brayed. Also let the eare be inclined to the vapour of the water, in the which *Stechas*, worm-wood, marioram, mints and origan haue bene sodden. Iuyce of rewe, sodden in the rind of a pomgranate is maruellous good. Also *Sacculi* made of betony, *Stechados*, cammomill, marioram, & other things a litle before rehearsed are very good, if they be applied to the eare warme. If the sound in the eare be caused through sharpnes of the sense of hearing, which is knowen, if when the patient is hungrie it increaseth, & when he is full the noise is lesse. Then you must vse those things which do astonie the senses, but you must take good heed thereof, and therfore begin with the easiest, & if need be, proceed afterward to stronger. Oile of roses is onely commended with a graine or two of *Opium* put to it. Galen in this case praiseth iuice of *Mandragora* and poppy. But if noise in the eares chaunce in feuers, there neede no remedie for it, for commonly it goeth away straight. But if it remaine after a disease or a paine in the head, then you must nourish the eares with decoction of wormwood, pouring in vineger and oyle of roses, or iuyce of raddish with oyle of roses, or the best aloes tempered with *mulsa*: and if this helpe it not, vse blacke hellebore brayed with vineger.

Sacculi.

If it come of sharpnes of hearing.

CHAP. XL.

Of deafnesse and slow hearing

Svrditas Et Gravis Avditvs.

THE eare is so afflicted, that it causeth not onely dulnesse of hearing: but also deafnesse, that one can heare nothing at all. Sometime deafnesse beginneth at ones birth, and somtime it chanceth after we be borne, which doth chance, either through cholericke humours flying vpward, or through crude and grosse humours stopping the hearing. If deafnesse come of cholericke humours specially after feuers, then is it wont with sodaine incursions to run to the braine. Also the face and all the state of the bodie will shew a cholericke temperature. But if it come of grosse humors, there is heauines of the head, and other tokens be present which shew flegmaticke humors. They which remaine deafe from their birth, or also soone after they be borne, being perfectly deafe of a long time, are vncurable, neither doth any of them euer speake. They that be not altogether deaf, yet, if it haue long cõtinued, it is very hard to cure. Deafnesse which is caused through cholericke humors flying vpward, is soone driuen away by medicines purging choler. If the deafnesse be engendred of crude and grosse humours, this dull hearing is cured by bloudletting, or onely by purgation of *Hiera* or *Pilulæ cochiæ*, and other such like. But minister before *Oximel*, and other medicins that haue power to deuide grosse and clammy humours. The whole bodie being purged, you must draw fleume out of the head by Masticatories, sternutaments, and *Errhinis*. Furthermore, they must be dried and by all meanes strengthened. Also he must vse a bath that floweth of it self, or salt water. You must put into the eare medicines that deuide and cut grosse and viscous humours, whereof there be many declared in the chapter against

Causa.

Signa.

If of cholericke humours.

If of grosse humors.

sound

ſound of the eares. But priuately iuyce of rew with hony, or *Caſtoreum* with oile of dill is good. Alſo you muſt vſe foments, and leane your eare vpon a quill or reede, hauing one end made fit for the eare, and the other for the hole in the couer of the pot being euery where faſt ſtopped. Let there be in the pot wormwood, mints, marioram, origan, ſtæchas, or ſuch like ſodden in water, that the vapour that commeth from thence, may paſſe into the courſe of hearing. Alſo this medicine dropped into the eare is good; ℞. oile of *Caſtoreum*. ℥. ſ. comin ſeed. ℥. ij. powder of *Caſtoreum*, ℥. j. a great onion the core taken out, put in the powders of comin and *Caſtoreum*, and put in the oyle, and wind it vp in wet papers, and put it vnder the hot embers, and when it is roſted, ſtraine it hard, and let it be dropped into the eare. Moreouer the vapour of vineger taken with a reede, as is taught before is maruellouſly good. Let their diet be altogether thinne, and meates of light digeſtion. *Victus ratio.*

CHAP. XLII.

Of impoſtumes breeding in the eares.

De Parotidibvs.

Parotides in Greeke be inflammations which are wont to iſſue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is cauſed of abundant hot bloud which is either mixed with choler, or fleume, or melancholie. And ſometime it is cauſed of humours compact in the head, and ſometime of the reſt of the bodie by ſickneſſe, and ſpecially by feuers. *Parotides* which are cauſed through fulneſſe and plentie of hote bloud, they do ingender moſt vehement paine. They which are cauſed of cholericke bloud, they ſeeme much like *Eriſipela*, and they vexe the place that is diſeaſed with no griefe. That which is cauſed of melancholy bloud they be not redde, nor they vexe not with vehement paine, but they be hard. They which be ingendred of flegmaticke bloud, in the ſwelling they be raiſed ſharpe vpward. Let their diet be ſuch in a maner, as is appointed in other inflammations. The cure (if age and other things will ſuffer) muſt be begun by letting of bloud: you muſt cut the *Cephalica* veine on the ſame ſide. Furthermore we vſe not in *Parotides* as we do in other inflammations, to apply in the beginning things that repreſſe, but contrariwiſe things that do draw. And if they be not in effect, faſten cupping glaſſes, or apply continually foments. To mitigate the paine you muſt chuſe thoſe things which haue heate with moderate moiſtneſſe, mitigating and ceaſing paine, meete to ripe and digeſt; as is, decoctions made of wheate or barley, or the meale of lineſeed with *mulſa* or fenugrecke, or althea, or cammomil: for the ſame purpoſe annoint the place continually with butter, putting to it the whites of egges. Alſo ſwines greaſe with butter melted, with a litle waxe put to it, that it may be a ſoft cerot, may be wel applied. But in them that be meek, (that is) in gentle *Parotides*, in which there flow not ſuch plentie of humours that they cauſe vehement paine, nor there is no heate of the humour, ſuch are eaſily cured with foments of brine, and plaiſters and medicines altogether diſcuſſiue, as is *Diachrilon*. If the *Parotides* can not be diſſolued, you muſt vſe medicines to ripe, and bring the impoſtume to matter, as is, wheat meale with the decoction of figs and oile. Alſo the medicin that is made of meale and floure & leuen. When the *Parotides* be riped, either *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Curatio.* *Cure of them that be meeke.*

cut the skinne with a knife, that the matter may be let out, or the botch may be broken with a sharpe medicine, as that which is broken with garlicke, and such like, or to proue howe to dissolue it by medicines which haue vertue to draw and extenuate, remouing it twise dayly, and nourishing it vntil the paine be somewhat released, and the more part of the matter dissolued. And if there be hardnesse, that also must be mollified. Therefore you must make medicines that be of mixt qualities, so that you must commixe drawing things with mollifiers, as is calues suet, goats suet, the marrow of a hart, *bdellium*, *styrax*, *ammoniacum*, and such other like.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of vlcers in the nose.

De Ozaenis.

Causa. Ozene in Greeke be vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which is breathed an vnkind and stinking sauor. Through sharpe & rotten humours which flow to the nosthrils, filthinesse is ingendred, which if they be onely sharpe, they ingender vlcers hard to be cured, but yet they stinke not much. Therefore the cure of these vlcers consisteth chiefly in this, that in the beginning the head be dried and strengthened. Because vlcers come through the flowing of corrupt humours, which flow out of the head to the nosthrils, the whole head must be strengthened and dried, that no superfluities do flow from the nosthrils. You shall adde strength to the head after this sort, first you must clip the head, then straight you must lay on it things that do restraine & bind, as is oyle of roses, alume, vnripe galles, willow leaues, vineger, & such like: this must be continually layd and annointed on the head ix. dayes. When with those things the head is made strong, then go about to cure the nosthrils, that you may dry vp the matter with medicines that be repulsiue and discussiue. Therefore those things that repell and driue backe be things sharpe, & sower, which also are reckened with restrictiue things. Discussiue things must be hot and drie of vertue. Therefore to our *Ozene* you must drop in the iuyce of calamint, or blow in the powder therof being dried with a quill, or drop in hony into the nosthrils. A while after minister sternutaments to bring them to scurfes, which wil fall off in three or foure dayes. When they are fallen off, cure it with goose grease and butter, and oyle of roses. The vlcers in the nosthrils may be annointed with iuyce of a pomgranate boyled in a brasen vessell vnto the half, or a whole pomgranate sodden in sweete wine brayed & dropped in. Also this is good: ℞ drie alume. ℥. j. ß. mirrhe. ℥. j. the rind of a pomgranate, sumach, salt gemme, saffron, frankensence, ana. ℥. ß. beate them, & blow into the nose of the powder. If that after the vlcers there remaine paine, vse this ointment: ℞ oyle of roses, mirtels. ana. ℥. j. burnt lead, litarge. ana. ℈. ij. Ceruse, bolearmenie, *balaustium*. ana. ℈. j. white waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment, and annoint the place.

Sternutamentum.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of bleeding at the nose.

De Sanguinis Ex Naribvs Profluvio.

Causa. *Externa.* Fluxe of bloud at the nose is caused partly outwardly, and partly inwardly. Outward causes be falling frō a high place, a stripe, vehement exercise, and

tarying

tarying in the ſunne. Inward cauſes is plenty of blood or thinneſſe of the ſame. You may know if it come through plenty of blood by heauy paine in the head, much blood in the face, and redneſſe of the eyes. Let the diet be thinne, and ſuch that it may coole and make thick the blood. Therfore let the aire be cold, and the meat of good iuyce, and eaſy to digeſt. If the blood be verie hot, let the ſicke eate lettuce, endiue, peares, quinces, chickens roſted or boiled with veriuice. Let him drinke thicke red wine mixt with water, or cold water, or decoction of cinamon, by which throughout my booke, I meane water, in which a litle cinamon is ſodden, leſt water through his coldnes might hurt a weak ſtomacke. Let the patient ſpeak litle, and let him eſchue mouing, trouble of mind, and chiefly anger. Alſo it is good to haue the lower parts of the head higheſt. For the cure you muſt take heed, that in bleeding at the noſe the lower parts ly higheſt, and the head downward. The cure muſt be begun with thoſe remedies which turne the blood to other parts of the bodie. Firſt therfore if the bodie be full, and age will ſuffer it, and if the ſicke be not reſolued, you muſt cut the veine in the arme right againſt the flowing of blood at the noſe. When you haue drawen out a litle, then let it alone an houre, then draw out ſome againe, and afterward againe and againe, as the patientes ſtrength will ſuffer it. Moreouer friction and rubbing of the inferior partes, as the armes, handes, thighes, ſhare, & feet is verie profitable: and it is maruellouſly good to put the feet into warme water euer rubbing them vp and downe. Alſo ſtrong bindings of the extremities is to be accounted among the remedies that pull back. Alſo great cupping glaſſes faſtened to the ſides doe retaine blood breaking out at the noſe. If the bloud flowe from the right noſethrill, faſten the cupping glaſſe vpon the liuer: if at the left noſethrill, vpon the ſplene. If the blood come from both the noſethrilles, faſten cupping glaſſes to both places. Alſo faſten them to the ſhoulders with ſcarification. Thoſe being done, miniſter both within the bodie and without, things which coole and reſtraine. Outwardlie apply to the forehead an *Epithema* of iuyce of plantaine, lettuce, ſorrell, ſheepherds purſe, knot-graſſe, or make it with the waters of them diſtilled. A linnen cloath wet in colde vineger is maruellous good, being applyed to the forehead and necke againe and againe. Alſo nouriſh the forehead with ſpunges of cold water. Alſo it is good to vſe this *Epithema*, applyed to the forehead & the liuer. ℞. water of roſes, nightſhade, ſorrell ana. ℥ iij powders of *Diatrion ſantalon*, *Diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ℥ j. bole armenie, yuorie burnt, *lapis hæmatites* ana. ℥ ſ. commixe them all, & make an *Epithema*. Alſo you muſt put into the noſe, medicines to ſtop blood, for the which this is very good: ℞. frankencenſe. ℥ ij. aloes ℥ j. powder them, & mixe therwith the white of an eg, vntill it be as thicke as hony, then commixe the ſoft haires of an hare with it, and apply it to the noſe. Alſo you may writh a linnen cloth (dipped therein,) in the noſthrils. Alſo mints brayed, and put into the noſethrilles is thought to be exceeding good. Alſo a ſpunge wette in ſtrong and ſharpe vineger, may be put into the noſe that bleedeth. Alſo this medicine is good. ℞. egge ſhelles. ℥ ij. vnripe galles. ℥ j. being braied put them into a writhed linnen cloth wet in water or vineger, and put it into the noſethrils. Alſo it is good to ſtoppe the eares ſtrongly with linnen & wax, and to hold in the mouth cold raine water. Alſo iuyce of the leaues

Interne. *Signa.* *Victus ratio.* *Potus.* *Curatio.* *Venæ ſectio.* *Concurbitulæ.* *Epithema* *Aliud Epithema.* *An excellent medicine to ſtop blood.*

of nettle, hauing linnen dipt into it, and put into the nose, stoppeth bleeding at the nose, also iuyce of horse taile, or the leaues braied and applied are good. The flesh of snailes brayed with vineger or with their shelles burnt and braied are good being applied to the forehead, and nose with vineger. But aboue all, the blood which commeth out at the patientes nose is good, if it be burned in an earthen pot and then beaten, take of it ℥ iij. bole armoniacke ℥. j. champhore ℈ j. with the white of an egge and a litle vineger, make it thicke like hony, and lay it to the forehead, and put it into the nose. Necessitie requiring it is lawfull to put to ij. graines or iij. of *opium*. Asses doung dried and made into powder is wonderfully good, and also hogges doung hath the like propertie. Within the bodie minister those things which do coole and restraine, as be sirupes of roses, sorrell and *nymphæa*, trochiskes of *terra lemnia*, or their iuyces, and such like medicins. Moreouer if in the meane season any blood flowe into the belly or other places of the bodie, if it be much and plenteous, you must auoid it by medicines which will dissolue and bring forth the cloddie matter.

Optima medicina.

CHAP. XLV.

Of distillation, reume, and hoarsenesse

De Distillatione, Gravedine, Et Raucitate.

Catarros in Greeke, is called *Distillatio* in Latin, and in English Reume. It is whereas an humour falleth downe to the mouth and the iawes. *Grauedo* is when the humour falleth into the nose, and causeth the pose. *Raucedo* is when the humour chaunceth to distill to the sharpe arterie. The cause of flowing of the humour is the braine, the which through cold is brought to a cold tempure, which chaunceth specially to them, which go suddenly about in the cold bare headed. But through heate the braine is warmed and stuffed, the coldnes of humours which be in the braine, wringing hard like as a sponge dipped in water is wrong with ones hand. It causeth the flowing of humours to the lower partes. So often times heate going about in the head dissoluing the humours in the braine, ingendreth distillation. Moreouer all things that replete the head without measure, do cause flowing of humours into the inferiour parts. Also wine immoderatly drunke, and hote bathes, rawe meate remaining in the stomacke, and vaporous things in the head. The signes if the fluxe of humours come of heate are these; the head is hote, and a sharpe and thinne humour distilleth as well by the nose, as by the mouth: also the face and the nose is redde, and for the most part there followeth a feuer. Contrariwise, they that haue the fluxe caused of cold, their head and their forehead is stretched foorth euery where, the passages which be in the bones called *Ethmoides*, are shut vp, so that the voyce cannot passe downward by the nosethrils. Also a flegmaticke and thicke humour distilleth out of the nose. Let them eschue aire that is verie hote or verie cold, especially from a bath, and from South, and North windes, and all things that can bind or dissolue humours in the braine. Let him vse meates of good iuyce, easie to be digested. Let him eschue those things that send plentie of vapours to the braine, as be onions, garlicke, mustard seed, radish & very hot odoraments. Moreouer they which

Distillatio.
Grauedo.
Raucedo.
Causæ.

Colde.
Heat.

Repletion of the head.

Signa.

Calor.

Victus ratio

which haue the distillation must eate lesse at supper then at dinner: let their drinke be *aqua mulsa*, or decoction of Cinamon or barley: let them eschue sleeping in the day, and lying vpright in the night. For the cure when the head is vexed with a hote distempure, you must vse those remedies, which are good for paine in the head ingendred of such a cause. The most present remedy of the head is to sprinckle and poure vppon the head plenty of hote water: that is able to driue out the hote vapours ingendred in the head. Moreouer such must take comfort of warme bathes of sweete water. They which haue their head vehemently hote and burning, and for that are troubled with continuall distillation, it is best for them, in sommer to be annointed with oile of roses. If a cold distempure vexe the head, it must be annointed with hote and thinne oiles, as oiles of Ireos, rewe, and such like. Oile of Ireos is not onely vsed, as an ointment, but dropped into the nose. Also other things may be applied, which are spoken of in the chapter against paine of the head caused of cold. If a hote humour distill from the head together with a feuer, and if there be fulnes of the body, you must let bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine. But if any iust cause be against it, wash the belly with a clister, that it may drawe the humours that doe abound in the head, downward: or minister a medicine purging choler, as is *pilulæ aureæ alephanginæ*, *azarum* and such like. Also you must turne the humors from the head, by frictions, ligatures, and fastning of cupping glasses to the shoulders. Minister within the body things that haue vertue to alter and quench the burning heat of choler, as is sirupe of violets, *nymphea*, of *poppy* and there conserues. Also *Embroche* and odoraments rehearsed before in the chap. of headach may be applied. Also a plaister of *terra lemnia* or bole armoniacke, and iuyce of plantaine, made and laid vpon the head being shauen is good. If it be a cold humor which distilleth, you shall empty with those things which purge fleume. For which purpose a strong clister is good: which being done, you must draw and turne away the humour from the head. Then when the humors be digested, purge the head with *Masticatories*, gargarismes, and such like. Moreouer apply to the head *Sacculi* made thus. ℞. flours of cammomill, melilot, betony, origan. ana. *M*. ß. cinamon, cloues. ana. ʒ. j. maces. ʒ. j. ß. nutmegges. ʒ. ij. *gallæ moschatæ*. ʒ. j. powder them all, and put them in silke, and make a Sacculus, and lay it to the crowne of the head. It is verie good also to annoint the head with hote oyles, as are the oyles of Ireos, dill, and rewe. All things doe stop distillation, which haue vertue to drie, especially *nigella* parched, and comin burnt or parched put into a linnen cloth, and knit, is a present remedy, if the patient do smell to it. For the same purpose it is good to minister suffuments, as is this: ℞. frankensence, masticke. ana. ʒ. j. wood of Aloes. ϑ. j. ß. Cinamon, cloues. ana. ϑ. ij. *Gallæ mosthatæ*. ʒ. j. ß. laurell leaues, yellow saunders, ana. ʒ. j. muske, amber, ana. g. j. being brayed, commixe them with *storax liquida*, as much as sufficeth, and make trochiskes: whereof put one vppon coles. ℞. sage, marioram, rosemary, ana. ʒ. j. maces, cloues, cinamon. ana. ϑ. ij. wood of aloes. ϑ. j. frankensence, ʒ. j. ß. beate them all, and commixe them, and make a grosse powder to strew vpon the coles. As for hoarcenesse, it is cured almost with the same medicins, that the cough is.

Curatio.

Vena sectio.

Humor frigidus.

Sacculi.

To stop distillation.

Trokiskes of persume.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of paine in the teeth

De Dentivm Dolore

Toothach (as Galen saith) amongst other paines that are not mortall, is the most cruell and grieuous of them all. It is caused somtime of hot or colde distemper. Also many times through flowing of humours out of the head vnto the roots of the teeth, which with their sharpnesse either do gnaw about them, or else with their abundance they engender like griefe in the teeth, as if inflammation were about the fleshie parts. Paine in the teeth is somtime without inflammation of the gums, sometime in the sinew wherein the roots be planted.

Causa.

Signa.

If the paine come through distemper of the bare quality, it will not be grieuous. Hot distemper is knowen by the temper of the whole bodie, because that likewise is hot. Also the face is red, & the diet vsed before was hot. Cold is knowne by the contrarie iudgements. If the paine be caused of flowing of some humor abundantly, then grieuous paine is not onely felt in the teeth, but also in other parts which it passeth by. A hot humour engendreth vehement paine: a cold humour more meeker. Let the diet be such as may defend that the paine come not and let it be such as is not very hot nor cold. Also eschue all sharpe, sower, and viscous things. Also often vsing of milke doth maruellously hurt the teeth.

Victus ratio.

labor diligently to purifie the teeth. The meats must be good of iuice, and easie to digest. For the cure, if it come of cold, it is good to wash the teeth with warme wine. Let the cheeks be annointed outward with warme oiles, of cammomill, rewe, ireos, and such like. Also to wash the mouth, seeth in vineger, origan, calamint, hysop, peniroyall, sauory, the root of veruaine and such like. If the teeth do ake through heat, you must seeth in vineger, purslaine, pellitorie, singreene the lesse, and licorice. But if the heat be intollerable, you must vse the seeds of lettuse, endiue, and poppy sodden in vineger. Without you must annoint against the griefe with cold oiles, as of roses, water lillies, & such like. Moreouer if the paine be caused through flowing of humours, if age, time of the yere, and other things will suffer it, and if the bodie also be full of blood, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine or *media* on the same side that the griefe is. That done cut the veine vnder the tong, or fasten cupping glasses to the shoulders. If one only corrupt humor doth abound, then vse conuenient medicines to purge that humour. For the same purpose clisters are very good. The whole bodie being emptied, you must minister those medicines that do represse and stop, as iuice of plantaine, roses, purslaine, both the endiues: either take the decoction of the aforesaid things, or their waters distilled and mixed with a litle vineger. It is onely good to wash the aking with hot sharp vineger, with vnripe gals: or this, ℞. the root of henbane. ℥ j pellitorie. ℥. ß. staue sacre. ℥. ij. galingale. ℥. ß. Camphore. ℈. ij. alume ℥. j. honie ℥ ij let all be brused, and boile all in vineger. ℔ j. rose water ℥. vj. wash the teeth with this eech morning, and it will preserue the teeth, and keepe them from paine. But if it come of extreme cold, then vse specially this medicine: ℞. pepper, pellitory, melilot. ana. ℥. j. staue sacre. ℥. ß. bruse them and put the powder into a linnen cloth, and lay it on the aking teeth, and keepe it there a quarter of an houre, and it will cease the paine. Also (as is said before) to wash the teeth with warme wine, is verie good.

If it come of heat.

If of flowing of humours.

If it come of cold.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of teeth that be blacke and looſe.

De Dentibvs Denigratis, Liventibvsqve Et Mollibvs.

SOMETIME the teeth be ſwart and blacke throughout their ſubſtance, not vnlike a certaine inflammation of the patients. Through flowing of vicious humours the teeth be looſe, ſometime through a ſtripe or fall, ſometime through flowing of moiſtnes, which looſeth the ſinewes and ligaments, and maketh the teeth looſe, or elſe gnawing and weakneſſe of the gummes in the which the teeth are ſet, cauſeth them to be loſe. The cure of vicious humours muſt be begunne with purging. Afterward, if the teeth be ſmart or ruſtie, you muſt deuide the corrupt humours which flow to the teeth, with drying medicines, as is, *licium*, frankenſence, mints, gals, maſticke, mirrhe, *nigella*, and ſuch like. Among many other this is very good: ℞. *nigella*, mirrhe, frankenſence, ana. ℥ j. maſticke, white pepper ana ℈.ij. *piſtolochiæ* ℈.j. roch alume. ℥ j. beat them into powder, and rub the teeth therwith: or commixe them with Venice Turpentine and annoint them therewith. The corrupt humours being conſumed, vſe dentrifices which haue vertue to ſcoure and drie, as is this. ℞ *nitrum* roch alume, harts horne burnt ana ℥.j. mirrhe ℈.j. the roote of Ireos *illiricæ*, frankenſence, dry mintes ana ℥ j ℈ common ſalt burnt, *piſtolochiæ* ana ℥.j. pumiſh, *teſtarum ſepiæ* ana. ℥.j. ℈. pepper, pellitory, dry peniroyall ana. ℥ ℈. beat them, and ſearce them all, and with this powder rub the teeth dayly. For teeth that be looſe you may apply ſuch medicins, as reſtraine and ſtrengthen looſe gummes, and faſten them. Therefore for collutions of the mouth the decoctions of reſtrictiue things do profit, as is this. ℞. red roſes, mintes, plantaine. ana. M ℈. the barkes of Cipreſſe nuttes ℥.j. ſeeds of mirtels, ſumache. ana. ℥. ℈. pomgarnet rindes, gals. ana. ℥. ij. *acatia* ℈.ij. ſeeth them all in red reſtrictiue wine, and with that often waſh the mouth. The mouth being waſhed, it is lawful to vſe this *dentrificium*. ℞. gals, the rindes of ſweete pomgarnets. ana. ℥ j. *balauſtium*, ſumache, mirrhe. ana ℈.j. redde roſes, *ſanguis draconis*, *calyculorum glandium*. ana. ℥.j. frankencenſe, harts horne burnt. ana. ℥.j. ℈. powder all, and ſearce them, and rubbe the teeth therewith: or this is maruellous good. ℞. *Balauſtium*, nutmegges. ana. ℥.iij. roch alume ℥.j. ℈. powder them, and mixe them with hony ℥.ij. ℈ and incorporate them well together: and with this annoint the teeth twiſe or thrice in the day.

Cauſes.

Curatio.

Dentrificium optimum.

Looſe teeth.

Collutio oris.

Dentrificium.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of Vlcers in the mouth.

De Aphthis.

THE vlcers which are bredde in the vppermoſt part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heat, in Greeke are called *Aphthæ*, and of the barbarous ſort *Acola*: ſome be whitiſh, and ſome reddiſh, and ſome blackiſh, and thee be moſt perillous of all other. They ingender for the moſt part in infants and ſucking children, when either the nurſes milke is naught, or the childe cannot well digeſt it. Alſo they chance ſometime to them that be of perfect age

Aphthæ.

aſwell through great fluxe of vicious and corrupt humors to the mouth, as alſo through ſharpneſſe of thoſe things that are eaten and drunke. The tokens

Signa. are eaſie, becauſe they be knowen by ſight and feeling: if you touch it, the places will ſeeme hotter then they ought to be, and there is ſwelling. They which be red, do ſhew bloud to haue the maiſtery. Yealowneſſe ſignifieth bitter choler: whiteneſſe, fleume: blackneſſe, melancholy. They which chance to chil-

Curatio infantium. dren may eaſily be cured by thoſe things that do meanely reſtraine. And you muſt giue them chiefly in their meates, ſome quinces, and other ſharp things, pears, and meſpilers, vidz. medlers or open arſes. Sometime alſo you muſt cõmixe with their meate ſome lettuce, endiue and purſlaine. If there be inflammation of the vlcers, then take the iuice of purſlaine, lettuce and nightſhade, the powder of alume, and waſh the mouth with a fine cloth, or with a ſering; and if the childe can take no meate, then the nurſe muſt vſe the ſame kinde of diet. Alſo the decoction of galles, *balauſtium*, ſanders, ſumach, *acacia*, & ſuch like, commixed with *Robderibes* or *Diamoron* applied as before is taught. In them

Cure of them that be of perfect age. that be of perfect age only the nature of the body is to be conſidered, whether it be ſoft or moiſt, or hard, or dry. For in hard and ſtrong bodies you muſt miniſter ſtrong medicins. In weake and ſoft bodies, gentle medicins. For the diet

Victus ratio. therefore in ſuch ages, they muſt eſchue all things that be ſharpe and ſalt, and that ingender corrupt iuice. For the cure in fulnes of the body, if nothing do

Curatio. let it, firſt cut the *Cephalica* veine, and then thoſe veines vnder the tong. If the body be full of ill iuice, you muſt miniſter a purgation againſt the corrupt humors. The body being purged, apply medicins which haue vertue to reſtraine & ſtop. Moderat remedies againſt vlcers be theſe; *ſumach*, roſes, *Balauſtiũ* diſſolued in wine or *mulſa*. But if the exulcerations begin to putrefie, this decoction is very profitable. ℞. fellerd leaues of ſage, hiſope, rew, peniroyall, cammonil, woodbinde, knotgraſſe, *burſa paſtoris*, brier leaues. ana. *M*. ß. waſh them cleane, and boile them all in ij. ℔. ß. of good ale or beere, and put therein three or foure ſpoonefull of hony, alume. ℥. ij. let it ſeeth to the conſumption of halfe, then ſtraine it, and waſh the mouth therewith foure or fiue times in a day. But if the vlcers be more running and gnawing, annoint the place with *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, mixt with *mel roſarum* or ſuch like.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a ſtinking mouth.

De Fœtore Oris.

Cauſe. THere is a grieuous and ſtinking ſauour of the mouth cauſed for the moſt part through putrefaction of the gummes or teeth, or through meat ſticking ſtill in the teeth. Many times it commeth through hote diſtempure of the skinne of the mouth: ſometime alſo through corrupt and rotten humors ſticking in the mouth of the ſtomacke. It chanceth alſo many times that exulceration of the mouth or lungs, doth hurt the breath of the mouth or lungs. The ſtinking of the mouth chaunce through putrefaction either of the gummes, the

Signa. teeth, or of meate ſticking in the teeth: it is ſoone knowen either by ſight, or by the patients tale. If it be cauſed of a hote diſtempure of the mouth, then heate

is felt in the mouth, and thirſt troubleth him. If through vice of the ſtomack, then the breath of the mouth is more grieuous and ſtinking before meat then after meate. Vlcerations of the lungs are knowen by extenuation of the body, and by coughing. In the diet the patient muſt auoid all things that do readily engender corruption in the mouth or ſtomack, as is, milk, fiſh, almoſt all fruits, marrow, fat, naughty water, and ſuch like. Let the meats therefore which they vſe be of good iuice, and eaſie to digeſt: but they muſt vſe meates rather roſt then ſodden. In the end of dinner and ſupper they may eate peares, quinces, and ſuch like, eſpecially, if the ſtinking ſauour come from the mouth of the ſtomacke. Let them eſchew ſleeping by and by after meate. If ſtincke of the mouth come through corruption of the gums or teeth, if there be fulneſſe of the body, firſt draw bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine, and then faſten cupping glaſſes to the necke, but if the body be full of euill iuice, purge the humor that doth abound with a conuenient medicine. The body being purged, vſe outward medicines, ſpecially collutions and waſhings, which in this caſe ſeeme to be maruellous good, as this is: ℞. redde roſes, plantain, knotgraſſe. ana. *M*. j. ſ. gals, pomegarnet floures, cipreſſe nuttes. ana. ℥ ij. rindes of pomegarnets. ℥. ſ. roch alume, ℥ j. ſeeth theſe in iuſt quantity of water vnto the third part, and in the iuice of the decoction being ſtrained, commixe *mel roſarum*, *diacarion*. ana. ℥. ſ. *diamoron*. ℥. iij. commixe them al and make a collution, with the which waſh the gums and the teeth euery morning and euening. Alſo often waſhing with water mixed with vineger in the morning and by and by after meate, is good. If the ſtincke in the mouth be without exulceration, miniſter the root of *ireos* ſteeped in old odoriferous wine, and waſh the teeth often withall. Alſo it is good to hold it in the mouth. Alſo mirrhe ſteepd in pure wine miniſter to waſh the teeth. Alſo it is very good to chew pellitory, *Tamariſcus* and rew. Likewiſe collution of vineger ſquilliticke, or decoction of ſage, or only wine. Alſo decoction of mintes in vineger and water helpeth, if the mouth be often waſhed with it. This cauſeth ſweete breath, and maketh the teeth white. ℞. white ſalt, pumiſes, origan. ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*. ℥. j. floures of ſquinance. ℥. ſ. beate them all, and commixe them, and rub the teeth therewith. If ſtincke of the mouth come of a hot diſtépure cure it with contrary medicines. But if it come of a corrupt humor in the mouth of the ſtomacke, it is healed by thoſe things which doe purge that humor. Thoſe things which be contained in the mouth of the ſtomacke may well be brought out by a vomit. How you ſhall prouoke vomite, it is declared in many places before. After this, miniſter medicines which do ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, as is, *Aromaticum roſaceum*, *Diamber*, *hydromalum*, and ſuch like medicines, which be good in all cauſes, as be cloues, Maſticke, Mace, wood of *Aloes*, Cinamon, roſes, all the Sanders, Nutmegges, *Quibes*, *Ireos*, and other of the like ſort.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Collutio oris.

For ſweete breath.

Vomitus.

Theſe ſuffice. And how many euils ſo euer there be of the head, whoſe cure is not expreſly named by me in this booke yet you may find out medicines to cure them by that which is declared in this booke.

The ſecond Booke.

CHAP. I.

Againſt the inflammation of the Columella.

DE COLVMELLAE INFLAMMATIONE.

THere chanceth in the throate many dangerous inflammatiõs (as *Hippocrates* writeth in his *Prognoſticis*) and firſt of this *Columella* appeareth a certaine fleſhie peece, hanging in the vpper part of the mouth. If one doe gape wide, and hold downe his tongue, it may be ſeene. In old time it was called *Gurgulio*, now it is called *Columella*. It is often vexed with inflammations, which is cauſed through bloud, and other humours which deſcend out of the head. The diſeaſe may be knowne by ſight: and there chanceth in it difficultie in ſwallowing, paine, ſwelling, redneſſe of the *Columella*, and a feauer. The diet in a maner, muſt be ſuch as is ordained in other inflammations, and ſpecially, quietneſſe, reſt, ſilence, and hunger, are good, and to eate litle or nothing at ſupper. For the cure, if there be fulneſſe of the bodie, you muſt beginne with bloudletting, and firſt you muſt cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, and afterward the veine vnder the tongue. Alſo the belly muſt be purged by cliſters, ſo that by that meanes, not onely the belly may be ſoluble, but alſo that the flowing of humours to the griefe, may be taken away. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe you may faſten cupping glaſſes to the ſhoulders, neither muſt we let paſſe the remedies which are good to repreſſe and ſtop fluxe of humours. For as they do in all other diſeaſes cauſed of the fluxe of humors, ſo in this behalf, for their firſt remedie, they ſtop the fluxe of humours. Therefore ſuch remedies muſt be of a reſtrictiue nature and facultie. If that the fluxe of humours be moderate, miniſter things which reſtraine moderately, as theſe be which be called ſoure. But if it be more vehement, adde to it ſharpe things, for both be reſtrictiue; but ſoure be weake, and ſharpe things ſtrong, as *Galen* doth ſay in his fourth booke of the vertues of ſimple medicins, cap. 6. and 7. Therfore vſe collutions made of thoſe things, as if they ſhould be moderate, ſeeth dates ſometime in water alone, and ſometime with a litle honie put to them. Likewiſe make decoctions of roſes, vine buddes, brambles, cipreſſe, the firſt buddes of pomgranate floures, *ſiligna*, rootes of mulberie, ſoure apples, and *ſorbus*. Thoſe be ſtronger then theſe, which be made of the decoction of mirtles, and their berries. Alſo of ſharpe quinces, and young buds of oake, or the maſt of oake: alſo of medlers, & a frute called *Cornus*. The beſt collutions are made of galles, *ſumach*, *acatia*, and the floures of both the pomgranats, and their ſhels. Among compound

Gurgulio.

Signa.
Victus ratio.

Curatio.
Venæ ſectio.

Cucurbitulæ.

compound medicines this doth helpe wonderfully, ℞. the distilled waters of roses, plantaine, sorrell, *prunella*, *solani*, ana. ℥.ij. *Diamoron*, *succi medicati eribes*. ana ℥.ß. *succi medicati ex extochanta*. ℥. ij. ß. vineger, wherein *sumach* is steeped. ℥. j. iuyce of pomgranates. ℥.ß. commix them together, & with it wash the mouth. *Gargarismus.* *Alia.*

Another of the same vertue ℞. red roses, brambles, ana. M j. pomgranat flours and the shels, gals, mast of oake. ana ℥. iij. *sumach*, *hipocistidis*, *acatia*, ana. ℥. ij. seeds of sorrell, & quinces. ana. ℥. i. seeth them in ℔ j. of well water, vntill halfe remaine; the decoction being strained, put to it of *Diamoron*. ℥. j. *succi medicati eribes*, *diacarion*, ana. ℥ ij. ß. vineger. ℥. vj. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. You must vse these medicines in the beginning of the disease, & especially when the griefe hath not the greatest cause: nor when the bodie of the sicke is much stopped with humours, nor when the aggrieued place is weake through the nature of the impostume. But if it chance so (as it doth often in the beginning, and often somewhat after) that is, the third day, you must commixe some of the discussiue medicines, as is, lineseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, roote of *ireos* and honie. Moreouer, of what sort soeuer the medicines be, minister them warme: for those that labour of inflammation, may suffer no cold. After the vigor of it, you may safely minister discussiues, vnlesse the *Columella* begin to waxe hard: for then you must minister mollifying medicines: that is, lineseed, fenugreeke, mallowes, *althæa tragacanthum*, and such like: of the which you may make gargarisines. After that vse discussiues, as is, hisope, figs, licorice decoct together. If it draw toward rotting, which may be perceiued by his colour, & doth not breake alone by collusions of *Mulsa* and *Oximel scilliticum*, then open it with some instrument. After the breaking, and bursting out of the matter, let him vse medicines cleansing, absterstue, and glutinatiue, especially the iuyce of enpatorie, and such like.

CHAP. II.

Of a loose Columella.

De Laxata Colvmella.

OFtentimes it chanceth that a loose *Columella* doth hang vpon the rootes of the tongue and iawes. Of some it is called the *Vuula*. Wherefore in the beginning you must vse such kind of cure as the inflammation thereof requireth. In the beginning the body and the head must be purged by medicins spoken of in the former Chapter. Which being done, you must make collusions and gargarismes of such things as do restraine and drie: after this sort; ℞. red roses, sorrell, enpatorie ana. M. j *gallæum*. ℥. ij. alume ℥ j. mirrhe, frankensense, ana. ℥. ß. flax-seed. ℥. ß seeth them in water to the third part, and adde to the iuyce of that decoction strained of good hony. ℥. ß. & make a gargarisme. Also pouders do profit, being blowen in with an instrumẽt for the purpose: as this is, ℞. dry roses, galles, roch alume, ana. ℥ j ß. pepper, ginger, ana. ℥ ß mirrhe. ℥. j. powder it, & fearce it, and put it vp as before. Also, take green nuts, & dry them, and date stones burned sufficiently: take of each of them equall portions, powder them, & vse them as the other. Also vnripe galles, bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥. j. do likewise. If the *Columella* must needs be cut, it is good to empty the belly first, lest the sick be strangled. Whẽ the *Columella* is cut out, bow his head downward, lest the bloud run inward. And afterward wash his mouth with the decoction *Gargarismus.*

of sumach, *acatia*, galles, putting to it rosewater and vineger. Afterward minister things to heale it vp.

CHAP. III.

Of inflammation of the tonsilles.

De Tonsillarvm Inflammatione.

Tonsillæ be inflammations of those things which lie betweene the mouth and the throte; some do call them *Amigdalæ* (that is) Almondes. *Causæ.* Those tonsils oftentimes be inflamed: for their places be hot and moist. They are most vexed with this euill, which haue aboundance of bloud: and children and infants which do sucke, through drawing of the milke. Also it chanceth often to men and women through drinking of strong wines, and through much greedy deuouring of meate, specially if they be eager and sharpe. They that *Signa.* be so afflicted haue difficulty in swallowing, and paine, and also sometime a feuer. Therefore the inflammation beginning, you must take away meate, and *Victus ratio.* minister to him water to drinke, or water wherein a litle Cinnamon hath bene sodden, specially if there be a feuer. Let the whole diet be so ordered, as it is in other inflammations. Let his meat be soupings, for otherwise he cannot swallow it. *Curatio.* For the cure, if the inflammation be light, you must vse gargarismes, restrictiues, such as be taken in the beginning of an inflamed *Columella*. But you must beware in the beginning, that you put no hony to the gargarismes, for it hath a sharpnesse in it. If that the inflammation be vehement, so that he be in *Venæ sectio.* perill of choking, you must cut the *Cephalica* vein in the arme on the same side. And if the belly be not soluble enough, cast in a clister. You must prouoke childrens bellies by putting in a suppositary, and by annointing the tuell. After purging you must vse restrictiue medicines, vntill the vigour of the disease be ceased something. All these things (as we admonished before) must be ministred warme. Outwardly it is best to nourishe it with sponges, laid gently to it. Also lay to it plaisters made of barly meale, seeds of flaxe, fenugreeke, and such like. The inflammation declining, and waxing lesse: it is good to put hony into your gargarismes, which in the beginning and increasing you may not do, lest the sharpnes which is in it doe increase fluxe. Also at this time hotter gargarismes do profite. Outwardly you must put about the necke, soft wooll dipped in oile, and if that by vsing of sharpe collutions, or gargarismes, the inflammations be increased, and biting and gnawing come thereby: you must vse gentler, as is iuice of ptisan: Also gargarise warme milke. When the inflammation and paine ceaseth, annoint with the aforesaid remedies of the mouth, putting it in with your finger: so that by gentle annointing, the partes of the tonsilles which are swelled, may be thrusted, wherby they may put out the matter contained in them. But yet you may not thrust hard, as many vse to doe, whereby they cause the inflammation to be augmented. And therfore if by that means any hurt do chance, we must be content with ministring gentle gargarismes without any annointing. *Signes of suppuration.* If that by ministring the remedies aforesaid, the grief be not eased, then looke for rotting of it, which you may know by increasing of the inflammation, and by sharpe exulcerations, exacerbations, and gnawings in the euening when you look for suppuration and rotting: you must help

that

helpe that it may quickely come to paſſe: therefore then you muſt miniſter hotter gargariſmes, as is *aqua mulſa*, and decoction of figges, hyſope and ſeed of *Althea*. Outwardly lay plaiſters of barley meale and fenugreeke, with decoction of figges, *Althea* and hony. When it is perfectly rotten, the paine will diminiſh, and the ſwelling and inflammation will be made ſofter, ſo that it will giue place to the finger. Then you muſt miniſter ſharpe collutions, that they may breake the botch. In meates he muſt take great gobbettes of bread ſteeped in water, and likewiſe his meate muſt be eaten by lumps: for vehement rouling of it vp and downe about the tonſils will breake the botches, as well as if they were cut. But if the patient will not do it, then open it with ſome fine inſtrument for the purpoſe. And after it is broken, let the ſicke bow his head downeward, that the matter may the better runne out. And let him gargariſe *aqua mulſa* alone, and afterward commixe with it decoction of lintils and roſes. And with theſe you muſt tarrie, vntill it be healed.

CHAP. IIII.

Of malignant Vlcers of the tonſilles.

De Serpentibvs Et Malignis Tonsillarvm Vlceribvs.

THere beginne malignant vlcers of the tonſils, ſometime with a fluxe of them going before: ſometime they are cauſed of an accuſtomed inflammation being augmented. They chance often to children, and alſo to them of perfect age, eſpecially to thoſe which do abound with vitious humours. They chance to children after the *Aphthæ* in the mouth. In colour they be like vnto ſcurfes, which are burnt with iron. Alſo there chanceth to the ſicke drineſſe in ſwallowing, and often choking, eſpecially when redneſſe is vnder the chin. If gnawing and ſharpneſſe of humours hath gone before, there followeth putrefaction. You muſt proceed in the cure ſpeedily, and if he be of perfect age, and no other thing forbidding it, it is good to cut the *Cephalica* veine in the arme, or if that appeare not, the middle veine. If they be maydes, whom, at perfect age, for lacke of purgation of menſtruis, this diſeaſe doth often infect: then in them you muſt cut the *Saphena* veine, letting blood but once onely, and yet at that time, not till the hart faile, leaſt after it, vertue be deſtroyed by ouermuch flux of menſtruis. Furthermore the belly muſt be emptied by cliſters, ſuppoſitaries, and by annointing of the tuell. And you muſt labour by all meanes to turne the humour from the aggrieued place: for the which purpoſe faſten cupping glaſſes nigh to the loynes, and vſe to bind the extreamities as the hands and feet. Afterward it is good to vſe gargariſmes, declared before in the chapter of *Columella*, and in the chapter following. After the beginning of the ſicknes, miniſter *Diamoron*, or a collution mixed with *Mulſa*, then alſo decoction of Ireos, and other things rehearſed in the aboue ſaid places. We muſt take heed that we touch not the vlcerate tonſils with our finger, not ſo much as to touch it ſoftly. For the vnskilfull, to whom with great error men do ſeeke in doubtfull matters: they do annoy it vehemently, alſo they do thruſt the aggrieued place, and pull away the ſcab or roue, which they ought not to do, before they ſee the roue lifted vp, and ſcarce cleauing to the ſore. For if wee intend to pull

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

away the scabbe, whiles it sticketh fast, the vlceration will pierce more deepe, and inflammation will follow, and the paine will increase, and they will come to venemous vlcers. Therefore it is good to blowe in drie remedies, and to annoint liquid things with a feather. Dogs doung mixed with hony and annointed, taketh away the roues maruellously, which will be the better, if the dog be fedde only with bones two daies before. It helpeth greatly, neither hath it any vnsauorinesse being ministred in meats. Also the ashes of swallowes burnt, and the ashes of Centorie *minor* burnt, with hony mixed is good. After the irritations and chasings made by medicines, you must apease it with decoction of lyquorice, and with a gargarisme, which is made of masticke, mirrhe, *Tragacanthum amylum* & saffron, ministring also while the vlcer feedeth, milke mixed with *terra lemnia* to gargarise. What need many words? You must be diligent and carefull, specially in clensing and purging the vlcers. Many infantes do suffer the cramp in purging of the vlcers. Some be strangled because the way of swallowing is dried vp. It is good to apply outward foments, and emplaisters, with taking heede least he do coole it. For the cure will prosper, if the matter, that is holden within, can be drawne outward. Therefore alwayes after the taking of the plaisters away, couer the parts that be about the chinne, by laying vpon it soft wooll sprinkled with *oleum nardinum*. To conclude, when the skurfes are loosened, and the vlcers purged, vse this remedie following. ℞. floures of red roses. ℥.iij. saffron. ℥.j.ß. *Balaustiæ*. ℥.ß. mirrhe. ℈.j. pine nutte made cleane. ℥.ij. *Amyli*. ℥ j. Sumach, roch alume, ana. ℥ j.ß. beate them, commixe them with hony, and vse to annoint it three times on the day.

Gargarisme.

CHAP. V.

Of the Squinancie

De Angina.

Gen.4.
1
2
3
4

Causæ.
Signa.

Curatio.
Venæ humerorum sectio

Angina in latine, squinancie in english, but in greeke *Sinanchi*. It is properly an inflammation which is in the throate, or in the iawes. There be foure kinds of squinancies; one is, when the iawes be inflamed, (by the iawes I mean the place where the ends of the wesand and the *trachea arteria* do agree) Another is, when neither the iawes nor other parts of the mouth, nor yet the outward parts do seeme to be inflamed: yet the sicke feeleth perill of choking in the throate. The third is, when the partes about the throat be inflamed both outwardly and inwardly. The fourth is, when the ioynts betweene the bones of the head, and the necke be losened to the former part of the necke: wherby the place appeareth hollowe, and the sicke feeleth paine when it is touched without. The Squinancie is caused through aboundance of hote blood, flowing vnnaturally to the places before rehersed. It is knowen by these signes, the breath is drawen verie hardly, and not without the necke be holden right, and there is difficultie in swallowing. Also in some, a feuer, rednes of the face and necke. There chaunceth also in many, swelling: the sicke yauneth with open mouth & draweth breath. Therfore in the beginning euery squinance requireth a hastie and speedie remedie. Wherefore you must by and by cut the outward veine on the same side of the shoulders, except some greater perill do let it: but you must take awaye the blood by litle and litle, at many times, and

not all at once, for the bloud being taken away altogether on heaps, the heart soone faileth, and so the perill of choking commeth vpon him. And moreouer also by the refrigeration & fainting of the heart, the matter is quickly caried from the iawes vnto the lungs, and so bringeth ineuitable perill. Take heed also that there be litle deduction of the veine, for thereof commeth much fayling of the mind, and yet it is not good to make a narrow incision of the veine, lest the bloud be, as it were strained, and the grosser part remaineth within still, which is the cause of this disease. It is profitable to them to haue the bloud drawn out again the next day, vnlesse the swelling of the disease let it, or faintnes of the heart. If the sicke be a woman, cut the veine on the anckles, specially if the menstruis be stopped, and the bloud must be drawne out moderatly. If by these he be but litle eased, then it is good to cut those veines which be vnder the tongue, and that by and by, at the first or the second day. And if there be any thing that forbiddeth bloudletting, the belly must be emptied with a sharp clister, such as is described in the chap. of *apoplexia*. After vniuersall euacuatiõs, you must fasten on cupping glasses: and if there be swelling about the cheekes, or vnder the chinne, it is good to fasten cupping glasses to the swelling, & with scarification to draw out much bloud. Also to strew salt vpon the scarifying, and to rub it. And if there appeare no swelling outward, you must fasten a cupping glasse behind in the neck, neere to the shutting of the first ioynt, and you must vse it with constant attraction, pulling away the glasse often. Also the humours must be turned away, lest they flow to the place which is aggrieued & inflamed. For the which purpose you must bath the feete with hote water. Also, bind and rub the hands and feete strongly. The necke must be couered with wooll that is moist, or that is dipped in warme oile, also by and by (at the beginning) you must vse gargarises, which don neither vehemently driue backe, nor yet onely discusse. For those which do altogether repell, and driue backe, they bring perill of choking by thrusting humors to the lungs. Those which be onely discussiue, they draw more then is meet, by reason of their heate. Therefore, when the beginning is with much inflammation, you must minister those things which do restraine gently, as is decoction of roses, lintels, and dates, or els restrictiue gargarismes, declared before in the chap. *de Columellæ inflamatione*, cõmixing some discussiue medicins with it. Of that sort are roses, or sumach sodden with *aqua mulsa*, and decoction of Sebesten. When the disease is at his strength, and standeth: you must vse those things which haue discussiue vertue only in thẽ, as is decoction of fenugreek, figs, raisons, licorice, or strõger things as the root of irios, hisope, *nigella*, sothernwood, with *eximell*. Therfore it shall be lawfull at this time to vse a gargarisme made thus. ℞. of licorice scraped, ℥.j. raisons ℥.ß. dry figs, in nũber 6. fenugreek. ℥.ij. hisope, sothernwood. ana. *M.* ß. seeth them in one pound of well water, till halfe be consumed: thẽ put into the licour of that decoction being strained, of *mel rosarum*. ℥.j.ß. *oximel simplex*. ℥.j. commixe them all, and make a gargarisme. Also dogs doong, such as is found amongst herbes, and is very white in colour, being beaten and finely searced and mixed with hony, is a most excellent medicine, being ministred like a *lohoch*, that they may swallow it very softly. Likewise the ashes of swallowes burnt, is very effectuall, being so mixed with hony. Moreouer to the necke

Venarum linguæ sectio.

Cliſter.

Concurbitulæ.

Auerſio humorum.

Gargariſmus.

without, you muſt apply thoſe plaiſters in them which be vexed with inflam.
Cataplaſmata. mation which can concoct & diſcuſſe, as this is, ℞. the meale of lineſeed, fenugreeke, and barly. ana. ℥.j. ſeedes of *althea*, ℥.iij. mallowes, floures of cammomil and melilot, ana. M. j. ſeeth them in water vntill they waxe ſoft, then ſtampe them in a morter, and make a ſoft plaiſter, or put to it oiles of cammomil, and lillies. ana. ℥.j.ß. and being boyled againe, make an emplaiſter. Neither ſhall it be vnprofitable, if the necke be annointed with oiles of cammomill, dill, and lillies, or fomented with decoction of fenugreeke, melilot, and cammomill.
They which are vexed with the ſquinancie, let them vſe three dayes *aqua mul-*
Potus. *ſa* for their drinke. Afterward iuyce of ptiſan by it ſelfe or with ſome ſweete potion, for that iuyce hath vertue to extenuate, diſcuſſe, nouriſh, and to coole.
When the inflammation is ſomewhat ſlaked, and the ſicke beginneth to ſwallow better: giue to him the yolkes of rere egges, and ſuppings made of *Alica*.
Cibus. To conclude, the eating of the ſicke and his meates, muſt be according to his ſtrength: therefore he muſt eſchue ouermuch feeding. Sleepe muſt eſpecially be eſchued, as well in the ſquinancie as in all other inflammations. For in ſleep (as Hippocrates ſaith) the bloud creepeth within, and the flowing of humours to the grieued place, doth increaſe more.

CHAP. VI.
Of the Cough.
De Tvssi.

THere be diuerſe cauſes of the Cough. For as Galen ſaith *lib.1.ca.2.de ſimpt. cauſis*, Cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of breathing cauſeth the cough.
Cauſæ. Alſo a humour diſtilling from the head to the *Trachea arteria*, and ſharpneſſe
1 onely of the vpper skinne of *trachea arteria* going about within, doth prouoke
2 the cough. Alſo wormes troubling the ſtomake, & raiſing vp ſome qualitie, ſen-
3 ding it to the iawes, doth cauſe the cough. Moreouer, a humour contained in
4 the lungs & the breaſt, is the cauſe of inflammation in the lungs, diſeaſe in the
5 ſides, conſumption and the cough. Thoſe which be outward ſignes, and may
6 cauſe the cough, be ſmoke, duſt, and whatſoeuer doth exaſperat the *trachea ar-*
Signa. *teria*. The ſignes of coughing cauſed onely through cold diſtemper of the inſtruments of reſpiration & breathing are, that thoſe which be ſo afflicted, they ſpit out nothing while they cough, nor the cough is not violent nor conſtraining: but it is ſo ſmall, that not only it may be ſuppreſſed by holding the breath, but alſo vnleſſe it be very great, it may be healed, becauſe through ſtopping of the breath, the parts vexed with cold, do wax hote. Moreouer they which are vexed with this kind of cough, they are more prouoked to it by often fetching of their breath, becauſe the cold thereby is increaſed, & made more ſtronger. Therefore if they breath and fetch their wind eaſily, and be alſo in a warme houſe, they cough litle or nothing at all. They be pale of face, and not thirſty: they are grieued with cold things, and are beſt with hote things. The coughes which chance with tickling of the partes on either ſide of the palate, they do openly ſhew a flowing humour, comming from the head to *trachea arteria*: and to the lungs which you may well know by difficultie of breathing that followeth. And if that they which be thus afflicted do ſpit out nothing, it declareth it

to

to be a thinne reume, which being cut off by expulsion of breath, it is caried no further by reason of his thinnes, but the flowing of it returneth again. The diet is diuerse, according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the cough be caused of cold distempure, occupying the instruments of breathing: you must eschue ayre, wind, and also cold meate and drinke: but if the cough be caused through humours distilling from the head, let the diet be such as is described before in the Chapter of distillation. But vniuersally they which haue the couph, must eschue salt things, sharpe things, and whatsoeuer would exasperate the *trachea arteria*. The cough that is caused through cold of the instruments of breathing, shall be cured by the remedies that can make them hote. Therefore let the necke be wrapped about with warme woll, and let him breath seldome, because that stopping of the breath (as is said before) doth not onely let the cough, but also oftentimes it healeth it. Therefore it is good to haue the sicke conuersant in a hot house, and let him breath very softly. Also let the breast be fomented with hot oyntments, as is oyles of *ireos*, lillies & dill. If a humor that is thin and sharpe, flowing out of the head to the *trachea arteria*, and the breast, do cause a cough, then it shalbe healed specially by meats of good iuyce, & by medicins which do coole, thicken, temper & stop sharpnes and mordacity. For which purpose it is good to minister sirupes of violets, of *Nimphea*, of poppie, the antidote *Diatragacantha*, *diapenidion sine speciebus*, *pilulæ bechicæ*, and such like. Among all other this loch is excellent good. ℞. *Diatragacantha*, *diapenidion sine speciebus*. ana. ʒ.vj. iuice of licorice. ʒ.ij. *pilulæ bechicæ*. ʒ.j. *storax* calamint. ʒ.ß. mirrhe, drie roses. ana. ʒ.j. *tragacanthæ*, pine nuts. ana. ʒ.ß. sirupe of violets, as much as shall suffise to commixe them, and make an *Ecligma*. Also for that purpose it is good to minister those medicines which are spoken of before in the chap. of distillations. But if a grieuous & viscous humour be cause of the cough, we shall cure it by those things which do deuide & extenuate. Therefore then we must minister to the sicke syrupes of licorice, hisope, horehound, calamint, & such like, or else this decoctiō, ℞. roots of *ireos*, percely, licorice. ana. ʒ.j. roots of *Ella campana*. ʒ.ß. drie figges in numher vij. of raisins the stones picked out, ʒ.j. seeds of nettle, anise and fennell. ana. ʒ.ij. hysope, maidenhaire, scabios, of iust quantitie, til the third part be consumed: then straine it, and to the iuice of that decoction put sirupe of hisope and horehound. ana. ʒ.ij. ß. and make a potion. Afterward if it seeme conuenient by the state of the patient, you must emptie the bodie with those medicines which do purge grosse and clammie humors. And among other spoken of in the first booke, the infusion of agarick is very good, which is made after this fort, ℞. of elect agarick. ʒ.ij. ginger. ϑ.j. salt gemme ʒ.iij. beate them, and infuse them one night in ʒ.ij. of odoriferous white wine, water of wormewood and fennell. ana. ʒ.j. In the morning straine it, and wring it, & put to it *Electuarium indi maioris*. ʒ.ij.ß. *Oximel scilliticum*. ʒ.ß. & make a potion. The bodie being purged, let him haue a loch sometime commixed with other antidotes, after this fort, ℞. *Loch è pino*, *loch sani & experti*, *Loch è scilla*. ana ʒ.iij. *Diaireos Salomonis*. ʒ.j. powder of *Diapenidion cū speciebus*. ʒ.j. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *ireos*. ana. ʒ.ij.ß. iuyce of licorice. ʒ.j.ß. sirupe of horehound, as much as shall suffise to commixe them. Moreouer the breast

Victus ratio.

Cure of the cough caused of cold distempure.

Cure of the cough caused of thinne and sharpe humors.

Ecligma.

Cure of the cough caused of grosse and viscous humours.

Decoctio.

Purgatio.

Infusio agarici.

Ecligma.

must be annointed outwardly with hote oiles of lillies, *Ireos* & sweet Almonds, putting to them greaſe and other things after this ſort. ℞. oiles of lillies and ſweete Almonds. ana. ℥. iij. of hens greaſe. ℥. j. ß. freſh butter. ℥. ij. the muſcelage of fenugreeke, and rootes of *Althea*. ana. ℥. ß. *Storax*. ℥. ß. powder of the rootes of *Enula* and *Ireos*. ana. ℥. j. ſaffron. ʒ. j. white waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The reſidue that is requiſite for the cure of the cough, are to be ſought in the chapter of diſtillation.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Aſthma.

De Asthmate.

Cauſæ. THE *Aſthma* is cauſed whenas groſſe and clammy humors be gotten in abundantly into the griſtles or lappets of the lungs, or that there be ſome ſwelling in it, like vnto a botch. Alſo they do breath difficultly, whereby the *Trachea arteria* is repleat and filled with diſtillations. Theſe euils are eaſy to be knowen a ſunder. For diſtillation doth alſo chance in haile folke by and by through as manifeſt a cauſe in a manner altogether without a feauer, hauing the tokens of a diſtillation following it. If there be ſwelling of the lungs like a botch, there muſt needs follow a feauer, and ſo within few daies after, the inflammation being rotted: the matter of it is caſt out with the cough. If there be a crude & raw tubercle & botch ingendred, ſuch do not feele any great griefe, nether are they much troubled with difficulty of breathing: but they are much troubled when they eate or drink, becauſe they cannot ſwallow but with much griefe. Thoſe which be properly aſthmatickes, or orthopnickes, they haue no feauer at all, and there chaunceth to them heauines of ſenſe, and they do not ſpit out matter with their ſpittle. Let their diet be altogether hote and dry, therefore he muſt eſchew aire colde and moiſt. He muſt eate the fleſh of partriches, birdes of the mountaines, hennes, capons, and ſuch like. He muſt eſchew, fiſhes, fruite, pulſe, and all other things that can ingender groſſe and clammy humours. Let him vſe often hyſope, percely, and fennell. Vniuerſally let him drinke a ſmall quantity at once which hath a botch riſen, but much drinke muſt be vſed of thoſe, whoſe griſtles and flappes of the lungs are ſtopped with groſſe and clammy humours, which are not eaſie to be caſt out with the ſpittle becauſe of their thicknes, & therfore they haue need of much moiſtning, that it may come out the eaſilier. He muſt vſe exerciſe before meat, but not ſodainly by and by, becauſe many by theſe meanes are dead. Frictions and rubbings of the breaſt do profite. Perturbations of the minde, eſpecially wrath and lamentation are to be eſchewed. But for the cure of the aforeſayd euils generally, you muſt labour that the abundance of that humour, which engendreth theſe euils, may be aboliſhed and conſumed. But before the cure of the euils particularly, if the euill be engendred of groſſe and clammy humours, you muſt cure it by extenuating and clenſing medicines. If it come of ſwelling like a botch, you muſt cure it by extenuating and drying medicins. Againſt groſſe and viſcous humours, thoſe medicines be good, which do extenuate and ſcoure without heat vehement; for groſſe and viſcous humours do waxe more tough & clammy as wel with vehement heat as they do with cold, ſo

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Note.

ſo that afterward they can ſcarce be deuided and pluckt away. Therfore *Oximell ſquilliticum* or *ſquilla* roſted and braied with hony is eſpecially to be miniſtred vnto them. Alſo ſirupes of liquorice, horehound, and hyſope; Alſo the decoction reherſed in the laſt chapter before is good for purging. If neceſſity require, before al things cut the middle veine in the arme, or the inner veine and draw out ſo much blood as ſtrength will ſuffer. But if the body be not full, (the humour being preparate to purging by the premiſſes) you muſt miniſter often ſtronger medicines, which may driue out the groſſe & clammy humors. Therfore pilles of Agaricke, and *pilulæ cochiæ*, alſo *Diaturbith* with rewbarbe, *antidotum indi*, and *diaphenicon* are good for this purpoſe. Alſo miniſter the infuſion of Agaricke deſcribed before in the laſt chapter. Alſo the belly muſt be waſhed with ſtrong cliſters. Alſo he muſt vomit now and then, by taking of radiſh and other things which prouoke vomite, of the which we haue ſpoken in the firſt booke of Melancholiouſnes. But in the meane ſeaſon while purgations be miniſtred, you muſt miniſter medicines which can diſſolue and extenuate humours contained in the breaſt by litle & litle, and he muſt take *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, the rootes of *Enula* and ireos, nettle ſeed, hyſope, *nigella*, calamint & ſuch like, wherewith you may make decoctions or loches. For which purpoſe alſo thoſe *Ecligmata*, which are reherſed in the chapter of the cough, are good. Alſo *Trochiſchi Beccij albi* be moſt excellēt. Outwardly you muſt lay to the breſt, plaiſters made of figges, barley meale, or rather meale of fitches, hauing rozin, hony, and waxe commixed with it. Alſo apply to the breaſt of Ireos, dill, rew, and ſuch like, as is this: ℞. oiles of dill and rew. ana. ℥.ß. the greaſe of hennes and duckes. ana. ℥. ij. the rootes of Ireos, *Enula*, and *Dracontij maioris*, ana. ℥.j. ſeede of flaxe. ℈.ij. Storax. ℥.iij. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. But the breaſt muſt firſt of all be rubbed with a rough linnen cloth, that (the pores being opened and vnlocked) the ſtrength of the medicine may more readily pierce to the bottome. Alſo you muſt vſe thoſe medicines which can exulcerate the skinne, and can drawe out matter and waterie humours as thoſe be which are named *rubefacientia*. For this purpoſe the breſt muſt be rubbed with nettels, braied or beaten. The places that are bliſtered are to be cured with warme oile. But in an inueterate euill, and where all medicines are miniſtred in vaine, we muſt flie to burning, as *AEtius* teacheth in *lib. 8 cap. 57.* how it ſhould be done. For the cure of that which is like a botch, which hath need of medicines to attenuate and drie, (as is ſayed before) you muſt note that it is cured with Aromaticke things, becauſe they do extenuate, drie, and heat. Therfore then you muſt giue vnto the Aſthmaticks ſpecially Antidotes, compounded of theſe things, as is *Theriaca*, *Mithridatiū*, *Antidotū emoſcha dulce*, *Diamber*, *Aromaticum roſaceum*, *Diamargariton callidum*, and many ſuch other like.

Cliſter.

Vnguentum.

Rubefacientia.

Cure of Abſeſtus.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the pluriſie.

De Plevritide.

PLVRISIE, to ſpeake exquiſitely & properly, is an inward inflammation of the vpper skinne, girding the ribbes and the ſides. In Latine it is called *lateralis dolor*. Neither is it raſhly added to ſpeake exquiſitely and properly:

for through many torments and through meats grosse and flegmaticke there doe engender humours that be colde, crude, grosse, and viscous in the bodie, which oftentimes do place themselues by & by in the void place of the breast, or in the lungs it selfe, and by reason of their multitude, they stretch out the vpper skin, girding the sides within, and cause paine: but of this we will speake nothing, because the cure of it doth differ litle from the cure of *asthma*, rehearsed in the last chap. The pluriſie which is an inflammation of the vpper skin, which girdeth the sides within, is caused of abundance of hot blood, flowing vnnatuarlly to the aforesayed vpper skinne within. The signes hereof are difficultie of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, vehement pricking paine, a hard pulse, and sharpe like a saw. And if his spittle is redde and bloodie, it signifieth blood to haue dominion: if it be yealow and subpale, choller hath the masterie: if it be white and froathie, fleume ruleth: if it be blackish, it betokeneth blacke choller to haue the masterie, or melancholie. The first two daies the sicke must be content with the iuyce of ptisan, for his meate. Afterward make him almond milke with the decoction of ptisan, or the crummes of fine bread mixed with the broth of a chicken or cocke, specially if the patient be weake. He must vniuersally eschewe all things that be sharpe and restrictiue. Let his drink be water wherein cinamon is sodden, and let the patient eschew cold water as a pernitious thing, because it maketh the spittle grosse & thicke. Also let him eschue wine altogether. Let him lie vpon the side that is grieued. Let him auoide wrath, sorrow, and other perturbations of the minde. In the beginning of the cure, the Phisition must diligently consider, whether the bodie of the sicke be grieued with abundance of humours or not: so that he must knowe at the first, whether the paine doth mitigate and dissolue with heating medicines, and when it doth not. For if the bodie be not full of humours, then in the beginning of the pluriſie and inflammation the paine must be mitigated and discussed with fomentes and medicines that do heate. But if the bodie do abound with euill humors, or be full of blood, you may not beginne the cure with those things that do heat, for they moue fluxe of humors to the aggrieued place: for the place to the which things that doe heate are layed, draweth more to it then it sendeth out by vapours againe. Therefore then you must not vse hote fumentes which cannot dissolue the paine, but all the bodie must be emptied by blood letting, and you must cutte the inner veine of the arme, which they call the liuer veine, or the splene veine, on that arme which is right against the griefe on the same side. For blood letting on the same side, doth not onely drawe blood away from the aggrieued parte, but also it purgeth it quickely, which is greatly requisite in the pleurisie, and in other inward inflammations. After blood letting, if the wombe do not cast out the excrementes of it selfe, as it ought to do, then cast into the belly this easie cliſter. ℞. mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, spinage, of both the garden endiues. ana. *M*. j. whole barley. ℥ j. seeth these in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third parte be consumed: then take of the iuyce of that decoction. ℔. i. *casia fistula* newly drawen. ℥ j ß. of the oyles of cammomill and violets. ana. ℥. j. ß. fresh butter. ℥ ß. common salt. ℥ j. and commixe them all, to make a cliſter. After the bodie is emptyed you must apply

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Venæ sectio.

Cliſter.

apply outwardly foments that doe heat and mitigate paine, ſuch as *ſacculi* be, which are made of the floures of cammomill, dill, melilote, *tapſus barbatus*, ſeed of flaxe, fenugreeke, *milium*, and bran mixed together, the decoctions of the herbes aforeſaid being put into bladders, or ſome other deuiſes. Alſo you may well apply a great ſoft ſponge, being dipt in the aforeſaid decoctions, and applied to the griefe warme. You muſt couer the foments with clothes, leſt their ſtrength do vaniſh away quickly. Alſo take an apple, take out the core of it and fill the hole with *olibanum*, and roſt it till it be ſoft, then take off the skinne of the apple, and mix the ſoft of the apple, and the *olibanum* together, and let the patient make boles of it, & ſwallow it all at once, which doth remoue the pain very much. This plaiſter alſo is good for this purpoſe. ℞. floures of cammomil, *tapſus barbatus*, and dill ana *M.* ß. line ſeede, fenugreeke. ana ℥.iij anniſe ſeede. ℥.j. barley meale. *M.* ß. bray them and put them in water, till they be as thicke as hony, after put to oiles of dill and cammomill ana. ℥ j ß. boile them againe and adde to it the yolkes of two egges, of ſaffron. ℈.j. and make an emplaiſter. After the ſeuenth day, if the paine do continue ſtil after one ſort, faſten a cupping glaſſe to the ſide, and ſcarifie the skinne, for a manifeſt commodity doth enſue to them that haue the pleuriſie, by applying of cupping glaſſes. The cuts of the ſcarified places muſt be ſtrewed with ſalt if the patient can abide it, if not, lay vpon it a linnen cloth dipped in oile, and ſprinkled with ſalt. The next day after the ſcarifying is done, it is good to faſten on a cupping glaſſe againe, that the mattery bloud may be drawen out of the litle wounds. This ſecond extraction is better then the firſt, for at the ſecõd time the blond is not drawen away, but the matter. Alſo the Phiſition may not neglect to miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as are good to make the fleume come vp eaſily (as is) *diapenidion*, *diatragacanthes*, conſerues of violets, *Trochiſci*, *pectorales*, putting to them other loches rehearſed before in the chap. of the cough. Outwardly you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to diſcuſſe (as is) fenugreeke, dill, melilot, hiſope, and ſuch like. And if there do appeare tokens that wil rot, & turne into matter, you muſt further it with this or the like ointment. ℞. oiles of cammomill, of ſweet almonds, and of lillies. ana. ℥.iij. butter without ſalt, hens greaſe. ana. ℥.ij the muſcilage of fenugreeke, line ſeed, and the rootes of *Althæa*. ana. ℥.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. The botch being broke, you muſt miniſter thoſe things that do clenſe and purifie matter and filth, (as is) *aqua mellis*, or decoction of barley, or ſuger roſet. The filth being clenſed, you may miniſter glutinatiue medicins, which ſhall be ſufficiently declared in the chapter of the Ptiſicke afterward.

Sacculi.

Emplaſtrum.

Concurbitula.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. IX.

Of the inflammation of the lungs.

De Peripneumonia.

Peripneumonia is an inflammation of the lungs with a ſharpe feuer. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is cauſed of ſtrong diſtillations falling to the lungs, or elſe of the ſquinancy, or the *Aſthma*, or the pleuriſie, or of other diſeaſes. Alſo ſometime onely inflammation is the cauſe of this diſeaſe. They which haue this euill, haue difficult breathing, the lungs lying vppon the

Cauſa.

Signa.

heart doth bring choking, they haue a ſharpe and burning feauer, and alſo fulneſſe and ſtretching out of the breaſt without paine. But if the skins which be ioyned all the length of the breſt within be inflammate, then they feele paine at the breaſt. All the face, and the aggrieued place looke red, the noſe is crooked in the top, the veines of the temples doe beate, the eies do ſwell, the tong is dry, the appetite is loſt, the breath is hot, they couet cold water, and rather cold aire, they haue a dry cough, it is froathy and cholericke, or blouddy and red, which be the worſt tokens. If the ſicke ſhall die, he ſhall watch much, and haue fearfull ſhort ſleepes, the hands and feet ſhall be cold, the nailes ſhall be crooked and ſwart, and he ſhall die the fourth or ſeuenth day at the furtheſt. But if the ſicke ſhall recouer, there will follow bleeding abundantly, or perturbation of the wombe, by paſſing forth of many cholericke & froathy humors: and ſomtime the inflammation is changed into matter, and the matter being filthy is driuen out either with egeſtion or with the vrine, and the ſicke is deliuered from all the griefe by and by. And if it doe flow into the lungs and that abundantly, or do choke him, then it is changed into a Ptiſicke. For their diet *Victus ratio.* you muſt miniſter to them ſoupings made of the iuice of Ptiſan, mixed with hony, origan, or hiſope. They haue more neede of extenuatiue meates then thoſe that haue the Pleuriſie. Alſo *alica*, or *aqua mulſa* is good for thé. Let them drink litle, for moiſtnes hurteth the lungs. You may miniſter for preſeruing of ſtrength (eſpecially if choking conſtraineth you) *Mulſa* alone, and with pine nuts, or *mulſa* wherein hiſope is ſodden, the powder of dry Ireos to *aqua mulſa* is good. Generally the diet of thoſe that haue *Peripneumonia* muſt in a manner be the ſame, which the pleuriſie ſhould haue, ſpecially if they begin to reco- *Curatio.* uer. For the cure, you muſt eſchue letting of bloud in ſuch as haue fallé to this euill out of other diſeaſes, eſpecially if they haue beene long in this caſe, or if they were let bloud before. You muſt mollifie the belly with cliſters, if he be coſtiue, or apply cupping glaſſes to the breaſt & ſides, if nothing do let it, and that great boxings and many, the skin being cut and ſcarified. But if the *peripneumonia* began firſt without any other diſeaſe going before, thé let him bloud, *Vena ſectio.* if ſtrength and other things will ſuffer it; you muſt cut the inner veine of the arme, and if ſtrength will ſuffer it, draw bloud on both the armes, and firſt but a litle, in no caſe vntil his heart faile, ſo that ſome ſtrength may be kept for the bloud letting of the next arme. But if any thing doth forbid bloud letting, you may faſten cupping glaſſes to the whole breaſt, and the ſides: and you muſt get out as much bloud as ſtrength by them wil ſuffer. Alſo it is good to mollifie the belly with ſharpe cliſters, made of the decoctions of hiſope, Ireos and rew, putting to it the pulpe of *Coloquintida*, *Salgemme*, & other things neceſſary for ſuch cliſters. After this you muſt labour and ſee, that the breaſt and the lungs be purged by much ſpitting, which muſt be made ſwift and eaſie. For the which purpoſe you muſt vſe thoſe Ecligmaes, ointments, and emplaiſters, which are declared before in the chapter againſt the pleuriſy, excepting that in this caſe you muſt miniſter the moſt ſtrong things, and thoſe that haue much ſtrength and vertue in extenuating. Therefore you muſt miniſter *loch è ſcylla*, *loch è pulmone vulpis*, the decoction of the roote of Ireos and *Enula*. And you muſt make a cerote of oile of rew & *nardinum*, putting to it the marrowe of a hart, of ireos, hiſope,

hiſope, and horehound beaten very fine, and commixed with Venice turpentine, and lay it all ouer the breaſt, and the ſides.

CHAP. X.

Of ſpitting of bloud.

De Sangvinis Reiectatione.

SPitting of bloud is cauſed many times of an outward manifeſt cauſe, as of falling frō an high place, or a ſtroke giuen to one outwardly, or with vehement ſtriking, or leaping, or if any heauy things haue fallen vppon the breaſt, either elſe with great crying, or immoderate cold: for cold (as *Hippocrates* witneſſeth) breaketh veines. Alſo ſpitting of bloud may be cauſed through heate. Alſo ſometime ſpitting of bloud is cauſed of inward and ſecret cauſes, as fulneſſe and abundance of naughty bloud, gnawing a ſunder the veines, and burſting open the heads of them. The gnawing a ſunder of thoſe veines is cauſed of ſharpe humors either falling from the head to the lungs, or elſe engendred in the lungs it ſelfe. Moreouer the bloud that is ſpit out, ſometime commeth from the breaſt and the lungs, or from the *Trachea arteria*, and ſometime from other places of the mouth or gummes, or the iawes, or from the ſtomack, vnto the which doth fall bloud out of the veines and members adioyning (that is to ſay) from the liuer and the ſpleene. The outward cauſes are knowen thus: if the ſpitting of bloud be cauſed of abundance of bloud, then the bloud commeth out guſhing all at once, & after it is out, the ſicke is better and lighter. But if it be cauſed through burſting of the mouths of the veines, then hote perturbations haue gone before it, as though the patient had vſed many hot baths, & had dwelt in a hot region, vſing hot diet in a hote ſeaſon. If ſpitting of bloud be cauſed through gnawing and eating a ſunder the veines, then the bloud is not ſpitted forth all on a heape, but by litle and litle with the cough; and they are alwaies worſe. Alſo if the bloud which is ſpitted, be froathy and paliſh, and commeth foorth now and then with the cough without any paine, it is a ſure token, that the bloud commeth out of the lungs. If flegmatick bloud be ſpitted out with eaſie coughings & reaching, then the bloud commeth from the *Trachea arteria*. If bloud be ſpitted forth being black and clodded together, hauing alſo the cough and paine in the aggrieued place, then it is a tokē that it commeth from the breaſt. For the diet, let him vſe meates which haue a moderate adſtriction, as be rice, hulled wheat called *Alica*, & ſuch other like, mixing with them the iuices of pomegranates or peares. For fleſh, let him eate wild doues, turtles, and partriches, if they be boiled with veriuice, or iuice of ſoure grapes, or with Sumach. Alſo he muſt vſe quinces, peares, reſtrictiue apples, medlers, and mulberies, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the chapter againſt bleeding at the noſe. He muſt drinke thicke redde wine, or in ſtead of it, water wherein ſteele is quenched. He muſt eſchue great noiſes, often ſpeaking, all mouing of the body, and anger. As for the cure, it differeth according to the diuerſity of cauſes: for if the bloud come out of the head, it needeth but a ſimple and eaſie cure: for reſtrictiue things applied cold to the palat of the mouth by colluſions & gargariſes do performe the cure. What things they be, you may ſeeke in the beginning of this ſecond booke the firſt chap. But if there do flow much

Cauſa.

Externa.
Interna.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vena sectio. bloud from the head, thé you must let him bloud on some veine. Those which spit bloud through distillation, you must by and by in the beginning let them bloud on some veine, vnlesse a sharpe humor doth distill vehemently. Also afterward minister a sharpe clister, and empty the wombe. Also rub the hands, the armes, and the legs very much with a medicine that will heat and extenuate, and bind the outward parts. After that, if the disease endure longer, shaue the head, and apply thereto a medicine which hath vertue to dry, and discusse (as is) that, which is made of the dung of wilde doues, and after three houres space, bring them into a bath, so that the head be annointed with no fat thing. Afterward couer them meanly, and nourish them with sowre soupings. When they go to sleepe, minister to them *Theriaca*. The next day all the whole bodie (the head being excepted only) being rubbed, keepe him in quiet, and againe at night minister to him *Theriaca*. And if through these the distillation be not stopped, then the third day in the morning minister a litle hony sodden, and rub all the body, and suffer him to rest. The fourth day, after the taking of the *Theriaca*, minister againe much hony, and lay to the head a medicine of doues dung. And if the euill do endure longer, fasten a cupping glasse to the hinder part of the head. Last of all minister those things which are able to purge the humours that are flowen into the lungs. But if it be a very sharpe humour, which distilleth out of the head you must beware of bloud letting, & you must rather vse purgations, and you must vse the nourishments and remedies hereafter declared, and also before in the chapter against distillations. They which do spit bloud comming from the lungs, by reason of breaking of some veins in it, or by bursting open of their heades, those you must first of all charge, that they do not breath much and make a noise, and that they speake but litle, and in a manner not at all. Let them sit in open aire hauing a stedfast bed, and of a good height. For such you must by and by cut the inner veine of the arme: and you must draw bloud twise or thrise a litle at once, for such haue no neede of much bloud letting. Also for the same purpose (that is to say) that the bloud may be drawen another way, you must rubbe the extremities, and vse to binde them hard with broad linnen cloths. These so done, you must minister to him a drinke made of vineger and water infused and warmed, and let him drinke it, so that if any clod of bloud do cleaue on the flesh, it may (being therby dissolued) be cast out, neither doth any thing let, but that you may minister this potion twise or thrise in three hours. After those you may minister both within the body and without, medicines which be restrictiue, and haue power to stoppe the pores. For things taken inwardly it profiteth to eate purslaine, albeit that his iuice drunken is of more effect, the iuice of knotgrasse, sharpe grapes, decoction of sumach, gals, the shels of acorns, the roote of bremble, *balausti*a, seed of sorrell, the rootes of horsetaile and such like, which are declared in the chapter against bleeding at the nose. But these are better & of more effect, then the aforesaid things (that is to say) *terra lemnia* beaten into verie fine powder, and ministred with the iuice of pomegranates, or of knotgrasse, or *lapis hæmatitis* at once. ℈. j. in the like iuice. Among compounds you must vse this *loboch*. ℞. of old conserue of roses, of *robs de ribes*. ana. ℥. j. of *diatragacanth frigidum*, and *diacotoneon simplex*. ana. ℥. ß. of the powders of corall *lapis hæmatitis*

Concurbitula.

Cure of spitting of bloud from the lungs.

Potio.

Emplastica.

Esligma.

matitis and *terra lemnia*. ana. ℥.ij. bole armoniack. ʒ.j. dragons bloud. ʒ.ß. pomgranate floures. ʒ j. frankensence, the roote of *consolida maior*. ana. ʒ.j.ß. sirupe of mirtels, as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make an *Eeligma*. Afterward you must sprinckle the breast outwardly with restrictiue wine, and the oiles of roses, quinces, and myrtilles. But if there be much eruption of bloud (especially being sommer) and the spitting therof comming without a cough, and the sicke not being weake, but strong and fleshie; then you may take vineger for wine, & apply it to with sponges. It is good to put to the aforesaid oiles, bole armoniacke, *terra lemnia*, corall, and such like, and to make an ointment thereof with waxe. Also apply thereunto a soft plaister made of dates, *acatia*, the root of *consolida maior*, the barkes of pomegranats, and the meale of lintels. Also a cerote made of the meat of pomegranats, frankensence, red corall, *balaustia*, bole armoniacke, *terra lemnia*, & such like is good of effect. But you must specially take heed, that by and by after the rupture of the vessels, it may grow together againe, before it take inflammation: for if there come inflammation before it be growen together, there is but litle hope of the conglutination of the wombe, for it keepeth it stretched out many daies: and you must washe away aswell the matter, as the waterie bloud out of the vlcer, after that the inflammation is gone. But here the reader must be admonished, that he take heed that he do not apply outwardly against that place where the bloud runneth out, neither restrictiue things, nor cold things without restriction: vnlesse the matter be first turned another way, and drawen from that place; for else it would driue the bloud inward, and stop the veins full that be within. Therfore first alwaies you must draw the bloud to the contrarie part, & after that applie restrictiue things outwardly. Those which spit bloud through erosion & gnawing of sharpe humours, you must first of all minister those things vnto them which haue vertue to purge sharpe humours, distilling into the lungs, such as be spoken of before in the chap. of distillation. After that, minister those things which can alter and make thicke the thinne and sharpe humors, and so haue vertue to stop the distillation, as is, sirupe of violets, roses, mirtles, hidromalon *diacotoneorum*, and such like. For the same purpose somtime minister sirupes of poppie and other somnoriferous medicins. The distillation being ceased, you must restore the gnawen parts with meates of good iuice, and with medicines that do engender flesh. Moreouer they which vomit bloud must vse the same diet and cure, which is before rehearsed, that is, if the bloud flowe from the liuer, cut the veine on the arme: But if the bloud be caried from the splene, into the belly, cut the veine on the left hand, which is betweene the litle finger, and the ring finger, and minister to them restrictiue meats and drinks, adding this to the cure, that they do not take meate and drinke often: for they may easily be cured, if the remedies which be receiued in, be applied to those parts that shedde bloud. And for bloud congealed in the stomacke like a hillocke, let him drinke creame, and especially of a hart, or let it be auoided with sauory mixed with vineger or with *aloes*. Those which spitte bloud from the palate of their mouth, they must gargarise with restrictiue things, and apply to the forehead, and to the head, those things which are applied vnto the nose when it bleedeth. Furthermore to conclude, after that all things be done, and that the

Note.

Cure of spitting of bloud caused of sharp humours.

Cure of vomiting bloud.

fluxe of bloud is ſtopped, then the ſtrength muſt be cheriſhed and reſtored a-gaine: and ſpecially he muſt beware of the often vſing of bathes, of drinking of wine, of wrath, of Venus.

CHAP. XI.

Of ſpitting of matter.

De Empiemate.

Cauſæ. Empiema in Greeke, ſignifieth a mattery ſpitting: In latin it is called *Suppuratio*. It is cauſed when an impoſtume, or botch being in the vpper skinne of them which girdeth the ribs inwardly, or elſe in ſome other vpper skin of the breſt, is broken all at once, & ſhed and powred into the empty place of the breaſt, which is betweene the lungs & the vpper skin that girdeth in the ribs. It is cauſed ſomtime through burſting out of bloud (an vlcer not being broght to his ſcar, and perfect ſhutting vp.) Alſo ſometime through fluxe of the head, and other vpper parts falling thither, which is wont often to change into the *Signa.* ſquinancy. The ſignes be theſe, heauineſſe is felt in the bottome of the breaſt, a ſtrong cough and a dry without paine: and alſo ſometime with moiſtneſſe, for the which they ſeem to be eaſed. In the beginning there chanceth to them feauers, faint, inordinate and hard to be iudged. When the impoſtume draweth neare to a rupture, then they haue a feauer more vehemẽt with quaking, and they are troubled in their ſpeach. Being broken, there appeareth ſomewhat to flowe into the breaſts bottome, according to the often chaunging of their lying, and ſpecially when they change lying from one ſide to an other, then ſurely the multitude of matter is euident, and oftentimes a certain noiſe of the flowing may perfectly be heard when they turne them. Alſo the matter that commeth out is ſometimes cleare, ſometime thicke and dreggy. Some impoſtumes do burſt out vpward, that is, vnto the voide place of the breaſt, & theſe be moſt perillous. Some impoſtumes do flow out downward vnto the paunch, and the bowels, and alſo the bladder. They alwaies labour of the feuer ethicke, vntill all things be brought out vpward. Thoſe that be vexed with *Victus ratio.* this diſeaſe of ſpitting of matter; let them remaine in a dry aire, let them vſe meates of good iuice eaſie to digeſt, brothes of cockes, the fleſh of hens, chickens, birds of mountains. Alſo vſe decoctions and brothes of cicers with herbs (as is) hiſope, and parcely. Let his drinke be *aqua mulſa*, and thin white wine. *Curatio.* For the cure in this diſeaſe, except diligent ſpeede be made by and by, the gathering together of matter cauſeth the ptiſicke, the lungs drawing vlceration. Therfore firſt you muſt helpe the concoction of the impoſtume with foments by ſponges or bladders, with cataplaſmes or emplaiſters, made of the meales of barley, fenugreeke, and line ſeeds, of figs, doues dung, mallowes, *Althæa*, and a litle roſen. Alſo you muſt apply to it cerots, made of butter, ireos, laurell berries, rew, and other things, which can ripe and diſſolue the impoſtume, wherof thou ſhalt find many in the chapter of *Aſthma* before, and if the quill be not diſſolued, you muſt apply to it, things that will breake the botch. The breaking of the botch is procured by lying on the whole ſide, eating of ſalt meats, and theſe pils giuen vnto him when he entendeth to ſleepe. ℞. of the powder of *Hierapicra Galeni*. ℥. j. of the pulpe of *Coloquintida*. ℈. j. with the iuice of wormwood

wood as much as is sufficient to commixe them, and make pilles, whereof let him hold one at once in his mouth. By this meanes it shall come to passe, that the sicke shall couet to spit often, and so by ouermuch spitting the impostume may breake. The rupture being made, you must take diligent heede, whither the matter runneth, and you must helpe his auoiding, for if it creepe into the belly, you must minister most of all mollifications. If it fall to the bladder, you must minister most those things which prouoke vrine. If the matter commeth out by a cough, then nothing is more meet to be ministred then ptisan, mixed with good hony. Also absterſiue & scouring things do profit, which are partly declared in the chapter against the pleurisie, and part of them shall be spoken of in the next chapter. But you may commodiously commix with their meat, those things which prouoke vrine, howsoeuer the matter intendeth to flowe. As for the purging & driuing out of the matter, *aqua mulsa* decoct with ireos, & much licorice is maruellous profitable. Moreouer the decoction of hisope, ireos, horehound and such like is good, whereof you may seeke more in the chapter of *asthma*. The rest that seemeth to be necessary for the cure of this disease shall be spoken of in the next chapter.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Ptisicke.

De Tabe.

PTISIS in Greeke, *Tabes* in Latine, it is properly an exulceration of the lungs till there followeth spitting of bloud withall. It is caused for the most part through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing from the head into the lungs. Also it is caused through the bloud & matter that remaineth, after the bursting out of it in them that haue the pleurisie, the *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiena*. They which labour of this disease, they are knowen by wasting the whole body and the flesh. Also their nosthrils be sharpe, their temples be slidden down, their eies be hollow, and their shoulders sticke out like birds wings. Moreouer they cough, and be vexed with the feuer Ethicke, they breath difficultly, their cheeke bals waxe swart, their nailes doe crooke and seeme pale. Also the euill ouercomming, the belly is troubled, and thirst doth vexe them more, their haire doth shedde, and that which they doe spitte out, is of a vehement stinking sauour. As for vlcers of the lungs, they are very hard to be cured, because they cannot be purged and clensed without the cough, and in them that cough, the vlcer is broken, & so the euill returneth as it were by a certaine circuit. Also the lungs among the other inward members, because of respiration and breathing, are alway in mouing, and also are rent with coughing. But the vlcers, which are to be healed, would require quiet and rest. Moreouer the strength of medicins cannot come to the vlcers, before it be altered in the stomacke, in the body, and in the liuer. Neuertheless although the causes before reherſed, make the cure to seeme hard, yet we may go about to cure that vlceration. Therefore in the beginning you must ascribe to those that be ptisicke, a conuenient diet after this sort. Let them dwell in a dry aire temperate between heat & coldnes, let their meat be ptisan, almond milke, rere egs, flesh of the birdes of mountaines, of partrich, of phesants, of owsils, of blacke birdes,

Cauſe.

Signa.

Looke Hippocrates in his aphoriſme. 5. the 14. & the 13. & the 11.

The cauſes why the cure is hard.

Victus ratio.

of hennes, of capons, of calues, of sucking kiddes. Also scaly fishes in stonie waters, crabs of the fresh riuer. But among all meates, milke is best for them that be prisicke, specially womās milke, after that asses milke, & goats milke, which would be sucked out of the dugges, if it might be, or let it be drunke by and by after the milking of it while it is hot. But you must beware, that they take no meate by and by after their milke, and specially no wine, for then it would be corrupted with it in the stomacke. But if they be very much feuerous, specially of a rotten feuer, then it is not good to take milke. Among fruites, it is good to eate raisons, sweet almonds, pine nuttes, figges, dates, pistax. Let them eschue exercises and mouings that be vehement. It is not vnprofitable to walke easily before meate: and after meat they must altogether rest: let them vse to sleepe on nights meanly: let them eschue wrath and sadnesse, vnmeasurable watchings, hunger, thirst, lecherie, hot houses, and whatsoeuer may empty the body. Let his drinke be but small and thin, or if his feuer be vehement, let him drink water, wherein a litle Cinamon hath bene sodden, or the drinke that is called *Hippocras*, whose making is declared in the first booke, in the chapter against the palsey. If the euill be caused through the flowing of a sharpe humor out of the head, you must begin the cure by remouing of the distillation, which we haue taught before in his proper chapter. Therefore now we will shew the exulceration of the lungs, how it is to be cured And first for the cure thereof, we must minister those things which haue an absterstiue and scouring vertue, and that which will cause that the matter may easily be brought vpward: for the which purpose *Hydromel* is specially good, & also decoction of barley with sugar and hony; also decoction of ireos, figges, maiden haire, hisope, horehound and licorice. If there come a feuer, you may cōmixe with the afore said things, the foure great cold seedes. Outwardly you must apply emplaisters, and cataplasmes, made of line seed, fenugreeke, and such like declared in the last chapter *de Empiemate*. Also for the same purpose you may seeke many remedies in the chap. against the *Asthma*. The lungs being cleansed and purged from matter: you must minister those medicines which will glutinate and heale vp the vlcer. For this purpose conserue of roses is commended almost of all Phisitions, for this hath not only the vertue to glutinate, but also to clense & scoure, but the newer it is, the more it scoureth, and the older it is the more it glutinateth. Also these are maruellous good, bole armoniacke, dragons bloud, amber, corall, purslaine seede, and such like which haue vertue to scoure and ioine together. Also these things are good *loch de pulmone vulpis*, *loch è pino*, conserues of *consolida maior*, and maiden haire. Therfore of these you must make this compound medicin. ℞. conserues of *consolida maior*, and of maiden haire. ana ℥ ß. conserues of roses. ℥ j. *loch è pulmone vulpis*. ℥ j ß. *loch è pino*. ℥ ii. powder of *diatragacanthos frigidum*. ℥ iij. bole armoniack. ℥ j. ß. sirupe of poppy as much as will suffice to commixe it, & make a loch Also this powder daily ministred causeth much ease. ℞. of the seeds of white poppy. ℥ ß. gumme arabicke, *Amylum* and gumme tragacant. ana. ℥ j. ß seedes of cucumbers, citrons, gourdes, melons, quinces. ana. ℥ iij. burnt Iuory, iuice of licorice. ana. ℥ j. ß. *penidies*, as much in weight as all the rest, and make a powder, of the which minister daily euery morning. ℥ ij. with sirupe of poppy or roses. At that time also, that the vlcer

Curatio.

Ecligma.

Pulus.

is

is closed, you must annoint the breast without, with oile of quinces, mirtels or roses, adding thereto sometime sumach, *Hipocistidos*, pomgarnet rindes, *acatia*, galles and such like. In the end the bodie being extenuate and wasted, it is good to restore with a conuenient diet, vsing all those meates which be of good iuyce easie to digest, and nourish much, at which time also you may minister this medicine. ℞. of the pulpe of a capon. ℥. j. cockes stone, pine nuttes, pistax, sweete almonds. ana. ℥ ß. of the powder of the *Antidoti de gemmis*. ℥. ß. powder of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *dianthon*, & *aromaticum rosarum*. ana. ℈. j. white sanders and cinamon. ana. ℥ ß. maces. ℈. j. white sugar of the finest. ℔. j. dissolue the sugar in water of bugloss, and roses, and make lozenges, or an electuarie, of the which minister euery day. *Morsuli refectorij*

CHAP. XIII.

Of panting of the hart.

De Cordis Palpitatione.

Palpitatio & tremor cordis in Latine, is in English panting and trembling of the hart, it is a corrupt motion of the hart, or a stretching out of it against nature. The new sort of Phisitions do wrongfully call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused of all such things as do trouble and affect the hart aboue nature (as is) euery distempure, or the multitude of an humour, contained in the outward skin that goeth about the hart, or else of swelling contrarie to nature and such like. The disease is easily knowen by the words of the patient, who doth easily feele the beating and panting. And also you may know it by the pulse: for in a hot distempure there commeth a feuer, & the pulse is swift & great, in a cold distempure, the contrary. If plentie of an humor contained in the vpper skin of the hart do cause beating thereof, then the pulse is soft and feeble. The diet must be ordained diuersely according to the diuersitie of causes: for in a hot distempure of the hart, the aire ought to be meanely cold, but in a cold distempure it ought to be meanly warme. But vniuersally whatsoeuer the cause be, you must eschue any thing that doth trouble or resolue the vitall spirits, (as be) ouermuch heat anger, hunger, watching, letcherie, vnmeasurable colde, meate of euill iuyce. If abundance of any humor contained in the vpper skin, that goeth about the hart, do engender panting of the hart: let their whole diet be extenuatiue, let their drinke in a hote distempure be thinne and small, or a iulep of violets or roses, or decoction of bugloss. In a colde distempure they may drinke pure wine, or other strong drinke. Those that be vexed with beating of the heart caused of hot distemper, they must haue remedie by cold medicins, which can correct the hot distempure, and ad strength to the hart. (As these be among simples) roses, violets, floures of water lillies, saunders, corall, camphire and such like. Among compounds be these, *Diamargariton frigidum*, *diarrhodon abbatu*, conserues of roses, of violets, of bugloss, and their plants, iuices and sirupes. Therfore of the aforesaid things there may be made potions, electuaries, and lozenges as you thinke good. Outwardly appoint ointments and emplaisters, specially epithemes *sacculi*, and other like, whatsoeuer is able to alter the hot distempure of the liuer. And first among ointments this is good. ℞. the oyles of roses, violets, and *nimphea*. ana. ℥. ij. of redde corall, and redde saunders, and

Causæ.

Signa.

Victus ratio

Cure of panting of the hart caused by hote distempure.

Vnguentum.

red roſes, ana. ℈. j. camphire, gr. ij. white wax as much as is ſufficiẽt, & make an ointment, wherwith annoint the region of the hart & the backe bone. Among epithemes, let this eſpecially be laid to the hart. ℞. the waters of roſes, ſorrell, & bugloſſe. ana. ℥. iij. water of balme. ℥. j. powder of the cordiall medicine. ℥. j. red ſanders, red corrall. ana. ℥. ß. purcelaine, gr. iij. ſaffron, gr. iiij. commixe all togethe and make an epitheme. Alſo among the ſorts of drie bags this is beſt. ℞. floures of bugloſſe, violets, red roſes. ana. M. ß. all the ſaunders, of ech. ℥. j. red corall & white, of ech. ℥. j. ß. of pearles ℈. j. being firſt powdred, put them in ſilke and make a *Sacculus*. But thoſe that be aggrieued with a colde diſtempure of the hart, to ſuch among ſimple medicines, theſe be profitable (that is) amber, muske, ſaffron, wood of aloes, *ſtorax*, cloues, maces, zedoary, baulmes, and ſuch like: among compounds theſe are good: the electuary, *plir ſar, haticon, diamber, dianthos, aromaticum roſarum*, and ſuch like, of the which may be made kindes of medicines, like as we did againſt hote diſtimpure of the hart. For ointments may be made after this ſort. ℞. the oiles of lillies, of ſpike, and of ſaffron. ana. ℥. ij. ß. *gallia moſchata*, cloues ana. ℈. i. wood of aloes. ℈ ß. maces. ℈. j. ſaffron. gr. iij. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo you may make this epitheme thus. ℞. waters of balme, marioram, bugloſſe, ana ℥. iiij. powders of the electuaries, *diamber* and *diamoſchæ*. ana. ℥. ß. maces, wood of aloes. ana. ℈. j. amber. gr. j. of the beſt wine. ℥. j. commixe them together and, make an epitheme. An example of *ſacculus* is thus. ℞. floures of balme, & bugloſſe. ana. M. j. ß. choſen cinamon, cloues, maces. ana. ℥. j. wood of aloes, ℈. j. barcke of the citrine apple. ℥. j. ß. ſaffron. ℈. j. amber. gr. j. braie all together, and make a *ſacculus* of ſilk to lay to the hart. And if there be panting of the hart engendred through ſome humour contained in the vpper skin that compaſſeth the hart: it muſt be cured (as Galen witneſſeth) with a diet which will extenuate, & by cutting of a veine in the arme. Therfore you muſt cut the inner veine of the arme, or the middle veine. And afterward one muſt miniſter and apply as well inwardly as outwardly, medicins that haue vertue to extenuat and ſtrengthen the hart by applying of ointnents, and epithemes and *ſacculi*, and ſuch like. Of the which things to make priuat examples, we think it in vaine, ſeeing it is eaſie to any man by examples now declared heere, and in other places, to make medicines for this purpoſe of whatſoeuer ſort he will.

Epithema

Sacculus.

Cure of diſtempure of the heart cauſed through cold making it to beat and pant.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

Sacculus.

Cure of panting of the hart cauſed of an humour.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Sownding.

De Sincope.

Sincope is a ſwift falling of the ſtrength (as Galen ſaith) it is cauſed through much excretion and auoiding of blood, or through vnmeaſurable emptying of the belly, or vehement mouing, or through great paine, or much and often waſhings. Alſo through abundant ſweates, and all other immoderate vacuations, alſo feare, dread, and all ſuch like perturbations of the mind. Moreouer through abounding of crude and raw humours, through great inflammation, or through vicious and thinne humours, or elſe by taking breath in a ſtinking ayer. The *ſincope* is knowon by theſe tokens, the pulſe is rare and obſcure, the extreame parts, as the hands and feet be cold, ſweat about the face, the taking away

Cauſe.

Signa.

away of the brightnes of the skin that is in it, & as it were a palsey of the whole body. Moreouer of these three commeth desperation, vexation of the mind, and shaking of the bodie. And moreouer there chaunceth sometime with the sownding of the hart, a vice (that is) when the hart is vehemently distempured. Also sometime it chaunceth to the stomacke (that is) when humours abounding, or heaped together, or crude, either else sharpe and gnawing be in it: that kind of *Sincope* is called *stomachica*. They which fall in a sownd through plentie of raw humours contained in the mouth of the stomacke, in such the sides are inflate and puffed vp, and the whole body seemeth to be of a greater bignes then it should naturally be: also their color changeth whiter then it was wont to do: & to conclude, their body is like to them that haue the dropsy; also to many their colour waxeth swarter and blacker like lead, but the pulses of the sinewes be least of all other, moreouer they be obscure and vnequall. Those which are vexed with sownding through aboundance of sharpe humours, they feele continuall pulling, twitching and gnawing in the mouth of the stomacke. They which through thin vices (which do swiftly exhalate & flye vp) do suffer sownding, in them their face appeareth by and by as though it were dead, their nose is sharpe, their eyes be hollowe, and such like. The other causes of *Sincope* are knowen by the talke of them that stand by without any great businesse. It is easie to know, that the cure must be diuerse according to the diuersitie of the causes. If sownding do inuade one through excretion and auoiding of blood, or through any other vnmeasurable or sudden emptying, you must sprinkle their face with cold things or with rose water, which hath a maruellous good effect in this case. The extreme parts of the bodie, must be bound vehemently with bands, and must be rubbed a litle with sharpe linnen clothes. If the emptying be vpward, you must rubbe the legges: if it be downeward, rubbe and bind the hands. Also cupping glasses are to be fastened lightly, diuersely, according to the places where the euacuations, or where the blood bursteth out. Moreouer the mouth must be opened, by putting in your fingers or a wedge, or some other thing, but the passage of hearing, and of the nosethrils would be thrust together, that the ayer that is breathed in, might stirre and comfort the spirits. Also it is good by and by for to comfort the spirits with sundrie odoraments. For as Hippocrates saith in his booke *de alimentis*, there is nothing that calleth the strength againe sooner then odours. Therfore it is good to apply to the nose of the sicke, chickens rosted & parted asunder in the middest. Also roses, violets, quinces, citrons and such like be good. You must minister wine to him that is thinne, and alaied. Let the aire of the chamber be cold, but let not the chamber be verie full of light: let their counter points be taken away that lie vpon them, and let the couerings wherwith they be couered be soft, and strew the floores with leaues of mirtels, vines, okes, briars, and roses themselues, and sprinckle it with water. In vnmeasurable sweats annoint the sweating parts with oile of mirtels, roses & quinces: but specially the neck, the breast, the places vnder the arme holes and the share. For this purpose also it is good to annoint with *amilum*, and powders of frankensence, mixed with the white of an egge, and other restrictiue medicins. Also you must hold to his nose diuerse odoraments, as roses, sanders, quinces, floures of water lillies, and

Sincope cordis.

Sincope stomachica.

Cure of sownding through vnmeasurable emptying.

Stoppers of great sweats.

Cure of ſounding cauſed of paine.

camphir, but you may not then bind the extreme parts of the body. If ſounding be cauſed through paine, you muſt diligently enquire the cauſe: for if it come of an outward cauſe, the ceaſing of the paine cureth the ſounding. But if the pain be cauſed of no outward cauſe, you muſt find out ſome inward cauſe which cauſeth paine. If fulneſſe with retching and ſtretching out do cauſe the paine, by and by, if ſtrength will ſuffer it, let him bloud on the veine that is higheſt to the aggrieued part, but if ſtrength be feeble, then you muſt only pull it back, or you muſt driue it vpward, or downeward, or both wayes, or vſe frictions. But whereas the paine is cauſed of vicious humours, you muſt rather purge it. If both the aforeſaid cauſes come together, then you muſt vſe euacuations both wayes: but bloudletting muſt firſt be vſed before any of them. Afterward if the corrupt humours be faſtened, and do ſticke faſt in ſome onely place, you muſt begin your cure with diſſoluing and diſcuſſiue medicines. As for curing of other paines, they may be ſought in their owne proper chapters, and eſpecially in the chapter againſt the cholicke. Thoſe which do ſound through great ſorow, feare, and other perturbations of the mind, they are fully cured by vſing of their contraries. Neither let paſſe to miniſter vnto them that do ſound for great ſorow, odoriferous things, and other things which being taken inwardly may comfort the ſpirites. They which be troubled with ſounding through plenty of crude humours, they may neither ſuffer letting of bloud nor purging. Therefore you muſt cure ſuch by frictions. And you muſt by and by in the beginning of the euill begin, & you muſt rub the legges firſt from the vpper part, and ſo downward with linnen clothes not very ſoft, but ſomewhat ſharp: afterward likewiſe the armes from the ſhoulders to the fingers. And when all the arteries and veines be ſufficiently heat, & that ye doubt that ſome wearineſſe will come to the ſenſes through ouermuch rubbing: you muſt vſe oyle ſolutiue and looſing, as is oyle of dill, and cammomill: and you muſt beware eſpecially of reſtrictiue things. And when you haue annointed the parts of the body, and rubbed them well, then you muſt come to the backe, and that you muſt likewiſe firſt rub with a linnen cloth, and then with oyle: from that you muſt go againe to the legs, and then to the armes, & ſo againe to the backe, and ſo you muſt do all, and that in a bright chamber without moiſture, whoſe aire muſt be temperat. Moreouer *mulſa*, wherin hiſope is ſodden is moſt meet for them: and you muſt beware that you miniſter not to them, neither meate nor brothes, nor water, nor to ſuffer him to drinke liberally, but onely *mulſa* the three firſt dayes, and to rub him by courſe continually, graunting him onely but time to ſleepe, which muſt be in a meane. But if their pulſe be very ſmall and feeble, or alſo beſides that, wonderfull inequall, you may know that there is extreme perill: but yet you muſt do as it is taught before, and go about none other thing. But if the pulſe be indifferently ſtrong and great, and be not cut off, nor thruſt together, then you muſt conſider the ſtate of the belly, & if it auoyd not ordure ſufficiently of it ſelfe, you may boldly powre in ſomwhat beneath. For it chanceth after the taking of *aqua mulſa*, that the ſuperfluities which are wont to be gathered in the principall veines (that is) they which be about the liuer, & the bowell which ioyneth with the midriſe vnto the backe, by that thing they are well caſt out. And if a heape of ſuperfluities do violently prouoke the bellie a-

Cure of ſounding by affections of the mind.

Cure of ſounding through abundance of crude humors.

bout

boue reaſon, firſt you muſt ſeeth your *mulſa* more higher, for ſo it doth make the belly leſſe ſoluble, and it nouriſheth more. After this, if the ſuperfluities do deſcend more largely, the belly may not be ſtopped ſo, but you muſt miniſter for *aqua mulſa*, the iuice of ptiſan. And if they continue ſtill to flow, nouriſh him with ſoupings of *alica*, taking heed to the working of the pulſes in the meane ſeaſon: for ſometime they are changed to imbecilitie, or vnequalnes or ſmalnes: at which time it is good to miniſter bread infuſed in wine, & that, if neither the belly nor the liuer be troubled with an impoſtume; for if they be vexed with it (the bodie being ſtuffed with crude and raw iuices) the ſicke is deſperat of all health. Therfore in ſuch a caſe of the ſick, thou ſheweſt thy ſelfe without blame, if thou ſay before that he will die, and vſe no better medicines. But if there be at any time found abundance of clammy humors, by and by miniſter *Oximel* in ſtead of *mulſa*. Therfore if it be ſommer, and the ſicke vſed to cold potions, giue him the *Oximel* cold, but if it be winter, miniſter it hote. Alſo theſe things are very euill for them, aſwell bathings, as alſo the open aier, as often as it is ouer hot or ouer cold. But if thou art called to them which be preſently vexed with ſounding, where the belly and the liuer be without impoſtumation, thou ſhalt miniſter a litle bread, and that with ſome wine, becauſe it cauſeth ſwift diſtribution into the other parts of the body: and thou ſhalt come ſtraight to frictions and rubbings, and thou ſhalt do according to the order before preſcribed. But if it be ſommer, or the region naturally hot & burning, or the ſtate of the heauen vehemently hot: then let them drinke no wine but ſmall ale cold. But the drinke that ſhalbe giuen the ſecond and third time, thou ſhalt miniſter it altogether hot. For in the whole cure, where we vſe frictions, heat is beſt, as a helper of the concoction of crude humours. But to thoſe which haue ſounding cauſed of choler, which troubled the mouth of the ſtomacke, to them you muſt miniſter cold potions. But yet it is good to miniſter to all that haue the *ſyncope*, wine that is hot by nature, yelowiſh in colour, thin in ſubſtance, cold, and that which prouoketh diſtribution in the body: for we would haue the food that is receiued, to be diſtributed about the body, & not to tarrie in the ſtomack. They that are vexed with ſounding through vice of thin humours, thoſe you muſt emptie by litle and litle, and continually, becauſe they cannot ſuffer much emptying at once: thoſe alſo muſt we nouriſh by litle & litle, and often. The outward part of the skin muſt be thickned: and you muſt make the aire of the chamber cold and reſtrictiue. Alſo you muſt annoint them with reſtrictiue medicins and ointments, and you muſt giue them meats that do not readily diſperſe and flow: therfore giue neither *aqua mulſa*, nor *ptiſan*, but bread and ſoupings of *alica*, and ſoure frutes which will not eaſily be corrupted. You ſhall alſo giue ſometimes to them egges, ſpecially their yolkes, for their whites be hard to digeſt. Moreouer the ſtones of cocks which be nouriſhed with milke. Alſo ſwines braine, but let it either be diligently roſted, or well ſodden in water with leeks, and dill. To conclude you muſt labour by all meanes, that you may make the ſubſtance of the iuices more thick, and thicken the skinne, and to ſtop the exhalations. Watery wine is neceſſarie to them after meat in the beginning of ſickneſſe, if they haue bene vſed onely to wine, but if they haue not vſed themſelues to wine, then ale is beſt for them, or

Phlegmon.

Cure of ſounding now preſent.

Cure of ſincope cauſed of thin humours.

beere. And if all follow your mind, you may also after other things giue them nourishment by flesh specially after the fourth day, (the iuices comming now to concoction.) If sounding come through vehement inflammtion, the members and parts of the body are to be rubbed and nourished, and the hands and feet must be bound. You must command him to watch, because the bloud in sleepe creepeth to the inward members. You must driue them cleane frō meat and drinke. Whosoeuer hath the *sincope*, through vicious humors gnawing the mouth of the stomake, they must be cured by prouoking of vomit: or if that take no place to moue the bellie, do other things which are expounded in the chapter of paine in the stomake. They that begin to sound in a bath, you must bring them quickly out, nor you must not moisten them with much powring in of water. They that be already in a sound, must be caried out verie quickly, and the rest of the bodie must be couered with a light couering. Let the face be wet with a spunge dipped in cold water, or sprinckle it with rose water. Also the face, the stomake, and feet must be rubbed. Also the mouth must be opened by putting in of quils, or ones finger. And you must go about by all meanes that the humours that cause the sounding may be vomited out, by powring in of warme water at the mouth. They that be of perfect age, pull off their haires, and the loud calling of one is profitable, but many at once is hurtfull.

Cure of sounding through inflammation.

Cure of sounding through humours in the stomach.

CHAP. XV.

Of lacke of milke.

De Lactis Defectv.

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of lacke of milke in a distempure.

Litle bloud.

Victus ratio.

THE want of milke, doth chance through dry distempure of the pappes, or of the whole bodie. Also through small quantity of good bloud, or because the child is so weake, that he cannot sucke well of the paps: for looke the more that he draweth out by sucking of thē, the more draweth to them againe. The tokens wherby the diuersities of causes are knowne, are euident enough by things before spokē, but yet I wil rehearse thē againe. A dry distēper is known by the disposition of the whole body, and by leanesse & drinesse of the body, & pappes & such like. Small quantitie of good bloud is known by the ill state of the body, & by the euill colour of it. Also vnmeasurable euacuations comming out of the bodie before, (that is to say) by menstruis, by fluxes, by extreame exercises, by hunger & such like. For the cure of lacking of milke, which is caused of a drie distempure, we will teach nothing in this place, because it may easily be cured by that which is declared before in other chapters, and shall also be declared afterward in the chap against the feuer Ethick. Therfore here we wil only treat of the cure of lack of milke, caused of the litle quātity of good bloud. In this cure first you must behold the bloud, for either there is lesse then there ought to be, or it is worse then it should be. Therfore when there is lesse then there should be, a diet must be assigned with moist and heate meanely: for whatsoeuer doth heate more then is conuenient, either else do drie or coole, those partly by corrupting the bloud that remaineth, & partly by diminishing of it, they do forbid the milke to come. Therfore it is good to giue them pure bread, milke, veale, chickens, partriches, birdes, rere egs, fishes scaly, & raisons the stones taken out, sweet almonds, lettuse, bugloss, balme, gourdes, & such like

like. They must drinke wine that is thinne and waterie, they must eschue immoderate exercises, anger, sorrow, and all things that may diminish the bloud. But if the bloud be worse, (as if it be cholericke) first purging of the cholericke humours is requisite, and then vse the diet before prescribed: but if it be flegmaticke bloud, it requireth medicines that do heat in the first or second degree, but they may not drie vp, for such by heating of the flegmaticke humours do turne them into bloud: but among such (which are not onely medicines, but also nourishments) the strongest are, rocket, fennell, dill, parcely, and those things greene before they be dried, for being dried, they do heat and drie more then they ought to do: and those things which do drie, they make the humour which feedeth the bloud, the more grosse, and more small in quantity. The bloud ought to be meanely hot and not grosse, that the milke may be engendred thereof. Moreouer those things that do meanly heat, and haue no great drinesse ioyned with them, they haue vertue to engender milk: among which, besides those which are spoken of before, is *Sesamum* boiled in wine. Also fresh butter, the weight of one ounce drunke with wine. Also sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes beaten, and eaten with butter. Also this thing is specially praised. ℞. Rice ten times washed and dried againe, and beat it to powder, then seeth it in good milke vpon burning coales: while it doth seeth, put to as much of white sugar as is sufficient, and make a potage. It is made the better, if you adde to it sweet almonds, *pistax*, pine nuttes, barley meale, cycers, and such like: but you must labour also, that by gentle rubbing of the breast, and by hot medicines, which haue an attractiue vertue, the milke may be drawen, and entised to the pappes. *Euill bloud.*

CHAP. XVI.

Of abundance of milke.

De Lactis Redvndantia.

IT chaunceth sometime that through abundance of milke, the pappes are so filled and swollen, and so stretched out with it, that they are scarce able to hold the abundance of it. It is caused through abundance of good bloud. The euill is knowen by sight and feeling. You must helpe this by and by, for else it is to be feared, least the paps be taken with inflammation. Therefore at the beginning cut the veine of the arme, or the middle veine which is in the arme. After that vse those things which do lightly represse and driue backe, lest that the bloud be thrust into the lungs by a certen violence. For this purpose it is good to apply a soft spunge dipped in warme *Posca*, & to bind it with bands to the pappes, or apply dates braid with bread and *Posca*. Also it is good to apply an emplaister made of oile of roses, of saunders, coriander, *Psillium*, purcelaine, beane meale, lintels, iuice of plantaine, and of vineger, after this sort. ℞. of beane meale and of lintels. ana. ℥. j. seed of purcelaine. ℥. j. seedes of flaxe and *Althæa*. ana. ℥ ij. ß. of plantaine. *M*. j. seed of Coriander. ℥. ij. boile them together in water, vntill it come to the thicknes of hony; after that, put to it oile of roses. ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and adde therto the yolkes of two egges, and make an emplaister: or make a cerote after this sort. ℞. of the oile of roses and mirtelles ana. ℥. j. ß. the meales of beanes and lintels. ana. ℥. j. ß. *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Posca is vineger and water mixed together and wine and water.* *Emplastrum.* *Cerotum.*

of mintes and rew. ana. ℥. ß. with waxe and Venice turpentine, as much as is ſufficient, and make a cerot to apply to the pappes. Alſo wilde rapes do profit maruellouſly being annointed with water and hony. Moreouer, it is verie profitable to annoint the place with the iuice of *Cherua* and greene percelie. Likewiſe, the ſtone *pyrites* powdred and applied with oile of roſes and vineger, doth ſhew a maruellous effect againſt abundance of milke. And let their whole diet be ſuch, that thereby but litle bloud may be engendred. Therfore hunger in this euill aboue other things is maruellous good.

CHAP. XVII.

Of milke that is curded.

De Lacte In Grvmos Converso.

Cauſa. MAny times the milke curdeth in the pappes, and turneth into the forme of cheeſe curds. It is cauſed through abundance of milke, that is, when it is kept long time together on heapes in the pappes, and is not ſucked out. It is cauſed alſo of a hot diſtempure, when that through ouermuch heat, the thinne part of the milke is digeſted and diſſolued, and the reſt groweth together, and turneth into curdes. Alſo the like may chance of cold, which may cauſe milke to curd and congeale as well as other licours. Alſo ſomtime milke of his owne nature is groſſe and clammie inough, and for that cauſe doth eaſily turne to curdes. There need no tokens to know this euill: for it is known by & by, both by touching & by the patients words. The diet in this euill is diuerſe according to the diuerſitie of cauſes. For in a hote diſtempure of the pappes, let the diet decline to cold things, but in a cold diſtempure contrarywiſe to hote things. If this euill come through groſſeneſſe of the milke, ſhe muſt vſe altogether an extenuate diet. For the cure, if there be abundance of milke, not being as yet curded in the pappes of them that be of lawfull age, and being skilfull women, let it be eaſily ſucked out by litle and litle. Let the pappes be outwardly annointed with iuice of greene parcely, mintes, fenugreek, & other things rehearſed before in the chapter of abundance of milke. Alſo the creame of a hare beaten with water, if it be annointed is good againſt all ſwellings of the paps, eſpecially cauſed of the corrupt abundance of milk Alſo lintels ſodden in brine is maruellous good, if the pappes be waſhed with the decoction, & annointed with the lintels being ſtamped. Alſo the decoction of fenugreeke and *althea* doth great pleaſure. But if ouermuch heat doth cauſe the milke to curd in the pappes, then annoint them with iuice of purcelaine, and garden nightſhade. Alſo apply oyle of roſes with vineger. Alſo mouſ-eare annointed is of good effect. Alſo the earth called *cimolia* annointed with vineger or with water & oile of roſes doth good. Moreouer lintels ſodden in vineger, & applied as is aforſaid, is good againſt cold diſtẽpure of the paps. Vſe decoctions of cammomill, fenell, dill, lineſeed, and fenugreeke, & therwith foment the paps. Alſo annoint them with oiles of cammomill, dill, lillies, and ſuch like, but beware they touch not the nipple. Oxes gall annointed is good. Crummes of bread are good with vineger annointed, but you may put to it mintes or parcely, and make the medicine the ſtronger. This plaiſter is excellent good. ℞. of hony ℥. ß. of *ſtorax calamita*. ℥. iij. of oxes gall. ℥. ij. of oile of cammomill

Signa.
Victuratio.

Curatio.

chammomill ℥ij. mirrhe and frankenſence. ana. ℥.ij.ß. commixe them together, and make an emplaiſter to lay on the pappes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of inflammation of the pappes.

De Inflammatione Mammarvm.

IT is cauſed ſometime, (as other inflammations be) of plentie of hot bloud flowing to the pappes. Alſo ſometime through milke (that is) when it turneth to ſuppuration and matter. The aforeſaid cauſes are eaſie to diſcerne a ſunder. For the firſt cauſe of inflammation chanceth to them that be not with child, nor brought in bed: the other cauſe chaunceth onely to ſuch. For the cure in the firſt cauſe, you muſt ſee bloud drawne from the inward veine of the arme, or the middle veine on the ſame ſide, vnleſſe the menſtruis be ſtopped: for then it were better to cut the veine of the hamme or ancle. After this you muſt come to reſtrictiue medicines, which may not be ſtrong, leaſt that the humours do violently thruſt inwardly to the noble parts of the body: or elſe you may mixe with them ſome diſcuſſiue things. Therfore for that purpoſe it is verie good to take oile of roſes, with the iuice of water of nightſhad, vineger, and the decoction of cammomill: in this dip and wet linnen clothes, and apply it to the pappes. Alſo an emplaiſter made of barley meale, lineſeed, ſaunders, bole armoniake, greaſe and oile of roſes are good. And if the Phiſition doth ſee that repercuſſiue medicins do not much good, he muſt ſtraight proceed to my booke of the cure of impoſtumes in the breaſts. But if inflammation be cauſed of curded milke, in the beginning you muſt apply a ſofte ſpunge dipped in warme *poſca*, and bind it to it. Alſo apply dates brayed with bread and *poſca*. Alſo apply crummes of bread with mirrhe, ſaffron, and mints, and ſuch like. But if the inflammation endure ſtill, proceed to the chapter of impoſtumes in the breaſts, as hereafter ſhall proceed.

Cauſe.

Curatio.

Venæ ſectio.

Emplaſtrum.

The third booke.

CAAP. I

Of weakeneſſe of the ſtomach.

De Imbecillitate Ventricvli.

WEAKNES of the ſtomake is ſometime cauſed through diſtempure of the effectrix and working qualities without any flowing of humours. For as *Galen* ſaith *in lib. 3. de ſimp. cauſis. cap. 10.* All vehement diſtempure doth ouerthrowe and caſt downe the ſtrength. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed of an humour, being contained in the boſome, and large ſpace of the ſtomacke,

Cauſe.

Signa.

which hath power and vertue either to heat, or coole, or to moiſten or dry, or two of theſe qualities mixed together: ſometime it is cauſed of an humour ſtuffed and drowned in the filmes, and cotes of the ſtomake. Vehement thirſt, abhorring of meat, and vnſauorie belkings, do betoken diſtempure onely of a hote qualitie. Contrariwiſe litle thirſt, vnmeaſurable appetite, and ſoure belkings, betoken diſtempure of a cold qualitie. And to be ſhort, if the ſtomach be grieued with hote or cold diſtempure, it changeth the meats that be eaten into the nature of the diſtempure: ſo that the meates may be perceiued to be chaunged into the ſauour of roaſting or ſowerneſſe, without the commixing of any humour Moreouer if the diſtempure be hote, you ſhall ſee the patient by and by eaſed with taking of medicines, or meates, or drinkes that be cold. But if the diſtempure be cold, the patient feeleth eaſe in hote meates or medicines, but he feeleth hurt with cold things. In a moiſt deſtempure, the patient feeleth no thirſt, or verie litle; he hath abundance of ſpittle, and doth deſire moiſt meates. In a dry diſtempure there is drineſſe of the tongue, extenuation of the bodie, litle ſpittle, and vehement thirſt. Moreouer vomiting & deſire thereto, heauineſſe of the ſtomacke, and belking, ſpecially after meat, betokeneth abundance of naughtie and corrupt humors. And if yealow choler do abound, there followeth bitterneſſe of the mouth, vomiting vp of choler, thirſt, belkings, with ſauour roaſted, and gnawing of the ſtomacke; but if fleume do abound, it doth cauſe no gnawing in the ſtomacke, vnleſſe it be ſalt fleume: there are preſent ſowre belkings, no thirſt and ſtretching out of the ſtomacke. If melancholy abound, it cauſeth ſadneſſe and feare, ſtinking belkings, and ſpittings, and ſauour of fiſh, ſleepe with fits of ſtrange imaginations, contraction and paine of the hammes and calues of the legs. Euery diſtempure is corrected and amended by his contrarie. Therfore you muſt coole a hot diſtempure, and heate a cold diſtempure; alſo moiſten a dry, and dry a moiſt diſtempure: likewiſe muſt you do in compound diſtempures, either heat and dry, or heate and moiſten, or elſe coole and moiſten, or coole and drie.

Curatio.

Thoſe that be vexed with hot diſtempure of the ſtomak, are cured with a cooling diet, but ſpecially if they take cold things with vineger. Therfore let their bread be mixed or dipped in *poſca*. For fleſh, let him vſe chickens, partrich, vele ſodden with vineger or veriuice. For pot-herbs, lettuſe and purcelaine are verie good. Alſo apples and ſharpe peares. The ſicke muſt drinke ſmall ale or beere, if he hath bene vſed to it, but if not, let him drinke the decoction of cinnamon, or wine that is thin and watery. You muſt apply and lay vpon the ſtomacke outwardly ſuch medicines as do meanely reſtraine and coole. They which be vexed with a cold diſtempure of the ſtomacke, muſt be healed with the contraries to the aforeſayed things, as with the decoction of anniſe ſeed, rew, and parcely ſeed. Let the meats which they eate be condite and dreſſed with cinnamon, *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, pepper, and ſuch like odoraments. Alſo giue vnto them *Diatrion piperion*, *diacalaminthes*, and *theriaca*. Annoint the ſtomacke outwardly with thoſe ointments which haue power to heate, and let them vſe to drinke wine that is old and ſomewhat aſtringent. A moiſt diſtempure is helped with meates that do drie without any ſtrong heat or coldneſſe. Moreouer, vſing of leſſe drinke then he is accuſtomed to do. A drie diſtempure

Cure of a hote diſtempure.

Poſca is a ſauce made with vineger & water

Cold diſtempure.

Moiſt diſtempure.

Dry diſtempure.

pure must be cured as the feuer Ethicke is cured, of which we will treat in the fourth booke. But if some humour hauing power to heate or coole, do cause weakenesse of the stomach, you must marke and consider diligently whether that humor do swim in the bosome and largenesse of the stomach, or whether it be stuffed in the filmes and cotes of the stomach. If the humor be contained in the bosome of the stomach, and be a cholericke humour, it must be purged straight by vomite: warme water or thinne *mulsa* drunke doeth cause an easie vomit. It wilbe better if you minister before it things that do moisten, as is the broth of prisan, or else the yolke of an egge. But if the cholericke humour be stuffed in the filmes of the stomach, purge him with *hierapicra*, for as *Gal.* saith, there can no better medicine be found against vicious humors, being stuffed in the filmes of the stomach. The humor being purged let them vse the same diet, that they do which are vexed with a hot distemper, as is taught before. Minister within the body conserues, which haue vertue to coole and moisten. Also minister electuaries hauing like vertues. Apply outwardly to the stomach things that do coole, and meanely restraine, as is oile of roses, oile of quinces, putting to saunders, balaustie, corall, and purslaine; but yet vse things that do coole in a meane, according to the contrarietie of the distempure. For ouermuch vse of cold things doth not only not profit, but also oftentimes it causeth an incurable disease, because of the great heat that is requisite for concoction and digestion. If humors being flegmaticke, grosse and tough, do swim in the breadth of the stomach, he must vse *eximel*, wherin hath bene sodden medicines which haue vertue to extenuate and cut, as is, hisop, the root of *ireos*, origan, sauory and horehound. But if the flegmalicke humors be drowned in the filmes and cotes of the stomach, then first you must minister those things which do cut and deuide clāmie humors & grosse fleume, but afterward you must purge him. If you will know what medicines do purge tough fleume, looke before in the first booke, chap. 12. Also *hierapicra* is good to purge grosse humours. Let him also vse a diet which doth extenuate: and let him vse electuaries that do heate, as *diatrion piperion*, *diagalanges*, *diacinnamomum*, *diamber*, ginger condit, *diacorus*, and such like. Apply outwardly to the stomach such things as do heat, as is, oile of *nardinum*, oile of mints, oile of wormwood, and oile of mastick, and other things hauing the like vertue. For this purpose also cerotes are commended, which the Phisitions commonly call, *scutum stomachale*, such as is this, ℞. chosen cinnamon, cloues, long pepper. ana. ℥. j. *gallia moschata*, maces. ana. ℥. ß. *calamus aromaticus* frankensence. ana. ℥. j. ß. wood of aloës. ℈. j. sowne mints. ℥. ij. mastick, lapdanum. ana. ℥. ij. oiles of mastick and narde. ana. ℥. ß. with waxe and turpentine as much as will suffice, make a cerot to lay vpon the stomach, and couer it with purple silke; or vse this medicine. ℞. mastick beaten to powder. ℥. j. ß then strew it vpon lether being cut like a buckler, and poure vpon it *oleum nardinum*, then hold it to the fire till it be molten together, and strew vpō it chosen cinamon, nutmegs, and cloues. ana. ℥. j beaten into powder, and apply it to the stoamach. To be short, these & other things which do strengthen and heate the stomach, are to be applyed, as is, mints, wormewood, frankensence, mastick, cinnamon, galingale, ginger, maces, wood of aloës, *calamus odoratus*, and such like rehearsed in our seuenth booke of making medicines, of which one may make diuerse kinds of remedies as he seeth cause.

Cure of weaknesse of the stomach caused of an humour.

Choler.

Pilulæ ratio.

Fleume.

Diet.

Scutum Stomachi.

Aliud.

Medicines which strengthen and heate the stomach.

CHAP. II.

Of yelking and vomiting.

De Nausea Et Vomitv.

Causa Nausea.

Dispoſition to vomit (called *Nauſea*) which is a naughtie and wicked motion of the expulſiue vertue of the ſtomach, is cauſed of a vicious humour contained in the ſtomach, being either hot or cold, which humor either ſwimmeth in the concauitie and hollowneſſe of the ſtomach, or it is ſtuffed in the filmes of the ſtomach, cleauing like birdlime, & can ſcarce be drawn away: or the humour being more watery, it is drowned in the cotes of the ſtomach, like water in a ſpunge. And ſuch humors are oftentimes engendred through diſtẽper of the ſtomach aſwell hot as cold: ſomtimes ſuch humors do flow from the whole bodie, as from other parts (being firſt euil affected) into the ſtomak as it were the excremẽts: as frõ the liuer or the ſplene, or the head, or frõ the whole bodie. If thoſe humours be engendred through the diſtemper, you may eaſily perceiue it by the ſignes declared in the laſt chapter before this. But whether that humor ſwim in the hollowneſſe of the ſtomach, or be ſtuffed in his cotes, thus ſhalt thou know it. If the vicious humor do ſwim in the ſtomach, & cauſe

Signa.

nauſea (that is) diſpoſition to vomit, then for the moſt part vomiting followeth, & the ſtomach corrupting the meats, it doth manifeſtly infect it with that humor, and changeth it into his nature; but if a tough humour be drowned in the cotes of the ſtomach, it cauſeth diſpoſition to vomit, but yet ſuch a diſpoſition as bringeth forth nothing, although the patient do prouoke and ſtraine himſelfe as though he coud vomit: but if that humor be watery and wheyiſh, then it cauſeth vomiting, not only before meat, but alſo after meat, and eſpecially if that humor ſwim in the breadth of the ſtomach: for if it be ſtuffed and cleaue to the rop of the ſtomach, it doth moue vomiting without bringing any thing vp before meate: but when other parts (from which do flow excrements into the ſtomach) be euill affected, the ſicke himſelfe doth firſt feele the griefe of the member that is diſeaſed: for either he feeleth heat, or cold, or heauineſſe nigh about the place that is diſeaſed, or alſo he cannot ſuffer to let the place be touched hard. But if the whole bodie be full of vicious humours, you may know that by the colour, and by breaking out of wheales & puſhes in the skin, and alſo by the vrine you may diſcerne it. For the cure, you muſt diligently

Curatio Nauſea.

conſider which griefe it is, whether it be a diſeaſe cauſed only of the ſtomach, or of the whole body, or of ſome other member. For if humors do flow into the ſtomach from ſome other member, or from the whole body, you muſt firſt take care for the whole body, or for that member that is diſeaſed, but yet you may not neglect the ſtomach altogether: for vnleſſe the whole body be firſt purged of vicious humors, he laboureth in vaine that goeth about to reſiſt the flowing of humors into ſome one place. So alſo he that doth cure the member that is firſt diſeaſed, he cutteth off as it were the fountaine of al flowings into the ſtomach. If you will know how thoſe members are to be cured that do ſend excrements into the ſtomach, you muſt learne that in their proper chapters before or after. But if humours be ingendred in the ſtomach cauſing diſpoſition to vomit, you muſt marke whether thoſe humors be thin, cholerick and wheyiſh, and being contained in the hollownes of the ſtomach: for then you muſt giue

him

him very thinne iuice of ptisan, or hot water, and the sicke must prouoke vomit with his finger, or with a feather being put downe into his throate. But if the humors be stuffed within vpon the top of the stomack, you must minister one dram of aloes to drinke being dissolued in water. For against hot humors which be in the stomacke, Aloes is the best medicine, so that often it hath healed euill stomacks in one day. After the humors be purged, and other medicines ministred, which do stop or make temperate the sharpnesse of choler, then you must cure the hote distempure of the stomacke, as is taught in the last Chapter before this. If they be flegmaticke, grosse and tough humours, which do swim in the breadth of the stomacke, you must cure them after that sort that is taught of vs in the former chapter, and then you must get away the cold distẽpure of the stomack, as is afore taught. Now, for vomiting you must note that in the beginning it ought not to be stopped, if the sicke be the better for it, according to *Hippocrates* saying. In vomiting which commeth by it selfe, if such things be purged as ought to be, it is good, and may be suffered; but if not, then contrariwise it is euill. Therefore you may not stoppe that vomit which is decretory, or where humours do flow from the whole body into the stomacke, or when humours be engendred in the stomacke through distempure. But then you must rather helpe the motion of the expulsiue vertue in a hot cause, by ministring hot water with oile of violets to drinke: but in a cold cause, minister oximell and other things before rehersed. But if the vomiting be immoderate, & do begin to weaken the strength of the sicke, then you must goe about to stop and restraine it. Therefore first let the sicke lie vpward in a conuenient house, and contrary to the disease: (that is) let the house be cold, if the disease be hot: and contrariwise let it be hote, if the disease be cold; let the extreme parts of the body be rubbed, & let thẽ be felt with warme hands, and also binde them strongly with bands: also put the feete and hands in luke warme water. Also hold odoraments of good sauor to the nose for to smell, as roses, quinces, peniroyall, mints, fennell, spickenarde. Annoint the stomacke outwardly with oiles of wormewood and roses. Emplaisters made of Dates, quinces, and wormwood be good. Also Cerotes made of them and such like, as mints, darnell meale, frankensence, mastick, be good being laid vpon the stomacke. Also you must stampe well, dates that haue bin steeped in old wine; afterward you must put to it mastick & frankensence, ech of them finely poudred by it selfe afore, & then bray them together. To this place also you must call the remedies, that are spoken of hereafter, partly in the chapter of *cholera*, and partly in the chapter of fluxe *dysenteria*. Furthermore that euill continuing long, if the meate cannot tary in the stomacke, you must fasten a cupping glasse to the mouth of the stomacke with great flame, vntill the place wax red: and you must giue the patient meat, while the glasse hangeth on still.

Of vomiting.

1. *Apho.* 2.

Cure of immoderate vomiting.

CHAP. III.

Of immoderate thirst.

De Siti Immensa.

THirst, as *Galen* witnesseth *in lib.* 1. *de simpli. med. facultate, cap.* 30. is caused two manner of waies: partly through want of moisture, and partly through abundance of heat. The stomacke is heat many & sundry waies; that is, either

Causa.

through hot diſtempure of the bare quality ſimple or compound, or through hot and cholericke humors engendred in the ſtomacke, or elſe flowing to it. Alſo through abundant drinking of old wine. The ſtomacke is dried either through the dry diſtempure that is in it, or through ſalt humours, or drinking of ſalt water. Alſo oftentimes it is dried through conſent of the whole body, as it chanceth in burning feuers, and feuer Ethicks. The diuerſity of cauſes may eaſily be knowen by the patients wordes, and by thoſe ſignes which we haue ſpoken of in the ſecond chap. next before. Therefore the cauſe being known, you muſt remedy each of them according to their cauſes diuerſly. Therefore you muſt remedy thirſt comming of heate, by miniſtring things that do coole. Therefore both the drawing in of cold aire, and water, or watery wine being drunken are good. Alſo cucumberſeed chewed, or if it be hulled & beaten, and drunke with water, it helpeth greatly againſt thirſt engendred through heate of the ſtomacke. Likewiſe lettuce ſeed chewed and drunke profireth. Alſo purcelaine ſeed likewiſe. The beſt thing to quench thirſt is this. ℞. of the ſeeds of ſowen cucumbers husked. ℥. j. *diatragacanthæ*. ℥. ß. gumme tragacantham beaten to powder, & ſerced. ℥. ij. and beat the ſeeds, and put thoſe powders to the whites of egs being raw, and beating them altogether, make pils and dry them in the ſhadow. Of theſe pils miniſter one at once to be holden vnder the tong, that it may diſſolue by litle and litle, and ſo be ſwallowed. They that haue had burning and heat in the ſtomacke long time, the iuice of the ſweete roote being drunke, doth helpe them, and alſo the roote it ſelfe with water & the iuice of purcelain. But thoſe which are vexed with thirſt cauſed of heat & drineſſe, as it chanceth in all burning and very dry feuers, and to thoſe which labor in ſommer, or in great heat, ſuch are beſt healed with *oxicratum* (that is) a drinke made with vineger and water ſodden together. For vineger doth coole mightily, and doth pierce euery place quickly, and the water (beſides the coolneſſe that it hath) is moiſteſt of any thing: for nothing (as *Galen* ſaith in the place before rehearſed) is moiſter then water. Alſo the thirſt which engendreth in feuers, may be mittigated in ſprinkling the head with the coldeſt oiles, as oile of roſes being ſprinckled aloft on the fore part of the head. Alſo the beſt remedy for drineſſe is ſleepe, where heat and moiſture are commixt together, as it chanceth in that kind of dropſie, in which plenty of ſalt humors be heaped in the ſtomacke and belly, or in thoſe which haue their ſtomake ſtuffed with ſalt fleume, then vineger is the beſt remedy. It is alſo good for them to ſoupe the iuice of quinces or peares, or veriuice with water. If humors cholericke or ſalt ſwimming in the ſtomake, or drowned and ſtuffed in it do prouoke thirſt, then you muſt miniſter medicines which can purge out thoſe humors. Afterward you muſt vſe medicines which doe reſtraine and comfort the ſtomacke and ſtrengthen it. Examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before. They which thirſt through drinking of much old wine, are holpen with drinking of cold water & other things rehearſed in *lib. 1. cap. 14.*

Signa.

Curatio.

Pilles to hold vnder the tong.

Oxicratum ſeu poſca.

CHAP. IIII.

Of paine in the ſtomake.

Doloris ſtomachi cauſæ. Καρτιαλγια.

PAine of the ſtomacke is cauſed when naughty, venimous, & gnawing humors be kept in the ſtomake, whereby it chanceth that through intollera-

ble

ble gnawing, they cauſe ſounding, which they call *ſtomachica*. This diſeaſe is knowen by the continuall pricking & gnawing of the mouth of the ſtomacke. *Signa.*

In this euill you muſt giue him meates that doe coole, and which may bring ſtrength to the ſtomacke (as is) lettuce and purcelaine taken with vineger. Alſo pomegranates, and orenges, peares, ſharpe grapes, and ſuch like. Alſo bread being ſteeped in very cold water is good. Alſo let his other meates be ſuch that will eaſily digeſt, and yet not eaſie to corrupt (as be) chickens, partrich, birds of mountaines, & ſuch like ſodden with veriuice. Alſo fiſhes bred among ſtones, ſodden with vineger, limons, and the ſharpe iuice of Cytrons. Likewiſe let the ſicke drinke water wherein hath bene ſodden a litle cynamon, or giue him thin watery wine. *Diet.*

For the cure, in the beginning you muſt prouoke vomit by the remedies aforeſaid. Then after that alſo he muſt purge downward, by taking *H. erapicra*. Which things being done, you muſt vſe remedies to ſtrengthen the ſtomacke both inwardly and outwardly, as is taught in the ſecond chapter, and in other places alſo. *Curatio.*

CHAP. V.

Of inflammation of the ſtomacke.

De Inflammatione Ventriculi.

INflammation of the ſtomake is cauſed no otherwiſe then the inflammation of other parts of the body: that is to ſay, through the flowing together of abundance of hot bloud. *Cauſa.*

Signes hereof, is exceeding great paine continually, which cannot be mitigated with any medicines that be applied to it. Moreouer there is ſwelling and burning which you may feele. Alſo a feuer, heauineſſe, and appetite to meate. *Signa.*

The diet (like as it is in other inflammations) muſt be thinne, ſmall, and exquiſite. Therefore he muſt vſe iuice of ptiſan, and he muſt abſtaine from fleſh and wine, and from other hot meats. Let the ſicke drinke water, wherein hath bene ſodden a litle cinnamon, or iuice of foure pomegranats, or of ſome other fruit that is cold and reſtringent. Let him ſleep litle, and let him not talke much. Let him eſchew ſadnes as much as he can, and let him remaine in an aire meanely cold. *Victus ratio.*

You muſt beginne the cure with letting of bloud, if there be fulneſſe of the whole body, & ſtrength of the ſicke. You muſt cut the inward veine of the arme, and you muſt draw bloud according to the ſtrength of the patient. After this you muſt apply outwardly thoſe things that do repreſſe & reſtraine, ſpecially vppon the place where the paine & ſwelling do moſt appeare. For the ſtomacke (ſpecially the mouth of it) hath euer neede of the commixing of thoſe things that do reſtraine, but moſt of all when it hath an inflammation. Therefore thoſe which do attempt the cure with looſening remedies onely, without the commixing of thoſe things that do ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, they cauſe perill of death; therfore alwaies whether it be an oile that the inflamed member be nouriſhed withall, or a ſoft plaiſter laid vppon that member, you muſt commixe ſome reſtringent thing with the. Therfore for this purpoſe it is good to apply to it oile wherin wormwood or quinces hath bene ſodden, commixed together with maſtick. Alſo the iuice of quinces, or peares, putting to it red roſes, barley meale, ſanders, bole armoniack, & ſuch like. *Curatio.*

Alſo you may vſe this cerot. ℞. barley meale. ℥. ß. white *Cerotum.*

ſanders,and red roſes.ana.℥.ij.bole armoniacke.℥.j.ß.aloes,maſticke.ana.℥.j.wormwood,nutmegs,*balauſtia*.ana.℥.ß.oiles of maſticke,and roſes.ana.℥.j.ß.with waxe and turpentine as much as is ſufficient,make a cerote to lay vpon the ſtomack.But if there be need of great reſtriction(as it chanceth then, when the ſtomack is ſo weake that it cannot hold and retaine meate)you may commixe with the ſaid things veriuice,or iuice of wormwood, or *hipociſchidos*, and *ſumach*, and ſuch like.All theſe things (if the inflammation be vehement) muſt be applied to the griefe cold. And if the belly doth ſend forth nothing, you muſt prouoke it with eaſie cliſters.Nor he worketh not vnwiſely,that doth miniſter.℥.ß.of *caſſia fiſtula* diſſolued in endiue water, after that the burning heate is ſomewhat abated. Alſo at that time you may commix with the reſtrictiue medicins,which you apply outwardly,many things that do diſcuſſe and diſſolue,as is,fenugreeke meale,floures of cammomill,and Althæa, and lineſeed; you muſt neuer (as we warned you before, no not at that time, when there floweth no more to the griefe, and that cannot be driuen backe, which is contained in the diſeaſed member)you muſt not I ſay at that time, neither vſe onely looſening medicines,or onely diſſoluing medicines:but alwaies you muſt commix with them reſtrictiue things which haue power to preſerue and keepe the ſtrength of the ſtomacke; therefore at that time you muſt vſe this

Emplaſtrum. emplaiſter.℞.the meale of lineſeed and fenugreeke.ana.℥.ß.ſeed of dill.℥.ij. floures of cammomill and melilote.ana.℥.ß.wormwood,balauſtie,red roſes. ana.℥.ij.*hypociſchidis*.ʒ.ij oiles of cammomill, lillies,roſes,maſticke. ana.℥.ß. hennes greaſe,and gooſe greaſe.ana.℥.ij.commixe them altogether, & make an emplaiſter: but before it be applied, it is not in vaine to annoint the ſtomacke with this ointment.℞.oiles of cammomill, dill,and quinces. ana.℥ij.

Vnguentum. powder of the roote of *Althæa*,wormewood,lineſeed.ana.ʒ.j.waxe ſufficient, and make an ointment

CHAP. VI.

Of abhorring of meate.

De Cibi Fastidio.

Cauſe. ABhorring of meat,or looſing of appetite,doth chance either through looſing of the ſenſe of ſucking of the veines,which is naturall hunger, as *Galen* witneſſeth,*libro primo,de ſympt.cauſis,cap.7.*or becauſe there is no ſucking out, or becauſe the body is not emptied. Alſo ſometime it chanceth through ſome hote diſtempure, ſpecially of the ſtomacke, which diſtempure doth diſſolue the hard and ſound members by looſing of them,and maketh them weaker in drawing: but the moiſt members, it ſtretcheth out vnmeaſurably by ſhedding. Sometime it is cauſed through abundance of vicious humours contained in the ſtomacke, and through immoderate fluxe of the belly and bowelles: alſo through ouer much bloudletting. Alſo the ſicke doth abhorre meate in continuall and vehement feuers,alſo in inflammations of the ſtomacke,the liuer & the matrice,and for many other cauſes which need not to be reherſed here.

Signa. The ſignes which betoken a hot diſtempure, are rehearſed before in the firſt Chapter.Thoſe which abhorre meat,through the vice of cholericke humors, are troubled with gnawing of the ſtomacke,& with appetite to vomite,& with

thirſt.

thirſt. Thoſe that haue humours that be rotten, they haue ſometime a feuer: but thoſe which haue loathing of meat through groſſe and clammy humors, they neither feele gnawing of the ſtamacke, nor thirſt, but commonly to all there commeth diſpoſition to vomit. If loathing of meat doth come about the beginning of this diſeaſe, or about the vigour & ſtrength of it, which the patients ſtrength may yet ſuffer, it cauſeth no perill; for the ſicke neede but litle nouriſhment. But if loſſe of appetite do come in the declination of the whole diſeaſe, or in long weakneſſe, or in lacke of ſtrength, or of vnmeaſurable purging, it is not without perill and daunger. This euill is encreaſed of age: for children are vnluckily troubled with this diſeaſe: that is to ſay, ſuch as are deuourers by nature, and haue neede of continuall nouriſhment; therefore if children haue this diſeaſe, great exceſſe aboue nature is ſignified by it. For cure of this diſeaſe, if the loſſe of appetite be cauſed through weakeneſſe of the ſtomake, you muſt marke what diſtempure doth weaken the ſtrength, and you muſt cure it by contraries to that diſtempure, as is before taught. If the preſence of vitious humours doe cauſe loathing of meat, if thoſe humours be thin and gnawing, you muſt firſt beginne before any other thing be miniſtred, to purge the humours contained in the ſtomacke, by vomit. And if the patient doth vomite vneaſily, miniſter vnto him ſoupings, and other nouriſhments which do moiſten, that they may driue thoſe humours downe into the bellie, and driue them out beneath; or purge the womb with *hierapicra*. Then we muſt bring the bodie to a good temper, with ſuch things as be meet for that purpoſe. Thoſe that do abhorre meat through groſſe and clammie humours, you ſhall cure them by extenuating and cutting the humours, aſwell with *Oximell*, as alſo with thoſe medicines, that are made of this and other ſawces, as with Capers, Oliues, muſterd ſeed, and ſuch like declared in the firſt chapter. If loathing of meate happen through inflammation, or ſtopping of any other part of the bodie, then you muſt go about the curing of that member or part. And you muſt go about to prouoke appetite againe, onely by odoraments, either by odour and ſmelling of wine infuſed, or decoction of quinces, or peares. Alſo you ſhall go about the ſame thing with ſoft annointings with oiles, as oiles of roſes, maſticke, and ſuch like, and moderate frictions and rubbings of the bodie: alſo inceſſions to be applied to the loines and ſhare. Alſo let meats be prepared of diuerſe and ſundrie kinds, and after the daintieſt faſhion, that beſides their ſweetneſſe, they may entice and prouoke their appetite: firſt of the beſt kind of corne, and ſuch as doth nouriſh much, as is *Alica* waſhed with the decoction of dates & damaſcene prunes, rere egs, birds of the mountaines that be leane and of no ſtrong ſauour, and ſwines feete much conſumed in ſeething. For if he onely taſt ſuch meates, they nouriſh the bodie ſufficiently. Whatſoeuer you miniſter, ought to be of ſuch ſort, that it may eaſily be deuoured and ſwallowed: for thoſe things that require much chewing do cauſe vnpleaſantneſſe, and put away appetite. Nor you may not neglect to apply outwardly vpon the ſtomake beſides the ointmentes, emplaiſters made of dates, quinces, wormewood, and ſuch like. Alſo cerotes made of the ſame things, examples whereof you muſt ſeeke before.

Curatio.

Alica is made of wheat ſteeped in water beaten & dried in the ſun, & then broken groſſely.

CHAP. VII.

Of a doglike appetite.

De Appetitv Canino.

A Doglike appetite is contrary to losse of appetite. For they that are thus diseased, they desire much meat: and when they cannot refraine their appetite, they deuoure in meat without measure; then they being heauie with the multitude of meate, and their stomake not being able to beare the meates that are in it without hurt, they turne to vomiting. Then afterward they fill themselues with meate, and againe they returne to vomiting like dogges. It is caused through cold distempure of the stomake, or through vicious & sharpe humours which do gnaw and pricke the mouth of the stomake: for cold vicious humours do cause a gnawing much like the proportion of sucking, and do raise appetite of meat. Also sometime it chanceth through vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad of the whole bodie, which do follow either the violence of heat, or the weakenesse of the vertue retentiue. Cold distempure of the stomake is knowen by euill digestion, windinesse, rombling, and many egestions of seiges, and by other tokens declared before in the first Chapter. Sharpe humours are knowne by soure belkins, and much egestion, and verie thinne. If it be caused of vnmeasurable dissipation and spreading abroad, and that through heate which consumeth the meate like fire, and rarefieth the skinne: then the egestions sent out by the bellie, be lesse in quantitie then the meate that is eaten, and also the egestions be drier: But if that dissipation come through weakenesse of the retentiue vertue, which cannot master the meates, then there is much deiection and casting out of those things that are eaten. For the cure, colde distempure must be healed as is taught in the first chap. of this booke. If doglike and vnmeasurable appetite be caused of sharpe humours stuffed in the mouth of the stomake, and as it were water soked into a spunge, you must minister in the beginning, *Hierapicra Galeni*: for this doth not onely heat, but also doth cut off and make cleane, and draw out from the depth of the mouth of the stomake, humours that be stuffed in it, and it causeth them to auoid downwardes, and yet it addeth strength to the stomacke, that afterward it will not easily receiue any hurtfull humour: therefore that is the best remedie for vitious humours stuffed in the stomacke, to bring them forth, it is ministred the weight of ℥.iiij. with wine infused with warme water. If a child doth labor of this disease, which cannot drink the medicin for bitternes, make ℥.j.or.ij. of it in pilles, & annoint it outwardly with hony, & let them swallowe them downe, seeing that for the most parte, this euill chanceth of sharpe and sowre fleume, you must vse such meates and medicines, as haue power to cut, deuide, scoure, and heate: as be garlicke, leekes, time, sauorie, origan, peniroiall, and such like. Therefore the humours that be vicious being purged in the beginning, you must let the vse this diet. Let not their bread be new, nor wel leauened with the which also you must mixe things that prouoke vrine, as is, annise seed, caraway seed, cõmin, parsley, & such like. Let his meats be fat & oily. Also soupings are good, that do destroy appetite, as be pottage made with much honny, and much oile, or goose grease, hennes grease,

Causæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of sharp humors.

Victus ratio.

or

or swines grease. Let his pot herbes be mallowes. Also giue him the brains and fattest partes of birdes, and of fishes likewise, and those things that do altogether destroy appetite, and cause fulnesse, and that doe nourish but litle, although they be eaten in great quantity. You may well giue them great plenty of wine, euen as much as they can drinke, and such wine as doth heat greatly, as those doe that be yellow in colour, thinne in substance, sweete in smelling, and without restriction. For this doth heate the stomacke, and destroy the sharpnesse of humours, so that often such wine with oily and fat meates, sufficeth for the perfect cure. As *Hyppocrates* sayth, drinking of wine ceaseth hunger: and you must giue wine, as well to them that be fasting, as to them also which haue eaten meate, although they be not as yet a thirst. But you must giue it to them that be fasting, hote, or warme at the least. He must abstaine from all sower and restrictiue meates and drinkes, but specially from fruite. Let their banquetting meates be *pistacium*, almondes, pine nuttes, and oliues, with hony. Minister also vnto them milke, as well alone, as also with wine called *Passum*, or with hony: so that, neuertheless you must take heede that you giue it not to those, that are wont to haue it waxe sower in their stomacke, for to those it doth more hurt then good. But if it be well digested, it doth not only stop the appetite, but it softeneth the belly being stopped, and stoppeth his fluxes. Also you must make potions and fine cakes with milke, and giue them to him, as be, marchpaines, and rice sodden with milke. Also hee must wash now and then, and make fat their skinne largely. This kinde of cure you must vse as long as the sicke is diseased, and till he be cleane whole. If the dog-like appetite come through vnmeasurable scattering abroad, opening, and dissipation, then in such a disease it is good to thicken the skinne, and make it grosser with oile made with vnripe oliues, or oiles of roses, or of mirtles, or any other wherein any restrictiue thing hath bene sodden with a soft fire. Let the sicke remaine in an ayre, that is cold and perspirable. Let him eschue hot ayre and hot bathes. Also let him eschue wine and all things as well outwardly as inwardly that doe heate. Let his drinke be cold water, or decoction of Cinnamon. Put the sicke in a cold bath, if nothing do let it, or slendernes and leanenesse of the body, or the coldnes of some member of the body, as the breast or some other. You must giue vnto them meats that be stable, durable, & hard to corrupt, as be periwincles, and all kinds of shell fish, if they be sodden with water twise changed. Also swines flesh being in full strength, and specially the bellie. Also fat beefe, and all things that be all fat, and that do swimme in the stomach, and be hard to be digested and distributed. For there be some that haue this disease, which by reason of a sharpe and biting heate, and as it were a feuerous heate in them, which doe digest and consume beefe and other things hard of digestion, with lesse labour then fishes of stonie places, and such like things which be easie of digestion. Of egges those are good for them, which be sodden till they be hard, or fried in a frying pan. Giue them manchet made of fat broths without honie. Also rice sodden with butter, and vnleauened bread. Looke how much the euill is abated, and so much you must abate of the grosse meats that you are wont to giue, & you must minish the restrictiue things also that you lay without. For somtume the vehemecy of the appetite being abated,

2. *Aph.* 21.

Cure if it come of immoderate dissipation.

when the bodie is filled with crude and groſſe humours, it turneth into ſome other worſe diſeaſe. Among reſtrictiue medicines beſides thoſe things which are aforeſaid, you muſt vſe this ointment. ℞. oiles of mirtles, and quinces. ana ℥.ß. oile of roſes. ℥.j. iuice of plantaine. ℥.ij. red ſanders, maſticke, biſtorta, red roſes. ana. ℥.j. bole armoniake. ℈.ij. *Hipociſchidos, acatia, ſanguis draconis.* ana. ℈.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment.

Vnguentum adſtringens.

CHAP. VIII.

Of great famine.

De Bvlimo.

Βυλιμος. *Cauſæ.*

Bvlimos in Greeke, is nothing elſe but great and vehement famine or hunger. It is cauſed through coldneſſe of the ſtomake, and for want and weaknes of ſtrength, and in a man it taketh his beginning altogether of outward cold: for long iournies (eſpecially when there in ſnow) cauſeth this diſeaſe. It is knowne thus. In the beginning there is felt much hunger, which for all that, doth not long endure: for afterward the heart of the patient beginneth to faile him, with coldneſſe of the extreame parts, and want of ſpirit and breath. You muſt apply remedies for this diſeaſe by and by, becauſe there be that in deſert places, or in bathes, being ſuddenly taken with this diſeaſe, do periſh for lacke of helpe. Therefore they that are troubled with great hunger, in a iourney without a feuer, or any other wayes, you muſt recomfort them with vineger, or peniroiall, giuen them to ſmell vnto, or earth whatſoeuer it be, ſprinckled with vineger, or apples, or peares, or ſuch other like frute which is next hand. Alſo new bread holden to the noſe doth helpe, and cheeſe of good ſauour. Alſo porke roſted or ſodden, and vniuerſally all that doth nouriſh much: but eſpecially that which hath ſauour of roſted meate, and is well ſeaſoned, & hath a ſufficient ſauour: for by ſuch odours and ſauours, they that haue this diſeaſe, are for the moſt part refreſhed, ſeeing there is nothing (as we ſaid before in the ſecond booke, the fourteenth chapter) that doth refreſh and renew the ſtrength ſooner then odours. Moreouer you muſt bind the extreme parts of them with bands, and you muſt put the tippes of their hands and feete in verie hote water, and you muſt raiſe them and ſtirre them, as well by pricking of the cheekes, as alſo by pulling of the haire and eares. And when he is ſomewhat come againe to himſelfe, you ſhall miniſter vnto him bread infuſed in wine, or ſome ſuch thing, which doth reſtore ſtrength verie quickly, (as be) reare egges, *Alica* with wine. The next remedie they muſt looke for by meat, which if they cannot take when it is offred them, you muſt put it into the mouth violently, and compell them to ſwallow it, for by and by after that, they are deliuered from their great hunger, and from their fainting, and are raiſed quickly. For this purpoſe are good alſo the Antidotes, which are compounded of diuerſe ſweete odoures, as is, *Aromaticum roſarum, Diamber, Diathon, diamoſchi, Alipta moſchata*, and ſuch other like. And if this diſeaſe chance to come in feuers (which is ſeldome ſeene) and if it doth ruſh in ſuddenly about the declination of fits belonging to feuers, you may miniſter meat without feare. But if it chance in the beginning of the augmentation, or in the vigour and ſtrength of the feuer, the ſicke muſt be refreſhed by the odoraments aforeſaid,

Signa.

Curatio.

aforsaid, and specially by those things which haue corne in them, as is *Polenta*, wet with water, or hot bread that sendeth forth a burning sauor. Also you must vse frictions and rubbings of the extreme partes, and apply plaisters made of dates, or quinces sodden in wine: and this must you do vntill the declining of the fit, that you may safely giue him meate. And if the sicke be neuer the better through these things, you must venture to helpe him by giuing of meate. Therefore minister iuice of ptisan, or one morsell or other wet in wine that is white and thin: for they being refreshed, and as it were suddenly called back, they afterward come to the declining of the fit. We must eschue altogether in them that haue this disease, long delay from meate, and hunger: for you shall giue him euerie houre verie litle meate, for it taketh away great famine and the fainting, whereby the sicke is eased. And that it is lawfull to nourish and giue meate to the sicke in a fit, *Galen* teacheth, *Lib.* 10. *method. cap.* 3.

Polenta is barly steeped in water one night, then dryed, then fryed and then ground.

CAAP. IX

Of euill digestion.

De Crvditate.

RAwnesse of the stomake or ill digestion is, when as the meate is not altogether changed. The causes of it, is distempure in the stomake, inflammations, hardnesse, impostumes, and such other like. Sometime the meates remaine rawe and vndigested, although the stomacke be not diseased: either through immoderate deuouring of meats and drinks at one time, or through the euill and vicious qualities of the meates themselues, or through heating of them out of due time, or through inordinate taking of them: or through some vicious superfluitie growing: or through short sleeping, as *Galen* saith, *Libro tertio de symptomatum causis, capite primo.* The diuersitie of causes be knowne partly by the tale of the patient, and them that be about him: and partly by certaine tokens. By the tale of the sicke, and of them that be about him, you may know whether meates and drinkes haue bene taken immoderately, or out of due season, or inordinatly. Also you may know of them the shortnesse of sleeping: you may know if the meates their selues were of euill qualities by his belkings and sauours, like things roasted or burned. For in them that be hot and cholericke, the belkings or corruptions sauour like meate roasted or burned: but in them that be of a cold nature and more flegmaticke, the corruptions are sowre or sharpe. Likewise you must iudge of excrements that be flegmaticke and cold, they cause sowre corruptions: but those that be hote and mixed with bitter choler, do cause sauour like burned meate. Likewise iudge of the stomake being any otherwise euill at ease: for if the disease be cold, it causeth sharpe and sowre permutations, but if it be hote, it causeth a burning sauour. When perfect cruditie and rawnesse is engendred without corruption, in such sort, that the meates do remaine altogether euen as they were eaten: by this you may knowe that the stomacke is ouercome, either through great quantitie of meates, or through vehement cold taken in a hote thirst. Therefore if you would not haue this cruditie and euill digestion, you must beware of all the aforesaied things (that is) that you neither offend in the quantitie, nor qualitie, nor order, nor due season of the taking

Cause.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

of your meate: and that you eate thoſe things onely, which you are able to digeſt, and not that which appetite requireth. Therefore you muſt eſpecially take diligent heed to the meaſure and quantitie of your meate, and you muſt refraine your appetite, and eate no more then your ſtrength is able to ſuffer. Alſo you muſt beware of euill order; that is, that you do not firſt eate quinces or pomegranates, or ſome ſuch like thing, and afterward to eate pot-herbes out of oile or ſauce made with ſalted fiſh, or other things which doe ſoften the belly. Alſo you muſt eſchue eating out of due ſeaſon, that is, that you do nor eate before ſome moderate exerciſe, or before yeſterdayes meate be well deſcended, and alſo not before your accuſtomed houre. Alſo you muſt eſchue all things that be hard by nature to digeſt: as is fleſh that is hard by nature, that is, beife and harts fleſh: alſo eſchue all olde fleſh. Alſo you muſt beware of meates that be fat, or that be powdred in ſalt, and ſtale kept. Among pot-herbes, thoſe that be verie hote or verie cold, or alſo thoſe that engender wind, be hurtfull. Eſchue fiſhes, which are hard, & dried by long keeping. Alſo abſtaine from meates that be corrupt, or that doe ſtinke, or ſmell ilfauouredly. Refraine from ſweete fruite, or that which doth ingender windineſſe, or that which is corrupt. Alſo eſchue iunkets which be hard of digeſtion. Alſo you muſt eſchue meates that be ſtraunge and vnaccuſtomed, and that haue the power of a medicine, as people vſe to commixe in their tartes and fine cakes: but you muſt eate your meat in due time, not greedily nor in gobbets, nor ſwallowe it not without chewing. Neither let your drinke interrupt and diſturbe your meate, for that doth hinder the vniting and knitting together of the meate, and cauſeth eech peece to ſwimme from other. After meate eaten, you muſt eſchue vnequall and troublous motions. Alſo eſchue heat and cold, for thoſe things do ſtop the digeſtion of meat. But calefaction and chafing of the ſides, and rubbing of the feete, do helpe digeſtion. And if there be heauineſſe about the ſtomacke, ſo that through it a certaine painefulneſſe be ſpread throughout the whole bodie, then laye your hand being ſtretched forth, vpon the mouth of the ſtomacke, or applie to it a fleſhie infant, for as *Galen* ſaieth, it is much better and more naturall, then the heate which is procured by foments. For which cauſe, ſome do lay litle whelpes while they reſt vppon their ſtomach, which doth encreaſe the abundance of heate, that digeſteth the meate. Alſo you muſt procure ſleepe in the night equall and without diſturbance. For this, you muſt prepare to lye ſtraight, and let your head be bolſtered vp high, and in your lying you muſt incline towards the left ſide. And if you cannot ſleepe, you muſt lie without turning or ſtirring of your bodie, and keepe it ſtill in one forme of lying, for often ſtirrings and toſſings do diſturbe the meates, and make the bodie windie and the bowels likewiſe. The cure muſt be diuerſe, according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes: for hote diſtempure of the ſtomacke requireth one kinde of curing, and colde diſtempure requireth another. Alſo inflammation of the ſtomacke requireth another kind of cure, and hardneſſe or impoſtumations another kind; and all thoſe cures you ſhall ſeeke out in the proper chapters: for here it ſufficeth to ſay thus much. When there commeth an vnpleaſant belking, declaring manifeſtly that there is corruption of meates,

Curatio.

with

without prolonging you, muſt prouoke vomite, and by drinking of warme water, you muſt conſtraine all that is corrupt to come forth. For if they remaine in the ſtomacke, they cauſe tormenting, and wreſtling, and heauineſſe of the head: and ſometimes they ſend forth choler vpward and downeward, or they cauſe fluxe of the wombe, or feauers. Therefore ſuch as cannot digeſt but hardly, we muſt accuſtome them long time before, that they may vomit eaſily, for that is beſt in many perils. And if any be hard to vomit by nature, and be ill diſpoſed to drink cold things, in any cauſe it is not inconuenient to giue him a cuppe of pure colde water to drinke: for the ſtomacke being ſtrengthened, it ſoone thruſteth out thoſe things that ſticke in it, and ſendeth them downe to the lower parts. Then the next day let the ſicke be kept in quiet and reſt, and vſe rubbings of his feete, and chafing of his ſides, vntill the rumbling and windineſſe breake out beneath, and vntill the belkings do come foorth with a gentler qualitie. And then it is good to riſe vp, that firſt the belly may ſend out the corrupt things by ſiege, and afterward let the ſicke walke moderately, and let him be idle, becauſe of the troubled vapors which be aſcended into the head through corruption. After this he muſt apply his minde to daily buſineſſe without perturbation and indignation. Then againe the belly muſt be prouoked to auoid thoſe things that remaine yet. Afterward you muſt bidde him reſt, and you muſt powre vpon and nouriſh the feete with warme water: and the face being waſhed with pure colde water, let him reſt in his bedde, and procure him to ſleepe by all meanes. After which let him vſe a litle walking, and then a Bath. After bathing let him take meate moderatly, and that which the bodie is able to digeſt. But yet you may not ouerpaſſe medicines that do helpe digeſtion, as is, pepper, eſpecially long pepper, which doth onely helpe digeſtion. But if you haue it not at that preſent, you may vſe white pepper, and if you haue not that neither, take blacke pepper. Alſo for the ſame, *Diacotoneon* is good, and *dioſpoliticum*. Alſo there be other things to be applyed aſwell inwardly as outwardly, both ſimples and compounds, to ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, which are rehearſed in the former chapters. But all theſe medicines (eſpecially ſuch as do peirce quickely, as is Caraway ſeedes, fennell ſeeds, *Apium*, louage ſeed, parcely ſeed, *ammecs*, pepper, ginger, and ſuch like) muſt be giuen two houres before meate: but after meat you muſt neuer take them: for then there is diſperſed together with them ſome of the crude meates, and cauſeth obſtructions. Therefore let them be vſed moſt before meate after the rubbings in the morning, and two houres before exerciſe.

Vomitus.

Long pepper helpeth digeſtion.

CHAP. X.

Of windineſſe of the ſtomacke.

De Inflatione Ventriculi.

Cauſe.

THe ſtomake is windy, through the windineſſe that is engendred in it. Windineſſe is engendred through flegmaticke humours in the ſtomacke, or elſe through meates diſſolued into vapours through want & debilitie of heate. For cold onely doth cauſe no windineſſe, becauſe it can neither extenuate nor

dissolue meate. Vehement heat for the most part (ouercomming those things that it comprehendeth) extenuateth and maketh thinne the meate, so that no vapours can engender thereof, vnlesse it be easie to turne into windines of the owne nature: but the windinesse that is so engendred is troublous and cloudy: and also it is but little, and endureth but a little while, so that at one belking or other it vanisheth away straight. The heate that worketh in the meates, if it be but of little force and strength, that is, doth somewhat dissolue them, but not altogether consume them, thereof must needs engender windines, as *Galen* teacheth *lib.* 30. *de sympto. causis.* 70. They that are thus diseased,

Signa. haue stretching out and heauinesse of the stomacke: also sometime swelling, and a certaine bowing out of the mouth of the stomacke, and of the stomacke it selfe: also empty belkings doe come, sometimes lightning a little, and a stopping of the windinesse which is wont to breake downeward. Also this euill sometimes is al ouer the breast, and somtime behind, about the backbone and backe, and rusheth among the iointes, and often it occupieth both places. Besides these things there is vehement pain in drawing of breath, because of the pressing downe together of the midriffe, so that some do feele like as though they were choked. They are eased by the meate going downeward, and by windinesse breaking out either by belking, or by the belly. Also rumbling and noise is heard within. Therefore if the windinesse of the stomacke be caused of flegmaticke meates: you must minister an extenuating diet, and such me-

Curatio. dicins as do deuide and purge fleume, which we taught in the first chapter of this booke. But if the windinesse be engendred through want and weaknes of heat, he must vse meats easie of digestion, and of good iuice. Also he must eat but litle: for fasting is very good for this disease. After all the meat, you must minister wine that is pure and vnmixed: but yet he must eschue much drinke as a deadly enemie. Also let him eschue frute, and eating of moist oiles. Also let him vse hote bathes in great vessels, for those do mitigate, soften, and dissolue windinesse whatsoeuer it be, and prouoke sleepe. And when sleepe commeth, it easeth the patient much, because it helpeth digestion maruellously.

Decoctum. And as for medicines, let them vse this decoction. ℞. Calamint, mints, wilde mints, cammomill, origan, peniroiall. ana. *M.* j. wormewood. *M.* ß. seeds of anise, apium, comin, daucus, parcely, fennell. ana. ℥. iij. seedes of nettles, carawayes. ana. ℥ ij. of the root of Enula campana. ℥ ij. seeth these in a iust quantitie of water, till the third part be consumed: then straine them, and put to sufficient sugar to make the iuice of that decoction sweet, and put to that liquor, of sirrupe of Calamint. ℥ iij. and make a potion, wherof let the sicke drinke euerie day in the morning ℥. iiij. Or let him vse this powder. ℞. the powders of

Tritura. *dianysum, diacuminum, diacalum, inthes.* ana. ℈. ij. seedes of annise, daucus, and fennell. ana. ℈. j. quibibes, cloues ana. ℈. ij. ginger. ℈. pepper. ℥. j. sugar. ℔ ß. commixe them together and make a powder. They which haue taken meate but a litle before, must first vomit. Also you must minister suppositaries made of things that entice windinesse, after this sort. ℞. honny sodden. ℥. ij. seedes

Glandes. of rewe, comin, and fennell. ana ℈. j. seedes of Carawayes and annise. ana. ℥. ß. salt. ℈. ij. commixe them together and make suppositories. If the wombe be verie costiue, you must cast in a clister made thus. ℞. of the de-

coction

coction aboue taught. ℔.j. of *benedicta laxatiua*. ℥.vij oiles of wormewood, rew, and dill. ana. ℥.j. goose grease and hennes grease without salt. ana. ℥.ij. ß. common salt. ℥.j. commixe al together, and make a clister. In this disease you must annoint the stomack outwardly with the oiles aforesaid, or make a litle bunch of wooll, and wette it in the aforesaid oiles being warmed, and apply it to the stomacke. And vpon the bunch of wooll being wound vp together, strew commin beaten, or seed of Apium or dill. If the disease endure long, apply to it plaisters made of linesed, barley meale, darnell meale, commin, dill seed, or Apium, or fennell beaten, the toppes of Centorie, and such other like: or apply this cerate. ℞. oiles of rew, dill, nard, and laurell. ana. ℥.j. meale of linesed, and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.j. ß. seedes of Apium, carawaies, and *Nigella Romana*. ana. ℥.j. laurell berries, and Centorie. ana. ℥.j. ß. gumme ammoniacke, and *opoponax*. ana. ℥.ij. waxe aud rosen as much as is sufficient, make a Cerate. Also a great cupping glasse comprehending the nauell euerie where, being applyed with great flame, is a remedie in this disease. Also *Castoreum* drunke with *Posca*, and applyed outwardly with oile of dill, is good.

Clyster.

Ceratum.

CHAP. XI.

Of yelking or hicket.

De Singvltv.

YElking is a motion of the stomack, and it is as it were a crampe of the stomak, raised of the expulsiue vertue, which goeth about to thrust forth euill and hurtfull things. This disease is caused for the most part, either of fulnesse or of emptinesse, as *Hippocrates* witnesseth. Also sometime it is caused through the biting and gnawing of sharpe humors. Also the meate being turned into a gnawing qualitie, and so corrupted, causeth some to yelke. Also coldnes of the mouth of the stomack, and corruption of the food causeth yelking, which causeth children specially to haue the hicket often. Also yelking engendreth in feuers, specially when the stomack or some other bowell is enflamed. The outward causes are easily knowne by the telling of the sicke, and them that be about him. Fulnesse is known by heauinesse; and emptines by those things that went before. You must know if the meate be corrupt by the burnt sauour of it: but you shall know sharpnesse by gnawing, pricking and pulling. Therefore when yelking is engendred of coldnesse, you must lay vpon the stomack, wooll dipped in the oile wherein hath bene sodden rew, commin, & wormwood. Also oile of masticke, and of *Castoreum* being annointed doth profite. To children warme linnen clothes being applyed to, do helpe often. They that be of full age, minister to them to drinke wine, or Apium sodden in *aqua mulsa*, or commin beaten, or Asarum, or peniroiall, ech of these by himselfe or else mixt with other. Also squilliticke vineger is good to soupe. Also giue them. ℥.j. of *Castoreum* with Posca, as well against yelking caused of colde, as also if it be caused through multitude of humours. Also if it be applied outwardly to the stomack with olde oile, it is good for both the said griefes. Moreouer holding of the breath which doth encrease heate, is a present remedie for them that do yelke through cold. When yelking is caused of fulnesse, vomiting is the best reme-

Causa. 6. Aphor. 39.

Signa.

Cure of yelking of cold.

Cure of yelking of fulneſſe. Auerſion.

die. If there be groſſe humours, they muſt be extenuate and cut with *Oximel ſcilliticum*, and calamint, and horehound their decoction, and ſuch like before rehearſed. Afterward you muſt apply thoſe things which may draw the abundance of humors a contrary way, and turne them cleane aſide. For which purpoſe thoſe things are good which do purge downeward, and ſpecially cliſters, bindings, and rubbings of the extreme parts, and cupping glaſſes with much flame, faſtened to the breaſt, to the ſtomake, and to the back. Alſo theſe things are good for them, long and quick walking, bearings about, and chiefly riding.

6. Aphor. 13.

Alſo it is good for them to ſneeſe, as *Hippocrates* ſaith. For when the yelking is cauſed of fulnes, there is need of violent mouing. Alſo handſome calling loud, with much clamor, & withholding of the breath, is good for them. Moreouer, the ſtomacke muſt be ſtrengthened by medicines miniſtred as well inwardly as outwardly. Inwardly by comforting Electuaries, and outwardly by applying of ointments, emplaiſters and cerats before taught. Yelking, that is cauſed of emptineſſe, is cured by giuing to the patient conuenient foode, and by thoſe things that do fill his wanting: which partly be afore taught, and abundantly ſpoken of hereafter in the cure of the feauer Ethicke. It doth much good in this kind of yelking, to annoint the ioints of the necke and the back with moiſtening oyle, as is, oyles of violets, and of ſweet almonds. But if yelking be cauſed of gnawing things, firſt we finde that vomiting is a ſufficient remedie for it: then alſo ſtupefaction of feeling, and ſuch things as doe alter the gnawing.

Cure of hicket cauſed of emptineſſe.

Cure of yelking through inordinacie.

Pilulæ de cynogloſſa.

The ſenſes be aſtonied and ſtupefact by cooling things, for which purpoſe you muſt miniſter *philonium*, or pilles of hounds tongue, which do profite maruellouſly in this diſeaſe, you muſt vſe them thus. You muſt make of one dram, ſixe pilles, whereof let the ſicke take one before he go to bed. The mordacitie and gnawing is altered and driuen away by medicines which doe ſtoppe, attenuate, and drie. Stoppers of gnawing be theſe, iuyce of Endiue drunk, cucumber ſeeds husked and beaten being drunke, lettuſe ſeede likewiſe taken. Alſo iuyce of purſelaine drunke, and purſelaine it ſelfe taken in meate. Alſo Sebeſten decoction taken in drinke, but ſpecially aboue all, Aſſes milk is good. Or if you haue not that, cowes milke newly milked is good being drunke. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter conſerue of roſes, or of violets, or of water lillies, *diarrhodon*, *diatrion ſantalon*, Iulep of violets, of *Nimpheæ*, that is, water lillies, and ſuch like. Theſe Trochiskes doe ſtop, extenuate, and drie vp. ℞. *Coſtus*, ſaffron, ſpikenard, greene roſes, maſticke, ana. ℥. ß. *aſarum*, *aloes*. ana. ℥. ij. *opium*. ℥. j. with iuyce of *pſillium*, make trochiskes, of the which giue. ℥. ß. or ℥. j. Note that *opium*, and the roſes, and the iuyce of *pſillium* be of a cold operation: the ſpikenard doth diſcuſſe, diſſolue, and corroborate: the *Aſarum* doth bring out the vicious humours by vrine: the *aloes* doth purge out the vicious humours, and driue them out beneath at the ſeige: the ſaffron digeſteth and ſtrengtheneth the parts, for by his temperament of heat he cauſeth digeſtion, & by his reſtrictiue vertue which he hath, he addeth ſtrength: the *coſtus* doth ſufficiently heate, and moderately reſtraine, which you may perceiue by his taſt. Galen commendeth this medicine verie much, *Lib. 8. de Comp. Med. ſecundum locos. cap. 3.*

Paſtillus.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.
Of Choler.
De Cholera.

Cholera in Latine, is an immoderate perturbation of the ſtomake, cauſed by vomit both vpward and downward. The barbarous ſort call this diſeaſe, *Cholerica paſſio*: they that haue this diſeaſe be called of the Latines *Cholerici*. It is cauſed through much cruditie and rawneſſe of the ſtomacke, and ill digeſtion, which many times engendreth of great wickedneſſe of the meates, and ſometime through abundance of vicious humours alſo. The ſignes whereby this euill is knowne be verie manifeſt: for they auoid both vpward and downward: alſo there followeth thirſt and ſwet, and ſhort pulſe and drawing vp, and ſtretching out of the muſcles of the hands and feet, and ſpecially of the calfe of the legges. Therefore ſeing this euill is moſt ſharpe and doth cauſe verie grieuous ſowndings, if it endure long, you muſt do your diligence that you helpe it by and by without any tarying. No Phiſition if he ſee this diſeaſe to be engendred through abundance of vicious humours, will in the beginning all at once go about to ſtop that which is ſent forth, for ſeeing they be vnprofitable and hurtfull, they haue need of purging. Therefore if the patient haue diſpoſition to vomit, and be troubled with vndigeſted meates remaining in the ſtomack, you muſt giue him warme water, and thē he muſt vomit by his finger or a fether put into his mouth. But you may not prouoke vomit by miniſtring of *Aqua mulſa*, nor with water mixed with oile: becauſe theſe things do increaſe the fluxes, and cauſe mordacity and writhings: alſo you muſt helpe the matter that purgeth downeward: for a ſtrange poiſon as it were being within doth gnaw the ſtomacke and guts, and draweth the humours from the whole bodie: you muſt miniſter vnto him the eaſieſt purging medicines, as is, aloës, *Caſia piſtularis*, decoction of *Mirabolanes* and ſuch like. After that the ſuperfluous things be brought forth, then he muſt reſt, and it is good to nouriſh the ſides with oiles of maſticke, or nard, or wormewood, and to cauſe ſleepe. You muſt commixe ſometime with the aforeſaied, other things which can ſtrengthen the ſtomack, which be afore taught, and with them you muſt make ointments. When there appeareth exact and perfect concoction & digeſtion, vſe bathes of ſweet water, and meates of good iuice, among which is broth of chickens with veriuice, the fleſh of ſmall birdes of mountaines, rere egges and ſuch like. In drinke let him vſe iuice of pomegranates, or ſirupe of roſes, or water wherein burning ſteele hath bene quenched three or foure times. But when the euill hath endured long, and hath cauſed ſlenderneſſe and leannes throughout the bodie, and ſpecially if the belly or ſtomacke do reſt after the remouing from his place, and that the pulſe be leſſe, and thicker, then you muſt bind the extreame and vttermoſt parts with bands, and you muſt make them faſt by much oile. Alſo apply to the ſtomacke Cataplaſmes, and emplaiſters made of reſtrictiue and ſtrengthening things, as thoſe be which are made of dates, *hypociſchidos*, *Acatia*, *Sumach*, bole armoniacke, frankenſence, *Balauſtiæ*, roſes, and fruite of mirtels. Alſo it is an effectuous remedie, if a linnen cloth wet in the iuice of crabbes be layd vpon the ſtomacke, or this

Cholerici.
Cauſa.
Signa.
Curatio.

Scutum Stomachi. cerate. ℞. of the oiles of roſes, mirtels, and quinces. ana. ℥.j. maſticke, frankenſence, acatia. ana. ℥.ij. *hypociſchidis.* ℥.j. ß. ſaunders white and redde. ana. ℥.j. *balauſtiæ*, dragons bloud. ana ℥.ß. bolearmoniacke. ℥.j. waxe and roſen as much as is ſufficient, make a cerate to lay vpon the ſtomacke couered with ſilke. In drinking giue him the meaſure of one *Cyathe* of cold water to ſoupe off, (that is) ℥.j ß. but you muſt beware that it be not ouer colde, for that being giuen ſoddenly is vomited vp againe, and ſometime with his ſtupor and coldneſſe, it hurteth verie extremely the naturall heat, or it cauſeth inflammation of the ſtomack, or of ſome of the bowels. And you may ſometime droppe into the water, a litle of the iuice of ſharpe pomegranats, or of roſes, or of the decoction of vine branches. And if thoſe things that be voided forth be verie ſharpe, and that thirſt and burning do trouble the patient: then miniſter cucumber ſeeds with three *Cyathes* of water. Alſo you may giue it commodiouſly with *Amylum*. Then alſo miniſter endiue or lettuſe, or both ſodden in Poſca. Afterward procure ſleepe and reſt by all meanes: but if the fluxe will not be ſtopped, and the pulſe decay betweene this and that, and that colde and ſwet do take him, and alſo ſometime yelking, you muſt come to wine that is meanely reſtrictiue, which is not verie ſtrong, but yet ſweete and not odoriferous: and put into it, warme if it may be, or elſe cold, crummes of bread or *Alica*, and ſo by little and little at ſundrie times, let them ſoupe it vp. But yet they muſt eſchue much quantitie of wine, and by all meanes you muſt go about to bring them to ſleepe, by ſtrewing the pauement of the houſe with roſes, vine leaues, bryer, and ſuch like afore taught. Alſo apply odoraments to the noſe, as roſes, quinces, and ſuch like: alſo annoint ſoporiferous and ſleepie ointments about the temples and forehead. If he go to the ſtoole ſtill, caſt in by a cliſter *Amylum* with decoction of poppy heads, for it doth both reſtrain and coole, and cauſe ſleepe. To ſtop vomits, it is good to eate and deuour the iuice of medlers, quinces, pomegranates and peares. If with theſe remedies, and others that be taught before in the ſecond chapter of this booke, the ſicke cannot keepe and brooke his meate: you muſt apply without vpon the ſtomack a verie great cupping glaſſe lightly. Againſt the contraction and drawing vp of the muſcles, you muſt winde about the muſcles, linnen clothes ſoked in warme oile, and apply moiſt cerates and ointmentes wherein is put ſome *Caſtoreum* and oile of *Ireos*. You ſhall find examples enough of thoſe in the chapter of the palſey before in the firſt booke. When the diſeaſe decreaſeth, you muſt refreſh and reſtore the patient againe with good meates, as chickens, doues, hennes, partrich, wood-culuer, and ouſils, or black-birds, and ſuch like.

A cyathe is. ℥. j. ß.

Conſtriction of vomites.

Againſt conſtriction in the muſcles.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the fluxe diarrhœa.

De Diarrhœa.

Cauſe. *Diarrhœa* in Latine, is a copious & great fluxe of the wombe without exulceration and inflammation. It is cauſed through weakneſſe of the inſtruments that belong and do ſerue to digeſtion: alſo through abundance of nouriſhment & meat that is moiſt and viſcous, and through corrupting of the ſame meate.

meat. Moreouer gnawing and biting of thoſe things that are contained in the belly: alſo flowing of ſome things from aboue to the belly, and alſo weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue. The ſignes whereby the cauſes are knowen are very manifeſt. For if this fluxe *diarrhæa* be cauſed through the weakneſſe of the inſtruments that ſerue for digeſtion (as is) the ſtomacke, the bowels, the liuer, and the ſplene: you muſt ſeeke the ſignes of theſe out of their owne chapters. But if it be cauſed through much deuouring of euill meates and drinkes, you may know it partly by the patients tale, and partly alſo by thoſe things that come forth by ſiege. For if they be cholericke, they be yellow of colour, and they be not caſt out without feeling of gnawing and heat: alſo the patient feeleth bitternes of the mouth, thirſt, thinne ſtate of the body, and other tokens which ſignifie choler. If it be flegmaticke, thoſe things which come out with the ſiege ſhall be contrary to that which is ſaid before of choler. And if humors do flow from the head to the belly, the egeſtions wil appeare frothy, and the temper of the braine will be very moiſt. If the flux be engendred through fulneſſe of the whole body, or if it be indicatory, the ſignes are rehearſed in another place, and of *Galen lib. de plenitudine & criſibus*. And if this fluxe of the wombe be cauſed through weakeneſſe of the inſtrumentes, the diſtempure which is cauſe of this, muſt be cured and corrected by his contraries, as is taught in the firſt chapter of this booke. If this fluxe of the wombe be cauſed through other cauſes, and that nature doth labour to driue out of the body ſuperfluous and hurtfull matter by this meanes, and that you can eaſily ſuffer it which be troubled with it, then you muſt ſuffer & watch, till nature hath beſtowed all her care & charge: or elſe alſo it is good to helpe natures motion, but for to go about to ſtriue with it, and to ſtop the fluxe, it cauſeth a worſe & greater diſeaſe: for thoſe humours which are ſtopped being caried vpward, do cauſe paine in the head, or frenſie, or litargie, or impoſtumation behind the eares not without danger. Therfore in the beginning you may not ſtoppe the fluxe, which floweth profitably for the health of the body. But after that the fluxe hath endured long, not onely carying forth ſuperfluities, but alſo melting as it were the ſtate of the bodie, and conſuming the ſtrength, then you muſt labour to ſtoppe it, as well by things giuen in at the mouth, as alſo caſt in at the fundament, and alſo by things applyed outwardly vppon the bellie. Therfore if there come forth excrements of cleane choler, you muſt change it into a better and a more healthfull ſtate, but yet you may not cure them by ſtopping of it ſtraight wayes. For the cholericke matter that is gathered together, and heaped in the ſtomach, and in the bowell called *ieiunum*, if it be withholden and kept there ſtill, it hurteth greatly: for it both ouerturneth the ſtomach, and cauſeth inflammations of the bowels, it kindleth thirſt, and reſtoreth feauers, and cauſeth the euils aforeſaied, and generally cauſeth a worſe diſeaſe. Therfore if there be abundance of cholericke humours in the bodie, nature muſt be expelled with eaſie purging medicines, as is, infuſion of rewbarbe, *caſia fiſtularis*, the barkes of mirabolanes, *citrine* or *manna*. After that giue cowes milke, or goates milke warme, being new milked, or ſeeth it at the fire and ſtirre it continually till it be conſumed vnto the third part: which you may do by quenching of red hot iron, or ſteele gads in the milke often, but while it

Signa.

Curatio.

Note.

Cure of a Diarrhea of choler.

doth ſeeth you muſt take the ſcum or ſome of it: for ſurely you can find no quicker remedie againſt fluxes of choler. And becauſe the milke that is eaten of one that hath a feuer, is wont to turne into a burning ſauour, or alſo ſharpe or ſoure, and ſo cauſeth more hurt than good: therefore if the patient hath a feauer together with this fluxe, you ſhall eſchue miniſtring of milke to him, dreſſed after that ſort. But you muſt powre the fourth part of water to the milke, and ſeeth it vntill halfe be conſumed, and then miniſter it vnto him. If the choler be heaped vp together in the bowels, you muſt caſt in cliſters made of the decoction of barley, with ſugar roſet, oile of roſes, yolkes of egges and ſuch like. At the length, when the cholericke humours be voided out, you muſt miniſter inwardly, ſuch medicines as do reſtraine and ſtrengthen (as be) conſerue of roſes, *diacotoneon* without ſpices, *diatrion ſantalon*, trochiskes of *ſpodium*, *Hidromalon* and ſuch like. And what kind of medicines they muſt be that ought to be applyed outwardly we will ſhewe you a litle hereafter. Alſo the fundament muſt be fomented and nouriſhed with a decoction made of ſome reſtrictiue things. If the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be engendred through flegmaticke humors that be groſſe and tough, or through corruption of them, then you muſt beginne your cure as you did before with eaſie purging. Therefore then you muſt miniſter the infuſion of *Agaricke* with *Mirabolanes imbelici*, or ſome ſuch like medicine, which is able to bring foorth the aforſayed humours. Alſo cliſters are good, ſpecially if there be abundance of clammie humours heaped vp in the bowels: let them be made of the decoction of centorie, and oile of rewe, and ſuch like. Miniſter within the bellie *Diacotoneon* with ſpices, greene ginger, and other medicines which haue power to heate and drie. Alſo apply outwardly thoſe things which do ad ſtrength. If the fluxe *Diarhæa* be cauſed through the weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, you muſt miniſter & apply thoſe medicins, which are applied againſt other vnmeaſurable fluxes of the wombe. Therfore apply irrigations & ſprincklings of oile *omphacine*, or oyle of roſes, or oile of the bloſſomes of apples, with ſome ſowre or ſharpe wine, but oile of mirtles is of more effect, if there be need of vehement reſtriction, hauing the third or fourth part of wine added to it. And if their bodies be ſtrong, you may ſeeth in that irrigation, gals, pomgranate rindes, and *Balauſtiæ*. If the fluxe endure ſtill, apply cataplaſmes, emplaiſters and cerates, made of reſtrictiue & drying things, wherof we will make mention in the next chapter. Alſo this cerate is effectuous to be made. Take ſeuen mulberies, or black-beries which be ſowre and whitiſh for lacke of ripeneſſe, bray them well and adde to it oile of roſes. ℥. ij. waxe. ℥. j. and make a cerate. After the voiding of ſuperfluous and hurtfull humours, theſe things heale the fluxe of the wombe being miniſtred in drink, that is, comin, decoction of maidenhaire, the roote of white thorne, likewiſe one. ℥. weight of the ſeed of *Apium* miniſtred: for it prouoketh vrine, and turneth the fluxes that be in the bowels thither. Alſo vnripe mulberies being yet ſowre, if they be dried many dayes in the ſun and ſo kept, if they be beaten and drunke when need requireth, they reſtrain and ſtop the wombe maruellouſly. Alſo they may be brayed & mixed with his meates, as they are wont to vſe *Sumach*, which ſometime is ſodden, the quantitie of an ounce weight with a chicken: but yet blackberies of the brier being vnripe

Cure of Diarhæa of flegmaticke humours.

Cure of Diarrhæa of the weakneſſe of the vertue retentiue.

Ceratum.

vnripe and sharpe, do bind the bellie more if they be dried as is aforesaid, and ministred in drinke. Among compound medicines these are maruellous good, that is, trochiskes of *Spodium*, of *terra lemnia*, *diacotoneon*, *diatrion santalon*, triacle: and this compound made in Lozenges is good. ℞. the powders of *diatrion santalon*, *diarrhodon abbatis*. ana. ℈. ij. red corall, chosen frankensence, red roses. ana. ʒ. ß. *spodium*. ʒ. j. seedes of sorrell, *sumach*, ana. ℈. j. *balaustiæ*, *acatiæ*. ana. ʒ. ß. masticke. ℈. ß. bolearmoniacke. ʒ. j. fine white sugar. ℔. ß. dissolue it in the distilled waters of plantaine and roses, and make lozenges. *Morsuli.*

Also this loch is good. ℞. of old conserues of roses, of *diacotoneon* without spices, *rob ribes*, *rob de barberies*. ana. ʒ. ß. *hydromel*. ʒ. iij. *diamoron*. ʒ. v. the powder of *diatrion santalon*. ℈. ij. red corall. ℈. j. *spodium*, *balaustiæ*. ana. ℈. ß bolearmoniacke. ʒ. j. sirupe of mirtels as much as shall suffise, and make a loch. *Ecligma.*

Moreouer you shall euer haue this water readie made. ℞. *sumach*, one quarter, raine water. ℔. iij. in which steepe the *sumach* a day and a night, then boyle them, and straine the *sumach* well & strongly. And in that water, seeth rice, or milke, or other meats, or at the least way poure some portion of this water to them. *A precious water.*

If the fluxe *Diarrhæa* be caused through flowing of humours from some other member of the bodie, you must seeke the cure out of their proper chapters. As for example, if the humours flow from the head into the stomacke, you must returne to those things which are spoken of before in the chapter against distillation or reume, and so do likewise with other parts of the bodie.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the fluxe Lienteria.

De Lienteria.

Lienteria in Greeke, is a certaine lightnes, or smoothnesse of the bowels, euen like as there chanceth of a scarre without on the skin of the body. In this disease the bowels do not hold the meate, but they let it slide away before it be changed & perfectly digested, euen in the same forme and likenesse that it was eaten. Therfore in Latine it may well be called *leuitas*, or *leuor intestinorum*, and in English, lightnesse or smoothnesse of the bowels. It is caused oftentimes through a grieuous fluxe *disenteria* by name going before, which causeth deepe exulceration of the bowels; then scarres that be hard closed together and smooth do follow: which scarres by reason of the hard closing, will not suffer the meats to be distributed about the body, because the mouthes of the veines which are wont to draw nourishment from the bowels to thẽselues, are now stopped. And because of the smoothnesse (as is aforesaid) the bowels suffer the meats to slide out before they be perfectly digested. Also this disease is caused many times through weaknesse & debilitie of the vertue that should keepe and hold the meates in the stomacke. For this vertue being weake and sickly, the food or meats be neither digested nor distributed: but they are cast forth crude, moist, and nothing chaunged, (the belly being alwayes soluble.) Also sometime it ingendreth after long fluxe of the wombe. Also sometime when dropsie water auoideth by the belly, this fluxe *Lienteria* followeth. Therfore of what cause soeuer this fluxe is engendred, the sicke doth tast or feele no meate, and it causeth euill state or plight of the bodie. Therefore there *Causa.* *Signa.*

chanceth to the patient continuall ſeiges, crude & raw, in colour pale or whitiſh, vnequall & very watery, without any commixing of bloud and choler. Alſo he feeleth a burning which ſpreadeth all ouer the ſides, loathing of meat followeth it. It is a good and friendly ſigne in them that haue had this fluxe long, if there chance vnto them ſharp and ſowre belkings: for it betokeneth that the meate doth abide ſome while in the ſtomacke vntill it begin to be changed.

6. Aphor. 1.

When this diſeaſe chanceth, it is eaſie to perceiue, that you muſt refreſh and recreate the vertues retentiue and digeſtiue, aſwell of the ſtomach as of the bowels by al meanes, and that may chiefly be done by miniſtring of conuenient meats, and ordaining of a diet meet to reſtore and refreſh ſtrength. Therfore the fleſh of birds of mountaines are good: alſo chickens roſted, in whoſe bellies alſo muſt be put *ſumach* or maſticke, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the next chapter. Let the meate which you giue him be litle in quantitie and eaſie of digeſtion. And if his ſeiges be ſharpe & cholericke, make him meate with rice and *alica* and ſuch like, with the which ſeeth ſome reſtrictiue things, as peares, quinces, medlars, and ſuch other like. Alſo milke ſodden is good for them, but if their ſeige be flegmaticke, you muſt miniſter vnto them contrarie meates. Alſo commixe ſomwhat that is pleaſant and acceptable to the ſtomach, as is anniſe ſeed, commin or *daucus*. In cholericke ſeiges let their drinke be ale: but in flegmaticke let it be wine that is old and hot. And generally let him drinke but litle, for much drinke is not onely in this flux *Lienteria*, but alſo in all other fluxes of the wombe, moſt hurtfull. For curing of this diſeaſe, if the fluxe *Lienteria* be engendred through weakneſſe of the vertue of the ſtomach, you muſt turne to the chapter of weaknes of the ſtomach, and there ſeeke the cure. But to be ſhort, you muſt miniſter both within and without to the bodie thoſe things that do reſtraine, and that can ſtrengthen aſwell the ſtomach as alſo the bowels. Therefore miniſter ſirupes of wormewood, and mints, and other electuaries which do ſtrengthen the ſtomach. And you muſt apply thoſe things outwardly, which be reherſed before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*, and ſhalbe taught in the next chap. following. But this medicine is ſpecially good. ℞. oiles of maſticke, wormwood, mints, and mirtels. ana. ℥.ij. powders of cinamon choſen, cloues and galingale. ana. ℈.j. *Balauſtiæ* and red roſes. ana. ℈.ß. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, or vſe this cerate. ℞. oiles of maſticke, wormewood and of quinces. ana. ℥.j. oile of mints. ℥ ß. *calamus aromaticus*, cloues, frankenſence. ana. ℥.j wood of aloës. ℈.ß. red roſes, white ſaunders and red. ana. ℥.ß. maſticke, commin ana. ℥.j. *hipociſchidos, acatia, ſumach*. ana. ℥.j. ß. *Galia moſchata*. ℈.j. with waxe and turpentine as much as is ſufficient, make a cerate. Moreouer to thoſe that you coniecture haue a ſcarre, to thoſe the eating of ſharpe things is profitable, for it cauſeth certaine refrication and rubbing open againe of the ſcarre: alſo it reuiueth againe the natural heate, and doth ſomwhat refreſh the digeſtiue vertue. Therfore in this caſe (as *Galen* witneſſeth *in cap. 95. Artis Medicæ*) they be good which do ſcoure and wipe away ſufficiently, and reſtraine a litle: therefore alwayes commixe ſcouring things with reſtrictiue medicins. In all other cauſes of this fluxe *Lienteria*, you muſt vſe the ſame kind of cure, which you do vſe to them that be afflicted with the fluxes *Diarrhœa*, or *Dyſenteria*.

Victus ratio.

Cure of Lienteria of weaknes of the vertue of the ſtomach.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

If Lienteria be cauſed of a ſcarre.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fluxe Diſenteria.

DE DISENTERIA.

DISENTERIA in greeke properly is nothing elſe then an exulceration of the bowels. The Latines call this diſeaſe *tormina*, becauſe through it, the bowels are tormented and fretted very much with paine. We ſaid before properly, becauſe the Greeks recken foure kinds of bloudy *Diſenteria*, as witneſſeth *Galen. lib. 30. de ſymptomatum cauſis.* The firſt is, when bloud is ſent forth by circuite through ſome part of the body being cut off, or through ſome exerciſe of the former life, being let paſſe for a time. The ſecond is when watery bloud like vnto the water, wherin bloudy fleſh being new killed, hath beene waſhed and ſoaked, is ſent out: which chanceth through weaknes of the liuer. The third is, when there is ſent forth an humour more ſhining and blacker then that which is natural, being commixt of bloud and melancholy. And of theſe, we do not ſpeake here, but we ſpeake only of the fourth kind, in the which many times by litle & litle, & betweene whiles ſomtimes is caſt out of pure bloud. Alſo ſometime clodded bloud, or ſhauing of the bowels, commeth out with pure bloud. Alſo many times is caſt out thicke dung ſprinckled with drops of bloud. This fourth kind (as it is ſaid) is cauſed through exulceratiõ of the bowels, which ſometime chanceth through outward cauſes, as of cold, heate, and moiſtneſſe. Alſo through drinking of pernicious and naughty medicins (as is) *ſcammony* and ſuch like. Alſo through eating of fruite, through crudity and rawneſſe, or through eating of ſharpe or ſoure meates, or through ſharpe and gnawing humours flowing from the whole body to the belly, or engendred in the belly it ſelfe. And this beginneth after *Tenaſmus* ſometime, and ſometime by it ſelfe. The excrements firſt are cholericke, diuerſe, and fatty, by reaſon of the fat that cleaueth within in the bowels being melted But when the ſuperficies of the bowels is altogether bare, and exulceration doth abide about it, then the excrements that come forth, be full of dregs and bloudy. And when the exulceration hath pearced deeper, then alſo is ſent forth filthines, hauing as it were litle peeces of parchment commixed with it. And if it be not ſtopped, it eateth and feedeth in ſhort time the places nigh vnto it, and it ſendeth forth mattery excrements, ſuch as are wont to run from dead bodies. When the ſmall guttes are exulcerate, there abideth paine about the nauill, the excrementes are cholericke hauing the colour of a leeke, and altogether garniſhed with ſundry colours, commixed with much ordure or dung. The patient feeleth griefe and frettings, and gnawing and looſening, ſo that the ſick is not farre from fainting and failing of heart. Alſo they are troubled with thirſt and be feauerous, and the ordure commeth forth crude and rawe, and the bowell called *ieiunum* is exulcerate, but that is very ſeldome: but if it doe chance, the egeſtions do appeare more crude and raw, hauing black bloud wrapped with it vehemently, and yellow of choler, and much thirſt, and alſo diſpoſition to vomit do trouble the ſicke. Alſo ſometime they vomite and abhorre meates. Alſo there remaineth vehement paine about the nauill, & ſometime alſo malignant feauers do engender. And they that are ſo diſeaſed be waxen il colou-

4 *Kindes of Dyſenteria.*

1

2

3

4

Cauſe.

Signa.

Signes of exulceration of the ſmall bowels.

red, and do ſweat out euen till fainting and failing of hart. Their ſtrength doth quickly faile them, and they be not farre from death. But if the vlceration be engendred in the great bowels, then the ordure that commeth forth is pure, and much, and heaped together, and commeth out with windineſſe and frothineſſe ſometime. Alſo fatneſſe is commixed with it, and bloud ſwimmeth aloft: as *Galen* ſheweth largely in *libro. 60. de male affectis locis.* For it helpeth greatly to the cure to know this thing. For if the exulceration be in the vpper end ſmall bowels, you muſt goe about the cure by medicines giuen in at the mouth, but if it be in the great and lower bowels, it is more conuenient to throw in cliſters. The beginning of the cure of them that haue the fluxe *Dyſenteria*, from whence ſoeuer the fluxe proceedeth, muſt be with quiet & reſt, and litle meate. Therefore if a feuer do not let it, let him eate milke new milked, while it is yet warme: or in ſtead of it miniſter milke ſodden; as we taught before in the chapter of *Diarrhœa*. For this firſt cleanſeth and purgeth downeward, and tempereth together thoſe things which be in the body, & laſt of all, it ſtoppeth & bindeth the wombe. But you muſt giue him moreouer wet bread after the taking of the milk. Alſo pottage prepared of milke, hath both the nature of medicines, and alſo they cauſe good nouriſhment, as is rice with milke, *amylum* and egges mixed with milke. Alſo ſoupings or pottage made of *alica*, and *milium*, *ſumach* being added to it, is good. Alſo you muſt prepare meates of dry bread, powring to it *Poſca*, or iuice of dates, or quinces, or of peares, or of *ſumach*. Alſo miniſter chittes well roſted with plantaine, or ſodden with quinces braied: the vſing of oiles is not neceeſſary nor needfull, but you ſhall miniſter to taſt vpon endiue, both wilde and tame ſodden, and plantaine, and coleworts twiſe ſodden. Giue him alſo the yolks of egs roſted. Fleſh is not good to be giuen to them that haue the fluxe *diſenteria*, becauſe they be of a ſtronger noriſhment, & do ſtriue againſt digeſtiō: but yet you muſt giue it to them that be troubled with this diſeaſe long. Among all kind of fleſh, you muſt ſpecially chooſe birds, as is partrich, and wood culuers, & birds of mountaines. Among foure footed beaſts, goats fleſh and hares fleſh are good. But you muſt forbid him the fleſh of cattell that draw, and of all other foure footed beaſtes. From the beginning let him vſe for his drinke raine water which is not fallen from houſes couered with lead: for ſuch water being drunke, euen of them that be whole, engendreth the *diſenteria*: and if good raine water be not preſent, you muſt vſe running water, wherein burning ſteele hath beene quenched. But if the ſtomacke be diſeaſed, or if his ſtrength be caſt downe, giue him wine, alſo let it be reſtringent, and not very old. Sleepe is the beſt remedy for them that haue the *diſenteria*. For this cure you muſt vſe ſuch remedies as doe reſtraine, ſtop, dry vp, and prouoke vrine, and that do cary the fluxe ſome other way. Reſtrictiue things be theſe: ſorell ſeed, *ſumach*, gauls, pomgranat rinds dried, bnet root, *lab lanum*, *acatia*, *hypociſchis*, *balauſtium*, willow leaues, comfery roots, leaues, and ſeed, *rheum ponticum*, if it may be gotten, root of *althæa*, horſetaile, coral, maſticke, hares creame, dragons bloud, the barke of frankenſence, *terra lemnia*, roote of *verbaſcus*, plaintaine ſeed, white daiſies, a kinde of mallowes called *alcea*, *oxis*, *ſanicula*, *ophrys*, *ophioglo ſſum*, knotgraſſe, ſhepherdes purſe, walwort, *pedelion*, *numularia*, dragons the male, ſharpe mulberies, kernelles of grapes, the barke

Signes of exulceration of the great bowels.

Diet.

Lenticula.

Potus.

Curatio.

Adſtringentia

barke of maces, and ſuch like. Theſe things do ſtoppe and make temperate the biting, gnawing, and ſharpneſſe of humors, as is *amylum*, gums tragacanth, tallow of goats, kids, ſwine, geeſe and hens. Theſe do dry vp; hares creame, harts-horne burnt, the ſhels of crabbes of running water, and ſage. Things to prouoke vrine, you ſhall find in his owne place. Therefore if the exulceration be in the great bowels, you muſt miniſter cliſters firſt, ſuch as haue power to ſcoure and cleanſe, as this is: ℞. of the decoction of whole barley. ℔ j. *mel roſarum* ſtrained. ℥ j. ſugar roſet. ℥ ß. yolks of egges in number ij. oile of roſes. ℥ iij. commixe all together & make a cliſter. Abſterſion and cleanſing being firſt done, caſt in thoſe things that do glutinate and ioine together, as this is: ℞. red roſes, plantaine, leaues of comfery, knotgraſſe, primroſes. ana. *M.* ß. *balauſtiæ*. ℥ j. rice burned. ℥ j roote of comfery. ℥ ß. ſeeth altogether in water wherein ſteele hath bene quenched, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and take of the iuice of that decoction. ℥ xij. iuice of plantaine. ℥ ij. *acatiæ, hypociſtidis*. ana. ℈ ij. bole armoniacke, *ſanguis draconis*. ana. ℈ j. goats tallow. ℥ j. oiles of roſes, mirtels, quinces. ana. ℥ j. commixe all together and make a cliſter. Sometime it doth not only require things to ſtoppe the vehemencie of the paine, but alſo medicines that be ſtupefactiue. Therfore then it is good to vſe this cliſter. ℞. of goats milke, or of cowes milke. ℔ j. freſh butter. ℥ j. goats greaſe. ℥ j. ß. gumme tragacanth. ana. ℥ j. yolkes of egges in number iij. pilles of hounds tongue. ℥ j. oile of roſes. ℥ iij. commixe all together and make a cliſter. If there be neede of more vehement ſtupefaction: you muſt augment the waight of the pils, or elſe you muſt adde to the aforeſaid waight of pilles three or foure graines of *opium*, or more or leſſe, according to the vehemency of the paine, and the ſtate of the body. If the exulceration be in the ſmall and thin bowels, then it rather requireth medicines that are giuen in at the mouth. Therfore the decoctiō of reſtrictiue things which is afore taught, is good, if you commixe with it ſirupe of roſes, and mirtels, and ſo miniſter it, and alſo other medicines which are taught in the chap. of *diarrhœa*, are good. Alſo you may conueniently miniſter this potion. ℞. of the decoction of the root of comfery, or of ſome other reſtrictiue thing. ℥ iij. ſirupe of roſes. ℥ j. ſirupe of mirtels. ℥ ß. powder of the trochiskes of *ſpodium*, plantaine ſeede, bole armoniacke. ana. ℈ ij. commixe all together and make a potion. Beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chapters of *Diarrhœa* and *Lienteria*, you muſt apply outwardly vpon the belly this cerote. ℞. of the oiles of maſticke, roſes, mirtels, and quinces. ana. ℥ j. meale of barley and fenugreeke. ana. ℥ j of red roſes, plantaine. ana. ℥ j. *balauſtiæ, ſanguis draconis*. ana ℥ ß. bole armoniacke. ℥ ij. *hypociſtidis, acatiæ*, maſticke. ana. ℥ ij. with waxe and roſen as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote. By the examples aforeſaid, you may make many other remedies, which we ouerpaſſe here.

Obturdentia.

Reſiccantia.

Cure if it be in the great bowels.

Cliſter abſtringens.

Cliſter glutinans.

Cliſter dolorem lenians.

Potio.

Optimum cerotum.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Tenaſmus.

De Tenasmo.

TENASMVS, is a cōtinuall deſire to go to the ſtoole or ſiege, which the patiēt cannot defer nor eſchue, & yet he auoideth nothing, except it be a li-

Cauſe.

tle bloud, or filthy matter like ſneuell. It is cauſed oftentimes through outward cold, or through humours ſharpe and cholericke, or of ſalt fleume, or impoſtumation, or of inflammation engendred in the ſtraight gut. Alſo many times, the ſtopping of hard dung in the blinde gut, may cauſe *Tenaſmus*. The Phiſition may eaſily know if it be cauſed of outward cold, by the tale of the ſicke, becauſe either he hath ſitten vpon cold things, or he hath taken much cold in winter, or he hath taried long in cold water: you may know the humours by that which he auoideth, which either be cholericke or flegmaticke. In a botch or bile his egeſtion is matter and corruption, & he feeleth pricking in the fundament.

Signa.

Inflammation cauſeth ſwelling of the right bowell, & grieuous paine together with a feauer: abundance of dung cauſeth feeling of grieuous diſtention, and ſtretching out about the bottome of the belly.

Curatio. Tenaſmus of cold.

The cure is diuers according to the diuerſity of cauſes. Therfore if the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of cold, you muſt miniſter pure and vnmixed wine, hote, and you muſt ſprinckle, foment, & nouriſh the ſhare & the parts about the priuy members with hot oiles and foments: as are, oiles of rew and lillies: alſo bran ſodden in wine, and put in a bag may well be applied to the fundament. Alſo it is good to throw in cliſters made of the decoction of wild mintes, origan, calamint, cammomill, ſothernwood, ſeed of anniſe, fennell, & ſuch like, putting to it oiles of dill, cammomill, and lillies. Alſo it is maruellous good if you take a very old tile which is blacke with ſmoke, & bray it with the gere that is contained in it, then commixe it together with ſeething vineger, and bind it vp in a cloth, and apply it to the fundament by and by after he hath auoided any thing.

Tenaſmus of cholericke humours. Cliſter abſtergens.

But if the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through cholericke humors withholden and remaining in the bowels and fundament, you muſt caſt in cliſters which haue vertue and power to ſcoure, waſh and clenſe. As this is: ℞. of the licour of the decoction of barley. ℔. j. ſugar roſet ℥. j. ß. *mel roſarum*. ℥. j. yolkes of egges. ij. oile of roſes. ℥. iij. commixe them and make a cliſter, he muſt eſchew all ſharpe thinges, and he muſt vſe things meanly cold and moiſt, and all thoſe things which doe ſtop and temperate the ſharpneſſe of choler.

Tenaſmus of flegmaticke humours.

If *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of flegmaticke humors, it ſhall be healed like that which is cauſed of cold, only adding to, and commixing with the cliſters, ſuch medicines as haue vertue to purge fleume, as is *Electuarium nidum* or *diaphœnicon*, or *benedicta laxatiua*.

Tenaſmus of inflammation. Cliſter.

And if *Tenaſmus* be engendred of inflammation, caſt in broth of ptiſan, wherein hath bene ſodden a few red roſes, or if vehement inflammation do trouble him, miniſter this cliſter. ℞. of the licour of the decoctiō of plantain. ℥. v. oile of roſes. ℥ ij. the white of one egge, commixe them together & make a cliſter.

Fomentum.

Outwardly you muſt ſprinckle and annoint the place betweene the priuy members, and the fundament with oile of rew, and mirtels: or apply this foment. ℞. red roſes, plantaine. ana. M. j. *balauſtiæ*. ℥ iij. *ſidiorum*. ℥. j mirtell berries. ℥. ij. leaues of brier. ℥. j. ſeeth all together in ſufficient water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then wette a ſpunge in the licour of that decoction, and apply it to the fundament.

Diſcuſſiues.

Moreouer when there is neede of ſuppuration, rotting or diſſoluing, apply fomentes made of the decoction of the roote of *Althæa*, of fenugreeke, cammomill, melilote and branne.

Cure of Tenaſmus cauſed of an vlcer. Vnguentum.

If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed of an vlcer or botch, firſt caſt in the things which haue an abſterſiue and clenſing vertue: and then afterward

that

things that doe glutinate and ioine together muſt be vſed, euen as you did in the flux *Dyſenteria*. Alſo this ointment put into the fundament is good. ℞. oile of roſes. ℥. j. ß. the muſcilage of gumme *Tragacantha*. ana. ℥. iij. ceruſe, burnt lead. ana. ℥. ß. *Aloes*, frankenſence. ana. ℈. j. wax :, as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment, wherin dippe linnen clothes, and put them into the tuell. If the paine be wonderfull great, you may adde to the aforeſaid things, *opium* ℈. j. If the *Tenaſmus* be cauſed through multitude and abundance of doung, then in the beginning the doung muſt be brought out by litle and litle with ſoluble and gentle cliſters, as this is. ℞. mallowes, *Althæa*, mercurie, beates, leaues of blacke violets. ana. *M*. j. ſeedes of fenugreeke and lineſeed. ana. ℥. ß. boyle them all in ſufficient quantity of water to the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction. ℔ j. *medullæ caſiæ fiſtularis* ℥. j. ß. common oile. ℥. iij. ſalt beaten. ℥ j. and make a cliſter. But of this one thing you muſt ſpecially beware, that in this caſe you do miniſter no purgation at the mouth, for that would bring great perill and deſtruction to the patient, by reaſon of drawing of mo excrements from the whole body thither.

Tenaſmus of multitude of doung.

Cliſter lenitiue

Note.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Chollicke.

De Coli Doloribvs.

THE Chollick, or paine, which is bred in the gut called *Colon* of the Greeks is cauſed many wayes: but it hath foure ſpeciall cauſes. For ſomtime it is engendred through groſſe and flegmaticke humors fallen downe within the thin skinne of the gut *Colon*. Alſo ſometime through windineſſe, which hath no roome to get out. Alſo it is cauſed through inflammation of the groſſe & thicke gut ſtretching out and troubling or vexing. Alſo it is wont to engender through ſharpe and gnawing humours, which do afflict and vexe the aforeſaid bowell vehemently. Thoſe that haue the cholicke engendred of a groſſe and flegmaticke humour, they be grieued and vexed aloft, all ouer the *Abdomen*, (that is) the place which is vnder the mouth of the ſtomacke: ſpecially they are grieued where the gut *Colon* lieth: for there they feele pain, as though the gut were braied or bored through. Alſo they be fretted & haue diſpoſition to vomit, belkings, ſundrie & ſtrange vomitings and ſpecially of fleume. Alſo the wombe is letted and ſtopped and ſendeth forth nothing, not ſo much as wind. Alſo the doung which ſometime commeth forth, doth looke like oxes doung, & it is light & full of wind. And there goeth before theſe things continuall vſing of meates that be very cold and of a groſſe iuyce, alſo filling with meats, ill digeſtion, & crudity, idlenes, & ſuch as be adioyning to theſe. Thoſe that haue the cholick cauſed of windines, they feele extentiõ, ſtretching forth & bolning. They that haue the cholick cauſed through inflãmation, they feele inward burning and heat, & no ſmall feuer: alſo retention both of the vrine & ordure. Alſo they are troubled with thirſt, burning heat, diſpoſitiõ to vomit, & vomiting ſpecially of choler without any ceaſing of the euill at all. And this is the moſt grieuous & worſt kind of cholick, which doth threaten to turne into the paine of the *Iliaca paſſio*. They that haue the cholick engendred of ſharp & gnawing humors, they be troubled & vexed with burning thirſt & watching,

Cauſe.

Signes of a groſſe humour.

Signes of windineſſe.

Signes of inflammation.

Signes of ſharp and gnawing humours.

Diet for the cholicke cauſed of flegmaticke and tough humours.

yea and ſmall feuers, the vrine is made ſharpe, and cholericke humours are throwen out oftentimes, going to the ſtoole doth raiſe greater paine and torment. Alſo meats & drinkes that be hote, being receiued doe prouoke it grieuouſly. The diet and cure of this diſeaſe is diuers according to the diuerſitie of the cauſes. Therefore when groſſe & clammy humors doe cauſe the cholicke, the whole diet muſt be extenuate and made thinne. Therefore let the bread which the ſick ſhal eat be new & wel baked in an ouen or furnace. Fleſh is good ſpecially of birdes, as hens, partrich, wood cuiuers, turtles, blackbirds, and doues: he muſt eſchew all kind of foules which do ſwim or liue in waters, as thoſe things which do abound with many ſuperfluities. Among foure footed beaſts the fleſh of calues & kids are good. He muſt eſchue all kind of pulſe, which do maruellous hurt in this diſeaſe. For potherbes you muſt vſe fennell *apium*, *aſperage* & ſuch like. Alſo it will not hurt to take garlike, & oinions raw. To be ſhort let his food be eaſie of digeſtion and ingendring good iuice. Let him eſchue fulneſſe & cruditie: he muſt drinke wine that is ſomewhat reſtrictiue, white, thinne, ſhining, of meane age, temperately alayed, and let him drinke but litle. For the cure of the cholicke cauſed of groſſe humours: you muſt cure it ſo, that you doe not heat vehemently with no medicins, for ſuch remedies do ſpread abroad, puffe vp, and make windie all cold and groſſe humours, which puffing vp and ſpreading in the bowels doth cauſe more vehement paine. Therfore it is good to deuide, cut, and digeſt thoſe humors without vehement paine or heate, and by vſing of thoſe things which do not puffe vp and make windie. Therefore in his ſharp and extreme paine make irrigations of the oiles of rew, cammomill, & dill. Alſo make foments and *ſacculi* of the flowers of cammomill, dill, and melilote, ſeedes of flaxe, of fenugreeke, of *Althæa*, of mill and branne. Alſo cliſters made with the oiles aforeſaid, & with the decoction of the aforeſad herbes are maruellous good, or with the decoction of the roote of wild cucumbers, putting to it comin, or rew, with gooſe greaſe, or hennes greaſe after this ſort. ℞. mallowes, *Althæa* cammomill, mercurie, dill. ana. *M*. j. origan, calamint, peniroiall. ana. *M*. ß. ſeeds of flaxe, fenugreek, comin, louage. ana. ℥. iij. ſeeth all together with wel-water of iuſt quantity, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained. lib. i. *Hierapicra* ℥. ß. *benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. v. of *Electuarium nidũ*. ℥. j. ß. of *mel roſarum* ſtrained. ℥ ß. oiles of cammomill, dill, and rew. ana. ℥. j the yolkes of egges in number two, common ſalt, ℥. j. commixe all together and make a cliſter. Alſo the putting in of ſuppoſitaries, and annointing of the fundament made by iuice of *Ciclaminum*, with hony and ſalt peter, or centorie with honie and ſalt peter doe profit. Example of a ſuppoſitarie is this. ℞. of hony ſodden. ℥. j. ß. pouder of *Hierapicra*. ℥ j. *colocinthidos*. ℈ j. ſalt gemme. ℈. ß. commixe them and make long ſuppoſitaries. Alſo vomiting before ſupper, if the patient can vomit eaſily, doth helpe aboue all other things. Moreouer after the purging, if the paine hath bin prolonged for many dayes, let him go into a great veſſell of hot oile if it may be had. Alſo it is good to ſit in the decoction of *Althæa*, peniroiall, laurell leaues, fenugreeke, cãmomill, motherwort, dill, & ſuch like. The moſt cõuenient medicine againſt the cholicke, is wine wherin wormwoode hath bene infuſed or ſodden, if they neede drinking after a bath:

Cure of cholick cauſed of groſſe humours.

Clyſter.

Clans.

Vomitus.

Inſeſſion.

Vinum abſynthytes.

it

it is also very profitable for them that they thirst not. Also decoction of the herbe it selfe, when it hath once boiled being commixed with wine, may commodiously be ministred after a bath. Also *Castoreum* continually drunke, doth destroy the disease vtterly: and it is better then all medicines. It is ministred to the sicke. ℥ j. in three *Cyathes* of *aqua mulsa*. And if the paine do not cease & rest, you must minister *diatrion piperion* or *theriaca*. If that the paine be vehemēt it is good to vse medicines that do meanely ease, make soluble, and mitigate, aswell put in beneath as also giuen to drinke. For you must eschue those things that do stupefact and astonie strongly, because they do somwhat ease and mitigate, but they make the disease longer by making the humours more grosse, and thickning of the passages of the bowels. If the cholicke be caused of windinesse, you must cast in clysters that do dissolue winde, as is this. ℞. sothernwood, origan, peniroiall, calamint, cammomill, ana. *M* j. rew, mints, wild mints, ana. *M* ß. seedes of annise, fennell, carawayes, commin, dill, louage, and *daucus*, ana. ℥ ij. seeth all together vnto the third part: then take of the licour of that decoction strained. ℔ j. *hierapicra*, *benedicta*, *laxatiua*. ana. ℥ ß. *Castoreum*. ℥ j. pouder of *diacuminum*. ℥ ij. oiles of rew and dill. ana. ℥ j. ß. common salt. ℥ j. ß. commixe them all together and make a clyster. Also there may be added to the aforesaid things the cōfection of bay beries: for there is nothing of more effect to dissolue and driue away windines. Also it is good to minister daily the quantitie of an hazell nut of the said decoction or electuary of laurell beries in the decoction of some cutting and extenuating medicine. Apply outwardly vpon the belly aloft, foments and irrigations of such things as doe disperse and scatter windinesse, as these be, besides the aforenamed things, *nigella aminilum*, parcely, bitter almondes, blacke pepper, wilde mintes, bay berries, wormewood, nettle seede, gladon, marioram, cinnamon and others: of these therefore you may make Cataplasmes, foments, and bagges. But that which farre excelleth all the rest (as Galen witnesseth) is a great cupping glasse fastened lightly with abundant flame to the whole belly aloft, which doeth maruellously as it were by enchauntment. Let the sicke beware of and eschue wine that is alayed, and drinking of cold water, and also from vsing of milke and other things that doe coole, and from meates and drinkes which engender windinesse. And let him rather vse to drinke wine that is vnmingled and pure, and let him vse a diet which doeth heate and cutte or deuide. If the cholicke be caused of inflammation of the bowels, you must open the vaine in the arme. But if difficultie and hardnesse of making water, doe rule and beare a sway, you must draw bloud from the vaines of the anckle. Also you must vse the aforesaid remedies, excepting sharpe things and vehement purgers. And you must rather vse clisters mitigating and easing paine, also cataplasmes and irrigations, and going downe into oile. Also fasten to them cupping glasses. Let the diet be thinne, almost the diet of feuers, vntill the inflammation be slaked. And if the cholicke be caused through sharpe and gnawing or fretting humours, it is good to poure in at the fundament those things that can wash out and purge those humours without any mordacitie and gnawing: as is broth of ptisan, or the decoction of fenugreeke, lineseed, cammomill, and *althea*, with fresh goose grease, or hens grease and oile of roses. This clister is

Castoreum.

Anodyna.

Cure of the cholicke caused of windinesse.

Clyster.

Compositio ex baccis lauri.

Note.

Diet.

Cure of cholick caused of inflammation.

Diet.

Cure of cholicke caused of sharp and gnawing humours.

Clyster.

ſpecially good. ℞. leaues of violets, both the tame endiues, leaues of *Albes*, cammomill. ana. *M.* j. ß. ſeedes of fenugreeke, flaxe. ana. ℥. ß. boile theſe in iuſt quantity of water, vntill the third part be conſumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained. ℥. xiij *caſia fiſtula*. ℥. j. *Hierapicra*. ℥. vj. oile of roſes. ℥. ij. oyle of dill. ℥. j. gooſe greaſe and hennes greaſe. ana. ℥. iij. yolkes of egges in number two, commixe them all, and make a cliſter. Moreouer you muſt not only purge the hurtfull and corrupt humors, but alſo you muſt temper and moderate them. Therefore he muſt vſe bathes of ſweete water, for they do mitigate and alſo prouoke ſleepe: for which purpoſe miniſter ſirupe of violets, and roſes and ſuch like, which are able to temperate and ſtoppe the violence of the gnawing humours. Alſo he muſt vſe ſoupping meates, as *ptiſans* and brothes of fiſhes of ſtony places. He muſt abſtaine from all hote and ſharpe things, whether they be meates or medicines, or cataplaſmes, or foments, or irrigations that be hot: as alſo he muſt abſtaine from drinking of wine, eſpecially from old wine. And to be ſhort, let his whole diet be cold and moyſt. If the paine be not a whit releaſed, but do rage more vehemently, then you muſt come to the vſing of ſtupefactiue things. For in this diſeaſe they doe not only pleaſure and profit by aſtonying of the ſenſe and feeling: but alſo becauſe they make the thin humors more thicke and groſſe, and do quench the intollerable heat. Among ſtupefactiue things *Philonium* is ſpeciall good, of the which you may miniſter for the moſt part one whole dram Alſo pilles of houndes tongue are maruellous good, if as is afore taught you do make ſix pilles of ℥. j. & miniſter one of them to be ſwallowed before they goe to bed. But there be very many things which doe helpe the cholicke with their whole vertue and ſubſtance: among the which white doung of a wolfe taken with water or thin white wine is not the worſt. That doung is better which hangeth on herbes or buſhes, then that which toucheth the ground. Alſo the ſaid doung of the wolfe eaſeth the cholicke being bound to the llions. Greene mintes as *Ætius* affirmeth, ſodden a while and drunke three dayes healeth cholickes.

Victus ratio.

Stupefacientia

Philonium.

Pilulæ de cynogloſſa.

Lib. 9. cap. 31.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Iliaca paſſio.

De Ileo.

THE *Iliaca paſſio*, is a diſeaſe cauſing moſt grieuous & deadly paine in the ſmall guts. The latins do call this diſeaſe, *volvulus* & *convolvulus*. The barbarous do cal it *Iliaca paſſio*. This diſeaſe is cauſed through continuall corruptiõ & crudity of meats, but ſpecially of fat meats, which, if they be without corruptiõ & being withholden, they engender obſtructions in the ſmal guts. Alſo it is engendred of certain ſtripes & blowes in certain places in which the ſmal guts do lie. Alſo through vehement cold reſtraining, & withholding of the excrements. Moreouer through abundant drinking of cold things, ſpecially if much be taken when they ſweate. Alſo it chanceth to them, whoſe bowels be fallen into the coddes together with the doung: and being violently thruſt backe from thence againe, and through that it is enflamed. Alſo it is cauſed through drinking of deadly medicines, & through hard doung being impact about the thin bowel. For the moſt part this diſeaſe is engẽdred ether through inflamma-

Cauſa.

inflammation, or through obstruction of the drie doung. This disease is common to children, but yet they escape it through helpe of naturall humiditie. It is not wont to chance verie often to old men: but if they chance to haue it, they almost be neuer rid of it. They that haue this disease haue most vehemēt paine, & some swelling of the thin and small guts sticketh out, that it seemeth wounden together like a string called *Chorda*, whereupon many do call this disease *Chordapson*: also there is ouermuch moistnesse of the stomach, loseneſſe, vaine and emptie belkings, and doing no ease, rumbling and noise of the bowels, perfect stopping and letting of the doung and of windinesse. If the euill do increase and waxe greater, he auoideth all vpward, and therefore he vomiteth vp fleume and choler, he hath coldnesse of the whole bodie, and paine. Also to many there chanceth difficulty & hardnesse of breathing. Moreouer to them that shall die there chanceth cold sweat, difficultie and hardnes of making water, yea the fundament is so bound & close, that no small instrument will enter in: and sometime doung is cast vp by vomiting. For the cure of this disease, you must cure children with irrigations, cataplasmes, clysters, suppositaries, and foments, as is declared in the chapter of the Collicke. But the cure of them that be of age must differ according to the diuersitie of causes. Therefore if *Iliaca passio* be caused of crudities and ill digestion, & through deuouring and eating of many and diuerse meates which yet remaine in the stomach: you must prouoke vomit with things afor said. But if there do remain no raw and vndigest meats in the stomach, you must go about by all meanes, to draw out beneath aswell windinesse as also the doung: & that must be done by clisters, suppositaries, and annointings with great diligence in ech of them. Therefore you must cast in this cliſter. ℞. mercurie, rew, leaues of *Althea*, centorie. ana. *M*. j. hyssop, calamint, wormewood. ana *M*. j. ß. root of *Althea*. ℥ j. root of wilde cucumber. ℥. j. ß. seedes of flaxe and fenugreeke. ana. ℥. iij. seedes of commin. ℥ ij. boile them in iust quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed, then take of the liquor of that decoction being strained ℥. xiiij. of *Benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. j. fresh butter, *mel rosarum* strained. ana. ℥. ß. oyles of rew, and dill. ana. ℥. j. ß. common salt. ℥. j. commixe them together and make a cliſter, and cast it in before meate: but if the euill be vehement, cast it in also after meate. And you must warne the patient, that he do hold it as long as he can. Also you must make suppositaries, as you do for the cholicke, putting to them seeds of rew, commin, and stalkes of coleworts. And you must make them the longer that they may pierce the deeper. Also you must annoint the fundament with iuice of *Ciclaminum*, or hony with *nitrum* or salt peter. The foments and cataplasmes, wherewith this euill is cured, be almost such as are spoken of in the chapter of the collicke. Also foments made of wooll wet in oile, wherein commin, dill, rewe, and cresses haue bene sodden, be verie good. Also emplaisters made of lineseed, fenugreeke, barly meale darnell meale, rew, commin, seeds of dill, and *apium*, are good. Also it is good to descend into a vessell filled with water and oile: but seeth in the water *Althea*, rewe and dill. After these, fasten on cupping glasses, first lightly to places somwhat farre off, & then also to the places that are grieued, making deepe scarification. Also it is good to minister purgations, specially if the doung be

Signa.

Curatio.

Cure if it come of crudities.

Cliſter.

Glandes.

Illutions.

Fomenta.

Cataplasma.

Concurbitula.

Purgatio.

drawn out first by such things as are before rehearsed. Iris maruellous good if they vomit by drinking dill sodden. After drinking, cast bread into scalding water, and minister peeces of it to eate by and by hote. They that haue the *Iliaca passio* engendred through taking of some venimous medicine, you must giue them much warme water, and let them drinke it, and constraine them to vomit. After that you must giue them hot oile in drinke, or fat broth, that they may vomit againe. After within a fewe dayes giue him *theriaca* dissolued in wine, and let him eate meates of good iuyce. And if the obstruction do continue still, emptie the belly with milke, with a litle scammonie, or *Aloes*, or some otherpurging medicine. If the *Iliaca passio* be engendred through inflammation, you must beginne with bloudletting: then you must fasten cupping glasses about the inflamed parts scarifying them. Also cast in clisters made of the decoction of mallowes, fenugreeke, lineseed, with oile & butter. Also apply outwardly those, things that are good against inflammations, and do ease paine, you must prescribe vnto them a most thinne diet. If the *Iliaca passio* be caused through falling of the bowels into the coddes, you must by and by labour (the patient lying vpright) to thrust backe againe the bowelles that are fallen downe to the share, and keepe it vp easily without violence or pressing of it together, with bandes and trusses applyed, conuenient for it.

Cure of Iliaca passio caused of poison.

Cure if it be of inflammation.

Cure if it be of the falling of the bowels into the coddes.

CHAP. XIX.

Of wormes.

De Lvmbricis.

THere be three kinds of worms. The first be round and long, named *Teretes*. The second be broad, called therfore *Lati*. The third, those be called *ascarides*. The first kind of wormes called *teretes*: according to their thickneſſe they be round and a hand breadth in length, and sometime longer, and they be commoner then other. They be often in the slender and small guts, & they go into the stomacke, and therefore they are voided often by the mouth, and to some also they come out at the nosethrils. And this kind of wormes is peculiar to infants, and children, and boies, and girles. The second kind of wormes called *Lati*, be broad and long like a gard or band. They be of incredible length as *Plinie* witnesseth. lib. 2. cap 33. Sometime they are seene three hundreth foote long, and sometime more. This kind of worme (as *Paulus* and *Ætius* witnesse) is nothing else but a permutation and changing of the thinne filmes going about the small guttes within, into a certaine liuing bodie, that will moue and stirre. The third kind of worms called *Ascarides*, be thinne and short like small wormes. They be found most commonly in the right gut, and in the end of the fundament. All the aforesayd kindes be engendred and caused of crude, raw, grosse, & flegmaticke matter, and through inconuenient rottennesse, such as is gathered specially in children, and in other great eaters. They that haue round wormes do feele incredible gnawing of the bowels, and of the stomach, thinne and small coughs, and oftentimes prouoking and drie. In many there followeth yelking and sleepe with mouing of the stomacke: and also they do arise vp vnreasonably. Many do awake and leape vp with noise: and crying out, and fall asleepe againe: but some do both put forth their tongue, and shut their

Teretes.

Lati.

Ascarides.

Cause.

Signes of round wormes, teretes.

their eies and be quiet, and keepe silence, and do fret & fume with them which raise them, because they cannot watch they be so weake. Some haue their eies sprinkled with bloud, and a pulse that is vnequall, obscure, fayling and running backe. Also to many there chanceth losse of appetite, Children, while they do sleepe chew their tongue, and also fashioning of their mouth as though they sucked or receiued meate. Also to some there chanceth gnashing of the teeth. But these things are done by litle and litle and betweene whiles. To some they runne forth into the stomach, and do cause gnawing and disposition to vomit, and the patients refuse meat: and if they be compelled to eat, they scarce can swallow that which they take, or they vomit it vp againe. In many the bellie doth throw out corrupt meats, and is puffed vp like as it were a timpany. The rest of the bodie it doth consume and make leane without reason, neither fasting going before, nor vnmeasurable purging being made. Also it chaunceth sometime the face to be made verie redde, specially about the balles of the cheekes: but this colour turneth againe into swartnesse. Some do speake foolish things in their sleepe like franticke persons. Some change the place that they lie downe in, and tumble and cast themselues from place to place: they increase feuers in them without order with vehement coldnes of the extreme partes, hauing fits the third or fourth day without order. But also these signes & tokens altogether which we haue now rehearsed, must not euery one of thē be looked for in euerie body: but the chiefest of them & somtime many. Broad wormes do bring continuall gnawing of the stomach, & an impotent & incorrigible appetite to meat. For the worme that is in the guttes, deuoureth the meat that is eaten, so that he hath need of more straight way, & except he eat straightway, the bowels are gnawn: they that are thus diseased there foloweth slendernes & weaknes of the bodie with inequality. The most sure & infallible signe is, if certen things like cucumber seeds be auoided out with the egestion of excrements. *Ascarides* do raise a vehement itch in the fundament, & do prouoke the patient to go to the stoole continually. They that be troubled with this disease for the most part be the better after egestion & easing themselues. Let their diet be hot & dry, specially if the patient lack a feuer, & let them vse meates of good iuice, and which wilbe soone dispersed throughout the whole body: & such as do not increase the cause that engendreth worms. Therfore all meates are to be eschued, which can ingender flegmaticke humors. Moreouer they that are troubled with wormes, must be nourished and fed liberally, and may not suffer hunger: because the wormes except they haue meate to feed on, they then by & by gnaw the hard parts of the body: but giue them meat at that time, specially when they are not altogether emptie. Let them drinke no strong drinke. For the cure, it is not to be spared & somtime if there be a feuer with it, you must haue respect to that, & to the wormes also: & sometime you need to be carefull but a litle for the feuer, and you must be diligent notwithstanding to get the wormes out of the bodie. Therefore when many haue not spied and known this, it commeth to passe for lack of heed taken to auoid the worms, that they be gnawn and eaten of them, and so being pulled & gnawne, they die. The cure aswell of the round wormes as of the flat wormes consisteth in this point, that you may driue them out of the bodie being first killed.

Signes of broad wormes. Lati.

Signes of Ascarides.

Curatio.

They are killed ſpecially with bitter medicines, among which (if a feuer be not preſent) theſe ſimples are good: wormewood, *Seryphium*, which is a kinde of wormewood growing in the ſea, ſothernwood, calamint, horehound, dittaine, hyſope, rew, leaues of perſica, coriander ſeeds, harts-horne, lupines, mintes, peniroiall, origan, centorie, ferne, gentian, *ariſtolochia rotunda*, garlike, ſeed of colewortes, and roote of *Enula campana*. To theſe, if a feuer be preſent, you muſt adioine the ſeeds of both the endiues, and alſo the iuice of their herbes.

Simples to kill wormes.

Aloes.

Among all other, the moſt commendable remedie is aloës. Therefore if infants will hardly take aloës, becauſe it is ſo bitter, you muſt keep them vpright with bands, and their mouth being opened and ſeparated, you muſt caſt it in againſt their willes, with a certaine pipe ſtrengthened with a long ſplent. Of theſe aforſaid ſimples now rehearſed, there may be made diuerſe compounds, as decoctions, powders, cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, & ointments. Among other things this powder is onely good. ℞. of worme-ſeed. ℥.ij. of centory, wormewood, harts-horne burnt. ana. ℥.j. calamint, peniroial, origan. ana. ℥.ß. ſothernwood, mintes, lupines, leaues of *ariſtolochia rotunda*. ana. ℈.j. aloës. ℈.ij. commix them altogether, and make a powder, of the which miniſter the weight of one drachme, or halfe a drachme, according to the age and ſtate of the bodie of the ſicke, in milke or hony, or ſirupe of liquorice: for thoſe things which do kill the wormes, muſt be miniſtred with ſweet liquors, that thereby the worms may taſt of the medicine the ſooner, being allured by the ſweetneſſe of it that is miniſtred with it. You muſt annoint the nauell outwardly with bulles gall or with this ointment. ℞. oiles of bitter almonds, and of wormewood. ana. ℥.j. bulles gall. ℥.ß. centory, wormwood, lupines. ana. ℈.ij. leaues of perſica, harts-horne burnt, aloës, ſothernwood. ana. ℈.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. Or apply all ouer the ſtomach this cerate. ℞. aloës, wormwood, meale of lupines. ana. ℥ ij. *nigella*, mints, origan, peniroiall, horehound. ana. ℥.j. centory, calamint. ana. ℥.ß. oiles of wormewood, and bitter almonds. ana. ℥ ij. *oleum coſtinum*. ℥.j. bulles gall. ℥ ß. with waxe and roſen, as much as ſhall ſuffice, make a cerate. By examples of theſe you may eaſily make emplaiſters and cataplaſmes, ſo that I need not to rehearſe here any example of ech of them. Moreouer, it is good to caſt in beneath abundaunce of *mulſa*, that thereby the wormes being allured by the ſweetneſſe of the hony, may creepe downeward. But when the wormes are killed with the aforeſayd medicines, you muſt driue them out without delay: for there proceedeth a vicious exhalation from them, which both deſtroieth appetite and hurteth digeſtion, and being lifted vpward, it cauſeth ſwemmings, and other euils. The wormes being killed are driuen out for the moſt part by ſuppoſitaries and purgations, but ſpecially by *hierapicra* and *pillulæ peſtilentiales*, or *rufi*, which haue a maruellous efficacy in killing and bringing out of wormes. But thoſe that are troubled with wormes and with fluxe of the wombe alſo: thoſe you muſt cure by thickning of the flux, and by changing the digeſtion into a better ſtate, aſwell with meats, as alſo with cataplaſmes: for the more that the flux preuaileth, ſo much the more the engendring of wormes is encreaſed: and againe the fluxe ceaſing, the wormes do reſt and pauſe. Therfore you muſt diligently labour to ſtop & reſtraine the wombe, & to adde ſtedfaſtnes and ſtrength to it. Therfore miniſter

Compoſita.

Puluis.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Pillulæ.

Rufi.

Cure if fluxe of the wombe be ioyned with wormes.

miniſter iuice of plantaine, or elſe let him take dried plantaine: for both haue like efficacie as well againſt the fluxe, as alſo againſt wormes. Alſo make cataplaſmes, cerates and ointments of raw barley meale, pomgranate rinds, *hypociſchidos*, & ſuch like reſtrictiue things: but adde vnto them thoſe things which be good to kill wormes. Reſtrictiue medicines are good to be applied outwardly for this cauſe, becauſe they do corroborate and ſtrengthen againe the ſtomacke, being hurt through often vſing of bitter medicines. Alſo it is lawfull in this caſe to miniſter earth worms being dried, and beaten to powder with *hydromel*. The wormes called *Aſcarides*, being in children that be infants, they muſt be brought out with ſuppoſitaries made of honie and ſalt. In them that be elder, they muſt be brought out with cliſters, made either with ſharp brine, or with decoction of wormwood, centorie, calamint, lupines, peniroyall, and other aboue rehearſed, putting to oyles. After miniſtration of cliſters, annoint the ſtraight gut, or fundament with theſe ſimples, (that is) *Acatia*, *hypociſchidos*, iuice of *Sumach*, or ſome other reſtrictiue medicine. For the fleſh being conſtrained by reſtrictiue things, it looſeth the abilitie that ingendreth wormes, and it excludeth and ſhutteth out the *aſcarides*. But this that followeth is good both for children, and for thoſe that be of greater age, and is moſt effectuous. Take old fleſh that is powdred, cut of the fat, and faſhion it long and round, like a ſuppoſitarie fit for the fundament, and thruſt it into the tuell, applying a ligament or band, and let it alone within as long as they can ſuffer it, then looſen it, and draw it out together with the wormes that ſticke on it. After that you ſhall powre in the things aforeſaid, and alſo annoint it as is aforeſaid.

Cure of wormes called Aſcarides.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hemmorhoides.

De Hemmorhoidibvs.

THe Hemmorhoides is an vnfolding and ſpreading abrode of the veines in the tuell. Of theſe ſome be blind, which do ſwell, and do ſend out none, or verie little blood: ſome be open, which be ſet wide open abroad certaine times, and do ſend forth blood. The hemmorhoides are cauſed through dreggie and melancholie blood, when there is abundance thereof, which the liuer ſenderh to thoſe veines. The ſignes whereby this euill is knowne, need not to be required. For the blind hemmorhoids may be ſeene with eyes, & they cauſe vehement paine, ſpecially in auoiding the doung. But the open hemmorhoids do bleed, therefore the patient cannot be ignorant what they be. Therefore when blind hemmorhoids appeare, and do raiſe great tormenting in the fundament, if the bodie be full of humours, cut the veine of the hamme or of the anckle bones. Alſo you muſt make the belly ſoluble abundantly, leſt the drie doung, while it is ſent forth, do engender paine. Alſo you muſt apply where vehement paine is, thoſe things that can and will mitigate. Among which are crummes of bread ſteeped in milke, and ſodden with yolkes of egges, and applied like a plaiſter. Alſo it profiteth to ſit in a bath made of the decoction of mallowes, violet leaues, melilot, fenugrecke, cammomill, leaues of *althæa*, lineſeed, floures of roſe campion, and ſuch like. And if the patient cannot vſe that, wet wooll or a ſponge in the ſaid decoction, and apply it to the griefe. And

Cæcæ.
Apertæ.
Cauſæ.
Signa.
Curatio cæcarum.

if these aforesaid things do no good, you must get blood out of them. Therefore put into the tuell wooll annointed with iuyce of *cyclaminum*, or with onions, or with oxe gall. The same effect also hath the iuyce of centorie, doues doung, staues acre, figge leaues, if they be rubbed with it, and also the pulpe of *colocynthidis* steeped in oile of bitter almonds. Among many other, this emplaister is verie good. ℞. of doues dung. ℥. ß. seed of staues acre, lupines. ana. ℥.j. ß. bitter almonds. ℥.j. pulpe of *coloquintida*. ℥.ß. iuices of *cyclaminum*, & onions. ana. ℥.j. commixe them all together, and make it like a plaister, putting to it if need be, oyle of bitter almonds. But to take away the paine presently, vse this following. ℞. elder leaues. M.j. boile them in water, vntill they be verie tender, then take a peece of scarlet, as much as a mans hand or greater, and wet it in the decoction, and lay it to the place as warme as may be suffered, & when it is cold lay it to againe, being wet in the same decoction as before. Do thus fiue or sixe times together, then lay the herbes vpon the same skarlet, lay the herbes verie hote also, this doth mollifie the hemmorhoides, and seaseth the paines very quickly, which my selfe haue often proued. Also you may put long suppositaries in the fundament, made of the roote of *cyclaminum*. Also blood-suckers, or horse leaches, being included in a reed, so that they can put forth but onely their head, are wont to be put to the hemmorhoides to open them, and if you cannot pull them away easily, strew ashes or salt vpon their heads, and you shall make them to fall off alone. But if the hemmorhoides be open, and do auoyd out blood meanely at certaine times, they may not be stopped, for the bursting out of such blood, doth cause men that haue this disease, to be free from many other diseases. Which thing *Hippocrates* witnesseth, where he saith in *Epidemijs* these words; They which haue the hemmorhoids, neither be vexed with paine of the sides, nor inflammation of the loungs, nor a feeding vlcer, nor with felons, or cattes haire, nor with *terminthis*, nor with leprie, nor with morphew. But if the hemmorhoides do throw out blood immoderately, or longer then they should do, so that the patient do consume and wast away with this euil, and their strength decayed and throwne downe, they must be stopped by and by: but otherwise there is perill in stopping them: but in this case it is to doubt, lest the dropsie should follow, the liuer being cooled through immoderate vacuation and purging. Therefore let those that be so emptied and purged out of measure, vse meates that haue but litle blood, and that do ingender but litle superfluities or excrements, and which also do drie and restraine, as is *Alica* and rice. Of pot-herbes, endiue, succorie, purslaine, and such like. Commix his meate with *sumach*, and iuice of vnripe grapes. If his strength be much weakened, you must nourish and feed the sicke with meate thus: you must straine out the iuyce that is in the meate, and commixe with it iuice of quinces, and let him soupe that vp: he must drinke wine that is restrictiue. For the cure, if there be abundance of humors in the body, it profiteth to cut the inner veine of the right hand in the arme: but if there be not, you must studie to auert and turne away the blood by fastning of cupping glasses to the sides, & to the liuer. For the which purpose it is good to bind the hands and the feete with bands, and to vse sharp and hard frictions and rubbings. Moreouer you must minister within the bodie those things which do restraine, as are si-

To open the hemmorhoids.

Emplastrum.

Glandes.

Curatio apertarum.

6. Epid. par. 3. Aph. 19.

Diet.

Curatio.

rupes

rupes of roſes, of mirtles, of quinces, red corall, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of amber, of *ſpodium*, of *terra lemnia*, and other which be rehearſed in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. Alſo apply thoſe things outwardly, which can ſtop bloud that floweth. Among which as *Aetius* witneſſeth. lib. 14. cap. 5. is aloës laied on with poſca. The ſame effect alſo hath ſcales of iron or burnt lead. This medicine is notable good which is deſcribed of *Galen lib. 5. therap. method.* R. of frankenſence one part, of aloës one part & a halfe, commixe them with the white of an egge, vntill all come to the thickneſſe of hony and lay it vpon the ſoft haires of an hare, and apply it to the place that bleedeth, being bound outwardly with bands of fine linnen. Alſo ointments, baths, inciſſions, foments, and other ſuch like medicines, made of things hauing a reſtrictiue vertue do profite, whereof you ſhall finde many examples before in the chapters of *Diarrhea, Lienteria, Dyſenteria & Tenaſmus.* And if you ſhall vſe litle bags, it is beſt before you apply them, to boile them in wine that is red and reſtrictiue, or at the leaſt to ſprinkle them with it. Examples of other medicines ſeeke before.

Medicamentũ Galeni.

Sacculi.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the falling out of the tuell.

De Procidentia Ani.

IT chanceth ſometime, that reſolution or weakneſſe of the outerthwart muſcles which do plucke the fundament vpward, doth cauſe the tuell to fall out. Wherefore ſeing it cannot be drawne backward againe, nor pulled vpward of the aforeſaid muſcles, it hath need of hands or medicines to put it vp againe. When the tuell is fallen out, you muſt diligently conſider whether it be free from inflammation or no, for if it be not inflamed at all, it muſt by and by be thruſt and put to his former place by compulſion: and becauſe it muſt not fall out againe, after that it is thruſt in, and put vp into his owne place, you muſt apply reſtrictiue medicines outward to it. Therefore firſt you muſt annoint it about with oile of roſes being warmed, or ſcoure the tuel with reſtrictiue wine, and then being put vp againe into his place, you muſt bind him vp. And that you muſt do by and by, aſſoone as the ſicke hath bene at the ſtoole, leſt that when neceſſitie conſtraineth them to go to the ſtoole againe, the tuell ſhould fall out againe. You muſt apply a liniment of *acatia* and *hypociſchidos* with wine. Alſo you muſt ſeeth in water til it be red, galles, *balauſtia*, ſhelles of maſt, pomegranate rindes, daiſies, ſumach, ſhales of quinces and ſuch like, and afterward of that decoction make inceſſions and waſhing. But after that the tuell is waſhed with wine or with ſome reſtrictiue decoction, then it is lawfull to ſtrew vpon it and to apply to it drie medicines. For which purpoſe you muſt apply bole armoniak, frankenſence, *ſanguis draconis*, galles, *acatia*, mirrhe, *hypociſchidos*, harts horn, and ſuch other reſtrictiue medicins, as we haue rehearſed often before. But if the tuell through inflammation be ſo ſwollen, that it cannot be thruſt vp againe: if the bodie be full of humours, you muſt firſt cut a veine, and prouoke vomit. And alſo you muſt apply to the tuell by and by in the beginning, thoſe things that do reſtrain & ſtop or appeaſe: but if there be no abũdance of humors in the bodie, let the ſick vſe inceſſions of the decoction of cammomil, mallowes, *althea*, lineſeed, fenugreek, and ſuch like, or let him deſcend into hot

Cauſa.

Curatio.

water, and tarrie in it for a time. Alſo it is lawfull to apply a ſponge or woll wet in the decoction. Moreouer you muſt annoint the tuell with oiles of cammomill, and dill, vntill it may be put vp: for they becauſe of their diſſoluing vertue, do readily take away the ſwelling, and do alſo cauſe that it may be put vp againe, without anie difficultie or paine. But after it is put vp againe, then you muſt vſe the aforeſaid reſtrictiue medicines, that it fall not out againe.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the clefts of the fundament.

DE RIMIS, ANI.

CLefts of the fundamẽt, be chaps which are made in the muſcle that ſhutteth the fundament, or in the circle round about the fundament: they be like the chaps which are made through a North wind on the lips. They are cauſed through flowing of ſharpe humors, or through inflãmation, or through extention of the ſwelling of the tuell. This euill is apparant to the eyes, and therefore we need to ſhew no ſignes to declare it by. For the cure, if the clefts of the fundament be ingendred of ſharp humors, then they firſt of all muſt be purged and tempered. But if it be cauſed through ſwelling of the fundament cauſed of inflammation, you muſt likewiſe vſe at the beginning purging medicines. Alſo the bellie all the time of the cure muſt be kept ſoluble with meates that do moiſten, and fat meates, leſt drie doung ſhould hinder, and tarie the conglutination. Of ſuch qualities be mallowes, ſpinach, milke of ſweete Almonds, ſoft egges, fat broth, and ſuch other like. But to the chaps themſelues you muſt vſe this ointment. ℞ of the oiles of roſes and mirtles, ana. ℥. j. frankenſence, maſticke, litarge, *ſanguis draconis*, ana. ℈. j. *aloes*, burnt lead, ceruſe, *balauſtiæ*, bolearmoniacke, ana. ℈. ß. white waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Or thus. ℞. oile of roſes. ℥. j. ß. galles, mirrhe, *terra lemnia*, ana. ℈. j. roote of comferie, roch alume, burnt lead, ana. ℈. ß. the yolk of an egge being roſted, waxe as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. With theſe ointments you muſt annoint the cleftes thriſe on a day, but waſh them firſt with decoction of roſes, galles & *ſidiorum*. And if burning and inflammation do vex the diſeaſed place, you muſt annoint it with *vnguentum album camphoratum*.

Cauſæ.

Signa.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Aliud.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the weakeneſſe of the liuer.

DE IMBECILLITATE IECINORIS.

WEakeneſſe of the liuer is cauſed of diſtempure, either hot, cold, moiſt, or drie. Hot diſtempure doth roſt, and as it were burne vp as well the humours which were before in the liuer, as alſo thoſe humours which are caried to the liuer by the veines *meſenterij*. But cold diſtempure doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the liuer, groſſe & tough, and hard to be moued, and the humours that be caried to the liuer, it leaueth them halfe digeſted. Drie diſtempure doth make the humours drier & thicker. Moiſt diſtempure doth make the humours thin & more watery. Therfore they which haue weake faculties and ſtrength of the liuer, they are called *hepatici*, as Galen ſaith. Hot diſtempure vexing the liuer, there are *colliquations*, firſt

Cauſæ.

Sig-

first of the humours, and after that of the liuer it selfe: also choler that is stinking and grosse is auoided by the belly, and is abundantly coloured; also a feuer vexeth him, he abhorreth meate and casteth vp choler. Moreouer thirst doth trouble them, their vrine is ruffe, & the pulse is swift. When there is cold distempure, they make not many excretions, nor much in quantitie, the euill endureth long, and the belly floweth certaine daies abundantly. But the egestions be lesse stincking then those which be melted through heate, neither haue they colour also nor thickneſſe, but are like putrifact bloud which is curded. And if you do diligently marke it, it is neither curded bloud, nor blacke bloud, but as it were certaine slime and dregs of grosse blould comming nigh to melancholy. And also diuers and many colours of the excrements do signifie cold distemper. Also in it there appeareth a faint feuer. The face doth not fall, and he hath greater appetite of meates. To either of these distempures, if there come drineſſe, the excrements will be drier and lesse, and the sicke will be more thirstie. But if moistneſſe come to either of them, the egestions will be more liquide and more abundant, and they shall be lesse troubled with thirst. For the cure, the chiefe point is to amend the griefe by contraries. Therefore you must coole a hot distempure, & heat a cold distempure. Likewise you must moisten a drie distempure, & dry a moisture. But in the cure, this onely must also be considered, that in all medicines for the liuer, that as well those which be taken by the mouth inward, as also those that be applyed to it outwardly, commixe some restrictiue things with them, whereby the strength and stabilitie of the liuer may be conserued and kept. Therefore in a hot distempure, for his diet, let him vse broth of Ptisan, and other meates that doe meanely coole, as lettuse, endiue, succorie, sowthistle, and water and bread mixed together, or bread dipped in water. Also chickens, partrich, birdes of mountaines, and veale, these being sodden in veruine or limons. Of fruits let the sicke eate raisons, limons, and sweete almonds. He must eschew wine altogether, except some other cause let it, as weakenes of the stomacke, for then you must minister thinne and watrie wine. Let them drinke for wine, iuice of pomegranates, and *syrupus acetosus simplex*. Also *oxysaccharum*, with decoction of barley or endiue. Also they must eschew all meates and drinkes dressed with hony, and that be verie hot, and haue vertue to cut and deuide. For the cure minister vnto him by the mouth, conserue of roses *diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatrion santalon*, and other such like antidotes. Also these lozenges profit. ℞. the pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis*, and of *diatrion santalon*. ana ℥. j. ß. seedes of both the tame endiues, red roses. ana. ℈. ij. raisons. ℥. j. white sanders, withwind, floures of squinant. ana ℈. j. sugar. ℥. vj. dissolue it in the stilled waters of withwind, & endiue that hath the brode leaues, and make lozenges. And also the antidote *Philonium*, only once ministred, sometime hath maruellously healed all hot distempure of the liuer. Apply outwardly foments made of roses, cammomill and quinces, or seeth wormewood or dates in the aforesad oiles of roses, cammomill and quinces, & then wet woollor a sponge in them, and lay that right against the liuer. Also you may vse this ointment. ℞. oiles of roses, of quinces, and of water lillies. ana ℥. j. white sanders and red, red roses. ana. ℈. j. scraping of iuory ℈ j ß. seeds of both the tame endiues. ana. ℈ j, vineger. ℥. j. ß. purslain

Curatio.

Note.

Diet in a hot distempure.

Cure of a hot distempure.

Orbiculi.

Vnguentum.

Epithema.

seed.gra.ij.waxe as much as is sufficient and make an ointment. Also Epithemes in this disease are wont to profite not a little: which may be made thus, or after this sort. ℞. the distilled waters of sowen Endiue with the broad leaues,of lettuce,of sorrel,of roses,of water lillies.ana ℥ iij iuice of sengreene, ℥.j. vineger. ℥.j. red roses, red sanders, shauing of iuorie. ana. ℥. j. pouders of *Diarrhodon abbatis,diatrion santalon.*ana.℥.ß. seed of purslaine.ʒ. ß. Commixe them all,and make an Epitheme.You must apply Epithemes in sommer cold, and in winter warme.When there is cold distempure of the liuer,you must vse medicines that doe heat, and adde strength and stabilitie to the liuer. In his diet he must vse meats easie of digestion, and heating. For potherbes let him take sauorie,hysope,fennell,parsley, sothernwood,sage,and such like. And let his meates be dressed with Aromaticke things, as cinnamon,cloues,and such others. He must drinke wine that is thinne, yellow, and odoriferous. He must eschew eating of fish, and cold frutes,and idlenesse,and in conclusion what so euer doth make cold. Within the bodie he must take this decoction. ℞. roots of *Apium*,of fennell,and of parsley. ana.℥ j.agrimonie,hysope,mintes,wormewood,succorie, withwind,origan,calamint, *Asarum*,ana.*M*.j.seedes of annise, fennell,*daucus*,commin, carawayes. ana.℥. ij. squinant. ℥ j. ß. masticke. ℥.j. floures of cammomill,redde roses.ana.*M*.j. cinnamon choosen ℥.j.ß. seeth all these in a pound and halfe of wine,and one pound of running water vnto the third part, then straine it,& put to the liquour of sirupe of agrimonie.℥. iij.sirupe of wormewood. ℥. j. Commixe all together and make a potion: of the which let him drinke in the morning and after dinner.℥.iij.ß.at a time,for the same purpose you may minister hot antidotes, as *diacinnamomum*, *dianisum*, conserue of sage, galingale condite, rootes of pimpernell couered with suger, and such like. You must annoint him outwardly with hot oiles,as be oiles of Narde, Cammomill, wormewood, and such like. Also it is very good to vse this ointment. ℞. of the oiles of wormewood, and narde. ana. ℥.j.ß. iuice of Agrimonie. ℥. ij. Cinnamon, Cloues, wood of *Aloes.* ana. ʒ. ij. spicknard, squinant and masticke. ana. ʒ. j. waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. You may also apply this Cerate. ℞. of the meale of fenugreeke, and of lupines ana. ℥. ij. roote of *Ireos*,and *Asarum*.ana.℥ j.of agrimonie,wormewood, melilote,and squinant. ana.℥.ß.gallia moschata ʒ. j.seede of Annise and fennell.ana ʒ.ß. masticke. ʒ.ij. mirrhe and frankensence. ana. ʒ. j. oiles of masticke, narde,roses, and dill.ana.℥.j.waxe and rosen,as much as is sufficient, and make a Cerate to apply to the liuer. Also the vsing of this Epitheme is good. ℞.seedes of annise, fennell,ammeos. ana.℥.j ß. Cinnamon, cloues,squinant.ana. ℥.j. seeth all in a pound and halfe of malmesey,till halfe be consumed,then straine it and commixe with the liquour of that decoction, waters of wormewood and agrimonie.ana.℥.ij pouders of *diacinnamomum*,and *diagalanges*. ana.℥. j.withwind,ʒ. ij. vineger, ℥ iij, commixe all together and make an Epitheme. In a moist distempure of the liuer, let him vse a diet that doth drie,as flesh of birdes rosted, thinne wine; those things that doe prouoke sweat,as drie bathes,or hot houses,and also bathes comming of their own accord: generally he must eate and drinke but little. He must eschew all kind of fishes, and fruites that haue powre to moisten. You must minister within the

Cure of cold distempure.

Decoctum.

Vnguentum.

Ceratum.

Epithema.

Cure of a moist distempure.

the bodie, ſirupe of wormewood, *dialaccha* and *diacurcuma*. You muſt apply outwardly thoſe things which do drie without any great heat: of the which we will ſpeake afterward in the chapter of the dropſie *anaſarca*. Drie diſtempure of the liuer muſt be cured like the other by his contraries. Therefore that we may comprehend the matter in few words: it is good for him to vſe a diet that doth moiſten, and bathes of ſweete water, and other things which doe moyſten, whereof we will ſpeake aboundantly in their places. But this muſt not be forgotten, which we alſo admoniſhed you of before, to commixe alway with your moiſtning things, thoſe things which adde ſtrength to the liuer. But among thoſe things which ſeeme to be good, by the propertie of their whole ſubſtance, the beſt is wolues liuer, if it be diligently dried and beaten, and ℥. j. thereof miniſtred with ſweete wine alayed with water. For this by often proofe is knowne to be good againſt all diſtempures of the liuer. For as we ſaid, by the properties of his whole ſubſtance, he hath his efficacie, and not by heating or cooling.

Cure of a drie diſtempure.

Lupinũ Iecur.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of obſtructions of the liuer.

De Obstrvctione Iecinoris.

OBſtructions of the liuer are cauſed of vapours, windineſſe, and groſſe and hard to digeſt. But ſometime it is cauſed of groſſe and viſcous humors in the ends of the vaines, ſpringing from the flat part of the liuer, by the which vaines nouriſhment is ſent to the liuer from the ſtomacke and the bowels. If abundance of groſſe and vaporous windineſſe be heaped vp together, which cannot find free paſſage out, and ſo doth ingender obſtruction, there ariſeth then not only griefe & heauineſſe about the right ſide, but alſo feeling & perceiuing of diſtenſion and ſtretching out. If obſtruction be engendred through groſſe and viſcous humors, there followeth heauineſſe with feeling of paine, ſometime eaſie, and ſometime vehement: alſo ſometime without a feuer, and ſometime with a feuer. For groſſe and viſcous humours, being many, do cauſe obſtruction and ſtopping more then other, & ſpecially when the patient doth vſe vehement mouing after meat. And if they be ſharpe and much in quantitie, which be taken in meates, the paine of the obſtruction is made more vehement: when the bodie is ſtopped, they ſuffer both ſtretching out, and alſo pricking. You muſt giue vnto them which haue this diſeaſe hot meates, and that haue vertue to take away obſtruction and ſtopping, as be leekes with *oximel*, *ſperage*, fennell, parſley, capers, and other like things, either ſodden in pottage & meats, or taken with ſome heating ſauce which taketh away obſtructions. You muſt eſchue all meats & nouriſhments engendring groſſe iuice. Alſo refraine bathes and exerciſes after meats. He muſt vſe for drinke, wine that is thin & old. Beſides his diet it is requiſite for him to vſe very quickly medicines that do attenuate & take away obſtructions: for obſtructions waxing old do not only ingẽder putrifactiõ in the liuer, but alſo in all the whole body, & kindleth a feuer. Among ſimple medicins theſe that follow do take away obſtructions notably & without griefe (that is) wolues liuer, fumitorie, agrimony, cammomill, galingale, dragons roote, *aſarum*, anniſe, *apium*, wormewood, *caſia*, *ireos*,

Cauſe.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Simples taking away obſtructions of the liuer.

licorice, *rhapontieum*, lupines, capares, *anini*, with wind parſley, *piſtacium* bitter almonds, ſpikenard, ſtichados, gentian, roote of plantaine, alſo the ſeede and leaues dried, iuice of *Anagallis* the female, ſuccorie, *alkakengi*, both the endiues, ſperage & bruſcus. Of theſe alſo you may make diuerſe compound medicines, and ſpecially decoctions, putting to it *Oximel ſimplex*, *ſcilliticum*, *ſyrupus*, *acetoſus compoſitus*. Syrupes of wormewood, of hyſope, of calamint, of horehound, and ſuch other like. For the ſame purpoſe it is lawfull to miniſter trochiskes of Agrimonie, of wormewood, of rubarbe and ſuch like. Alſo theſe Antidotes, *diaſaccha*, *diacurcuma* are good and ſuch other like. Among other ſimples before reherſed *piſtacium* is notable good to take away obſtructions. Therefore it will not onely be profitable but alſo pleaſant, if you ſteepe *piſtacia* tenne or twelue houres by night in malmeſey, & miniſter them in the morning, the digeſtions being ended. You muſt apply outwardly, Epithemes, ointments, emplaiſters, and cerates, which be declared in the former chapter, of the cure of cold diſtempure of the liuer. And theſe aforeſaid medicines do ſuffiſe, if the euill be not yet inueterate and growne old: for when the euill is inueterate, you muſt vſe both bloud letting and purgations, if nothing do forbid it. You muſt purge him with pilles of Rubarbe and of agaricke, and with other antidotes, which do purge groſſe and thin humours by the belly. You muſt purge them ſpecially by the belly, whē the hollow part of the liuer is vexed. But you muſt purge by vrine, when the round embоſſed part of the liuer is vexed. The body being purged by bloud letting and purgations, then you muſt miniſter theſe medicines, which are before reherſed. And ſpecially this Electuarie. ℞. of the roote of ireos, *chamæpiteos*, of ſeeds of anniſe and *apium*. ana. ℥.ij of *aſarum*. ℥. ij. ß. of cinnamon, ginger, carawayes, cammomill. ana. ℥.j. of *ſtechados*, gentian, and horehound. ana. ℥.ij. with *Oxymell ſcillitieum* as much as is ſufficient, make an electuarie. This doth maruellouſly take away obſtructions, not ſo much thoſe that be in the hollow part of the liuer, as thoſe that ſticke in the out ſide, of the liuer. For it purgeth out vehemently by vrine.

Antidotum liquidum.

CHAP. XXV.

Of inflammation of the liuer.

De Inflammatione Iecinoris.

Cauſa. THere is inflammation ingendered in the liuer as well as in other mēbers, and through the ſame cauſes that they be ingendred of. If the liuer be vexed with inflammation, there is felt paine and heauineſſe all ouer the right ſide comming vp to the necke, and downe to the baſtard ribbes. Alſo there is

Signa. ſwelling of the right ſide, ſpecially, if the outward part of the liuer be inflamed. He hath a ſharp feuer, a ſmall and drie cough, an inſatiable thirſt, abhorring of meats, hardneſſe and difficultie of breathing, the colour of the tongue firſt redde and afterward blacke. Vomits as well of pure choller as alſo like yolkes of egges, and afterward alſo ruſtie, the belly is coſtiue. Alſo the colour of the bodie is changed, like as in the yellow iaundiſe, alſo he hath the hicket. In the time of their fit they are taken with a certaine rauing, & do void forth ſharpe vrine. The inflammation that chaunceth through cauſes in the crooked and hollow parts of the liuer, do cauſe abhorring of meate, diſpoſition to vomit

vomits

vomits of choller, & vnquenchable thirſt. The inflammation, that ingendreth in the outward and round parts of the liuer, cauſeth the patient to haue greater paine in drawing of breath then the other, and do raiſe a greater cough, and it doth ſtretch out paine vnto the right part of the neck, ſo that it ſeemeth to plucke it off. Alſo it chaunceth ſometime, that the muſcles leaning vppon the liuer be enflamed; therefore manie being deceiued, doe thinke it to be an inflammation of the liuer. Therefore it is neceſſarie to tell the differences betweene theſe. For if the liuer be inflamed, there followeth a round ſwelling, faſhioned like the liuer, which will alſo be faſhioned according to the laying of the bodie. For it appeareth greater, when the bodie is turned downe on the left ſide, and againe leſſer, when it is turned to the right ſide. For the liuer going vnder the baſtard ribbes, it neither appeareth to the ſight, nor to the feeling. Againe the thin skin, inclining to the inflammation of the liuer, it appeareth to haue a natural faſhion. If the muſcles be enflamed, the skin is ſtretched out round about, ſo that if one wold pull it vp with his fingers, he cannot eaſily. Moreouer there appeareth a ſwelling according to the placing of the muſcles that lie vpon the liuer, long in faſhion and manifeſt to ſight and feeling. For the cure, when the liuer beginneth to be enflamed, you muſt by and by let him bloud, if age and ſtrength will permit it. Therefore as *Galen* witneſſeth you muſt both pull backe and purge the bloud, that floweth to the liuer, by cutting the inward veine of the arme: becauſe that veine in the right arme is right againſt the liuer, and hath a large paſſage: hauing ſocietie with the veine which is called *Vena cana*. If this veine doth not appeare, you muſt cut the middle veine. And if that doth not appeare neither, you muſt cut the vpper veine, you muſt draw out aboundant, and ſufficient bloud if his ſtrength will ſuffer it. After bloud-letting within a litle ſpace, make the bellie ſoluble, with a ſimple and eaſie clyſter, ſpecially if it do not voide by it ſelfe. The next day after the bloud letting, faſten on a cupping glaſſe, with ſcarification, and againe, likewiſe faſten it on within a day after, for many haue felt more eaſe the ſecond time of the applying, then at the firſt time. Alſo you muſt vſe foments of woll wet in oile, cataplaſmes, cerotes, and epithemes. In the applying of the which, this only is to be obſerued, that to the other medicines that be mollificatiue & diſcuſſiue, you alwaies commix ſome reſtrictiue medicines. Therfore make a foment of oiles of quinces, or of maſtike, or roſes, or mirtles, putting to it odoriferous wine: or apply a ſpong wet in the decoction of wormwood, melilot, red roſes, chammomill, dill, plaintaine, tame endiue, and other like. Alſo make Cataplaſmes or emplaiſters of lineſeede and fænugreeke, barley meale, quinces, melilote, floures wormewood and ſuch like. Or this emplaiſter. ℞. barley meale, ℥. ß. meate of quinces beaten. ℥. iij. wormewoode, floures of melilot, ſquinant. ana. ℥. ij. lineſeede. ℥. j. oiles of roſes, quinces, chammomill, wormewood. ana. ℥. ß. vineger ℥ j. Commixe altogether, and make an emplaiſter. Alſo this Cerote is good. ℞. of the meate of dates. ℥. iij. of mirrhe, ſteeped in old reſtrictiue wine, ſtoraxe, & maſticke. ana. ℥ ij floures of melilot, wormewood, chammomill. ana. ℥. j. ß. ſaffron. ℥. ß. oiles of quinces, of maſticke, and of roſes. ana. ℥. j. with waxe and roſen as much as is ſufficient, and make a Cerote to applie to the liuer. For the ſame purpoſe, you may

Curatio.
Vene ſectio.
Cliſter.
Fomenta.
Cataplaſmata.
Emplaſtrum.
Cerotum.

Epithemata. make Epithemes of the decoction of Roſes, plantaine, wormewood, chammomill, or of their waters diſtilled. And in making of all theſe things, you muſt take heede, that when there is vehement inflammation, the reſtrictiue things may preuaile, and exceede the things that mollifie and looſen. And contrariwiſe when the vehemency of the heate is ſomewhat ſlaked, the mollifying things muſt exceed reſtrictiue things. *Note.* Moreouer you muſt beware, that you doe not apply the afore ſaid things when they are cold, but firſt warme them a litle. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer, when there is great and vehement paine, you muſt alſo miniſter drink medicines, that do eaſe paine: but ſo, that you do eſchew continuall vſe of them: you muſt vſe drinking of ſimples moſt. Therefore miniſter groundſwell ſodden, as a thing very profitable, or iuice of lycorice with hote water. Alſo iuice of endiues doth profite no leſſe then the other, putting to them a litle honie: for beſides that it cooleth, and addeth ſtrength to the liuer, it alſo purgeth the mouthes of the veines of the liuer. But the belly muſt alſo be prouoked by eating of nettles or mercury ſodden. Alſo in the declination of the diſeaſe, the belly muſt be emptied by cliſters, for which purpoſe polipody & *Epithimum* with *mulſa* are put in: & that eſpecially, if the inflammation be in the hollow part of the liuer. For the hollow part of the liuer (as we ſaid before) muſt be purged by the guttes. But the round & outward part of the liuer, muſt be purged by vrine. Moreouer in inflammation of the liuer there is need of an exquiſit diet (as Galen witneſſeth *lib.* 13. *Therap. method.* The liuer it ſelfe requireth meat chiefly that can withſtand obſtructions. Such be all thoſe that be of thin ſubſtance, and which doe ſcoure without gnawing, as is, *ptyſan*, *mulſa*, and ſuch like. Therefore the beſt foode for them that are thus diſeaſed, *Victus ratio.* is *ptyſan* broth, wherein *apium* hath bene ſodden. Alſo you may miniſter broth of a chicken, wherein parſley hath bin ſodden: but drink *mulſa* or barley broth, or decoction of the tame endiues. And if that inflammation doe begin to chaunge to ſuppuration and rotting, *Cure of inflammatiõ turning to ſuppuration.* then all the aforeſaid ſignes will encreaſe, as paines, feuers, rauings, carefulneſſe, and abhorring of meate. Then you muſt helpe the permuration, & rotting, that it may quickly be done, leſt other members in continuance of time do rot with it alſo. Therfore you ſhall helpe it to rot with this cataplaſme. *Cataplaſma.* ℞. of the root of *Althea*. ℥ j. ß fænugreeke, and lineſeede. ana. ℥. ij. leaues of *althea* and mallowes. ana. *M.* ij. dry figges in number vj. boile theſe in water till they wax ſoft, then bruiſe them, and make a cataplaſme. Neither ſhall you do amiſſe, if you apply an emplaiſter, that can helpe it to change into matter. As *Emplaſtrum.* this is. ℞. of barley meale, and fænugreeke. ana. ℥. iij. of the root of *Althea*. ℥ ß of the root of white lillies, ℥. j. ß. lineſeed. ℥. j. floures of cammomil, and melilote. ana. *M.* ß boile all in water vnto a iuſt thicknes, then commixe of oile of cammomill. ℥ j. of oile of lillies. ℥. j. ß. boile them againe, and make an emplaiſter. Of theſe ſaid things you may alſo make a cerote, by putting to them butter, *ladanum*, roſen and waxe. When the ſuppuration and rotting is fully come to a perfectiõ, then the paines do ceaſe, & all the fits do appeare gentler and meeker. *Ruptura.* In the time of the rupture or breaking, the paine doth encreaſe more againe, therfore then alſo you muſt helpe the rupture or breaking of it, by vſing of goats dung and doues dung, nettle ſeed, muſtard ſeede, and other

things

things that do draw to the superficies. And by heating potions, as is decoction of poley, fumitory, root of *Chamedrios*, and such like. When it is broken, you must minister water of hony, or decoction of cicers, and other like things which haue an absterſiue & scouring vertue. And if the matter doth auoid by the veines, you must commix things that prouoke vrine: as be *ſium*, *aſarum*, *caſia*, and cinamome. But if it auoid by the belly, commix those things which do purge gently, as be goats wheye, *tamarindes*, and *caſia fiſtularis*. Also it is lawfull then to vse cliſters made of the decoction of bareley. When clenſing & scouring of it is done, minister medicines, which can glutinate and ioine it vp.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of diſtempure of the Spleene.

De Intemperie Lienis.

Like as other parts of the body haue eight kindes of diſtempures, so many hath the spleene, and most often it suffereth colde and moiſt diſtempure. Ech particular cauſe is not to be declared here: for there be some cauſes, that be in other diſtempures of other mẽbers of the body, therfore you ſhall ſeeke them in Galen *ex capitibus primi, 2. & 3. lib. de morborum cauſis*. The ſureſt and ſhorteſt ſignes of diſtempure of the ſpleene is knowen by thoſe ſignes that be eaten and drunken, and by thoſe ſigns which are applied outwardly vpon the skin, nigh to the skin, nigh to the left ſide. For if cold diſtẽpure doth vexe the ſpleene, all meats and drinkes which do coole notably, doe ſoone and manifeſtly hurt the ſpleene. Alſo all cold things applied outwardly doe hurt it: and therefore they ſignifie cold diſtempure of it: but contrariwiſe al hot things do eaſe it. And if the diſtempure of the ſpleene be hot, it is not vexed with cold meats or drinks, or with cold things being applied outwardly. And if the heat encreaſe, there is not onely no ſwelling in it, but alſo it ſuffereth contraction, and ſhrincking vp, ſpecially if a feuer be preſent. But meats and drinks that be hot, and thoſe things that adde heate being applied outwardly, doe encreaſe hot diſtempures, and make them outragious. Alſo all cooling things be ioyfull vnto them. Likewiſe alſo you may gather the ſignes of drie diſtempure, ſpeciallie when it is not euident by the proper nature of it for lack of greatneſſe. Alſo thoſe things that be applied outwardly to the bodie, and that be receiued inwardlie, if they haue vertue and power of drying, they doe drie vp the ſpleene. When the ſpleene is vexed with moiſt diſtempure, and ſo continuing a while, it cauſeth it to encreaſe ſo much, that it toucheth both the ſtomacke & the liuer. Alſo the kind of paine together with theſe aforeſaid ſigns do declare the diſtempure that vexeth. For in a hote & cold diſtempure, they haue ſmall paine or none at all, neither haue they any alſo in a moiſt diſtempure: but leaſt of all in a dry diſtempure. By theſe afore ſaied ſignes, you may make coniecture of compound diſtempures of the ſpleene. For in a maner altogether, when a hot diſtempure is vehement, a dry diſtempure followeth it: and to a cold diſtempure being inueterat, a moiſt diſtẽpure followeth. But in ſo much as humors flowing into the ſpleene do cauſe ſwelling: you muſt haue diligent conſideration to them. For if choler do flow thither, the whole bodie appeareth hotter, although there be no feuer preſẽt. Alſo the eies & the vrine

Cauſe.

Signes of diſtempure of the ſpleene in bare qualities.

Cold diſtempure.

Hot diſtẽpure.

Dry diſtempure.

Moiſt diſtempure.

Signes of diſtempure of the ſpleene through humours.

Choler. be coloured by choller. The ſicke ſhall alwaies accuſe drines and complaine of thirſt, and choller troubling his mouth. He abhorreth meate, and is troubled with watching, and deſireth cold things, and withall theſe his tongue is yelowiſhed. He hath tertian fits, and the manners of the ſicke be wrathfull,

Melancholie. and they will chafe out of meaſure. If Melancholie doth flow, his colour doth appeare as well on the tongue, as in all the reſt of the bodie, and he hath vnnaturall appetite to meat, the patient is ſad and heauie, and other ſignes of choller be preſent with theſe. Alſo fits do vexe him the fourth day. When a

Fleume. flegmaticke humour floweth into the ſplene, his choller ſhall be like fleume. The ſicke doth not thirſt, he deſireth meate, vnleſſe the humor be ſalt fleume: for the ſicke abhorre meate, and be more deſirous of drinke, for they are thirſtie. Alſo fits do vexe them euerie day. And their vrines are white, and they themſelues be ſlow and ſluggiſh. Some of them that haue colde diſtempure

Bloud. with it, haue a great and a hard ſpleene. And if it be a ſanguine humour, that floweth into the ſpleene, it is poſſible for it to change the colour both of the tongue, and of the skin. As for the appetite or abhorring of meates, the ſicke is in a meane betweene both, and they be more ſicke then the reſt, although they haue not like ſwelling of the ſpleene. The veines of the whole bodie doe appeare full of bloud, and the vrine is yellow. Theſe ſignes we haue declared

Note. at large out of *Ætius*, becauſe they are common, and may almoſt be applyed to all diſtempures of other medicines, cauſed through flowing of humours. Generally diſtempure of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene is almoſt without

Cure of diſtemper of the bare qualitie of the ſpleene. ſwelling. You muſt cure and correct them both by meates and drinkes, as alſo by ſimple medicines and foments, oiles and ointmentes and ſuch other like, which be contrarie to the diſtempure. Therefore you ſhall heale hot diſtempure of the ſplene (as you did of the liuer) by meates & drinkes that do coole,

Hot. and by annointings with oiles of roſes and *oleum molimum*, and other thinges which be rehearſed before in the 23. chapter of this booke. Likewiſe colde

Cold. diſtempure of the liuer, by thoſe things which do moderately heat. In a moiſt

Moiſt. diſtempure of the ſplene, beſides thoſe things which are rehearſed before in the 23. chapter, theſe things do profit: roote of fiue leaued graſſe, drie plantaine, the floure and fome of ſalt, *ammoniacum*, iuice of willow and ſuch like. If you make of them an ointment or cerote by putting to ſufficient vineger, ſuch as we will a litle after deſcribe. Alſo frictions are moſt conuenient for this,

Drie. which haue a diſcuſſing vertue. Drie diſtempure of the ſplene is cured by ſweete bathes and hoat waters, alſo annointings with ſweete oile, and meates

Cure of diſtemper by flowing of a humour. moiſting without coldneſſe, as is Ptyſan iuice. If diſtempure of the ſplene be cauſed through flowing of an humour, then if the humour be ſanguine, you muſt let bloud of the inner veine of the left arme, called *lienaris vena*, or if that cannot be found, let bloud of the veine which is betweene the ring finger, and the eare finger, then apply both inwardly and outwardly medicines which doe adde ſtrength to the ſpleene, as is, the barcke of the roote of capers, of hartes tongue, *Ceterach*, maidenhaire, *Yreos*, calamint and ſuch like, which alſo are able to adde ſtrength and ſtabilitie to the liuer: of which we will ſpeake aboundantly in the chapters following. If other humours flow to the ſpleene, firſt you muſt auoide the ſuperfluous humours by purging them

them with medicines: then all the reſt of the time, you muſt correct the diſtempure that is left, and alſo apply things that ſtrengthen the ſplene.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of inflammation of the Spleene.

De Lienis Inflammatione.

THe Spleene, like as other members is vexed with inflammation as oft as hot bloud doth flow thither vnnaturally. It is knowen by heauineſſe and ſwelling of the left ſide, which wil not giue place to the feeling: alſo by paine & ſtretching our of the place, by feuers and by burning heate. But if abundance of humors do ruſh in thither, it is knowen by the greatneſſe & ſwiftneſſe of the ingendring of the inflammation. Let the diet of them that be vexed with inflammation of the ſpleene be ſimple, & giue them thoſe things that will eaſily digeſt for their meate, as is Ptyſan iuice, bread wet in other things which be often reherſed of vs before in the inflammation of other members. And if the inflammation indure long, you may alſo giue them birds fleſh, & fiſhes taken in grauelly places. Let the drinke of the patient be decoction of Cinnamon or watrie wine. Let the cure be begunne by cutting of the veine of the ſpleene, or that veine, which is betwene the little finger and the ring finger, if there be no cauſe to forbid it. Let the belly be often waſhed with cliſters, but ſpecially, if you may not let him bloud Then lay vpon the ſpleene reſtrictiue medicines, which can appeaſe the furie of that, that floweth, and keep the ſtrength of the liuer and ſpleene, but yet you may not onely applie reſtrictiue thinges, but you muſt commixe with them thoſe things which do extenuate, cut and looſen without euident heat, leaſt groſſe matter be ſtopped in it, and do waxe more vehemently hard. Therefore if there be moderate inflammation, you muſt applie moiſt wooll wet in wine that is old, ſharpe and thinne, and mixed with ſweete oile. But if there be greater heate, take oile of roſes, or *oleum medimum*, or oile of cammomill with vineger, you may cõmixe them together after this ſort. ℞ oile of roſes and quinces. ana. ℥. ij. oile of cammomill. ℥. j. the beſt vineger. ℥. ſſ. commixe them all together for a foment and irrigation. And if the aforeſaid oiles be not at hand, ſeeth bryer leaues and quinces in oile, & adde to alſo ſome extenuating things, as is wormewood and peniroiall. And you muſt beware alſo that you applie nothing vpon the ſplene cold, but whatſoeuer medicine you apply to it outwardly, let it be warmed. After foments and irrigations, you muſt paſſe to cataplaſmes: in the making of which you may adde the meale of darnell and barley with drie figges, lineſeede and oile wherein wormewood and peniroiall be ſodden. But you muſt beware that the place be not kept bare after irrigations and cataplaſmes, but aſſoone as thoſe be taken away, by and by applie ſuch cerotes or emplaiſters as be deſcribed in the chapter of inflammation of the liuer. For both the liuer and the ſpleene require one kind of medicines, but the ſpleene requireth ſo much the ſtronger medicines, as it is of groſſer nouriſhment. Therefore you ſhall ſeeke examples of medicines meete for this place out of the chapter of inflammation of the liuer: obſeruing only this thing, that you alway commixe vineger, and ſomewhat that is acceptable to the ſpleene, and that doth peculiarly defende his

Cauſa. *Signa.* *Dyet.* *Potus.* *Curatio.* *Vene ſectio.* *Clyſter.* *Fomenta.* *Note.*

ſtrength. And if the inflammation of the ſpleene tendeth toward ſuppuration and rotting, which do ſeeldome chaunce, you muſt helpe to further the ſuppuration, leaſt other members putrifie, by cataplaſmes that bring it to matter, whereof we haue ſpoken in the inflammation of the liuer.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of hardneſſe of the Spleene.

De Lienis Schirrho.

Cauſa. INflammation of the ſplene, if it be not rightly cured, it draweth together a hard ſwelling of the ſpleene. The cauſe of this diſeaſe is a certaine humour, which cleaueth ſtubbornly to the ſpleene: but it is when hardnes engendreth

Signa. without inflammation into ouermuch ſwelling. The euill is eaſily knowen by touching, of what cauſe ſoeuer it be. His diet muſt be extenuating: therefore

Victus ratio. he muſt eate meate which is eaſie of digeſtion, and doth engender good iuice and thinne. He muſt eſchew all hard fleſh, which doth engender groſſe iuice, and which do ſtriue againſt digeſtion. He muſt drinke wine that is thin in ſubſtance, yellowiſh in colour, not verie old, and being without all reſtriction. Alſo he muſt put much truſt in exerciſes, which it is good to vſe before meate, the bodie not abounding with ſuperfluities. Alſo it is manifeſt that vociferation, and crying out, oportunatly done and in time, doth greatly helpe in this euill.

Curatio. For the cure, you muſt vſe very ſtrong things as wel outwardly as alſo inwardly. Therefore within the bodie miniſter moſt ſtrong potions, for thoſe they may ſuffer without griefe. Among the which, the chiefe be the barkes of the rootes of capers, harteſtongue, the roote and herbe of *Tamariſcus* ſodden in vineger or *Oximell*. Alſo iuice of centorie drunke, and decoction of bitter lupines taken with rew and pepper. *Anagallis* the female. ℈. j. with *Poſca* or *Oximell* profiteth maruellouſly to drinke it. Alſo the moſt conuenient remedie for the hardnes of the ſpleene is iron quenched often in water or wine, or *Poſca*. For that water or wine or *Poſca* miniſtred in the beginning is pleaſant, & moſt profitable, and is giuen many dayes orderly. Therefore to them that haue the feuer, miniſter water or *Poſca*: but to them that haue tender fleſh, and lacke a feuer, miniſter wine. Let the iron that is quenched in them be ſome inſtrument that is laid with ſteele. Alſo the ſcales of iron may profitably be miniſtred to ſtrong and rude men. For this doth melt the ſpleene notably, for it hath a conſuming vertue. But yet leaſt it ſhould hurt the ſtomake, it is good to commixe with it ſome ſtrengthning medicines, as is harteſtongue, toppes of wormewood, *caſia*, anniſe ſeed, *ſerpillum montanum*, or ſuch other like. Apply out-

Fomentum. wardly this foment. ℞. centorie, harteſtongue, rew. ana. *M*. j. barke of the root of capers ℥. j. ſeeth all in vineger, and when they be ſodden, wet a ſponge in

Vnguentum. the decoction, and apply it hot to the ſpleene. Moreouer this ointment ſheweth a maruellous effect. ℞. of the oiles of capers, lillies and *Irios*. ana. ℥. j. marrow of oxes ſhankes. ℥. ij. muſcilage of the roote of *Althæa*, fenugreeke, and lineſeed. ana. ℥. j. badgers greaſe, hens greaſe, gooſe greaſe. ana. ℥. ij. the barke of the roote of capers, *Tamariſcus*, *coſtus*, centory. ana. ℥. j. gumme ammoniack, *bdellium*, & *libanum*. ana ℥. ß. the gummes being firſt diſſolued in vineger, with waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo emplaiſters and cerotes

do

do profit much being made after this sort. ℞. of the oiles of lillies, *Irros*, and of capers. ana. ℥.j. barley meale, fenugreeke, lineseede. ana. ℥.j. the barke of the roote of capers, hartestongue. ana. ℥.j.ß. roote of *Althea*. ℥ j. *bdellium*, ammoniacke, *garbanum*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *opoponax*, mirrhe, frankensence. ana. ℥ ß. with rosen, turpentine and waxe, as much as is sufficient make a cerote. Moreouer the Phisitian must looke diligently to the disease, as he seeth cause sometime adde and sometime take away those things which do either mollifie, or attenuate and dissolue, or which addeth strength. In conclusion cupping glasses fastened with scarification, is not a litle profitable. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Of obstruction of the Spleene

De Lienis Obstructione.

IT chanceth sometime not onely through weakenesse of attractiue vertue, which is in the spleene, but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dreggie humour of melancholy is deriued from the liuer vnto the spleene there followeth obstruction. Afterward that vnpure and naughtie bloud is distributed all ouer the whole bodie, which if it chance, then the colour of the bodie is corrupt, & enclineth to blackenesse. Also sometime they that are thus diseased, haue vncurable vlcers. The causes may easily be known by those causes, which we spake of in the chapter of the obstruction of the liuer. This euill is knowen by heauines, which is about the left side. If the whole body be corrupted with it besides, it is easie to know specially by the colour of the face, difficultie of breathing, troublesome dreames, and other such like aforesaid. This disease is cured with an extenuating diet, and by medicines which take away obstructions, whereof you may find great plentie rehearsed in the chapter of obstructions of the liuer: for both these members haue need of like medicines: But yet the spleene hath neede of stronger medicines so much as it is nourished with grosser food. Therefore against grosse humors, that they may obey readily to be purged, there behoueth preparatiues, which preparatiues shall be the same that are for obstructions of the liuer (this onely obserued) that here all things be stronger, and that they haue things commixed with them that doe adde strength to the spleene, (the humour being preparate) then they must be purged by such medicins as doe purge grosse and dreggie humors, whereof we haue spoken often before. After this apply such medicines both inwardly and outwardly, as are contained in the former chapter, and in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer. Therefore those places will shew you medicines abundantly. *Causa.* *Signa.* *Dyet.* *Cure.* *Præparatio humorum.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of the iaundeis.

De Ictero.

THE Iaundeis is nothing else but a shedding either of yellow choler, or of melancholy all ouer the body. Somtimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skinne, the liuer being safe, as in the *Crisis* of diseases. Many times the iaundeis is caused, and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted without *Icterus auriginosus arguatum regium.* *Causæ.*

a feuer of ſome outward occaſion, and is made cholerick, as it chaunceth by biting of venemous beaſts. So a certaine man, when he was ſtong of a viper, had all his bodie ſpotted like the colour of leekes. Alſo it may chaunce that through inflammation, or changing of the naturall temperament of the liuer, ſuch corruption of humour may happen, that ſometime all the bodie ſhall be manifeſtly like herbes that be whitiſh with paleneſſe. Alſo ſometime it ſhall be like the colour of lead, as alſo ſuch colours be blacker if they happen through diſeaſe of the ſpleene. Alſo it is cauſed many times through weakneſſe of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw as it was wont to doe the cholericke humor from the liuer vnto him, & therefore leaueth the bloud vnpure. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed through obſtruction and debilitie of the veſſels, whoſe mouthes are deriued from the gall to the liuer, and do not therfore draw the cholerick humour. Alſo many times through obſtruction of the paſſages, which goeth to the bowels. But that we may diſcerne well the cauſes of the iaundeis, you muſt of neceſſitie conſider the figure of the excrements, and the colour: ſeeing in ſome they appeare much coloured by yellow choler, as alſo in ſome the vrine doth appeare. Therefore in them that haue choler burſt out vnto the skinne, by reaſon of a good *criſis* in feuers, their excrements and vrine ſhall ſeeme to be of naturall colour. But if with the feuer cholerick deiections do inuade, and there be heauineſſe in the right ſide, it ſignifieth burning inflāmation in the liuer: by whoſe violence the bloud is changed into choler, & carried all ouer the bodie. But if there be burning without heauineſſe and griefe, the euill is ingendred onely through hot diſtempure of the liuer. But if without a feuer, together with feeling of ſome heauineſſe about the right ſide, white excrements be auoided: in them you may iudge that there is obſtruction of the paſſages of the bladder that receiue the choler. If ſuch egeſtions come forth without that heauines, you may iudge their ſtrēgth to be weake, either the attractiue vertue which fetcheth out the cholerike humour from the liuer, or weakeneſſe of the expulſiue vertue, which driueth out to the bowels. Alſo by and by after, moſt cholericke humours be ſent out with the vrine aboundantly. Thoſe that haue melancholie ſent to the skinne together with the bloud, they be vexed together grieuouſly: for there followeth it ſadneſſe without reaſon, and gnawing of thoſe things which be about the belly, difficultie of breathing, abhorring of meate, and they auoide black vrine, but their dung is like the colour of coperous or ſhomakers bleach, and their wombe is much coſtiue. But thoſe that haue the iaundeis cauſed of yellow choler, haue no gnawing about the belly, nor alſo they doe not ſo much abhorre meates, they auoide white egeſtions, their vrines be coloured like ſaffron: but they remaine troubled: but commonly to all that haue the iaundeis, there chanceth ſluggiſhnes to moue, & a contrary mind to ſweete meats. Alſo itch of the whole bodie followeth. The whites of the eyes and the partes of the face nigh the temples, and the balles of the cheekes doe betoken it by their pale colour. Alſo the veines vnder the tongue are found full, and ſignifie an aboundant humour. The iaundeis that is cauſed by reaſon of a good *criſis*, when the feuer is perfectly ended, they are ſoone cured, if they vſe bathes of ſweete water, and frictions or chafings with diſcuſſiue oiles, and all things

Signa.

Black humors.

things that rarifie the skinne, (as be) oiles of cammomill, of dill, of *yreos*, or such like. Also rosemarie sodden in oile doth discusse and dissolue much. Let their whole diet be moist, and extenuating grosse humours. They that haue the iaundeis caused through biting of a venemous beast, they are to be cured almost as those be, which be bitten with a mad dog, of the which we wil speake in an other place. Those that haue the iaundeis through hot distempure of the liuer, or through inflammation of it, you must minister the cures which are rehearsed before in the diseases of the liuer. Therfore that which we haue rehearsed there, must be referred hither. But if the iaundeis be caused through obstruction of the bladder that receiueth the choler, then two speciall remedies must be vsed; bloudletting and purging. In them therefore that bloud do much abound together with choler all ouer the body, & that be troubled with heauines or stretching out about the liuer or the spleene, nothing can be done more profitably, then to let him bloud, so there be no cause that letteth it. You must cut the innermost veine of the right arme, & that if the liuer be affected euill: but if the splene be diseased, cut the veine in the left arme, you must draw out the bloud now and then, least if you should drawe it out on heapes, the strength of the sicke should faile him. And if we be prohibited from bloud letting, we may conueniently minister a clister. For a clister may wel be cast in after blodletting, for by the auoiding out of the dung, it maketh easie breath, and by prouoking and gnawing of the bowels it draweth and pulleth backe to it the humors that are sent out to the skinne. Make it after this sort. ℞. both the endiues, horehound, agrimonie, maiden haire, origan, wormewood. ana. *M.* j. seedes of annise, fennell, percely, sperage. ana. ℥. ij. ß. licorice, *apium*, fennell, the rootes of them. ana. ℥. j. boile them in sufficient water vntill the third part: then straine them and take of the licour of that decoction. ℥. xiij. *cassia fistula*. ℥. j. *hierapicra*. ℥. ß. *electuarium de succo rosarum*. ℥. ij. oiles of dill and *yreos*. ana. ℥. j. ß. salt ℥. j. commixe them all and make a clister. But purgations be most proper and familiar for this disease: but so that the humors be first attenuated, and made thinne by brothes, potions, and also medicines. Therefore he must vse meates of easie digestion and extenuating, birdes of mountaines, fishes of grauelly places, & potherbs prouoking vrine: specially endiue, sperage, louage, fennell, & such like. Flesh of wild beasts being tamed are best, specially of goates. For his sauce vineger is good, wherein *Aristolochia* hath bin steeped. He must abstaine from fruites, but let his banket be almondes, a few at once, and cicer, a litle tosted. Also the decoction of it continually drunke profiteth not a litle. Wine white and thinne, and not very old, is good. For medicines let him haue those, that be taught in the chapter of obstruction of the liuer, and also in the first booke the 11. chapter. Aboue other specially, *apium*, percely, maiden haire, calamint, veruaine, roote of chikweed, or mather, *aristolochia*, *serpillum*, S. Iohns wort, being decoct, are good. The humours being preparate and extenuate at length you must minister a medicine that purgeth choler. You must giue strong purgations to them that haue the iaundeis: for through the drines of their stomach, the medicines seeme weaker and lesse in effect in them. The best purgation in this case, is infusion of rewbarbe, described in the first booke the 11. chapter. Also *hierapicra*, *electuarium de succo ro-*

Cure of iaundeis comming through crisis of a feuer.

Of venemous byting.

Cure of iaundeis of hote distempure of the liuer or inflammation.

Cure of the iaundeis through obstruction.

Venæ sectio.

Clyster.

Victus ratio.

Purgatio.

ſarum, de pſillio and *diaphœnicon*. And if you profit him nothing with the firſt purgation, you muſt returne againe to thoſe things, which haue vertue to take away obſtructions and ſtopping: & after three daies you muſt purge him more vehemently again. If the iaundeis be engendred through diſeaſe of the ſplene, you muſt turne to the chapter of melancholiouſneſſe, and the chapter of obſtruction of the liuer. The belly being purged, you muſt againe miniſter medicines which do purge the entrailes. For which purpoſe the roote of *ciclaminum* beaten and drunke is onely good: for this doth not only purge againe the intrailes, but alſo it is moſt meete to ſhut out the choler, by ſweat in the whole skin all ouer. Therefore after it is drunke, you muſt helpe the excluſion of the ſweat by couerings, and warmings in bed. You may giue of it. ℥.ij or iij with *aqua mulſa*. Alſo iuice of the barke of radiſh doth notably well, if it be mixed with ſweet wine vnalaied, or *vinum mulſum*, ſo that ℥.ij. of the iuice be tempered with ℥.j. of wine. Alſo earthwormes drie giuen three daies with *vinum mulſum*, do ſend out the iaundeis by the vrine. Alſo you may giue very profitably iuice of endiue and ſuccorie to them that haue feuers by it ſelfe, and to them that lacke feuers with wine. Alſo iuice of *cuſcuta* profiteth maruellouſly. Alſo cammomill is moſt profitable, which is called *leucanthemus*: and alſo *buphthalmum*. But all the medicines miniſtred in drinke, let them be miniſtred in a bath if it can be, when the patient ſitteth in a great hot veſſell. Alſo you muſt be much diligent at this time to giue him a diet, that recomforteth & refreſheth ſtrẽgth by the which the vertue expulſiue may be repaired: and if any member be hurt, let it be ſtrengthned, & let the corruption of his colour be purged away. Alſo it is good for him to vſe exerciſes, geſtations, annointings and ſweating out. For this purpoſe drie hot houſes are good: in the which annoint the body with oile, wherein *ſerpillum* or roſemary hath beene ſodden. And if any of the iaundeis be left about the face and the eies, if the vrine appeare pure, and the belly auoiding after his accuſtomed manner, you muſt vſe infuſions into the noſe: for which purpoſe iuice of *cyclaminum* is poured in, alſo *nigella* with vineger, iuice of the roote of beetes and *anagallis*. Alſo let the ſicke ſitting in a bath draw into his noſtrels verie ſharpe vineger, and let him keepe it a while, preſſing his noſtrels together, and it will purge maruellouſly.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of euill ſtate of the bodie.

De Malo Corporis Habitv.

κακεξία. *Cachexia* in greeke is nothing elſe, but an euill and naughtie ſtate and diſpoſition of the bodie. For it is in ſuch caſe that it is ſpred abroad in waterineſſe, and all the whole bodie is looſe and waxeth ſoft. This diſeaſe for the moſt part is ingendred of a long ſicknes. Alſo it followeth when ſome entraile is hardened, ſpecially after the hardneſſe of the liuer and the ſpleene. Alſo it chanceth often in a continuall *Dyſenteria*, & the diſeaſe called *Cæliacus morbus*. Alſo through letting of ſome accuſtomed excretion. The whole body is made whitiſh and weake, ſo that his legges are ſcarce able to beare him: and in the beginning his digeſtions be letted, his appetite remaining ſtill: but afterward there followeth abhorring of meate, and their breathing is ſeldome and

Cauſa.

Signa.

weak

weake. Alſo their belly ſendeth out vnequall excrements. Old men and children are ſpecially taken with this diſeaſe, which doe ſoone periſh through weakneſſe of the vitall facultie, and becauſe the iuyce doth breath out of them readily through thinneſſe of the skin. But they that be full of age, do ſeldome fall into this diſeaſe, and do ſoone get it away againe. If this diſeaſe do indure long, it turneth into the dropſie, therefore his cure may not be deferred. Let his diet altogether be thinne and drie: therefore let their meates be ſimple, and which will eaſily digeſt, and that can ingender the beſt bloud. Let them eſchue all fruites alſo that ingender groſſe and viſcous humours, and that be hard to digeſt. Wine is good for them which is white, thinne, and odoriferous. For the cure, if the diſeaſe happen by letting of accuſtomed excretion, you muſt ſtirre vp and prouoke the excretion. Therefore you muſt vſe bloud letting, if nothing do let it, which you muſt drawe out by litle and litle at ſundrie times vnto the third or fourth day in them that fell into this diſeaſe through retention of the hemorrhoids or menſtruis. But in them that haue it through abundance of vicious humors, bloudletting is hurtfull. Therfore rather purge them with ſome conuenient purgation. The bodie being purged, let him vſe chiefly waters that ſpring by themſelues of alume and ſalt peter, & afterwards ſulphurous waters. Alſo let them exerciſe diuerſe deambulations, geſtations, vociferations, frictions with linnen, and other moderate exerciſes. After let them vſe annointings with oyle, wherein is put ſomewhat that drieth vp humours, as be, *nitrum* and ſalts. To cure the wearineſſe apply certaine bathes betweene whiles. Alſo potion of wormewood helpeth them maruellouſly, and *dropaces* applied. Alſo if the liuer be affected, or ſome other of the inward members, it is good to cure them by their owne remedies before preſcribed. If the euill turne into the dropſie, you ſhall find it next.

Diet.

Curatio.

CHAP. XXXII.
Of the Dropſie.
De Aqva Inter Cvtem.

THere be three kinds of Dropſie. The firſt is called in Greeke *Aſcites*. The ſecond *Tympanites*, and the third *Anaſarca*, *Yposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Aſcites* is, when much waterie humour is heaped vp betweene the skin or filme called *peritoneum*, and the bowels. *Tympanites* is when much windineſſe and ſuperfluous breath is gathered in the aforeſaid places of the bellie. *Anaſarca* is, when the humous is diſperſed throughout the whole bodie, that all the fleſh appeareth altogether moiſt and wet like a ſponge or paper. The dropſie is cauſed through great coldneſſe of the liuer, or through other parts verie notably cooled, which can bring the liuer into the ſame affect. The liuer is affected by the ſpleene being colde, and by the ſtomacke and the bowelles, alſo by the longues, the reynes and the midriffe. Alſo it chaunceth through vnmeaſurable auoyding of the hemorrhoides, or through womans fluxe, or through retention of menſtruis, or through ſome other great affection of the wombe. For in all theſe the liuer hath no vnnaturall ſwelling: and yet the bodie is taken with the dropſie, onely through refrigeration of the liuer,

Aſcites.

Timpanites.

Anaſarca.

Cauſe.

affected in the beginning. But afterward ſometime it alſo waxeth hard, which is euident to be ſeene in them, which through vntimely drinking of cold water, haue their liuer cooled on heapes, ſo that the dropſie followeth by and by, before the liuer be lifted vp into a knottie ſwelling. Many haue fallen into the dropſie after the gout, and through the vexing paine of the hucklebones. Moſt commonly thoſe which feele not their meate, and haue euill ſtate of the bodie, and alſo that be troubled with the iaundeis, the dropſie followeth it. And it followeth *Cæliacus morbus*, and *Diſenteria*. Commonly euerie dropſie cauſeth difficultie of breathing, and ſwelling, and heauineſſe, and naughtie colour. Alſo they abhorre meat, and deſire drinke largely, ſpecially they that haue *Aſcites*. For the humour that is holden and kept in the aforeſaid places, is ſalt and rotten: therefore alſo after for the moſt part, there is wont to follow a feuer. Women are leſſe troubled with the dropſie then men. Children for the moſt part are taken with the dropſie *Anaſarca*. Among the ſaide three kindes of dropſies, *Timpanites* is the moſt perillous: *Aſcites* leſſe perilous then it, and then *Anaſarca*. One diet is common to all theſe kinds of dropſies: that their meate be eaſie of digeſtion and ſufficiently coact, and dry. For that meat that is looſe & moiſt, is apt to be turned into watrineſſe. Therfore let his bread be verie well baked, & let it haue ſalt, *ammi*, fennell, anniſe, or comin cõmixed with it. Alſo it ought to be well leauened, for it reſtraineth and ſtoppeth the leſſe. Of birdes the drieſt are good, as partriches, turtles, blackbirds, & thruſhes and ſuch like. Of foure footed beaſts, goats & hares. Alſo chickens, their extreme parts, when they are roſted. Of fiſhes, crabbes of flouds. Alſo eggs roſted are good. Let him vſe potherbes, but ſeeldome. Let thoſe things that be miniſtred vnto them be ſomewhat ſharpe, and that haue vertue to attenuate and heate: as is, *Apium*, percely, *Daucus*, rocket, peniroiall, coleworts, garlicke ſodden, oinions and leekes. He muſt altogether abſtain from pulſes. For ſauce let him vſe vineger with pepper, cinamon and ſuch like. Let their ſalt be compound with fennell, hiſope, roſemarie and *apium*. You muſt giue them ſo much drinke only as ſhal ſuffice ſomwhat to breake their thirſt: for ouermuch drinke doth dammage thẽ that be ſicke of the dropſie without meaſure. They muſt drinke thinne wine, and that doth prouoke vrine. But they muſt eſchew ſweete wines & *mulſum*: vineger doth maruellouſly quench their thirſt. Moreouer let them take the greateſt portion of meate at ſupper. Let them eſchew much frutes and ſecond tables: but yet nuts, almondes, pomegarnets, peares ſodden, and drie figs are to be giuen vnto them, but yet let them take all thoſe moderately and not euery day. Let not their bed be verie ſoft, ſpecially thoſe that haue *Anaſarca*. Strew vnder them drie herbes, as be, peniroiall, calamint, origan, and ſuch like. For it is maruellous, how much thoſe doe drie vp while they ſleepe: ſo that it hath bene proued that ſome being wrapped and hidden in a heape of wheat, to haue riſen againe after ſleepe ſtrong and ſafe. And let them vſe exerciſes in the Sunne, if it be ſommer and a faire day, but let their head be couered: but if it be cold, let them vſe it in houſes being warmed and nigh a fire, or at a fire. Riding is expedient at the firſt, and to be caried hither and thither in a chaire. But if the ſtrength of the patient may ſuffer it, it is better to walke much on his feete, and ſometime to run, then to be borne. Alſo

Signa.

Diet.

Panis.

Potus.

Exercitatio.

the patient muſt be wrapped in skinnes dried with the Sunne, or digged into hot ſand. After exerciſes wipe off the ſweate with ſharpe linnen clothes. Alſo it is verie good if you vſe daily, thrice or foure times, frictions: for this doth open the paſſages that are ſhut, and it drieth vp, extenuateth and caſteth a ſunder humours. Therefore it doth verie quickly prouoke foorth much ſweat and conſtraineth the fleſh. They muſt be rubbed with drie handes, or with ſalt beaten in water or hoat oile. After this they muſt be waſhed with alomme water, or ſulphure water, or ſalt water. For many which haue bene taken with the dropſie *Anaſarca*, and haue vſed ſuch kinde of bathes, they haue ſufficed to weare out the diſeaſe, and alſo to make a ſtronger ſtate of the bodie. And hitherto, we haue rehearſed a common diet for all kinde of dropſies. For the cure, the remedie that is common for all dropſies, is that by and by in the beginning, you muſt purge the humour that doth abound. That you may do both by bloud letting, and by purgations, and by thoſe medicines that prouoke vrine. That which is good particularly for this or that kinde, we will teach in the chapters following, in which we will followe the cures of them euerie one particularly. *Curatio.*

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the dropſie Anaſarca.

De Anasarca.

IN the dropſie *Anaſarca*, all the whole bodie, and the fleſh appeareth looſe, and wet like a ſponge as it is ſaide: ſo that all the whole bodie ſwelleth vp, and is like a dead bodie. In this diſeaſe you muſt beginne the cure with letting of bloud, eſpecially if the euill be engendred of ſuppreſſion of hemorhoides or menſtruis, and if age and ſtrength will ſuffer it. For by this meanes the aboundance of humours that doe hurt, are drawen out, and the feeble nature being vnloaden is ſwifter, and the cauſe of the diſeaſe is miniſhed, and alſo health commeth againe with leſſe labour. The naughtie humours being drawne out & purged by bloudletting, you muſt come to the remedie of purging medicines. But if there be neede of extenuation and preparation of the humours before their expulſion, you ſhall miniſter decoctions & other things which be rehearſed before in the Chapters of weakeneſſe of the liuer, and obſtruction of the liuer. For which purpoſe miniſter alſo ſyrupes of wormewood, of tame endiue with the brode leaues, of agrimonie and *bizantÿs*. Let the purging medicines be, of ſimples, rubarbe and agaricke, of compounds, pilles of rubarbe, *pilulæ de hiera ſimplici*, and pilles of agaricke, and ſuch like. Alſo *hiera picra* is good in the beginning, becauſe it taketh away obſtruction, and addeth ſtrength to the intrailes. Therefore you muſt onely beware that you miniſter not purging medicins that be ſtrong, and which adde no ſtrength to the liuer: but you muſt bring foorth the hurtfull humour with eaſie medicines by litle & litle. For if you purge but once, and on heapes, you deſtroy the ſtrength marueilouſly, and coole the liuer. Therefore euery weeke you muſt make the wombe ſoluble, and you muſt alwayes paſſe from gentle remedies, by litle and litle to the ſtronger. Therefore in this kind of dropſie the Antidotes *diaphenicon*, and *Electuarium nidum* be good. Alſo the roote of Elder ſodden in wine *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Purgatio.*

doth purge notably. Also the roote of wolwort profiteth, for they be both of one vertue. Moreouer the rest of the time of the cure, while he abstaineth frō purging medicines, you must minister those things that adde strength to the liuer, wherof many be recited before, where we taught the cure of obstructiō and weaknes of the liuer. Also minister those things which prouoke vrine. For which purpose, you may well minister *diarrhodon abbatis*, *aromaticum rosarū*, *dialacca diacurcuma*, trochiskes of agrimony, of rubarbe, of wormwood, *theriaca*, & such like. And this medicine profiteth notably. ℞. the powders of *diacurcuma*, and of *dialacca*. ana. ℈. j. powders of *diatrion santalon*, and of *diarrhodon abbatis*, ana. ʒ. ß. powder of *aromaticum rosarum*. ℈. j. rubarbe chosen. ʒ. ß. seedes of endiue with the broad leaues, of melons, and of fennell. ana. ℈. ij. of wormwood, chammomill, and withwinde. ana. ℈. j. of nutmegs, squinaunt & spiknard. ana. ℈. j. ß. of very white sugar. ʒ. j. commixe them together, and make a powder.

Tritura.

Alia.

Also this profiteth marueilously. ℞. seeds of caraway, fennell, & annise. ana. ℈. ij. seeds of comin and S. Iohns worte. ana. ℈. j. seeds of *ammeos*, parcely, daucus and louage. ana. ʒ. ß. of the rootes *yreos* and of *Asarum*. ana. ʒ. j. wormwood. ℈. j. of licorice. ʒ. j. sugar, the weight of all the rest, commixe them all and make a powder. And you must doe your diligence, that in *Anasarca*, the medicines be more dry thē moist, because the whole state of the body is so watery. Moreouer you must apply those medicines outwardly, which can dry vp humours, as be cataplasmes, emplaisters, ointmentes, and other like things that haue drying vertue in them. Therefore a cataplasme is good made of barley and beane meale, of fenugreek, of the root of walwort, of laurell bearies, of wormwood, and of origan sodden in wine, & laid ouer all the whole body. Also oxes dung conueniently dried, may well be applied with *posca* or *oximell*, hauing the fourth part of brimstone put to it. Also fresh cheese hauing much creame being laid to, maketh well against all swelling parts. Moreouer doues dund, and goats dung, mayweed, and chammomill, by euen portions bruised, sodden in vineger, and hony, may be applied. Moreouer you must vse emplaisters of leauen, dry figges, *nitrum*, *yreos*, melilote, sage, peniroyall, *cardamomum*, *sulphur viuum*, laurell bearies, staues acre, salt armoniacke, masticke, frankensence, sothernwood, *Aristolochia rotunda*, doues dung, make it vp with *oximel*. But you must altogether eschue fat and rozenny cerots, for they engender windinesse and cause swellings. But yet the legges and the hands, and other partes of the body being swollen, may often be annointed with this ointment in the Sunne or by a fire. ℞. of *vnguentum agrippa*. ʒ. j. of the meales of linesecde, fenugreeke, beanes, and barley. ana. ʒ. ij. seedes of *Althæa*, *nigella*, *daucus*. ana. ʒ. j. ß. *Sulphur viuum*. ʒ. iij. bolearmoniacke. ʒ. ij. roote of *yreos*. ʒ. ij. ß. roche alome, frankensence. ana. ʒ. j. ß *Euphorbium*. ʒ. j. oyles of *yreos*, white lillies and chammomill, ana. ʒ. j. ß. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the swollen partes verie often, it being melted on the coales. For his diet, you must seeke it in the former chapter of the dropsie.

ataplasmata.

Vnguentum.

CAP.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the dropsie Ascites.

De Ascite.

IN the dropsie *Ascites*, all the whole belly is swollen vp, and if it be striken, there is heard such a sound, as a bottle doth make that is not full of water, but the other partes of the bodie, speciallie the vpper partes, are not puffed vp nor swollen. Let his diet be, that hath this dropsie, of birdes of mountaine and other meates easie of digestion, and which doe engender good iuice, as is saied before in the thirtie two chapter. The cure must be begunne by vsing of purging medicines. Let them be such as we rehearsed in the former chapter. Coleworts of the sea called *soldana*, and *soldanella* taken in drinke excelleth all the rest: for this sheweth a maruellous effect in bringing forth the hidropicke water, so that many by the onely vsing of it, haue beene restored to health. Giue of it in wine or wheye. ℥. ij. or more or lesse according to the diuersite of the bodie. Also pilles of *sagapenum* are verie good: and two drachmes or three of the iuice of the roote *yreos*, putting to it. ℥. j. of sugar. Also you must minister sharpe clisters, vnlesse the belly be soluble of it selfe: for then it is more conuenient to drie vp. Among other this clister is speciallie commended. ℞. floures of laurell. ℥. ij. roote of polipodie, agaricke. ana. ℥. j. ß. dodder or *cuscutha*. ℥. iij. seeth them in wine or water vntill the third part be consumed. Then take of the licour of that decoction being strained. lib. 1. of *benedicta laxatiua*. ℥. ß. of *Electuarium nidum*. ℥. ij. ß. *mel rosarum*. ℥. j. oiles of rew, chammomill and *yreos*. ana. ℥. j. salt gemme. ℥. j. ß. commixe them all, and make a clister. For the same purpose, if you thinke good, you may seeth *colocynthis*, *tartarus*, laurell berries, anise seede, ammi, and carawaie seedes, rewe, roote of wilde cucumber, and other like things put to them. After the aforesaide remedies you must laie vpon the whole bellie, some of the prescribed cataplasmes and emplaisters. Also applie ointments and remedies that prouoke vrine and swet: and let him vse exercises of the which we haue spoken abundantlie before.

Signa.

Diet.

Cure.

Cliſter.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the dropsie Tympanites.

De Tympanite.

IN this kinde of dropsie, the bellie is puffed vp and stretched out: and being striken, it maketh a noise like a tabour or timbrell, but the other partes of the bodie waxe leane. It requireth like diet, that the other kinds of dropsies haue: but in this all windie things are speciallie to be auoided. Also let their exercises be much, and great thirst doe helpe and succour the patient strongly. Let the cure be begun with purging medicines, wherof you shall find exãples before. Also it is good to cast in clisters, which haue vertue to dissolue and discusse wind, as this is. ℞. roots of *apium*, and fennell. ana. ℥. j. seeds of annise, fennell, daucus, louage, parcely and comin. ana. ℥. ij. carawaie seede.

Signa.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Cliſter.

℥ iij. rew, *asarum*, leaues of wall-wort, melilot, ana. M. j. boile them in water vnto the third part, and then take of the liquor of that decoction being strayned ℥. xij. *hierapicra*, *benedicta laxatiua*, ana. ℥. ß. *Electuarium de baccis lauri*, ℥. iij. oyles of rew and dill, ana. ℥. j. ß. salt. ℥. j. ß. commixe them together & make a clyster. You must giue also vnto them things that do prouoke vrine, and you must vse aswell inwardly as outwardly, those things that dissolue and discusse windinesse, whereof you finde plentie in the chapter of the cholicke. The belly must dayly be nourished with *Panicum milium*, salt, branne, leaues of rew, cammomill floures, hot ashes sewed in bagges. Also you may apply to it this cerote. ℞. floures of cammomill and melilot, ana. ℥. j. ß. mintes, sauorie, *asarum*, ana. ℈. j. seeds of annise, fennell, rewe, comin, daucus, ana. ℥. j. *cardamomum*, ℈. ß. mirrhe, *castoreum*, ana. ℈. j. oyle of rew. ℥. iij. oyle of dill, ℥. j. ß. rosen and waxe as much as is sufficient, make a Cerote. Moreouer, cupping glasses fastened often to the whole bellie lightly & with much flame, do maruellously profite. Afterward the bellie must be rubbed with a sharpe linnen cloth, so long till it be red. Inwardly he must vse the antidotes *dianisum*, *diacuminum*, and *electuarium è baccis lauri*, or these lozenges. ℞. the powders of *dianisum* and *diacuminum*, ana. ℈. j the powders of the antidote of laurell beries, ℥. j. the powder of *diagalangæ*. ℥. ß. seedes of annise, carawayes, *daucus*, and fennell, ana. ℈. ß. leaues of rew, seeds of *Apium* and louage, ana. ℈. j. suger, ℥. vj. dissolue it in the distilled waters of fennell and *Apium*, and make lozenges. The other remedies are to be sought in the Chapter of the cholicke.

Saculi.

Cerotum.

Lozenges.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of raines that send forth bloudie vrine.

DE RENIBVS CRVENTAM VRINAM EXCERNENTIBVS.

MAny times there happeneth a disease of the raines, through the which thin wheyish bloud is pissed. It is caused through weaknes of the raines, which be not therefore able to deuide the vrine: or it is caused through amplitude of the reines, which straine out the vrine from *Vena cava* vnto the reines. For when the passages are wider and stronger, they also send out some of the bloud to the reines, and other grosse matter. Also oftentimes the reines do sent out bloud likewise as it is wont to do in the hemorhoides. Moreuer, some do voide out bloud from the reines through breaking of a veine in the reines: as it chanceth to those which haue lift vp a great weight, or haue leapt greatly, or haue fallen out of an high place, or haue suffered some such other violent thing. Sometime it chanceth through gnawing of the veines of sharp humours flowing from aboue. If this disease be caused through weakenesse of the reines, the bloud is sent out verie wheyish: but if it be through amplitude & largenesse of the veines, then they feele no paine. If the excretion of bloud be by certaine circuits, then either there is fulnesse of the whole bodie, or neglecting of accustomed exercises, or refection of some member that went before. And if it chaunce through breaking of a veine, then bloud is pissed forth most abundantly: but if it be of gnawing, then bloud is sent foorth by little and litle, and paine doth vexe the reines. Therfore you shall cure that excretion of bloudie vrine, which is caused through weakenesse of the reines, or amplitude

Causæ.

Signa.

Cure of bloudie vrine by weaknesse of the veines

amplitude of the veſſels that ſtraine out vrine to the reines, by quiet and reſtrictiue meates, drinking of blacke wine, and other things which are reherſed, in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. You muſt abſtaine from thoſe things ſpecially which prouoke vrine, and from carnall copulation. In drinke beſides thoſe things that are rehearſed in the chap. aforeſaid, miniſter decoction of the root of comferie, and *tragacantha* miniſtred, that is ſteeped in blacke wine, is good. Alſo ℥.j. of hartſhorne with wine, iuice of marigolds doth ſtop bruiſings out of bloud from the reins. Likewiſe leaues of willow braied with wine, *lapis hematitis*. ℥.j. root of white thorne and decoction of knotgraſſe. Moreouer ℥.j. of bolearmoniacke miniſtred, is good. Sirupes of roſes and mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, of *terra lemnia* and of *ſpodium*. Moreouer ſheeps milke is only praiſed being miniſtred faſting. ℥.iiij. with ℥.j. of bolearmoniacke commixed with it. Applie outwardly to the reins and the loins thoſe things which be deſcribed againſt ſpitting of bloud, and in the chap. of *Dyſenteria*, and other eruptions of bloud. And whatſoeuer can together with his reſtraining & drying adde ſtrength alſo: (as be) leaues of brier and oke, maſt, mirtle, berries, pomegranat rindes, *balauſtia*, and ſuch like. After this the ſtate of the body muſt be refreſhed and reſtored with meats of good iuice, with milke and fleſh of birds, alſo with ſwines fleſh that is lene. That thereby the whole body may be brought to his former ſtrength, and the reins being ſtrengthned alſo they may fulfill their own proper office, and that they may deuide, and ſtraine out the wheiſhe humor from the bloud. But if the reines doe ſend out bloud according to the circuites, or through breaking of a veine, or through gnawing of ſharpe humours flowing from aboue, then by and by you muſt cut a veine of the ſame ſide in the arme. To thoſe that ſend out by circuits bloud, let them bloud a litle before the circuit, but let the other bloud by and by in the beginning: but it is better to part the drawing out of the bloud, that his pulling back and auerſion may be done by litle and litle. Let the places about the reines be couered with ſponges wet in *Poſca*, or moiſt wooll, with oile of roſes and vineger. After this apply ointments, emplaiſters and cerotes deſcribed in the places before rehearſed. Alſo a cupping glaſſe may commodiouſlie be applied, ſpecially if you ſuſpect inflãmation to be preſent in them, which piſſe bloud through breaking of a veine. Alſo potions are good rehearſed before in the chap. of ſpitting of bloud. In the meane ſeaſon alſo, the ſicke muſt be driuen from all ſalt and ſharp things. But when excretion of bloud ceaſeth, he muſt vſe a diet that doeth not engender much bloud, ſpecially in thoſe that voide out bloud by circuite. Alſo the vpper partes of the body muſt continually be exerciſed. In thoſe, which piſſe bloud through breaking of a veine, if the exulceration be left in the places, you ſhall cure them after the bloud is ſtopped by thoſe things that are ſpoken of in the chapter of exulceration of the raines.

Cure of bloudy vrine comming through circuites, or breaking of a veine, or gnawing.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of inflammation of the Reines.

De Renvm Inflammatione.

THE reins are vexed with inflammation for diuerſe cauſes. For both corrupt humours, and ſtripes, and rubbings together, and drinking of medi- *Cauſa.*

cines doe engender inflammation of the reines, and ſpecially continuall and
Signa. vehement ridings. There commeth to the ſicke a beating paine behind about the firſt ioint of the backe, a litle aboue the baſtard ribs: but the paine ſtretcheth vpward, euen vnto the liuer, ſpecially the right ſide reine being vexed, but downeward vnto the bladder and priuy members and the loins and hips: and alſo to the ſhare and thighs. Alſo there followeth aſtoniſhment of the leg that is neare, that it can neither be ſtretched out right, nor he cannot goe on his feet. And whether ſneeſing or any other concuſſion do chaunce, they are vexed with moſt vehement paine, their extreame parts be cold, and moſt the calfes of the legs, and the feet. There is preſent difficulty in making of water, and they piſſe continually & painfully. In the beginning their vrine is thin and watery, hauing no reſidence in it: but the inflãmation waxeth worſe, it is more rubicund. Alſo afterward it is groſſe & filthy, & there be vehement feuers preſent. And if the inflammation encreaſe ſtill, al theſe ſigns wax more vehemẽt. To theſe commeth diſpoſition to vomit, & gnawing of the ſtomacke, & vomiting of choler. Many of them are vexed, & ſweat vntill their hearts faile them: their belly is ſtopped, ſo that they are puffed vp with wind, & do ſend out belkings continually. There followeth vehement abhorring of meat, and to ſome there are continuall exacerbatiõs, but to ſome between whiles. And generally egeſtion of the wombe, & much excretion of vrine do go before thoſe paines. The ſick muſt lie in a very ſoft bed: & the firſt day he muſt abſtaine frõ meate, but you may not extend his faſting to many daies. For the vrines being made more pure & ſharpe by faſting, do vex with moſt vehement biting & gnawing.
Victus ratio. Therfore in the beginning you muſt nouriſh them with thin ſoupings, that do eaſe and ceaſe gnawing and biting (as is) broth of *ptyſan* or *alica* of barley. Alſo mallowes for his pot herbs doth much profit. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bin ſoddẽ. To be ſhort let his diet be thin, & ſuch, as is in other inflammations. For the cure, in the beginning you muſt by and by let
Curatio. him bloud, & you muſt cut the veine that is in the ham or in the anckles, and that muſt be done on the leg that is right againſt the reine, that is vexed. Alſo ſometime (as *Galen* ſaith) you muſt let bloud of the arme (that is) when the inflammation is new, and abundance of bloud is preſent. After bloud letting you
Localia. muſt come to outward medicines, as cataplaſmes, foments, liniments, emplaiſters, and ſuch like, which haue vertue to coole meanly, & to eaſe paine, made of the oiles of roſes, quinces and chammomill, of barley meale, beane meale, fænugreeke, lineſeed, and ſuch like, which be rehearſed in the chapters of inflammation of the liuer & the ſpleene. And if the paine be not eaſed by thoſe things that be applied outwardly: apply a cupping glaſſe to the loines, and the guts, and ſcarification being made, you muſt draw out much bloud. Then you muſt vſe nouriſhment of ſponges, and other things which can eaſe paine. You muſt only beware al this time, that you giue not ſuch medicins to drink as prouoke vrine, for they hurt vehemently by bringing in gnawing and biting humors to the inflamed parts. This medicin I haue proued to be ſingularly good
Note. ℞. the iuice of clary, and the iuice of nightſhade, ana. ℥ij. drunk in ℥.vj. of ſtale ale, morning & euening vj. daies together. Alſo you muſt beware in the beginning of the inflammatiõ of purging medicins. But yet you may vſe ſoft cliſters

(ſpecially

(ſpecially if the belly be coſtiue) made of the decoctiō of mallows, or lineſeed, & fænugreek, or *ptyſan* broth, putting to it oile of violets, or chammomill oile. But you muſt beware that you put not in great abūdance of it, for thē the bowels being filled & ſtretched out with it, will preſſe together the reins. But when the inflammation is perfectly ceaſed and concoct, which you may know by the ceaſing of the paine, then alſo you may purge him by medicines that prouoke vrine. For after inflammations concoct & digeſt, the vrine cōmeth forth much in quantity & groſſe. And in thoſe that haue reſidence, it is good, & ſo iudgeth the beſt altogether. What medicines prouoke vrine, we haue taught in the ſecond book of making of medicins the 7. chap. ſpecially among pot herbs, fennell, *apium*, and parſeneps well ſodden, are good. And if by the aforeſaid medicines, the inflammation be not driuen away, and if neither the paine, nor the feuer, nor the heauines do reſt by vſing of the aforeſaid things, and alſo if difficulty of piſſing, and often dropping downe of the vrine, do vex the patient, theſe betoken matter to be gathered in that part. Therefore as ſwiftly as you can, you muſt helpe the ſuppuration, and breaking out of the matter. For the which purpoſe, a ſponge continually wet in water and oile applied in ſtead of a foment profiteth. For the ſame purpoſe alſo vſe cataplaſmes which are made of barley meale, bran, figs, *althæa*, & ſuch like, reherſed before in the chapter of inflammatiō of the liuer. Alſo it profiteth greatly to diſcend into a bath made of mollifying herbs, as mallows, *althæa*, lineſeed, fenugreek. And if after perfect ſuppuration, the rupture & breaking be delaid & taried (which you may know if the feuers and pains wax leſſe, and ſenſe of heauines remain about the reine that is affected) miniſter thoſe things in drinke, which prouoke vrine, as is decoction of fennell, peniroiall, origan, & ſuch like. For theſe ſometime do breake the ſuppuration, & purge out the matter with the vrine. And if the vſing of thē do profit nothing, you muſt waſh the belly with ſharpe cliſters: as with root of wild cucumber ſodden and alaied, or decoction of garlike or radiſh. You muſt ſteepe thoſe in brine & commix a litle oile, wherby they may be made ſlippery to be poured in. Theſe muſt be throwen in with a cliſter pipe, and the ſick muſt be bidden to hold it long time: for they are wont often to breake that ſuppuratiō, together with that, that they mollifie the belly. Alſo if the rupture & breaking tary, commin with wine called *paſſum* helpeth, & rew with *vinum malſum*. Moreouer the rupture being made, litle peeces of fleſh being lōg, are ſent out with the vrine. And if the vlcers be malignant, there be ſent out humors ſtinking, ſwart, and ſlimy, but if they be benigne & gentle, the matter that is piſſed forth, is white, equall, light, & without grieuous ſauour, & litle in quantity. After the eruption and breaking out of the matter, miniſter milk, with hony, and other things which ſhall be rehearſed in the Chapter of vlcers of the reines.

Signa ſuppurationis.

Signa perfectæ ſuppurationis.

Signa rupturæ factæ.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the ſtone in the reines.

De Calculo Renvm.

THE ſtone of the reines happeneth oftner to men of perfect age, then to children. The cauſe of ingendring of ſuch ſtones is continual crudity and rawneſſe of the ſtomacke, whereby abundance of groſſe and earthy humours is heaped vp together, and burning of fiery heate about the reines, parcheth

Cauſa.

the humours, and knits them together, and hardneth them into a ſtone. The ſtones be in the reines, nigh their ventricles either litle or great, and ſomtime ſmaller, ſometime many, differing among themſelues in greatneſſe, figure, colour, and ſharpnes, for they are found black, whitiſh and pale. There chanceth to the ſicke grieuous paine in the reins, and he feeleth like as it were a bodkin thruſt in, and yet there appeareth no ſwelling without. He can turne his backe bone hardly. The leg that is right againſt the reine, that is diſeaſed, is aſtonied there is preſent abhorring of meat and vomiting. About the beginning of obturation and ſtopping, the vrine is piſſed forth litle in quantity & watery. Afterward there followeth perfect ſuppreſſion of the vrine, & the wombe auoideth nothing, but it maketh many proffers to go to the ſtoole. Somtime there is auoided forth bloud, through the violence of the ſtones, ſpecially if they be ſharpe ſtones. Alſo the vrine hath grauelly reſidence, ſpecially when the ſtone is remoued from the reins, which ſignes aforeſaid *Hippocrates* declareth in *lib.* 6. *Epid. par.* 1. *Aphor.* 5. Moreouer things that be light and round, are eaſily ſent out: but not ſo, if they be of any other forme or faſhion: but ſpecially if they be long and ſharpe, they are hard to be ſent out. When the ſtone, ſtopped in the reines, doth cauſe moſt vehement pains, leſt abundance of bloud through the greatneſſe of the paine ſhould come downe together to the member diſeaſed, in a body that is full of humors and ſtrong, you muſt by and by cut the vain in the hamme of that leg that is aſtonied, and is right againſt the reine that is diſeaſed. But if thoſe that labor of ill digeſtion or vicious humors, purging of the abundant humor is good for them. Neither may this caution be omitted, except ſome other thing do forbid them: which alſo *Hippocrates* biddeth, while he teacheth that yong men ſhould be purged with *hellebore*. Alſo if it be not lawful to let bloud, nor to miniſter purgation, you muſt waſh the womb by miniſtring of cliſters, which you muſt do at that time ſpecially, when there is great plenty of excrements in the bowels. But you muſt onely beware that they be not ſtrong cliſters, and that they do not draw plenty of humors from other places to the bowels, leſt the paſſages of the vrine ſhould be ſtreightned and preſſed together. But let them be ſuch as are only able to auoid the excrements contained in the bowels, as is this cliſter. ℞. mallowes, *althæa*, mercury, maidenhaire, perietary. ana. *M.* j water creſſes. *M* j. ß. ſeeds of parſley, *apium*, fennell, & flaxe. ana, ʒ iij root of *gladon*. ʒ. j. ß. bran. ʒ. j. boile them in iuſt quantity of water vnto the third part, & then take of the licour of that decoction being ſtrained ʒ. xj. of *caſia fiſtula*. ʒ. j. of *hierapicra*. ʒ. ß. *mel roſarum* ſtrained. ʒ. j. ß. oiles of dill, rew, and chammomill. ana. ʒ. j. ſalt ʒ. ij. commixe them all and make a cliſter. But we may in no caſe vſe continuall cliſters, and neglect almoſt all other remedies, as many phiſitions do now adaies, but vſe them twiſe or thriſe, but ſo that they be not kept aboue their accuſtomed time. For if they be holden longer then they ought to be, they cauſe preſſing together, and ſtreightnes of the reins, and the conduits of the vrine. When the belly is purged and emptied of excrements, you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins, which can looſen the conduits and paſſages. For which purpoſe the region of the reines, and the loines muſt be annointed with this medicine. ℞. oiles of dill, and of ſweete almonds. ana. ʒ. ij. oile of chammomill. ʒ. j. ß. hens greaſe, and gooſe greaſe. ana. ϑ. ij butter without

Differences of ſtones.
Signa.
Curatio.
Veneſectio.
Purgatio.
Cliſter.
Note.
Vnguentum.

without ſalt. ℥.j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a ſoft ointment. Alſo he must vſe inceſſions of the decoctions of calamint, origan, water creſſes, cole wortes, leaues of *althæa*, mallowes and ſuch like, or the ſicke muſt often be let downe into a great veſſell of warme ſweete water. Alſo foments of bran, with leaues of *althæa* ſodden, being applied to the grieued place be verie good. Alſo cataplaſmes made of wheat meale, of lineſeed & fenugreeke, of lupines, of the roote of dog fennell beaten very ſmall, and of cammomill. Alſo it is good to lay bread ſodden in wine called *paſſum* about the loynes and the bellie. Neither ſhall he doe raſhly which applyeth cataplaſmes, and other things before rehearſed to the bladder and the ſhare. But you muſt bring on heapes one plaiſter after another, before the firſt do coole: for cold doth draw together & bind, and ſo doth hold ſtill the ſtone in the reines, and in the conduites of the vrine. And if you liſt not to vſe ſo many cataplaſmes, you may couer it with ſome heating thing vpon it that it coole not, for theſe ſometimes, and that not ſeldome, are wont to ſuffice for to caſt out the ſtone by the vrine. And if theſe driue not away the diſeaſe, you muſt miniſter in drinke thoſe thinges which prouoke vrine. Theſe that follow draw much vrine: gladon, S. Iohns wort, parſley, *oreoſelinum*, grommell, *ammi*, ſeede of *daucus* & fennell, *aſarum*, roote of brionie and mather, barke of the roote of capers, ſperage and ſuch like. With theſe commixe thoſe things that bring downe vrine vnto the reines: as is roote of pencedane, or dog fennell, briony, *apium* and *radicula*. Alſo commix with them thoſe things that breake and teare the ſtone in the reines, as is, *ſium*, maidenhaire, *bdellium*, tutſan ſeede, *bruſcus* roote, ſaxifrage, betonie, roote of *damoſonii*, broth of cicers, roote of cipreſſe, grommell, *lapis iudaicus*, *xanthium*, the ſeede and roote of *althæa*, gumme of plomb tree, earth wormes ſodden, and ſtones and ſponges of the ſea. Euery one of theſe part of them ſodden, & part of them very finely powdred, miniſter them to drinke. But it is beſt to miniſter thoſe things which prouoke vrine and breake the ſtone, at that time, when the vehement paines be releaſed, which chanceth when the ſtone is remoued, and ſtirred out of his place. But if the ſtones be eſtabliſhed faſt, and be vehemently compact in the reines, he muſt eſchew much drinke, and alſo thoſe things that prouoke vrine: for ſeeing they bring with them to the reines a great aboundance of excrements, they cauſe the paſſages of the vrine to be ſtopped, and let the paſſing of the ſtones out of the reines. You muſt releaſe and loſen the reines, & the conduites of the vrine, with foments, cataplaſmes and inceſſions, as is aforeſaid. Alſo the belly muſt be voided with light clyſters, leaſt the paſſages of the vrine be ſtopped. After that paine is a litle releaſed, you may alſo apply profitably to them a cupping glaſſe, ſpecially ſubtilly faſtened to, if inflammation do not let it: for often times cupping glaſſes do ſo remoue on heapes thoſe ſtones, that they ceaſe the paines by and by (that is) the ſtones being caried into the amplitude of the bladder. Wherefore in the beginning faſten a cupping glaſſe aboue from the reine, and then to the part about the priuie members, ouerthwartly according to the placing of the conduites of the vrine. Moreouer ſtones being brought from the reines to the bladder, and for their greatneſſe being holden ſtill about the necke of the bladder, they do often bring the ſicke into extreme perill, as well through their pricking paine,

Inceſſions.

Cataplaſmata.

as also because they will not suffer the vrine to come out. You must goe about to let the sick lie in such a fashion, that he may lie vpright, and haue the ioints of his huckle bones lie verie high. Then you must stirre them many wayes, that by al the meanes that you can inuent, you may make the stone to fal out of the passage of the bladder. Afterward you must bid the sicke to put out the vrine quickly: but when the stone is not cast out, you must moue him againe, and vse it againe and againe often. And if you do profite nothing by thus doing, you must put in an instrument called *catheter*, which is apt to drawe out vrine, and with that you must draw the stone from the necke of the bladder, and bring out the vrine. Afterward you must labour to breake the stone being in the bredth of the bladder, with conuenient medicines by potions: but if the stone fall out of the bladder, it staieth about the middle passage of the yarde, and by wounding it bringeth perill of exulceration: then you must poure hote water by litle and litle, from the furthest parts of the yarde, or you must put the yard in hote oile, that hath dissoluing vertue in it. Also you must minister much of some docoction made of those things that prouoke vrine, and you must bid the sicke gather much vrine, and afterward to put it out, and to expell it diligently: for so the stone withdrawen is wont to fall out. But when you cannot drawe him out this way neitheir, you must cut the yarde aboue with a litle wounde, about the bignesse of an acorne: for it is not good to cut it vnder the yarde; for almost alwaies it turneth into a *fistula*, and afterwarde the vrine cõmeth out by the cleft. The stone being at the last remoued away, you must preserue the man, that the reines be no more troubled with the stone.

Preseruation from the stone.

The greatest thing to auoid engendring of the stone, is to vse meates of good iuice, easie of digestion, & moderate. Therfore it is good for him to beware of all meates of hard substance, and which are hard to be broken in peeces with chewing. Also let their exercises be meane, and let them vse but litle all kinde of pulse, and of corne: also cheese, milke, & the meates that are made of them. Moreouer blacke wine, and plentie of flesh, and generally all things of grosse iuice, and that be ouer hot and sharpe. You must admonish them, whom the stone hath afflicted, that they vomit often after supper, and that they drinke wormewood continually. And at certaine times, if bloud seeme to abound, let them cut a veine, or if vicious humors be gathered on a heape, let them vse a purging medicine, agreeing to their temperament. Also, their water throughout all their diet, must be most pure and strained. Also let their wine be thinne & white, and not verie old; for that is meete to prouoke vrine. Also they must vse as well meates as medicines that prouoke vrine. Therefore they must eate daily parsneps very well sodden, fennell, *Sium*, peniroiall, and such like. Among medicines this powder is of much effect.

Powder against the stone of the reines.

℞. of the rootes of fennell, sperage, & *filipendula*, ana. ℥ j. rootes of mather. ℈. j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*, & *Althea*, ana. ℥ j licorice scraped. ℥. ij. the stones of sea sponges, & *lapis indaicus*, ana. ℈ j. seedes of *ammeos*, *daucus*, parsley, saxifrage, fennell, anise, grommell. ana. ℥ ß. seedes of melons, and citrons pilled. ana. ℥ j ß seede of *alkakengi*. ℥ ß. pellitory of the wall, mallowes. ana. ℥ j pulioll mountain, maidenhaire, peniroiall, *asari*, ana. ℥ ß. of the bloud of a male goat dried & præparat. ℥ j. *bdellium*, *ammoniac*, ana. ℥ ß. of crabbes eyes, cinnamon chosen and squinant. ana. ℈ ij. beate all & bring

bring them into a moſt fine powder, whereof giue the weight of one drachme euery fourth day, or once a weeke in the morning with thinne wine. Moreouer the preparating of the goates bloud aforeſaid is taught of *Ætius. lib.* 11. *cap* 12. Other remedies we will ſpeake of in the chapter of the ſtone in the bladder.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of vnmeaſurable piſſing.

De Diabete.

Diabetes quid. DIABETES is a continuall diſeaſe about the reines, cauſing much thirſt: and alſo whatſoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, it is piſſed out againe. *Cauſe.* This diſeaſe is ingendred of weaknes of the retentiue vertue of the reines: but there is ſuch ſtrength of the attractiue vertue, that it ſucketh the whole body through immoderat heate. There followeth to the ſick a ſtubburne thirſt, neither are they filled by miniſtring any kind of licour. Therefore they are con- *Signa.* ſtrained to drinke continually, becauſe that which is drunke, goeth on ſo ſwiftly by the vrine againe. Alſo the bowels of the ſicke ſeeme to burne, the loynes ſwell vp, and the ſtones and haunches alſo. And if yet more gnawing heate be increaſed in the bowels, the ſtomacke is wrinckled, and the veines in it are lifted vp, all the ſtate of the body is leane, and there chaunceth grieuous conſuming of the body. The effect of the cure conſiſteth in that, to ſtop the ſharpnes *Curatio.* of the humour, and the bloud, & with that to make the wheyiſh humour which is commixt with it, of ſlow mouing, and to correct the diſtemper of the reines. Therfore by and by, when the euill beginneth, being not yet come to his perfection, it is beſt to cut the veine on the arme, and to draw out bloud moderately. Alſo you muſt giue him things that prouoke vrine meanely, which may purge out the vicious humours that be ſetled in the reines. But if the euill be immoderate & old, you muſt neither vſe bloud letting, nor miniſter any thing that prouoketh vrine: for theſe do further the colliquation and conſuming of the body, which doth chaunce alſo by it ſelfe. For in them that this euill is inueterate, their ſtrength faileth them, and through bloudletting the whole body is made ſharper, and things that prouoke vrine, do multiplie and increaſe the euill in them. The greateſt and chiefeſt remedie of this diſeaſe, is to reuomite that vp againe, that is drunke. Let his drinke be verie cold, as alſo let the reſt of his diet be cooling. Therfore giue him meates of good iuice, and which *Diet.* can difficultly be changed, and do lacke mordacitie and gnawing: or which is able to ſtop mordacitie and ſharpneſſe, as be, rere egges, *alica* made like a ſouping, and leane ſwines fleſh much ſodden. Alſo you may well giue them new cheeſe well compact, and without ſalt: and milke wherein flint ſtones, or red hote ſteele hath bene quenched, the whey taken away. Alſo for ſouping, cold Ptiſan broth is good. For potherbs, take endiue, lettuce, & purſlaine. Of fruits, peares, apples, and pomegranates. Alſo fiſhes of grauelly places be good. He muſt drinke wine that is red and thicke, well alayed with water, for to waſh the ſalt humours, which cauſe the thirſt: for wine chaungeth the temperature of the bodie to ſweeteneſſe. In drinke alſo you muſt miniſter vnto him iuyce of pomegranates, *rob de ribes*, or *rob de barberies*. For medicines, miniſter vnto him *Medicamenta.* the iuyce of knotgraſſe, or of ſanguinarie with blacke wine. Alſo decoction of

comferie and of dates, and of mirtle beries, or peares. Likewise sirupes of roses, and mirtles, and such like. Also Trochiskes of *spodium* may be ministred with iuyce of knotgrasse, or blacke wine. Outwardly you must apply to the sides, the loynes, and the share, ointments, cataplasmes, and cerotes that do coole: as be those which are made of rose vineger, *polenta*, lettuce, duckes meate, pellitorie of the wall, vine leaues, purslaine, and such like. For which purpose also, ointments do profit, made of oyles of roses and mirtles, or annointings with the iuice of nightshade, or of vine buddes. Also you must lay to the *Hypochonders* or sides in forme of a cataplasme, Barley meale, wrought vp with vineger, & oyle of roses. Also vse this emplaister; ℞. barley meale. ℥. ß. vine buds, tops of willow, *bursa pastoris*, ana. M. ß. the rind of pomegranates. ℥. ij. ß. purslaine. M. j. seeds of quinces. ℥. j. red roses. M. j. ß. boile them all in water vnto the thicknes of hony, then adde to it oyle of roses. ℥. ij. oile of mirtles. ℥. j. boile them againe, & make a plaister. Of these aforesaid things you may make a Cerote, by putting to *hypociſchidos*, *acatia*, bole armoniack, rosen and wax. Also you must prouoke them to sweate, that the vicious humors may be turned to sweating out. The best euaporation and sweating is in a tunne, made with herbes and other hot things to prouoke sweate after such sort, that the head may be without the tunne. Or else apply a vessell full of hote water to the patients feete, lying in his bed, and prouoke sweat. Also wash the conduite with plantaine water, and burnt alume.

Localia.

Emplastrum.

Sudorum euocatio.

CHAP. XL.

Against vlcers of the reines.

Causæ.

Renum vlcera.

VLcers or boyles of the reynes be caused through rupture, and breaking of the veines in the reines. Also it is caused through rotting of inflammatiõ, and through sharpe and gnawing humours, caried into the reines. When the reines are exulcerate, there is paine felt in the loines, with heauinesse, and the vrine is pissed forth without any impediment, which chaunceth not so in the vlcers of the bladder. Also there is atter commixed in the vrine with litle peeces of flesh, or haires swimming in them. According to *Hyppocrates* saying, 4. *Aphor.* 75. who saith, if bloud or atter be pissed out, it signifieth exulceration, either of the reines, or of the bladder. And by and by after he saith, if in a grosse and thicke vrine there appeareth litle peeces of flesh, or as it were haires, they are sent from the reines. Therefore when these appeare, let the sicke eschue crudities, and sacietie or fulnesse. Therefore let him eate no raw things in his meates, neither that which is hard of digestion, or that will easily corrupt, or ingender inflammations or windinesse. Let him chiefly abstaine from those things, which do soone waxe soure or sharpe. Also from all sharpe and burning things, and whatsoeuer doth breed and ingender choler: as is, much thirst, abstinence, hunger, labour, wrath, solitarinesse, exercise, watching, and immoderate sawces. He must eschue aboue all things immoderat riding, & all vehement mouing and stirring: also he must auoyd perpetuall idlenesse, and continuall bathing. He must vse new bread well wrought, & giue him flesh of birds of the mountaines, and kids flesh, and such like tender flesh. Also giue him scalie fishes of grauelly places, rosted on a grediron. Moreouer, riuer crabs, soupings of Ptisan, and *amylum* sodden with milke, be maruellous good. Giue him also

Signa.

Diet.

also milke mixed with egs, and the fat broth of a henne. Also rere egges ministred alone, are good. Of pot-herbes, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, pursslaine, and lettuce are good: but all these must be sodden, for the sicke must eate nothing that is raw, as is aforesayd. Of frutes, raisins are not hurtfull, and pine nuts. Also almonds well blanched are good. Much drinke & strong must be eschued. And he must altogether refraine from cold drinke: for cold, as *Hyppocrates* saith, 5. *Aphor.* 20. is an enemie to vlcers. For his drinke let him vse wine that is alayed, and somewhat restrictiue: or let him drinke goates milke, or sheepes milke, or almond milke. Carnall copulation is maruellous euill, not onely for vlcers, but also for all other diseases of the reines, specially in old men, and in them that be weake of nature. Such things must be eschued as prouoke vrine. Also let bathing be seldome vsed, as is aforesayd. It is not vnprofitable to vse naturall bathes, and waters sprong of themselues, and specially allume waters, and brimstone waters, for it is commodious to wash cold places: it destroyeth vlcers that be hard to cure, aswell outwardly as also inwardly. Also naturall waters drunke after the morning walke are good. The cure of vlcers of the reines, when as they are caused through sharpe and gnawing humours, must be begun with purging of vicious and gnawing humors. They that are thus affected, you must also purge them by vomite: for vomite is not good onely to auoyde vicious humours, but also if any man do vomite boldly euery moneth, he shall dissolue the vlcer of the reines, and what euill soeuer may chaunce there: for it turneth the mouing of the humours into a contrary part. Also in the meane season you must minister medicines which do stop the gnawing of the sharpe humours, as is, mallowes, endiue, sorrell, pursslaine, seede of melons, cucumbers, and gourds, syrupes of violers, roses, and water lillies, and the conserues of them. But when the vicious humours be purged, he must drinke *aqua mulsa*, or the decoction of fenugreeke with honie, or of cucumbers, or of mallowes, or of melons seed with *hydromel*. Also minister milke with hony newly milked, and hote: for it is good to purge the vlcers. Also goates whey, decoction of barley, raisins and licorice, is maruellous good, and the iuyce likewise. When that the vlcers be purged and cleansed: which you may know, if there appeare in the vrine, neither peeces of the couer of the vlcer, nor yet dreggie and filthie matter, but matter that is whitish, light, equall, and litle in quantitie: then minister such medicines, as do drie vp and conglutinate. For which purpose giue him bolearmoniacke, gumme tragacanth, *amylum*, *terra lemnia*, and such like before rehearsed. But among other things, this powder is maruellous good; R. *Terra lemnia*, bolearmoniacke, ana. ℥. j. ß. *Tragacanthæ*, *spodium* burnt, ana. ℥. j. *amylum*, pine nutres toasted, ana. ℥. ß. lineseed, cucumber seed blanched, melons seed, ana. ℥. ij. seed of *Apium*. ℈. ij. dragons bloud. ℥. j. beate them all together, and make a verie fine powder, of the which giue the sicke daylie ℥. ij. with milke newly milked. Moreouer, outwardly you must applie such things as can drie and strengthen the reines. Therefore minister emplaisters and cerotes, or ointments made of the oyles of roses, and of mirtles, of barley meale, frankensence, masticke, red roses, & such like. Examples whereof you may seeke before. As for other remedies, we will rehearse hereafter in the Chapter of vlcers of the bladder.

Curatio.

Vomita.

Medicins stopping gnawing of humours.

Purging of the vlcers.

Glutinatiues.

Pulus.

To drie and strengthen the reines.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the ſtone in the bladder.

Calculum veſicæ. STones in the bladder do ingender oftener in children, then in older folke.

Cauſe. When that vrine groſſe and very thicke is caried into the largeneſſe of the bladder, it ſetleth and ſtayeth there, like dregs of wine, or muddie water, and afterward through the heate that is in children, being dried and compact together, it breedeth a ſtone. Therefore there be two ſpeciall cauſes of the ingendring of the ſtone in the bladder: that is, thickneſſe of the vrine, & heate of children.

Signa. They that haue the ſtone in the bladder, they itch often, and do handle their priuie members, which alſo are ſwollen, and they are conſtrained to make water continually, & they are vexed with the ſtrangury, or dropping out of vrine.

Curatio. The cure of this diſeaſe is almoſt the ſame that the cure of the ſtone in the reines is. But they differ in this thing, becauſe the ſtones of the bladder require ſtronger medicines, and you muſt apply the medicines in another place then you did in the cure of the reines. The ſtones that are ingendred in the bladder, are broken chiefly with theſe medicines (that is) the ſeed and roote of fennell, of louage, blacke pionie ſeeds, motherwort, cammomill, the roote and ſeede of *althæa*, *ſium*, maidenhaire, ſorrell rootes, the ſtones of ſponges, the ſtone of *tecolithus*, grommell, *bruſcus* roote and ſeede, the ſtones which come out of men with their vrine, brayed and drunke, the ſeed of little burres, the barke of capers, ſothernwood ſeed, iacint, white violets, ſmalach, parcelie, and other ſuch like, which do prouoke vrine, and which be rehearſed in the chapter of the ſtone in the reines.

To breake the ſtone in the bladder. To theſe you muſt conioyne the moſt laudable remedie (that is) a hedge ſparow being dreſſed in ſalt, and taken raw in meate, doth heale the diſeaſe perfectly. For it expelleth the ſtones that are already ingendred by the vrine, & it letteth them from ingendring any more. Alſo goates bloud is a preſent remedie, aſwell for the ſtone of the reines, as of the bladder: for it diſſolueth thoſe that be ingendred, and driueth them out with the vrine, and prohibiteth other to ingender any more, & ceaſeth paine. Furthermore, if the ſtones of the bladder cannot come out by the paſſage of the vrine, but that they be there ſtopped, and compact together, & ſo do cauſe ſuppreſſion of vrine, then the ſicke muſt be vpward, ſo that his hips muſt lye vpward and higheſt, and then you muſt moue him hither and thither manie wayes, that thereby the ſtone may fall out of the paſſage, and afterward bid him piſſe euen as he lyeth yet vpward. But if he cannot make water ſo neither, prouoke the vrine by a cyring, and after that you muſt miniſter thoſe medicins which haue vertue to breake the ſtone in the bladder. And if the cure come not to paſſe by this meanes, you muſt come to cutting. The ſtone therfore being conſumed by any of the meanes aforeſaid, ſuch an order of diet muſt be appointed to the patient, that the ſtone may not ingender againe, which we haue preſcribed in the Chapter of the ſtone in the reines.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.

Cauſe. IT chanceth ſomtimes that a veine breaketh in the bladder, & then ſome of the bloud is ſent out, and ſome waxeth thick and curdeth within. When the bloud

bloud is thickened and curded within, the patients heart faileth him, and he waxeth pale, his pulſes be ſmall, darke, and thicke, he is ſorowfull, he is cold, and his ſtrength decayeth. And ſometime when a clod of bloud chanceth to fall into the paſſage of the vrine, then it ſtoppeth the going out of the vrine. *Signa.*

You muſt in this caſe, as alſo in other burſtings out of bloud, cauſe a very quick and ſpeedie remedie. Therefore if nothing forbid, it is good to cut the veine in the arme, drawing out the bloud by times, that by this meanes the bloud may be drawen backe often, and by litle and litle. Let the patient in his lying be layd vpward, and let his hips be lifted vp, and apply ſponges dipped in *poſca*, that is, water & vineger ſodden together, to coole him. Alſo the extreme parts muſt be bound, and the ſhare muſt be couered with ſponges dipped in *poſca*. If the euill increaſe, cupping glaſſes faſtened to the ilions, & to the loynes profit much. After irrigations with the ſponges dipped in *poſca*, you muſt vſe cataplaſmes of knotgraſſe, brambles, plaintaine and pomegranate floures. Alſo vſe cerotes made of *hypociſchis*, *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the Chapters of ſpitting of bloud, and of the fluxe *dyſenteria*. You muſt poure into the bladder, iuice of knotgraſſe, plantaine, or millefolie, commixing with it *acatia*, bolearmoniacke, trochiskes of *ſpodium*, and ſuch like. Alſe inceſſions of ſuch like things are good; for both *poſca* and decoction of *Lentiſcus*, and alſo of brambles and ſuch like, are good. Alſo you muſt miniſter in drinke, medicines apt to bring out bloud, as be, *rhaponticum* finely beaten, & xij red ſeeds of pionie, *terra lemnia*, horſetaile, the roote of centorie the great, the barke of frankenſence, and ſuch like. But in them that bloud is congealed and curded in the bladder, firſt you muſt go about to diſſolue and diſperſe that bloud with conuenient medicines. Therefore you muſt miniſter in drinke, motherwort, *ſtichados*, citrine, wormewood, ſothernwood, ſhauing of a vine, radiſh ſeede, hares or goates creame, each of them with *oximel*. Alſo *oximel* miniſtred by it ſelfe doth profit maruellouſly, for it diſſolueth the curds, that afterward they may come forth by litle and litle with the vrine. Apply outwardly bathes, ointments, irrigations, and other things that haue vertue to looſen and releaſe, which you muſt ſeeke out of the Chapter of the ſtone in the reines. Aboue other things this Cerote is verie good. ℞. of the oyles of roſes and cammomill, ana. ℥. j. ß. calamint, comin, leaues of elder, ana. ℥. iij. *bitumen Iudaicum*, gum ammoniacke, ana. ℥. ij hares creame, ℥. iij. ſothernwood, meale of fenugreeke ana. ℥. ß. ſpermacetie, ℥. j. with roſen and waxe as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote to apply to the ſhare. And if you profit nothing by doing thus, but the vrine is ſtill ſtopped, you muſt of neceſſitie vſe a cyring: by the which when you haue brought out the vrine, you muſt againe miniſter the things aforeſaid in drinke, & apply thoſe things outwardly, which do diſſolue congealed bloud. And if the clods of bloud will not yet be diſſolued, you muſt come to the curing of it likewiſe as you did in the ſtone of the bladder. *Curatio.* *To bring out bloud.* *To diſſolue curded bloud.* *Cerotum.*

CAAP. XLIII.

Of inflammation of the bladder.

OF diſeaſes that be in the bladder, and ingender there, the moſt grieuous and deadly is the inflammation thereof. The ſicke haue theſe tokens fol-

Signa. lowing. They are vexed with a ſharpe feuer, they watch, they raue, and ſpeake they wot not what: they vomit pure choler, and they cannot make water, the ſhare becometh hard, & hath vehement paine, they haue deſire to the ſtoole, as is wont in the diſeaſe called *Tenaſmus*; the ordure that commeth foorth is thinne and hath no reſidence: alſo ſomtime inflations follow, and the wombe is coſtiue, the right gut being preſſed together of the inflammation of the bladder. To them that haue this diſeaſe, if nothing let it cut the veine of the hamme without any tarying, or draw bloud of the ankels. Alſo miniſter to him a thinne kind of diet, as is preſcribed in other inflammations. He muſt alſo abſtaine from wine, and he muſt vſe water, wherein a litle cinnamon hath bene ſodden. Outwardly you muſt apply thoſe things that haue power to ceaſe and mitigate paine. Therfore the place of the bladder muſt be nouriſhed with oile wherein hath bene ſodden dill, lineſeede, and ſometime rew and *althea*. Medicines that be cold and reſtrictiue muſt altogether be forborne: & that chiefly becauſe the bladder is full of ſinewes: for colde as *Hyppocrates* witneſſeth 5. *Aphor.* 28. is an enemy to ſinewes. Moreouer becauſe cold things do ſhut vp & bind, and ſo do ſtop the vrine (which thing chancing in this euill by it ſelfe) it encreaſeth it. And laſt of all becauſe cold things do prohibite and let that the humors cauſing inflammation, may be diſſolued, conſumed & digeſted: therefore medicines meanely hote are rather to be applied, which haue vertue to ceaſe paine, to loſen the pipe and paſſage of the vrine, and to diſſolue the inflammation. Alſo let the guts be waſhed with ſoft and eaſie cliſters, and after the dung is come forth, caſt in oile of dill, or ſuch like thing to eaſe and ceaſe the paine. It is good to ſeeth poppie ſhelles, together with oile, and to poure in gooſe greaſe, or freſh hens greaſe ſodden together in the ſame oyle. In moſt vehement paine you muſt poure in ℥.j. of pilles of houndes tong diſſolued in oyle of dill: or take *opium* with mirrhe and ſaffron, and annoint it vpon wooll, and put it vp into the fundament. Alſo let the ſicke ſit in the decoction of lineſeede, fenugreeke roote of *althea*, *daucus* ſeede, and ſuch like, and bid the ſicke piſſe as he ſitteth in the water of the decoction: for the bladder is not ſtrong enough to receiue and expell out the vrine: therfore the patient or ſome that be about him, muſt thruſt & preſſe the ſhare eaſily & ſoftly, and that muſt not be done out of meaſure, leaſt that paine ſhold be augmented therby. Alſo after cliſters and inceſſions vſe foments by hote water, and apply oyle in oxe bladders or other veſſels, halfe ful, or litle bagges as is ſhewed in the chapter of the pluriſie. And if for all theſe things, the euill ceaſe not, faſten a cupping glaſſe with ſcarification to the grieued places. Moreouer he muſt abſtaine frō thoſe things which prouoke vrine vehemently, and he muſt eſchewe much drinke. When there appeareth euident declination of the diſeaſe, you muſt come to the vſe of thoſe things that haue vertue to diſſolue and mollifie, whereof we haue ſpoken often before. The putting in of a Cyring into him that is diſeaſed with inflammation of the bladder is not eaſie to vſe, and ſpecially in men: for ſeeing it cannot be put into them without paine, it ſharpeneth the paine and increaſeth the inflammation: but in women it is no great hurt to vſe it. For the paſſage of the vrine in them is ſhort and ſtraight, ſo that they may ſuffer the doing of it without paine. But if the perill through the ſtopping of vrine do ve-

Curatio.

Dyet.

Cliſter.

Fomenta.
Sacculi.

Catheter.

ry

ry much constraine you, then you must of necessity vse a ciring in men also, not because it taketh away the anguishe of the disease, but rather because it should amend the great suppression of vrine, and deliuer the patient frō deadly perill. After that you haue entised out the vrine, you must come againe to the remedies which do ease paine, vntill the inflammation be dissolued & rotted. Oftentimes the inflammation is wont to be dissolued by and by through the meanes of an *Erisipela*, rising outwardly vpon the skin, & remaining there, and not returning againe inward. Yea and oftentimes much vrine being cast out, doth iudge the euill. Yet neuertheles although these things appeare, you must still vse the remedies aforesaide: in as much as for the most part, perfect tension and stretching out being risen, continuall exacerbations and fittes are caused, and long constitution of the euill. But when the perillous fittes are ceased, and the constitution of the disease is now waxē old, you must come to the vsing of ointments, which do call out and bring forth the humours from within: and likewise emplaisters, which do rubifie and blister the skin, are to be applyed which you may finde after.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of vlcers of the bladder and his necke.

Vlcera vesica.

THE bladder is exulcerate either through some bile, or botch, or swelling, which hath bene before, or through some rupture, or by eating, and gnawing of a fluxe, or through some such like cause. There followeth this sickness sharpe paine of the bladder, at all times pissing and auoiding out matter. And when the vlcers be foule and filthy, there commeth forth dreggy and slimie matter, and such as hath a grosse residence like bran. And sometime thin skins like leaues, and wooll are sent out with the vrine. If the vlcers do spred abroad and feed deepe, there is sent out vrine that is blouddy, attery and stinking. To these signs may be added, difficulty of making water, and rising vp of the yard. There is paine not onely, when the passage of the vrine is exulcerate, but also when the exulceration is in the bottom or depth. You may know whether the exulceration be in the bottom of the bladder, or nigh the pipe and passage of the vrine by this: for if it be in the depth of the bladder, there followeth paine about the share: but if the vlcers be nigh the neck of the bladder, there is pain felt only at such time, as he maketh water, and specially at the beginning and ending of his pissing: & also his paine is the greater if the vrine be sharp. They that are vexed with this euill, they either sit continually, or they can not stand vpright, nor rest lying along, and through great and continuall pain they are killed with feuers, watchings, and consumings, some sooner & some later. But the vlcers of the bladder be incurable, or at the least waies very hard to cure: as well because the bladder is sinowy, as also because the vrine which is of nature sharpe doth continually touch the vlcers, and so gnaweth them: and will not suffer them to conglutinate and ioine together. For although much vrine be sent out, yet all the bladder cannot be cleane emptied, but alwaies some of the vrine is left in it, which doth continually touch the vlcers. Yea whē the abundance of vrine is sent out, then the bladder shrinketh vp and falleth together, so that the vrine that is left in it, although it be very litle, yet it toucheth

Signa.

Why the vlcers of the bladder be incurable.

euery part therof. But seeing that oftentimes some things chance besides our expectation, you shal go about the cure, by the which, if you bring nothing else to passe, yet you shall diminish the paines of the fits. First therefore, you must perswade the patient to lie downe & to rest in his bed: and that specially when that he hath a feuer. Thē you must minister remedies for intermitting feuers. The chiefe thing in this case hath bin drinking of milke, and this is to be compared aboue all other medicines. For it maketh smooth roughnes, & washeth vlcerations, and scoureth the euill. Let the rest of his diet be such, as that is, which is ministred in the exulceration of the reins. Also you must comfort the sick by medicins, that will let the ingendring of sharpe vrine, which doth gnaw and fret the vlcers. And if there be inflammation with the exulceration, cataplasmes of lineseed, and fenugreeke, and other things, which are rehersed before in the chapter of inflammation of the bladder, are apt and meet to be applied. Moreouer, if the exulceration do spred broder & eat deep, you must apply outwardly medicins somwhat restrictiue, and that such as be hot whē they are applied, that by their heat they might helpe the painefull places round about by mollifying them, & that through their vertue, they may prohibite the places nigh adioyning to feed & eat. Restrictiue medicins be these: gals, pomegranat rinds, alome, *acatia*, *hypociſchis*, and such like often rehersed of vs before. Also you must vse to minister to thē, medicines cast in with a ciring. You must cast into the exulcerate places, milke newly milked, or very good oile of roses warme. And if none of these be at hād, you must cast in continually most sweet water warmed: specially at such time as the gnawing is present. Also you must driue in by the fundament the iuice of *ptisan*, or the decoction of lineseede, cucumber seed husked, fenugreek, mallows, or milke with oile of roses. Moreouer when thou wilt minister a clister to him which is diseased in the bladder, he may not lie vpward, for the bladder then will not suffer the infusiō to enter in, because it lieth vpon the streight bowell: but the patient must lie groueling vpon his knees, and so you must cast in your infusion. Also let the sicke sit often in hot water, and in dissoluing decoctions, for these do cease paine somewhat. And when the vlcers do spred abroad and feed, you must cast into the bladder by a ciring such things as can stop the feeding: as be *acatia*, *hypociſchis*, *terra lemnia*, bole armoniack, & other rehearsed a litle before. But if the vlcers be foule and filthy, you must powre in medicins, which haue vertue to scoure & clense them, as is *mulsa* much watered, or milke with a litle hony, or with the seede of cucumbers cleansed. But if there follow sharpnesse and gnawing, cast in milke newly milked, mixed with good *amylum*, or tutty washed and dried with many waters, and then mixed with the milke. When the vlcers be scoured and purged cleane, you must procure to bring them to a scar, and to heale them. And that must be done by restrictiue incessions, and by emplaisters, foments, & irrigations, that be of like faculty and vertue. But if the exulceration do endure long time, as it chanceth for the most part, then the patient hath exacerbations and fits sometime, and intermission and space from them at other times. Therefore in the painfull fits apply emplaisters and irrigations, hauing power to cease & ease the paine, and in the time of the intermission between the fits, vse such things as haue vertue to destroy the euil. Therfore apply to the share,

Curatio.

Restrictiue medicines.

Note.

Synapiſmes,

Synapiſmes, and ſuch things as will rubifie & bliſter. And let the ſick vſe a diet that is good to reſtore ſtrength. And if the euil doth not wax gentler, you muſt make burnt ſcurfes about the ſhare, either by medicines or with iron, and to ſuffer the vlcers to purge and cleanſe them ſelues long time with matter flowing out. You may alſo miniſter medicines to ceaſe paine in drinke, if vehement pains vexe him. For this purpoſe aboue other things, which we haue reherſed in other places, the pils of *Alkakengi* with *opium* are good. Alſo theſe things following do much mitigate the pains of exulceration (that is) cucumber ſeede, mallowes, white poppy, *tragacanthe*, *amylum*, pine nuts and almonds. Therefore this medicine may be miniſtred. ℞. conſerue of violets. ℥. iij. ſeed of mallowes. ℥. ij. of the foure great cold ſeeds. ana. ℥. j. liquorace ſcraped. ℥. j. ß. gumme ϑ. ij. bole armoniacke. ℥. ß trochiskes of *terra lemnia* ℥. j. make them vp altogether with ſirupe of liquorice. Miniſter of it daily in the morning the quantity of an haſell nut. Moreouer you muſt throw into the bladder medicines that can ceaſe paine, and heale the exulceration. *To ceaſe paine.*

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Strangurie.

De Stillicidio Vrinae.

STranguria in Greeke, *ſtillicidium vrine* in Latine, is a diſeaſe whereas the vrine diſtilleth downe by drops, or by litle and litle and cauſeth a continuall prouoking & deſire to piſſe. This diſeaſe is cauſed through the ſharpnes of the vrine, or by exulceratiõ of the bladder, or by an impoſtume of the liuer, or the reins, which being broken & ſending the filth & atter to the bladder, through the ſharpnes thereof, it cauſeth continuall deſire to piſſe. You ſhall iudge that ſharpnes is the cauſe, if his vrines be cholerick, & alſo al the ſtate of the body, if the reſt of the ſignes betoken choler, & that gnawing do chaunce about the bladder. You may know the exulceration of the bladder, as alſo an impoſtume or bile of the liuer & the reins, by the ſignes afore reherſed in their owne proper chapters. If therefore the ſtrangury be cauſed through ſharpnes of the vrine, then you muſt purge the vicious and naughty humor, that doth abound, with all ſpeed. For the which purpoſe, beſides thoſe things which are oftẽ ſpoken of before, whey with *caſia fiſtula*, is maruellous good, or ſome other medicine that bringeth out choler. The cholerick humor being auoided & purged, the patient muſt vſe meats that be temperat, & that can ſtop the ſharpnes: as is iuice of ptyſan, mallows, purſlaine, violets, cucũber ſeed, & ſuch like. He muſt abſtaine from all things that be ſharpe or ſalt. Alſo let him eſchue wine, exerciſes, wrath, & ſlow eating: for all theſe things do heape vp choler in the body. Let him vſe ſtony fiſhes, & baths of ſweet water, which is wont to make temperat vicious humors maruclouſly. In drink you muſt miniſter much ſweet water hot, or the decoction of barley with ſirupe of violets, & roſes. But you may not giue him wine, as is ſaid, except it be ſweete and alaied with water. Alſo milke drunk hote, is the beſt thing that can be. To conclude for the order of his diet, he muſt vſe meats that do moiſten, & broths that do make the wombe ſoluble. But the ſicke muſt be cõpelled to piſſe continually: for if the ſharp dregs do tary lõg in the bladder, it gnaweth & exulcerateth it. Alſo to ſtop the ſharpnes of the humors, miniſter the medicin which we deſcribed in the end of the former

Στραγγυρία. *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Curatio.* *Victus*

chapter. For the ſame purpoſe miniſter decoction of licorice, or this powder
Puluis. following. ℞. of the ſeeds of melons husked, citrons, and cucumbers. ana. ʒ iij. ſeeds of gourds, purſlaine, & lettuſe. ana. ʒ. ij. of red roſes. ʒ. j. iuyce of licorice and of maſt. ana. ʒ. j. ß. beat them all and make a fine powder: whereof giue daily the weight of ʒ. j. ß. in the morning with ſirupe of licorice, or inleps of
Terebinthina reſina. violets or roſes. Alſo venice turpentine waſhed in roſe water or endiue water, & miniſter the quantity of a nut, or ſomtime two or three is maruellous good: for this (as Galen witneſſeth *lib. 5. de tuenda ſanitate*) doth not onely looſen the belly without hurt, and ſo by that meanes, turneth away the ſharpe humours from the paſſages of the vrine: but alſo it ſcoureth and cleanſeth the inward parts, and ſpecially the reines. And there hath bin ſome, that haue recouered health only by the vſe of this. Alſo cliſters made of the decoction of mallowes, violets, *althæa*, leaues of willow, water lillies, and other afore reherſed, putting
Cliſter. to them *caſia fiſtula*, ſuger, and oile of violets, and roſes do profit much. But if the ſharpnes do ſtill encreaſe, you muſt alſo caſt in by the yard into the bladder milke with *amylum*. Alſo for the ſame purpoſe, you may caſt in the decoction of white poppy, and you muſt annoint outwardly vpon the ſhare, and thereabouts oiles of violets, & water lillies, putting to them a very litle of the iuice of purſlaine. But if the ſtrangury doeth chaunce through exulceration of the bladder, or through ſome other part of the body being euill affected, and ſo purging it ſelfe out by the vrine, then it is manifeſt that thoſe members ought firſt to be cured, but yet ſo that this preſent euill be not neglected. The cures of euery part you may ſeeke out in their proper places and chapters.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of difficultie of piſſing.

De Difficvltate Vrinæ.

Δυσουρία. Cauſe. Dysvria in Greeke, *vrinæ difficultatis*, it is a diſeaſe wherein the vrine is piſſed hardly and difficultly. It is cauſed through weaknes of the bladder and through euill diſtempure of it which hurteth his actions. Alſo ſometime is cauſed of groſſe and fleugmaticke humors which ſtop the necke of the bladder. You may know cold diſtempure if it come of an outward cauſe, by the patients telling, and by the thinnes and whitenes of the vrine. But if beſides the whitenes there appeare groſneſſe in the vrine, you may iudge it a fleugmatick humour, which hath ſtopped the necke of the bladder, as is aforeſaid. Cold diſtempure is cured by thoſe things that do heat. Therefore he muſt vſe heating meats, and wine that is hote and condite. Alſo he muſt vſe medicines which prouoke vrine, as are parſeneps well ſodden, fennel, *apium*, ſperage, ſmalach, & ſuch like. Alſo crabs and hedgehogs do prouoke vrine very well. You muſt dry their fleſh and miniſter the weight of one ʒ in drinke. Alſo miniſter in drinke the decoctions of aromatique things, or electuaries made of them, and ſo nourſhed of them. Aboue other things the antidotes of *diacalaminthes*, *dialactia*, and *diacurcuma*, are very good. Alſo triacle giuen in drinke is maruellous good. You muſt nouriſh the ſhare without, with hote oiles, as is, oiles of rew, dill, lillies,
Fomenta. ſcorpions, and of *caſtoreum*. Alſo you muſt apply foments, and litle bags made of chammomill, ſothernwood, betony, mugwort, rewe, calamint, ſauein & ſuch like

oyles into the fundament. If a cold and fleugmatike humour do cause difficultie of pissing, then the patient must vse *eximell*, and decoctions of hysope, peniroiall, origan, time, and such like often before rehearsed. Also let him vse foments, irrigations, and litle bagges made of hot things, whereof we spake a litle before, and in the former chapters. Moreouer whether a grosse humour, or the stone, or a clod of bloud, or any other thing of that kind through stopping do let the passage of the vrine, it is good to put in a Cyring, vnlesse inflãmation of the members do let it, whereof also we haue admonished before. *Cure of fleugmatick humor that stoppeth.*

CHAP. XLVII.

Of stopping of the vrine.

De Svppressione Vrinae.

ISCVRIA in Greeke, *suppressio vrine* in Latin, it is a disease, in the which the vrine of the patiẽt is altogether letted & stopped. This disease is caused somtime through weaknes of the bladder, not being able to thrust out that which is contained in it. Also sometime it chanceth through stopping of the neather passage of the bladder, or of grosse humours, or of a stone congealed. Also it is wont to come either of an inflammation, or of hardnesse, or some swelling against nature, which maketh the passage straighter, or stoppeth it altogether. Also sometime it commeth by a litle peece of flesh, or a hard knob ingendred in the passage of the vrine. Also bloud congealed into clods in the bladder, is cause of the suppression & stopping of vrine. Also atter sent down to the bladder frõ the reins, or the liuer, or from some other vpper part, causeth stopping of the vrine, euen like as a grosse and clammie humor doth. Also it chanceth sometime, through the dull sense of the bladder, that the vrine is not made, & yet it is without hurt of the vertue expulsiue, whẽ as his proper sinews be euill affected: so in haile folk whẽ the vrine is holdẽ long time, the bladder is stretched out, and the vrine is stopped. If the stopping of the vrine be caused thorough weaknes of the bladder, it is knowen by those signes which declare the cold distempure of the bladder. If it be caused of grosse humors, it is knowen by the diet that went before. As if one that liueth idlely, hath vsed much meats which do ingender grosse and clammie humours. If it be caused of the stone, you may know it by the signes which are rehearsed before in the chapter of the stone. If it be caused of inflammation, or of any other swelling, it is knowen by paine, by feuer and by sight. When suppression of the vrine is caused thorough some peece of flesh, or some knob, it may be knowen by the signes of vlcers aforesaid: and also because that a cyring being put in, the vrine commeth out. Also a cyring being put into that part of the conduite or passage, where you coniectured the byle to be before, it moueth paine, and the flesh being broken with the cyring, there followeth out with the pissing of the vrine, both bloud and fragments of flesh. If clodded bloud cause stopping of the vrine, there went before it excretion & pissing of bloud, or flux therof. When as atter hath stopped the vrine, you may know it by things that chance before for either the bladder or the reines laboured of some euill before, whereby such, & so much atter might gather: or there hath bene an impostume in some member aboue the reines, which being broken the atter is sent down into the

Ischuria. Causa.

Signa.

reines,& ſo into the bladder: the reſt of the cauſes may be knowen by the patients telling. The cure is diuers according to the diuerſity of cauſes For if the ſtopping of vrine be cauſed through imbecillitie & weakneſſe of the bladder, you muſt miniſter and apply thoſe things which do heat, as is ſaid in the former chapter. For you muſt altogether remoue cold diſtempure, which letteth the actions of the bladder. If the withholding of vrine be ingendred of groſſe and clammie humours, he muſt be cured by foments, inceſſions, and cataplaſmes made of herbes that be hot, and that haue vertue to cut & diuide the humours, and with a diet of ſuch like things. Beſides thoſe things which we haue rehearſed in the former Chapter of difficultie of piſſing, this oyntment following is notably good, to take away the diſeaſe. ℞. of the oile of ſcorpions, oile of narde, and of lillies .ana. ℥.iij. gumme ſerapine, *bdellium*, and *oppoponax*, ana. ℈.gooſe greaſe, duckes greaſe, ana. ℥ ß roote of *Enula campana*. ℈.ij. peniroiall, calamint. ana. ℈.ſ. diſſolue the gummes in wine, & with waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. Alſo you muſt throw into the bladder with a cyring, oyle of ſcorpions, or lillies, or ſome other thing that can diſſolue, cut, & diuide clammie humors If the vrine be ſtopped through the ſtone or clodded bloud: you muſt ſeeke the cure out of their proper chap. For the ſtone which hath ſtopped the paſſage of the vrine muſt be remoued out of his place as is taught before in the 41. chap but the clodded bloud muſt be diſſolued, as is taught in the 42. chap. If the vrine be ſtopped through inflãmation, or ſome other ſwelling againſt nature, the cure muſt alſo be ſought out of their owne proper chap. And if the vrine be ſtopped through ſome litle peece of fleſh or hard knob, apply bathings and other diſſoluing & looſening medicines & ſuch as doe open and ſpread abroad the pipe and conduit of the vrine: examples whereof you may ſeeke out of the chap. of the ſtone in the reines. And if the vrine do not come out ſo, you muſt come to the vſing of a cyring, and by putting in of the inſtrument you muſt entice out the vrine. If the vrine be ſuppreſſed through the dull ſence of the bladder, you muſt raiſe vp his action, by prouoking vrine, & you muſt helpe it by inceſſions, foments, and other hot medicines, which can take away his ſleeping & dulneſſe. But you muſt only eſchue thoſe things which prouoke vrine, leaſt that through plentie of it, the bladder be ſtretched out, and ſo the contractiue vertue of it ſhould be hurt. Moreouer you muſt entice out vrine with *nitrum*, or ſalt peter, or with a quicke louſe, or with ſome other thing, that can ſtirre vp the vertue expulſiue of the bladder. In healthfull folke, when through ſome great buſines the vrine is holden too long, and ſo hath made the bladder feeble, that it can not expell it out, then he muſt helpe himſelfe thus. He muſt ſtand, ſo that the necke of the bladder may leane downeward, and muſt lay both his hands about his ſhare, and he muſt preſſe it and thruſt out the vrine by litle and litle, and thus may he doe alſo in the dull ſence of the bladder aforeſaid.

Curatio.

Cure if it be of weaknes of the bladder.

Cure if it be of groſſe humors.

Vnguentum.

Cure if it be of the ſtone or clodded bloud.

Cure if it be of a peece of fleſh or knobbe.

Cure if it be of the obtuſe ſence of the bladder.

Cure if it come in haile folke.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of exulceration of the priuie members.

De Exvlceratione Pvdendi.

VLcers ingendred in the priuie members without inflammation haue neede of medicines, which doe drie vp vehemently: ſuch as theſe be,

paper

paper burned, drie dill burnt, and drie *Aloes* made into pouder, for you can scarcely find a more present remedie. Also the roote of *Aristolochia rotunda* doth bring present remedie to the exulceration of the priuie members. Also among compound medicines, that is the most effectuous and profitable. ℞. *Aloes epaticum*. ʒ.ij. galles. ʒ.j. dragons bloud, bolearmoniacke, tuttie. ana. ʒ.j. rootes of *Aristolochia rotunda*. ʒ.ß. mirrhe. ϑ j. of gumme arabicke. ʒ.ij. alume burnt. ʒ. ß. let all these be beaten, and make a fine pouder, and strew it vpon the exulcerate partes. But if the vlcers be very moyst and foule, first scoure them and clense them with *mulsa* well alayed, and then after with goats milke: which thing being done, vse the aforesaid pouder, or *lapis hæmatites*, or frankensence, or pomegranate ryndes, or *terra lemnia*, or such like beaten into pouder. If there chance inflammation together with the exulceration, you must first remoue the inflammation with linnen clothes wet in rosewater, or night shade, or purslaine water, or housleeke water, putting to it the white of an egge, and applying it to the diseased place. The rest of the remedies, seeke out of other Chapters.

Aloe arida.

Puluis optimus.

Abstertion of the vlcers.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the continuall standing of the yard.

De Priapismo.

Priapismvs (as Galen witnesseth in *Lib. 6. de male affectis locis. Cap. 6.*) is when the yarde is stretched out in length and in breadth, nothing prouoking the patient to lust and desire, nor no heat gotten. And if there chance to the yard panting or beating, then the euill is called *Satyriasis*. This euill is caused (as Galen doth witnesse in the place aforesaid) either through immoderate opening of the mouth of the arteries, or of some vaporous spirite ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinow. But it followeth often after the gaping and opening of the mouthes of the arteries. For it is easier for them to stretch out wide, then for a fluuious and windie aire to ingender in the hollow sinow. For the loines being heat, it is reason that the arteries are made hotter, & that also their mouths should be wider opened. Therefore at that time, they send out no small substance of spirite or aire into the hollow sinow, which being a litle filled, it stretcheth out the yard, so that all his powre doth seeme to consist in the hollow sinow. Sometime this euill chanceth to them which haue abstained long time frō carnal copulation contrary to their custome. And this thing chanceth specially to them, that do abound with much bloud, and do not studie to disperse the abundance of bloud with much exercise. They that labour of this disease be grieued, as those be, which be taken with distention & stretching out of the sinows: for the yard being puffed vp, and stretched out, suffereth as it were a crampe. They that haue this conuulsion or crampe, doe quickly perish, vnlesse helpe be vsed to them by and by: and when they die their belly is puffed vp, and their sweat is cold. The cure is diuers according to the diuersitie of causes: for if the disease do chance through gaping of the mouthes of the arteries, & so through the heat of them, by & by it is good to let bloud by cutting of a veine; which thing also you shall doe, when this euill taketh them which abound with bloud, & haue abstained long time from car-

Priapismus.

Satyriasis.

Causa.

Curatio.

nall copulation, contrary to their cuſtome. And you muſt cut the blacke veine which is called *media* or *mediana*, the middle veine of the armes. Alſo he muſt vſe a thinne dyet, and abſtaine from wine. Giue him but litle meate made of corne, and that which doth ingender no winde at all, and that cauſeth thirſt, and it is good for him to vſe to drinke water: exerciſes & frictions or rubbings are well applied and vſed to diſſolue and diſperſe the ſpirits or ayre. Alſo it is good to goe about emptying by vomiting. Alſo if the wombe be coſtiue and bound, you muſt make it ſoluble with a cyſter, that is not very ſharpe, as that is which is made of the decoction of beetes, mallowes & mercury. You muſt altogether abſtaine from purging medicines, leaſt that the humors ſhould be drawne downeward. For the ſame cauſe alſo, he muſt eſchue thoſe things which haue vertue to prouoke vrine. To conclude, you muſt altogether labour & ſtudy to miniſter thoſe medicines which can void & empty the abundance, and draw vpward, & ſo turne the humours from the priuie members. And if the euill endure long, faſten cupping glaſſes with ſcarification. And if there be fulnes apply horſe leeches. But you muſt lay vpō the loines, thoſe things which do euidently coole, as is, nightſhade, purſlaine, henbane, & ſingreene. Alſo you muſt of neceſſitie annoint the yard, and the ſpace betweene the fundament & the yard, with ſome iuice or water of herbes that do coole gently. If a cerate made of fine oyle of roſes, waſhed often in cold water applyed as well to the yard, as alſo to the loynes, it doth notably well. The making of this cerate which is called *ceratum liquidum*, is taught of Galen. lib. 1. *de ſimplicium medicamentorum facultate.* cap. 6. Alſo this cerat is good. ℞. white waxe waſhed tenne times in cold water. quar. j. purſlaine. ℥ ij commixe them together and bring them into the forme of a cerate. To be ſhort, apply, and alſo miniſter in drinke thoſe medicines which can extinguiſh and quench ſeede: of the which we will ſpeake aboundantly in the next chap. Moreouer it is hurtfull for him to reſt, lying vpright, but he muſt lie on his ſide. He muſt altogether be kept from ſightes and ſtories, and rehearſing of thoſe things which pertaine vnto lecherie. If this diſeaſe chaunce of a vaporous and windie ſpirite, or aire ingendred in the hollow ſinow, all your whole cure muſt be turned to the diſperſing and diſſoluing of it. Therefore you muſt turne backe to the chapters of curing of inflammation, and windineſſe of the ſtomacke, and to the cure of the windie cholicke: for there you ſhall find plentie of remedies.

Clyſter.

The ſumme of the cure.

CHAP. L.

Of ſhedding of ſperme.

De Seminis Profluvio.

Τοκρόια.

Cauſa.

GONORRHAEA in Greeke, *ſeminis profluuium* in Latin, it is excretion and ſhedding of ſeed or ſperme againſt the patients will, and without ſickneſs of the yard. It is cauſed through imbecillitie and weakneſſe of the retentiue vertue in the veſſelles conteyning the ſperme: or through ſome other diſeaſe that moueth the partes of the veſſelles of ſperme, after that ſort, as the expulſiue vertue doth, according to nature: as in the falling ſickneſſe it chaunceth ſometime, and in other violent conuulſions and crampes. Alſo ſometime it is cauſed through fluxe of the ſpermaticke veſſels. The ſeede that ſheddeth out, is

is waterie thinne without appetite of carnall copulation: and for the moſt part without feeling of it, but ſometime it cõmeth out with certaine pleaſure. They that haue this diſeaſe, their whole body corrupteth by litle and litle, and waxeth leane, ſpecially about the loynes: and there followeth much weakneſſe, not for the multitude of ſeede, but for the principalitie of the places. And if it come out (the yard not ſtanding) there followeth imbecillitie and weaknes of the retentiue vertue in the ſpermaticke veſſels. But if it commeth out (the yard ſtanding) the griefe is ſomewhat like a conuulſion, or cramp. This diſeaſe chanceth not only to mẽ, but alſo to women, & in womẽ it is hard to cure. The cure of this diſeaſe is cõmon with thoſe cures that are miniſtred in euery flux. *Signa.*

Firſt therefore you muſt keepe the ſicke in quietneſſe, with litle meat, & with drinking of water. Then alſo you muſt couer the places about the ſhare and priuities, and the loynes with wooll wet in oyle of roſes and in wine, or in oile of bloſſomes of apples, or of quinces. Alſo ſponges wet in *Poſca* applyed are not hurtfull. The dayes following you muſt vſe cataplaſmes, emplaiſters, and ointments, made of vine branches, quinces, *acatia*, *hypociſchis*, ſumach, and ſuch like afore rehearſed. Alſo he muſt vſe reſtrictiue inceſſions made of decoctiõs of bryer, plantaine, mirtles and ſuch other like. Theſe things muſt be ſodden in auſtere and ſharpe wine, or alſo in water. Let him vſe meats which are hard to corrupt, and that are difficultly chaunged, and that haue power to drie vp. *Curatio.*

Alſo you muſt giue him with his meates and drinke, the ſeede of *Agnus caſtus*, and of hempe, ſpecially roſted. Alſo the ſeedes and leaues of rew, the ſeede and ſtalke of lettuce, and the roote of water lillies. In drinke miniſter daily, in ſteede of common water, the water wherein yron hath often bene quenched. To be ſhort he muſt eſchue the vſing of ſharpe things, and drinking of much wine, and eating of pottage, and all his whole diet muſt be appointed of ſuch things, as do drie vp & reſtraine. And you muſt miniſter ſuch medicines as do extinguiſh and quench ſeede, as is tutſan ſeede toſted and rubbed: alſo the leaues and floures of it are ſaid to reſtraine lecherie, not onely when they are eaten, but alſo when they are taken in drinke, or ſtrewed vnder one. Purſlaine eaten, and lettuce ſeede drunke, and the roote and ſeede of water lillies taken in meat, doe extinguiſh the ſeede by cooling of it. But rew eaten corrupteth and deſtroyeth the ſeede with his heate. They which eate calamint continually, do looſe the power of generation, and likewiſe the ſeede of white violets ~~doth~~ the ſame. But ſmithes water, in which iron is often quenched, being continually drunke, doth diminiſh the ſeed without any griefe. Moreouer *To extinguiſh ſeede.*

of theſe ſimples before rehearſed, you may compound and make diuers remedies. And ſpecially this pouder is good. ℞. of the pouders of *diacuminum*, *diacalaminthes*. ana. ℥. j. ß. ſeede of tutſan and rew. ana. ℥. j. calamint. ℥. ij. ſeede of lettuce and purſlaine. ana. ℥. j. ſugar, the weight of them all: commix them together and make a fine pouder, whereof miniſter. ℥. j or ℥. j. ß. infuſed in ſoure wine. Alſo it is counted notable, to lay a plate of lead, vpon the loynes, for it is wont to coole much. To thoſe which can not ſuffer hardneſſe of lead, you muſt giue counſell, that they ſtrew vnder them ſome of the aforeſaid herbes dried: for the which purpoſe aboue other things, vine leaues, rew, calamint, & roſes are prayſed: for theſe profit, & beſides that they hurt not the reines. For vehe- *Tritura.* *Lamina Plumbea.*

ment cold things being applyed to the loines, do hurt the reines. Alſo let not his bed be ſoft, and let him lie for the moſt part vpō his ſide, eſchuing vpright lying, leſt thereby the atteries of the loynes ſhould wax hot. After that the diſcaſe hath dured a while, you muſt commit the ſicke to exerciſes, whereby the whole body, and ſpecially the diſeaſed parts, may be confirmed and ſtrengthned. Alſo it ſhalbe good, if nothing elſe do let it, to vſe cold bathing and waſhings, which is wont to driue away all the griefe ingendred of flux: and that ſpecially if the water be indewed with any medicinable qualitie. Alſo it is good at certaine times to vſe thoſe things that do rubifie and bliſter, & that can fetch out from the depth and bottome, vnto the top of the skinne. Moreouer the patient muſt exclude all thought belonging to carnall copulation.

CHAP. LI.

Of the loſſe of carnall copulation.

De Iis Qvi Re Venerea Vti Non Possvnt.

Cauſæ. THey which be maried, and cannot vſe the act of generation, becauſe of the ſluggiſh impotencie and weakneſſe of their members, comming of a cold diſtempure wherwith they be vexed, or of ſome other cauſe: ſuch ought to exerciſe the neather partes, and to vſe meats that doe heat and engender good humours: as is the fleſh of henaes, capons, partrich, feaſantes, young doues, birdes of mountaines, and ſpecially ſparrowes, cockes ſtones and ſuch like. Not onely good nouriſhing meates, but alſo windie meates are good for him, as be chiche peaſon, beanes, ſcalions, leekes, the root and ſeede of parſneps, pine nuts, ſweete almondes, rape rootes and ſuch other like. Alſo the egges of partriches do ſtirre vp carnall luſt. Let the patient ſleep in a ſoft bed, and let him read things that do ſtirre vp luſt, or let him heare them read. Let his priuie members be continually chafed and rubbed with oyles, ointments and other heating medicines. For which purpoſe vſe this ointment following. ℞. oyle of lillies ℥ j. ß. oyle of *caſtoreum*. ℥. ß. pepper, nigella, pellitorie. ana. ℈. j. mirrhe, ℥. ß. *Euphorbium* gran. iij. wax as much as is ſufficient, & make an ointment. And alſo he muſt vſe medicines, which do engender plentie of ſperme, and can heat. Among ſimple medicines, theſe that follow do chiefly ſtirre vp carnall luſt, as be rocket, muſtard ſeede, garden creſſes, nettleſeede, roote of Aron, & pepper, *ſatyrion ormnium*, anniſe, ſquill, *orchis*, called alſo *teſticulus canis*, whoſe greateſt round root drunke with milke doth prouoke ſtiffeneſſe of the yarde, but the leſſe roote thereof drunke with water doth ſlake the ſtiffeneſſe therof: alſo fennell & dill are good. The ſtones of a Fox dried, beaten to pouder and drunke, do cauſe a ſtiffeneſſe of the member, not hurtfull nor vaine. Alſo the parts of ſcinces which embrace the reines, are drunke to raiſe a ſtiffeneſſe of the yard. Moreouer burne the drie piſſell of an hart and miniſter ℥ j. of it with pure wine. Among compounds it is good to vſe this medicine. ℞. *Dianthos, pliriſarcoticon, diagalangæ* ana ℥ iij *diaſatyrion*. ℥. vj. pine nuts, ſweete almondes, *piſtax*. ana. ℥. ij. *ſatyrion*. ℥. j roote of Aron. ℈. j. ſeedes of rocket, nettles, and garden creſſes. ana ℥. j. ß *ſcincus*. ℥ ß. *nux indica*. ℥. j. of long pepper and ginger. ana. ℥. j. ß. pouder of harts piſſell. ℈. j. ſirupe of mintes, and ſugar as much as is ſufficient, and make an electuarie, wherof miniſter before ſupper

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

Simples to prouoke carnall luſt.

Antidotum liquidum.

or fasting the quantitie of one drachme, or two alone, or in good wine.

CHAP. LII.

Of bursting or ruptures.

De Ramice.

CELE in Greeke, *ramex* & *hernia* in Latin, the barbarous writers call it *rup-tura*. It is causèd diuers wayes, and thereupon it hath diuers names. For if the *Peritonæum* doe breake, and the bowelles fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin, *ramex inteſtinorum*: that is, the rupture of the bowels. But when the bowels doe cleaue or ſtay aboue the priuie members, it is called in Latin *ramex inguinis*: that is, the rupture aboue the priuie members. And if any quiet and waterie humour be gathered in any part of the filmes, or skinnes of the coddes, it is called in Latin, *ramex aquoſus*: that is waterie rupture. When there groweth hard fleſh, with in the coates and tunicles of the ſtones, it is called in Latin *ramex carnoſus*, that is a fleſhie rupture. To be ſhort, the kindes of ruptures euer take their names of the things that doe fill vp the coddes. As if the call or filme that lappes in the bowels, do fall downe into the coddes, it is called in Latin *ramex ormenti*: that is the rupture of the filme. And if the bowels do ſlip downe alſo with it, it is called in Latin *ramex armenti & inteſtini*: that is, the rupture of the filme and the bowels. So when the veines which nouriſh the ſtones be ſpread abroad and ſwollen out of meaſure on heapes, it is called *ramex varicoſus*: that is the rupture of the ſwollen veines. The rupture of the bowels, and of the parts aboue the priuie members, are cauſed either becauſe the *Peritonæum*, is ſtretched out more then it ought to be, or becauſe it is broken. Both theſe do chaunce through ſome violent occaſion going before, as a ſtroke, or leaping, or crying, or by taking vp of a great weight. A waterie rupture is cauſed ſometime of a ſecret cauſe, and ſometime of a manifeſt cauſe. Of a ſecret cauſe, as when the veſſels that are ioyned together be increaſed in the coddes, & then a waterie humour mixed with bloud is driuen downe to thoſe partes, and reſteth there. Of a manifeſt cauſe, as when through ſome blow or ſtroke, the veſſels breake and ſlide downe: and then bloud flowing downe thither to nouriſh them, it is chaunged into a waterie and wheyiſh ſubſtance. A fleſhie rupture is ingendred of a ſecret cauſe, as through the ſtone, being without fluxe & waxing hard, of a ſtripe, or by ill curing after the cutting of a rupture. The cauſes of the other ruptures are euident by their deſcriptions. The ſignes both of the rupture of the bowels, & the rupture about the priuy members are cõmon. For there is a manifeſt ſwelling in the cods, or about the priuie mẽbers, which appeareth greater, then it did before in exerciſes, iourneys, holding of the breath & ſuch like occaſions: being thruſted together, it goeth back againe ſlowly, and it rouleth downe again quickly. The particular ſignes whereby ruptures that come when the *Peritonæũ* is but ſtretched out, be theſe: that the bowels fall downe not for a long time together, but for a ſhort ſpace & for very litle cauſe, the ſwelling appeareth equall & deepe, the bowels that fall down being ſtaied with the *Peritonæum*. The proper ſignes of a rupture that commeth when the *Peritonæum* is broken, are, that the bowels fall downe vniuerſally from the beginning of the rupture, and that onely through violent

Κήλη. *Ruptura.* *Ramex inteſtinorum.* *Ramex inguinis.* *Ramex aquoſus.* *Ramex carnoſus.* *Ramex ormẽti.* *Ramex ormenti inteſtiníque.* *Ramex varicoſus.* *Cauſæ.* *Signa.*

causes: the swelling is of a wonderfull greatnesse, inequall, and it sheweth streight way sticking out in the skinne, because the bowelles are fallen out of the *Peritoræum*. The cómon signes of a waterie rupture be these: swelling that is without paine, and firme, & permanent in the coddes, not vanishing by any occasion: but in them that haue but a litle of the humour it giueth place, and in them that haue not so much of it, not so. And when there is a waterie humour in the coddes, the swelling shineth of the same colour that the humour is, as like dregges, or bloud, or rubicund, or swart. And when these signes appeare in both sides of the coddes, it betokeneth that there is a double rupture. There followeth after a fleshie rupture, hardnesse, and a colour alwayes like vnto it. But if the swelling doe encrease into a hardnesse or kernell, then there is neither colour, nor sense, nor feeling. But if the humour be of a wicked nature, then pricking paine doth vexe him. The rupture of the bowels, & of the parts about the priuy members, be cured in this wise. You must lay the patient vpright and separate his legges, and then put vp the bowels by litle and litle: and when they are put vp, you must keepe them vp with conuenient trusses, and ligamentes. But if the places adioyning to the coddes, or to the place about the priuie members, be grieued with inflammation and most grieuous paines, and that there come with it frettings and windines, and so therby the bowels be made disobedient to go vp againe, then you must vse and apply fomentes, liniments and bathes, which haue vertue to mollifie and to cease paine and inflammation, & to disperse windines: as those things be which be made of mallowes, cammomill, dill, lineseede, fenugreeke, carawayseede, aniseseede, comin, and such like. Also nourish the places that be vexed with paine, with woolI that is moyst, dipped in wine and oyle. When the bowels are put vp againe into their places, you must go about, that they may be kept vp still, with conuenient trusses and bandes: applying to it first, restrictiue or glutinatiue cerates, or emplaisters, as this is. ℞. ship pitch, masticke. ana. ʒ. iij. frankensence. ʒ. ij. *hypociſchis*, *ſarcocoll*, *acatia*. ana. ʒ. j. ß. *lapis hæmatitis*, dragons bloud. ana. ʒ. ij. bolearmoniacke, rootes of comfory, galles, pomegranate rindes. ana. ʒ. iij. misle of the oake. ʒ. j. ß. of either *Aristolochia*. ʒ. ij. sumache, pomegranate floures. ana. ʒ. j. goates tallow. ʒ. ij turpentine and waxe as much as is sufficient: dissolue the gummes first in vineger or wine, and make a cerate, and put it in a weathers skinne, and apply it binding it fast, and doe not loose it before the seuenth day. Also in the meane season let the sicke tarie thirtie daies in his bed, and let him abstaine from windie meates, and from much drinking of wine, from vehement mouing, running, leaping, crying loud and such other like. And in the meane season let him drinke this decoction. ℞. both the kinds of *ſanicula*, of *ſolidago ſaracenica*, or *conſolida ſaracenica*, *ophioglosſum*, pedelion, agrimonie, *numularia*. ana. *M*. j. knotgrasse, *clematis daphnoides*, great plantaine, burnet. ana. *M*. ß. roote of comferie, hounds tong. ana. ʒ. ß. roote of the sixth kind of *geranium*. ʒ. vj seede of mirtles. ʒ. iij. pomegranate floures. ʒ. ij. leaues of laurell. ʒ. j. ß. boile these in red wine and water of iust quantitie till the third part be consumed. Then straine it & by putting to it sugar, make the liquor of the decoction sweete, and purifie it, and make a sweete potion, whereof minister dayly in the morning. ʒ. iiij. Also you must take

Cure of the ruptures of the bowels and of the inguen.

Ceratum.

Diet.

Aglutinatiue decoction.

Prunella.

take very good heed, that the belly waxe not costiue: for if he be constrained to labour much, when he should go to the stoole, the bowels will slide downe againe. Also he must vse apt and conuenient deligatures and trusses, as be admonished before. And he must vse them specially at such time as occasion and necessity of mouing requireth it. A watery rupture must be cured by such medicines, as do heate and drie vp, as be beane meale, laurell berries, lineseede, *daucus*, *althæa*, *nigella*, and such other like, which we haue rehearsed in the chapter of the dropsie *Ascites*, and other dropsies. To conclude: as for the cure of these ruptures, or any other by surgerie, let it be sought out of *Paulus Ægineta*, *libro sexto*, chapter 62. where he treateth of it aboundantly: for it is not our intent to treat therof in these bookes: therefore we will proceed to the diseases of the wombe.

To cure a waterie rupture.

CHAP. LIII.

Of stopping of menstruis.

De Svppressis Mensibvs.

THE menstruis of women are suppressed and stopped in them either naturally or against nature. If they be naturally stopped you shall knowe it chiefly by this: because the woman thereby is vexed with no griefe of the whole body, nor yet of the wombe. Also you shall haue a respect to the age, for in many the floures begin to flow the fourteenth yeare, & in very few before the thirteenth or twelfth yeare. And to most women they burst out after the fourteenth yeare. For the most part, the purging endureth for two or three daies, to many fiue daies, in some it endureth vnto the seuenth day. The menstruis also do stoppe in some the fiftie yeare, or the fiftie fiue yeare, and they flow not vntill the sixtie yeare, but in few women. Also barraine women and dauncers, are not naturally purged: for whatsoeuer excrement is in them, it is consumed by the vehemencie of exercises. And to be short, women of a hote temperature, that be wilde, and do vse strong exercise, they purge out litle or nothing. But many times the menstruis are wont to be suppressed and stopped against nature, either through ouer much grossenesse, or slendernesse. For fat folke are more without bloud, then other folke, and they haue lesse and streighter veines, and that litle bloud which is in them, turneth almost all into fat. But they that are leane & slender which be wasted with some continuall sickneſse, they haue no superfluous bloud in them. Moreouer the menstruis doe not flowe in them, whose bloud is either grosse or clammie, or if it be sent to some other part of the bodie, and purged out, as for example, if it goe out at the nose, or at the fundament. Also in some that haue cast out much bloud from the breast, the menstruis are stopped, and in some, because much bloud hath gone out of a veine being cut. Also other kind of emptyings haue often done the same thing, as aboundant sweating, continuall vomiting, fluxes of the bellie, and all kindes of pustules and wheales which budde out of the skinne. Besides the causes now rehearsed, oftentimes the menstruis are withholden through great and sharpe sicknesses, & through aboundance or scarcitie of foode. For of litle foode, that litle doth expirate and breath out streight, and of much foode the passages are stopped, and the excretion

Cause. In whom the floures are naturally stopped.

In whom the floures are stopped against nature.

and voyding out of the menſtruis is preuented and letted. And for thoſe cauſes the menſtruis are ſpecially ſuppreſſed and ſtopped, the whole bodie being euill affected. Alſo they are in like manner withholden and ſtopped, when the wombe it ſelfe is afflicted with a particular diſeaſe or vice: which thing chaunceth to the wombe ſometime through hote or cold diſtempure of the ſame. Alſo many times the purgation of the menſtruis is letted thorough hardneſſe ingendred in the mouth of the matrice, or through ſome excreſcence and growing vp of a peece of fleſh, or alſo through aboundant fatneſſe. Alſo to ſome by and by in the beginning, certaine filmes or thinne skinnes ingender about the necke or entrie of the matrice. To other ſome the ſcarres of vlcers, which haue beene before in the wombe, haue ſtopped the mouthes of the veſſelles, which caried bloud into the wombe. To ſome after the aborſion of the wombe, (the mouth of it being exulcerate, and afterward healed and brought to a ſcarre) there commeth conioyning and compaction of it, which beſides that it letteth all other tranſpirations of the wombe, it alſo ſtoppeth the excretion and voyding out of bloud. Moreouer ſtubburne carefulneſſe, immoderate feare and great ſorrow do ſtop the menſtruis. There followeth ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of the menſtruis, heauineſſe of the whole bodie, deſire to vomit, abhorring of meate, and certaine terrible diſcuſſions, ſuch as chance to thoſe that haue conceiued. Moreouer there be paines about the loynes, thighes, necke, the hinder part of the eyes, and the forepart of the head. Alſo there follow continuall feauers, and blackiſh vrine, with certaine red atter, and filth in them, euen like as one ſhould mixe ſoote with the water wherein new killed fleſh hath lately beene waſhed. Alſo to many either the vrine doth come forth difficultly or elſe it is ſtopped altogether. The diuerſitie of cauſes is knowen partly by the diſpoſitiō of the whole bodie, and partly alſo and for the moſt part, by the telling of the patient. Women may know a cold diſtempure in themſelues, by theſe ſignes ſpecially, becauſe they be more ſleepie and ſlower to all kind of mouing, and whiter of colour, and as it were of a leadie colour. Moreouer their vrine is waterie & ſuch like ſignes appeare, which are often rehearſed before. The tokens of hote diſtempure are cleane contrarie to theſe ſignes of a cold diſtempure before rehearſed. Signes of fulneſſe, beſides thoſe that may be gathered out of the former chapters, are wont ſpecially to be theſe: that womē, that are vexed therwith, are grieued moſt in the time of the menſtruis, and they feele vehement paine, about the loynes and the priuie members, and their veines are ſwolne vp very great. The cure is diuers according to the diuerſitie of cauſes. For if a cold diſtempure of the liuer or wombe do ſtoppe the flowing of menſtruis, it muſt be cured and driuen away with contraries: that is, with meate and medicines that doe heate. Therefore you muſt giue vnto them hote meates, and wine that is yellow, odoriferous and old. Alſo you muſt preſcribe to them exerciſes, and you muſt miniſter other things which can helpe the bodie. Aboue other, theſe things that follow are good, peniroiall, time, calamint, ſotherne wood, diptaine, root of *yreos*, *caſia*, gladon, *aſarum*, and ſaueine: of which you may make decoctions and foments. Alſo you muſt miniſter vnto them faſting, after a bath, pure wine hote. Alſo the meet & conuenient times to take theſe medi-

Signi.

Cold diſtemper

Hot diſtemper

Plenitudo.

Curatio.

Cure of a cold diſtemper.

medicines be, first, if the patient drinke straight way, when the time of purgation is at hand: secondarily, if she drinke straight after a bath, fomentation, or annoynting, that the medicine helping the bodie being yet hote and loose, may shew his strength and effect the more easily and effectually. Women that be too hote and vse much exercise haue no need of curing: for it were better to the safegard of their proper health, to prescribe them such a diet, whereby their bodies should be so dried, that the menstruis should not neede to be purged: but this were against conception: for they doe not conceiue which be not purged. Therefore for conceptions sake, and for because that almost all women keepe an vndiscreete dyet, purgations be necessarie. Therefore it is good also to adioyne the cure, whereby the menstruis, that are stopped thorough hote distempure, may be brought out. Women therefore, that be hot, and vse many exercises, must chiefly be made moyster by moyst meates and drinkes taken in good quantitie, as be soupings of ptysans, and of *Alica*, and meates that are made of lambes flesh, kiddes flesh, and fishes that be tender, birdes of mountaines, & milke. Let their pot herbes be lettuce and gourdes, & their frute, new figges. They must vse white wine, that is not very old, and let it be alayed. Also bathes of sweete water are good, and to conclude, the diet ascribed to them that haue the feauer Ethicke, is to be prescribed to these. If the menstruis be withholden and stopped by reason of the fulnes that vexeth the woman, and if nothing else do let it, you must begin the cure with letting of bleud. And you must cut the veines of the anckles or of the hammes: and that not before the accustomed time of the menstruis. Neither will it be vnprofitable, if cupping glasses be fastened to the legges. The bloud being emptied, minister potions which can prouoke menstruis, and apply fomentations, bathes, and annoyntings of other things which we will describe hereafter. But if there be no fulnesse, but only grosse and flegmaticke humours do stop the flowing of the menstruis: First you must minister medicines which can cut and diuide the aforesaid humours, and preparate them, and make them easier to be expelled and purged out: as is this decoction ℞ the roots of gladon, *yreos*, parsley and sperage. ana. ℥.j. of the seedes of *apium*, fennell, *bruscus*, annise, *daucus*, ammi, and nettles. ana. ℥.j calamint, wormwood ana. *M.* ß origan, sothernwood, mugwort, peniroiall, *asarum*. ana. *M.* j. hysope. *M.* j. ß. chosen cinnamon. ℥. j. seeth all these in a conuenient quantitie of water, vntill the third part be consumed: then strcine it and make the licour of that decoction sweete with sugar, & clarifie it with the white of an egge, putting into it of the sirups of calamint, of hysope, and of horehound. ana. ℥. j. ß. & make a potion, whereof minister daily in the morning the weight of ℥ iiij. When that decoction is drunke vp, minister some purging medicine: as is, *hierapicra*, *diaphenicon*, and *electuarium nidum*, pilles of agaricke, of *benedicta*, or such like. After purging the patient must vse exercises, and frictions of the neather partes, and specially walkings. Moreouer apply fomentations, and bathings made of cammomill, motherwort, mintes, and other things rehearsed in the decoction aboue said. Also annoint the patient with this oyntment. ℞. of the oyles of lillies, and rew. ana. ℥. j. motherwort with the thinne leaues, peniroiall, calamint. ana. ℈. j root of *yreos*. ℈. ij. hisope, origan. ana. ℈. iij. with wax as much as is suffi-

Cure of hote distemper.

Cure of fulnes.

Purgatio.

Exercise.

Foments.

Vnguentum.

cient, make an ointment. After this, for the cause aboue said, minister medicines, which can streight way prouoke and bring foorth the menstruis being stopped, such as these be: mirrhe, *castoreum*, laurell berries, madder, pepper, sage, rew, saueine, *casia*, and such other, which be rehearsed before of vs. This medicine is notable good. ℞. *castoreum*. ℥. j. wild mintes beaten into pouder. ʒ. ß. old wine, or *mulsa* ʒ iiij. commix them together, and minister it hote after a bath. Also the decoction of peniroiall, mugwort, rew, comin, *daucus*, sage, dill, *ammeos*, fennell, *enula campana*, and such like are good. Also calamint beaten into pouder, the weight of ʒ ij. or saueine, the weight of ʒ. j. drunke in wine or *mulsa*, is very good. Moreouer trochiskes of mirrhe do maruellously profit. Also wine wherein wormewood hath bene infused or sodden, must be drunke all the time of the cure. Also you must vse to put pessaries into the wombe, if that necessitie so require it, such as this is. ℞. of *Triphera magna*, that is without *opium*. ʒ. j. of the meale of *ernum*, *nigella*, mather, mugwort, peniroyall. ana. ϑ. j. ß. iuice of rew. ʒ. ij commixe them together & make a pessarie, and put it in with wooll or cotten. Or this pessarie. ℞. mirrhe, *bdellium*, storax. ana. ʒ. j. calamint, sothernwood, and wormewood. ana ʒ j. ß. roots of gladon and mather. ana. ʒ. j. seede of *nigella*, drie rew, laurell berries. ana. ϑ ij. saueine. ϑ. j. *castoreum*. ϑ. ß. beate all these to fine pouder, and commix them with hony or *Triphera*, or *mithridatum*, and make pessaries to put into the womans priuities. Also you must cast into the wombe hote oyles, as is oiles of *yreos*, lillies, laurell and such like. Also it is good to vse suffumigations made of Storax, *galbanum*, frankensence, *bdellium*, the roote of *Aristolochia*, mugwort, cloues, cinnamon and such like. Examples whereof you shall find in our booke of making of medicines. Moreouer the wombe must be euaporated, and fomented with odoriferous things, as with marioram, sauorie, calamint, cammomill, peniroiall, mugwort, root of *yreos*, and such like sodden in a pot, which you must couer with a couering that hath a hole bored through it, wherein you must put a reed or some other pipe, and you must annoynt it round about aloft, that the woman sitting thereon, may be fomented with it. Also it will profit, if the woman sit in this decoction vp to the nauell, and after receiue the pessaries before rehearsed. Fat women must be cured with a diet that can extenuate, and with swift exercises, and with other medicines which can make the bodie slender and leane: as be continuall deiection and solution of the belly, ointments that haue vertue to euaporate and breath out, and such like, which be aboundantly intreated of by Galen *Lib.* 14. *Ther. meth. Cap.* 15. *& lib.* 6. *de tuenda sanitate*. Those which are not purged of their menstruis, through leanenesse of the body, whether it chance through sickenesse, or any other meanes, you must first recreate, and refresh them, and restore the flesh of their bodies by a conuenient dyet, and by other medicines, which Galen rehearsed in the places aforesaid. And if they waxe fleshie, there is good hope that the menstruis will burst out by their owne accord, which if they do not come forth alone, then you shall prouoke them by potions, foments, and other medicines aboue rehearsed. If the menstruis doe not flowe, because of some disease and vice of the wombe, first you must cure the euill, that is caused of the stopping of the menstruis: & after that, we must proceede to the prouocation and purging of the menstruis. The cure of the

To prouoke menstruis.

A notable medicine.

Pessus.

Alius.

Suffitus.

Cure of fat women.

Cure of leane women.

Cure if it be of vice of the wombe.

diseas:

diſeaſe of the wombe, muſt be ſought out of their proper places.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of flowing of menſtruis.

De Redvndantibvs Mensibvs.

WE ſay, that menſtruis doe redound and ouerflow in women, when that great plentie of them do flow out longer then the accuſtomed time of their purgation. There is no iuſt or certaine time of their purgation: for to moſt women they flow two or three daies, to many fiue dayes, and to ſome ſeuen daies. The menſtruis doe chaunce to flow out of meaſure, through great or ſmall veſſels opened wide, or broken. Alſo immoderate purgations doe engender in women, ſomtime through grieuous trauaile in childbirth, which alſo do ceaſe oftentimes of themſelues. Oftentimes after aborſion, they labour of a vehement aborſion, & fluxe of menſtruis, & ſometime it bringeth thē into a daungerous perill. If the greater veſſels be broken or open, the bloud floweth out guſhing on heapes: but if the leſſer be open, it floweth out by litle and litle, and not in great quantitie. If it be cauſed through eating or gnawing, it doth not onely flow by litle and litle, but alſo it floweth with very great paine. Moreouer when the menſtruis flow immoderatly, there followeth a filthy colour, the feete are puffed vp with a light ſwelling, the ſtrēgth of the body is decayed, both the digeſtion and appetite of meat is corrupted: and in all points ſuch ſignes, as are wont to follow immoderate voyding of bloud, either by the hemorhoides, or by any other fluxe of bloud doe follow in this diſeaſe. Firſt therefore in the beginning of the cure, you muſt bind the places betwene the ioints, and the extreme parts of the body with bands, beginning at the armeholes and the ſhares. Alſo you muſt faſten great cupping glaſſes lightly vnder the paps, as *Hyppocrates* teacheth. 5. *Aphor.* 50. Alſo they muſt vſe meates and drinkes, that be ſharpe and reſtrictiue, as is rice and ſuch like: and let the ſick rather eate roſted meates, then ſodden: and ſpecially ſuch fleſh, as is of nature able to drie vp, as be birdes that liue in mountaines, and wilde beaſtes. They muſt abſtaine from mouing, and winde, and in ſteed of it they muſt vſe ſome reſtrictiue potion, or *poſca*, not cold but warme. Moreouer you muſt miniſter reſtrictiue medicines in drinke, as theſe ſimples be following. ℞. pomegranate floures, *hypociſchu*, *acatia*, corall, *Lycium*, *terra lemnia*, galles, knotgraſſe, both the *Conſolidaes*, the ſtone *hæmatites*, ſhels of maſt, plantaine, barberies and ſuch like. Compound medicines be theſe following, as ſyrups of roſes, mirtles, trochiskes of ambre, and of *terra lemnia*. Alſo theſe pilles following are maruelous good to ſtop and reſtraine the menſtruis. ℞. *terra lemnia*, bolearmoniack, frankenſence, maſticke, galles. ana. ℈.ij. dragons bloud, the ſtone *hæmatites*. ana ℈.j. harts tongue burnt. ℥.j. *hypociſchu*, *acatia*, red corall. ana. ℥.ß. pomegranate floures, red roſes. ana ℈.ij. Ambre. ℈.j. cōmix them with ſyrup of mirtles, and meke pilles whereof miniſter the weight of one drachme or ℥ ß. Alſo foment the place outwardly, with the oiles of roſes, mirtles, quinces, and ſharpe wine. And apply oyntments, emplaiſters, and cerates and reſtrictiue Epithemes, whereof you ſhall find many before in the chapters of the fluxes, *Dyſenteria*, *Diarrhæa*, and *Lienteria*. Alſo inceſſions made of the decoctions of the

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

To reſtraine menſtruis.

Catapotia.

Inceſſus.

aforesaid medicines be good. Also you must vse such medicines, as are cast into the wombe with an instrument. For the which purpose iuice of plantine is maruellously commended, wherewith Galen sayth, in foure dayes, he stopped a fluxe of the wombe, that could be stopped with no other medicine. The quantitie that must be throwne in, should be the measure of one cyath. Of the same effect be the iuices of knotgrasse, or nightshade, or *hypociſchu*, or *acatia*, or such like cast in. Also the vsing of Pessaries is not to be despised: among which this is specially prayſed. ℞. of frankensence, pomegranate floures, and galles. ana. ℥. j. of gumme arabicke, *acatia*, ambre, harts horne burnt. ana. ℥. ij. bolearmoniacke. ℈. ij. beate all these to fine pouder, and mixe it with wooll dipped in oile of roses, and put it into the wombe.

Pessulus.

CHAP. LV.

Of womans fluxe.

De Fluore Mvliebri.

VTERI *fluor*, in Latin, *fluxe* of the matrice in English, is a continuall distillation, and flowing out for a long time, of the whole body, purging it selfe. That which is voided out, doth represent such forme and colour, as the humour that doth abound in the bodie. For some is red, as bloud putrified, or attre: some white, which commeth of fleume: some is pale, which signifieth choler: and some is waterie which is, of a wheyish matter. And if pure bloud come foorth, as in the cutting of a veine, you must take good heede, that some erosion and gnawing be not ingendred in the wombe. By these signes following the fluxe is knowen. The places are continually moyst with the humours, being diuers in colours. The patient is ill coloured, she sauoureth no meat but abhorreth it, in walking she breatheth difficultly, her eyes be swollen, sometime with paine, and sometime without paine, or with exulceration or without it, and either with an inflammation, that is with the vlcer, or else it is filthy or pure. The diuersitie of causes you may knowe by the colour of that that floweth foorth as is aforesaide. And if a woman be vexed with a red fluxe, in the beginning, if age and other things will suffer it, you must come to letting of bloud. For many incommodities would follow, if you should first goe about to represse and stop the rage and violence of the bloud that floweth, as the dropsie, vice of the sinewes, or of the mouth of the stomach, or of the head. You may part the times of your bloud letting, as you doe in them, that spit bloud, so that thereby the auersion and turning away of the bloud may be the longer a litle. You must cut a veine in the arme. After this you must binde the extreme parts of the bodie with bandes, and you must vse and apply all such things, as can turne the fluxe of the humour another way. Therefore all those remedies that be rehearsed of vs in the former chapters be good. Let her whole diet be restrictiue, and such as doth ingender grossenesse and thickneſſe. Let her drinke be water, or if she be weake wine that is grosse and restrictiue. But if the fluxe that is white or wheyish do vexe a woman, it may not be stopped at the beginning, that euill humors may be purged out of the bodie. Nor also, it is not against reason, seeing that, that which is flowed out, is ingendred of fleume, if you doe minister a medicine

Cause.

Signa.

Cure of the red fluxe.

Victus ratio.

Cure of a fluxe that is white and atterie.

to

to her, which doth purge fleume. And you must minister, and apply to the whole bodie, medicines and remedies which doe drie vp, seeing that the disease it selfe is moyst. Therefore exercises specially of the vpper parts, and frictions are good. Also they must eate flesh which hath vertue in it to drie, as birdes of the mountaines, and wilde beasts. Also in the beginning of the euill, such medicines may be ministred, as doe extenuate grosse humors, and after that doe bring them out with the vrine, as be *asarum*, fennell, *apium*, and such like, often rehearsed before. The beginning being past, you must apply to the wombe things that be moderately restrictiue, as be oyles of roses and quinces, and other rehearsed in the former chapter. Also you must vse abstersiue and scouring medicines, least that vlceration be made with the humour that floweth: wherfore the wheyish humour must continually be washed with hote water. After the scouring and clensing of the filth, you must annoint oyle of roses, or of quinces, or of mirtles. Likewise, when a woman is diseased with pale fluxe, it may not be stopped at the beginning, but the body must be purged with a medicine that purgeth choler. Then you must studie how to pull backe, and turne away the humour, and you must vse other restrictiue medicines, not neglecting abstersiue and scouring things, whereof you shall haue speciall neede, because of the sharpenesse of the humour. Moreouer to conclude, when the fluxe ceaseth, they must long abstaine from swift goings and walkings, from much frictions and rubbings of the bellie and the loynes, also from eating of sharpe things, from things that heat, and from such things as doe prouoke vrine.

Cure of a pale and cholericke fluxe.

CHAP. LVI.

Of strangling of the wombe.

De Vteri Svffocatione.

Svffocation or strangling of the wombe, is nothing else, but a drawing backe of it vp to the vpper parts. It is caused through stretching out of it, which is ingendred of fulnes, that followeth after the retention and stopping of menstruis. For in women the wombe, when it is retched and stretched out, it runneth not to an other place like a wandring beast, but is drawen backe through the extention. Also it chaunceth oftentimes, through the seede that is restreined. Also many times it chaunceth through cold, which happened to the wombe, at the time that the purgation of the menstruis is ministred. Also sometime it commeth through some hard aborsion, or when as any hath hasted to stoppe sodainely a fluxe of bloud flowing from the wombe. They that are vexed with this disease, when the fit is nigh, there followeth heauinesse of mind, slowneſse, weakneſse of the legges, paleneſse of face, and a sorrowfull countenance. But when the suffocation and strangling is now present there followeth disposition to sleepe, doting, a withholding of the instruments of the senses, the voyce doth waxe dumbe, and the legges are drawen vp together. The pulses are small and weake. Also oftentimes they are altogether stopped. Also in many the breath that should come out at the mouth and nostrilles, is stopped altogether, and yet that which is in the arteries, doth remaine still. When the euill doth cease, the bals of the cheekes begin to waxe

Cause.

Signa.

red,and the eies be lifted vp and opened. Alſo a certain humidity and moiſtneſſe,that one may by feeling perceiue to runne out of the wombe of women, and the bowels doe make a noiſe: and alſo the wombe it ſelfe is a litle looſened,and ſo their mind,ſenſes,and mouing commeth to them againe. This diſeaſe commeth by courſes at certaine times as the falling ſickneſſe doth, and that chaunceth when the matrice (as is aforeſaid) is filled with ſeede,or with ſome other matter that putrificth and rotteth in it. When the wombe it ſelfe is diſeaſed with the quantity & qualitie of any thing,then menſtruis,or ſeede, or other kind of *ſymptomates* are ingendred. If that which is able to coole the whole body,do cauſe this diſeaſe,the body is ſo vehemently cooled,that both breathing and arteries beating,cannot be perceiued by the ſenſes. Which humour,if it be either groſſe or ſharpe,it cauſeth conuulſions and cramps:but if it haue the nature of melancholy,it cauſeth ſorrow and ſadneſſe, and defection of the mind,refrigeration,and paine of the ſtomach. This kind of diſeaſe ingendreth in all ſeaſons, but ſpecially in winter and autumne: and moſt commonly yong folke, and ſuch as be prone to lecherie, & barren,ſpecially if they be made ſo by medicines be moſt taken with this diſeaſe. Many doe recouer from this diſeaſe, and many againe doe periſh ſodainely in the very fit, or at the leaſt way within few houres after. That chaunceth, when the pulſes be ſwift and inordinate,and then do leaue off & vaniſh cleane away. At the laſt a cold humour in litle quantitie doth bedew and moiſture the skinne aloft. In the fits therefore you muſt bind the extreme parts, and beſides the bindings, you muſt rubbe the legs, and all the whole bodie,and doe euen as you would recouer one that is ſounded. And you muſt place the ſicke with her necke and ſhoulders, bending, and riſing vpward, and with her thighes & ſhare leaning downward. You muſt apply to her noſtrilles, ſtincking things, as the ſnuffe of a candle newly put out,feathers ſpecially of partriches burnt, or wooll burnt, or ſoales of ſhoes,or ſhales of garlicke,or onions: alſo haires burnt, and ſpecially if they be the haires of the ſicke, or gotes horne burnt. Alſo pitch melted vpon the coales, *galbanum* or *caſtoreum*,or ſuch like. Alſo you may hold a chamber veſſell with old vrine to their noſe, or old linnen clothes dipped in brimſtone and burned. And you muſt perfume the priuities beneath with odoriferous things,as be ſtorax,wood of *Aloes*,cinnamon,cloues,and ſuch like. And it is good to faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame,and lightly to the partes aboue the priuie members,and to the bottome of the belly. As ſoone as the fit doth come,you muſt apply foments,and litle bagges warmed, to the bottome of the belly and ſhare, for you ſhall ſcarcely finde a more preſent remedie in the comming of the fit of this diſeaſe. And you ſhall make them of both the motherworts,& with origan,betony,cammomill,calamint,wormewood,peniroyall, lineſeede,louage ſeede and ſuch like. And if the fit be prolonged, you muſt alſo adde to,ſuch things as are good to diſſolue and bring out windines: whereof you ſhall find example and names out of the Chapters of windineſſe of the ſtomach,and paine of the cholike. Alſo then, you muſt poure into the wombe, both oyntments & oiles,that be very odoriferous,as is,oiles of ſpike, and *yreos*,and ſuch like. Alſo let a midwife dippe her fingers in theſe oyles,and then put thē into the mouth of the matrice,rubbing it,long & eaſilie, that the rough

Curatio. How to doe in fit.

Sæculi.

through that prouoking, the groſſe and clammy humor may be auoided out. Alſo let the woman be raiſed with loud callings, & call her loud by her proper name. Alſo at this time you muſt miniſter thoſe things that cauſe ſneezing, as be pepper, *caſtoreum*, *ſtruthium*, & ſuch like. There be ſome that thinke it good to vſe inceſſions made of the decoction of laurell berries, & leaues, peniroyall, calamint, motherwort, horehound, ſaueine, *althæa*, cammomill, *ſerpillum*, *yreos*, *ariſtolochia*, and fenugreeke. But in the time of the inceſſions, we may not omit the cure of the braine, but you muſt irrigate and ſprinkle the head with oile of roſes and vinegre. But I iudge, that you muſt rather vſe foments and litle bagges, then inceſſions, ſpecially when as for the moſt part, although thou wouldeſt neuer ſo faine, thou canſt not vſe inceſſions in this euill. When the fit reſteth and is ceaſed, compell the patient to vomit: for all vomits doe lighten, but ſpecially ſuch as are vexed with meate. The third day after, you muſt apply cupping glaſſes with ſcarification to the loines, & the ilions. After the ſeuenth day miniſter the purgation of *hiera colocynthide*, or pilles of agatick, & by & by come to the drinking of *caſtoreum*, which being continually drunke, it deliuereth the patient ſtraight way from this euill. Alſo you muſt miniſter euerie day therof. ℥. j. ſometime with *mulſa*, ſometime with the decoction of motherwort, and ſometime miniſter it with thinne wine. Therefore at this time, rather then in the time of the fit (as is ſaid) it is lawfull for you to vſe inceſſions and peſſaries that do mollifie made of gooſe greaſe, *ſtorax*, maſticke, gumme armoniacke, and ſuch like. Alſo the wombe muſt be perfumed beneath with ſuch things as do heate, and haue vertue to bring out wind. Therfore vſe this perfume ſpecially. ℞. of the Trochiskes of *gallia* and *alipta moſchata*. ana. ℥. j. ß. *ſtorax*. ℥. iij. cloues, maces, ana. ℥. j. wood of *aloes*. ℈. ij. cinnamon choſen, leaues of laurell. ana. ℥. ij. *lapdanum*. ℥. ij. ß. beat them into powder, and commix them with *ſtoraxe liquida*, and make trochiskes for perfumes. In the meane ſeaſon, let the woman be content with a verie litle meate & drinke, and let all her diet be exciccatorie and drying vp. This cure following is to be vſed in the fits of this diſeaſe. In reſtoring and recreating the whole bodie, ſpecially if that the diſeaſe hath endured long, you muſt beginne oftentimes with bloud letting, ſpecially if the menſtruis haue bene ſtopped, and letted of their purging. Then you muſt come to purging with *hierapicra*. The purging being done, you muſt faſten on cupping glaſſes lightly, but with much flame, and you muſt draw them off violently. Alſo ſometime the places may be ſcarified, and ſtrew vpon the ſcarification, ſalt, then you muſt heale it with conuenient medicines. Alſo you may apply verie well *Synapiſmes*, and dropaces made of *Euphorbium*, pellitorie, pepper, and muſtard ſeede. Alſo a good diet doth helpe much, as deambulations in the morning, geſtations, and caryings in a cart or in a ſhip, or on a beaſt, be good. Alſo, after they be moued with carying about, crying out loud, diſtinct and apt reading is conuenient. Alſo annointing and frictions vſed now & then are good. Bathes of ſweete water are ſeeldome to be admitted, and not, but becauſe it ſhould ſcoure and cleanſe the filth. It is verie good to vſe naturall bathes, which flow by nature, and this, as it were the verie laſt refuge. Aboue others thoſe bathes are good which be in *Badenia* in the baſe Germanie in *Marchia*. And our Bathes at Bathe and at

What muſt be done ſtraight after the fit.

Trochiskes of perfumes.

Diet.

Cure of the whole bodie.

Diet.

Buxstons in Darbishire, and there is a bath neere Newmarket in Suffolke at a towne called Exning: they be all verie good, but if they goe to anie of these bathes they must take heede of cold.

CHAP. LVII.

Of falling out of the wombe.

De Vteri Procidentia.

WE say, that the matrice falleth out, whē it is so turned downward, that it sticketh out outwardly. And yet the whole matrice rowleth not downe, being loosened from the bands & ligaments, as many vnwise folke do thinke, for if it should fall downe so, it could not be restored againe. Although the wombe do fall out but seeldome, yet there be many causes of the falling out of it. For a woman falling from a high place, if she fal on her haunches, the pannicles & filmes, that hold vp the wombe, & the members adioyning doe breake & cause this disease. Also it chaunceth many times that in a sore trauaile of child birth, the wombe falleth out because of the drawing out of the secundine, which the wombe that ioyneth to it doth follow. Also many times it chanceth through negligent & vnskilfull drawing out of the child, specially if it be dead. Moreouer it chaunceth sometimes through a stripe, or lifting vp of a great weight, or through vehement perturbation of the mind, as death of children, or cōming of enemies, or through perilous sailing, or through some such like cause, all the body being loosened, the wombe falleth out. Also sometime this euill chanceth (all the whole being loosened) through resolution or weaknes of the pannicles & muscles, which thing chanceth specially to them that be old. Oftentimes the wombe falleth out, through the flowing downe of an humour much in quantitie & clammie. It falleth out most commonly by the mouth of it, & that which falleth out, is like to the egs of an Ostrich, differing only in that, that it is bigger, or lesse in quantitie. There is no neede of many signes, because the diuersitie of causes may partly be knowen by the cōstitution & state of the bodie, & partly also by the telling of the sicke, & them that be with them daily: when this disease is but newly begun, you must endeuour to put vp the wombe againe, & to restore him into his owne place, for in the beginning it will be obedient to be put vp readily, and being in his owne place, it will tarie so still, specially if age agree vnto it. For in thē that are well stricken in age, the womb being put againe, it slideth out againe through euery light cause. It is good therefore, if there be hard dung in the right gut, to bring it out with a clyster. Likewise if vrine be gathered in the bladder, let it be brought out with a cyring, that the matrice may be at free libertie on ech side. For otherwise it chaunceth by their stretching out, that the matrice, which is in the middest betwene them is pressed together, & pent in a straite place, and so when he is fallen out, they let it and stop it, that it cannot be put vp againe into his owne place. When you haue thus done, you must lay the sicke vpright so that her haunches may lie highest, her hammes bowed, & her legs spread abroad: then you must bath and nourish aboundantly that part of the matrice which is fallen out, with warme oile or butter, or mallowes sodden, or with the decoction of *althæa*, fenugreeke, lineseede, or such like: and you must prepare

Cauſa.

Signa.

Curatio.

wooll together on a heape, in figure and thickneſſe, according to the proportion of the member, and wind it about aloft with a fine and pure linnen cloth: then dippe it in the iuices of *Acatia* or *hypociſchis* infuſed in wine, and put it into the wombe, & you ſhall wreſt & writh vpward all that which is fallen down by litle and litle, and without violence, vntill the matrice be put vp into his owne proper place. Outwardly you muſt couer the parts about the priuie mébers with a ſponge wrong out of *Poſca*. The woman ſhall lie with her legges ſtretched out & ioyned together, that the one may leane vpon the other. But it is more ſafegard to binde the feete together, bringing the band vp to the knees. But if that part of the matrice which is fallen out, be ſwollen thorough continuance of time, and be ſtuffed vp with plentie of humours, ſo that the ſwelling do let the putting vp of it, you ſhall noriſh it with decoction of beetes and then you muſt clenſe it and waſh it with vineger, & ſtrew in it, ſalt finely powdered, & when it leaueth ſwelling, then put it vp as is aforeſaid. Then faſten cupping glaſſes with much flame to the nauell, & both the ilions or ſmall guts: and apply continually to the noſe odoriferous things. The third day (the wooll being as yet ſtill in the wombe) let the woman ſit in blacke ſoure wine a litle warmed, or in the decoction of mirtles, brãble leaues, pomegranate rinds & ſuch like. This being done let her lie vpright again with her haunches higheſt, then take the former wooll out, and put in ſuch another in the ſtead of the firſt, dipped in the ſame medicine. Alſo apply cataplaſmes & emplaiſters outwardly to the bottom of the belly, made of dates, pomegranate rindes, lentils and ſuch like. Alſo Cerotes that are made of maſtick, wood of *aloes*, *lapdanum*, frankenſence, ſquinant, *acorus*, nutmegs, gumme *tragacanthe*, and ſuch like, are good to be applied. But let theſe things be changed euery third day, vntill the cure be ended perfectly. Alſo during the whole time of the cure, let the woman eſchew mouing, & ſuch things as prouoke ſneezing. And the womb muſt be perfumed beneth with ſtinking things, but to the noſe you muſt apply moſt odoriferous things, for becauſe the matrice flieth from ſtinking things, and it followeth & embraceth odoriferous things. Let her meates be ſuch as ingender good iuice, & giue her odoriferous wines. Alſo the belly muſt be made ſoft & ſoluble, leaſt if ſhe ſhold go to the ſtoole difficultly, the matrice ſhould alſo fal out again. But yet you muſt take good heed, that the belly be not too much looſened, for then the parts adioyning are looſened, & ſo the matrice will fall out againe. Moreouer if that part of the womb which is fallen out, hath throgh cõtinuance of time by negligence bin putrified & rotten, & through continual wetting of it with vrine, & filthineſſe ſticking in it, it be exulcerated: you muſt cut off and ſeare that which is vnprofitable, or burne it without any feare of danger: for it hath bene knowen (as *Paulus* teſtifieth) that the whole matrice, becauſe it was rotted, hath bene taken away, and the woman liued ſtill. *Victus ratio.*

CHAP. LVIII.

Of the mole of the matrice.

De Mola.

Mola in Latine is called of *Ætius* & *Paulus*, a ſwelling that is hardened, ſometime in the mouth & entry of the matrice, & ſomtime it ſticketh out in all the matrice, & in feeling it is almoſt like a ſtone. Galen in li. 14. *ther. met.*

Causa. defineth *Mola* to be a peece of flesh without shape. This disease is caused of womans seede, and much menstruous bloud flowing into the matrice, and there kept, retayned and stopped, which immoderate heate doth ioyne

Signa. together, and changeth it into the forme and fashion of flesh. There followeth this euill, a hard swelling, with contraction and drawing vp of the sides, slendernes of the bodie, euill colour, losse of appetite, and suppression of the menstruis. Also in this euill the pappes do swell, so that at the first it causeth some to suspect that the woman is conceiued with childe, but in processe of time it may be discerned. For paine followeth the *Mola*, causing pricking, neither is there any mouing perceiued in this disease, as is in conception. Many of them do make a suspection of the dropsie, but yet there is a difference betwene the two: because the swelling is hard, and doth not giue place to the thrusting of the hand and finger, as the dropsie doth, nor maketh a noise as the timpanie doth. But yet often in processe of time, the liuer is cooled and the dropsie in-

Curatio. gendreth. This euill for the most part is incurable, except remedies be applied in the beginning. But howsoeuer it chaunceth, the cure may not be neglected but you must applie and minister all things that seeme to be good for it. But first of all you most giue her meates that ingender good iuice, and let her vse moderate drinking of wine. Let not the woman vse vehement mouing, for that will cause the fluxe to the disease, but let her vse gestations, and caryings, and deambulations and bathes, and in her lying let her feete be highest. In the meane season if fulnesse be present, you must cut a veine of the arme, and then you must purge her by *pilulæ fœtidæ*. When the bodie is purged and emptied, applie cataplasms, foments, incessions, pessaries, ointments and cerotes, which haue vertue and power to dissolue and loosen, as they be that are made of *Althæa*, mallowes, cammomill, melilot, fenugreeke, lineseede, and such like.

Vnguentum. For this purpose also it is good to apply *vnguentum dialthæa* or *emplastrum diachylon simplex*, or applie this ointment. ℞. of the oile of sweete almonds. ℥.iij. oile of lillies. ℥. ij. ß. goose greace and hens greace. ana. ℥.j.ß. musculage of lineseede and fenugreeke. ana. ℥.j. of the gummes *ammoniacum*, & *bdellium*. ana. ℥.

Pessus. ii. roote of *althæa*, *nigella* seedes, and *daucus*. ana. ℈. ii. dissolue the gummes in wine, and with wax as much as is sufficient, make an ointment. Also you must put in Pessaries made with butter, swines greace, hartes marrow, reisons, figs, lineseede and fenugreeke. After this you must minister such medicines, as can prouoke menstruis: for which purpose besides those things that we rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis, this medicine is good. ℞. the powders of *diacinnamomum*, *diagalanga*, *diacuminum*. ana. ℥. ß. pouder of diamber. ℈ j. powder of *dialacha*. ℈ ß. Cinnamon chosen, S. Iohns wort, *calamus aromaticus*, *asarum*, roote of gladon, anise seede. ana. ℈. j. seede of rew, ginger, motherwort, horehound, *dictemus*, sage, ana. ℈. ß. suger dissolued in the waters of motherwort, and S. Iohns wort, as much as is sufficient, and make lo-

Pessus. zenges, whereof minister daily the weight of two or three. ℥. Also it is good to put in this pessarie. ℞. of the roote of *Asarum*, gladon, and madder. ana ℥ ij. seede of rew, *nigella*, ana. ℥. ß. maioram, nutmugs, cloues, laurell berries ana. ℥. j. saueine. ℈. j. *castoreum*, *euphorbium*. ana. ℈. ß. powder them and searce them that haue neede, & with turpentine make a Pessarie. To conclude, you

mu

must vse medicins that can dissolue and looſen congealed bloud: for ſo there will follow excretion, and voiding out of much blacke bloud and clodded. Alſo it profiteth maruellouſly to the taking away of this diſeaſe, ſpecially if the euill haue continued long, to vſe naturall bathes, and ſuch as do ingender by themſelues, which haue vertue to diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Moreouer, many other remedies rehearſed in Chapters of the Dropſie, may be vſed in this.

CHAP. LIX.

Of inflammation of the wombe.

De Inflammatione Vteri.

THe wombe is inflamed through many cauſes: as through a ſtripe or retétion, and ſtopping of menſtruis: alſo by aborſion, exulceration, vnmeaſurable lecherie, ſitting on a very hard ſtoole, very long and ſwift deambulation and walking. Alſo oftentimes it chaunceth through cold, prohibition and letting the tranſpiration and breathing out. The companions to inflammation of the matrice be theſe: an acute feuer, paine of the head, the ſhare, the loines, & the rootes of the eies: Conuulſion and crampe of the armes, the fingers, and the neck, and declining of them contrary. Alſo paine of the ſtomacke, & ſhutting vp of the mouth of the matrice, and pulſes that be ſmall and often. If the inflammation be feeble and ſmall, the aforeſaied ſignes will not be great and ſtrong, and the wombe wilbe vexed with greater paine. But if the inflammation be vehement, then the whole wombe is vexed with a panting paine, and all the ſignes will be the more vehement. If all the wombe be inflamed, it will be painfull all ouer, but if ſome part of it be vexed with an inflammation, then the paine is greateſt in that part. For if the hinder parts of it be vexed with inflammation, the paine will afflict the loines moſt, and hard dung is withholden and ſtopped, becauſe then the right gut is preſſed together very much. If the former part be inflamed, then there is paine about the priuities, and the ſtrangurie or difficultie in piſſing is engendred, becauſe the bladder is preſſed together. If the ſides of it be inflamed, the partes aboue the priuie members are ſtretched out, and the legges are grieued, and difficultly moued. When inflammation afflicteth the mouth of the matrice, there is paine in the *Abdomen*, and if you put in your finger, you ſhall feele the mouth hard, vnpleaſant, ſhut vp, and burning hote. In the beginning therefore of the cure, if neither age, nor ſtate of the bodie, nor time of the yeare do let it, you muſt cut the veine of the hams or of the ankles, (if the inflammation came not after aborſion, or great voiding of bloud.) Afterward you ſhall place the ſicke in a darke houſe, which is moderatly warme, bidding her to be quiet, and prohibiting all mouing from her legges. Then you muſt rub the ſpace betweene the ioints, and alſo the extreame parts, that you may turne away the courſe of the flux from the womb. For her meate, which muſt be litle in quantitie, you muſt vſe ptiſan broth and rere egges: but there muſt be a day betweene: ſhe muſt abſtaine from drinking of wine, and for that, ſhe muſt vſe the decoction of cinamon, or hote water. Alſo the bellie if it be not ſoluble inough of it ſelfe, muſt be waſhed & emptied by eaſie and molliſying clyſters. Outwardly you muſt apply vpon the loynes, and about the ſhare, woll wet in vineger, wherin roſes haue bin ſodden. Alſo

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

Dyet.

Localia.

dates or quinces ſodden in wine, and commixed with oile of roſes, is good to be applyed. Alſo you muſt apply cataplaſmes made with the meale of lineſeed, fenugreeke, and with melilot, plantain, lintels, knotgraſſe, purſlaine, ſingreene, and ſuch like: and that ſpecially if the inflammation be of the nature of an *eryſipela*. Moreouer you muſt put into the matrice, wooll moiſtened with oyle of roſes, or quinces, or in the iuyce of purſlaine, or ſingreene. When the inflammation beginneth to decline and ceaſe, you muſt come to the vſing of thoſe things which haue vertue to releaſe, diſſolue and diſcuſſe. Therefore you ſhall bid the patient ſit vp to the loynes in fenugreeke ſodden, or in the decoction of *althæa*, linſeed, mallowes, and ſometime alſo motherwort, horehound and ſage. Alſo you ſhall annoint aboue the priuities, and the loynes, barley meale with fenugreeke and lineſeed ſodden in *mulſa*, or the decoction of drie figges. Alſo put in peſſaries made of butter, harts-marrow, gooſe greace, hens greace, and ſuch like. When the cure hath proceeded, ſundrie meats and light will be much profitable. And when the declination of it is manifeſt, bring the ſicke to bathes, and giue her wine that is waterie and thinne.

CHAP. LX.

Of windineſſe in the wombe.

De Infatione Vteri.

Cauſa. THE womb is puffed vp through cold, or humors corrupt in it or through abortion, or ſore trauel in childbirth, the dore of it being ſhut, or a clod of bloud being in it and ſtopping it. Oftentimes the windineſſe ingendreth in the hollow bought and ſpace of it, ſometime in the boſome of it, which is euident to the ſenſes, and ſometime in the thinner parts of the ſubſtance of the womb, not appearing to the ſenſes. *Signa.* There followeth this euill, ſwellling of the bottome of the bellie, with hardnes & paine that pricketh, which goeth vp to the midriffe and the ſtomach: and yet neuertheleſſe it is ſtretched out on both ſides, ſometime to the ſhare, and ſometime the paine is in the loynes, and at the nauell, to whom alſo the head agreeth. Alſo many times wind breaketh out of the priuities that the ſicke may feele it. If therefore windineſſe be gathered in the hollowneſſe of the matrice, there is heard a certaine rumbling and noiſe in the bodie, ſuch as chaunceth to the guts which are vexed with gripings: alſo if you beat your fingers on it, it maketh a noiſe like a timpanie. But when the windineſſe is contained in the thinne and ſlender paſſages of the matrice, then they are vexed with more vehement paine, and harder to cure. This euill is cured firſt if age, the region and time of the yeare do not let it, by bloudletting, faſting, and purging with *hierapicra Galeni*: which being done, you muſt vſe foments, and annointings with oile of rew, or with oyle wherein dill hath bene ſodden. *Curatio.* Alſo let her vſe inceſſions made of the decoction of rewe, peniroyall, calamint, horehound, motherwort, *althæa*, & ſuch like. Alſo apply cataplaſmes made of the ſeeds of *apium*, fenell, caraway, commin, louage, *daucus*, aniſe, fitches or darnell meale, and ſuch like. Alſo you muſt powre into the womb ſuch things as haue power to looſen and diſſolue windineſſe: as is, oile of rew, *ammeos*, origan, and the decoction of things before rehearſed. And if windineſſe be included and ſtopped through the meanes of a clod of bloud, after the vſing

of

of the aforesayd things, and specially incessions, let the midwife put her finger beeing first annointed, into the womans priuities, and dissolue, and bring forth the clod easily and by litle and litle. And if the euill hath continued long, you must come to more effectuous remedies. Therefore you must vse liniments, emplaisters, and cerates that be stronger, as this is. ℞. sothernwood, origan, & calamint. ana ℥.ij. seed of tutsan. ℈. ij. of centorie the lesse. ℥.j. Caraway seeds *ammi*. ana. ℥.ß. *casia*. ℈.j. *bdellium*, armoniacke. ana. ℥.j. ß. oyle of rew and dill. ana. ℥.j. with wax and turpentine as much as is sufficient, make a cerate and apply it to the womb: also sometime you must proceed to the vse of Synapismes and Dropaces. Also cupping glasses may be fastened to the places lightly in a circuite, and must be pulled away violently, for these do helpe as it were a charme. Also sometime scarification must be made: and you must vse such things altogether, as haue power to draw out, and call forth from the bottome to the top. Also, for her diet you must minister food that doth attenuate and dissolue windinesse, and minister medicines also that haue the same vertue, as *diamson*, and *diacuminum*, and *diacalaminthes*, and such like. *Ceratum.*

CHAP. LXI.

Of exulceration of the wombe.

De Vteri Exvlceratione.

The matrice sometime is exulcerate, because of hard child birth, or drawing out of the childe, or through corrupting of the matrice, or through sharpe medicines, or fluxes, or through impostumes or botches broken. They that haue this disease do feele a pricking paine in the aggrieued part: and at certaine times stinking and atterie humours are sent out from the filthy vlcer. And other signes proper to the diseases of the wombe do follow, as headach, and specially of the fore part of the head, of the great sinewes in the neck, and of the rootes of the eyes, is felt paine, which also extendeth vnto the fingers endes, and other tokens declared before in the chapters of inflammation of it. Therfore if the vlcer may be seene, it may be knowne by an instrument called *specillum oricularium*: but if it be deepe within and hidden, those things which come from it will declare it: for a diuerse humour is sent forth. If the vlcer be inflamed, the humor is litle in quantitie, bloudie or dreggie with great paine. If the vlcer be foule & filthie, the humor commeth forth in more great abundance, & is matter with lesse griefe. If the vlcer doth eate and feed, the humor is stinking, blacke, and with vehement paine. For the cure, when the bile or vlcer is enflamed, you must vse bloudletting and other medicines that are good against inflammation, as is afore taught. In other causes you must vse purging medicines, especially if the bodie doth abound with vicious and corrupt humors. Also apply such medicines, as do represse & stop the flowing of humors, and correct their hote distemper, as is, the iuices of waters of purslaine, plantaine, *bursa pastoris*, and such like before rehearsed. Then if the vlcer be filthie, you must vse scouring and cleansing medicins, as is, *ptisan* with hony, *mulsa* with the decoction of the root of ireos, *aristolochia*, wormwood or agrimonie. Those vlcers which do eate and feede, must be washed with mares milke, or Asses milke newly milked: you must mixe with milke, hony, and roote of ireos. These *Cauſa.* *Signa.* *Curatio.*

things, if the vlcers may be ſeene, may be annoynted: but if they be deepe within, caſt thē in with an inſtrument called *metrenchita*. Whē the vlcers be wel purged & cleanſed, you muſt vſe ſuch things, as will cloſe them vp: firſt gentle things: and then thoſe that be of a more effect. The Cerate of *Aetius* doth eſpecially pleaſe me, which is this. ℞. of white waxe. ℥.j. of fine oyle of roſes. ℥.iij. & melt them together vpon the coales, and when it is cooled, then put it into a morter, & put thereinto womans milke, or aſſes milke, or goats milke newly milked, and worke them together with a peſtle, vntill it be white, then poure out the aforeſaid milke, & put in new milke, and then worke them againe, and then put to it about ℈.j. of ſaffron. And if thou wouldeſt haue it to mitigate paine more, adde to it oyle of roſes. ℥.ij. the greaſe and marrow of a gooſe. ana. ℥.ſs. Alſo you may put to oile of quinces, in ſteed of oyle of roſes. You muſt apply this Cerate to the belly and the haunches: for the vertue of it is ſent into the wombe by ſecret and hidden paſſages. Alſo you may caſt into the matrice of that facultie: as be, the decoction of pomegranate rinds, roſes, quinces, brāble, mirtles, ſumach, *acatia*, *hypociſtbis*, with reſtrictiue wine. To this place you may transferre and bring medicines out of the former bookes, and out of the chapters of vlcers of the reynes, the bladder, and the yard.

Ceratum.

CHAP. LXII.

Of Straitneſſe of the matrice.

De Phinosi Vteri.

PHinosis in Greek, *obturatio* or *coarctatio vteri*; in Latin, it is a ſtopping or ſtraightening in the mouth or neck of the matrice, wherby thoſe places are made ſo ſtreight, that it will not admit nor ſuffer any ſeede: or if they do receaue it, they can not hold it, for becauſe of their knobby hardneſſe, it can not ſhut together. Sometime it receaueth ſeede, and it is kept and retained in the ſtreight mouth of the wombe, & thereof is a child conceaued, but the conception bringeth occaſion of death to the woman: ſeeing becauſe of the great ſtraightneſſe of the places, it can not be brought forth. This diſeaſe is cauſed in the mouth of the matrice, either of exulceration going before, or of an inflammation there hardened. There is no neede of ſignes to know this diſeaſe by: for by the telling of the ſicke, and by touching of it, you may eaſily know it. The cure of it muſt be wrought with fomentations, that can releaſe, diſſolue, and mollifie. Alſo with cataplaſmes and inceſſions, that be of like power & vertue. Therefore you muſt apply foments made of the decoction of fenugreeke, and *hydrelæon*. Alſo you muſt vſe peſſaries, that can mollifie and diſſolue, as that is which is made of *æſipum*, that is, oyle tried out of woll in ſheeps flanks or necks, ſalt peter, and turpentine. To be ſhort, to the cure of this diſeaſe you muſt vſe mollifying medicines, as is mallowes, *althæa nigella*, fenugreeke, lineſeede, *ammoniake*, *bdellium*, rozin, greaſe, and ſuch like, of the which you may make cerats, emplaiſters, and all kind of outward medicines. And if the euill be waxed old, you muſt vſe ſuffumigations, & euaporations made of aromatike things. And when the places do ſeeme to be ſofter to the feeling, then you muſt put a drie ſponge, that hath a cord hanged at it, into the ſtreight place, to the intent to make it wider: which if it fall out, you muſt put in another that is thicker. Therefore

Cauſe.

Signa.

Curatio.

fore you muſt haue many and ſundry drie ſpunges ready. Afterward you muſt annoint vpon the ſpunges that you will put in, ſome medicine made of alume, and *eleterium*, mixed with honie, that thereby the place may be made wider. And if, after the ſponges be taken away, the place do not ſeem open and wide enough, and inflammation be preſent through the eating and gnawing of the medicines that were applyed, then annoint vpon the ſpunge, that you will put in this ointment. ℞. oyle of ireos. ℥.j. of fine turpentine. ℥.ij. of gooſe greace, ℥.j. roote of ireos and frankenſence. ana. ℥.ß. wax as much as is ſufficient, and make an ointment. But if the inflammation be vehement, take oyle of roſes or violets in ſtead of oyle of ireos. When the inflammation is ceaſed & the place is open, annoint vpon a ſpunge a cerat made of oyle of roſes and gooſe greace, and vſe that vntill it be healed, making the place a litle founder: but yet you muſt alwaies put in ſpunges vntill the end of the cure, leſt that the mouth of the wombe do gather together againe. *Vngnentum.*

CHAP. LXIII.

To take away barrenneſſe.

De Sterilitate Removenda.

Sterilitas in Latin, barrenneſſe in Engliſh. It is cauſed of the womans part, or of the mans part. It is of the mans part, when his ſeed is either hot, and as it were burned, or elſe cold, thinne, watery and feeble, as is the ſeede of old and feeble men: or when it is ſent forth thicker then it ought to be: or becauſe the men be halfe geldings, and haue a very ſhort yard, ſo that they cannot caſt their ſeed into the innermoſt place of the matrice, which alſo ſometime chaunceth through much fatneſſe: for fat men haue ſuch great bellies, that they cannot caſt the ſeed into the deepeſt partes of the bodie. Alſo women of their part cannot conceaue, that haue their matrice either hot & fiery, or cold and moiſt, or foule, filthy and drie. For (as *Hippocrates* ſaith 5. *Apho.* 62.) the ſeed is corrupted or quenched in ſuch. Alſo women that be very groſſe & fat, do not conceaue (as *Hyppocrates* witneſſeth. 5. *Apho.* 46. Morouer women that be leane and ſlender do not conceaue, or if they do conceaue, they doe ſuffer aborſion ſtraight way, which alſo *Hyppocrates* witneſſeth. 5. *Apho.* 44. Alſo ſome do not conceaue, becauſe their wombe is weake, or ſtreight, or ſhort: or becauſe the veſſels of it be ſtopped or ſhut vp, or blinded and couered, by reaſon of a ſcarre, or becauſe the necke of the wombe is drawne crooked: or becauſe the mouth of the matrice is too ſtreight or too wide opē. Alſo vnwilling carnall copulation for the moſt part is vaine and barren: for loue cauſeth conception, and therfore louing women do conceaue often. Alſo age too great or too litle, doth let conception. Therefore you muſt ſeparate them that be young from carnall copulation, ſo that the man may be 30 yeares old, and the woman 18. But ſpecially an vncomely and fooliſh ſhape and forme of the womans body, doth giue an occaſion to barrennes. For a woman that is fertile, ought to haue a moderate ſtature and height of the bodie, breadth of the loines & the ſhare, buttockes ſticking out, a handſome and conuenient greatneſſe of the belly, a ſtraight breaſt and large pappes. The ſignes whereby the diuerſitie of cauſes be knowne be theſe. The hote diſtemper of a man, is eaſily knowne by the abun- *Cauſe.* *Signa.* *Hot diſtemper.*

dance of haires, ſpecially blacke haires vpon the genitalles, and the places adioyning, from aboue vnto the middle thighes. Alſo this diſtemperature is laſciuious and readie to carnall luſt, but it is ſoone ſatiate and filled. A temperamẽt that is too cold, is declared by the parts being about the ſtones being bald and without haire. Alſo they that be of this temperature, be not deſirous & prone to carnall luſt. Heate of the matrice is knowne by the heate in the reſt of the bodie, and becauſe few menſtruis are ſent out and that with paine, ſo that ſometime the womans priuities are exulcerate with it, and that which is ſent out, is blackiſh. Alſo there followeth this temperature, an inſtinction or tickling to lecherie, and drineſſe of the whole bodie. A temperature of the matrice, which is cold, is knowne by ſuppreſſion and ſtopping of the menſtruis. Alſo they that haue this temperament, do deſpiſe vſe of carnall luſt, and haue the mouth of the matrice drawn together. If through too much moiſtneſſe, barrenneſſe be engendred, then in the act of generation, they are very much bedewed with moiſtneſſe and the menſtruis floweth much in quantitie, and thinne. Drineſſe is knowne by the contrarie ſignes to moiſtneſſe. The reſt of the cauſes may be knowne, partly by ſight, and partly by the telling of the partie, or other about her. For the cure commonly to both, as well the man as the woman: it is conuenient for them to keepe the whole bodie very temperate, and to keepe a meane and meaſure in labouring, eating, drinking and bathing, and in all other exerciſes. Men therefore that haue their ſeede corrupted through naughtie and euill kind of dyet, if they vſe a more ordinate diet and healthfull, their genitors will haue fecunditie and fertilitie. Let the woman neither wearie her ſelfe with too much labour, nor let her be altogether idle: for idleneſſe doth fill and ſtuffe the whole bodie with ſuperfluous humours and excrements: but great labour drieth vp the bloud, and conſumeth the menſtruis. Let her vſe meates and drinkes eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as the ſtomack may well comprehend and conſume. And you muſt ſpecially obſerue in their order of good diet, that neither the man nor the woman be made fat. For they that be fat, are vnapt to procreare and beget children, becauſe their genitors cannot touch together, and alſo becauſe they ſend out litle ſeed. Moreouer it is conuenient that you giue vnto ſuch as deſire to get children, ſome accuſtomed and pleaſant thing to eat or drinke before meate, which be moſt apt to prouoke carnal luſt, and to engender ſeed: as thoſe be that do heate meaſurably, and puffe vp with winde. Therefore wine in this caſe meaſurably drunke, is to be preferred before water. For as the prouerbe is: *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus* (that is) If you haue not bread and wine: carnall luſt will coole and pine. For potherbs they muſt vſe rocket, *orminium*, it is an herbe like vnto horehound, *eriſymo*, and other ſuch like which we haue rehearſed of them that cannot vſe carnal copulation. Rewe, calamint, and mintes muſt be eſchued altogether: for calamint and mints, although they engender much ſeed, yet, that which they engender, is feeble and weake: but rewe doth altogether corrupt and deſtroy ſeed. If a woman do not conceaue, through the vice & corruption of certaine humors, it is good to emptie her with a purging medicine, & to amend her with a good diet. Particularly for women, it is good for them to take as good heede as can be to thoſe things that chance to the matrice, and that their menſtruis may flow

Cold temperature.

Cure of both to man and woman common.

Cure of a woman full of corrupt humors.

flow without any impediment. Therfore when the purgation of their méstruis is nigh at hand, let them keepe a measure in eating and drinking with all their diligence. And let them take some of those things that can prouoke and stir vp the purgation of the menstruis, as be herbs that be odoriferous and sharpe, as is, *Cerefolium*, fennell, *apium*, louage, and such like, whereof you shall find plenty in the chapter of the stopping of the menstruis. After the purging of the menstruis, both the right side and the left side of the matrice is open. If cold distépure doth cause barrennesse, you must correct and amend it by foments, cataplasmes, and suffumigations, and other medicines that haue vertue to heat: as those be that are made of motherwort, peniroyall, sage, rewe, annise seede, commin, gladon, and such like. Also it profiteth her to drinke *Castoreum*, and odoriferous seeds, commin, annise seed, and iuniper fruit, and other things that be rehearsed in the chapter of stopping of menstruis. You must amend & correct a hote distempure of the matrice causing barrennesse, with such things as do coole and moisten: as these herbes be, lettuse, mallowes gourds, purslaine, and orach with such like. Also she must drinke wine that is thinne, white and alayed. Also it profiteth her to sleepe, and to bath in sweet water. Also you must apply to the loynes and about the priuities such things as do coole, as iuice of nightshade mixed with oile of roses, which also being layd vpon wooll, may be put well into the matrice. They which cannot conceaue through moistnesse of the matrice, it is good for them to vse a drier diet. Also they must exercise themselues much, and they must be rubbed in the vpper part of the bodie. Also to the intent to purge out, and turne away humors, let them vomit sometime after dinner, and somtime fasting, and you must dry them with scarcity of meat, and let them eate flesh of middle aged beasts rosted, and giue them pure wine, that is mightie to drinke, but giue it them seldome. Also it profiteth to apply restrictiue things to the matrice, as be, roses, leaues of brier, galles, *sumach*, mirtles, knotgrasse, pomegranat rindes, and such like sodden. But you may not do this, vnlesse the whole bodie be first purged. A dry matrice must be cured by the contrarie to that which is aforesaid, as with bathes of sweet water, annointings, and meates that do moisten. Let her vse wine that is alayed, being not very olde. And if a womans conception be impedited and stopped through grosse humours, if they be gnawing, it is good to purge the woman well with *hierapicra* in whey: and she must vse a most exquisite diet, and meats that do engender good iuyce: but you must consume the flegmaticke humours with much labour, with sweating, vomiting, or by purging by the neather parts: and all other things which be rehearsed in the Chapter of stopping of menstruis, which it behoueth not to rehearse here particularly. Also windinesse engédred in the womb, doth let the fertilitie of conception, & causeth barrennesse. Such women therfore as haue this, must first be améded with a straighter diet. Then you must minister both outwardly and inwardly to them, such medicins as can dissolue, disperse, and consume windinesse, as is, commin, rew, dill, seed of *apium* and such like, which be rehearsed in the chapter of windinesse of the matrice, and in other places. If shutting vp of the matrice doth cause barrennesse, you shall open it by casting in of odoriferous clisters, and by vsing of foments and incessions made of fenugreeke, line seed, mallowes, and such like rehearsed in

Cure of a cold temperature of the wombe.

Cure of a hote distempure.

Cure of a moist distempure.

Cure of a drie distempure.

Cure of grosse humours.

Cure of windinesse.

Cure of a matrice shut vp.

the chapter of ſtraightneſſe of the wombe. And afterward you muſt proceed to ſtronger medicines, as motherwort, calamint, peniroyall, and marioram. They which haue the mouth of the matrice gaping much, it is good for them to vſe a drying dyet, and drying foments. And it is good alſo to vſe reſtrictiue medicines, as be the decoction of galles, bramble roots, mirtles, and ſuch like rehearſed before in the cure of a moiſt diſtemper. Laſt of all, if crookedneſſe of the matrice do cauſe barrenneſſe, you ſhall direct and make ſtraight the matrice with mollifying foments: for foments can do that beſt: but yet you may conueniently put in mollyfying peſſaries. But ſpecially the decoction of peneroyall, and motherwort, and *caſtoreum* drunke with poſca, are wont to be good for a writhed matrice. *Paulus* ſaith, that then carnall luſt vſed backward, is good to conceiue. We here haue generally comprehended the cures, onely by other chapters. For the particular cure of each cauſe, muſt be ſought out of his proper chapter.

Cure of an open matrice.

Cure of a writhed matrice.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of ſore trauaile in child-birth.

De Difficvltate Partvs.

Difficilis partus.

SORE trauaile in child birth doth chaunce either through default of the parent, or of the childe, or of the ſecundine, or through ſome outward cauſe. Of the parent, if ſhe be groſſe and fat, faint harted, and vnskilful of pain, or if the whole matrice be ſmall, or if there be inflāmation of the whole womb, or of ſome part of it, or that it be vexed with ſome other diſeaſes, or if ſhe be naturally weake, ſo that ſhe cannot driue out the childe: or if that ſhe do labor before her time. Alſo if the necke of the mouth of the matrice be crooked, or if there be ſome peece of fleſh ingendred there, by reaſon of a bile or vlcer going before. But default of the childe is, if it be of an vnaccuſtomed greatnes, or ſmall and of a litle weight, or if it hath a great head, or if it be monſtrous, as hauing two heades, or three feete, or if it be dead, and ſo doth not labour to come forth, or if it ſwell, or being aliue, if it be weake, ſo that it cannot proceed forth: or if they be two or mo, & do all ruſh ſuddenly together into the neck of the matrice, or if the childe be faſhioned contrary to nature. For the naturall forme of a childe comming forth is, firſt with his head, (his hands being ſtretched out vpon the thighes) & with his head declining to the nether parts, but ſtraightly directed to the mouth of the matrice: the beſt form in cōming forth, next vnto this, is, firſt with his feete, hauing the hands ſtretched vpon both thighes, and ſo deſcending ſtraight vp. All other formes in comming forth, except theſe two, are contrarie and abhorring to nature. The trauaile is made difficile through the Secundine: if it be not pulled away, becauſe of the groſſeneſſe or thicknes of it, or if it break before it ſhould do becauſe of the thinnes of it. For then, the humor that is gathered together in the matrice, is ſent out before the conuenient time. Therfore the priuities be without moiſture, & be drie at the time of the trauaile, when moiſtneſſe were neceſſary, which ſhould make a ſlipperie, and eaſie going out of the childe, and ſo through drineſſe the child ſlideth out hardly. Alſo difficultie in child-birth is engendred of outward cauſes: as of colde, which thickneth the matrice, and maketh the paſſages ſtraighter, or through a great heate, which diſſolueth and weakeneth the

Signa.

ſtrength

ſtrength. But outward cauſes are knowen by the telling of the patient, or of them that ſit by her. Weakneſſe of the woman that laboureth, as fatneſſe, may be knowen by the ſtate of the body. Alſo by diſeaſes, that ſhe hath had before, you may readily come to the knowledge of weakneſſe, and of manie other euils. Weakneſſe of the child is knowen by feeble and ſlow mouing of it. Which if it be dead, it moueth not, and there is coldneſſe of the belly, and great paine about the nauell. Alſo a ſtinking breath is breathed out, & a naughtie colour of the face. Greatneſſe of the child may be coniectured by the conſtitution of the parents bodie, and by greatneſſe of the womans belly. Groſſenes & thickneſſe of the ſecundine may be gathered & knowen thus: if none of the aforeſaid ſignes be preſent, and the woman ſtrong & luſtie, and the child moueth quickly & eaſily. As for the cure, it varieth according to the diuerſitie of cauſes. Therefore you muſt place a fat woman downwarde in a litle bed, that is, hanging downward with her head, and her face towardes the ground, bending and enclining her knees to her thighs, that her wombe ſtretching to the *Abdomen*, may be right with his mouth. You muſt with your fingers annoint the mouth of the matrice, with butter, oile, ducks greace, hens greace, and ſuch like, and you muſt ſpread it abroad, and open it wider by little and little. You muſt comfort and incourage a fearefull woman. And if ſhe be vnskilfull of paines in trauaile, admoniſh her to hold and ſtop her breath ſtrongly, and let her thruſt it out to the ilions with al her might. If ſore trauell in childbirth be cauſed of adſtriction, and binding, or aſtoniſhment, or, as it were, adarctation & penning in of the child, you muſt helpe it with diſſoluing and releaſing, by pouring in largely ſweete wine & hoat. Alſo the decoction of fenugreeke, or mallowes, or lineſeede, or alſo egs are good, becauſe they are of a loſening and mollifying vertue. Afterward you muſt nouriſh the partes about the priuy members, and the belly and loines with the aforeſaid decoction, or with ſome other loſening and mollifying medicine. Alſo it profiteth to vſe hoat inceſſions and euaporations, and to haue the aire of the houſe enclyning to heate. Alſo it is good to vſe infuſions and annointings, with oiles that be hote in touching and vertue, and conuenient cataplaſmes be good. And if neither a feuer, nor any thing elſe do let it, ſhe muſt vſe releaſing and diſſoluing bathes, & you muſt moue her, with bearing her in a chaire, in an aire that is meanely hote. Many doe vſe to ſuch violent ſhaking of the bodie. And if any woman be weake, and haue ſore trauaile in childbirth through reſolution of the bodie, you muſt comfort and refreſh the bodie, with medicines that do thicken, and draw together, and with ſuch meates and drinkes as do recreate, reſtore, & adde ſtrength to the bodie: as be inceſſions & ſprincklings with mirtles, vine leaues pomegranates, roſes, ſmelling to vineger, and annointings with wine mixt with cold oile of roſes. When the infant is ouer great, you muſt applie thoſe things which can make wider, ſtretch out, and looſen the mouth of the matrice. If ſore trauaile do chaunce through an innaturall forme of the child in comming foorth, you muſt bring him to a naturall forme and figure, as much as is poſſible, partly by putting backe, partly by drawing to you, partly by turning, and partly by making it ſtraight. And if the head or foote, be ſent out firſt, you may not draw out the child taking hold by that member: but put

Signa.

Cure of a fat woman.

Cure of a fearfull woman.

your fingers to the ſhoulders or haunches of the child,& thruſt vp that againe which is come forth into the conuenient place,if there be two or three,or mo children,& do thruſt altogether into the necke of the matrice,you muſt driue backe the reſt into the bottome of the womb,& bring that out firſt,which ſeemeth to be moſt ready: but if it do not come forth,becauſe the infant is dead, or hath a very great head, or through ſome other cauſe, you muſt come to drawing out of the child,or to cutting which is taught abundantly of *Ætius*,li. 16. *cap.*23.and of *Paulus lib.6.cap.* 74. For it is not our purpoſe to teach handie cure here. Moreouer if the tunicle or ſecundine of the childe be thicker and ſtronger,then that it may be broken,you muſt cut it. Thoſe that haue the humour,which is contained in the tunicles or ſecundine, flowing & running out before the conuenient time,ſo that the places be dried vp,you ſhall waſh it all about with whites of egs,with the decoction of mallowes, & fenugrecke ſtrained,or with iuyce of Ptiſan warmed. A medicine that doth vniuerſally helpe all that haue ſore trauell in child birth, is this that followeth. ℞. Cinnamon choſen.℥ ij. mirrhe,*caſia lignea*.ana.ℑ j. white amber.℥.j.ß. beate them together and make a fine powder, wherof miniſter in wine that is odoriferous,the weight of one drachme. Moreouer the child being borne,oftentimes it chanceth that the ſecundine doth ſticke faſt in the wombe, which if it chanceth, then ſometime the mouth of the matrice is found open,& ſometime ſhut, and the ſecundine many times is ſtill ioyned to the bottom of the wombe,& many times it is ſeparate. If therefore the mouth of the matrice be open , & the ſecundine which is left therin do cleaue to ſome part of the womb,being wound vp together like a ball,it may eaſily be drawen out. You muſt draw out the ſecundine with your left hand being warmed,& annointed with ſome fat thing, & put into the wombe. If the ſecundine be faſtened & knit to the bottome of the wombe,you ſhall likewiſe put in your hande, warmed and annointed with greace,and take hold of the ſecundine & draw it out: but you may not draw it ſtraight forth,leaſt the matrice come out with it: nor pull it very vehemently, but ſoftly & eaſily,firſt pulling it crooked,bringing it this way & that way: then after that,you may draw it ſomwhat harder, for by this meanes you ſhall looſen it from the faſtening. But if the mouth of the matrice be ſhut,you ſhal vſe perfuſions, & with the fingers of your left hand you ſhall labour to open it eaſily,& to make it wider by litle & litle. Which if you cannot bring to paſſe,it is good to apply about the priuities, foments,perfuſions & ointments that can mollifie, diſſolue & releaſe. If ſhe be ſtrong, you muſt put into her noſtrels at that time alſo ſneezing powder,made of *Caſtoreũ*,pepper & ſuch like. For *Hippocrates in* 5. *Aph.* 49. writeth thus: that the ſecundine may come out, giue her ſneezing powder, and let her ſtop her noſe & mouth. Alſo you muſt miniſter vnto her potions that can prouoke menſtruis: which things aforeſaid,you muſt do the firſt and ſecond day. Moreouer ſhe muſt vſe ſuffumigations,ſeething in a pot, motherwort, *yreos*, ſaueine,peniroyall,calamint,*dictemus* and ſuch like. Then put the pot vnder a cloſe chaire, vpon the which let the woman ſit, being compaſſed in round about with clothes. After that, if you find the mouth of the matrice opened, put in your hand and labour to pull out the ſecundine as is aforeſaide,but if it will not obey to come forth, you may not rent it, for within

Puluis optimus.

To draw out the ſecundine.

within a few daies after being rotten and turned into atter, it will fall out. But because through the euill sauour & smell, when it is rotted, it filleth the head and marreth the stomach. They that are troubled with this euill, must be continually perfumed. For which purpose these thinges are good: *Cardamonies*, *bdellium*, with saueine, frankensence, *storax*, *lapdanum*, wood of *Aloes*, and such like. Also a perfuming with ieate by a pipe, which is put into the mouth of the matrice, doth profite maruellously. Also simples, such as prouoke menstruis, be good: as decoction of motherwort, and laurell berries, with *vinum mulsum*. Also make Pessaries of mirrhe and *Cyclamminum* commixed with oile.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the Sciatica.

De Ischiade.

Ischias in Greek, properly is called a most grieuous paine, which is wont to chance about the ioint, which the Greekes doe call *Ischion*, the Latines *Coxa*, in English the huckle bone. The Latines call this disease *Ischias*, and they that are afflicted with this disease, are called *Ischiadici*. The barbarous sort call this disease, *Sciatica*, and they call them that be diseased with it *Sciatici*. It is caused through a grosse & flegmatike humour, which being congealed, abideth in the ioint of the huckle bones. Therfore continuall crudities & rawnesse, and vnmeasurable vsing of venerious acts do not a litle helpe the ingendring of a *Sciatica*. Also somtime swift deambulations & walkings, and suppression or stopping of the hemmorhides, & custome of vomiting being omitted, & purgation of menstruis, or also other familiar & accustomed emptyings being impedited & stopped, and neglecting of exercises. For ech of these doe ingender abundance of flegmatike humors. There goeth before this euil somtime paine of the muscles that be nigh vnto it, & specially of the loynes, somtime the beginning is in the huckle bone it selfe. Also sometime it chanceth (that the paine of the huckle bone being taken away) there remaineth griefe only about the hammes: and to some about the ankles, but in some all the leg is equally vexed with paine. Also in many, there is paine about the priuy mẽbers, & then also the bladder being vexed, doth ingender difficultie in pissing: and then chiefly the whole legge, from the haunches to the heeles suffereth paine. Let the cure be begun with voiding & purging of the humor that doth afflict the patient. And if the body do equally abound with all humors, before all other remedies, cut a veine in the hamme, or the outward ankle, or also in the arme, on that side that is diseased. For sometime the *Sciatica* is cured in one day, by this emptying out of the legges. But if the bodie be stuffed with a flegmatike and grosse humour, you must beginne the cure with purging of that humour. For the which purpose, you must minister Clysters often, made after this sort, or in like maner. ℞. of Centorie, sage, *Verbasculi odorati*, rewe, *chamæpityos*. ana. *M*. j. rootes of gladon. ℥ j. *stechados*. ℥. iij seedes of annise and fennell. ana. ℥. ij. ß. agaricke of the best. ℥. ij. roote of polipodie. ℥. v. seeth these in sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the third part. Then take of the licour of that decoction. ℥. xiij. of *hierapicra*. ℥. ß. of *electuarium nidum maius*.

Ἰσχιας.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio.

Clyster.

℥.ij. of oile of lillies. ℥. ij. oile of rew. ℥. j. the yolkes of two egges, ſalt. ℥. j. ß. commixe them all and make a Cliſter. Alſo vomittings doth helpe them, that haue the *Sciatica*, much more then the purging downward by the belly, for that doth repell and put backe the humour downward ſuddenly. Therefore you muſt prouoke vomits in the beginning by and by after meate. But afterwarde you muſt miniſter vomitting medicines, beginning firſt with them that be eaſie. They that haue humours vehemently compact and thickened together, which can difficultly be diſſolued and looſened, cauſed through Phiſitions vſing ſharpe medicines out of time, ſuch be holpen by faſtening on of a verie great cupping glaſſe with ſcarifications. But in the *Sciatica* we do not vſe ſuch medicines as can repreſſe and ſtoppe the fluxe. For ſeeing the diſeaſe is placed in the bottome of the huckle bone, bloud is expelled from the veines and muſcles that be nigh adioyning to it, and is ſent thither. Therefore in the beginning of this diſeaſe, there is neede of medicines that can mitigate and aſſwage which neither do coole much, nor that do heate vehemently. For as thoſe things which doe coole, doe thruſt the humours violently to the ankle bone: ſo thoſe things that do vehemently heate, doe draw more matter out of the members adioyning. Moreouer you may not come to the vſing of ſharpe medicines, till after bloud letting or emptying by purgations. For if any man applie ſharpe medicines to the diſeaſed member, before the bodie be emptied or purged, he ſhall make the diſeaſe hard to cure, becauſe of a multitude of humours ſo thickened there, that they cannot be diſſolued. For beſides other things, it is made groſſe and viſcous, and through the heate and drineſſe of the ſharpe medicines, it ſuffereth as it were roaſting, or burning. Firſt therefore you muſt irrigate and ſprinkle the aggrieued place with oile of rew. After you muſt apply more effectuous medicines, which doe heate and can drawe humors from the bottome to the toppe, as be *oleum nulpinum*, oile of pepper, *oleum coſtiuum*, oile of iuniper, *vnguentum aragon*, *martiatum*, and *agrippa*. Alſo ſage, rew, laurell leaues, elder, roote of wallwort, peniroiall, ſatuine, *opoponax*, *bdellium*, *ammoniacum* and ſuch like. Of the which you may make foments, ointments, emplaiſters and cerotes. But if the griefe be extreamely painfull, then vſe this, which followeth, for it is moſt excellent againſt this euill. ℞ roſen of the pine tree ℔. j. ß. *Galbanum*. ℥. v. melt them with a ſoft fire, and then ſtreine it through a cloth, and put vnto it of the pouder of maſticke. ℥. j. and then ſpread it warme vpon dogs leather, or lambes leather, and ſtricke it a good thicknes, and before you applie this plaiſter to the pained place, annoint the place with this ointment following. ℞. freſh hogs greace, ℥. j. ß. and take ſowes or monkes peaſon in number twentie, and beate them both well in a morter, till they be well incorporate, and therewith annoint the place and the plaiſter, and warme the plaiſter againſt the fire, till it be ſoft, and lay it to the agreeued place, and let it lie nine daies. If there be haires vpon the place, you muſt ſhaue them off firſt, and roule it well, leaſt it ſlippeth away, then euery day, morning and euening at ech time, let the patient take. ℥. j. of this electuarie. ℞. of the rootes of *Acarus*, or *gladian*, being made cleane. ℔. j. ſtampe the very ſmall, (as poſſible you may doe) then take of clarified honie. ℔. iij. and put in the rootes by litle and litle, euer ſtirring it, and when it is well ſodden, put

Vomitus.

Cucurbita magna.

When ſharp medicins may be vſed.

Simples.

Emplaſtrum.

Vnguentum.

Electuarium.

put into it of cinnamon. ℥. j made in very fine powder, which being well incorporate, keepe it to your vſe, and at the end of the nine dayes, if the paine be not cleane gone, lay to the forenamed plaiſters, other nine dayes, vſing the ſame electuary, and procure vomit, as before, euery ſixth or ſeuenth day, for that doth greatly reuert the humor. But in the beginning of the griefe, apply to the aggrieued place againe and againe, ſponges wet in the decoction of iuniper, or ſage, or elder leaues. Afterward, vſe this oyntment. ℞. of *vnguentum martiaton*. ℥. iij. oyle of *yreos*, and lillies. ana. ℥. ß. iuyce of rew, and *chamæ pityos*. ana. ℥. ij. hony. ℥. j. ß. ſage, peniroyall, pepper. ana. ℥. ß. pellitory, ſtaueſacre. ana. ℈. j. wax as much as is ſufficient, and make an oyntment. Alſo the vſing of this cerote profiteth. ℞. *oleum coſtinum*, & *vulpinum*. ana. ℥. ij. ß. oile of pepper. ℥. ß. *opoponax*, *bdelium*, *ſtorax*. ana. ℥. iij roote of briony, ſalt peter, leaues of elder. ana. ℥. ij. *ariſtolochia rotunda*, rewe. ana. ℥. j. ß. *Euphorbium*. ℈. j. diſſolue the gums in very ſharpe vineger, and with turpentine & waxe, as much as is ſufficient, make a cerote. And if the euill doe remaine ſtill, you muſt vſe cliſters againe: and then faſten a very great cupping glaſſe with much flame to the huckle bone, making good deepe gaſhes with ſcarification. And if that the diſeaſe be not ended ſo, you muſt vſe againe purging vomits, and the other remedies aforeſayd, which being done, you muſt come to the vſing of *Dropaces*, and *Synapiſmes*, and ſo to the vſe of burning medicines: amongſt which, the roote of the herbe called Iberis, is not the worſt being new, digged vp in ſommer, and diligently braied, and mixed with a little olde ſwines greace, being layde and bound to the ioynt of the huckle bone, or to the whole ſhancke or leg. Alſo the leaues of it will do the ſame thing. And being ſo applied, let it lie not paſt two houres to women, but let it lie foure houres to men, if it be poſſible for thē to ſuffer it: for it raiſeth ſwelling with burning and redneſſe, as a *Synapiſme* is wont to do. Afterward bring the ſicke into a bath, in the which, when he hath ſwet a little, bid him ſit downe in the veſſell, becauſe of the biting heate, and compell him to ſuffer it ſtrongly. For in the beginning, it is wont to bring byting and gnawing with burning heat, then bring him out: from which alwayes almoſt (as *AEtius* witneſſeth) although they be caried in of other, they will go out alone vpon their feet. After the bathing, commixe much oyle with a very little wyne, and ſhake them together, and annoint it: then wipe off the humor with a ſharpe cloath, and couer the leg it ſelfe with very ſoft wooll. And truely (this being done) it hath bene wont to need no other remedy for the cure. But if ſometime it chaunce any part, or remembraunce of the euill to be left ſtill, within a few daies after, you may vſe againe the ſame remedy. And certaine dayes after, you may lay on the cerote, which is a litle before deſcribed. Moreouer, among burning and bliſtring medicines, this is good. ℞. *Mel anacardinū*, leauen. ana. ℥. j. *cantharides*, (the wings caſt away) ℥. ij. vineger, as much as is ſufficient: and commixe them together. Or this is good. ℞. *Euphorbium*, ſalte peter. ana. ℈. ij ſope, quicke lime. ana. ℥. j. *melanacardinum*, as much as is ſufficient, ſo that all being mixed together, may be of the thickneſſe of hony. Let his diet be ſuch, that his meat may be meanely thin, and eaſie of digeſtion. Let his exerciſe be walkings, continuall writhings, leapings, or dauncings and running. It is good alwaies to haue the body ſoluble. And if the diſeaſe hath en-

Aliud vnguē-tum.

Ceratum.

Cauſticum.

Aliud.

Victus ratio.

dured long, and cannot be driuen away with the aforesaide medicines, you must vse burning in three or foure places, after that sort, as *Paulus* teacheth in lib. 6. cap. 76. and *AEtius*. lib. 12. cap. 30.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the goute in the feete and ioyntes.

De Podagra Et Arthritide.

PODAGRA & *Arthritis* in Latine, be diseases of one kinde. And therefore they differ not, but in places diseased. For in both of them there is weakenesse of the ioyntes, and an vnnaturall humour floweth to them. And if that the fluxe of the humor doe flow to the feete, that is called *Podagra* in Latine. But if the humour flow to other ioyntes, it is called in Greeke *Arthritis*, in Latine, *articularis morbus*, the ioint sickenesse. Sometime, this euill doeth rushe in sodainely, being equally dispersed throughout all the ioyntes. But for the most part, the fluxe is woont to fall in priuily, and by little and little. For in some, paine doeth inuade the ioynt of the great toe, but in some the end of the heele is afflicted. Againe in some other, the hollownesse of the foote is grieued, either through chafing of the shoe, or some such like thing. The gout taketh his beginning at the feete, whereuppon it taketh the name, and it proceedeth vpward by litle and litle to the knees, and also to the iointes of the huckle bones, and the thighes. Afterward to the handes, euery ioint particularly being grieued. They that are taken extreamely with this disease, they haue paine in the backebone ioints, and in the ioints of the ribs, and eielids, and to some paine in the throte also: neither is there any connexion or knitting of bones, which is free from this euill. This disease is engendred of continuall crudities and drunkennes, and of immoderat vsing of lechery, through vehement and swift deambulations and walkinges, through long standing, or often riding, by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions & fluxes, and through intermission of familiar exercises. Sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde doe not onely engender this euill, but also do breed hurtfull and corrupt humors. Also many times the cholick being naughtely cured, is wont to be a cause, why the ioint sickenesse should follow. But, for the most part, a disposition to this kinde of disease proceedeth from the parents to the children, and their posterity. Also vniuersally aboundance of all raw humours is the cause of this disease. The humours that do abound, and doe fasten them selues in the ioints, either be sanguine, or cholericke, or flegmaticke, or melancholious. Also sometime this euill is engendred of commixtion of humors. The outward causes may easily be knowen by the telling of the sicke, or them that be about him. The difference of humors you shal know by the signes following. The humour of bloud, if it be much in quantity, it causeth fulnesse, and great swelling, not onely of the veines, but about the skin of the whole member that is grieued, and maketh it red in colour. They which are afflicted with this euill, cannot suffer remedies to be applied that be very colde, or very hotte, and they are continually vexed with paine, because the flowing of the bloud doth chaunce continually and equally. Their vrines are yellow, and meane of substance. Also their veines do abound with bloud, and

Podagra.
Arthritis.
Cause.
Signa.
Signes if bloud doe flow.

are

arepuffed vp and ſwollen. The conuenient age for this euill, is youth. Alſo meats that engender good iuice, and nouriſh abundantly were eaten before, and exerciſes were neglected. The time of the yeare in the which the patient is moſt afflicted is ſpring time. If the humour that floweth into the iointes, be cholerick, you may know it by the yellowiſh colour of the skin. Somtime redneſs is mixed with the yellow color, that is whē choler is cōmixed with bloud. Alſo there is ſenſible heate and ſharpe paine like launcing. Alſo moiſtnes ſodainely burſteth out of the skinne, without euident ſwelling. The patient is eaſed with cooling medicines, and reioyceth, but with hotte thinges his paines augment. In the ſtate and ſtrength of the fit, a feauer taketh him, and a very great thirſt. His vrine is cytrine, and ſometime alſo it is ſharpe. There is wont to goe before this diſeaſe, great cares, and wrath watchings, & werines, and a diet, that was apt to engender choler. The age, complexion, and time of the yeare, that is hote and dry, be apt to cauſe this cholericke fluxe. And if the humour that floweth into the ioints be flegmaticke, the ſwelling will giue place to the thruſting of the finger, and it is looſe and moderat. The colour of the mēber afflicted, is white. Old age is moſt afflicted with this humor, and a complexion cold and moiſt, and it chanceth in the winter time. His vrine is thinne and watery. There went before it idlenes, reſt, and a diet that engendreth flegmaticke humours. If it be ſalt fleume, great ich, and gnawing, or byting doth trouble the diſeaſed members. If the fluxe to the ioints be of melancholy, which chanceth but ſeldome, the colour of the ſwelling is blackiſh. The age, which doth moſt engender this flux, is the declination of middle age. Alſo the complexion is cold and dry, and the time of the yeare, harueſt, a countrey that is cold and dry, and like ſtate of the aire, and a diet that engendreth melancholy. When the humour that floweth into the ioynts, is bloud, by and by you muſt let bloud, not once onely, but often taking it away by litle and litle: for if you doe omit bloud letting, and doe vſe repercuſſiue medicines, you ſhall be an author of great euil. For the bloud being driuen back from the vnnoble members, it ruſheth vp to the principal members, and that be neceſſary to life. Therefore in fluxes of bloud, letting of bloud is very neceſſary, ſpecially in them that abound with bloud. You muſt cutte a veine in the arme beneath, right againſt the leg that is vexed with the fluxe. And if the right hand be vexed with paine of this diſeaſe, cutte a veine in the right legge, about the hamme, or the anckle, or the ſole of the feete: for a veine being cut right againſt the member that is afflicted, it is of great efficacy and ſtrength. Then ſpecially muſt bloud letting be vſed, when this euill beginneth firſt to inuade anie man. For they that be vexed often with this flux of bloud, do feele more hurt, then helpe of bloud letting, ſpeciallie if their body be weake & cold. After bloud letting, you muſt apply remedies to the agrieued mēber, which doe neither coole greatlie, leaſt they ſhould driue together, and thicken the humors, nor heat vehemently, leſt they ſhould draw mo humors vnto the diſeaſed mēber. Therefore you muſt ſprinckle the grieued place with old vineger, & oile of roſes mixed together, ſpecially if the cauſe of the paine do ſeeme to be deep within. For vineger of his own proper thinnes, going into the depth, maketh a way for the oile of roſes, which naturally can eaſe pains. But if the pain be aloft

Signes of cholericke fluxe.

Signes of flegmaticke fluxe.

Signes of melancholy flowing.

Cure of bloud letting.

Localia.

nigh the skinne, you ſhall helpe it greatly with oyle and wine, applying it in ſommer warme, in winter hot. Afterward alſo you muſt vſe cataplaſmes, which can eaſe, and ceaſe paine, without any prouoking of fluxes, made of the meale offenugreeke, bareley, beans, lupines, chammomil, and ſuch like: and you muſt ſee that thoſe things be euer hot, which may well be, if they be cõtinually chãged, and couered ouer aloft with wooll. Alſo this medicine profiteth not a little. ℞. goates milke. ℥. v. the yolkes of two egs, oyle of roſes. ℥. j. ſaffron, ℈. ß. crums of bread as much as is ſufficient, that it may haue the forme of a cataplaſme, ſtampe theſe, till they be well commixed together, and then apply thereof to the member that is grieued. Alſo you may make an emplaiſter or cerote of oyle of roſes, vineger, roſen, waxe, *galbanum*, gum ammoniacke, frankenſence, ſaffron, and ſuch like. You muſt giue him meates, which doe extenuate, and that do nouriſh but little, as be pot herbes. Let him abſtaine altogether from fleſh, except it be birds of mountains. Let him vſe fiſhes that breede in ſtony waters. Wine if the intemperaunce of the ſicke may ſuffer it, muſt altogether be taken away: for it is almoſt the only reaſon, wherby health ſhould follow: which, ſeeing among a thouſand, ſcarce one doth obſerue, it is not maruaile, though there be very few which be deliuered from this diſeaſe at theſe daies. In ſteed of wine let him vſe water, wherein cinnamon, anniſe ſeedes, or ſuch like hath bin ſodden: or that drinke, which is called fooliſhly now adaies *ypocras:* the making wherof you may finde before in the chapter of the Palſey. Let the ſicke diligently auoide fruite and carnall luſt. Alſo he ought to haue a ſoluble belly alwayes, that can auoide out the ordure readily alone: which, if it do not well, waſh it with ſome eaſie cliſter. If through flowing of choller, the diſeaſe in the iointes be cauſed, then your labour muſt be to voide and purge out the humour that doth vexe the patient, which you muſt doe, aſwell by vomiting, as by the belly downewarde. Therefore you muſt ſurely purge them that be thus afflicted, by medicines that draw out choler. After that, vntill the full ſtate of it, you muſt apply medicines that haue vertue to coole & reſtraine, as be thoſe that are made of ſingreene, green roſes, ſharpe ſorrell, nightſhade, plantaine, and ſuch like, often before rehearſed. In this kinde of fluxe, many times, becauſe of the vehemency of the paine, you muſt vſe ſuch medicine, as can cauſe aſtoniſhment. For the which purpoſe, it is good to apply the medicine which we deſcribed before, of gotes milke, crummes of bread, ſaffron and yolks of egges, with the which, you muſt commixe poppy ſeeds. ℥. iij. or *opium*. ℈. ß. or more, or leſſe according to the paine. Alſo, for the ſame purpoſe, leaues of hemlocke and henbane do profit, being applyed and layd on. But, you muſt note, and take heede, that, when you be compelled to vſe ſtupefactiue thinges in feruent and vehement paines, that afterward you doe recreat and nouriſh thoſe members by ſuch things, as doe heate. For vnleſſe you doe ſo, you ſhall make thoſe members weake and intemperate, and ſo they ſhall be ſubiect to a perpetuall fluxe, and ſhall ſoone catch hurt in their actions. Heating medicines, be origan, ſauory, muſtar ſeede, pepper, and ſuch like. Alſo you muſt helpe to prouoke ſweating with heating and rubbing of the body: but ſo, that you touch not the aggrieued member. Moreouer, you muſt miniſter in drinke thoſe things, that do prouoke vrine: for ſuch do voide out choler by the vrine.

Cataplaſmata.

Victus ratio.

Why few be cured of the goute at theſe daies.

Cure of a cholericke flux.

Stupefactiua.

Note.

Alſo

Also such things ministred as do cause sleepe, are wont to doe good, because the fluxe is stopped and dried vp by them, specially, if they be ministred after a purgation. You must giue them meats that do coole, but not that do moisten: for moistnes encreaseth the flux. Let them not suffer hunger, for that maketh choler sharper. Of fruits, let them vse restrictiue apples & medlars, and other that do coole, and stop, or let the fluxe. Let them abstaine altogether fro wine, as is aforesayd. *Diet.*

They which are diseased through flowing of fleume, you must begin the cure of them with purging of fleume. The flegmaticke humour is auoided by vomiting, but neuertheless also downeward by the belly. But the best purging in this euil, is downeward by the belly, whether the disease sticke about the hands or the feete: and so much the more, if the fluxe be in all the ioyntes of the body. For the way that is most familiar, and least perillous for fleume, is to goe out by the guttes. For if it were drawen by violence vpward to the stomacke, and not purged out, it causeth peril. Therefore it is more safe and healthfull to purge it downeward. But before you minister purging medicines, you must minister those things that haue vertue to cut, extenuate and diuide, that by this meanes the grosse humours may be preparate, and made apt to purge. *Cure of a flegmaticke fluxe.*

If emptying may not be done by purging, then they must vse hūger and famine many daies, for they that be flegmaticke of nature, can suffer hunger easily and without hurt. Hereupon *Hippocrates* saith 7. *Aphor.* 6. It is good for the bodies that haue moist flesh to vse hunger: for the hunger drieth the bodies. *Flegmaticke folke can suffer hunger easily.*

Also they must vse discussiue and dissoluing frictions, and strong clisters and medicins that prouoke vrine: but you must apply outwardly such medicines as can ease and cease paine, and which can dissolue and dry moderatly, of which we spake a little before. But in the beginning of the disease, you must mixe with them some things, that haue vertue to restraine and bind. After the beginning, you must vse onely dissoluing and discussiue thinges. The gentlest is this: leaues of *Althæa*, sodden and beaten alone, or with floure, or barely meale applied to it. Also the roote of it sodden in *aqua mulsa*, and stamped and applied is good. And this oyntment is good. ℞. of the oiles of laurell, and *iris*, ana. ʒ. j. old swines greace, butter, ana. ʒ. iij. the marrow of a hart. ʒ. ij. fine turpentine. ʒ. v. *galbanum* dissolued in vineger. ʒ. j. Isope, roote of *althæa*, fenugreecke seed. ana. ℈. ij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an oyntment. *Vnguentum.*

Moreouer let the meates that you giue to nourishe him, be drie of nature, and small of nourishing, as is iuice of rice, rootes, and such like: but yet flesh of the birdes of the mountaines, rosted is not hurtfull for them. Capers with *acetum mulsum*, doth maruellously profite. Giue vnto him wine, in very little quantity, at certaine times, and let it be thin, yellow and old. *Victus ratio.*

They that are diseased through flowing of melancholy, they must be emptied either with bloudletting, or by purgation. Vse bloudletting, when the bloud is infected with melancholy. And vse purgations, when the patient declineth to melancholy: but if both these abound together, it is not sufficient for you to vse one of the aforesayd things. But first, cutte a veine, and then vse a purging medicine: which thing you must also doe in other euils that haue neede of double purging. In the beginning of the disease, and in the very time of emptying and purging, you must vse such things as can represse, stop, and also heate sensibly. *Cure of a melancholy fleum*

After purging, vſe thoſe things that can gently heate, attenuate and diſſolue or diſcuſſe, as is afore taught. But becauſe knobbes and hard ſwellings do engender afterward in the ioynts, aſwell becauſe of the groſſeneſſe, and earthy hardnes of the humor that hath flowed thither, and alſo through the vſing of immoderate diſcuſſiue and drying medicines, without mixing of ſuch with them, as haue a mollifying vertue. Therefore to take thoſe knobs away, you muſt vſe thoſe medicines, which be declared of vs before in the Chapter of hardnes of the ſpleene. But ſpecially very old and ſharpe cheeſe, braied in the decoction of very fatte and old ſwines fleſh is good to be applied. Alſo, for this euill, figges brayd and laid on are good. Alſo *Althæa*, twiſe ſodden, oates, nettles, briony roote, round rootes, dill, ſothernwood, mayweede, horehound leaues, mixed with pitch, ſulphure and wine. Alſo you muſt commixe fat and greaces of ſwine, goates, calues, and geeſe. Alſo all marrowes & other things that haue vertue to mollifie and ſoften. And alſo bathings, after the inflammation is ceaſed, is moſt commodious, and profitable to all that haue the gout. While they waſh them, put ſpunges wet in vineger & ſalt mixt together, round about the diſeaſed places, that they may remaine ſafe from humours flowing to it. They muſt waſh them ſelues, not once onely, but often, in an aire that is altogether meane and moderate. But they may not tary long in hotte water. It is beſt therefore that they be ſprinckled and wet with hotte water, poured on them. Alſo it is profitable, that all the body be rubbed with dry linnen clothes. Moreouer, they that be cured of the goute, ſhall defend themſelues afterward from it, by this means: Firſt, twiſe in a yeare, that is, at ſpring time and autumne, if nothing doe let it, let him bloud largely. Alſo about thoſe times, and oftner, let him vſe purging medicines. Alſo it is neceſſary for him to eate little meate, and to abſtaine from fulneſſe. Alſo you muſt vſe meates that be eaſie of digeſtion, and which readily be diſtributed into the members of the body, and be without excrementes. Let him abſtaine altogether from wine, or let him vſe it very ſcarcely. Let him vſe exerciſe very often, and that before meate: for labour (as *Hippocrates* ſaith) muſt goe before meate. And to conclude, they that deſire to be free from the goute, let them remember this ſhort and moſt holeſome precept of *Hippocrates*: the way to help and preſerue health, is not to be filled with meates, and to be vnſlothfull in labouring. Alſo let his ſleepes and venerous actes be in a meane. As for remedies in this caſe, let ſalt be brayed ſmall in oile, and the ioynts rubbed therewith, for it helpeth greatly all thoſe that wil be free from this euill, except they be of a wonderfull dry temperature. And he muſt vſe annointing with that, morning and euening all the daies of his life.

Cure of knobs.

Bathes.

A defence for the goute.

The end of the third Booke.

THE FOVRTH BOOKE TEACHING THE CVRE OF FEAVERS.

CHAP. I.

An expoſition of feauers.

FEBRIVM EXPLICATIO.

FEBRIS in Latine, a feauer in Engliſh, it is an vnnaturall heat, which taking his beginning at the heart, is ſpread by the arteries and veins into the whole body, and doth hurt, and let the operation of it. For although a man be hotter now then he was before, it followeth not, that he hath a feauer, vnleſſe the heate being immoderatly encreaſed, do offend the man, and hurt his operations & actions. Moreouer, as there be three things (*Hippocrates* witneſſing) which doe ordaine and conſtitute our body (that is to ſay) things contained, things containing, and things that flow about violently, (that is) the hard and ſound members in the body, the humor and the ſpirite or aire: ſo alſo there be three kindes of ſimple feuers. For if immoderate heat be kindled in the ſpirites and aire of mans body, it is called in Greeke, *Ephemera*, and in Latine *Diaria febris*, and in Engliſhe it may be called one day feauer. This feuer is like to hote aire or wind, included in a bladder or bottle: for, like as the aire heateth the bottle, that it is in, euen ſo, the ſpirites of a mans body, being heat more then they ſhould be, doe heat all the whole body. There chanceth in this kind of feauer but one fit, and for the moſt part it endureth but one day of his owne proper nature, whereupon, it is called *Diaria febris*, (that is) the one day feauer. For they ceaſe after the firſt fit, if they be rightly handled. But you muſt note, that there be feauers called *Diariæ*, which laſt vntill the third day, as thoſe be which are engendred of thickening and ſtopping of the conduites and paſſages. For although that this word, *Diaria*, be not of the very ſubſtance of ſuch feuers, yet becauſe they lacke a conuenient name, to the intent that our teaching ſhould be briefe and euident, notwithſtanding that the word repugn againſt it, ſeeing that they be of the ſame nature that true *Diaries* be of, they may moſt rightly be called *Diariæ*, as *Galen* ſheweth abundantly in lib. 9 *therapeutices* cap. 1.) Hereupon it is euident, that there be two kinds of *Diaries*: One, which is named *Diari* ſimply and without adiection or putting too of any word, which feuer doth not extend aboue the ſpace of a naturall day (that is) 24. houres. An other kinde there is,

Febris quid.

Three principall kindes of ſimple feauers.

Ἐφήμερα.

Diaria.

Note.

Diaria ſimplex.

Diaria pluriũm dierum.

which is called *Diaria plurium dierum*, (that is) a diary of many daies. It is called by an other name of *Galen* (that is) *Synochus non putrida*. The second kinde of simple feauers is, when as immoderate heate is kindled in the humors, and it is called *putrida* (that is) rotted, onely becauſe the humours in this kinde of feauers do putrifie and rotte. It is like vnto hot water: for as that doth heat a cold veſſell, that it is poured into: ſo alſo humours, hote aboue nature, doe heate the body. The humours do putrifie and rot either within the veſſels or without. If they rot within the veſſels, then either all the humours do putrifie together, or elſe one alone. If all the humours do putrifie equally and a little within all the veſſels or veines, or ſpecially within the greateſt it cauſeth a feuer called *Synocha putrida*, which, to the intent you may perceiue what it meaneth: yo muſt note firſt that the Phiſitions of Greece doe call that feauer *Synochus*, in the which one fitte remaining ſtill continually from the beginning to the ending, extendeth and continueth many daies. Or, it is a feauer which is without any great mutation vntill the end of it. This feauer may be called of the Latines *continens febris*, and is in Engliſh a conſtant or continuall feuer. But although there be one forme and likelyhood of ſuch feauers, whereupon they name them *Synochus*, yet their nature is not all one. For ſome of them haue manifeſt ſigues and tokens of rottenneſſe: and ſome againe haue none at all, which (as we ſaid a little before) be of the kinds of *Diaria*. We to the intent that our doctrine may be the more euident, doe call the firſt *Synochus putrida*, and the laſt we call, *Synochus non putrida*. And in this place you may not follow the barbarous ſort, which call the laſt of them *Synocha*, and the firſt *Synochus*: ſeeing the Greekes (as *Galen* witneſſeth) conteine them both vnder the name of *Synochus*. Of thoſe feuers, which are named *Synochi*, there be three ſundry ſorts or differences: for ſome of them doe endure of an equall vehemency and force from the beginning vntill the ending: thoſe the Greekes call *homotonos*, and *acmaſticos*, (that is) remaining ſtill in the ſame force and vigour. Some alwaies encreaſe and augment by little and little, thoſe the Greekes do call *anabaticos*, and *epacmaſticos*, (that is) encreaſing and augmenting more and more. Some doe decreaſe and diminiſh by little and little, thoſe the Greekes call *paracmaſticos*, (that is) decreaſing. Moreouer, if one onely humour doe putrifie and rot within the veſſels, it kindleth a feauer, which the Greekes do call *Synechis*, and the Latins, *continua febris*, in Engliſh a continuall feuer, which is, when the feauer doth not leaue the patient, but it hath a certaine remiſſion and ſlaking in euery fit. Whereby it is euident that the feauer *Synochus* and *Synechis* (that is) a conſtant feauer and a continuall feauer doe differ much a ſunder. For in a feauer *Synochus*, there is no remiſſion or ſlaking of the heate, but in the feauer *Synechis*, there is ſenſible remiſſion and ſlaking in euery fitte. Alſo the feauer *Synochus*, hath but one onely fit: but in *Synechis* there be many fittes. And they two agree in this, that neither of them doth leaue the patient ſometime. Of feauers that are called *Synechis*, or elſe *continuæ febres*, there be three kindes: for if choler do putrifie and rotte within the veſſels, it cauſeth a continuall tertian, or a burning feauer, which is called of the Greekes *cauſos*. If fleume doe putrifie or rot within the veſſels, there engendreth a continuall quotidian. But if melancholy do putrifie and rot within the veſſels, there engendreth

Putrida.

Σύνοχος.

Two kindes of Synochus.

Synochus putrida, non putrida.

1 *Three ſorts of Synochus.*

2

3

συνοχοί.

What a continuall feauer is.

Difference betweene Synochos, and συνέχυς.

Three kindes of continuall feauers.

Tertiana continua.

gendreth a continuall quartan. And theſe continuall feauers be ſomewhat like to the intermitting feauers, of the which we will ſpeake ſtraight way. For a continuall tertian, agreeth with a true intermitting tertian, in that, that it hath a fit, aſwell as it, euery third day. And a continuall quotidian agreeth, with an intermitting quotidian, becauſe ech of them hath a fit euery day. Alſo a continuall quartaine agreeth with an intermitting quartain, becauſe both of them cauſeth a fitte euery fourth day. But yet theſe feauers doe differ two waies, notwithſtanding that they agree in the humor that cauſeth them. Firſt they differ, becauſe in continuall feauers the putrified humour is contained within the veines, but in intermitting feauers, that humour is diſperſed into all the members of the body, whereuppon it chaunceth through violence of ſpreading of humours, the feauers are purged out by them ſelues. Hereby alſo they differ another way, (that is) the intermitting feauers ſlake berweene the fits, but the continuall feauers doe not ceaſe at all betweene the fits. Hitherto we haue rehearſed what kindes of feauers humors putrified within the veſſels doe cauſe and engender. Now we will expound, what feauers humours putrified without the veſſels doe conceiue, engender, and kindle. If therefore an humour doe putrifie and rotte without the veſſels, it cauſeth an intermitting feauer, which is ſo called, becauſe the fit doeth not endure continually, but it hath a ſlaking or ceaſing, and leaueth off betweene the fits. It may moſt aptly be called in Latine *febris interpolata*, becauſe the fittes come and renew at their times: ſome call it *deficiens febris*. Of this feauer there be three kindes, (that is) a Tertian, a Quotidian, and a Quartaine. A pure and exquiſite Tertian is cauſed when choler doth putrifie and rotte without the veſſels. It is ſo called becauſe it ceaſeth one day, and commeth againe the third day. An exquiſite Quotidian, which in Greek is called *Amphimerinon*, it is cauſed of ſweet fleume being putrified and rotten without the veſſelles, and it is ſo called becauſe it returnerh euery day. We did not raſhly ſay ſweete fleum: for if glaſen fleume doe putrifie and rot a little, it cauſeth a feauer called *Epialos*. And this *Epialos* is a feauer, in which the patient is both feuerous, and feruently colde, and doth feele both heat and cold immoderat in all parts of his body, both at one time together. To the aforeſaide feauer doth belong a feauer, in Greeke called *Lypiria*. In this feauer there is heate felt within, and in the bowelles and entrals: but in all the outward parts, there is cold felt. An intermitting Quartaine is engendred of Melancholy putrified and rotted without the veſſels. It is ſo named becauſe it ceaſeth two dayes, & returneth againe the fourth day. The third kinde of ſimple feauers in generall is cauſed, when heate is kindled, in the ſound, hard, and fleſhy parts of mans body, & it is called both in Greeke and Latine, *Hectica febris*, and in Engliſh the feauer Ethicke. This feuer is like to a hote veſſell, for as the veſſell doth heate the water that is poured into it: ſo alſo the feauer Ethicke, which ſticketh in the ſound and fleſhy parts of the body, and is infixed in them, is able to heate all the humors of the body. And if this feuer doth ſo encreaſe, that it doth melt and conſume the whole body, and all the hard and ſound parts of it: then it is called *Hectica maraſmodes*, and *maraſmus*. And this (as *Galē* witneſſeth) is vncureable. For although you might quench the heate, yet the drineſſe which is left, being proper to old age, will

Quotidiana continua.
Quartana continua.
Likeneſſe betweene continuall and inmitting feauers.
Difference betweene continuall and intermitting feauers.
Intermitetns febris. Interpolata.
Tertiana intermittens.
Quotidiana exquiſita.
Epialos.
Lypiria.
Quartana intermittens.
3
Hectica febris.
Maraſmus.

kill the patient. Beſides the feauers now of vs rehearſed, there is another feuer which is cauſed of breathing in of peſtilent aire. But ſeeing this feauer (as *Galen* witneſſeth *Libro primo de differentijs febrium, Capite quinto*,) is engendred of rottenneſſe, for the aire about vs being corrupted with a putrifying, and rotting euaporation, cauſeth alſo the humours of the body to rotte. Therefore it may be contained vnder the ſecond principall kinde of feauer called *Putrida*. Moreouer in this place, we may not let paſſe to tell, that ſome feauers be engendred without diſeaſe or griefe in any member of the body, and ſome feauers be kindled through the inflammation of ſome member. Therfore, as the former feauers haue their names: ſo alſo each of theſe that follow haue their proper names. For that feauer which is engendred through inflammation of the filme or cal that girdeth in the ribs, it is called *Pleuretica febris*. That which engendreth through inflammation of the lungs is called, *Peripneumenica febris*. That which chaunceth through inflammation of the ſtomack, the liuer, or the lungs, is called in Greeke *typhodes* (that is) inflaming or burning. Likwiſe all other feuers, which engender through inflammation of any member, haue diuerſe names, according to the diuerſity of the member. Therefore in euery ſicke perſon you muſt diligently diſcerne feauers which come without diſeaſe of other members, from thoſe feauers which engender through inflammation of ſome member. Of the aforeſayd ſeuers, ſome be *Typicæ*, (that is) certaine and ordinate: and ſome be, *Erraticæ*, (that is) vncertaine and vnordinate. *Typicæ* be ſuch feauers, whoſe fits and ſlakings from them doe come iuſtly at their appointed time. *Erratice* are ſuch feuers as be contrary to theſe, for they keepe no certaine and iuſt time, nor any order of fits, nor the intermiſſion betweene them, as be thoſe feauers, which engender of melancholy, which is moued in certaine members, and in ſome it remaineth vnmoueable, in other members it putrifieth, or beginneth to boile. Hitherto we haue rehearſed the kindes of ſimple feauers: it remaineth therefore, that we declare briefly the kindes of compound and mixt feauers. Therefore compound feauers are cauſed two waies: firſt, becauſe theſe feuers aforeſayd (that is) a Tertian, Quotidian, and Quartane, may be mixed together without the diſeaſe of any member. Secondarily, becauſe theſe feauers, which be engendred through inflammation of ſome member, may commixe together. The feauers that come without inflammation of any member, are ſometime complicate and ioyned together, and ſometime they are altogether confounded. Complication (as *Galen* witneſſeth) is when the feauers inuade the patient at diuerſe houres. And confuſion is, when they begin at one time. There be foure complications or ioyning together of the feuer Tertian and Quotidian (as *Galen* witneſſeth.) One, when a Tertian and Quotidian are mixed together being both intermitting feuers. Another is, when an intermitting Tertian is ioyned with a continuall Quotidian. This is called by a peculiar name of the Greekes *Hemitriteus*, becauſe all his nature hath the halfe part of each of the ſayde feauers. The third is when an intermitting Quotidian is mixed with a continuall Tertian. The fourth is when a continuall Quotidian is ioyned with a continuall Tertian. To be ſhort, feauers of one kind are complicate and ioyned with feuers of the ſame kind, as continuall with continuall, and intermitting with intermitting feuers, and

Tertians

Peſtilent feauer.

Feuers engendred by inflãmation of ſome member.

The kindes of compound feauers.

Complications of Quotidians and Tertians.

Hemitriteus.

Tertians with other Tertians, and one Quartane with another Quartane. Also it chanceth many times, that feuers of diuerſe kinds are coupled together, as Quotidians with Tertians, and each of them with Quartanes, and ſometime intermitting feauers are mixed with continuall feauers. Moreouer after the ſame ſort, feauers which are engendred with inflammation of ſome members, are ſometime mixed together, as if diuerſe members doe each of them kindle a feauer proper to them ſelues, or the affection where they engender, be mixed. Seeing therefore, that feauers are compounded and mixed many ſundry waies: firſt the kinds of ſimple feuers muſt be with great diligence perfectly learned of them that ſtudy Phiſicke: for vnleſſe they know them verie perfectly, it can not be that euer they ſhould knowe well compound feauers. Therefore ſeeing the knowledge of them is very hard, in ſo much that oftentimes cunning Phiſitians are deceiued in iudging of them: you muſt ſeeke the ſignes and tokens, whereby you may know them, diligently out of *Galen*, who hath taught this thing more exactly then any man. We, to helpe the memory of the ſtudious haue comprehended all the kindes of ſimple feauers in this Table following.

TABVLA FEBRIVM.

Of ſimple feauers there be three principall kindes. For vnnaturall heat is kindled and engendred either in the, &c.

- Spirites or breath, and doth cauſe Ephemera, or Diaria, whereof bee two kindes, that is to ſay.
  - Ephemera ſimpliciter or diaria, one day feuer. And Diaria, pluriũ dierũ otherwiſe called Synochus non putrida, enduring three or four daies.
- Or in the humours, and cauſeth putrida febris, a rotten feuer, they do rot in two places either
  - Within the veſſels, & that two waies, for either,
    - All the humors do putrify and rot equally, & cauſe a feuer called Synochus putrida.
    - Or one only humour putrifieth, and ſo cauſeth a continuall feuer: and if there be putrefaction of
      - Choler it cauſeth a cõtinuall Tertian or a burning feuer.
      - If fleume do putrfie it cauſeth a continuall quotidian.
      - If melancholy do putrifie, it cauſeth a continuall quartane.
  - Or they putrify without the veſſels, and cauſe an intermitting feauer. For if there be putrefaction of &c.
    - Choler it cauſeth an intermitting Tertian.
    - If fleum that is
      - ſweet do rot it cauſeth an intermitting quotidian,
        - Exquiſit and pure
      - Glaſé: it cauſeth Epialos.
    - If melancholy do rot, it cauſeth an intermitting feauer quartane.
- Or in the fleſhy parts, and cauſeth either.
  - Hectica febris.
  - or
  - Maraſmus.

CHAP. II.

Of one daie Feauer.

De Diaria.

Ἐφήμερα quid.

Diaria *Febris* in Latine, *Ephemera* in Greeke: in English one day feauer. It is that which hath one onely fitte, finishing for the most in one day, at the most, of his owne nature. For it endeth after the first fitte, and doth not exceede, nor passe a naturall day, if it be rightly vsed. And that, because of the matter wherein it is, (that is) the spirite of breath which is easily dissolued and dispersed. Therefore *Galen* doeth most worthily call this, the most simple feauer, because it is the shorteſt, and the most gentle feuer, being nothing malignant. Therefore if any thing in this feauer be committed either by ignorance of the Phisitions, or through intemperance of the sick, or by errors of the ministers & assistants, whereby it turneth into an other kind of feauer, that doth not chaunce through the nature of this feauer. *Diaria febris* is causeſd, when as the spirite or breath is inflamed and heat aboue nature without any putrefaction or rottennesse. And that chanceth many waies: somtime through constipation binding or thickning of the skinne, which stoppeth and keepeth in the vapours or spirites which were wont to flow out by the pores, which because they be hote and sharpe, therefore they engender a feauer. Sometime it is causeſd through wearinesse, & vehement defatigation. Also through watchings, crudities, and lacke of digestion, sadnesse, feare, ire, vehement care of the minde, burning of the sunne, cold, hunger, drunkennesse, and swelling of the kernels in the throte, and such like, which can heate the spirites and inflame them. The signes whereby *Diaries* are knowen, are of two sorts: for some signes be common to all *Diaries*, and some be proper and peculiar to ech cause. The common signes be fixe in number, whereof the first is the pulse. For all the *Diaries*, as much as in them is, do change the pulse in greatnes, swiftnesse, and oftennesse. But it keepeth exquisitely that order, softnesse and equality, which is according with nature. The second common signe is the vrine, which in *Diaries* is altogether according to nature, or doeth little turne from a naturall state. An vrine, that accordeth with nature, is subrufe in colour, meane in substance, hauing in it a residence white, light, and equall. The third token is the equality of heat which in al *Diary* feuers is gẽtle, pleasant, & easie. The fourth signe is the maner of ending of it, for all *Diaries* are loosened and ended by a breath or vapor, which cannot be perceiued, or by abundant vapours or moistures, or sweet sweets. The fift is the wanting of euill symptomats, & accidẽts: as be vehement paine of the head and stomach, and other parts, abhorring of meats, vnquietnes, vnsatiable thirst, and such other like. The sixt and common sign is, that all *Diary* feuers be engendred of an outward cause which the Phisitions at these dayes call a primitiue cause. But the particular signes, whereby each *Diaria* doth differ frõ other, be these that follow. They which haue a *Diaria* feauer, causeſd through watching, there chaunceth to them a naughty colour, and swelling of the face, heauy motion of the eyes, for they scant lift vp the eye liddes, there is moystnes of the haires of the eie liddes, and small pulses. For watching (as *Hippocrates* saith) seeing it letteth digestion, it engendreth abun-

Causa.

Signa.

Common signes fixe.

1

2

A naturall vrine.

3

4

5

6

Particular signs of diaries

Signes of watchings.

abundance of crude and raw humours and vapours, it diminisheth the natu-
rall heate, and vnlooseneth the body, whereupon there followeth the tokens
aforesayd. To be short, watchings doe reuoke and pull backe nature from di-
gesting: therefore they cause great crudity and rawnesse, as well in the braine,
as in the rest of the body, whereupon also doth chaunce the tokens aforesaid.
The signes of a diary, caused of care and sorrow be these, leannes of the body. *Signes of care and sorrow.*
If sorrow be the cause, it is clearer, if care, it is darker. Also hollownesse, and
drinesse of the eyes doth signifie both the sayd effects: but in thoughts and co-
gitations it is least, because the spirites and humours are lesse consumed. And
it is most euident in sorrow. Also there follow these effectes, a certaine vnac-
customed paleness or swartnesse, so that the skinne is destitute of her natu-
rall colour. They which haue a diary through wrath or furious anger, they
haue neither hollownesse of eyes, nor euill colour of the face, but rather their *Signes of anger.*
eyes seeme to sticke out further, and their face is red, and there is loftines of
the pulses. So also the signs of the rest of the diaries being engendred through
perturbation of the minde, may chiefly be knowen by the pulses. For in sad- *Signes of sadnes.*
nesse the spirites are caried inward, and therefore the pulses be small, feeble,
and rare. In feare new begun, the bloud and spirits runne inward as it were to *Signes of feare*
the spring head, and the minde is troubled. For nature being vexed, driueth
the spirites hither and thither, which through mouing are inflamed, whereby
the pulses are made swifte, necessity compelling them, and the minde being
chafed maketh them vnequall and sharpe. In old feare (the spirits being dis-
persed and vertue being feeble,) it causeth such pulses, as we speake off before
in sadnesse. They which haue a *Diaria* feuer, through burning and heat of the *Signes of Sun-*
Sunne, their skinne is hot and dry, their head seemeth to them to burne, be- *burning.*
cause of the spirites inflamed in it. Their eyes waxe redder, and somtimes the
veines in their eies, temples & forehead, and in all their whole face are stret-
ched and puffed vp. They that haue this feuer through cold, they are taken *Signes of cold.*
with heauy distillations, and reumes, because cold bindeth, and withholdeth
and keepeth the fumous excrements within the skin. Moreouer the skinne is
lesse hote, and all the body sheweth to haue a greater moysture, because the
wonted fluxe is restrained and stopped through colde. Moreouer there is no
filthinesse in the face for the same cause. They which haue this feauer caused
of wearinesse, their skin is made drier, then it is in other diaries, because ex-
ercise drieth vp the body, and draweth out the moisture of it: also their pul- *Signes of wea-*
ses be vnlike: for they that haue vsed great exercises, and bee wearied aboue *rinesse.*
measure, they haue small pulses, because of imbecillity and weakenesse of
strength, but they that haue vsed but small labours, their pulses be great, be-
cause their strength is not diminished yet. They which be taken with a *Diaria* *Signes of dru-*
feuer through drunkennes or hunger, they need no signes to know the cause, *kennesse and*
for such causes may bee knowen by telling of the sicke. They which haue this *hunger.*
feauer through kernelles, swellings or impostumations aboue the throate or *Signes of swel-*
mouth, or other where: they haue very great pulses, and because of the feue- *lings about*
rous heate, they be swift and often. Also there is equality of their pulses be- *the throte.*
cause the instrumẽt of mouing is not letted neither by obstructiõ, nor throgh
abundance of humours, nor of sharpe vapours, nor by pressing together, vn-

lesse the inflammation be very great. Their face is altogether red and swollen, because of the abundance of heat. And their vrine appeareth pale, because the choler that should coulour the vrine is transferred to the botch or impostumation. The cure of all diary feauers is brought to passe by diet, whose chiefe point in all diaries that be simple consist in this: that you minister vnto them meates that engender good humours, and that be easse of digestion and apt to be distributed about the body. Giue vnto thē that are burnt in the Sun, and to them that be angred, a diet which doth coole & moist. And vnto them that are cold, giue a diet that nourisheth lesse, and that doth heat moderatly. Against watchings or sadnesse, or consuming with ouermuch care, vse a diet which can both moisten and prouoke sleepe, that it may deliuer them from the drinesse that those euils haue caused, and also that it may recreat and refresh their strength. They that haue a feuer of wearines, you must allow them to eate as much meat as they can digest: for you must alwaies eschue cruditie and rawnes of the stomach. For the substance of the body being dissolued and dispersed with labour, must be repaired with much meate being easy of digestion. You must measure the quantity of taking of meate, by the patientes strength, age, naturall temperament, and custome of the sicke. Moreouer by the time of the yeare, the region, & such other like. But those, whose temperature of the body is very hot and dry, those you must feede with meat by & by, at the first beginning of the fit. For in them the diary feauer will change very swiftly into an acute and rotten feuer. Chiefly aboue other, they may be fedde with a thin diet, which haue a diary caused of a botch or impostumation, for in them, the substance of the body is not diminished. Wine that is white and thin is good almost for all diarie feuers, those, which be properly named so, & doe endure but twenty foure houres. For besides that, it helpeth digestion, it also prouoketh vrine and sweat (as *Galen* saith.) But you may grant it more abundantly to the feauerous through watchings, sorrow, or care, because great abundance of spirites is spent and consumed in them, which wine will easilye and quickly restore in them againe. But to those that haue headach, whether they haue watched, or be feuerous by any other occasion, they must refraine from wine, because it pearceth the head quickly. And they that haue this feauer engendred of great anger and fury, vnlesse they be altogether quiet from that perturbation, they may haue no wine giuen to them, for the spirites, and bloud is maruellously chafed, and boileth sore. Also you must driue from wine those that be feuerous, throgh the swelling of botches or kernels in the throte vntill it be loosened: not, that it is so vnprofitable for the feuer, but that it hindreth the cure of the botch. For it encreaseth the flowing of the humors into the grieued place, and so causeth inflammation, and thereby augmenteth the feauer. You must cure all simple feauers that be diaries (as *Galen* witnesseth) with bathes. Therefore whosoeuer hath this feauer, in the declination of the first fit, you must bring them into a bath. But yet all may not be bathed alike, nor all must vse the same parts of a bath. For they that haue this feuer caused of botches, or impostumations, they may profitably tary in the aire or fume of the bathe, because it both rarefieth and maketh thinne the skinne, and also it prouoketh and enticeth sweate out of the body. Neither doeth it hurt those

Victus ratio.

Vrine good for diaries.

Curatio.

thoſe patients with drineſſe, as it would doe thoſe, that haue this feauer engendred of wearineſſe, watchings, cares, and other perturbations of the mind. For ſeeing their body is dried vp altogether by thoſe cauſes, they muſt be kept from the aire of the bath, leaſt it augment their griefe. Therefore ſuch may tary the longer in a bath of ſweete water being made hote, that through the moyſture of it, they may recouer the humidity that is loſt, and is decayed in them. Afterward ſoft handes muſt rubbe them gently, with plenty of warme oyles, wherein there is no manner of reſtriction or binding. For this friction and rubbing doth moiſten, looſen, and ſoften the hard and fleſhie parts, and it diſſolueth and diſperſeth thoſe things which are contained in the pores and conduites of the body. They that haue this feauer cauſed through burning of the Sunne, you muſt cure them by and by in the beginning with cooling, and with many bathings of ſweete water, and onely with pouring on a little oyle without friction or rubbing of it, for it raiſeth heate. Things that doe coole the head being applyed to it, be oile of roſes, and of vnripe oliues, and other which be rehearſed in *libro primo*. Theſe being firſt made cold, and then receiued with wooll, and holden vp aloft, you muſt preſſe it with your hand, and let it droppe downe vppon the fore part of the heade, and that continually, while the feauer doth decline: then afterward bring the ſicke into a bath. If any perſon haue this feauer through colde, he muſt alſo bee brought to a bathe in the remiſſion of his fitte, and his head muſt be nouriſhed both before and after the bathing with oyle of *yreos* and *oleum nardinum*, and ſuch like. For they that haue a feauer through this cauſe, haue neede of medicines that can heate, and remoue conſtipation and binding. They that labour of a *Diaria* feauer through hunger, in the inclination of the fit, you muſt bring them ſtraight vnto a bathe, and pouring vppon them much ſweete oile warmed, rubbe them ſoftly, and you muſt keepe them long in the water of the warme bathe, that thereby the drineſſe, which hunger hath cauſed in the body, may be corrected and amended by the oile and the bath. When they be come out of the bathe, you muſt recreat and refreſhe the ſtrength with conuenient meates, and then you muſt bring them againe to a bathe, and when they come out againe, (the perturbation with their bathing being ceaſed) you muſt giue them hotte water to drinke, and by and by you muſt miniſter iuyce of ptiſan, and ſometime they may take lettuce, and they may eate fiſhes taken out of grauelly places, and being light meat ſodden in a white broath, which, what it was in olde time, *Galen* ſheweth in his fourth booke, *de ſanitate tuenda*. If the feauer *Diaria* doe chaunce through crudity or rawneſſe of the ſtomacke: you muſt firſt conſider, whether the wombe be ſoluble, or elſe coſtiue. If it be ſoluble, and thoſe things only which be corrupt, do ſeeme to voide forth, then you muſt waſh him and nouriſh him in the remiſſion of the feauer. But not vnleſſe firſt you diligently behold and foreſee all thinges chauncing to the ſtomacke. For if ſuch aboundant emptying hath beene already, or doth now continue, ſo that, the vertue and ſtrength of the ſicke is wearied, it is better to giue him meate, and waſhe him both together. But you muſt diligently beholde firſt thoſe things that be about the ſtomach. You muſt vſe about the ſicke, if the emptying

doe endure no longer, irrigations and ſprincklings of the ſtomach with oyle and wormewood, and other things which are rehearſed before in the thirde booke in the Chapter of weakeneſſe of the ſtomacke. But thoſe things that be applied to the ſtomach, let them be wel heat. For thoſe things that be applied bloud warme, do diſſolue and looſen the ſtrength of the ſtomach. If the belly be altogether coſtiue, handle, and feele the ſides, & then the whole body, and conſider, whether the meate is deſcended into the ſmall guts, or into the colon. And if the meate abide yet ſtill in the ſtomach, let the ſicke drinke much warme water, or put his finger or a feather downe into his throte, and vomite vp all that vexeth and troubleth him. Then you muſt foment and nouriſh his hypochonders and ſides, and let him reſt. But when the food is diſcended already into the bowels, you muſt bid them lie with their face & ſtomach downward, and you muſt nouriſhe the belly and prouoke ſleepe: for that digeſteth crudity maruellouſly. After ſleepe to bring out excrements from the wombe, you muſt put in a ſuppoſitary, or caſt an eaſy cliſter to looſen the wombe. They which haue a feuer cauſed through ſwelling of the kernelles of the throte, in them you muſt firſt cure the bile or botch that cauſed the inflammation, after that ſort, that *Galen* teacheth in his bookes *de medendi ratione*. When the fit declineth, they muſt be waſhed. Alſo they muſt be nouriſhed with a thinne and ſcarce diet, becauſe in them, the ſubſtance of their body is not loſt. Alſo they muſt be kept from wine, for the cauſes aforeſaid. And this ſufficeth for the curing of a *Diaria* Feuer, being ſo called *ſimpliciter*, without any addition.

Note.

Sleepe digeſteth.

CHAP. II.

Of a Diary laſting moe daies.

De Diaria Plvrivm Diervm.

Diaria pluriũm dierum. Synochus non putrida.

THere is an other kinde of Diaries, which is named *Diaria plurium dierum* for no other cauſe, but becauſe it extendeth and cõtinueth vnto the third day. It is otherwiſe called *Synochus non putrida*. The auncient authors haue called this feuer *Diaria*, becauſe it is of the ſame nature that right Diaries are of. For it endeth after the firſt fit, if it be rightly and well handled.

Cauſe.

This feuer is cauſed of thickning or ſtopping of the pores, and paſſages of the skinne. That thickning (as *Galen* witneſſeth) doth chaunce either becauſe the ſmall pores are ſtopped vp, or becauſe they waxe narrower, or alſo becauſe the body it ſelfe is moderatly thicked, which is wont to change through cold, or after a bath, or by a medicin that is very ſharpe and reſtrictiue: or through burning of the ſunne, and other ſuch like which can dry the skinne. This feauer may be knowen firſt by touching: for in them that haue it, the skin is felt harder, and more compact together, then it is woont to be: Secondarily you may know this feuer by mouing of the heat, for at the firſt touching it ſeemeth gentle, and eaſie, but afterward, if you hold ſtill your hand longer, the heat is ſharper. Thirdly you may know this feuer by the vrine, which is not much altered from his naturall ſubſtaunce and colour: for the bloud doth not boyle very much, neither is there much choler ingendred, whereby the vrine ſhould be made higher coloured. Fourthly, you may know it by the bigneſſe of the body, which keepeth one ſtate and doth not fall alway, becauſe the thicknes

Signa.

1

2

3

4

of

of the skin doth let the dissoluing of the vapours and moysture, and therefore also the eyes are not hollow, nor dry, but more swollen and more moysture, then they should be naturally. Fiftly, you may know it by the pulse, which is equall great, swift, frequent and vehement. They that be taken with this feauer, if you will cure them rightly and truly, you must let them bloud, and you must draw out so much bloud, as the strength of the patient will suffer. And know this for a surety, that vnlesse you vse this remedy to those, which by nature haue their body vnapt to breath out vapours because of aboundance, it will come to passe that either they shall be choked, or be in daunger of often swounding, vnlesse great strength or much sweating, or large fluxe of bloud do deliuer them from death. The body being emptied by bloud letting, shortly after minister meats and medicines which can cleanse and scoure. The meats which can do this in feauers (as *Galen* witnesseth) be *ptysan* and *mulsa*. The medicines be *ptysan*, *oximell*, and things sodden in *mulsa*, as be calamint, hisope, origan, serpillum, *yreos*, and *apium*. But all these be hotter then they ought to be, and therefore they enflame and kindle feuers, as also wine doth. *Oximell* doeth only scoure and cleanse strongly, and doth not enflame and kindle feauers, so that it doth dissolue those things that be glutinous, clammy, tough and grosse, and it deliuereth the conduits, pores and passages from obstructions & stoppings. Obserue and watch how much of the feauerous heat is diminished by this diet. For if the third day in the morning, you see very little of the feauer left, and if there be no signes of rottennes of humors in the pulse, nor crudity or rawnesse in the vrine: if the suspect houre wherein the feuer tooke the patient the first day be after noone, you may boldly wash the patiẽt quickly long before six of the clocke, but it is sufficient, if you end the washing three hours before. Likewise if you suspect the tenth houre, you may washe him vntill the seuenth houre, for three hours or foure is space enough between the bathing and the fit. When the body hath beene heat in the bath, being first annointed with sweet oile warmed, and rubbed very moderately and easily, then by and by it must be wiped without and washed. These things following doe scoure and cleanse most moderately (that is) meale of *Eruum*, and of barely, and also of beanes. Moreouer *mulsa* which is watery doth the same. Stronger things be *yreos*, roote of *panax*, and *aristolochia*, and *mulsa*, which is of a meane commixtion, but that *mulsa* scoureth most of all, that is pure, which is, when there is but a little water mixed with the hony, so that the melted hony may easily enter into the small pores of the skin. Stronger scourers then these, be the froth of salt Peter, the salt Peter it selfe, and then *aphonitrum*, sope is one of them that is able to scoure most of all. Moreouer after a bath, you must giue the patient no thing but water, which hath had a little *apium* sodden in it, although there be three houres space betweene the bathing and the suspected houres. But if the fit doth inuade the patient in the euening, or two hours sooner, then you may wash him in the morning, and giue him meate, but you must giue him only iuyice of *ptysan*. Then if the suspected houres bring nothing with them then you may wash him againe, if you will and giue him meate, but you must haue respect to the vrine and the pulse. But if there chaunce any thing in the suspected houres, you must conferre it with the fit, which you had the first day, and

5 *Curatio.*

Absterſius medicines.

Oximell.

then you must consider the vrine, and also the pulses. For all these will appeare to be in a meane temperature, when there is left but a little obstruction. Wherefore you shall wash him the fourth day, and giue him meate, hauing respect to the aforesaide considerations: and you shall hope that nothing will be left the fift day. But if there be great obstruction caused, that feauer is not of the kinde of *Diary* feauers.

CHAP. III.

Of a rotten Feuer called Synochus.

DE SYNOCHO PVTRIDA.

Συνοχος. SYNOCHVS in Greeke is a *Feauer*, wherein one fit continuing perpetually from the beginning to the ending, remaineth many daies, or els it is a feauer which is without all great mutation vntill the end of it. Hereupon it is called in Latine *continens febris*, and in English it may be called a constant & stable feuer. There be three sundry differences of these cõstant feuers, as appeareth before in the exposition of feauers. This feauer *Synochus putrida*, or *continens febris*, is caused when all the humours do putrifie and rot equally together within all the vessels, and specially in the great vessells, which be about the armeholes, and the share, which is wont to chance, when a feuerous heate is retained and kept in of a vehement binding and stopping, which is within the body. For whatsoeuer things be hote and moist, and may hardly breath or fume out, they putrifie and rot quickly and readily. Therefore this kind of feauer is not engendred nor kindled in folke that be leane & slender, nor in them that haue a thin and rare state of their body, nor in a cold temperament of the body, nor in a cold age: but for the most part it engendreth in them which do abound with bloud, and in those that be hot, as well by their age and nature, as by exercises & diet, and specially it kindleth in them that be fleshy, grosse, and thick bodied, or else in them that be stuffed with hot excrements. They which haue this feuer, their pulse is very great, vehement, quicke, frequent & equal. The constitution or substance of the arteries is neither harder nor softer, then it should be by nature: but the quicknesse and frequency of it, is according to the greatnes of the feuer, and these signes are common with the signes of the *Diaria plurium dierum*. But particularly in this feuer, there is signs of rottennes, and that aswell in the vrine, as in the pulse, and by the quality of vnkind heat.

Continens febris.

Causa.

Signa.

Curatio. The cure of this feuer must be begun with letting of bloud. And if vertue and nature be strong, and no other notable thing do stop it or let it, you must draw bloud til he do faint and swound. For if the patiẽt be strong, this is the chiefest remedy for this kind of feuer (as *Galen* saith.) For first the body is turned into a contrary state, for it is cooled quickly through the fainting and swounding. As for cooling of the body, nothing can be found that is more pleasant, nor more profitable, either for the sicke, or for nature. Moreouer in such bodies, there chanceth of necessity, loosenes of the belly, or a lask. And oftentimes also vomiting of choler. Which things, moisture or sweates do gather from the whole body. Therefore you shall do best by and by in these feauers, not to marke the nũber of daies past, but only to consider the strength of the patient. For if that he be safe and strong, you may let bloud not only the 6. or 7. day, but also in the

daies

daies folowing. But, and if you are compelled at any time to cure a patient, to whom not only the remedy of bloudletting hath bene pretermitted and kept backe, but now also either through ignorance of Phisitions, or through feare of the sick or his assistents in processe of time, you are forbidden to let bloud, you must come to the ministring of cold things. But you must diligently discern & consider before, how much hurt may chance by it. For if the hurt will be small or none, minister very cold drink, as much as the sicke will drink. And you may be the more bold to do it, if the patient hath bin vsed to drink cold drinks. But if you feare that great discommdity would arise through it, you shall abstaine from it: and vse other remedies whereby obstructions may be taken away, and abundance auoided, & that the burning heat of the feuer may be cooled and eased. The discommodities and hurts which do follow cold drinks ministred immoderatly and out of time, be these: first because it prohibiteth and letteth grosse & clammy humours to be attenuated and digested, whether they haue engendred obstructions or rottennes, or inflammatiõ, or impostume, or knobby hardnes, or such like affects. As often therefore as a feuer is kindled of such humors cold things are not good for their auoiding: but to this feuer it bringeth much ease, because it quencheth the feuer that is already kindled. But yet seeing the cause of the feuer remaineth stil, of necessity another feuer must be kindled new againe, and many times a worse, then that which went before, because that the body is thickned through colde. And this is one discommodity not to be neglected. Another is that cold things hurt many weake members of the patient, whether they be weake by naturall distẽperature, or by some vice that they haue gottẽ. So in some, it hath bin foũd that their throte hath bin so hurt, that they could not swallow, in some the stomach, that they could scarce digest, in some the mouth of the stomach, or the liuer, or the gut colon, or the lungs, or the midriffe, or the reins, or the bladder, or som other such like member is so striken with cold, that it is made weak & vnable to do his proper action and office. Many by immoderat drinking of it out of time, haue by & by bin taken with difficulty of breathing, & with cramp and trembling, and haue had hurt in all their sinewes. Therefore to be short, in them that haue any swelling of fleume or bloud, or any knobby hardnes: you may not giue cold water vnto them, nor yet to them, that a raw humor doth hurt with obstruction or rottennes. But if there be no such swelling as is aforesaid, & then you doe perceiue euident signes of digestion and concoction in the vrine, and if then there be no member so giuen to a cold temperature, that it might take hurt, then you may boldly giue cold water. Also if the sick haue vsed to drinke cold water, you may the more boldly minister it, for all the members haue learned before by experience to suffer it familiarly without hurt. The drinking of cold water is perillous in them, that haue but litle bloud & flesh. Therfore by these things before rehersed, it is euident to all men, that the chiefest remedies of these kindes of feuers called *Synochus putrida*, be these 2. bludletting, & drinking of cold water: but bloudletting may be vsed at any time, if the strength of the patient wil suffer it, & drinking of cold water must be vsed when euident signes of concoction are seene in the vrine, when the feuer is greatest, & when you are compelled to leaue bloud letting. You must note well the time, when you should let

When cold things should be ministred.

Discõmodities of cold drinks.

Of cold water.

Continens febris hath two remedies chiefely.

You may not let bloud on a full stomacke.

bloud, and marke what went before, and what followeth. For if crudity and indigestion of meates do go before, you must refraine so long time from bloud letting, as will suffice as well to digest the meate, as that the excrements may descend downe. But if there will follow of necessity any fluxe or emptying, you must leaue so much bloud still, as will voide by that fluxe. Therefore if at the time of bloudletting, the menstruis doe chaunce to flow, or also that the hemmorhoids do open and burst out, if you beholding the vehemency of the flux, shall thinke it to be sufficient to purge and empty out that which you require without any helpe, then you shall let nature worke alone. But if you thinke it contrary, draw out so much bloud, that thereby vnder them both conioyned together, you may bring to passe your request and expectation. Let the diet in these feuers be chiefly this that followeth. In them that haue bene let bloud, minister to them two houres after bloud letting, iuice of *ptysan*, and command quiet and rest. And when they are awaked out of sleepe, minister againe *ptysan* broth. In this diet the patient must persist & continue vntill the third day.

Diet.

When the sicke should be fed.

You must note, that in these feuers called *Synochi*, the patientes must be fed at such time as hayle folke are wont to eat, and when they feele most ease, for so they shall the easilier suffer and beare their foode. And if they be strong and lusty, and you looke for the vigour and state of the feuer straight way, the patient must vse a most thinne and scarce diet. But contrariwise if he be weake and feeble, you cannot minister a thinne diet to him without perill. Therefore in giuing of meate to the patient, you must diligently foresee, and ponder his strength and ability. He that desireth to know more of this kinde of feauer as touching the cure of it, let him read *Galen in lib. 7. therapeut. meth. cap. 5.*

CHAP. IIII.

Against continuall Feauers.

De Continvis Febribvs.

Febris cõtinua.

Febris *continua* in Latine, *Synochis* in Greeke, in English it is called a continuall feuer. It is a feuer that leaueth not off altogether betweene the fits but it hath a certaine sensible slaking of heat betweene the fits. A continuall feuer is caused, when one only humor doth putrifie, & rot within the vessels.

Cause.

Three differences of continuall feauers.

And there be three differences of this feuer, according to the diuersity of the humor that putrifieth in the veines: for if choler do putrify within the vessels, it engendreth a continuall Tertian, which the Greekes call *causos*, in Latine it is called *ardens febris*, in English a burning feuer. If fleume do putrifie and rotte within the veines, it engendreth a continuall Quotidian: but if melancholy do putrifie within the veines, it kindleth a continuall Quartane. There is not a more certaine signe of a continuall feuer, then that, none of them do come to intermission and slaking altogether betweene the fits, vntill the feuer be quite ended and quenched. Their other signes are common with the intermitting feauers: for an exquisite burning feuer, or continuall Tertian, hath all the other signes of an exquisite intermitting Tertian: differing only in this, that it doth not inuade and begin with vehement cold and stiffenes, neither doth it end in quiet and rest. Likewise a continual Quotidian hath all the signes of an exquisite intermitting Quotidian, but it only differeth from it, because it doth

Signa.

not

not intermit and ſlake betweene the fits. In like maner the continuall Quartanes haue the ſignes of intermitting Quartanes, but that they come not to quiet and reſt betweene fittes. Seeing it is euident by that which we haue ſaid, that continuall feauers be of the kind of rotten feauers. It is neceſſary for him that will cure them commodiouſly and rightly, firſt to ſtop and let the putrifying & rotting. Therfore two things muſt be taken heed of at the firſt, wherof one is the feuer, another is the rottenneſſe. And in the feauer you muſt alſo regard two things, the one, that the portion of the feuer, which is now kindled and enflamed, may be cured and quenched: the other is, that the portion of the feuer which is not yet kindled may be letted and ſtopped. Alſo two things muſt be conſidered concerning the rottenneſſe, one is, that the rottennes already engendred, may be healed, the other is to let & ſtop that which is ready to engender putrefaction. That which is ready to engender, is cauſed through perſpiration and breathing out, if it be impedite and letted. So that of this other two conſiderations do ſpring: firſt that the humour which is withholden, may be purged and emptied out: ſecondarily to prohibite and keepe in that which is to be withholden and kept backe, it will be prohibited with thoſe remedies which do heale obſtructions. Againe note, that the obſtructions which are engendred muſt be cured, and they which are to come muſt be letted and driuen backe away. You muſt cure that obſtruction which is already engendred, by thoſe things that do looſen, deliuer and open obſtructions. And you ſhall driue away & ſtop the obſtructions which are to come, if you bridle and ſtop the fluxe of obſtructiue and ſtopping humors, whereby it appeareth euidently, that the laſt thing which we haue found in this *Compendium* of curing that muſt be done firſt in the working of the cure. Seeing that therfore (when we haue examined the matter particularly) there be fiue things in continuall feauers from the which, conſiderations in curing be gathered (that is) the feauer, rottenneſſe, perſpiration impedite and letted, obſtruction and abundance of obſtructiue humours. You muſt begin the cure with the laſt conſideration. Therfore ſeeing that the abundance of humors that cauſe obſtructions, doth require purging and emptying out: in the beginning, if vertue be ſtrong in the patient, and if time of the yeare, and his age, and other things do agree, you muſt let him bloud. You muſt then ſpecially let him bloud, whē the whole body ſwelleth more then it was wont to do, or when the veines be ſwollen vp, or ſtretched out, for that doth ſignifie abundance of bloud. When the multitude of humours are voided and emptied out, you muſt next come to the ciring of obſtructions, and you muſt miniſter medicines, whereby obſtructions may be taken away. But becauſe moſt of thoſe medicines be hote, it is to be feared, leaſt they ſhould encreaſe both their rottennes, and alſo the feauer. Therefore you muſt vſe to miniſter thoſe thinges that can deliuer the patient from obſtructions without heate. What thoſe things be, we haue declared before in the ſecond Chapter of this Booke. When thoſe humours that cauſed the obſtructions be deuided, cut, and ſcoured, you muſt aſſay to voide & empty them out by the wombe or guts, by the vrine, and by ſweats. But ſeeing thoſe things which ſhould bring this to paſſe, be hote, of neceſſity the rottenneſſe and the feauer muſt be encreaſed by them. Therefore, as much as we may, we muſt

A compendium of curing in feauers.

There be fiue things to conſider in feuers.

Curatio.

Bloud letting.

How obſtructions ſhould be healed.

Oximell.

Bathing doth coole.

labour to chooſe ſuch a thing as doth heate but litle, or if we can find any that doth not heate at all, (as in this caſe a Bath, you muſt vſe that. *Galen* teacheth *in libro tertio de tuenda ſanitate, cap.* 3. that a bath can do this. For he ſaith, that the ſtrength of ſweet waters made hot, if they be temperat, be hote and moiſt, but if they be warmed, they be cold and moiſt. And a litle after he ſayeth, A bath if it be diſcreetly vſed, it mollifieth the hard and ſtretched partes, and it bringeth forth excrements or moltings, if any ſticke within the skinne. Theſe things being done, and thoſe humors being ſcoured out, which were compact together in the skin, ſo that the obſtruction and perſpiration impedited be taken away, you muſt come to the cure of the rottenneſſe. Therefore at this time you muſt firſt corroborate and reſtore the ſtrength, whereby it may exuperate and ouercome the rottenneſſe, and be able to digeſt the humours. And you ſhall heale the putrefaction and rottenneſſe, if you do void and emptie out by all meanes, that which is corrupted & putrified. That which is left ſtill within, you muſt bring it to an exquiſite meane by moderate motions, and coole breathings, and you ſhall worke the emptying out of your humors by vrine, egeſtions, vomiting and ſweats. Laſt of all, you muſt proceed to the curing of the feuer, which muſt be done by cooling things. For euery feuer, in aſmuch as it is a feuer, muſt be remedied by cooling and moiſtening things. But to know how each of theſe things ſhould be rightly done, it is partly rehearſed before, and partly it ſhall follow hereafter. In continuall feuers, whoſe ſtate or vigour of the diſeaſe will come at the fartheſt within ſeuen daies, if their ſtrength be luſtie, and their age agreeing to it, you muſt ordaine them a very exquiſite and thinne diet. But in the continuall feuers, whoſe vigour, force, and ſtate is longer then ſeuen dayes after the beginning, or if vertue be weake and feeble, at the firſt you muſt feed them liberally: when the vigour and ſtate draweth neare, their diet muſt be more ſcarce. But in the ſtate and vigor of the diſeaſe, you muſt feed them moſt thinly and ſcarcely. Afterward againe, augment his diet, & feed him moſt, increaſing his diet in like caſe as the vigor & ſtate of the feuer doth diminiſh, as *Hyppocrates* ſaith in the firſt ſection of his Aphoriſmes

Cure of putrifaction.

Cure of the feuer.

Dyet.

Aphor.

CHAP. VI.

Of a burning feuer.

De Ardente Febre.

Continua Tertiana.

ARdens *Febris* in Latine, *Cauſos* in Greeke, in Engliſh it is called a continuall Tertian, or a burning feuer. It is of the kind of continuall feuers, as is declared in the former Chapter. And it is cauſed when choler putrifieth and rotteth within the veines. Therfore it agreeth with an exquiſite intermitting Tertian, becauſe it is engendred of the ſame humor that the other is. But yet it differeth from it in that, that in an intermitting Tertian the choler is caried all ouer the bodie: but in a burning feuer the choler is contained in the veſſels together with the bloud. Hereupon it commeth that the fits in a burning feuer do not intermit nor ſlake. But when the choler in them is ſtirred moſt vehemently, and is driuen about by nature waxing ſtrong, then there is wont to come vehement cold and rigour, and the feuer endeth. Which *Hyppocrates* declareth 4. *Aphoriſ.* 58. ſaying, he that is taken with a burning feuer,

Difference betweene a burning feuer and a Tertian.

if

if it be vehement cold and rigor come vpon it to him, he is deliuered from the disease. A burning feuer is knowne by these signes: their tongue that haue this feuer is drie, grosse, rough and blacke, there is gnawing of the stomacke, intollerable thirst, watchings, and also many times rauing, and egestions of the wombe be liquide and pale: which signes *Hyppocrates* rehearseth in *lib. 4. Vict. Acutorum.* They which haue this feuer, let them lye in a cold place, and in a sweetaire, from whence pure wind commeth. Also let him lye in a soft featherbed, which must be made often, let the couerings be verie thin & cleane: which must be continually changed, & let his bed be of a great wideneſſe, that he may easily moue his members that be hote to other cold places of the bed. And if the aire be quiet, stirre it with a fanne, or such like. You must giue him meates that haue vertue to coole and moisten, as is, lettuce, gourds, sorrell, ptisan broth and such like. Let his drinke be water, wherein a litle cinamon hath bene sodden, or veriuice. If the sicke haue vsed it, or if no other thing do let it, after meate giue him cold water a spoon-full or two, or mixe Iulep of violets, or some Iulep of roses, or such like with decoction of barley. Moreouer the stomack must be refreshed with iuyce of roses: and other cooling things must be vsed, as strewing of the floore with greene vine leaues, and with the leaues and floures of roses, water lillies and violets, and by sprinkling and powring often of colde water on the floore vp and downe. For the Cure in the beginning straightway, you must cut a veine, if age, time, vertue and strength do permit it. Hereuppon *Hyppocrates* sayeth in the Aphorismes thus. In great burning feuers, if bloud be drawne till the heart faint, by and by the state of the whole body is cooled, and the feuer is quenched. In many also a lape is caused, and sweats flow foorth. Afterward let the breast and stomacke be nourished with dates brayed with oile of roses, or of quinces, or of water lillies. Also other cooling medicins be good, as be, vine buddes brayed, endiue, succorie, knotgrasse, lettuce, sorrell, vine leaues and such like. Also a fine napkin folded together and dipped in oyle and water made hote, and applyed to the breſt and stomack: it ceaseth the burning of feuers maruellously. Also a handfull of wooll soked in water, and oile of roses het greatly, and being holden vp aloft to drop vpon the breast, doth easily quench the vehemencie of the burning heat. These things must be hote, for warme things do dissolue the strength and vigor of the members. Neither shall you rashly also commixe vineger against vehement burning feuers. You may not apply epithemes nor other cooling medicines in the beginning and increasing of the fit: for at that time the affect of the body is driuen about, and the heat is in the inward members: therefore cold things applied do driue the heate to the innermost parts, and be an occasion of greater hurt, for firie heate being oppressed and stopped within, it raiseth a more vehement and burning heate againe. Therefore in the force, strength, & vigor of the fittes, when the heat is alreadie spread ouer all the bodie, these colde things may be wel appied: for then the residue of the vnnaturall heate which remaineth about the inward members may readily be quenched. Hereuppon the patient will begin to breath better, & shalbe troubled with an easier thirst. Also some by breathing out of a dewie vapor do fall on sleepe. The epithemes which you must vse in this feuer is this. ℞. of rose water, and lettuce water,

Signa.

Diet.

Curatio.

Outward causes.

Epithema.

ana .℥.iij. ß. waters of endiue and ſuccory. ana. ℥. j. ß. good vineger ℥.j. all the three ſanders of each. ℥. ß. ſeed of purſlaine. gra. iiij. commixe all together and make an epitheme. Moreouer when the vigour and ſtrength of the ſickenes is at hand, you may ſafely miniſter pure cold water, if none of theſe things which be rehearſed in the third chapter do let it. And if feare of any hurt, although it be very litle, doe let it, you ſhall miniſter the firſt draught refrained after this ſort. Take one cupfull of temperate water, and commixe fiue cupfuls of pure cold water with it, and ſo miniſter it to ſuſpect bodies. To conclude, in the curing of burning feauers, you muſt needs bring to paſſe one of theſe things, that either the cholerick humors may be voided and emptied out, or elſe that they may be quenched within. They may be voided and emptied out by ſweats, vomits and egeſtions. They may be quenched by drinking of cold water wherewith very often great burning feuers haue bin cured quite and cleane. A bath of ſweet water is good only to them which haue a burning feauer without any ſwelling, tending to the nature of an inflammation or *Eriſipela*. But & if ſignes of concoction do appeare in the vrine, it is much more cõuenient for the patient. Let the ſicke which in a vehement burning feauer deſireth to vſe a cold bath, be young, and of a moderate ſtate of the body, as alſo *Hippocrates* witneſſeth and moniſheth. Neither let it be done to him in ſommer time, and in hot times of the yeare, and in the vigour and ſtrength of the feuer, & let it be one that hath vſed to waſh in cold water in his health. But when the feuer waxeth more moderat, and vertue is ſtronger, and if there be ſignes of concoction together with it, a bath of ſweete and temperate water is ſufficient & doth good. For annointings, oile of chammomill doth good, ſpecially if the weather be cold. But the abundance of matter, whereon you ſhould make competent remedies againſt burning feauers, you ſhall find in the Chapters following.

When cold water may be miniſtred.

Nota.

To whom a bath is good.

Vnctions.

CHAP. VII.

Of a pure intermitting Tertian.

DE EXQVISITA TERTIANA INTERMITTENTE.

Cauſa.

Signa.

Differences of coldneſſe in a tertian and quartane.

EXquiſita tertiana febris intermittens, in Latine, an exquiſit and pure intermitting tertian feauer in Engliſh. It is cauſed of choler caried by the ſenſible parts of the body, and by the proper nature of it, it remaineth pure, ſincere, & vnmixed. Therefore ſeeing it is engendred of choler that is ſincere and pure, and not commixed with any other humor, it is called of the Phiſitions exquiſite. This feuer engendreth in perſons that be cholericke by nature & in their flouriſhing age, in ſommer time, in hote and dry regions, and when the weather is hote and dry, and in bodies oppreſſed with labours, watchings, cares, deepe thoughts, and burning of the ſunne. Alſo this feuer by and by in the beginning, and in euery fitte cauſeth a vehement cold, rigour and ſtiffeneſſe, and by this meanes it differeth from a burning feauer, as is before rehearſed. And the cold in this feauer differeth from the colde in a quartane feauer thus, becauſe in this feauer the patient thinketh his body were pricked, and as it were vlcerated. But in a quartane the cold ſeemeth to the patient, like the cold that haile folke feele in winter time. Therefore a tertian feauer doth not chaunce without vehement rigour and cold, pricking and wounding in the fleſh: but a

quartane

quartane feuer doth not by and by the firſt day inuade the patient with vehement rigor and cold. For as it proceedeth forward and encreaſeth, ſo alſo the rigor and cold encreaſeth, and the patient doth not feele pricking, but rather feeleth great cold, and as it were nipped to the bone with it. There is in a tertian feuer an exact & perfect order and equality of the pulſes: but yet in the encreaſing of the fits, the pulſes are raiſed and prouoked to vehemẽcy, greatnes, and frequency. Moreouer in the vigour & force of the feuer, it cauſeth thirſt, and burneth vp the patient, ſo that he caſteth off the cloths, to make him bare & naked, and he breatheth largely and often, and he bloweth out as it were a flame of fire, and requireth to drinke cold water. Afterward the heate ſpreadeth equally al ouer the body, ſo that the breaſt is no hotter then the extreme parts and members. And when you lay your hand vpon him, at the firſt touching you ſhall feele much gnawing, and biting heate, burſting out as it were with a certaine vapor and moiſture: but not long after your hand wil vanquiſh it, if you do hold it ſtill. Moreouer there followeth this feuer vomiting of choler, and the belly is laxatiue, and they piſſe vrine that is cholerick, ſubtuſe, and ſomwhat yellow, and moderatly thicke. Alſo their vrine hath by & by a white cloude, or a laudable ſublation in the middes. If the vrine be redder, and if in the firſt fit there doe appeare neither ſublation in the middes, nor cloud, the feuer will extend and remaine ſeuen fits. Moreouer this feuer leaueth off till another fit, when the fit hath endured the ſpace of xij houres at the moſt. For this is the longeſt time of a fit in true and pure tertians. But ſometime the fit is ſhorter then the aforeſaid ſpace of time, hauing differẽce more or leſſe according to the quantity and quality of choler within, or becauſe of the ſtrength of the patient, or through the preſent affect of the patientes body at that preſent time. Therefore we name that an exact and pure tertian feuer, which endeth his fit within twelue houres: but that which hath a longer fit, that is not called an exquiſit tertian, but an extended & ſtretched out tertian. And if the feuer doth inuade the patient daily with vehement rigor and cold, & with the ſignes aforeſaid of the vrine and pulſes, as alſo of other things afore reherſed: then it is called *duplex tertiana*, a double tertian. But as for an enquiſit tertian, becauſe it is engendred of pure choler moued about, you muſt moiſten it, and coole it as much as you may poſſibly by all meanes. For this humor (as *Galen* witneſſeth) is the hotteſt & drieſt among all the other that be in the body. Let the ſicke lie therfore in a cold place againſt a ſweet and pleaſant aire. Alſo you may not ſuffer many to be in the houſe, becauſe they ſhould make it hote with their breath. Let the floore be ſprinkled often with cold water, & with roſe water, violet water and ſuch like. And ſtrew on the floore willow leaues, flours of roſes, violets, water lillies and ſuch like. Let the patients vſe meates that haue vertue & power to coole and moiſten. And you muſt giue him ſo much of thẽ, as he can very well digeſt. Let his pot herbs be orach, beets, ſpinach, mallows, lettuſe, gourds, ſorrell, endiue, ſuccory, & ſuch like. Alſo giue him *ptyſon* broth, and ſoupings made with Alica. Of fiſhes, let him eate ſuch as liue in grauelly places: for ſuch, beſides that they do coole & moiſtẽ, they engẽder good iuice, and are eaſy to digeſt. Of fouls, let him eate thẽ that be of ſoft fleſh, as be chickens & partrich, doues, yong ſparrowes, feaſants, & ſuch like: but of thoſe that

Signes of a double tertian.

Victus ratio.

haue not ſoft fleſh, let him eate their wings, which are without excrements, becauſe of their often exerciſes. Alſo he may eate cocks ſtones, & ſowes feet, for they be without excrements, becauſe they are exerciſed: & their braines, ſpecially if they be well ſodden. Alſo if you miniſter the fleſh of pigges wel ſodden, you ſhall not hurt, for ſo it may the eaſilier be conſumed of the ſtomacke. Alſo rere egges, which be but onely hot through, may be ſuffred, ſpecially the yolkes of them: for they be eaſier to digeſt than the whites, and they do coole meanely. You may ſuffer him to eate fruites, which be not verie hard to digeſt, as be, cherries, proines, mulberries. He muſt abſtaine from honie, becauſe it will eaſily turne into choler, and from muſtard, ſalt meats, and all ſharp things. Alſo you muſt keepe the ſicke a'together from wine, vntill the diſeaſe be digeſted, and let him drinke in the meane ſeaſon water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene ſodden. Or let him vſe to drinke this. ℞. Iulep of violets. ℥.iiij. water wherin a litle cinamon hath bene ſodden. ℔. j. commixe them together, and powre them out of one veſſell into another, often. But when the diſeaſe beginneth to digeſt, you muſt giue him in the beginning a litle wine that is thinne and alayed with water, and giue him more liberally of it, when the end of the diſeaſe is at hand. This is the order of dyet for many, but not for all men: for they that are not daintily brought vp, but do liue hardly, and are ſtrong of nature, you muſt ordeine for them a thinner diet (that is) let them be contented with ptiſan broth vntill the iudgement of the feuer. As for ſleeping, they may not ſleepe in their fits, but rather let them watch, that thereby the bloud and ſpirits, and naturall heat may be letted, and ſtopped from creeping to the inward members, and contrariwiſe may thereby be drawn to the outward parts: for otherwiſe the feuers will ſcarſe be diſſolued, and they will come very ſlowly to their ſtate, and fluxes will increaſe & be multiplied: when the fit is ended, ſleepe is not hurtfull. The patient muſt eſchue exerciſes, and all other vehement motions. Alſo let him refraine perturbations of the minde, ſpecially anger, feare, ſorrowe, and ſuch like. But you may not onely vſe the diet before preſcribed, but alſo you muſt miniſter medicins to the patient which can coole and moiſten. In the beginning to quench the boiling of choler, & to mitigate the cholerous heate, let him vſe this decoction, ℞. of floures of violets, borage, and red roſes. ana. *M.* j. floures of water lillies, *M.* ß. endiue, ſuccorie, lettuce, ana. *M.* j ß. of raiſons picked ℥ j. damaſcene proines number ij. ſeeds of endiue, ſuccorie, lettuce, purcelaine, gourds, ana. ℥.iij. of the roote of ſuccorie, ℥.vj. ſeeth all together in ℔.ij. of well water, vntill the third part be conſumed, then ſtraine it, and make the liquor of that decoction ſweet with ſugar, and purifie it with the white of an egge, then adde to it ſirupe of endiue with the broade leaues, and Iulep of violets, ana ℥. ij. ß. commixe them together and make a potion, and let the ſicke drinke thereof euery morning faſting. ℥.iiij. ß. But and if the ſicke be more delicate, and do abhorre potions, let him take daily of this medicine. ℞. of conſerues of violets, borage, roſes, water lillies and ſuccorie, ana. ℥. ß. *electuarium de prunis damaſcenis* without *diagrediũ*. ℥.vij. *diarrhodon abbatis*. ℥. j. *diatrion ſantalon* in powder. ℥.ij. of Iulep of violets as much as is ſufficient to commixe them, and make a loch. Moreouer you muſt remoue the cauſe of the feuer: which you ſhall do, if you emptie out the cholericke humor. Therefore

Potus.

No ſleepe in fittes.

Curatio.

A decoction to digeſt choler.

Miſtura.

Vacuation.

fore you muſt emptie out the choler which is crept into the ſtomacke, by prouoking vomite. By what meanes you may prouoke vomite it is declared in the former books. The choler which is caried downward it is beſt to emptie it out by a laske of the wombe, which alſo is wont to come ſometime of it ſelfe in an exquiſite tertian. Vomiting ſhould be prouoked chiefly in the beginning of the fit, for at that time, nature is wont to thruſt in choler thither: as in the inclination and ſlaking of the fit, nature thruſteth it to the neather partes and to the skin. Therfore at that time you muſt caſt in an eaſie and ſoft cliſter, that it may both bring out the choler eaſily, and that alſo by his gentleneſſe, the ſharpneſſe of the choler which is wont to vexe and gnaw the guttes, may be ſtopped and broken. Make therefore ſuch a cliſter. ℞. of mallowes, leaues of purple violets, mercurie, endiue, and ſuccorie. ana. *M.* j. ſeed of purſlaine and of melons. ana. ℥.ij.ß. ſeeth them all in ſufficient quantitie of water, till the third part be conſumed: ſtraine it, and adde to the liquor of that decoction, the marrow of *caſia fiſtula* newly drawne, ℥.j. oile of violets .℥.iij. common ſalt. ℥.j.ß. commix them and make a cliſter. Alſo you muſt emptie out choler by prouoking of vrine and ſweats ſpecially, if it be caried thither by nature. This thing you may well do by medicines that prouoke vrine, but not by all ſuch, but by thoſe that can do it without drying. Therfore you muſt prouoke vrine with potions wherin *apium* or dill hath bene infuſed or wet. And if ſignes of concoction do appeare, then you may miniſter wormwood ſoftly, which is a ſpeciall remedy for the ſtomak, when it is vexed with choler: ſpecially if you take of the tops of it as much as is ſufficient, and infuſe it in *melicratum*, that is, wine and hony ſodden together: for it purgeth choler out of the wombe and ſtomacke by egeſtion, and out of the veines it purgeth it by vrine. You ſhall prouoke ſweating with this and ſuch like medicines ℞. roots of *apium*, ſperage and ſuccorie. ana ℥.ß. of the ſeedes of parſley, fennell, *bruſcus*, and louage. ana. ℥.ij black cicers ℥.iij dil. *M.*ß. ſeeth all in ſufficient quantitie of water that runneth vnto the third part: then let it be ſtrained, and make it ſweet with ſugar, adding to it *oximel compoſitum*. ℥.ij. and make a potion. Or beate all the aforeſaid things into powder, and miniſter of it euerie time. ℥ j. or ℥.j.ß. with ℥.iij. of *oximel ſimplex*. Theſe medicines which prouoke ſweate, muſt be miniſtred in the declination of the fit, or on that day that the ſicke hath not his feauer. For this purpoſe alſo annointings with oiles of cammomill, dill and ſuch like, are not a litle profitable. Moreouer hote bathes of ſweet and potable water do profit two wayes, both becauſe they prouoke out ſome of the choler, as alſo becauſe of their qualities, they do much good: for ſuch bathes do moiſten and coole. But bathes of ſea water, ſalt water, ſaltpeter water, and brimſtone water, they bring out more choler, but they profit much leſſe then potable waters. Therfore it is beſt not to call them profitable, ſeeing they do more hurt by drying, then they doe good by emptying and voyding: for the remedies muſt haue contrarie qualities to the humours that haue inuaded againſt nature: for that doth more commoditie then the emptying by any means (as *Galen* witneſſeth *ad Glauconem*) by the which words it is euident that emptyings and purgings in an exquſite tertian, do but litle pleaſe *Galen*. Specially thoſe emptyings that are done by bloud letting, and by a vehement purging medicine, for all ſuch kind of purging medicines be of a

Vomitus.

Clyſter.

Prouokers of vrine.

Abſcynthium.

To prouoke ſweate.

Bathes of ſweet waters.

hote faculties and qualities. But seeing this feuer is the hotest of all other, therfore it rather desireth to be cooled & moistened, then to be vehemently purged. It rather permitteth and requireth emptyings by other meanes, and specially when nature laboureth and assayeth to driue out the humour. Also nature must be holpen, if of her selfe she be not able to performe her intent. As for a bath this is the effect and scope of it, thereby to haue the body wet and moistened. Therfore you must strew in, neither salt peter, nor salt, nor mustard seede, but it is good to poure much oile, being made hot, vpon the patient, and to bring him into the bath, and to wash him. And if he will swimme in it, you may suffer him to do it as long as he can. And they that are delited in bathing, if you suffer them to wash twise in a day, you shall not do amisse. But you must haue this in memorie, that it be opportunatly, & done in due time, for if signes of concoction do now appeare, then if you wash him oftener, you shal not erre from Galens doctrine.

Balneum.

CHAP. VIII.

Against a bastardly Tertian.

De Tertiana Notha.

Causa. A Bastardly Tertian is caused, when choler is mixed for the most part with fleume. Hereupon it commeth that all the signes of this feauer do not declare the nature of pure and sincere choler, as in an exquisite tertian they do. *Signa.* In this feauer also the time of the fits doth exceede 12. houres, neither is this iudged in seuen fittes, as an exquisite Tertian is. Moreouer in this bastardly Tertian, the signes of cõcoction do appeare more slowly, neither is there such great heate in the vigour and state of this feauer, as in the exquisite Tertian. Besides all these, it doth not end with abundance of sweat, as an exquisit Tertian doth. Therfore the diet in this feauer must not be altogether cooling and moistening, as it is in an exquisite Tertian: but let it haue some power & vertue to heate, cut and diuide: for the choler in this feauer is grosser, neither is it so hote. They therefore that haue this feauer, may profitably take broth of ptisan, wherein some pepper is put, and you must giue them *mulsa* to drinke, wherein hath bene sodden, hysope, origan, and spiknard. Also you must giue them soupings and brothes easie to digest. Moreouer seeing the time of the fit is long, and so endureth a whole day, you may not giue him meat daily, but each other day: for by this meanes we shall be ware and take heede, that nature be not called away from her office and worke, and so the disease should be increased: for you must only take heede that the disease doth not increase, and that the strength of the sicke, which must striue and fight a great while, be not weakened, debilitate and cast down. But it is hard to keepe and saue both, because hunger looke how much it profiteth to the digestion of the disease, and so much or more it hurteth & debilitateth the strength. And meats, looke howe much they increase the patientes strength, and so much they hinder and let concoction and digestion. To conclude therfore, you must vse hunger to them that be strong and lustie, & their disease hard to digest. And you must feede them more largely, whose strength is debilitate and weake, and their disease not stubborne for to digest. Let their drinke be water, in which a litle cinamon, and some hysope or origan hath bene sodden. Quiet and rest is good

Diet.

Potus.

for

for them, but exercises do hurt them: for this doth cal forth outwardly nature, and naturall heate, which could concoct and digest crude matter within. For the cure, if you may let the patient bloud, you may not faile to doe it, but by & by in the beginning, if the age, time, and region, and state of the body will permitte it, you must draw out so much bloud, as the present state of the body requireth and will suffer. By the present state, vnderstand the state aswell of the patient, as of the disease: for the sicke, if he be strong, may suffer bloud letting, if not, the contrary: if the disease remaine, and be caused through abundance of humours, it requireth bloud letting not a meane quantity, but according to the abundance of them. But when the disease will endure long through crudity, and lacke of digestion, you must draw out but a meane quantity of bloud, that the strength of the patient may be kept and endure vntill the end of the disease. Also you must cast into the belly not very easie clisters, that they may bring forth the sluggish and hurtfull matter, & make them thus. ℞. mallowes, mercury, leaues of violets, origan, and hisope, ana. *M*. j. seed of *cardamum*. ℥. iij. seeth altogether in sufficient quantity of water, and adde to the licour of that decoction, *benedicta laxatiua*, *hierapicra*. ana. ℥. iij. *mel rosarum*. ℥. vj. oils of violets and chammomill. ana. ℥. j ß. common salt. ℥. ij. & make a clister. Also you must minister to the patient, decoctions made of such things as can cut, & diuide, & also prouoke vrine without any great heating & drying. As this is. ℞. roots of *apium*, fennell, and succory. ana. ℥. j endiue, succory, origan, and hisope, ana. *M*. j. lettuce. *M*. j. ß. the foure common cold seeds. ana. ℥. j. seeds of fennell and *apium*. ana. ℥. j. ß. seeth all these in two pounds of water, vntill the third part be consumed. Then straine it, and make the licour sweet with sugar, and purifie with whites of egges the streined licour. Then adde to it *sirupus acetosus simplex*, *mel rosarum* clarified, *oximel simplex*. ana. ℥. j. ß, and make a potion, wherof minister daily euery morning ℥. iiij. After these you must minister such medicines, as doe empty the belly gently, as is infusion of ruberbe, *electuarium è psillio*, and *diaphenicon* and such like, which are able by them selues, or mixed with other, to bring and purge out choler together with fleume. Whereof we haue rehersed many in our former bookes. After the seuenth day, you may minister continually decoction of wormewood: also *oximel* drunke alone helpeth many. Also vomiting after meate is so healthfull, and profitable to these olde and inueterate feuers, that many (as *Galen* witnesseth in *lib.* 1. *ad glauconem*) haue bene cured with this one remedy. For a feuer which hath continued long, doth engender and breed any flegmaticke excrementes in the stomach, which being cast out by vomiting, the patient is deliuered frō the feuer. Also the sides must be nourished with hote medicines, that therby the windes and bolning which stretcheth them out, may be dissolued & dispersed. Among other this foment is very good. ℞. floures of chammomill, melilote, and dill. ana. *M*. j. wormewood. *M*. ß. red roses. *M*. j lineseede, and fenugreeke. ana. ℥. iij. boile these in sufficient quantity of water, vnto the third part, then dippe a spunge in it, and nourish the sides therewith. Also it profiteth to annoint the stomach, with this or such a like ointment. ℞. oiles of masticke, roses and chammomill. ana. ℥. iij. of cloues. ℥ j ß wax as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Moreouer bathing in this feauer is not healthfull, before that signes of concoction

Curatio.

Bloud letting.

Clister.

Decoctum.

Purgatio.

Absynthium oximel.

Vomitus.

Fomentum.

Vnguentum.

Balneum.

do appeare, becauſe crude and raw humors, which ſhould be digeſted within, are brought out by it to the skinne, and ſo it doth increaſe obſtructions.

CHAP. IX

Of a quartane Feuer.

De Qvartana Febre.

Cauſe. AN exquiſite quartane is another kind of the intermitting feuers, which is engendred only of a melancholy humor, putrifying and rotting without the veſſels. This feuer doth not by and by in the beginning inuade the patient with vehement rigour and cold the firſt day, but it is like to them that are cold in winter through vehement froſt: but when the feuer hath continued & proceeded forward and is increaſed, then alſo the rigour & cold encreaſeth with it, and waxeth greater and ſtronger daily, till the whole diſeaſe be come to his full encreaſe and force. And the cold doth not ſeeme to the patient as it were pricking and vexing the skin, as it doth in an exquiſit tertian, but there is cauſed vehement cold, & as it would breake the bones. Their pulſes are very rare and ſlow in the beginning of the fits, but when the feuer is in his full force, or alſo when it is increaſed, then of neceſſity the pulſes are ſwift & often: but yet they do keepe their naturall ſlownes and rarity, if you conſider the ſwiftneſſe and frequency comming in the fits. But the mouing of the heat, the increaſing and the vigour, and force of this feuer is cleane contrary to that in tertian feuers. For in this feuer the melancholy humor is kindled and inflamed by little and little, as it were a ſtone, or a ſhell, or a bone, or ſome other ſuch cold & dry body. And when that any flame or heat is kindled in it, thē in the fit it leaueth nothing ſumous or ſmoky, but it burneth & conſumeth it. And therefore there is longer ceaſing and intermiſſion of this humor, betweene the fits, then there is in fleume. And the intermiſſion and ceaſing betweene the fits ſeemeth to be exquiſit & pure without any griefe at all: becauſe in this feuer, look how much melancholy is kindled and inflamed, and ſo much in the time of the fit is diſperſed, conſumed, and drawen out clean. Moreouer in a quartane feuer there followeth not vomiting vp of choler. Their vrines are thin, white and watery, and as it were ſtrained from a groſſe matter. Alſo this feuer beginneth ſpecially in Autumne or Harueſt, comming after erraticke feauers. But you muſt behold both the nature of the patient, & his temperament, alſo his diet vſed before, his age, the region, and other ſuch like. For if thoſe things be cold & dry, then you may looke more ſurely, that a quartane feuer will enſue, ſpecially if at any time, quartans be rife among the people. They that haue a quartane feuer, in the beginning they muſt be handled and ordred moderatly and gently, neither may they be vexed with any vehement medicin, or by vehemēt emptying and purging: for the humor which cauſeth the quartane, is ſtubburne to be drawen and handled. Therfore in the beginning, and before it be digeſted, it will hardly & ſcarcely follow the medicine that draweth it: and that becauſe of his groſſenes and coldnes, and alſo becauſe it ſtoppeth the narrow waies, by the which it ſhould paſſe out. Yet if bloud do ſeeme to abound much, then you muſt take away that. And if when you haue ſtricken a vein, the bloud that cōmeth out do appeare blacke and groſſe, as for the moſt part it doth in diſeaſes of the ſplene, you may then boldly draw it out. For great aboundance of ſuch bloud

Cauſe of long intermiſſion in quartane fittes.

Curatio.

Bloud letting.

bloud being drawen out, nature will get the vpper hand in digesting the rest of the humor, and wil make the feuer shorter. You must cut the innermost veine of the left arme, which is called *linearis vena*, the splene vein, or *mediana*: for this veine emptieth out the melancholy humor, specially from the splene, which is wont to be diseased in a quartane feuer: but if, when the veine is stricken, the bloud doth appeare thin, and yellowish, you must stop it by and by: for such an humor is not vnprofitable in a quartane, but it correcteth and amendeth the grosse and cold humor, as well because of his substance, as also with his quality. You must ordain for the patient a very good diet, such one as is not windy, and engendreth good iuice. Therefore you must keepe the sicke from swines flesh, and from all other meates that be grosse, tough and clammy, and slow of digestion. Moreouer, let him abstain from all things which do coole & dry the body. He must eat birds that liue vpon mountains, & do engender good iuice: for those that do liue in fens & marishes, they be vnwholesome and full of excrements, and do engender a grosse humor. He must vse fishes of grauelly waters, which be soft and without toughnes, but in this feuer salt things and mustard must be ministred in meats, that they may extenuat, cut, and deuide, the grosse and clammy humors, and that they may consume & feede vp the superfluous humidity and moisture. They must vse wine that is white, thin, & meanly hot: for that by the thinnes of it doth extenuat the grossenes of the melancholy humor, and by the meane heat that it hath, it heateth the body by litle and litle, which is cooled with the melancholious humor, and it helpeth digegion, and also prouoketh vrine. They may not altogether be kept and refraine from frictions, deambulations, and other accustomed exercises (that is to say) you must suffer thē to vse exercises, but not so much as they did in their helth. Neither may they vse frictions, deambulations, and other exercises of the body so often nor so vehemently as they did in their health, for that would cause peril and danger of obstruction. But if exercises be vsed moderatly, and that in the time of intermission betweene the fits, they will void out excrements and bring other commodities which *Galen* rehearseth in *lib. 2. de tuenda sanitate*. They must altogether abstaine from bathing if they can, and be content onely with frictions and rubbings: for although bathing, becaus it doth heate, doth profite, yet, becaus it calleth forth humors outwardly, it bringeth perill of obstruction, specially when the body doth abound with excrements. And if the quartane be short, and not violent, it is not hurtfull in the intermission betweene the fittes, when the patients haile daies be, if he vse his wonted exercises. As for the belly, if it can be by any meanes it must be kept soluble, either with his accustomed meates, or with medicines mixed with them, or with clisters first gentle and easie, and after sharper: for you must encrease the streugth and sharpenesse by little and little, as the matter of the feauer doth concoct and digest by little and little: for at the beginning (as is sayde before) you must handle and order these feauers gently and easily. You may seeke examples of easie clisters out of the former Chapters. A clister somwhat sharper is this that followeth. ℞. mallowes, chammomill, mercury, leaues of blacke violets. ana. *M.* j. leaues of seene, the roots of polipody. ana. ℥. v. harts-tongue. *M.* j. ß. seeth al these in sufficient quantity of water vntil the third part.

Dyet.

Vinum.

Balneum.

Clister.

Then ſtraine it and commixe with the licour of that decoction, the marrow of *caſia fiſtula*. ℥ j. *diaſena laxatiua* ℥ ß common oil ℥ iij. *mel roſarum*. ℥ ß. ſalt gem. ℥ j. and make a cliſter. Within certain daies, giue to the patient *diatrion piperion*: but becauſe it doth heat vehemently, you may not miniſter it daily, whoſe making and vertue you muſt ſeeke out of *Galen in lib. 4. de ſanitate tuenda*. Alſo (as *Galen* ſaith) the patient ſhall doe rightly, if he drinke daily, onely pepper with water: for it heateth and diſſolueth the groſſeneſſe of windy ſpirites and vapours, and it extenuateth and digeſteth the crude and raw humors, which are heaped and gathered vp together in the hipochonders and ſides. And theſe things muſt be done from the beginning of the feuer, vntill it come to the vigour, force, and ſtate. And if the ſicke ſeeme now to be in the vigour and ſtate of the diſeaſe, then he muſt vſe a thinner diet, then he did before, or muſt doe afterward, and you muſt commaund long quiet & reſt to the patient, leaſt nature being occupied about digeſting of the matter of the diſeaſe, ſhould be called from her office and worke. Afterward you muſt prouide and forſee the intrailes which are wont to be ſwollen and ſtretched out with viſcous, tough and groſſe humours, and alſo with aboundance of windy ſpirites and vapours, which being diſſolued and emptied out, the bowels wax ſoft and are looſned. Therefore you muſt annoint them with thoſe thinges which can mollifie and looſen, as be ointments which are made of barely meale, ſeed of *apium*, rootes of ireos, rew, and ſuch like. Among other annoint the left ſide with this ointment. ℞. of oile of capers ℥ iij. oile of ireos, & of ſweet almonds. ana. ℥ ij. ſeeds of *apium*, and of comin, rootes of ireos. ana. ℈ j. waxe as much as is ſufficient, make an ointment. After theſe thinges you muſt miniſter medicines, which haue vertue and power to prouoke vrine, and not before this time: for if you miniſter ſuch things before the inward members bee free from obſtructions, becauſe thoſe medicins be hote, they cary the humors downe with them, and do encreaſe the obſtructions. For to prouoke vrine, you muſt miniſter *muſa*, wherein dil, or rew, or elſe *apium*, hath bene ſodden. If ſignes of concoction do appeare, thē you muſt ſtraight way vſe purging medicins which can purge out melancholy, and you may not purge him once onely, but oftner, if the matter ſeeme to require it: for that melancholy cannot be brought out al at once, ſeeing the body is not able to ſuffer and beare ſo ſtrong a purgation, as ſhould purge out all that ſtubborne humour at once. You may ſeeke examples of ſuch medicines, as doe purge out melancholy, out of the firſt booke in the Chapter of Melancholiouſneſſe. But yet aboue other things, *AEtius* praiſeth ſweet wine infuſed in the inward part of coloquintida, but ſo that you commixe with it ſome *apium*, or *daucus*, to make it pleaſaunt. After meate, you muſt prouoke vomite (if nothing let it) with white hellebore firſt commixed with radiſh as is declared in the other bookes, which if it worke little or nothing, you muſt miniſter hellebore by it ſelfe. And if any man abhor from hellebore, let him vſe this or ſuch like medicine. ℞. iuice of radiſh, or diſtilled water of it. ℥. iij. *oximel ſimplex*. ℥ ij. commixe them and make them warme to drinke, but they which cannot vomite, muſt be purged downeward, ſuch be they that haue a ſtraight and ſlender breaſt. After purging you muſt giue them *theriaca*, or ſomewhat that is of like vertue, as this is. ℞. *Liquoris cyrenaici*, fine mirrhe, pepper of each a like

Piper.

Prouiſion for the intrailes.

Vnguentum.

Prouokers of vrine.

Purgation of melancholy.

Vomitus.

Vomite.

like much, beat them by themſelues, and commix them with the iuice of rew, and make pilles thereof, and miniſter the weight of ℈.ß. They that miniſter any of theſe medicines at the beginning of the ſickneſſe, or at all, before the vigour, ſtate, and force thereof: they make of a ſimple quartaine oftentimes a double quartaine, or without doubt they make the ſingle quartaine greater and more vehement: and of a double quartaine they make a triple quartaine, or elſe the double one is made greater.

CHAP. X.

Of a quotidian Feuer.

De qvotidiana Febre.

Qvotidiana *Febris intermittens* (that is) an intermitting quotidian feuer. It is engendred of putrified and rotten fleume being thruſt of nature by theſenſible partes of the bodie. It is called of the Greeks *amphimerina*, becauſe it cauſeth a fit euerie day. But if glaſen fleume which is the coldeſt of all other fleumes, do putrifie by it ſelfe the one halfe of it, (that is) if the whole ſubſtance of it do not putrifie equally, but ſome parts of it do putrifie and ſome do not, then it engendreth a feuer called *Epialos febris*: in which the patient is feuerous, and vehemently cold together, & at one preſent time he feeleth immoderate heate and immoderate cold in all the partes of the bodie together. For part of that humour which is not putrified nor rotten as yet, being ſpread by all the veines, or in the reſt of the body, engendreth the rigour and cold, but the other rotten part of the humor engendreth the feuer. A quotidian feuer doth not inuade the patient with rigour and vehement cold by and by the firſt day, but in proceſſe of time, it commeth rather like a cooling, then like a rigour. The pulſe when the fit beginneth is inordinate and vnequall, ſlow, litle & weake. Neither alſo in the augmenting and increaſing of the quotidian is there ſwiftneſſe of mouing of the pulſes, nor greatneſſe, nor vehemencie. The heate in this feuer is not ſo ſharpe and vehement as it is in a tertian: for it neither burneth them, neither are they compelled to make naked their bodies, and to throw off their clothes, neither doth it compell them to breath much & often, & to blow out of their mouthes as it were a flame, nor to deſire to drinke cold water, but it is moiſt and ſmokie, and commixed with much vapour. Alſo it is hardly kindled, and it conſumeth a long time, vntill that by increaſing it come to the force and ſtate. Moreouer, they that haue this feuer do not thirſt, becauſe not only the tongue, but alſo the whole body in this feuer is moſt moiſt. The vrines in quotidian feuers either be white, and thinne and waterie: or thicke, and troubled. There burſteth out no ſweat at all in the firſt dayes, neither is there any exact and perfect reſt from being feuerous. For the feuer remaineth ech time almoſt the ſpace of 18. houres. There chanceth alſo to them vomiting of fleume: and thoſe things which are ſent out by egeſtion, are colder, moiſter, cruder, more waterie, and more flegmaticke. Alſo a quotidian feuer doth chiefly vex them that be moiſt and flegmatick of nature. Alſo it chanceth in a moiſt ſeaſon, ſpecially in winter that is cold and moiſt, and in olde folke and children. Hereupon *Galen* writeth, that he neuer ſaw a young man that was cholericke and dry by nature, taken with this feuer: but they that be

Cauſa.

ἀμφήμερινος.

Epialos febris.

Signa.

and most flegmatick, hauing a grosse substance of the body, and do liue an idle life, seruing their belly and giuen to drunkennesse, vsing bathing often and specially after meate, they are soone taken with this quotidian feuer. Let the dyet in this feuer be altogether extenuating, cutting and diuiding. Therefore you must now seeke such places, wherein we haue declared abundantly, what kind of diet it should be. In the first daies (that is) when signes of cruditie and indigestion do yet appeare, the fleume must be diuided and cut, and the pores and passages that be stopped, must be scoured and clensed. And therefore you must minister *oximel* because it doth scoure mightily, it cutteth and diuideth the glutinous and clammie humors, & it deliuereth the pores from obstructions. And you must minister those things which prouoke vrine, that the fleume (being alreadie extenuated and diuided) may the more readily passe by the cõduites, and be emptyed out. Therefore it is good to minister decoction of the root of *apium*, percely, *ireos*, fennell, and such other like often rehearsed before with *sirupus acetosus compositus*, and *mel rosarum*, and *sirupus è duabus radicibus*, and other that haue the vertue and power to extenuate, cut, and deuide. About the vigour and force of the feuer, you must take heed and haue regard to the stomacke, and specially to the mouth of it. Therefore you must prepare those things which being applyed outwardly, may ad strength to the stomack, such as be, masticke, spikenarde, wormewood, and such other like. Therefore before meate, vse this ointment. ℞. oiles of masticke, wormwood & nard. ana. ʒ. ij. ß. masticke, cloues, and wood of aloës, ana. ϑ. v. cinnamon. ϑ. j. with waxe as much as is sufficient, make an ointment, wherewith annoint the region of the stomacke. The stomacke being strengthened, you must compell vomiting, first by ministring of radish, then after, meates must be eaten, for so it lifteth vp the meates, and causeth the easier vomite. After he must vse medicines that do purge out fleume: for fleume when it is digest, may conueniently be purged. What medicines those be that can purge out fleume, it is euident in our other bookes, and this here sufficeth to cure a quotidian feuer.

Victus ratio.

Curatio.

Vnguentum.

CHAP. XI.

Of a Feuer ethicke.

De Hectica Febre.

Hectica febris.

HECTICA *febris* in Latin, the feuer ethicke in English. It is a feuer wherin an vnnaturall heate is not onely kindled in the spirites and humours, but now also it is kindled in the massie, sound, and fleshy parts, and members. This feuer knoweth no payne, & they that haue it, do thinke that they haue no feuer, neither do they perceiue or feele any heate, seing all the members of their body be equally heate, (as Galene declareth abundantly in his booke *De inequali intemperie*. The feuer ethicke is ingendred and caused two wayes. First for the most part, of burning feuers which haue continued so long, that in processe of time they consume the humiditie and moisture that is contained in the bodie of the heart, or also if it resist more abundantly, then those feuers are not onely ethickes, but also *marasmodes* (that is) consuming and melting feuers: for feuers being ingendred, (the humiditie yet still remaining) when they haue caught and occupied the body of the heart, hereupon they are specially kind-

Cause.

led

led and inflamed like the flame of a candle with a match. And this is one way of ingendring of the feuer ethicke. Another way of ingendring of them is this, when they begin of themselues by and by, being ingendred as diarie feuers be either of sorrow, or anger, or ouermuch wearinesse, together with burning of the heate of the Sunne. The feuers that be thus ingendred, be not very hard to cure: but such feauers of these as be turned into consuming and wasting, which the Greekes do call *marasmos*, through the negligence and ignorance of Phisitions, if those feuers be in their force and strength, and not as it were beginning still, it is not onely hard to cure these, but it is also impossible to remedie them. For the nature of them is hote and dry, so that the heart is in like case as the snuffe of a candle when it is verie much burnt: for when it is much burnt, it will breake and dissolue, and through drinesse fall asunder, so that although you poure abundance of oile to it, yet you cannot cause a greater flame to be kindled: for the flame being small & weake panteth alwaies vp & downe in it, and waxeth continually lesse and lesse, till it be altogether quenched out. Euen such is the feuer which is altogether *marasmodes* (that is) consuming. The feuer ethicke which turneth into *marasmus* or a consumption, is very ready and easie to know: for before you do consider the pulses & heat by touching them, you may see the eies wonderfull hollow, as though they were hid in some ditches or furrowes, for then all the moist substance of them is exhaust and consumed, so that you may see the bones of the eye browes sticke out. Also there hangeth on the haires of the eye lids, drie gumme and filth, and vncleanly affects, as is seene in them specially that go a long iourney in the dust, when the Sunne burneth hote. Also the vitall floure in them perisheth, and the skin of their forhead is dry and retched out, and their eye lids winke often as though they were sleepy, but their disease is not to sleepe, but is rather impotencie and debilitie to watch. Also the flesh of their temples is consumed, so that they seeme hollow places, for what other thing haue they but skin and bone? For, if you looke vpon their bare belly, it shall appeare to you, that neither bowell nor filme is left. The hypochonders and sides are pulled vpward to the breast. and if you touch their skinne, it is verie drie, which if you take hold on with your fingers and pull it vp, it is like the hide of a beast. The pulses be thin, hard, weake and often. The heate when you lay your hand first on him doth seeme weake: but a litle after it bursteth out sharpe & gnawing more and more, if you hold your hand long vpon him. Also this shalbe a great and vndubitate signe to you: when you do giue him meate, the heate is inflamed and increased, and the pulses are augmented in greatnesse & swiftnesse. It is called a feuer Ethick, so long as naturall humiditie and moisture is kept and reserued: but when it is to be doubted that there is left no more humiditie and moisture in the body, then it is an absolute & perfect consumption, which is called in Greeke *marasmos*. For the cure of a feuer ethick before it come vnto a consumptiõ, you must by all meanes coole it. And therefore the effect and summe of the whole cure doth consist in these pointes (that is,) to coole and moisten aswell with those things that be outwardly applied, as also by them that are ministred inwardly. Therefore let the aire that the patient doth breath in, be cold and moist. And if it be not so by nature, make it so by Arte, as is taught before in the 6. Chap, in

Marasmos. *Signa.* *Hectica febris.* *Marasmus.* *Curatio.* *Aer.* *Dyet.*

the cure of the tertian. He muſt alſo vſe meates, that do coole and moiſte, as broth of ptiſan, bread ſteeped a litle in cold water, the fleſh of kids, feaſants, birds of the mountaines, cocks ſtones, capons fleſh, reare egs, new cheeſe without ſalt, and fiſhes of grauelly waters, lettuce, endiue, ſuccorie, gourds, ſpinach, mallowes, and ſuch like: cheries, proines, pomegranates, melons, figs and ſuch like. He muſt alſo take milke, for that profiteth him maruellouſly, ſo that this feuer be not compounded and mixed with another feuer that is engendred of rottenneſſe of humors. Let his drinke be cold water, but ſpecially if the ſicke haue bene vſed to it before. Let him drink thereof moderatly, or let him drink water wherein a litle cinamon hath bene ſodden, or wine that is watered and thin. Moreouer it is good to them that haue this feuer to eate meat often in a day, that by that meanes they may beware & take heed that they eat not great abundance of meat at one meale, which vertue being weak ſhould not be able to ouercome and digeſt. They muſt eſchue moderate mouing, and all things that can reſolue and weaken the ſtrength. You may not miniſter any purging medicines to them that haue a feuer ethick: for purgations are hotter & vehementer then they are able well to ſuffer: but if the belly be more bound then it ought to be, you muſt looſen it with eaſie cliſters that can coole and moiſten, adding to them marrow of *caſia fiſtula*. You muſt miniſter ſuch things within the body as haue power & vertue to coole & moiſten. As among the cõpound medicines be theſe, ſirupe of violets, of water lillies, and of tame endiue, *ſirupus acetoſus*, and ſuch like. Alſo *diarrhodon abbatis*, *diatragacanthum frigidum*, *diapauer* & ſuch like. Of ſimples theſe be good, the iuyces & diſtilled waters of lettuce, purſlaine, tame endiue, and poppy. Among thoſe things that are to be applyed outwardly, bathes at all times are conuenient and profitable to them that haue this feuer: I meane bathes of ſweete waters, to the which the ſicke muſt be caried in a bed, or in a fine ſheete, and let there be foure to carie the ſheete at each corner one. The water of the bathe muſt be moſt temperate: and alſo the patient muſt not tarrie in it long leaſt any of his moyſture within him ſhould be drawne out by it: therefore in no caſe muſt he ſweate it it. There be ſome that vſe to ſeeth in the water of the bathe herbes, as violets, mallowes, lettuce, flowres of water lillies and ſuch like: ſome other do ſeeth calues feet, or lambes heads vntill the fleſh be ſodden from the bones. Alſo you muſt beware, leaſt any thing be powred on his head, ſeing it is ſufficient for it to be dipped twiſe or thriſe in the water with the whole bodie, the ſheete being let downe eaſily, and then againe lifted vp by foure young men which muſt carie him. Straight when he is brought from thence, he muſt be dipped all ouer once in cold water, and he may not tarrie in it any time at all. They that haue this feuer and be brought into a bathe, vnleſſe they be dipped in cold water, it helpeth them nothing (as *Galen* ſayth.) By and by, aſſoone as he is drawne out of the water, let another ſheet be ready, and caſt him into that, and then into another. Then lay him in his bed, & firſt wipe him with ſpunges, and after with ſoft linnen clothes. And let them not handle him violently that do wipe him, but as eaſily as they can poſſibly. To conclude, after this he muſt be annointed with cold oiles, and with other moiſtning things. Among other this liniment is good. ℞. oile of violets. ℥. ß. oile of gourds. ℥. iij. new butter without ſalt, ſwines

Lac. j.

Potus.

Nota.

Balneum.

swines greace, ana. ℥.j ß. commix them, and make a liniment, wherewith annoint the whole body. Or adde to it musculage of *tragacantha*. ℥. ij. marowe of calues shankles. ℥. iij. waxe as much as is sufficient, and make an ointment. Also oyle of water lillies, and of poppie, are good, and specially oyle of roses, which (as Galen saith) doth maruellously moisten dried bodies. When he is annointed and clothed, you must bring him againe vpon a bed, or a sheet, into the place where he is fed, and you must nourish him with meates. Also, it profiteth him to haue his hart cooled, and moistened with epithemes: as is this, ℞. waters of violets, water lillies, and lettuce, ana. ℥. iij. strong vineger. ℥ ß. red roses, all the saunders, ana. ℥. j. pouder of *diamargariton*. ℥ ß. seed of purslaine. ℊ. iij. saffron. ϑ ß. commixe them and make an epitheme, and apply it to the region of the hart cold. Likewise it is good to coole & moisten the liuer thus. ℞. water of lettuce. ℥. ij. vineger. ℥. j. *diarrhodon abbatis*. ℥. j. ß. scraping of iuoric. ℥. ß. purslaine. ϑ ß. commixe them and make an epitheme and apply it to the liuer. Also for them that haue the feuer ethick, medicines are good which can coole and moisten, with their odour and sauour, as be floures of water lillies, purslaine, violets, roses, and such like. Also you may find mo things, that are good for the cure of the feuer ethicke, in the second booke, in the Chap. of the Ptisicke or Consumption. And in curing of the feuer ethicke this oncly must be your study and labour, that the bodie may not only be cooled and moistened with those things which be ministred inwardly, but also by things that be applyed outwardly, and specially by annointing with oile. How much oile applyed and annointed outwardly, specially doth helpe to the conseruation of the body, and to the restoring of strength, we are taught by the notable example of *Pollio Romulus*, who being aboue an C. yeares old (as *Pliny* telleth) *Diuus Augustus* his host asked him, by what meanes he kept that vigour, force, and strength of body and mind: he answered thus: *Intus mulso, foris oleo* (that is) I keepe me moist with *mulsa* within and oile I annoint vpon my skinne.

Epithema cordis.

Epithema iecoris.

Odoramentum

Pollio Romulus.

CHAP. XII.

Of an hemitrice feuer.

De Haemitritaeo Sev Semitertiana.

ALthough there be diuerse kinds of compound feuers, as is declared in the beginning of this booke in the explication of feuers: yet in this place we will only speake of that feuer which is cõpounded of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian. And it is called in Greeke *hemitritæus*, and in Latin *semitertiana*, in English halfe a tertian. It is so called because this whole feuer hath halfe the nature of the said feuers, ech of them: by the example of this compound feuer, you may learne to cure all other compound feuers. Therefore an hemitrice feuer is caused, whẽ putrified fleume is commixed with rotten choler. It is declared before that a tertian inuadeth the patient with rigour and vehement cold, and a quotidian commeth with cooling of the extreame parts. Therfore the feuer which is cõpounded of them both causeth horrour and shaking for cold, which is lesse then the rigour of a tertian, and greater & more vehement then the cooling of a quotidian: so that it is a meane betwene them both. It is engendred two sundry wayes: for either two fits are ioyned

Hemitritæus quid.

Causæ.

Signa.

together by and by at the beginning, and do inuade the patient together both at once, or els ech of them commeth separate from the other. Therfore when the tertian doth exceede the other, it causeth a more horrible feuer, and also it hath much rigour and vehement cold in the augmenting of the fit, & there is present greater heate and more burning, and choler is driuen out either by vomiting, or by egestion, or it breatheth out a moist vapour, but when the quotidian exceedeth the tertian, then cold is in the extreme parts, and but a litle shaking, and neither burning nor thirst doth vexe him. But when the intermitting tertian, and the continuall quotidian be equall and of like force & greatnesse, the fit doth come with horrour and shaking for cold. And when the quotidian is of greatest force, the pulses and horrour waxe lesse and gentler: but if the tertian preuaile, by and by the pulses and horrour increase and waxe greater. Note therefore, when a feuer is ingendred of an intermitting tertian, and a continuall quotidian being equall of like force, greatnesse and strength, then it is called an exquisite *hemitriteus* ague: but if one feuer do exceede the other, then it is called an vnpure hemitrice. You may vnderstand by the former Chapters, how this feuer should be cured. For seeing an exquisite hemitrice feuer is ingendred of two feuers equally commixed (that is) a tertian and a quotidian: you must also vse a cure cõuenient & agreeing equally to a tertian & a quotidian. But in an vnpure hemitrice, whẽ there is most of choler, or most of fleume, you must also varie and chaunge the cure, according to the humour and feuer that aboundeth. For if choler haue the vpper hand, you must chiefly vse the remedies which we haue declared in the cure of the tertian. But if fleume abound most, vse the things most that be declared in the cure of the quotidian. To conclude, you must most couet the cure of that which hath most neede, and doth most abound, but so, that you do not altogether neglect the other. Therefore we neede not in this place rehearse the remedies whereby this feuer should be destroyed and cured, seeing euery man may learne the cure of them more readily according to the diuersitie and nature of the humours, out of the Chapters of curing of the tertian and quotidian. Therefore if any man do first learne to know exactly & perfectly the curing of simple feuers, he shall also know how to cure compound feuers without any more labour: for the cures of simple feuers being knowen, and considered, it is most readie to any man to cure compound feuers, so that here we shall not need to write seuerally of the curing of compound feuers.

Exquisitus hemitriteus.
Non exquisitus hemitriteus.
Curatio.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Pestilence.

De Pestilentia.

SEeing that at this present time and day, there be euery where treatises of the Pestilence made of diuerse new Authors: I neede not now long dispute here of it: but it shal be sufficiẽt, if we do briefly declare the causes, signes, and curing of it, as we haue done in other diseases before. There be two especiall causes of the Pestilence (as Galen writeth in *Lib.* 1. *De differentijs febrium. Cap.* 5. The one is, an infected, corrupted and rotten ayre. The other be humors gathered through naughty and corrupt diet of the body, which humors be

Causæ.
1
2

be ready to putrifie and rot, when a man taketh any light occasion to kindle a feuer of the corrupted ayre. Therefore the chiefest cause why men are infected with the Pestilence, is breathing in of ayre, without which no breathing thing doth prolong their life. For it beginneth for the most part of breathing in of ayre which is corrupted of a putrifying and rotting euaporation. The beginning of corrupted aire, and of the rotten euaporation, is either a multitude of dead bodies not burned or buried, as it chaunceth in warres, or the euaporation of some pooles, fennes or marishes in the sommer time. It chaunceth also sometime to come before immoderate heate of the ayre, when the temperature of the ayre is chaunged from his naturall state, to immoderate heat and moisture, of necessitie the Pestilence must follow. Hereupon Galen saith, that of all temperaments of the ayre, the worst is that which is hot & moist. Also oftentimes (as is aforesaid) naughtie and corrupt diet ingendreth humors in the bodie that be easie and readie to putrifie and rotte, and so is the cause why such bodies are infected with the Pestilence. And then truely they specially haue the Pestilence, which vse a naughty and corrupt dyet, and so be full of all kinds of superfluities. Therefore it neede not seeme maruellous, if sometime some one among many (which yet doth very seldome chaunce) be infected with this disease, the ayre yet not being pestilent and corrupt. For they that keep a good and healthfull diet, and be without superfluities in their bodies, they take no hurt at all, or else very litle hurt, although they be in the corrupt and pestilent ayre and may easily returne and be brought to their naturall habite and state. Hereby it is easie to answere them that aske, how it chaunceth that all men are not taken equally with the Pestilence, seeing euery one is constrained to breath in the pestilent ayre. The first cause why some remaine vnhurt, is because they be not full of superfluous humiditie and moisture, but do vse moderate diet & exercises, & haue their bodie easie to breath out vapours. Another cause is, because all mens bodies be not of like disposition & affect. For dispositions of mens bodies are of many sundry formes, for some bodies are quickly ouercome and infected, and doe most readily suffer any cause: but some againe be insuperable, and cannot be ouercome, nor will at all suffer the infection, or else very hardly. And therefore the greatest portion of ingendring of diseases, is the disposition of the bodie of him that suffereth the disease. For els all men, that taried long in the burning heat of the Sunne, or that vsed ouermuch mouing, or that were loden with wine or inflamed with anger, or affected with sadnesse, should fall into a feuer. Also we doe not deny, but that sometime great plagues & pestilence be sent of God for the grieuous sinnes and horrible offences of men, wherewith he punisheth the great offences of vs: whereof there be many euident testimonies in the Prophets, and specially in *Ezechiel cap.* 5. The time of the yeare in the which chiefly by nature the Pestilence is rife and flourisheth, is the end of Sommer, and the beginning of haruest or Autumn: for thē both the aire & mens bodies are most apt to putrifie, corrupt, & rot, for many causes. There be many & diuerse signes of the Pestilence to come rehearsed of the new Authors: among which signes, the first is the chaunging of the times of the yeare. The second is often *Phenomina* in the aire, specially in Autumne. The third is, when pushes, and

Wherein rottennesse beginneth.

Nota.

Plagues from God.

The time of the Plague.

Signes of the aire corrupted.

1 2 3

Pocks, and meaſles do not only vexe children, but alſo young folke of perfect
4 age. The fourth is, when the windes are often in the South and in the Weſt in
5 Autumne. The fifth is a darke and troubled aire in Autumne threatning raine,
6 but yet it doth not raine at all. The ſixt is, if women conceiued with child, doe
7 ſuffer abortion for euery light cauſe. The ſeuenth is, when in ſommer after
raine ſuddenly a great abundance of frogs of diuerſe colours do gather toge-
8 ther on a heape. The eight is, a great multitude of flies, wormes and creeping
9 10 things. The ninth is the dying of foure footed beaſts and fiſhes. The tenth is
11 flying of birdes from their neaſts, leauing their egges there ſtill. The eleuenth
12 is the dearth of victuals and corne. The twelfth, (which is the moſt certaine
Signes of one infected. ſigne) is a hot and moiſt temperature of the yeare. There be many ſignes, that
declare whē one is already infected with the Peſtilence. The firſt is if the out-
1 2 ward members be cold, & the inward mēbers burning hot. The ſecond is hea-
uineſſe, wearineſſe, & ſlouth of the whole body, & difficultie in breathing. The
3 4 third is paine & heauineſſe in the head. The fourth is carefulneſſe of the mind
5 and ſadnes. The fift is a maruellous inclination for the moſt part to ſleepe, for
6 ſometime watching and rauing do vexe him. The ſixt is a diuerſe & frowning
7 8 looke of the eyes. The ſeuenth is loſſe of appetite. The eight is immoderate
9 thirſt & often vomiting. The ninth is bitterneſſe & drineſſe of the mouth. The
10 11 tenth is a pulſe, frequent, ſmal, & deepe. The eleuenth is the vrine, for the moſt
part troublous, thicke, and ſtincking like beaſts vrine. Although ſometime the
vrine of them ſeemeth to differ litle from the vrine of healthfull men, therfore
by ſuch an vrine, they that are vnskilfull of the other ſignes be quickly decei-
12 ued, ſuſpecting no hurt, becauſe of the good colour of the vrine. The twelfth,
which is the moſt ſureſt token of all, is, if there do ariſe and ingender botches,
behind the eares, or vnder the armeholes, or about the ſhare, without anie
manifeſt cauſe, or alſo if carbuncles do ſuddenly ariſe in any mēber: for when
they appeare, they betoken ſtrength of nature, which being ſtrong and
Signifying of botches. mightie doth labour to driue the poyſon out of the bodie. Alſo they doe de-
clare, which members of the bodie being affected aboue other, doe thruſt out
from them the venemous humors. For if they do appeare in the neck, they do
declare that the veines be chiefly vexed: if vnder the armeholes, the hart: but
if they appeare in the ſhare, the liuer is moſt affected. But ſeeing that botches
do not alwaies appeare, (which is moſt perillous and daungerous, for it beto-
keneth that nature is weake and feeble, and is not able to expel and driue out
the venemous humors) you muſt haue reſpect to other ſignes & tokens, which
Curatio. be rehearſed a litle before. As for the Cure, if the aforeſaid ſignes do appeare,
Venæ ſectio. then if nothing doe let, by and by you muſt cut a veine on that ſide in which
the peſtilent botch doth appeare. If the botch do appeare behind the eares,
or about the chinne, or in other partes of the face and necke, you muſt let
bloud out of the *Cephalica* veine on the ſame ſide. If it appeare and come
out vnder the armeholes, you muſt cut the innermoſt veine of the arme on
the ſame ſide, it is commonly called *Baſilica*: or if that veine will not appeare,
take the middle veine. If the botch doe appeare in the ſhare, you muſt
draw out bloud from the anckles of the ſame ſide. But if there doe appeare
no botch outwardly, you muſt drawe out bloud from the ſame ſide where
there

there is felt greateſt paine and heauineſſe. But out of which veine you muſt let bloud, the paine and griefe of the members afflicted will declare to you well enough: for if the members aboue the breſt be grieued and afflicted moſt, cut the *Cephalica* veine. But if the parts beneath the necke be moſt grieued and afflicted, cut the *baſilica* or the middle veine: and if the neather parts be moſt vexed, you muſt cut the veine of the ham or anckles. And if nature be ſtrong, and other things not letting, you muſt draw out bloud aboundantly. But if through age, or for other cauſes, you may not vſe bloudletting, you muſt faſten cupping glaſſes to the necke and the ſhoulders, or to the backe, or to the legges. *Cucurbita.* And if the Peſtilence do inuade any man at his dinner time or ſupper time, when the ſtomacke is filled with meate, then he muſt vomite ſtraight way. *Vomitus.* At the laſt, when the bodie and ſtomach is emptied, you muſt by and by miniſter ſome medicine that can reſiſt poyſon, that it may draw the poyſon to it, and call it backe from the heart, for that is the propertie of ſuch medicines. *Alexiteria.* Among a great number of the which, this is praiſe worthie, which is called *Electuarium de ouo*, which once a good and wiſe Emperour called *Maximilianus* did vſe. *Electuarium de ouo.* Why I doe preferre this almoſt before all other, is, becauſe of his maruellous effectes and vertues which haue appeared often in diuerſe ſicke perſons: and becauſe it is eaſie to make, except the roote of white diptaine, which cannot well be gotten, for the which it is better to vſe the leaues of true diptaine, which may well be come by; miniſter of the aforeſaid Electuarie to them that be of perfect age. ℥. j. and to them that be younger ſometime. ℈. ij. will ſuffice, you muſt diſſolue it in water of roſes, or endiue, or ſcabious: Alſo this medicine vſed is good to preſerue a man from the Peſtilence, if he take thereof daily the weight of a graine or two of barley, or the quantitie of a peaſe. Alſo the taking of this potion doth helpe much. ℞. *Theriaca Andromachi* ℈. ij. *Mithridatum.* ℈. j. Bolearmaniacke preparate. ℈. ß. *Potio.* waters of Roſes, ſcabious and bugloſſe. ana. ℥. j. Commixe them. What powre and ſtrength is in bolearmoniacke to driue away the Peſtilence, Galen teacheth aboundantly *in libro nono, de ſimplicium Medicamentorum facultatibus.* *Bolus armeniacus.* Where he writeth that in a great Plague that was in Rome, as many as drunke this medicine were quickly healed. Wherefore this medicine ought chiefly to be vſed in the time of the Peſtilence. Moreouer this powder doth profite verie much. *Puluis optimus* ℞. the leaues of true diptaine, the roote of turmentill, the roote of pimpernell, zedoarie, gentian, roote of *Betonica altilis*, commonly called *tunica*, ana. ℥. ß. Bolearmoniacke preparate. ℥. j. *terra lemnia.* ℥. iij. *Aloes* epatike, mirrhe. ana. ℥. ß. ſaffron. ℥. j. maſticke. ℥. ij. and beate them all to very fine powder, and make a *Tritura*. Wherefore miniſter to the ſicke. ℥. j. in roſe water or ſorrell water. When the patient hath taken ſome of the aforeſaide medicines, lay him in a warmed bed being made with ſoft ſheetes, and well couered with clothes, that he may there ſweate foure or fiue houres, or longer, according to his ſtrength. *Sudor.* But if by this meanes you can ſcarcely prouoke him to ſweate, you muſt lay tyles being heate at the fire, to the feete of the patient, for theſe by reaſon of their heate will readily prouoke ſweate. And in all the time that the ſicke doth ſweate, you muſt onely take heede, that he doe neither ſleepe, eate, nor drinke. After ſweating you muſt diligently wipe

off the ſweate with very cleane and fine linnen clothes. Then afterwarde let the ſicke riſe from his bed, if he will, or if he can, and let him eſchew the open ayre. Let the ayre of the chamber in which the ſicke doth lie, be corrected, amended and purified with odoriferous things, and with ſweete ſmelling perfumes, dayly foure or fiue times. It is beſt for the ſicke to chaunge from one chamber to another. Becauſe the ayre of one chamber by the continuall tarying of the ſicke in it, is much corrupted, and cannot eaſily be corrected and amended. Let the aire of the chamber into the which the ſicke ſhall remoue, be firſt corrected and purged with perfumes. What thoſe thinges ſhould be, we will declare afterward. Two or three houres after the patient hath ſweate, giue vnto him the broath of a chicken, and that you muſt doe often afterward, according to his ſtrength: for the ſicke muſt be nouriſhed and refreſhed by little and little. Therefore it is good for him to eate often, and but verie little at once: for they that are thus fedde, will ſooner recouer againe then other. Alſo he may vſe to eate the fleſh of chickens, ſodden with ſorrell, or with iuyce of lymons, or elſe veriuyce. Alſo the ſicke muſt be kept altogether from ſleepe the firſt day by talke of the aſſiſtantes, by rubbing of the extreame partes, by pulling of their eares, noſe, and hayre. For the which purpoſe it is not vnprofitable to dippe a ſponge in very ſharpe vineger, and holde it to the noſe. If the patient haue vehement thirſt, he may vſe this potion. ℞. Iulep of violets. ℥. iij. ſyrupe of the ſharpe iuyce of Cytrons. ℥. j. ß. ſyrupe of ſowen Endiue. ℥. ij. of the decoction of ſorrell, ſcabious, and floures of bugloſſe. ℥. tenne, or ſo much of their diſtilled waters, commixe them and make a potion. Alſo you muſt take the water wherin barley hath beene ſodden a little, and commixe with it iuyce of roſes, or ſorrell, or lymons, or of vnripe grapes, and miniſter it in ſteede of drinke. And you muſt miniſter medicines (ſpecially if the ſtrength be feeble) which can ſtrengthen and comfort the heart, and other principall members of the bodie, as this is. ℞. conſerues of violets, roſes and bugloſſe. ana. ℥. j. ß. Bole armoniacke preparate. ℥. j. redde corall. ℈. j. barkes of Cytron apple. ℥. j. ß. Camphire. ℈. v. with ſyrupe of the iuyce of ſharpe Cytrons, as much as is ſufficient, make an Electuarie or liquide antidote. Alſo you muſt lay vppon the region of the heart, (ſpecially if the ſicke doe yet feele heate about the breaſt) this Epitheme. ℞. waters of roſes, bugloſſe and ſorrell. ana. ℥. iiij. powder of *Electuarium de gemmis*. ℥. j. wood of *Aloes*, red ſaunders, the barkes of a Cytron apple beaten to powder, the bone of the Harts heart, ana. ℈. v. ſaffron. grain. ſixe, commixe them all and make an Epitheme. But you muſt note that the *E*pithemes may not be applied, except they be made hote: and as ſoone as they are cooled, you muſt take them away ſtraight way: for then they conſtraine and ſhut vp the pores, and ſo doe bring vnto the patient no ſmall griefe. Therefore it is better to vſe cordiall bagges, as this is. ℞. floures of red roſes, water lillies, and of violets. ana. ℥. ij. of all the ſaunders, corall white and redde, *ſpodium*, pearles. ana. ℥. iij. cinnamon, cloues, the bone of the Harts heart, wood of *Aloes*, barkes of the Cytron apple, ſaffron. ana. ℈. j. ſeede of ſorrell. ℈. ij. ſeede of purſlaine. grain. iiij. beate all theſe into fine powder, and make two ſquare bagges of ſilke, and

Aeris correctio

When meate ſhould be miniſtred.

Of ſleepe.

Potio.

Comfortatiues.

Electuarium.

Epithema.

Suculus.

apply

apply each after other being heate. Moreouer you muſt altogether couet and labour, that the venimous humours may be entiſed and drawen to the place where the botches appeare and burſt out, and you muſt doe it by ſetting to of cupping glaſſes, or by medicines applyed, that haue vertue and power to draw thoſe humours, as this is. ℞. fat figges in number ſixe, great raiſons. ℥.ß. ſalt gumme. ℥.ij. honie. ℥.j. with oyle of cammomill, make it into the forme of an emplaiſter, and apply it hot to the botch. Or apply this plaiſter, which is much commended of all men. ℞ a great onion, and cut off the head of it, and picke out all the core within, then fill it with *Theriaca Andromachi*, adding to it iuyce of rew or ſage, which done, ſtoppe the hole faſt that is in the toppe of the onion with lute, and ſet the onion in the imbers to roaſt. And when you doe thinke that it is roaſted enough, pull off the barkes of it, and then bray it in a morter, vntill it be thicke like an implaiſter, and apply it hot to the botch. You neede not to be affraid to apply *theriaca* to the botches, becauſe of the authoritie of *Gentilis* and *Valeſcus* and ſome other authors. For *theriaca*, and ſuch like medicines againſt poyſon do not worke their operation by driuing the poyſon from them (as they being in a wonderfull errour doe affirme) but rather they worke by drawing the poyſon to them (as Galen teacheth, in his booke *de theriaca ad Piſonem.*) Alſo this emplaiſter is good, for it helpeth much to the rotting of the botch. ℞. meale of fenugrecke, and lineſeede, of floures of cammomill. ana. ℥.ß. rootes of *althea* and white lillies. ana. ℥.ß. figges in number ſixe, leaues of true diptaine. ℥ iij. rootes of valerian. ℥ ij. muſtard ſeede. ℥.j.ß. doues dong. ℥.ß. oyles of cammomill and lillies. ana. ℥.j.ß. make them into the forme of an emplaiſter or pultiſe. Alſo this is practiſed. ℞. of *emplaſtrum diachylon ſimplex*. ℥. ij. of gumme armoniacke, and *galbanum*. ana. ℥ j. bray them together, and bring them to the forme of an emplaiſter. But if the botch will not breake of himſelfe by applying the aforeſaide things, you muſt then lay vppon it gooſe dong diſſolued in the common oyle, or in oyle of cammomill. And this is ſufficient to ſpeake of here as touching the cure of them which be taken with the Peſtilence.

Outward medicines.

Emplaſtrum.

Error of Gentilis and Valeſcus.

Emplaſtrum ſuppuratorium

Aliud.

Now we will briefely expound, by what meanes a man may preſerue and defende himſelfe from the infection of the Peſtilence, which vexeth and infecteth in ſome certaine place or region. And ſeeing (as we haue declared in the beginning of this Chapter (it is euident that the peſtilence is not cauſed, but through the breathing in of the peſtilent and corrupt aire: there can not be a more preſent remedie to preſerue one, then flying from the corrupt ayre. For there is no other meanes to auoide the peſtilent aire, becauſe whether we will or no, we muſt draw in ſuch aire, vnleſſe we get vs away into ſome other place, where the aire is not corrupted nor infected, but pure and good. Which you muſt the rather and more quickly do, if the euill be greatly infectiue. And you muſt flie farre off into ſuch a place whereas the aire is knowen to be pure and good, and deſtitute of corruption: neither muſt you returne home againe from that place verie ſoone. Hereupon it is not raſhly ſayde of the common ſort, that theſe three Aduerbes *Citò*, *longè*, and *tardè*, in the time of the Peſtilence, do more pleaſure and profite then three ſhoppes very well furniſhed. Therefore they that may conueniently for their buſineſſe fly away,

A preſeruation from the peſtilence.

Flight is the beſt remedie.

let them not ſuffer themſelues to be perſwaded by anie meanes to tarie in the peſtilent aire: which if they doe, they ſhall fooliſhly put themſelues in daunger of Peſtilent death: but if you may not flie for vrgent buſineſſe, and iuſt cauſes, then let your firſt care be, that the houſe in which you muſt tarie, be without all kind of ſtinke, and kept cleane from all filthineſſe & ſluttiſhneſſe. Let the windowes of it be iuſt ſhut, ſpecially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the peſtilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, ſee that they open vpon the Eaſt or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is riſen aboue the earth ſome houres. You muſt come abrode but ſeldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnleſſe you haue firſt taken ſome medicine which is able to preſerue you frō the infection. You muſt make fires dayly in your houſes, with oken wood, Iuniper, *tamariſcus*, laurell, or ſuch like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the houſe, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and ſtrength in fire to amend and correct the rottenneſſe and corruption of the aire. Alſo you muſt ſtrew vpon coales this powder following. ℞. roſemarie. M. ß. ſage, betonie, wormewood, marioram, origan. ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vſe this powder. ℞. of Iuniper berries. ℥. j. mirrhe. ℥. iij. frankenſenſe and maſticke, ana. ℥. iij ß. roote of *benedicta*, ℥. j. rew. ℥. ß. cipreſſe barkes. ℥. j. ß. roote of *Angelica*, lauender, ana. ℥. ij. beate all together, & make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, iuniper cleft in ſmall ſtickes, or the berries of iuniper. Let richer folke vſe wood of Aloes, or powder of *Gallia moſchata*, cloues, and ſuch like. When neceſſitie conſtraineth you to go abrode, carrie this or ſuch a like pomander with you. ℞. *Lapdanum.* ℥. iij. *ſtorax calamitæ.* ℥. ij. cinamon, mace, cloues, nutmegges. ana. ℥. j. wood of Aloes. ℈. j. ſpikenard. ℈. ß. mirrhe, maſticke, frankenſence, ana. ℥. ß. muske and amber. ana. gra. iij. powder them and ſearce them, and with *ſtorax liquida* and water of marioram as much as is ſufficient, commixe them, and make a *pomum odoratum*. In ſommer time, let the aire be purified & corrected with cold things, as with floures of roſes, violets, water lillies, vine leaues and branches, willow leaues, & ſuch other like. Alſo ſprinckle the pauement with water of roſes, ſorrell, and ſuch like, or with cold water wherewith ſome vineger is commixed. Alſo it profiteth to ſmell roſes, vineger, camphire, ſaunders, & ſuch other like: or to ſmell to this pomander. ℞. *Lapdanum.* ℥. ß. *ſtorax calamitæ.* ℥. iij. flowers of water lillies, roſes, and violets. ana. ℥. j. barkes of the citron apple. ℥. j. ß. all the ſaunders. ana. ℥. ß. of maces and cinamon. ana. ℈. j. maſticke. ℥. j. white poppie. ℥. ß. Camphire. ℈. ß. amber, muske. ana. gra. ij. bray and commix them with *ſtorax liquida* and roſe water, and make a pomander. But ſeeing Galene ſaith, that one of the chiefeſt things which they that would be preſerued from the peſtilence ought to regard and take heede of, is that their bodie be for the moſt part without ſuperfluities and excrements, and may well breath out the vapours. Truly there is nothing more to be eſchewed at ſuch a time, then ouermuch deuouring, and ſwallowing in gluttonouſly of meat & drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as ingender good blood, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commix with the meates that be eaten at that time, ſome vineger, or ſome other ſharpe iuyce,

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

Diet.

iuyce, as veri iuyce, or iuyce of citron apples, or of lymons or orenges. In Summer time he muſt vſe for potherbes, bugloſſe, endiue, ſuccorie, and lettuce: and in Winter let him vſe ſage, parcely, *apium*, marioram, balme, and hyſope. He muſt abſtaine from all fruites, vnleſſe they be ſharpe, as be pomegranates, citrons, lymons, orenges and ſuch like, which are good for him to vſe. Let his drinke be wine that is thinne and waterie. Let euerie man beware of ſtrong wine that is vnlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vſe exerciſes but in a meane and in a temperate place, and in an aire being firſt purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you muſt eſchue common dauncings openly, and alſo turnings, leapings, and whatſoeuer ſuch like exerciſe there be that requireth often breathing in of aire. Therefore becauſe of this alſo in the time of the peſtilence he muſt eſchue companies gathered together by magiſtrates by ſome open commandement, for matters of the common wealth, as courtes, ſeſſions and ſuch like. Let his ſleepe, watchings and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he muſt ſleepe in a chamber that is cloſe, well ſtopped and ſhut, leſt the peſtilent aire ſhould enter into it: the aire of which chamber muſt be purified and corrected with ſome perfume aforeſaied morning and euening. He muſt vſe ſheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from ſleepe let this be his firſt care and worke, to emptie the bodie of ſuperfluities and excrements. And you muſt onely take heed and beware, that the bodie be not coſtiue at any time. Therfore if it do not of it ſelfe void out excrements daylie, you ſhall prouoke them out with *pilulæ ruſi*, or with a ſoft clyſter, or with a ſuppoſitarie made for the purpoſe. When the body is emptyed from ſuperfluities and excrements, as well by the guttes as by the bladder, he muſt take ſome medicine that can preſerue him from the infection of the peſtilence, for the which there be many things before rehearſed. And if neceſſarie buſineſſe do conſtraine you to go abroad openly, you may chew zedoarie, or root of angelica, or pimpernell, or you ſhall ſmell to rew. For the ſauor of it doth maruellouſly reſiſt the peſtilent aire. He muſt eſchue all carnall luſt, ſpecially immoderate vſing thereof. After copulation, he muſt keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes muſt altogether be abhorred, as a moſt preſent poiſon, ſpecially common bathes, becauſe when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the peſtilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vſe a priuate bath, let them preſerue and defend themſelues moſt diligently from the corrupted aire, when they go out of the bath. But it is better and more wholeſome to vſe frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let bathes alone, but yet you may waſh the head weakely with lie wherein hath bene ſodden *aſarum*, marioram, lauender, roſemarie, betony, ſage, cammomill, and ſuch other like, but young men and ſuch as abound with bloud, muſt in the time of the peſtilence vſe bloudletting: and that not onely once, but, (if nothing let to the contrarie) bloudletting often doth profite much to preſerue them in health, becauſe it doth much coole the ſtate of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Alſo you muſt purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that ſpecially in the ſpring time and autumne. As for pey-

Exercitium

Excretion.

Venus.

Balneum.

Bloudletting.

Purgatio.

let them not ſuffer themſelues to be perſwaded by anie meanes to tarie in the peſtilent aire: which if they doe, they ſhall fooliſhly put themſelues in daunger of Peſtilent death: but if you may not flie for vrgent buſineſſe, and iuſt cauſes, then let your firſt care be, that the houſe in which you muſt tarie, be without all kind of ſtinke, and kept cleane from all filthineſſe & ſluttiſhneſſe. Let the windowes of it be iuſt ſhut, ſpecially in cloudie and rainie dayes, that the peſtilent aire enter not in. But if you will open them, ſee that they open vpon the Eaſt or North quarter, and do it when the Sunne is riſen aboue the earth ſome houres. You muſt come abrode but ſeldome, and not except the element be cleare and bright: neither come then, vnleſſe you haue firſt taken ſome medicine which is able to preſerue you frō the infection. You muſt make fires dayly in your houſes, with oken wood, Iuniper, *tamariſcus*, laurell, or ſuch like, that thereby the corrupt aire that is in the houſe, may be corrected and purged. For there is a maruellous vertue and ſtrength in fire to amend and correct the rottenneſſe and corruption of the aire. Alſo you muſt ſtrew vpon coales this powder following. ℞. roſemarie. M. ß. ſage, betonie, wormewood, marioram, origan. ana. M. j. bray all finely, and make a powder. Or vſe this powder. ℞. of Iuniper berries. ℥. j. mirrhe. ℥. iij. frankenſenſe and maſticke, ana. ℥. iij ß. roote of *benedicta*, ℥. j. rew. ℥. ß. cipreſſe barkes. ℥. j. ß. roote of *Angelica*, lauender, ana. ℥. ij. beate all together, & make a powder. Let poore folke lay vpon quicke coales, iuniper cleft in ſmall ſtickes, or the berries of iuniper. Let richer folke vſe wood of Aloes, or powder of *Gallia moſchata*, cloues, and ſuch like. When neceſſitie conſtraineth you to go abrode, carrie this or ſuch a like pomander with you. ℞. *Lapdanum*. ℥. iij. *ſtorax calamitæ*. ℥. ij. cinamon, mace, cloues, nutmegges. ana. ℥. j. wood of Aloes. ℈. j. ſpikenard. ℈. ß. mirrhe, maſticke, frankenſence, ana. ℥. ß. muske and amber. ana. gra. iij. powder them and ſearce them, and with *ſtorax liquida* and water of marioram as much as is ſufficient, commixe them, and make a *pomum odoratum*. In ſommer time, let the aire be purified & corrected with cold things, as with floures of roſes, violets, water lillies, vine leaues and branches, willow leaues, & ſuch other like. Alſo ſprinckle the pauement with water of roſes, ſorrell, and ſuch like, or with cold water wherewith ſome vineger is commixed. Alſo it profiteth to ſmell roſes, vineger, camphire, ſaunders, & ſuch other like: or to ſmell to this pomander. ℞. *Lapdanum*. ℥. ß. *ſtorax calamitæ*. ℥. iij. flowers of water lillies, roſes, and violets. ana. ℥. j. barkes of the citron apple. ℥. j. ß. all the ſaunders. ana. ℥. ß. of maces and cinamon. ana. ℈. j. maſticke. ℥. j. white poppie. ℥. ß. Camphire. ℈. ß. amber, muske. ana. gra. ij. bray and commix them with *ſtorax liquida* and roſe water, and make a pomander. But ſeeing Galene ſaith, that one of the chiefeſt things which they that would be preſerued from the peſtilence ought to regard and take heede of, is that their bodie be for the moſt part without ſuperfluities and excrements, and may well breath out the vapours. Truly there is nothing more to be eſchewed at ſuch a time, then ouermuch deuouring, and ſwallowing in gluttonouſly of meat & drinke. Therefore let their meates be altogether eaſie of digeſtion, and ſuch as ingender good blood, and be not readie to putrifie and rot. And alwayes commix with the meates that be eaten at that time, ſome vineger, or ſome other ſharpe

Suffimenta.

A pomander.

Pila odorata.

Diet.

iuyce,

iuyce, as veri iuyce, or iuyce of citron apples, or of lymons or orenges. In Summer time he muſt vſe for potherbes, bugloſſe, endiue, ſuccorie, and lettuce: and in Winter let him vſe ſage, parcely, *apium*, marioram, balme, and hyſope. He muſt abſtaine from all fruites, vnleſſe they be ſharpe, as be pomegranates, citrons, lymons, orenges and ſuch like, which are good for him to vſe. Let his drinke be wine that is thinne and waterie. Let euerie man beware of ſtrong wine that is vnlayed and new. To conclude, let his diet be altogether cooling and drying. Therefore he may not vſe exerciſes but in a meane and in a temperate place, and in an aire being firſt purified, amended and corrected by medicines and perfumes. Therefore you muſt eſchue common dauncings openly, and alſo turnings, leapings, and whatſoeuer ſuch like exerciſe there be that requireth often breathing in of aire. Therefore becauſe of this alſo in the time of the peſtilence he muſt eſchue companies gathered together by magiſtrates by ſome open commandement, for matters of the common wealth, as courtes, ſeſſions and ſuch like. Let his ſleepe, watchings and all other things be moderate and in a meane. But he muſt ſleepe in a chamber that is cloſe, well ſtopped and ſhut, leſt the peſtilent aire ſhould enter into it: the aire of which chamber muſt be purified and corrected with ſome perfume aforeſaied morning and euening. He muſt vſe ſheets that be pure and cleane, and that haue bene layed vp a while with odoriferous things. When he is awaked from ſleepe let this be his firſt care and worke, to emptie the bodie of ſuperfluities and excrements. And you muſt onely take heed and beware, that the bodie be not coſtiue at any time. Therfore if it do not of it ſelfe void out excrements daylie, you ſhall prouoke them out with *pilulæ ruſi*, or with a ſoft clyſter, or with a ſuppoſitarie made for the purpoſe. When the body is emptyed from ſuperfluities and excrements, as well by the guttes as by the bladder, he muſt take ſome medicine that can preſerue him from the infection of the peſtilence, for the which there be many things before rehearſed. And if neceſſarie buſineſſe do conſtraine you to go abroad openly, you may chew zedoarie, or root of angelica, or pimpernell, or you ſhall ſmell to rew. For the ſauor of it doth maruellouſly reſiſt the peſtilent aire. He muſt eſchue all carnall luſt, ſpecially immoderate vſing thereof. After copulation, he muſt keepe him out of the open and infectiue aire. Bathes muſt altogether be abhorred, as a moſt preſent poiſon, ſpecially common bathes, becauſe when the pores of the bodie are opened by the heate of it, the peſtilent aire doth readily creepe into the bodie. They that will vſe a priuate bath, let them preſerue and defend themſelues moſt diligently from the corrupted aire, when they go out of the bath. But it is better and more wholeſome to vſe frictions at home in a rectified aire, and let bathes alone, but yet you may waſh the head weakely with lie wherein hath bene ſodden *aſarum*, marioram, lauender, roſemarie, betony, ſage, cammomill, and ſuch other like, but young men and ſuch as abound with bloud, muſt in the time of the peſtilence vſe bloudletting: and that not onely once, but, (if nothing let to the contrarie) bloudletting often doth profite much to preſerue them in health, becauſe it doth much coole the ſtate of the bodie, and bringeth it to a moderate heate. Alſo you muſt purge the bodie (if need require) with purging medicines, and that ſpecially in the ſpring time and autumne. As for per-

Exercitium

Excretion.

Venus.

Balneum.

Bloudletting.

Purgatio.

turbations of the mind, he must eschue sadnesse, anger, hatred, feare, great cares, and heauie thoughts, and he must vse ioy and mirth in a meane. Now it remaineth, that we describe medicines which can keepe and preserue vs safe from the infection of the pestilence: among which the pilles that are called *pilulæ rufi* or *pestilentiales*, or else *communes*, are principall and chiefe. ℞. aloës epatick two parts, saffron oriental, mirrhe. ana part 1. with white wine, or with water of scabious, make pilles, of which minister daily ℈. j. and more or lesse according to the age and strength of the patient. These pilles because of the aloës and mirrhe in them, which do most resist putrefaction, they haue a maruellous efficacie & vertue against the infecting of pestilent aire. Also you may vse these pilles following. ℞. aloës epatick ʒ. iij. mirrhe ʒ. j. ß. agaricke preparate ʒ. j. saffron oriental ʒ. ß. bole armoniacke preparate ℈. j. seed of Citron apples ℈. ij. masticke ℈. ß. roote of pimpernell. ʒ. ß. with rose water make 13. pilles of ʒ. j. of which minister one or two. Also you may vse that medicine that is commonly called *electuarium de nucibus*. ℞. of walnuts in number 20. of fat figges in number 13. rew. *M.* ij. of wormwood, *cotula fœtida* & scabious. ana. *M.* j. roote of *aristolochia longa*. ʒ. ß. roote of *aristolochia rotunda*. ʒ. j. ß. of turmentill, *petasitu*, and pimpernell. ana. ʒ. ij. ß. leaues of true diptaine. *M.* j. of laurell berries. ʒ. iij. of harts-horne burnt. ʒ. ij ß. maces, mirrhe, bole armoniacke, true *terra lemnia*. ana ʒ. iij. salt of the sea. ʒ. j. ß. *nux vomica*. ʒ. ij. floures of bugloss. *M.* j. beate them all, and commixe them with ℔ ij. of clarified hony, and made a liquide medicine like a Loch. Also this powder is verie good. ℞. leaues of true diptaine. ʒ. ß. of the rootes of zedorie, *tunica*, pimpernell, and turmentill. ana. ʒ. ß. barkes of the citron apple. ʒ. iij. *terra lemnia*. ʒ. vj. bole armoniack. ʒ. j. mirrhe chosē, aloës epatick ana. ʒ ß. saffron. ʒ. ß. masticke. ʒ. j. ß. liquorice, ʒ. j. scabious and sorrell, ana. ʒ. iij. red saunders. ʒ. j. scraping of luorie, and *euthera* ana. ʒ. ß. the bone of the Harts heart, red corall. ana. ℈. ij seed of purslaine gran. 5 bray all finely and make a powder. If you will, you may make of these, lozenges, with sugar, and waters of roses and scabious, and minister daily of them. ʒ. j or more, or lesse according to age and strength. Also onely bole armoniacke taken with vineger, is notably praised. Likewise *theriaca, mithridatum*, and such other are good, whereof there is plentie named of them that haue written of the Plague. We therefore here will make an end of speaking of this kind of euill.

Preseruatiues.

Pilulæ communes.

Pilulæ.

Electuarium de nucibus.

Pulus.

The end of the fourth booke

THE FIFT BOOKE CONTAINING THE CVRING OF TVMORS WHICH HAPPEN ABOVE NATVRE.

CHAP. I.

What that ſwelling is which happeneth beſides nature, which commonly is called by this generall name Apoſtema: and the ſifting out of the true definition, and of the diuiſion of the ſame, according to the opinion of the Neoterickes.

THESE Tumours which haue their being beſides nature, the later ſort both of Phiſitions and Chyrurgians, and not they onely, but almoſt the vniforme conſent of olde writers haue comprehended vnder this name *Apoſtema*: whereas indeede *Apoſtema*, both by *Galen* and all other Grecians, hath bene reputed but as one kinde of thoſe ſwelling tumours, which commonly are ſayed to chance beſides nature, which the Latines haue verie fitly termed *Abſceſſus*, and the crew of younger Phiſitions do call it *exitura*, deriuing the originall of the word from the interpreter of Auicene: of the which, as alſo of all other kindes we will intreate particularly in his ſeuerall Chapter. Although indeed it hath pleaſed ſome of the later ſort to make *Apoſtema* as the *ſpecies* or *differentia* of thoſe tumors beſides nature: appointing it to be diuerſe from that which they call *exitura*, and alſo from that other kinde *puſtula*. For vnder the name of Apoſtemes, they will conclude and place thoſe tumors onely which being lifted vp into a great bigneſſe, do fetch their procreation from the influence of naturall humors (as they terme them) whereupon they call them *vera Apoſtemata*. Therefore when *Apoſtema* is taken for the *genus*, comprehending vnder it all the tumors beſides nature by Auicene and his followers, it is thus commonly defined: An Apoſteme is a diſeaſe compounded of three kindes of maladies, all aggregated into one bigneſſe, which definition they do affirme to be eſſential, conſiſting (as they ſay) of *genus* and *differentia*, which do verie ſufficiently explane the nature of that which is defined, appointing this word diſeaſe to be the *genus*, & the other words which are annexed, do ſtand to manifeſt the difference of other the like infirmities,

Apoſtema.

Abſceſſus.

Apoſtema.

The common definition of Apoſtema.

which do happen by the compoſition and conſtruction of the inſtruments: All which diſtinctions and diuerſities, *Galen* doth recite in his booke intituled *de morbo & ſymptomate*. But theſe three kindes of ſores, which in that ſwelling, beſides nature commonly called *Apoſtema*, do concur eſtabliſhing the eſſence of one onely diſeaſe, are theſe: intemperature, which they alſo call an euill complexion: immoderation, whereby they intend a ſiniſter compoſition, and the ſolution of that agreeing vnitie which nature affordeth to euerie bodie. To which three kindes, the Greekes haue aſſigned three oppoſite and fitte termes, calling the firſt διαφθορὰ, the ſecond ἀμφίξις, the third συνιζήσις λύσις but they bring alſo many other deſcriptions rather then definitions of this *Apoſtema*: for definitions I dare not tearme them, when as they do not conuert with that which is defined, neither do they ſerue either to the ſufficient explication of his nature, or the conſtitution of his eſſence, which they very wel knowing, are content to let them goe vnder the name of accidentall definitions. One of them they haue deſumed and taken out of *Galen* his booke which he wrote *de tumoribus præter naturam*. An Apoſteme or tumor beſides nature, is one of thoſe things which happening vnto the body, doeth inflate that part which it occupieth, to the extremeſt dimenſion. This definition they haue extorted out of *Galen* his words which he ſet not downe as an exquiſite definition, but as an ordinarie aſſertion. You may faſhion (if you pleaſe) manie ſuch definitions, as this for one. An Apoſteme is an increment exceeding naturall conſtitution: or this: an Apoſteme is a tumor, in the which the parts haue departed from their naturall ſtate & habite in quantitie and bigneſſe. Whereas *Galen* in his *lib.* 13. *Therap. meth.* hath theſe wordes: in this thirtith part of our whole worke we will begin to diſcourſe of thoſe tumours happening beſides nature, in which the parts haue forſaken their naturall conſtitution by becoming more bigge, ſo that you ſeing the ſlender weight of theſe definitions, you muſt annexe this particle, *actiones lædens*, hurting the duties of the body, or thus, inducing an euident detriment to the actions, or elſe they will not be abſolute or eſſentiall: for euerie tumor making diſtention or ſwelling in length, breadth or profunditie, beyond the ordinarie conſtitution of nature, other in all the bodie, or in any part thereof: or euerie excrement or greatneſſe exceeding nature, muſt not according to the vulgar acception be named either *Apoſtema*, or a ſwelling beſides nature. For (as *Galen* ſayeth in his booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*) ſuch like augmentations may befall not only to the diſeaſed, but alſo to the healthfull, as well in the whole body, as in any member of the ſame. For groſſe men, although they be enlarged, and as it were diſtended both in breadth and profunditie: yet they haue not this diſtention beſides nature, but (as he ſaieth) onely not naturally: for they haue not yet paſſed the bounds of nature, neither are the actions and duties of their part maimed or annoyed, which is the border of thoſe increments, which are beſides nature: and thoſe tumors which abide in thoſe parts which are yet ſound and without the taſt of griefe, may well be ſaid to be aboue & beyond nature, but not beſides nature, as for example: if both the teats, or one of them onely be maruellouſly increaſed, or inflated, yet ſo that his ſubſtance be free from all annoiance, this cannot appoſitiuely be ſaid to be beſides nature, but onely beyond

Three kinds of diſeaſes appointing the eſſence of tumors beſides nature.

Accidentall definitions.

Definitio prima.
Secunda.
Tertia.

A perfect definition beſides nature, taken out of the writings of Galen.

The diuiſion of a tumor beſides nature into his ſpecies after the opinion of the later ſort.

yond nature. Therefore if you desire an absolute definition of this tumour which happeneth besides nature, collected out of the writings of Galene, you shall thus define it. A swelling besides nature is an increment surpassing the ordinarie habite of nature, bringing with it a maime to the actions therof. But such like tumours besides nature are wont to be deuided into three kindes by *Guido*, and those of his age, into impostumes, abscessions, and pushes or vlcers. Impostumes they call great tumours, in which the matter whereof it springeth, doth offend in plentie or quantitie: pushes are those litle tumours (which they call *Bothor*) in which, the substance whereof they arise is troublesome rather in qualitie than in quantitie, yea and in them there lurketh a poysonous venim (as they say) but the abscessions are those tumours which the Latines call *Abscessus*, and of the Greekes may well be named ἀπόστημαλα, as we prooued before: but let it be lawfull for euerie man to impose what titles or names they will, so that (as *Galen* sayth they do not swarue or stray from the naturall meaning of the things themselues: but leauing all the scrupulous and Scholerlike contentions, which some do vse in the intreatie of this subiect, as impertinent to our purpose, I will orderly set downe the branches of all the tumours or impostumes, (if so you will terme them) which happen besides nature: and first we will begin with inflammation.

Apostemata.

Pustulæ.

Exiture.

CHAP. II.

Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature.

De Differentiis Tvmorvm, Qvi Praeter Natvram Incidvnt.

The diuision of a tumour into his differences.

From whence the differences of tumours besides nature are taken of the later sort.

Substantiæ.

Materia.

There be many and sundry differences of tumors besides nature, which are commonly called by this generall name Apostumes: the differences whereof, of the later Chyrurgians are obserued, to proceede either from the substance of the sore, or from the matter thereof, or from the Accidents, or from the affected partes, or else from the efficient causes. The differences, which they desume from the substance, are supposed by *Auicene* and his sect to be two, either the greatnesse of the swelling, or the litleneſse thereof. Amongest the bigge tumours, they do reckon *Phlegmone* (which appeare commonly in flesthie places, which are fit to be distended) and *œdema*, *erysipelas*, and *scirrhus*, which all do grow vp to a great bigneſse and quantitie. Litle tumours are called of them litle eminences or appearings, or breakings out called pushes, which are commonly seene in the skin, and the vttermost parts of the body, as the Greeks leprosie, the scabbe, the ringworme, and such other like, of the which we will speake more at large hereafter. The matter of the aforesayd tumours are the foure humours, as well naturall, as not naturall (that is to say) fleume, melancholie, choler, and those humours which are altogether besides nature, somtime the soundnesse of certaine bodies, and sometime aycalow or pale humour; the handling of all which differences we will referre

Accidentia. vnto another place. The ſymptomates or accidents, which are commonly incident to theſe tumours are, griefe, heat, ſoftneſſe, hardneſſe and ſuch like: from the which they will deriue ſome differences: but thoſe which they take from the members and from the affected partes, are *ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the ſquince, the inflammation of the throat, *phyma*, *phygethlum*, and thoſe inflammations which we terme *glandulæ* and *bubones*. But the efficient cauſes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congeſtion and fluxe, and *criſis* (that is to ſay) iudgement thereof, which happeneth in diſeaſes: there be alſo certaine other cauſes both internall and externall, whereof we will diſpute more copiouſly & earneſtly in that which followeth. But yet truly all diuerſities and differences of theſe kindes of ſwellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning frō the nature and ſubſtance (which prouoketh the ſwelling) of that which floweth (as witneſſeth *Galen* in his book which he wrote of tumours hapning aboue nature.) Likewiſe in his 2. book that he wrote vnto *Glauco. cap. 13. meth. med.* in which places he declareth that the varietie of all ſwellings which are aboue nature, doth ariſe of the nature of that which floweth: for when (ſaith he) a flatuous matter hath more free acceſſe, then alſo the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *phlegmone*, whē as bloud aboundeth: as likewiſe *Eryſipelas*, when melancholie hath his courſe: and they be alſo more vexed with *ædema*, when fleume or reume deſcending frō the head doth raigne. Alſo they be grieued with the diſeaſe *Scirrhoſis*, when either a thicke or too cold a humor is ſetled in ſome part thereof. Therfore all tumors do chance (as *Galen* affirmeth) beſides nature, which proceede either of humors, or of flatuous and windie ſpirit, which is gathered ſometime vnder the skin, ſomtime vnder the thin filmes that couer the bones, ſomtime in the belly, ſometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the middeſt of theſe, and of the *peritonæum*. The Greeks call it *Emphyſema*: and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *apoſtema*. If ſuch ſwellings happen of humors, then they are either hot or cold, or mingled together. Hote tumors come of the beſt bloud (that is to ſay) which is perfectly ruddy, & of a meane ſoundneſſe, & moderat qualitie, & then the Greeks call it *phlegmone*, the Latines *inflāmatio*: or they proceed of yealow choler or of burning & thin bloud, or elſe of thoſe things which be hotter then bloud or choler. They terme this euill *Eryſipelas*, but theſe name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold ſwellings are prouoked either through thin fleume, & then the Greeks call it *ædema*, but our Phiſitions terme it *laxus tumor*: the interpreter of *Auicen vndimia*, or elſe it is cauſed through the humour of choler, or through thicke, cold and clammie fleume. They cal this *Scirrhon*, the Latins *durities*, the Arabiās, *ſephirus*. Alſo ſwellings ſometimes do chance by reaſon of a late taking away ſuperfluous bloud, as hereafter ſhalbe declared. Tumours are ſaid to be mingled when ſuch kind of humors tempred together, & if one maiſtreth the other, frō that which exceedeth in the mixture, is the name giuē to the ſwelling, as in blud ruling choler, we will call *phlegmone* the principall to be *Eryſipelatodē*, and alſo becauſe melancholy gouerning, *Eryſipelas* is ſaid to be *phlegmonades*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretatiō, both *Scirrhus phlegmonoſus* with *phlegmone ſcirrhoſa*: & *ædema phlegmonoſū* with *phlegmone ædematoſa*. And after this example you ſhal name the other tumors, although there chāceth cōmixtiō together of three or foure

Parsaffecta.

Cauſæ efficientes.

From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature do come & ariſe.

Emphyſema.

Calidi humores.

Tumores frigidi.

Tumores ſeroſi.

Tumores complicati.

One euill ſeemeth to haue affinitie with the other.

foure humors at once. Moreouer if the humours be of like force, & equally incorporat, ſo that the one cãnot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of thoſe humors which they ſtirre or raiſe vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reaſon of their ioyning together *phlegmone & eryſipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the kind & nature of *phlegmone & eryſipelas*. Theſe truly be the chiefe ſwellings and tumours which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humors (that is to ſay) *phlegmone, eryſipelas, œdema, ſchirrhus*: vnto the which innumerable other tumors exceeding the meaſure and bounds of nature, are reduced & comprehended vnder them, although they haue choſẽ to themſelues diuers names according to their ſundry cauſes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *phlegmone, phygethon*, which is called *parulus* (*Celſus* being the author) but of our men *phyma & tuberculum*, alſo it is named of the ſame *Celſus terminthon*, or *Oribaſius*, the kinds or *ſpecies* of *phyma*, but of *Ætius, phigethlũ*: alſo they be called *dothienes*, which *Celſus* doth call *furunculi*, felons. Likewiſe *gangrena* of ſome member, γάγγραινα (that is to ſay) mortification, but not abſolute, & alſo *ſphaſelus*, which is called of the Latins *ſyderatio*, and of *Auicen aſcachilos*. *Carbunculus* alſo is called of the Greekes *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the chapter *de pruna & igne perſico*. But vnto *eryſipelas* are referred *herpetes*, which in kind be two manner of wayes (that is to ſay) *miliares* and *excedentes*, byting and gnawing, which the Greekes doe call ἕρπητες ὁμόροι. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kindes *formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the likeneſſe of the name, hath mixed them in the ſame Chapter by great ouerſight, with thoſe *verrucæ* which the Greekes call *mirmecia*, the Latines *formicæ*: *Celſus* ſeemeth to haue comprehended thoſe *herpete* vnder the name of *ignis ſacer*: but the Chyrurgians of later time haue numbred them among the cholericke puſtules (as they terme them.) There commeth alſo of choler almoſt all thoſe diſeaſes called of the Greekes *phlyctænæ*, and therefore they belong vnto *eryſipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreate in his chap. *de veſicis & inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors cauſed of fleume (that is to ſay) vnto *œdemata*, are referred certen tumors cõprehẽded of the Greekes vnder the name of *apoſtema*, which be called of *Auicen nodi*, of *Haly abbas, ſelaa*, and *dubeleta Phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abſceſſus*: wherof there be diuerſe kinds according to the diuers matters cõtained in thẽ. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three ſuch kinds of *abſceſſus*, chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: thoſe be, *atheromata, ſtratomata, melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies cõteined in them, as we wil declare herafter more at large. There alſo is a kind of *apoſtema*, that is, of *abſceſſus*, wherin are other things cõteined, which do repreſẽt not only the properties of humours: but alſo of certen ſound bodies: but theſe (ſaith *Galen*) chance very ſeldome. And of theſe alſo we will ſpeake hereafter whẽ we ſhall intreate of abſceſſions. But now vnto the ſaid kinds of *abſceſſus*, there appertaine certaine names of tumors being deuiſed of the later ſort, & neuer as yet found out amongſt ancient writers, as *teſtudo*, which is a ſoft ſwelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *talpa*: the one ſeemeth to belong vnto *atheroma*, the other vnto *melicerides*. But vnto *ſtratomata* doth belong a certaine ſwelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will ſpeake

The chiefe tumors that are cauſed of flowing of humors.

What tumours do aſſotiate phlegmone.

Eryſipelaptoſi tumores.
ἕρπητες ὁμόροι.

Aedematoſi tumores.

Certaine new names of tumours giuen of the latter ſort of Phiſitions.

Accidentia. vnto another place. The ſymptomates or accidents, which are commonly incident to theſe tumours are, griefe, heat, ſoftneſſe, hardneſſe and ſuch like: from the which they will deriue ſome differences: but thoſe which they take from

Pars affecta. the members and from the affected partes, are *ophthalmia*, the inflammation of the eye, the ſquince, the inflammation of the throat, *phyma*, *phygethlum*, and

Cauſæ efficientes. thoſe inflammations which we terme *glandulæ* and *bubones*. But the efficient cauſes from the which certaine differences be borrowed, are congeſtion and fluxe, and *criſis* (that is to ſay) iudgement thereof, which happeneth in diſeaſes: there be alſo certaine other cauſes both internall and externall, whereof we will diſpute more copiouſly & earneſtly in that which followeth. But yet truly

From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature do come & ariſe. all diuerſities and differences of theſe kindes of ſwellings chancing aboue nature, haue their beginning frō the nature and ſubſtance (which prouoketh the ſwelling) of that which floweth (as witneſſeth *Galen* in his book which he wrote of tumours hapning aboue nature.) Likewiſe in his 2. book that he wrote vnto *Glauco. cap.* 13. *meth. med.* in which places he declareth that the varietie of all ſwellings which are aboue nature, doth ariſe of the nature of that which floweth: for when (ſaith he) a flatuous matter hath more free acceſſe, then alſo the tumors are made more flatuous: but they are more like vnto *phlegmone*, whē as bloud aboundeth: as likewiſe *Eryſipelas*, when melancholie hath his courſe: and they be alſo more vexed with *ædema*, when fleume or reume deſcending frō the head doth raigne. Alſo they be grieued with the diſeaſe *Scirrhoſis*, when either a thicke or too cold a humor is ſetled in ſome part thereof. Therfore all tumors do chance (as *Galen* affirmeth) beſides nature, which proceede either of humors, or of flatuous and windie ſpirit, which is gathered ſometime vnder the skin, ſomtime vnder the thin filmes that couer the bones, ſomtime in the belly, ſometime in the intrailes, oftentimes in the middeſt of theſe, and of the

Emphyſema. *peritonæum*. The Greeks call it *Emphyſema*: and *Auicen* termeth it a windie *apoſtema*. If ſuch ſwellings happen of humors, then they are either hot or cold, or mingled

Calidi humores. together. Hote tumors come of the beſt bloud (that is to ſay) which is perfectly ruddy, & of a meane foundneſſe, & moderat qualitie, & then the Greeks call it *phlegmone*, the Latines *inflāmatio*: or they proceed of yealow choler or of burning & thin bloud, or elſe of thoſe things which be hotter then bloud or choler.

Tumores frigidi. They terme this euill *Eryſipelas*, but theſe name it *Sacer ignis*. But cold ſwellings are prouoked either through thin fleume, & then the Greeks call it *ædema*, but our Phiſitions terme it *laxus tumor*: the interpreter of *Auicen vndimia*, or elſe it

Tumores ſerosi. is cauſed through the humour of choler, or through thicke, cold and clammie fleume. They cal this *Scirrhon*, the Latins *durities*, the Arabiās, *ſephirus*. Alſo ſwellings ſometimes do chance by reaſon of a late taking away ſuperfluous bloud, as hereafter ſhalbe declared. Tumours are ſaid to be mingled when ſuch kind of humors tempred together, & if one maiſtreth the other, frō that which exceedeth in the mixture, is the name giuē to the ſwelling, as in blud ruling choler, we will call *phlegmone* the principall to be *Eryſipelatodē*, and alſo becauſe melancholy gouerning, *Eryſipelas* is ſaid to be *phlegmonades*. Now of other mixtures there is the like interpretatiō, both *Scirrhus phlegmonoſus* with *phlegmone ſcirrhoſa*: & *ædema phlegmonoſū* with *phlegmone ædematoſa*. And after this example you ſhal name the other tumors, although there chāceth cōmixtiō together of three or

Tumores complicati. One euill ſeemeth to haue affinitie with the other.

foure

foure humors at once. Moreouer if the humours be of like force, & equally incorporat, ſo that the one cānot ouercome the other, then we will name the tumours by the coupling together of thoſe humors which they ſtirre or raiſe vp. As if bloud be equally mingled with choler, that euill may be called, by reaſon of their ioyning together *phlegmone* & *eryſipelas*, or (as *Galen* hath it) it may be termed a meane in the kind & nature of *phlegmone* & *eryſipelas*. Theſe truly be the chiefe ſwellings and tumours which are recited in *Galen* by the flowing of humors (that is to ſay) *phlegmone*, *eryſipelas*, *œdema*, *ſchirrhus*: vnto the which innumerable other tumors exceeding the meaſure and bounds of nature, are reduced & comprehended vnder them, although they haue choſē to themſelues diuers names according to their ſundry cauſes. Therefore there pertaineth vnto a kind of *phlegmone*, *phygethon*, which is called *paruus* (*Celſus* being the author) but of our men *phyma* & *tuberculum*, alſo it is named of the ſame *Celſus terminthon*, or *Oribaſius*, the kinds or *ſpecies* of *phyma*, but of *Ætius*, *phigethlū*: alſo they be called *dothienes*, which *Celſus* doth call *furunculi*, felons. Likewiſe *gangrena* of ſome member, νεκρώσις (that is to ſay) mortification, but not abſolute, & alſo *ſphaſelus*, which is called of the Latins *ſyderatio*, and of *Auicen aſcachilos*. *Carbunculus* alſo is called of the Greekes *Anthrax*, whereof *Auicen* writeth in the chapter *de pruna & igne perſico*. But vnto *eryſipelas* are referred *herpetes*, which in kind be two manner of wayes (that is to ſay) *miliares* and *excedentes*, byting and gnawing, which the Greekes doe call ἴσια ὀμφοι. He which expoundeth *Auicen* hath called both the kindes *formicæ*, but he being deceiued with the likeneſſe of the name, hath mixed them in the ſame Chapter by great ouerſight, with thoſe *verrucæ* which the Greekes call *mirmecie*, the Latines *formicæ*: *Celſus* ſeemeth to haue comprehended thoſe *herpete* vnder the name of *ignis ſacer*: but the Chyrurgians of later time haue numbred them among the cholericke puſtules (as they terme them.) There commeth alſo of choler almoſt all thoſe diſeaſes called of the Greekes *phlyctæne*, and therefore they belong vnto *eryſipelas*, whereof *Auicen* doth intreate in his chap. *de veſicis & inflammationibus*. Vnto the tumors cauſed of fleume (that is to ſay) vnto *œdemata*, are referred certen tumors cōprehēded of the Greekes vnder the name of *apoſtema*, which be called of *Auicen nodi*, of *Haly abbas*, *ſelaa*, and *dubeleta Phlegmatica*, of the Latines *abſceſſus*: wherof there be diuerſe kinds according to the diuers matters cōtained in thē. Moreouer in *Galen* there be three ſuch kinds of *abſceſſus*, chancing very often, whereof euery one hath borrowed his proper name of the Greeks: thoſe be, *atheromata*, *ſtratomata*, *melicerides*, which indeed be called after the likenes of bodies cōteined in them, as we wil declare heraſter more at large. There alſo is a kind of *apoſtema*, that is, of *abſceſſus*, wherin are other things cōteined, which do repreſēt not only the properties of humours: but alſo of certen ſound bodies: but theſe (ſaith *Galen*) chance very ſeldome. And of theſe alſo we will ſpeake hereafter whē we ſhall intreate of abſceſſions. But now vnto the ſaid kinds of *abſceſſus*, there appertaine certaine names of tumors being deuiſed of the later ſort, & neuer as yet found out amongſt ancient writers, as *teſtudo*, which is a ſoft ſwelling cleauing to the whole head of a man, and *talpa*: the one ſeemeth to belong vnto *atheroma*, the other vnto *melicerides*. But vnto *ſtratomata* doth belong a certaine ſwelling without paine, which they call *nata*, or *napta*, whereof we will ſpeake

The chiefe tumors that are cauſed of flowing of humors.

What tumours do aſſotiate phlegmone.

Eryſipelaptoſi tumores.

ἴσια ὀμφοι.

Aedematoſi tumores.

Certaine new names of tumours giuen of the latter ſort of Phiſitions.

Teſtudo. *Talpa.* *Ganglium.*

in his place. Hitherto alſo do pertaine the euils called of the Greekes *Ganglia*, of Auicene *glandulæ*, which do differ from the aforeſaid *noat*. There commeth alſo of Hewme that which the common ſort call *Scrofula*, and therefore they are reduced vnto *ædemata*. Theſe be called of the Greekes *Chærades*, of the Latines, *ſtrumæ*. Notwithſtanding Galene in a certaine place amongeſt the diſeaſes named *ſcirrhi*, doth take it for *duricies*. Alſo vnto *ædema* is referred in Galene that kinde of *Hydrops*, which is named of the Greekes, *leucophlegmatia*, and *hypoſarca*. But the ſwellings or tumours which pertaine vnto choler, and which be comprehended vnder the ſayd *Scirrhus*, are *Cancri*, which of the Greekes be called *carnici*, and *carcinomata*: Notwithſtanding Celſus maketh a difference betweene *cancer*, and *carc noma*, that he might ſay, that it did come and proceede by little and little of thoſe things which do chaunce outwardly, and that it is ingendred within (ſome member being corrupted.) The ſame Celſus diuided *cancer* into many partes or kindes (that is to ſay) into *eryſipelas*, *gangrena* & *vlcus nigrum*: of this kind alſo is *elephantus*, or *elephantia*, or *elephantiaſis*, called of the common ſort of Phiſitions *lepra*, and of ſome *ſancti Lazari morbus*. Therefore the name of *lepra* ſignifieth with Auicene and with the vnlearned company, a moſt grieuous and deadly diſeaſe, when yet with Gal. Paul. Ægineta, & with other Græcians it is counted but a light grief not much differing from that which we call *ſcabies*, which is called of the ſame writers *Pſora*. Among this hard ſwelling kinde of tumours, are accounted the diſeaſes called in the Latin tongue of the interpreter of Auicene, *verrucæ*, which be ſwellings like vnto little hillockes appearing in the skinne, whereof they haue this name, being called of the common ſort *porra*. To this kind alſo may be referred *myrmeciæ*, as if one ſhould call thẽ *formiculæ*, and *acrochordones*, which of our coũtreymen are termed *penſiles verrucæ*, and *clauus* alſo, which in forme is like to a hard round pillar called of the Greekes ἧλος, of Auicene they are called *almiſmar*, *Thymion*, or *thymon* repreſenting the knobby tops of the herbe thyme. Auicene ſeemeth alſo to haue giuen it this name *tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath it) *tarſecũ*. Alſo among the diuerſe kinds of *verrucæ*, there be euils called of Auicene *cornua*, ſo called, becauſe they being very lõg, are turned again croked like vnto hornes. In like caſe alſo there be *calli* which the Greekes call τυλοι, theſe are engẽdred by meanes of the skin being obdurated & hardned through much labour. Vnto choler alſo there ſeemeth to pertaine this euill, which the Grecians call *dracontion*, the Latines *dracunculus*, according to the liuely ſimilitude or likeneſſe of that name, Auicene calleth it *vena medeni*, Haly Abbas, *vena ſanioſa*. Whereof Paulus Ægineta intreateth *cap. vltimo. Lib.* 4. This diſeaſe is not very rife with vs. Beſides theſe tumours which we now haue rehearſed, there chaunce other alſo, affecting oftentimes the ſuperficiall parts of the body (that is to ſay) certaine ſmal appearings, which they cal *puſtulæ*, and *bothor*. Which although they differ both amõg thẽſelues, & alſo from thoſe tumours which we haue aboue recited, yet they are cauſed of the ſame humors, of the which alſo they are now called great tumours. Therfore they onely ſeeme to differ frõ thẽ in reſpect of their greatneſſe and ſmalneſſe. But that ſuch little tumors (which truely a Chirurgion ought not to be ignoraunt of) might appeare moſt manifeſt, and eaſie to be conceiued of euery man: I haue thought it expedient,

Porra. *Myrmecia.* *Acrochordones.* *Clauus.* ἧλος. *Thymion.* *Cornua.* *Calli.* *Dracunculi.* *Puſtula.*

and

and a thing worthie the labour, to ſet downe in this place the names of them, both in Greeke and Latine, and alſo their barbarous title, with a certaine rude deſcription thereof, as we haue alreadie done in the greater. Therfore that we may enter into the matter it ſelfe, there are of the kinde of puſtules or puſhes, *Lepra*, ſo called of the Greekes, and retaining the ſame title amongeſt the Latines, and *Pſora*, called of the ſame writers *ſcabies*, being truely diſeaſes verie neare of affinitie among them ſelues: for there is roughneſſe and ſharpneſſe of the skinne, with itching and pritching in the bodie, coming of the ſame humour (that is to ſay) of choler. Notwithſtanding they differ in this, becauſe *Lepra* doth conſume the skinne with manifeſt ſcales ſomewhat deepe, as it were in a circle: but *Pſora* doeth onely hurt the outward part with diuerſe formes, and doeth vnlooſe a certaine ſcurfe of the bodie. *Lepra.* *Pſora.*

Hitherto alſo doth pertaine that light infection of the skinne, called of the Greekes *Lychene*, of the Latines *impetigo*, in Engliſh the ring-worme, and commonly of ſome (as *Manardus* reporteth) they be called *volatica*. This chaunceth by reaſon of the mingled putrefaction of wylde bloud being thinne and ſharpe, with other that be thicke: and verie often and eaſily it doeth turne it ſelfe (Galene affirming the ſame) into the aforeſayd euils (that is to ſay) into *Lepra* and *ſcabies*, which they call *Pſora*. Yet there are ſome which thinke, that that which the Greekes call *Lepra*, is called of Celſus, *impetigo*. But truely ſeeing he doth write ſpecially of *impetigo*, appointing foure kindes thereof, *Lib. 5. ſuæ medicinæ*, it is euidently apparent, that he meant ſome other thing by this word *impetigo*, then *Lychene* amongeſt the Greekes, ſeeing that truely we neuer reade in anie Greeke Authour, that there were ſo many kindes of *Lychene* euer agreed off or acknowledged. Therefore if we will with Galene ſpeake properly, *Lepra* and *Lychene* or *Impetigo*, cannot be one and the ſame euill: otherwiſe the ſame ſhould be chaunged into it ſelfe. That I may therefore draw the whole matter into fewe words: when the skinne is lightly infected with an onely roughneſſe and itching, that is called in Greeke *Lychene*, but in Latine *Impetigo*. But when the griefe waxeth worſe, it chaungeth the name together with the forme. But if *Lychene* doth cauſe manifeſt ſcales, and doth pierce the skinne ſomewhat deepely, it is properly called *Lepra*. But if it be ſtretched out onely by the outward *ſuperficies*, and doeth cauſe brannie or ſcalie bodies, it is called *Pſora* of the Greekes, of vs it is called properly *ſcabies*. Although this word *ſcabies* doth extend verie farre commonly alſo amongſt the Phiſitions of late time, who do name all the euill of the skinne to be *ſcabies*. But they ſpeake verie improperly, for the pure and true *ſcabies*, ſo called of the Latines, is without all doubt that diſeaſe which is called of the Greekes *Pſora*, of Auicene alſo *Albara* and *morphea*, cleane contrarie to the opinion of ſome. For that which is ſayd of him and almoſt of all the Phiſitions of Affricke to be *Albara*, is named of the Greekes and of Celſus alſo *Leuce*. But amongeſt them it is called *Morphea*, among the Greekes *Alphon*, in which diſeaſe the whole fleſh is not affected, but onely the externall parts of the bodie, euen as though (as Galene ſayth) it were ſet about with certaine ſcales. But theſe *Alphi* (as it is in Galene) in their kinde are of two ſorts, that is to ſay, white, which come of fleume: and blacke, which proceede from a melancho- *Lychene.* *Foure kindes of Impetigo.* *Impetigo.* *Lepra.* *Pſora.* *Scabies.* *Albara.* *Leuce.* *Alphon is of two ſortes.*

like humour. But these things we now haue spoken of, being led by the consequence of things. For neither *Leuce*, nor *Alphi* themselues are accounted amongst the tumours beside s nature, but rather among the euils of the skinne. Which things although they hurt very litle, yet because they do dishonest and bring shame, they are wont to be for the most part a greater heauinesse and wearinesse (especially vnto women) then many other diseases which truly do hurt, but yet they be secret. Both these euils (that is to say) *leuce* & *alphos*, *Celsus* hath comprehended vnder the name of *vitiligo* (making three kinds thereof) although our students of phisick, turning Greeke into Latin, do conuert *Leuce* in all places into *Vitiligo*, which would more aptly agree, if it were put with his Epithete or addition, as to say *alba vitiligo*. *Vitiligo* therfore, if we will comprehend it vnder any certaine head or kind, is a filthy colour of the skin, proceeding of an euill habit of some part of the bodie, which could not well receiue any nourishment to it selfe. For this euill chanceth through the default of the nourishing faculti e, whereof some do constitute two kindes, the one which doth infect the skin onely with certaine markes, which do cleaue fast vnto it like vnto litle scales: the other which goeth in somewhat deeper, so that it toucheth the very flesh, and coloureth the haires: for in it there ariseth gray hayres, like vnto a certaine kind of mosynesse: this is gathered together of viscous and glutinatiue fleume, but both of them do defile & staine, either with their white, or especially with their black colour. The first *species*, which is aloft & superficiall, whether they be white or black, it is called of the Greeks *Alphos*, by the same name (as before) because it chaungeth the colour of the skin, for ἀλφίσει (whereof ἄλφος is deriued) signifieth amongest the auncient Greeks to chaunge. *Auicen* calleth it *morphea*. But the other kinde, which we haue declared to pierce somewhat deeper, is called of the Greeks, and of *Celsus* also *leuce*, and of the rest of the Latines *alba vitiligo*, of *Auicen albara*. *Haly Abbas* onely among the Arabians calleth *lepra*, a filthy disease which is hard to be cured, yet he doth not declare it to be pernitious and deadly, who hath not accounted it altogether as a light thing (as the Greekes affirme it) and litle differing from a scabbe: neither (as *Auicen* thought) pernicious and grieuous, but onely lothsome and filthie. Whereby we may coniecture, that litle credite is to be attributed to wordes or names, vnlesse the matter be throughly discouered. For one and the selfe same word by varietie of Authors, hath enforced to vphold e many diuerse and different significations, as in their Commentaries doeth euerie where appeare. But we haue spoken by the way of the euilles and defedations of the skinne, onely that the confusion of things might be eschued, which happeneth by wordes misunderstood. Therefore omitting these things, we will returne to our purpose, and with as much breuitie as we can, we will dispatch the discourse of the residue of swelling sores, amõg which, besides those which we haue rehearsed and touched alreadie, are reckoned by the Greeks *Ionthi*, *Epinyctides*, *Hydroa*, *Psiaraces*, *Exanthemata*, *Celsi papulæ*, and *Plinij mentagra*. *Ionthi* are litle swellings and those hard which arise in the outward skinne and *superficies* of the face (as *Paulus* and *Galen* thought) proceeding from a grosse humour, which are either resolued, or else ripened by a litle matter which springeth with it. The Latines call them *vari*: Ga

Vitiligo.

Small credit to be giuen to wordes or names.

Ionthi.

lene

lene maketh mention *Lib. 5. De medicam. secundum locos* of an affect which he calleth *Ionthosius affectus*, which he sayth is the foundation and beginning of *Elephantiasis*, vnder the which disease he seemeth to comprehend the third and fourth kinde of that which *Celsus* nameth *Impetigo*. *Epynictides*, (as *Celsus* supposeth) are Pestilent pushes either of pale colour, or of a blacke colour, or of a white hew, not exceeding the bignesse of a beane, arising either in the legges or in the feete. About them there is alwayes a verie vehement inflammation, and when they are opened, there is found a very thicke and clammie exulceration within, his colour is like vnto his humour: but the griefe greatly surpasseth the bignesse of the sore, which in quantitie surmounteth not a beane. They borrowed their title from the night, either as *Celsius* thought) because that in the night time they pricked and molested more grieuously, or because they most commonly arise in the night. *Plinie* termeth the blewish pushes, disquieting specially in the night time. The Arabians cal them *essere*, *sere*, or *saire*, which words explane the forenamed nature of the sore. Those which are called of the Greeks *hidroa*, the Latins *sudamina*, and *Plinie papulæ sudorum*. *Auicen planta noctis*, & *almansorus*, & *albasaphum*: whereby it commeth to passe that *Epinyctis* doeth much differ from *Auicen* his *planta noctis*, although the Greeke word *epinyctis* doth draw his originall from the night. But these *sudamina* (as *Galen* sayth) *Lib. 4. Apho. Aphor. 21.* are reckoned among those kinde of pushes or whelkes which sticking in the very *superficies* of the body, do pricke and shoote, not much vnlike to our common vlcers, and they come (as their name doth declare) by many bilious sweates, which byteth the skinne and maketh it to itch and pricke like vlcers. But this affect is common to boyes and young men, and to those which are cholericke, but in the time of heate: but it is so easie to be cured, that of it selfe without any aide it will heale, ripening with a white toppe. But *Auicen* thinketh that these desudations, by their description, agree rather with *Celsus* his *exanthemata*, the with *Galen* his *sudamina*. But he, who will obserue the nature of the wordes, will thinke that *Auicen* his desudations may well be the Greeks *hidroa* which the Latins call *sudamina*. But we must not follow the names so much among the Barbarian and Arabian writers, but the genuine & sincere descriptions of the things themselues. *Pssydraces* or *pssydracia*, are pushes, which abiding in the very vttermost part of the skin, are resembled to bladders excited by fire, which are called *phlyctænæ*. These rise specially in the head. *Pstzacion* is not truly read in *Celsus* for *Pssydracio*. Those pushes which grow in the skin first comming by thicke humours stuffed in the skinne, which are commonly called *morbili* and *variolæ* of *Galen*, because they swell and waxe bigge, as it were the bud of a flower they are called *exanthemata*, but of *Hippocrates*, because they doe breake out of themseluss, they are tearmed *ecthymata*. For ἀνθος whereof *exanthema* is deriued, signifieth a floure, and ἐκθυειν wherof *ecthyma* commeth, signifieth to burst out. *Plinie* calleth such pushes, whelkes, and the eruptions of fleume. But these are of two kindes: for some of them are steepe, and some go out into breadth: those which are steepe, do grow of a more thinne and hote humour, and do excite itch. But those which are broade, do flow, and proceed from a more colde and thicke humour, and doe not a whit procure itche. The first sort, of the common Phisitions are knowne by the name *morbili*: the second by this name *variolæ*.

Epinyctides.

Why they be called Epinyctides.

Sudamina.

Planta noctis.

Desudationes

Auicenæ.

Pssydraces.

Morbili.

Variolæ.

Exanthemata.

Ecthymata.

But the Frenchmen prepoſterouſly abuſing the names, haue called the lowe and broade kind *rubeole*, but the higher ſort *variole*. *Hyppocrates Lib. 3. Epid.* doth deuide theſe kindes of puſhes into litle and great *ecthymata*, in calling the ſteeper kind *magni herpete*, either becauſe (as *Galene* ſayeth) they occupie a great place, or elſe becauſe they happen with a vehement gnawing. For indeede theſe ſometimes appeare great in height onely, ſometimes both in height and breadth. *Cornelius Celſus Lib. 5. medicinæ ſuæ* in his Treatiſe of *impetigo* remembreth two kindes of whelkes: the one ſomewhat ſmall, which if it be daylie rubbed with faſting ſpittle, it waxeth whole, the other ſomewhat greater, wherein the skinne is made more ſharpe, and is exulcerate, and groweth verie vehemently, and looketh red, and is hardly cured. He ſayeth, that this is termed of the Greekes ἀγρία, in Latine *fera*. But in both theſe kindes he confeſſeth that there is leſſe impediment or corruption then in *impetigo*, ſo that he affirmeth, that euill whoſe cure is hard, except it be taken away, doth chaunge and turne into *impetigo*. The Frenchmen (if I may iudge thereof,) do call both theſe kindes, but eſpecially the firſt, *Dartra*. For that euill beginneth to be very round, and after the ſame manner it commeth (as it were) into a circle, and creepeth ſlowly. Which whelkes or puſhes doe agree in all things to be thoſe which are ſayed of *Celſus* to be of the firſt kinde. Some doe conſtantly affirme that thoſe whelkes ſo named of *Celſus* doe nothing differ from *Lychene* among the Grecians, or the *impetigo* among the Latines. And we haue read, that the onely Authour amongeſt the Latines hath turned *Lychene* into *Papulæ*. *Mentagra* a Latine word vſed of *Plinie*, wherein he ſeemed in the beginning *Lib. 26.* to haue altogether meant another thing from *impetigo*, and that it was farre aboue a worſe euill then that which the Greekes comprehend vnder the name of *Lychene*, although in his Phiſicke he hath interpreted ſometime *Lychene* among the Greekes to be *impetigo*, and the like diſeaſe called *Mentagra* he tearmeth alſo in the ſame place *Lychene*. Furthermore, the ſame *Plinie* reporteth, that this euill crept firſt into Italie in the raigne of *Tiberius Cæſar*, which griefe in all the time before was vnknowne to all Europe, much leſſe vnto Italie. It was of ſo great filthineſſe and corruption, that any death was to be preferred or wiſhed before it, and alſo of ſo great infection, that by the ſwift paſſage thereof onely by kiſſing one another it infected the people, but chiefly thoſe that were gouernours and rulers among them. This euill began almoſt at the chinne, for that it did chiefly affect and annoy, whereupon it tooke this name *mentagra*. This perhappes is that ſcabbe, which certaine of the Frenchmen call *mala dartra*. *Galen* alſo ſeemeth to acknowledge this diſeaſe: for in his firſt booke *de medicam. compoſ. ſecundum locos*, he remembreth a moſt vile kind of *impetigo* of the chinne, which (as he rehearſeth out of *Crito*,) prouoketh itching, it afflicteth alſo the patients, and bringeth them into no ſmall danger. For ſomtime (ſayth he) it runneth ouer the whole face, and goeth vp to the very eyes, and it cauſeth the greateſt deformitie of the body almoſt that can be, which deſcription of *impetigo*, doth conſent in all things with the *mentagra* of *Plinie*. But they do greatly erre, which do thinke that this moſt contagious *Lychene* called of *Plinie*, *mentagra* is that diſeaſe which at this day commonly ſome do call *Gallicum*

Papulæ Celſi.

Dartra gallicæ.

Mentagra.

Plinie Lib. 26.

Galen acknowledgeth mentagra.

licum malum, some *Neapolitanum*, other some not bearing any hate or iniurie to their countries, do call it *venereum*. For this infection was altogether vnknowne to the ancient Phisitions, and also of the former age, and first of all it crept into Neapolis in the yeare after the incarnation of Christ 1493. At which time Charles the eight, that most inuincible king of France did ouercome and winne the Alpes: going about also to inuade Italie: although not long before it had spread it selfe abroade through the countries of Spaine(as some report.) Wherefore hauing as it were the originall and beginning from thence, it beganne to be called *Hispanica lues*, the spanish pestilence, which plague being sent vpon the earth as it were by the iust reuengement of God (as we may thinke) for their filthie and abhominable whordome forbidden of God, hath corrupteed and ouerthrown with the contagion thereof a great part of humaine kind. For the same sickneſſe the magistrates and officers tasted of, the prisoners and captiues felt, the heads of their countries sustained, and the common people also were infected withall: so swift was the passage thereof frō one to another, and now also it straieth and wandreth through the countries of Spaine, France, Italie, and all Europe, to the great annoiance of the people. *Morbus Neapolitanus, & Venereus.*

There are also certaine pushes besides these, rehearsed euen out of *Auicen Lib.* 4. called *glandosæ*, which do seeme to differ nothing from the disease called *ganglion*, but in respect onely of the lesser or the greater. There is mention also made by the same *Auicen, Lib.* 3. of certaine whelkes, which he calleth in the same place, *bothores iunctur arum*, and in lib. 4. he calleth them *almatim*, which because he sheweth that they be blacke, and resembling greene corne, they must doubtleſſe be those which the Greekes call *terminthi*, which a litle before we accounted among the *species of phyma*. These *Celsus* seemeth to compare vnto *vari*, which be spots in the face, who also iudgeth them to be called of the Greekes *helcodes*, that is, *vlceroſæ* full of scabbes or sores. These white and milkie pushes, so called of *Rasis* and *Serapion*, and of *Auicen lewis bothor*, if their description be throughly considered, they will seeme to pertaine vnto the whelkes called of the Greekes *Ionthi*, which we in Latine haue named *vari*: although the selfe same remedies which *Auicen* hath set downe for them, be taught of *Dioscorides* for the disease *ephelide* (that is to say) for the roughneſſe and swartneſſe of the face, being caused by the heate of the Sunne. Hitherto haue we intreated of the differences of tumours aboue nature, which chiefly haue their residence outwardly aboue the bodie. Now let vs proceed to declare the causes of them. *Pustulæ glandoſæ.* *Terminthi.* *Pustulæ albæ.*

CHAP. III.

Of the causes of tumors aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie.

THERE are two causes of tumours chancing besides nature, agreed of among the latter sort of Phisitions and Chyrurgians: that is to say, generall and speciall causes. Generall causes are these, the flux, which the Greeks call ῥεῦμα, and the congestion or heaping together of humours. Againe by the same writers there are appointed to be sixe causes in number of this fluxe, *The causes of tumors besides nature.* *Fluxionis causa.*

that is to say .1. the strength of the repulsiue member .2. the weakenesse of the retentiue .3. the abundance and plentie of matter.4. the loseneſſe or fulnes of the pores of the body, through the which the fluxe happeneth .5. the straightnes of the repulsiue partes.6 .and the lower situation of the place retaining the fluxe. But these may be reduced vnto foure heads,as vnto the repulsiue member,the part that retaineth,the state of the humour that floweth,and the place or course through the which the flowing chanceth. But the fluxe is prouoked either by the meanes of the expulsiue member, or because of the fortitude of the expulsiue vertue,or by reason of the naturall knitting together that it hath with the retentiue member,or because of the streitnes of the particular pores, but some part receiueth the fluxe,because it is either painfull,or hot,or somewhat weake,or seldome,and base,or setled in the neather roome. Furthermore by meanes of the humour,there is a defluxion or flowing down into some part of the bodie, because it is in abundance superfluous,of nature troublesome,& of substance thin.But the space or place is a cause of the fluxe by reason of the largenes of the passages, as of the veines,arteries, and pores. But of congestion,which is the other generall cause of tumours which chance aboue nature, there are assigned two causes: (that is to say) the fault of the vertue nutritiue, & the imbecilitie of the vertue expulsiue. By which things we gather, that hot tumors happen for the most part through the defluxion of humours, but cold tumours are rather prouoked by their congestion. But after what manner a hot fluxe exciteth the tumour, *Galen* doeth declare plainely and wittily, in that litle booke which he intituled *inæqualis intemperies*, writing after this manner. A hote descending of a fluxe (sayeth he) assoone as it hath once placed it selfe in the muscle, first the greater arteries and veines are filled and stretched out,then by their meanes the lesser are distended, and so it proceedeth vntill it commeth to the least of all. In them, when a flux is strongly compact together,and can no longer be contained,part thereof issueth out through the extreame parts of them,and part is strained out through the holes of the tunicles, and is speedily sent forth.and then those void places are filled with the fluxe, which are betweene the best and chiefest bodies. Thus all things proceeding of the humour do waxe hote in euerie place, and also are still powred forth. And these are the sinewes, the bindings or ligaments, the small filmes, the very flesh,& besides these, the arteries and veines, which truly being the principall are diuersly & many wayes afflicted aboue the rest. For inwardly by reason of the fluxe they are both made hote, and also are stretched out, and torne and pulled assunder. And outwardly also, they are not onely made hot, but also are suppressed and made heauie. But the other partes of the bodie, some truly are onely made hote or kept downe, and some are affected with both. And this disease is called *phlegmone*. Hitherto *Galen*. Therefore in such kind of tumors chancing besides nature,which are caused of the flowing of humors, something alreadie (at the least way at the beginning, and before the fluxe did begin to striue)is made & ingendred, and something is yet to come, and resteth in the generation. That which doth happen as yet, is the matter which went before, which as yet abideth in the fluxe: but that which is ingendred already, is the ioyned matter, which hath alreadie flowed, and is compact

Pars propellens
Particula excipiens.
Humor fluens.

Spatium.

Causes of congestion.

How a hote defluxion prouoketh a tumour.

pact in the aggrieued place. Hereupon therefore there muſt be vſed a diligent care of the Phiſition in ſuch kinds of *phlegmone* which as yet remaine in generation (as in all other tumors alſo and diſeaſes which are yet in begetting, neither as yet haue obtained perfection) as *Galen Lib.* 13. *meth. med.* doth declare them to be knowne and perceiued, both by that which foreſeeth, & that which cureth: but theſe things pertain to another kind of ſtudy. But it is conuenient, that we ſet downe the ſpeciall cauſes of tumors which are aboue nature, to the which theſe three are commonly appointed: Primatiue cauſes, which we call both *prægreſſæ* and *euidentes*, and cauſes antecedent, which we name *antecedentes*: and ioyned cauſes, which we terme *coniunctæ* or *continentes*. Theſe be called of the Greeks, προηγούμεναι πρωτουργοὶ αἰτίαι. The primatiue cauſes are ſaid to be theſe, which while they do worke any diſeaſe, are ſeparated, as a fall, a ſtripe, a blow, a bruſe, a tumor, or a ſolution, or that euill which is committed by admitting a diſſolute diet. Antecedent cauſes are thoſe which of thēſelues are fit and materiall to beget any diſeaſe or affect, as are foure humours both naturall and not naturall. Naturall humours are thoſe which ſerue to nouriſh the bodie, and haue their being with the bloud, and are comprehended vnder the name of bloud. Which if they be ſent out from the veines and arteries, they do ſudenly congele & gather together, whether they flow without the bodie, or do remaine ſtill in the place wherein they be contained. But they call thoſe vnnaturall humors, which are foūd ſeuered frō the bloud with the which the body is noriſhed, and by reaſon of their corruption & naughtines by their owne nature are not nutritiue, the which do ſomtimes grow although they remaine in the aire which compaſſeth vs. And theſe as it were by a certen kind of prouidence of nature, being deſtined and ordained for ſome vſe, are demitted and ſent into certaine receptacles, either into the innermoſt parts of the bodie, and ſo engender vnkinde ſwellings called *abſceſſus*, or whelkes, ſcabbes, defedations and alterations of the skinne, and vnnaturall ſweats: or ſomtime by an inſenſible aire inwardly infuſed they doe excite ſweatings. Sometime alſo they putryfie within, and beget feauers. But ſuch like (ſay they) are improperly termed humors aſſuming to themſelues the names of naturall humors. For they hold this opinion, that onely thoſe iuyces which come from the liuer in the generation of bloud, and of nutrition and moiſture, are properly to be termed naturall humours. Such are ſincere and pure bloud, cholericke alſo, flegmaticke and melancholike, by the which foure kindes all the parts of the bodie are generally nouriſhed and maintained: ſome partes with a more pure, and (as I may ſay) a more bloudie humour: other with a humour more cholericke, other with a flegmaticke, and other with a melancholicke, as the nature of euerie part requireth. Therefore all the humours are contained in the veynes and arteries, the which may appeare by their varietie of colour and conſiſtencie (as *Galen* hath expreſſed in *libro de atra bile*.) Furthermore of thoſe foure tumours which are called naturall, foure eſpeciall tumours are engendred, which are commonly called *apoſtemata*. In the which the ſwelling is very bigge, and the matter doth offend rather in quantitie then in qualitie. They are called by their proper names, *Phlegmone*, *eriſypelas*, *œdema*, *ſcirrhus*. Of tumours not naturall (as it pleaſeth the latter Phyſitions)

There is a twofold declaration of all thoſe euils which are yet in begetting.

Speciall cauſes of tumours aboue nature.

Prægreſſæ.

Antecedents.

Which are ſaid to be naturall humors.

Which are ſaid to be vnnaturall humors.

What iuices are properly termed naturall humors.

Of the four naturall humors are ingendred foure lawfull and eſpeciall tumors.

do proceed *abſceſſus*, which they alſo call *exituræ* and *puſtulæ*, which they thinke cannot well be called apoſtemes. To the which they will adde and reduce two other kinds alſo, flatuous and waterie, which proceede of a fluible ſubſtance, and are commonly called *apoſtemata ventoſa & aquoſa*, that is, windie and wateriſh apoſtemes. There be therfore ſixe titles attributed vnto ſimple tumours, that is, *phlegmonoſi, eryſipelatoſi, ædematoſi, ſcirrhoſi, flatuoſi, & aquoſi*. But the compound tumours are not all called according to the concourſe of humors, (becauſe a great many may happen in one diſeaſe) but they are named by the predominant humour eſpecially, as we haue manifeſted heretofore, and will hereafter more plentifully in his owne place. But *coniunctæ cauſæ* or *continentes* of thoſe tumours beſides nature, which they commonly call *apoſtemata*, *puſtulæ*, and *exituræ*, are matters and ſeuerall ſubſtances, which are found to be aggregated and ſtuffed together in the affected part, and which do yet remaine after they haue excited the ſwelling: and while they increaſe, the tumours alſo do greatly augment, and when they decreaſe, the tumours are diminiſhed, and when their ſubſtaunce is vtterly ſpent and extinguiſhed, the tumours alſo of themſelues do fall away. And this cauſe called *coniuncta* or *continens cauſa*, of all the maladies and ſundrie diſpoſitions of the bodie, is after this manner by Auicene defined, that, when it is preſent, his diſeaſe alwayes accompanies him, and alſo when it is taken away, his diſeaſe alſo vaniſheth. But for all this, ſome Phiſitions of our age, and thoſe verie well learned, do contend that Galen would admit but two cauſes (that is to ſay) an externall, and an internall, or (as they ſay now) a primitiue and an antecedent. Of the which that (he ſaith) doth happen to the bodie outwardly, which altereth and changeth the ſame greatly, the which alwayes is ſeparated, vntill it hath eſtabliſhed his maladie, as heate, cold, the byting of a Scorpion. But the internall hath his being within the bodie, and doth preſently procreate the maladie, as are humours affected beſides nature. But they do conſtantly affirme, that he neuer ſo much as dreamed of that, which they terme *cauſa coniuncta*, when as according to his opinion, euerie affect which letteth and hindereth the actions and duties of the bodie, is a maladie it ſelfe, and not the cauſe of a maladie, and that *coniuncta cauſa*, which Auicene and his ſect haue inuented, according to their owne deſcription, which they aſſigne vnto it, is nothing but a certaine kind of affect letting the execution of thoſe dueties pertaining to the bodie: which is the verie definition of a maladie it ſelfe. And therefore they proue that it nothing differeth from a diſeaſe it ſelfe, which is wont to preiudice thoſe actions which agree with nature. But becauſe one and the ſelfe ſame opinion hath occupied all mens minds of this later age, concerning this triple kind of the cauſes of all ſuch diſeaſes, it ſhall not ſeeme altogether abſurd, if that I throughout all this treatiſe of mine, for plaineneſſe ſake, ſhall diuide and diſtinguiſh theſe three cauſes, into theſe three kinds and titles: I meane *primatiua*, *antecedens* and *coniuncta*. And thus much for the cauſes of tumors happening beſides nature. Now the courſe of our treatiſe doth exact, that we ſhould adde the ſignes and tokens of the ſame, if that before, we ſhall intreate ſomewhat of the nature and generation of the *abſceſſus*. *Abſceſſus* therefore, called of the Greeks *apoſtemata*, and of the common Phiſitions *exituræ*, are called of Galen (*libro de tumoribus præter*

What tumours do come of vnnaturall humours.

Coniunctæ cauſæ tumorum præter naturã.

What it is which is called continens cauſa

Some thinke that coniuncta cauſa nothing differeth from the maladie it ſelfe.

What abſceſſus Galen thinketh ebe.

præter naturam, & secundum ad Glauconem) disposition, in which the parts of the body do depart one from another, which before did touch and meete: for the matter which doth excite these tumors, being thrust out without the flesh of the muscle, doth bring the parts out of their places, and maketh them part and seuer. Therefore saith Galen, there must of necessitie be a place voyde in the middest, which borroweth either some flatuous, moyst, or tempered, or mixed substance from the partes, which in length of time is altered, into many and sundry substaunces. But there is a double kinde of these *abscessus*, one is, when as the inflammation being turned into matter, the matter it self is packed vp together in a corner or hole: the other is, when as no inflammation proceeding or going before a certaine humour either vaporous, or else a substance mixed of both parts, is in some part collected togither, which also happeneth two wayes: for either in the space lying betweene the seuered partes, such like substance is engendred, or else it runneth into the partes themselues, and that either in the beginning, or else that way by the which those diseases happen, called ἀποσκήμματα: which (saith Galen) then do chance, when as humours which before haue infested and grieued some one part, do thence remoue, and are inforced into another. And this substance which begetteth this *abscessus*, worketh himselfe a place betweene the skinne and the flesh. And in time it doth flea off all the skinne, either because it is verie vehement, or else because the plentie of matter doth putrifie, and so breake the skinne. But if those humours, with the which the space situated betweene the seuered partes is filled, do continue any time: they haue (as I said before) many alterations, and are chaunged into many substaunces, which do represent the properties not onely of humours, but euen of solide and hard bodies. For you shall finde sundry matters within these spaces, some like vnto stones, some to grauell and sand, some to wood, some to coales, some to durt, some to the foame of oyles, some to the dregs of wine: the varietie of substances some ignorant men haue thought to proceede from the force of incantation.

Two kindes of abscessus Gal. lib. 14. Thera. meth. & lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

ἀποσκήμματα.

What things may be found in abscessus.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing togither with the iudgements thereof.

TVMORS besides nature, being resyant in the extreamest partes of the body (the examining and speculation whereof doth appertaine to the Chyrurgion) being surueyed by the iudgement of the senses, and the affected parts being touched and felt with the hands, are easily descried and knowne. For in euery part of the body there appeareth a certaine kinde of encreasing exceeding the natural state, and distending aboue the measure of nature, that part which it affecteth, and it letteth the dueties or actions thereof, because either some humour, or some such substaunce proceeding of the humour, or which do sauour somewhat of the nature of the humour, or a vaporous spirite hath excyted it, there also must needs happen a tumor besides nature. But the tumors which they call true Apostemes, are discerned by their swelling, by their paine, and by their heat, being stretched out more or lesse. But they are

Generall signes of tumours aboue nature.

Particular signes.

not counted to be true Apoſtemes in deed, which we haue termed *puſtulæ* and *abſceſſus*, beſides that tumor: which malady the Grecians call *cacoethia*, & alſo in the greater or leſſer ſequeſtration, *determinata*. But the ſignes of euery particular difference, and of their matters whereof they be ingendred, ſhall be declared in their due place, in that which followeth. In the meane time we will handle the ſimple differences of thoſe tumours which are aboue nature, by the which the compound differences ſhall alſo be eaſily knowne. But we muſt not come vnto particular things, before we haue throughly diſcourſed of vniuerſall, for that order is wont to be obſerued in the inſtitutions of the Artes, neither truely vnworthily, or without cauſe. For thoſe vniuerſall and common things are more manifeſt vnto vs then particular, becauſe theſe particular things are more confuſed and more mixed one with another (as Ariſtotle teacheth lib. 1. *Phyſicorum* ca. 1.) Let no man therfore maruell, though euery where in this treatiſe of Chyrurgerie, we alwayes begin of more common things, and of thoſe which comprehẽd many things vnder them. But let vs returne to our purpoſe, and let vs proſecute the iudgements of tumours conſiſting aboue nature. In the which firſt of all we muſt note that all thoſe tumors which they call true Apoſtemes (if we will credit Galen and Auicene) are greatly complicate and folded togither, neither can any of them be eaſily iudged or found out to be pure and ſincere: for (as Galene ſayth) with *phlegmone* (that is) with an inflammation comming of bloud, there is ſomthing chiefly mingled which doth preſerue the nature either of *eryſipelas*, or *ædema*, or *ſcirrhus*, but *eryſipelas*, becauſe it repreſenteth a kind of *plegmone*, or *ædema*, or *ſcirrhus*: & ſo likewiſe cõſider & marke in all the reſt of the tumorus. But truly thoſe tumours beſides nature, which they terme not true Apoſtemes, are very often found ſincere and pure. But we will handle the cures of ſimple & ſincere tumours in thoſe things which follow, by the which the remedies alſo of compound and intricate tumors ſhall manifeſtly appeare. For I thinke it good to diſcourſe of all the kinds of tumours, and alſo to diſpoſe a right that which ſhall ſeeme ſuperfluous. For if a man ſhall know all the ſimple tumors, and learne after what manner they be compounded togither, he ſhall be furniſhed ſufficiently to exerciſe him ſelfe particularly in the reſt. But now let vs ſee other opinions and iudgements generally concerning the tumours themſelues, *Periodi*, *paroxiſmi*, and the *criſes* of tumors beſides nature do follow the analogia of the humors whereof they be conflated or engendred (Guido affirming the ſame) which analogia, we here declare to be a propertie, or proportion, a nature, or a likeneſſe of ſubſtaunce, which they call *forma ſpecifica & occulta*, a ſpeciall and hidden forme. Such kind of tumours, eſpecialy they which be wholeſome, and which are cauſed of the flowing of humours, are diſtinguiſhed by foure times (that is to ſay) by their beginning, by their increaſing, by their ſtate, and by their declination. The ſigne of their beginning is, when the member beginneth to be ſtretched out, and when the beginning of fluxe is preſent, but yet with ſmall griefe. We may alſo iudge augmentation to be preſent, when we ſee the tumour to be raiſed like a heape or pile, and the place affected to be filled, and the ſymptomates, which are wont to follow euery tumour, to be manifeſtly increaſed. But the token of their ſtate is, when all the aforeſaid things (that is to ſay) the

1 *Iudicia.*

Lib. de diffe. morborum.

Foure times of tumors beſides nature.

1 *Principium.*

2 *Augmentum.*

3 *Status.*

the tumour, and the Symptomates of the differences of euerie tumour, hath his owne proper force and vigour, neither can they any longer admit any increasing, but the matter causing the tumour doth degenerate and change it selfe into another kind of substance. But their declination is then knowne to be present, when the pyle of the tumour and the proper symptomates thereof are decreased and diminished, or when the matter which prouoketh the tumour beginneth to be transformed into another substance. Therefore such kind of times do receiue their differences from three kindes especially (that is to say) from the essence of the tumour it selfe (that is) from the greatnesse or smalnes, from the disposition of the matter, and from the accidents which do verie much alter the declaration of the cure. But these foure times, sometime do seeme to happen altogether, because of the short hardnes of euery one of them, which almost cannot be perceiued, (as it chanceth in the venimous inflammations,) yet not mortall or deadly, which straightway do flourish and increase. Furthermore these kind of tumours, which do chiefly happen through the influxion of humors, except they be hindred by repressing the matter that floweth, or except they lurke secretly within, either of their owne accord, or without any manifest cause (the fluxe hauing recourse thither) it is necessarie that they should be comprehended vnder one of these foure, either vnder insensible exhalation or resolution, or vnder suppuration, or putrefaction, or induration and hardening. But of all these wayes the best and the most to be desired is that which is made by an insensible dissolution, and next to that, that which commeth by suppuration or mattering. But that which is caused by induration and hardening, is said to be euill, and that which happeneth by the corruption of the affected part, is to be thought the worst of all, the which *Galen* doth insinuat *in libello de inæquali intemperie*, writing on this manner. Therfore of the two, we must of necessitie follow the one, either that the bodie be putrified & corrupted, because fluxion is predominant, or else we must grant, (that this putrifaction being resisted and ouercome) the muscle must return to his naturall habite and constitution. Let vs therfore imagine that all fluxion is withstood and impeached, then you haue two meanes to cure it, either by digesting those humors which were in the affected part, or by dissoluing or losening them: of these the dissolution is best. But in the concoction of the humors, these two things are specially required: viz. the perfect generation of the matter, and also his abscession into some space by it self. And a litle beneath he addeth also these words. But if that fluxion do make the partes as it were subiect to it, then they do fall to so great an intemperature, that their ordinary action perisheth, and in processe of time they are corrupted & putrified. Thus far *Galen*. The tokens of dissolution and loosning of the humours are these: the softnesse of the sore, and the litle throbbing and beating thereof. But the signes of predominant fluxion, & of the putrifaction of the part it selfe, are the black and blew colour, to which also somtime happeneth an odious stinch. But the tokens of a stony hardnes of the tumor are, the imminution of the tumor, and also the extreame hardnes therof. The notes & signes also of the egestion and lurking of the tumor, are the sodaine diminution thereof, which chanceth somtime by too much refrigeration & coldnes, sometime by reason of a secret

4 *Declinatio.*

The times of tumors do take their difference frō three things chiefly.

Tumors aboue nature are contained vnder foure modes.

Gal. lib. de inæquali intemperie.

Signes of dissolution.

Signes of putrifaction.

Signes of induration.

venim, which lurketh in the place. And this ſame ſudden and often imminution of the tumor ſucceedeth commonly ſome feuer, and alſo other euill ſumptomates. And thus farre of the ſignes and tokens of theſe tumours which our common Phiſitions haue comprehended vnder this name *Apoſtema*. The tokens alſo of thoſe tumors which we call *puſtulæ*, ſhall not be forgotten, when we ſhall haue occaſion to handle them. But the ſignes and tokens of the abſceſſes, commonly called *exituræ*, either thoſe which doe foreſhew their comming, or elſe thoſe which do manifeſt their preſence alreadie, are theſe. When thou ſeeſt (ſaieth *Auicen*) pulſation and beating, or hardneſſe to haue continued a great time, and alſo that the griefe together with much heate doth augment, then you may imagine that the next euent that followeth is that the Apoſteme will be turned into matter and ſuppuration, and ſo conſequently to be an Abſceſſion. But when thou findeſt that the place is ſoft, and that the griefe is ſomewhat aſſwaged, and the heate mitigated, and that one place of the tumour is ſupereminent aboue the reſt, and againe if by thruſting it with your finger, you ſhall perceiue a wateriſh inundation to ſubſiſt, and againe that the colour of his top ſhall waxe white, then you may well thinke that the tumour is mattered, and alſo that it is turned into abſceſſion. And therefore it was verie well iudged of *Hyppocrates*, that feuers did oftner happen, when that the matter was in ripening, then when it was already come to his maturitie. Moreouer the markes and tokens as well of the preſent Abſceſſion, as alſo of the Abſceſſion to come are comprehended in theſe common verſes:

Signes of the regreſſion and lurking of a tumour.

Signes of Abſceſſion to come

Signes of Abſceſſion alreadie preſent.

Apho. 47 lib. 2.

Durities longa, pulſus, dolor, & calor auctí,
Signant pus fieri: ſed factum, dicta remiſſa,
Sub digitis vndans, albeſcens pars & acuta.

Which may be thus Engliſhed.

By hardneſſe long, by pulſe and griefe, and eke by heat encreaſd,
We know that matter doth approch: but made we iudge indeed,
If that it yeelds to finger weight, and whiteneſſe doth appeare,
--and painfull be alſo.

But you muſt be very attentiue and vigilant in diſcerning and iudging of the matter it ſelfe. For the manifeſt knowledge of the matter and ſuppuration is ſometime withholden from the Phiſition by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the skin in the which it is included, (as it is proued by this Aphoriſme of *Hyppocrates*.) Whoſoeuer is ignorant of the ſuppuration which is in the bodie, his ignorance proceedeth of the thickneſſe of the matter, or of the place wherein it is comprehended. And thus much for the ſignes of Abſceſſions. Now of the iudgements of them, theſe things are deliuered vnto vs of *Auicene* and his ſect. Abſceſſions which are planted neare vnto any ſtrong member or vnto anie iuncture or ioynt, and in thoſe places where there are moſt veynes and ſinewes, and againe in a weake part, hauing gathered his debilitie by the defect of naturall heat, being indurate alſo and couered with a thicke skinne, conteining alſo thicke matter, and ſo the more ſlow in motion, the outward place being plaine alſo, and euen, not aſcending like a litle hillocke, I ſay, ſuch a like ſore is greatly ſuſpected, and very hardly and ſlowly ripened: and ſuch a one as is euerie way by deſcription oppoſite and contrarie to this, is of good and laudable

Apho. 41 lib. 6.

Iudicia abſceſſuum.

laudable habite, for both ſoone and eaſily it mattereth, and oftentimes alſo (no outward medicine aiding or aſſiſting) of it ſelfe it gapeth and openeth. If therefore the abſceſſion do grow vp into a ſharpneſſe, and the ſubſtance of the matter be thinne, and the skinne not thicke or hard, of his owne nature and power it will expell and thruſt foorth the conceiued humour without any forreine aide, vnleſſe a man by making inciſion will anteuert and preuent his voluntarie opening. Such like abſceſſions are digeſted ſometime by breathing or wind (no ſolution being made ſubiect within the skinne,) but that happeneth when the matter is ſmall in quantitie, good and thinne, and not ſticking very deepe. But if there be any emiſſarie, or way made into the tumour either by nature or by Art, the humour conceiued within doth breake foorth oftener then digeſt. But that opening or apertion which is made by nature, is a great deale ſafer then that which is made by the hand: but if it be ſo, that it muſt be mollified by Art, you ſhall ſafelyer do it by a ſharpe penknife, or other cleare and bright inſtrument of yron, then by that medicine which they call *ruptorium medicamentum*. And therefore (as before I ſayed) euerie apertion, which is made and enforced by Art, is worſe then that which nature affoordeth of it ſelfe, becauſe ſuch like manuell openings to make the matter ranke, may perhaps turne into a *Fiſtula*. But when neceſſitie vrgeth, & when we cannot vſe a better remedie, we muſt boldly attempt that. And by this meanes you ſhall eſchue thoſe diſcommodities, which before I named, if (when the matter ſo requireth) you do ſeaſonably make apertion, and by that meanes haſten the ripening of the other baggage which lurketh in the tumour. *Hyppocrates* in his laſt Oracle of his firſt booke of prædictions hath expreſſed the very notes and markes of the worſt matter, and of the beſt, ſpeaking after this manner. That matter is eſteemed beſt, which is of colour white, and euerie way like it ſelfe, and ſoft, and gentle to the toucher, and as litle vnpleaſant to the noſe as may be. And that which is euerie way contrarie to this, is the worſt of all. But the tokens and ſignes of all the other humors and ſolide ſubſtances alſo which are included in theſe abſceſſions, ſhall be manifeſted and ſhewed in their particular Chapters, as they ſhall by conſequence and order enſue.

What abſceſſions may eaſily be digeſted.

What abſceſſions may ſooneſt be ended through reſolution.

Abſceſſions are ſafelier opened with a penknife then with ruptorium medicamentum.

The notes of the beſt and worſt matter, out of Hyppoc.

CHAP. V.

Of the generall method of curing of all tumours beſides nature, but of thoſe eſpecially which proceed from the influxion of humours, as Apoſtemes, and Abſceſſions commonly colled Exitura.

OF all Tumors aboue nature, as well thoſe which are alreadie ingendred, as thoſe which are not yet in generation, there is one common & principall order of curing (as it is in *Galen lib.* 13. and 14. *Method. medic.*) namely that that which is aboue nature reſident in any member, and raiſeth the ſame into a tumour, ſhould altogether be emptied out. But thoſe which are yet in begetting, in them there is a certaine obſtruction of the humour that floweth to the

The common order of curing of tumors.

The common method of curing of tumors

doth change according to the difference of the tumor, and the member affected.

aggrieued place, before the euacuation. In them therefore is required a diligent and ſingular care of the Phiſition, to declare the cure of them. But theſe common manifeſtations, according to the difference of the tumor it ſelfe, and the nature of the affected member, do verie much differ and alter. For truly in all tumors alreadie ingendred, and in euerie part of the bodie, the euacuation of that which annoyeth, and infeſteth, is in no caſe to be vſed and miniſtred, as *Galen* teacheth *libro 2. ad Glauconem*, and in the places aboue recited, which alſo ſhall manifeſtly appeare in that which followeth. But we muſt not cure thoſe tumors with ſuch remedies, which are yet but beginning and occupying euerie member, or emptie out that which is alreadie ingendred in them, but we are enforced (if we intend to follow the right order in curing) to vſe ſometime one remedie, ſometime another, which is of force to ſtop the fluxe, and auoid out that which is ingendred, ſo farre forth as the kinde of the tumor, aud the nature of the affected member doth require. *Galen* therefore chiefly draweth the demonſtrations of the cure of tumors aboue nature from theſe two things. viz. from the diſpoſition it ſelfe or eſſence of the euill, and from the nature of the affected member. Moreouer the diſpoſition of the euill (which we haue now in hand, or the eſſence thereof doth comprehend three things in it, according to the iudgement and conſent of the later ſort (that is) the quantitie, the qualitie, and the matter or ſubſtance which prouoketh the tumor. By meanes whereof that chiefe and common declaration is changed, and from them is taken alſo the particular order of curing. For a great tumor is cured one way, and a ſmall tumor another way. For the difference of them is knowne by their greatneſſe and ſmalneſſe (as ſome ſuppoſe.) And one way is a mightie *phlegmone*, and another way a litle *herpes* healed. Otherwiſe alſo is that tumor remedied, which is cauſed by fluxe, and is yet in begetting, then that which is procreated through congeſtion, or is alreadie ingendred & congeled. Alſo a hot tumor (as *Eryſipelas* ſaith) is otherwiſe cured then a cold, as is *œdema* and *ſcirrhus*. The quantitie therefore which in a tumour aboue nature varieth the cure, is either great or ſmall. The qualitie is the fluxe, or (as ſome terme it) the deriuation and congeſtion. The matter therof is the humor, be it either hote or cold. But in the nature of affected members foure things chiefly are to be conſidered. viz. their temperature, their forme or faſhion, their ſituation or place, and their power and ſtrength. To the which alſo may be added a fifth thing, which is the facilitie (as I may terme it) and difficultie of the ſenſes. Except you will with *Galen* comprehend and containe it vnder the laſt thing, which is the vertue and ſtrength of the tumor. Theſe things therefore alſo doe much alter that generall order of curing, which is commonly obſerued throughout all kind of tumors aboue nature. It is therefore requiſite, that in curing thoſe tumors which chance beſides nature, we remember all thoſe declarations which are taken from them. For *Phlegmon*, or any other tumor which hath his abode in the fleſhie parts of the bodie, is otherwiſe cured then thoſe which are ſituated in the ſinowy places: otherwiſe in the eye, then in the knee or necke: and otherwiſe are the kernels in the throat cured, then thoſe which are reſident in other parts of the body. But to be ſhort, the tẽperature, the faſhion, the ſituation & the ſtrength of the member

The order of curing of tumors is chiefly taken from two things.

The eſſence of a tumor doth containe three things in it.

Foure things to be conſidered chiefly in the nature of affected members.

ber that is affected, and be set with the tumor, do change all those operations, which we shall attempt and proove in their cure: retayning still that generall intention, which *Galen* hath taught to be alwaies taken from the disease. Therfore first we haue here decreed to set downe a common and generall method of curing of tumours aboue nature, especially of those which are caused through the influxion of humors, taking their manifestation from the affect or euill it selfe, nothing respecting the affected part. Afterward we will teach the vniuersall cure of them, but chiefly of inflammations, whenas they shall degenerate & change into absceſſions. Then moreouer we will declare the particular order of curing all differences, especially of those which be simple, by whose proportion or Analogie, the cure of compound tumours shall easily be learned. And in the meane time, as the place shall require, we will rehearse out of *Galen* certaine things concerning the order of curing, which haue their assumption from the parts which are affected, & as it were besieged with a tumor: which things being rightly weighed & considered, it shalbe easie for any reasonable Phisition or Chirurgian, by our certaine method and order, to cure all kind of tumors which are incident to any part of the bodie. We therefore imitating *Galen*, will draw the beginning of the cure of tumors which are said to be aboue nature from the flowing of ingendred humors, & from the inuention of the cause of the verie euill, that so both the causes which excite the same, may be preuented, and that which is alreadie in it may be taken away. Therefore by the example & analogie of one difference of tumors, which are caused through defluxion (for here we mind to intreat onely of them) we will vnderstand also other differences, which do grow through flowing of humors. And here we will set downe a briefe and compendious curing of one kind of *phlegmone*, which chanceth verie often, and procureth feuers and other verie dangerous euils and symptomates. But in this place vnder the name of *phlegmone*, our intent is not to comprehend euery hot & flaming disposition, which the Greekes call *phlogosis*, but that onely which proceedeth by the meanes of a bloudie fluxe, chiefly incident to fleshie and fat bodies, wherein is vehement paine & redneſſe appearing in the outward parts, and as it were a burning heat, a stretching out, and a striuing or thrusting, and when the euill is increased, there is sence of the pulses beating. For this inflammation with *Galen* & other Greeke writers, as *Paulus*, *Ætius*, and *Oribasius*, which do follow him as their best guide, we properly call *phlegmone*. That we may therfore come to the matter it selfe, these are the very words of *Galen*. The common ingendring of euerie *phlegmone* commeth by the influxion of bloud, and that more abundantly then was wont to happen to that member: for bloud doth flow very abundantly (sometime one or other member sending it forth) and that part doth entertaine and receiue it, which beginneth to be affected with *phlegmone*: but some time that member which is afflicted doth draw it vnto it selfe. But the partes which sendeth it forth do driue out the iuice, being either superfluous by reason of the plentie thereof, or grieuous becaus of the quality, or else becaus of both. But they which are attractiue, do draw or pul with a sickly heat or griefe. But to these also are adioyned certaine helping causes, viz. the weakeneſſe and baseneſſe of the member, the fulnes of the conduits & passages through which

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The order of handling that which followeth.

The finding out of the cause is the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature.

Phlegmone quid.

Gal. lib. 13. meth. med.

The common ingendring of euery phlegmone.

The helping causes of flux.

the flux passeth, the straitnesse also and narorwnesse of the pores and expulsiue partes, and the inferiour place, as we haue alreadie declared. Therefore of all these, there are three intentions of curing those tumours which haue their beginning of flowing, collected and gathered of the latter sorte of Chirurgians. 1. The first is to turne away the fluxe, and preuent it altogither. 2. The second is, to mitigate the griefe, and altogether to remoue that cause, for the which the member intertaineth or also draweth the flux vnto it. 3. The third is to emptie out all that humor that hath flowed to the aggrieued place. But how the first intention should be finished, Galen hath fitly taught *li. 3. meth. med.* where he declareth vnto vs all the wayes to auert & turne away the flux, & the meanes to stop and inhibite *phlegmone*, which as yet remaineth in generation, writing after this manner: when humours are equally augmented amongest themselues (which the Greekes call *plethora*) yea also when all the body it voide of excrements and doth containe a mediocritie of iuicie humours, (paine and the heate of that member also wherein *phlegmone* raigneth raising the flux) through the emission of bloud we helpe and remedie *phlemone* which now beginneth to rule. *Plethora* also is cured both with often bathing and with exercise, and also with much friction and rubbing. Furthermore it is cured by medicines that will digest, so that a feuer be not present, and besides all these it is helped through hunger, and a good diet, although the sicke be feuerous. But when the bodie is stuffed either with melancholie, or choler, or flewme, or with other clammie and viscous humours (which state of the bodie the Greekes call *cacochimia*) the euacuation therof must be laboured by a purgation, which is a fit remedie for euerie humor that raigneth. But of them we will speake more at large in their particular Chapters. Now *Antispasis* (that is) a reuulsion the contrarie way, is a common remedie against all these kinde of tumours, while the flux doth yet strongly preuaile, as in the beginning & increasing of the euill: but in the end of the state, & in the declinatiō thereof, while the flux now remaineth & sticketh in the member, and the whole body is sufficiently emptied, the euacuatiō must be attēpted & fetched either frō the affected part, or frō that which is next adioyned thereunto. The second intention containeth remedies to prouoke sleepe. vidz. which do mitigate paine, & also bind & preuent the flux. Moreouer it teacheth remedies, which are able to loosen & dissol : the naturall pores, by the which the affected member is wont to be throughly purged. But the matter of al these shalbe abundātly described hereafter. But we will handle the third intētion, which is perfited with such things as do euacuate the matter that exciteth the tumour. from the affected place. And that matter is euacuated not onely by medicines which do euaporate & dissolue, but also by such as do repel & represse such as the Greekes call ἀποκριτικα. And therfore, in the beginning of these phlegmonous tumours, & other whatsoeuer do deriue their beginning from the influxion of humors, we may rather vse repressing medicines, then those which do euaporate: except in certain cases, of the which (saith Guido) Galen seemed to haue appointed foure. 1. The first is, whē that such tumors be in cleane & pure members. 2. The second is, when the subiect thereof is venimous. 3. The third is when the matter is thicke, & not pliable to repulsion. The fourth, when it is very

Three orders are set downe for the cure of those tumours which are caused through the influction of humours.

Primus scopus.

Plethora quid.

Cacochymia.

Antispasis.

Secundus scopus.

Tertius scopus.

Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies.

very vehemently packed together. *Auicen* excepteth only two cauſes, viz. when it happeneth in any clean or pure part, or in any other place, out of the which it is to be feared that the matter will flow to ſome principall part of the bodie. Some other appoint onely one cauſe, other ſix, other ten, other ninteene, other twentie three. But before we do eſtabliſh any thing of this ſo doubtfull a cauſe, we muſt know that there be two kindes of repulſiues, both amongeſt the late Phiſitions and alſo the Arabians (that is to ſay) common & proper. Common repulſiues are ſuch as do inhibite all fluxe keeping vnder and repreſſing the ſame, and that is done either by cooling it, or by thickning it, or elſe by ſtuffing it (that is) by reaſon of the thickneſſe of his ſubſtance, by ſhutting & occluding the pores and wayes whereby it ſhall flow out, or elſe by confirming the parts affected. Theſe things following do repreſſe fluxe by refrigeration & cold, ſingreen, letuce, *pſillium*, *cotyledon* (that is to ſay) *vmbilicus Veneris*, *lenticula paluſtris*, *caphura*. And theſe alſo do ſtuffe and ſtop the paſſages *farina* called *volatilis*, the white of an eg, *amylum*, *gluten*, & the kinds of gums. To conclude, all ſuch things as do refrigerate with eaſe and without biting. But thoſe things which do confirme & roborate (I meane ſuch as do reſtore the naturall temperature to the part affected) as oile of roſes, *oleum omphacinum*, oile of mirtles, oile of cammomill, *abſcynthium*, horehound, *nux cupreſſi*, and ſuch like things, which being applied do ſtrengthen the affected part, and ſo do free it and defend it from all imminent flux. But proper repulſiues are ſuch as when the humours do ſlide into ſome other part, do meete with the ſame, and do enforce them to retire againe. And theſe are to be vſed then when the member is growne thicke, as attractiue medicines are commonly applied to thin tumors. Of theſe manie are of a cold qualitie, and many of a hot, but both ſorts, (that is) both hot and cold are in operation aſtringent, & binding. The medicines repreſſing, which of nature are cold, are theſe, vine leaues, plantaine, nightſhade, *dipſacos*, viz. *virga paſtoris*, or *burſa paſtoris*, *Glaucium*, *balauſtium*, *omphacium*, *ſumach*, *terra cinolia*, commonly ſo called, and *terra ſigillata*, and others of that kind. Thoſe be the ſimples out of the which many compounds are made, as *oxycratum*, the ointment of bole, the ointment of *Galen*, and ſuch like. But the hot repulſiues are alume, cypreſſe, nuttes called *galbulæ*, *iuuens rotundus* or *odoratus*, called of the Græcians χίου αὐθος, called alſo *blatta*, *bizantia*, *lupinorum farina*, and certaine auſtere and ſharpe wines, and many other ſuch like things. But we will ſet downe the whole order of applying of repelling medicines in the beginning of fluxions, preſcribed by *Guido* in two ſeuerall prologues. In the beginning of all tumours, which proceed from the influxe of humours, but ſpecially of ſuch humors as are *phlegmonous*, it wilbe auailable to vſe repulſiues as they are called, theſe tenne cauſes onely excepted, that is to ſay, when the tumor is in a fat member, or when it proceedeth of a venimous matter, or a ſubſtance which is verie thicke, and ſo vnfit to be repelled: or elſe when the humour is vehemently packed in the affected part, and deeply alſo, if the tumour be inclined to ſuppuration, or deſcending from a primatiue cauſe, if it be in a plethoricke or full bodie and verie weake, if it be ſeated next vnto a principall member: to conclude, if it happeneth with vehement griefe, for in theſe caſes, we may better vſe medicines which will mitigate the tumor and the paine

Repellentia communia.

Repellentia propriè dicta.

Frigida repri-mentia.

Callida repel-lentia.

The firſt pro-logue of Guido in repreſſiue things.

Gal. 2. ad Glauconem.

rather then ſuch as ſhall repell and reſiſt the humours. The ſecond Prologue is after this manner. In the beginning of all tumors, but chiefly of thoſe which are *phlegmonous*, common repulſiues are profitable: (three caſes onely excepted,) that is, if the tumor happen in thoſe partes which are called *glandulosæ*, if they be enclined to ſuppuration, or if they proceed of a venimous matter. And in all theſe caſes, but eſpecially then, when the humour doth ſtand, and when the fluxion conſiſteth, and is almoſt made a tumour, it is behouefull to diſſolue and ſcatter the matter, applying to the ſwolne place, *diaphoretica*, not biting or ſharpe but milde and gentle, being moderately hote and moiſt, but this muſt be done principally in the three laſt remembred caſes, in the which we muſt endeuour to attract and draw the matter which is diſpearſed to the head, where the tumour moſt appeareth: and we muſt increaſe the tumour as much as we can, and ſo inhibite the courſe and fluxion of the mixed humours. Which truely we may ſometime do, by vſing attractiue emplaiſters, and oftentimes by faſtening cupping glaſſes to the aggriued place, (as *Auicen* teacheth.) Let this therefore be a generall rule or canon of Arte. In the beginning of all tumours which proceed of the influxion of humors, (thoſe three excepted which were named a litle before) onely pure repreſſiues are to be vſed. But in their increaſing we muſt mingle with theſe repulſiues, ſome of thoſe things which do diſſolue and diſcuſſe. But in the ſtate of tumors, yea and ſomwhat before the ſtate, we muſt commixe repreſſiue medicines equally with diſcuſſiue: and when there is declination preſent, or the end of the ſtate, we may lawfully vſe onely reſoluing and releaſing remedies: to conclude, ſo long as the humour doth yet abound, we muſt labour to repell it, and driue it away: but if the fluxe doeth ſtill remaine, we muſt ſeeke to digeſt it. But if it dependeth vppon both, (that is to ſay) that partly ſomething hath alreadie flowed, and cleaueth faſt to the place, and partly ſomething may yet abound and flow: then it ſhall be lawfull to vſe commixed remedies, (that is) partly thoſe which can reſolue and vnbind, and partly thoſe which are able to bring backe and repell. For contrarie diſeaſes being gathered into one place together, we muſt vſe alſo compound cures, as *Galen* ſaith 13. *Therap.* Furthermore, all theſe things truly are to be vnderſtood, as thus, if a tumor aboue nature is to be diſpatched and cured by reſoluing medicines, or (that I may ſpeake generallie) by the way of reſolution. But their cures, whereby we will finiſh all thoſe intentions whereof we intreated before, according to their diuerſe matter that exciteth the tumour, ſhall be deſcribed and declared in their particular Chapters, as by conſequence and order they ſhall follow.

The ſecond Prologue.

Si tumor iam factus eſt.

Emplaſtrum. Cucurbitula. Artis canon generalis.

CHAP. VI.

Of the abſceſſions generally.

Of the cure of tumors which are turned into abſceſſions, which they call Extura.

DE CVRATIONE ABSCESSVVM IN VNIVERSVM.

BVT if *Phlegmone*, or any other tumour doth degenerate and turne into *Abſceſſus*, the cure thereof in the beginning is finiſhed and ended (as ſaith *Galen Libro. 2. ad Glauconem*) by helpes and remedies that do mitigate, which the Greekes call *chalaſtica*, (that is) by reſoluing and remitting medicines: of the which nature and force is that medicine, which is called of *Galen Tetra-*

pharmacum

pharmacum, being verie ſofte, and prouoking ſleepe: with the which according to the opinion of the ſame *Galen. Lib.* 13. *Therap.* there muſt be commixed a litle honie. But *Tetrapharmacum* conſiſteth of foure things, of the which there muſt be of euerie one a litle portion or quantitie (that is to ſay) of waxe, of roſin, of the gumme of the herbe *colophonia*, which diſtilleth from the roote thereof, and of bulles tallow. But in proceſſe of time, we muſt paſſe ouer vnto thoſe things which are able to concoct and digeſt, or to ripen and bring to ſuppuration. But thoſe which are turned into another kinde, (that is) into another ſubſtance, and that altogether beſides nature, they are to be remoued and cured by the Arte of Chyrurgie. Moreouer in remouing them according to the counſell of *Galen*, 14. *Therap.* it ſhall be requiſite to conſider, that among all the wayes and meanes, whereby we intend to finiſh our purpoſe, we ſhould alwayes make choice of the beſt of them. The beſt meanes and wayes are declared and manifeſted vnto vs three manner of wayes: viz. By the ſhortneſſe of the time to cure in, by curing without paine, and chiefly by curing ſafely and without danger. Againe, that thou mayeſt cure ſafely, there are three ſpeciall things diligently to be conſidered. The firſt and the chiefeſt is, that you throughly attaine to the perfection of your labour. 2. The other is, that if you cannot attaine to the ſame, yet at the leaſt, that you hurt not the ſicke. 3. The third is, that the euill or diſeaſe may not eaſily returne or come againe. By theſe conſiderations, if you will declare the beſt method of curing, you ſhall find in all thoſe tumors before mentioned, when the cure is to be ended by the helpe of Chyrurgie, and when by the force of medicines. But truly the ſtudie of Chyrurgie in theſe chiefly which now we do entreat of, (that is) in thoſe tumours which are altogether aboue nature, doth make and tend to the killing and deſtroying of them, and doth wholly declare, after what ſort they may be taken away. But if it cannot bring this to paſſe, the next counſell is, to transferre the euill, as we vſe to do in thoſe humors called *Hypochymata*, (that is to ſay) the web in the eye. But that which is fetched from medicines, doth firſt tend vnto this end, that that which is aboue nature, may both turne into matter, and alſo into putrefaction: but this he appointeth in the ſecond place. Theſe things hath *Galen*: therfore whē the parts which are troubled with *phlegmone* do beat verie vehemently, ſo that now you begin to diſpaire of their cure, (they being not yet mattered:) all the ancient Chyrurgians (ſayeth *Galen* .4. *Therap.*) do miniſter and apply ſuch kind of medicines which do ſpeedily procure matter: but before it be mattered, they vſe none at all. And although thoſe parts which are annoied with *phlegmone*, be annointed with a cataplaſme, which may both heat them & moiſten them, & bring thē to ſuppuration, yet the ſame doth not appeare by the firſt reaſon or way, that is, as the remedie and help of the euill, but as the mitigating & eaſing of the ſymptomat, that is, of the paine. For truly the remedies of *phlegmone* are of a drying nature. And the ſame *Galen* addeth moreouer a litle after, that a ſhort and compendious cure of thoſe parts which are affected with *phlegmone* is quickly ended & diſpatched, by remedies which are able to drie and vnbind, which truly doth altogether either remoue the affect, or elſe, if they leaue behind them ſome litle relict, which may turne to ſuppuration, it is needfull to vſe ſome other ſharpe medicine, which is able

Tetrapharmacum.

The beſt order of curing is declared three wayes.
1
2
3

Ex lib. 4. Therap. meth.

to bring out the matter, or if the skin about the tumor be thin, and you willing speedily to ease the sicke, you necessarily must vse incision. And this truly is that which *Auicen* saith, namely, that the cure of an Apostеme, (as it is an Apostеme) is the extraction and drawing out of the strange matter which raiseth the Apostеme. But to declare the remedies of them wherewith it is expedient to draw and moue the matter, and to manifest other things also, which we spoke of a litle before, they are to be sought out of their particular Chapters. Furthermore, the Abscession being alreadie come to Suppuration, or changed, or strongly compact together, if the matter or any other baggage therein contained, be not discussed and dissolued, or if in conuenient season, and while the occasion is offered, it be not opened without the labour of the hand, you must make an issue by incision for that which otherwise will not be digested. But this thing chiefly is to be proued and enterprized, if there be feared any erosion or gnawing to insue, or any other danger, yea if necessity commandeth, it ought straight way to be opened, and the matter to be drawne out, as speedily and safely as is possible, for the cause before alleadged. But aperti. on is made more safely with a knife, then with burning and scalding medicins if nothing do hinder it, and commonly such kind of *phlegmonous* tumors, being alreadie turned into suppuration, are opened with a penknife. Moreouer Apertion or the letting out of the matter ought to be done, by reason both of the abundance of matter there gathered together, & also of the affected place. But if any part of the mattered member shall seeme to be putrified & rotten, it is needfull to cut it off, to the forme or likenesse of an oliue or mirtle leafe, that it may heale the more easily. But *Galen* commandeth to auoid and eschue alwayes any great incisions, who did heale such kind of mattered tumors, both in the parts about the priuie members, and also in the armeholes only by incision (as he vsed chiefly to do) and by medicines that were of force to dry. Now if need sometime required to cut off somewhat by reason of the plentie, not only of matter, but also of the corrupted parts, he vsed no greater incision then the breadth of a great mirtle leafe. For by wide & large sections, when the member is brought vnto a scar, besides that it is made most filthie, it also becommeth very weake and vnfit to moue withall. But these kinds of sections imitating the mirtle leafe, are vsed in those tumours especially which do matter vnder the armeholes, & about the share. And in those truly the lengths of them must be drawn ouerthwart and not by the straightnesse or rightnes of the leg or body: for whē we bend the leg or the arm, the skin naturally doth apply itself with it. But in other places we alwaies almost do vse simple incisions. Now in this apertion or incision, seuen things are especially to be considered, according to the consent of the later Chyrurgians. First, that incision be made in that place wherein the matter is contained. The 2. that incision be made in the neather place of the tumor, that the mattered and corrupted filthinesse may the better be voided out. The 3. that it be made next the wrinckles and processe of the muscles. The 4. that you do auoid and eschue the sinowes, veines and arteries, as much as you can. The 5. that all the matter be not brought out abundantly all at once, especially in great abscessions, lest that by too much emptying out and that suddenly, and also by the resolution of the spirites, there followe weakneſſe

Auicen.

When abscessions are chiefly to be cut and opened.

A mattered tumor is more safely opened with a knife then with burning medicines. Lib. 13. Ther.

A section imitating the oliue or mirtle leafe.

Great hurt cōmeth by wide incisions.

Why mattered impostumes about the share must be cut ouerthwart.

Seuen things to be diligently marked in the apertion of an abscession alredy mattered.

1
2
3
4
5

weakneſſe and faintneſſe. The 6. that the place be handled and touched very gently, and with as litle paine as can be. The 7. that apertion being made, the place be wiped very cleane, and filled with the fleſh againe, and brought to a ſcarre after the manner of vlcers. But *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* warneth vs chiefly to marke two things in the inciſion of a ſuppurated abſceſſion, writing after this manner. 1. If at any time the abundance of matter exceedeth and ouercommeth your medicines, neither do they ſeeme vnto you to be able to digeſt all the corruption: it is requiſite to make an iſſue by inciſion for that matter which yeeldeth not to digeſtion, in that place eſpecially where it is moſt high. 2. Moreouer in the inciſion alſo of another abſceſſion which pertaineth vnto fluxe: and yet reſpecting both the kinds, you muſt not forget to cut and lanch that which is alreadie come to ſuppuration: and then apply ſome medicine thereto which can drie it vp without eroſion or gnawing. But after the impoſtume is opened, you muſt vſe remedies that be of a ſcouring and cleanſing nature, and fit to purge the filthy vlcer, as are ſoft flaxe or lint, and ſoft linnen, emplaiſters and ointments, which ſhalbe ſpoken of in their particular chapters. At the firſt time, *Guido* did apply the yolke of an egge being thickned with alume *Zuccharinum*, which medicine *Gulielmus à Saliceto* did alſo vſe. But afterward you muſt come to the applying of *mel roſatum*, & *mundificatiuum ex apio*: and laſt of all, to *vnguentum Apoſtolorum*, and *Æ. yptiacum*, if the matter ſo requireth. But aboue, without you muſt miniſter ointments, as *baſilicon*, *diachylon*, & *diaphœnicon*, ſo commonly called, and other of that ſort, which are appointed for vlcers. For when you haue cut an abſceſſion, it muſt be cured after the manner of other vlcers. *Galen lib. 13. Therap.* after the skin was cut in thoſe *phlegmonous* tumors which chance about the armeholes and priuie members, he did fill the affected place with that medicine which the Greeks call *Manna*, which is, *thuris purgamentum*. For this hath a light adſtriction or binding. But you muſt alſo (ſayth he) firſt aſſwage the launced member, (as much as you ſee cauſe) firſt with foments, then with cataplaſmes, and ſtraight after with ſome moiſting medicine, or elſe with ſuch as do not much drie, (all theſe being applied outwardly vpon the vlcer.) For in the very vlcer, both of *Manna* (as hath bene ſaid) and alſo of thoſe remedies which are taught and declared by vſing of lint, theſe things are truly firſt to be layed on, which do moue and prouoke the matter, and afterward thoſe which do purge and cleanſe: after the applying of which things, if there remaine any hollowneſſe, you muſt miniſter thoſe things which may fill the ſame: but if it fall out otherwiſe, you muſt vſe things to bring it to a ſcarre. Moreouer if the ſicke will not ſuffer inciſion to be made, either with ſome bright inſtrument, or with a penknife, by reaſon of the ſoftneſſe thereof, then he apertion is to be finiſhed with burning medicines. For this purpoſe *Auicen* praiſeth the ſeed of line or flaxe, leauen and doues doung, which you may make more excellent and forcible if you mingle them with a litle ſoft ſope, or with the filthineſſe that commeth of muſtard ſeed. But that medicine which is called *ruptorium* or *cauſticum*, which is made of lime and ſope, in this matter is moſt excellent, and obtaineth greateſt fame. Hitherto haue we ſpoken of tumours aboue nature generally: now it followeth that we intreate of the particular differences of them as they follow in order.

6
7
Two things conſidered of Galen in the apertion of a matered tumor.
1
2
Detegentia.
Ointments are to be applied aboue a tumor that is opened.
The vſe of Manna and Thus after the inciſion, & the vertue of them.
The launced part muſt firſt be eaſed.
What things are to be layed to an vlcer.
Auicennas in fine tracta. 1. Fen. 3. lib 4.

CHAP. VII.

Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumors ingendred of bloud.

HAVING ſpoken generally of thoſe tumors which conſiſt aboue nature, it is conuenient that we entreat particularly of the differences of euerie one of them, taking our exordium from *phlegmone*, as a tumor which chanceth very often, and exciteth (as *Galen* ſaith) very dangerous ſymptomates. Therefore *Galen lib. 1. de morbis & ſymptomatis*, taketh *phlegmone* two kind of waies. One way generally after the manner of the ancient writers which were before his time (that is) for euerie kind of inflammation of any member, or for any heating or burning, (that is) for euerie hote and flaming diſpoſition, which the Greeks do properly call φλόγωσις. Another way, both with *Galen* and other late writers, it is taken for a true and pure tumor ingendred of bloud, that is, the beſt, and that alſo which retaineth but meane thickneſſe or groſſeneſſe. And this truly borroweth his name of the kind thereof, and of the Latines it is called diuerſly by reaſon of the kind *Inflammatio*, of the Greeks abſolutely *Phlegmone*. But this after the mind and conſent of the later ſort is two fold, *videlicet Vera & non vera*. A true *phlegmone* is cauſed of good bloud, which is the beſt both in qualitie and ſubſtance or eſſence, but yet more abundant then naturally ſhould happen to the member. But *Phlegmone* which is not a true and lawfull *phlegmone*, is cauſed of naughtie and vnnaturall bloud. For bloud is a hote & moiſt humour proceeding from a more temperate part of the verie *Chylus*, which is a certaine iuyce that commeth of the meat in the firſt digeſtion. And it is two waies, naturall and not naturall. Naturall bloud is a hote and moiſt humor, ſlender and meane in ſubſtance, but of a very red colour, in ſauor and taſte it is ſweet, gentle and good. But that bloud is ſaid to be vnnaturall, which differeth or digreſſeth from the former deſcription of bloud: yet notwithſtanding conteining it ſelfe within the bounds of his breadth & largenes, which if it doth once paſſe, it is no more to be called a bloud, but ſome other humor. But bloud doeth chance to degenerate from his proper nature two kinde of wayes. The firſt way is (as they terme it) in it ſelfe, that is, in reſpect of it ſelfe, (his proper ſubſtance being changed without any commixtion with another.) The ſecond way is by another, or in reſpect of another: and yet it conſiſteth two wayes by it ſelfe, (that is to ſay) either becauſe the ſubſtance thereof is more thicke, or more thinne then it ought to be: or becauſe it is burnt, and that which is thinneſt of it, is turned into melancholy: but that which is thick into choler, and that without ſeparation. But in reſpect of another, bloud becommeth not vnnaturall, whenas another humor is mingled withall. Which may happen many wayes, according as the diuerſe kinds of choler, fleame or melancholie may be commixed with bloud. By which thing it is manifeſt, that of bloud there are engẽdred foure kinds or differẽces of tumors about nature. Firſt, of natural & good bloud there is engẽdred a true *phlegmone*. But of bloud, which is corrupted through the admixtion of other humours, there do grow three differences of that kind of *phlegmone*, which is neither true nor lawful: becauſe that the three other humors (that is to ſay) fleume, choler & melancholy may

Phlegmone taken two waies.

Phlegmone taken for phlogoſis. 2.

Phlegmone alſo is taken for an inflammation comming of the beſt bloud

Phlegmone. 2.
1. Vera.
2. Non vera.

Sanguis quid.
Sanguis quotuplex.

Bloud doth degenerate from his proper nature two waies.

Foure differences of tumors cauſed of bloud

may be easily commixed with bloud. Therefore if melancholie be mixed with bloud, it is called *phlegmone Scirrhodes*: if choler (which then is conflated of both kinds) it is called *phlegmone Erysipelatodes*: if fleume, it is termed *phlegmone Ædematodes*. But of bloud, which is filthie and corrupted through the aduſtion and corruption of his owne proper ſubſtance, according to the manner of the thinneſſe or thickneſſe thereof, there are ingendred either Carbuncles, which are called of the Greekes *Anthraces* or elſe *Gangræna* and *Sphacelus*, which we call Cancres. Of the which diſeaſes we will ſpeake of hereafter in that which followeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Cauſes, Signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.

THERE are three cauſes of *phlegmone*: as there are alſo of all other tumors beſides nature, which do chaunce through the defluxion of humors, *videlicet*. 1. *Primitiua*, which we call both *prægreſſa* and *euidens*: 2. *Antecedens*. 3. & *Coniuncta*. Euident cauſes of inflammation are outward cauſes: as, beating or belking, diruption, conuulſion, breaking or burſting a wound, a voluntary vlcer, a looſeneſſe, and other of that ſort which do prouoke fluxe, by excyting paine in the affected member. The Antecedent cauſe, is abundance of bloud, which is good and faultleſſe, as when the veines touch nigh together to the moderate repletion of the Arteries. For then is bloud prouoked (as a certaine ſuperfluous thing,) to flow and deſcend to ſome member which is either weake or immoderately hote, or affected with paine, where it is thruſt, and abideth compact together, vnleſſe it be by and by repreſſed from the beginning, (as we haue ſayd before in our generall Chapter: to the which we muſt therefore haue continuall acceſſe, that we may attaine to a more perfect knowledge of particular tumours, whereof we now entreate. The Coniunct or continent cauſe, is the bloud it ſelfe, which is alreadie ſtuffed in the affected place. The markes or tokens of *phlegmone* are the tumor, or the augmenting of the member aboue the naturall habite, vehement heate, ſo that the member ſeemeth to burne. There appeareth redneſſe in the outward parts, ſuch as is wont to come through bathes which are made hote either with the fire, or by ſome other meanes. There is extreame paine, vnleſſe the member hath altogether a dull ſenſe. There is alſo grieuous beating, and pulſation verie vehement inwardly. There is alſo extenſion or ſtretching out of the member, which not onely we alone haue found out, but alſo the patient himſelfe may perceiue by his owne feeling. There is furthermore reſiſtance of the member if it be touched, after the manner of extenſion. There be alſo other ſuch like ſignes, which do teſtifie that abundance of bloud is preſent in ſome part of the bodie. *Phlegmone* hath foure times. 1. the beginning. 2. the increaſing. 3. the ſtate, and 4. the declination: except at the leaſt way, fluxe hath recourſe within, or it be ſtraight way repreſſed by repulſiue medicines. But when it ſhall lightly paſſe ouer theſe foure times, it is needfull either to reſolue and draw out the matter of it, or to bring it to ſuppuration, or elſe to putrifie & rot it, or to turne it into a *ſcirrhus* and ſtony hardneſſe. And truly the ſignes of all theſe are to be ſought out of the chapter that intreateth generally of them: where the markes of all times,

The cauſes of phlegmone.
1. *Prægreſſa.*
2. *Antecedens.*
3. *Coniuncta.*
Signes of a true phlegmone.
Lib. de Tumo. præter naturã & 13. method.
Foure times of phlegmone.
Iudicia.

and the meanes to finish tumours aboue nature (which they commonly call *apostemata*) be declared and expressed. But *phlegmone* is accompanied with many other euill simptomates which do alter and change the order of his cure, as are, vehement paine, which doth greatly occupie the sensible part: recourse of the matter from the kernels (which the Greeks call *Adene*, and commonly they be called *Emunctoria*) to the internall partes. Also mortification of the affected member (which they cal *corruptio esthiomenica*) proceeding of too much refrigeration, and of a strong compacting or stuffing of the matter, which did cause the inflammation. Also a stonie and almost an indissoluble hardnesse, commonly called *Sclirotica*, which proceedeth through a certen ouerthwart & vntoward dissolution of the thinner humor. Wherfore in curing tumors which consist aboue nature, we must diligently oftentimes marke and consider, how farre we meane to proceed in the matter, and what accidents may chaunce vnlooked for, that so we may chiefly insist, and be occupied about that most which appeareth, and is most vrgent: which *Galen* hath admonished vs of verie well, *Lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem*, and 13. *Therap.* speaking after this sort: In diseases, whose resolution is difficult and hard, it is to be feared, least some remnant of them be left behind which is very hard. Wherefore in euerie resolution, we must diligently consider into what thing euerie tumor whose cure is once begun, may be changed. For that cure which is attempted by medicines that do mightily dry, doth leaue very hard knobs which are hard to remoue: hitherto *Galen*. But the time requireth, that we now declare the cure of *phlegmone*.

Symptomates which hinder the cure of phlegmone.

CHAP. IX.

The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie.

The method of curing phlegmone which is yet in generation.

SEEING that *inflammatio*, which is called of the Greeks properly *phlegmne*, doth ingender and grow through the influxion of bloud, happening more abundantly to some member then nature requireth, and fluxe also (*phlegmone* being yet but beginning to raigne) is partly in begetting, and partly begotten alreadie: there must needs truely be a double consideration in the cure of the *phlegmone* being yet but beginning (that is to say) to emptie out and auoid that which hath flowed alreadie, and to hinder and stop that which is now a flowing. Moreouer we shall stop fluxe, if we shall draw backe and repell the humor that floweth, if we will adde strength to the afflicted member, and if we shall seeke to remoue that which causeth the flux. We shall draw it backe and bring it into a contrarie defluxion of the other humors, by bloudletting, if strength and age will suffer it, but if not, we shall do it by applying cupping glasses, or by vsing bindings and frictions, and by heating those partes which haue a direct passage to the affected part. We shall bring back and repell flux, by ministring those medicines which are able to driue and turne the flux another way. We shall also remoue the causes that do bring or fetch defluxion to the member alreadie infected with *phlegmone*, by confirming & strengthening the member, if it be weake, by vsing astriction if it be too loose, by cooling it if it he too hot,

By what means fluxe is stayed.
1. *Retractio.*
2. *Repulsio.*
3. *Causæ summotio.*

as

as it is wont to be, by easing the paine if it be vehement, and by emptying the whole bodie with bloudletting, if it doth abound with bloud, & if it sendeth infection to the member: of all which things we will speake by and by. But we do emptie out and auoid that which is flowed alreadie, & hath gotten it selfe into the affected part, not onely by those medicines which do digest, that is, which do discusse and dissolue, but also by those remedies which do bind together & refrigerate. And truly in *phlegmonous* tumors now beginning, we must rather vse (sayth *Galen*) cooling and astrictiue medicines, then those which do concoct and digest: and so much the rather, if that which floweth be not of a thick substance. But if bloud be greatly compact together in that part which *phlegmone* hath caught & taken vp, you must not apply any longer repercussiue remedies (as we said before) but then it is conuenient to vse those which can digest. Also in an old & inueterat inflammation, which after the euacuation of the whole body, and other some fit cure, hath left behind it a certaine hardnesse & blacknesse in the member: it is not vnprofitable (*Galen* also affirming the same) to take away the bloud by scarification. And these things haue we spoken briefly and by a generall method, concerning the cure of inflammations that do happen through the defluxion of humours, which the Greekes properly are wont to call *phlegmone*: which things may be sufficient to content a reasonable Phisition, and one which is exercised in this kind of studie. But because we haue taken in hand to write those things for the practitioners of Chyrurgerie, and not for the learned only, it shall not be amisse, neither any thing from our purpose, if after this generall and compendious method, we set downe more particularly those things which not only the ancient Phisitions, but also the later sort of Chyrurgians haue left behind them in writing. Therefore aboue the generall rule (as they terme it) the Chyrurgians of our age are wont to reduce the order of curing *phlegmone*, into foure branches or particular intentions: that is to say, into a iust obseruation of a good diet. 2. the stopping of fluxe, or the turning away of the matter which went before. 3. the emptying out of the humor, which hath alreadie entertained himselfe in the member (which they call *materia coniuncta*,) 4. and the correcting or amending of the symptomats. The first intention therefore is made perfect by the due vsing or administration of sixe things commonly called vnnaturall things, and by the vsing of those things also which are said to be annexed vnto them. And these things which are sixe in number, called of the Phisitions *res non naturales*, (as hath bene declared from the beginning of this treatise) are, the aire, meate and drinke, mouing and rest, sleepe and watching, emptying and filling, the affections of the mind or the accidents. All which things (because *phlegmone* doth commonly prouoke feauers) ought to pertaine vnto coldnesse and moderate moistnesse. For which causes we haue thought good to set downe these precepts following. Let the sick be in a pure and cleare aire, and that somewhat cold. Let him keepe a thin diet, cold and moderately moist. Let him drinke small ale, or beere, or other small drinks. But if a vehement feuer shall haue any accesse (which is wont often to happen) let him altogether abstaine from wine. Let him not exercise, or moue that member which is beset with *phlegmone*. Let him be quiet as much as he can, especially if there be very great abundance of humors in the bodie. Let

Vacuation of that which is flowed already Gal. Ther. 13.

Scarificates.

Foure intentiõs in the cure of phlegmone.

1. 2.
3
4

1. The first intention is an order in diet.

Res non naturales.

Aer.
Cibus. Potus

Motus.
Quies.

Somnus. Repletio. Inanitio. Animi pathemata. Venus.

him keepe a measure in sleeping and watching: and let him shun sleeping on the day time, especially about noone. Let him diligently beware of drunkennesse and gluttonie. Let the bellie be alwaies kept soft and soluble, and now and then let it be washed with clisters if need require. Let him flie anger, cryings out, and wrath, as deadly enemies. Let him abstaine from venereous actes as a mortall foe.

2. The auersion of the fluxe is the second intention.

The second order in curing *Phlegmone*, which is the turning away of the fluxe, is dispatched by letting of bloud, if strength and age doth suffer. But in all members of the bodie, whether you intend to reuell (that is) to draw backe againe another way, or to turne it from that place at the side, either straight ouer against the place, or directly forth (which is called in Greeke κάλειξιν) a veine must alwaies be cut, although there be great abundance: but directly,

A veine is alwaies to be cut directly.

the right sides do answere to the right parts, and the left to the left. Therfore if *ophthalmia* doth annoy the right eye, or the squinancie doth affect the right side of the throat, the shoulder veine, or some other in his place (if that doth not appeare) must be cut in the right arme, by and by at the beginning of the fluxe. But if a humor doth flow in the knee, you must cut a veine in the elbow either the outward or the middle vein, except you meane to scarifie the other legge, or breake the veine assunder in it, as *Galen* counselleth in a certaine place. Therfore the election of the cutting any veine, & the inuention to turne the humor another way (which *Hyppocrates* calleth *antispasis*) is manifested and declared by the affected part, and by the place or situation of the member that is to be cured, as *Galen.* 13. and 14. *meth. med.* and in other places, doth oftentimes teach. But that body which *phlegmone* occupieth, not onely when it is plethoricke and full of humors, but also when the greatnesse of the euill doth exhort vs to it, (though it be but meanely stuffed with humors) we must empty & euacuat by letting of bloud if we will follow the aduise of *Galen*, who *lib.* 13. *meth. med.* commandeth that it should be so, thus writing. Paine and truely, the heate of the member wherein *phlegmone* hath setled himselfe, (although the whole bodie be voide of excrements) do happen by reason of the fluxe. But then it is expedient to do it but meanely, (that is) to draw forth bloud and to make euacuation, no further then it shall best agree with the age and nature of the patient. Further you must haue consideration both of the time of the yeare, of the nature of the aire wherein the sicke remaineth, and also of the former custome of the man. Also these do profit not a litle to draw backe the bloud that floweth to the affected part, walkings, frictions, and binding of the opposite member, but first chiefly the detraction of bloud, as hath bene said. Therfore if *phlegmone* appeareth in the hands, the legges are to be exercised, bound and rubbed, if in the legs, the handes must be also so vsed. But these things belong more vnto the Phisition then the Chyrurgion.

The choise of bloud letting is declared of the afflicted part.

3

The third intention is the euacuation of the humor alreadie compact in the member.

We now dispatch the third scope or intention, in the beginnings of *phlegmone*, only by applying repulsiue things to that member which laboureth with the inflammation (excepting these cases before rehearsed.) For that which is filled with corrupted water (as *Galen* sayeth) is emptyed out, not onely by those medicines which digest, but also by those which do bind and refrigerate: as be those which are called *repellentia* and *regerentia* repulsiues and restitiues.

But

But in the increasing thereof at the present intention, (that is) to emptie that, which is flowed, and also to stoppe, that no more doth abound, you must ioyne digestiue medicines with represſiues: but yet so, that the abundaunce and strength of the one may yet preuaile with the other. But in the state they must equally be commixed together by euen portions, & somwhat more mild in mitigating remedies must be applied, if paine be vehement. But in the end and declination of the state, it is requisite to euacuat by digestiues only that which is compact together, if that *phlegmone* must be ended by resolution or discussiō. If truly it doth turne into abscessiō, and that it cannot be, that the gathering together and eruption of the matter should be letted, it shall be lawfull to vse medicines which can both matter, open & clense the vlcer. Furthermore those remedies which do drie, are profitable in the end of both the euils (that is) of *phlegmone* and *abscessus*, for they do altogether consume that which remaineth of the humor, but when incision is made in the abscessiō which is alreadie come to suppuration, you must lay on such a medicin as may drie without erosion or gnawing, (as hereafter shall be said.) But in those phlegmonous tumors which now are but in the beginning, the most apt remedie to repell and driue backe, is *oxicraton* in *Galen*, which the Latines call *pusca aquosa*. It is a mixture of water and vineger, so tempred together, that it may be drunke: and then (a spunge being wet and laied in this *oxicratum*, must be applyed to that part, where *phlegmone* is. But in stead of *oxicratum*, by the counsell of *Galen*, we may take sharpe wine, or apply cold things onely to the parts which are about the sinewes. These are the words of *Galen*. In those members which are about the sinews, it shalbe sufficient in the beginning of *phlegmone*, to lay on a spunge dipped either in cold water, wherewith a litle vineger is mingled, or in water only, or in sharpe and soure wine. For the same purpose also this caraplasme of the same *Galen* is verie effectuall, made of syngreene and the rindes of pomegranates sodden in wine of *rhu*, that is, *sumcah*, and *polenta*. This by restraining doth repell that which floweth, and by drying doth emptie out that which is contained in the tumor, and both wayes it doth strengthen and corroborate the affected parts. The remedie hath bene described of the later sort: of *Auicen* after this sort as followeth. ℞ of the iuyce of syngreene. ℔.j. of wine that is thicke of substance, and sharpe in tast, ℔. ß. of barley meale, one quart, of the rind of pomegranates, and sumach powdered. ana. ℥.ß. boile them and make a liniment. There is also another which greatly auaileth for the same purpose, inuented of Haly Abbas: ℞. of *santalum* white and red, ana. ℥. iij. of *memitha*, which is called *Glaucium*. ℥.ij of *terra cimolia*, and bole armoniack. ana. ℥.j.ß. let all be brayed into verie fine floure or powder, and well searced, then dissolue them in the iuyce of syngreene, or purslaine, or lettuce, and make a liniment. Another also in the beginning of phlegmonous inflammations, very common and much vsed, which is very profitable for greene wounds, and bruses taken lately. It is made of the white of an egge, of oile of roses, and of the distilled water of roses (that is) of rose water, wherin you must wet fine clothes & lay them to the inflamed member, & let them be changed often. But there are many other medicines both simple and compound, which do profite in the beginning of *phlegmone* to restraine and repell fluxe, which are to be sought

Represſiues in the increase, must exceed digestiues.

If phlegmone doth turne into abscessiō.

Repulsiues are to be vsed in the beginning of phlegmone.

Oxycratum.

Lib. 13. Meth. meden.

Galeni cataplasma, lib. 2. ad Glau.

Fen. 3. lib. 4. tract. 1. cap. 3.

Haly Abbas Linimentum.

Aliud.

out of other Authors, which haue written of this thing. But theſe ſhall content vs for this time.

Remedies to be vſed in the increaſing of Phlegmone.

Amongſt the remedies which in the increaſe of *phlegmone*, being outwardly applied, do greatly helpe, oile of roſes is maruellouſly effectuall, (the Greekes call it *rhodinon*.) For this doth partly draw back, and partly doth digeſt through the vapor: becauſe it perfectly holdeth a middle nature betweene the oile and the roſes. Therfore in oile of roſes there is a certaine aſtriction, which cannot (ſayth *Galen*) ouergo the weake parts of the tumor: but when they haue pierced ſomewhat deeper, it beginneth then to worke outwardly according to the ſtrength, both to thruſt together, to draw into one place, and to thicken greatly, wherby it commeth to paſſe that in the augmenting of *phlegmonous* tumors, oile of roſes is a moſt excellent and readie helpe. In the augmenting of *phlegmone* there is another in *Auicen* verie profitable: ℞. of the leaues of mallowes *M*.j. of wormwood, roſes. ana ℥.ß. of barley meale ℥.j. oile of cammomil, quart ß. ſeeth them, and bray them together, and bring them to the faſhion of a ſoft emplaiſter. Another of the ſame. ℞. of wine boiled either to the halfe or third part, (one we call *ſapa*, the other *defrutum*) quart.j. roſe water, and vineger. ana. quart.ß. ſaffron. ℥.ij. let them be a litle het ouer a ſoft fire, then ſtraine them, and dip a cloth in the liquor of that decoction, which you muſt apply to the phlegmonous member after the manner of an epitheme. Morouer ſuch kinds of remedies which are vſed in the increaſing of the inflammation, and haue their power and vertue commixed together of repreſſiue and digeſtiue medicines, ought ſeldomer to be remoued and changed, then thoſe which repell the matter, being miniſtred in the beginning of *phlegmone*.

Lib.3. de ſimp. medic.

Oile of roſes a preſent remedy in the increaſe of phlegmone.

What things do helpe in the ſtate of Phlegmone.

Aëtius, in the vigor or ſtate of *phlegmone*, and when there is vehement paine felt, hath ſet downe theſe remedies: as mallowes mingled with a litle bread, & with oile of roſes. Alſo melilot boiled in the liquor called *paſſum*, and applied with a litle bread: of the like vertue (ſaith he) are dates ſodden in *paſſum*, and mingled with bread and oile of roſes. Another alſo, which digeſteth through breathing in the vigor of *phlegmone* very effectual. ℞. pellitorie of the wall, mallowes. ana. *M*.j fine branne, the floure of meale. ana. pug.j. fenugreeke, dill. ana. ℥.ß. oile of cammomill, quart.ß. let them be boiled in wine, and wel braied together till they be well incorporated, and make an emplaiſter. Another taken out of *Galen*, *Lib.*13. *Therap.* ℞. of the crummes of bread made of corne. ℔.j. ſteepe it in hote water the ſpace of one houre, then ſtraine it, and commixe therewith of the beſt hony, quart.j. and make it to the forme of a cataplaſme, This doth diſſolue and mitigate paine. *Auicen* counſelleth to miniſter in the rigor of *phlegmone*, *vnguentum baſilicon*, and that which is made of the iuices therof called *diachylon*: but the one is good to mollifie, the other to ripen and bring to matter: although notwithſtanding both of them do carie with them a digeſting qualitie. But theſe and other ſuch remedies, which are miniſtred to diſſolue that which is alreadie flowed, and to eaſe paine, becauſe they are of a verie moiſt nature, muſt be changed verie ſeldome. Furthermore, when as by the remedies before mentioned, the humor which is fallen into the member that is troubled with *phlegmone*, is diſſolued and diſcuſſed, and the tumor together with the extention thereof is diminiſhed, and the griefe ſomewhat aſſwaged, then

Emplaſtrum Galeni.

then it is to be iudged that the declination of the inflammation is at hand, at which time you muſt vſe onely diſcuſſiue things, as are wild mallowes bruiſed, annointed, raiſons (the kernels being taken out) applied with bread and a litle honie, & barely meale vſed alſo with honie. Alſo moiſt wool, flaxe, a ſponge, or ſome ſuch like thing, wet in hote wine, then ſtreined or wringed, you muſt miniſter it: for all theſe haue an excellent diſcuſſiue nature, & prouoke not paine. *What remedies muſt be vſed in the declination of phlegmone.*

But if, by reaſon of the ſtubburneſſe and hardneſſe of the diſeaſe, the affected place doth conteine too great plentie of matter and that ſuch as reſiſteth reſolution, you muſt not by and by (as ſome do) breake forth vnto Chyrurgie, that is, to make inciſion, or to ſcald it and burne it, but you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible, that the humour collected togither may be digeſted and diſſolued by ſuch medicines as can worke this effect. For it is conuenient to attempt the digeſtion of the humor by ſuch medicines as can profit in that caſe, before you begin to cut the inflammation. But if the tumour will not yeeld to digeſtiue medicines, and no further hope doth remaine to diſſolue that which is compact in it, but the matter ſeemeth rather to pertaine vnto ſuppuration, you muſt come vnto thoſe, things which can ripen and procure matter. And we hope that a tumour (although it degenerate into abſceſſion) may through the vapour be digeſted, if the matter which exciteth the ſame, be thinne and little, and fit to be reſolued: or if it remaineth not any thing deeply within, and the skinne of the affected member be thinne. But if the humour be plentifull, and thicke, and lurketh verie deepe, and the skinne alſo thicke, exhalation or reſolution is not to be hoped for. *What reſolution is to be hoped for.*

Therefore you muſt come vnto thoſe helpes which can ripen & prouoke matter, of which force is this cataplaſme, made of wheate meale, ſodden moderatly in water and oyle: for this (Galen being our Authour) doth ſpeedily bring to ſuppuration thoſe inflammations, which will not yeeld to digeſtion, & it hath alſo a heate like vnto our heat, that is, temperate and meane, and by reaſon of the meale and oyle (which haue a certaine clammy and glewiſh propertie, whereby in ſtopping the pores, they hinder the naturall heate of the member) it hath the force of an emplaiſtre, which two things are moſt required in medicines that do ripen and moue matter. There are ſome which do mingle with this cataplaſme a litle ſaffron to colour it. But if a tumour, by reaſon of the thicke and viſcous humours which are ſtuffed in it, be hardly brought vnto ſuppuration, this cataplaſme doth notablie helpe which is made of the decoction of the rootes of *althæa*, and of figges that be ſweet and fat, which do reſemble the thickneſſe of honie, cõmixed with wheat meale, as followeth, ℞. of the foreſaid decoction, ℔ j. of wheate meale, ℔ ß. boile them throughly togither, & bring them into the forme of a cataplaſme. But if in ſtead of wheate meale, you vſe barely meale or crible bread, which the Greekes call συγκόμιστον, it more auaileth to diſcuſſe the inflammation thẽ to bring it to ſuppuration (as Galene hath noted *lib. ſecundo ad Glauconẽ*. There is another alſo excellently profitable to prouoke matter in the declination of *plegmone*, which is commonly vſed of the common Chyrurgians, ℞. of the barke of the roote of Marſh mallowes, that is, of *althæa*, of the roote of lillies, grownſwel, called in Greek *erigerõ*, leaues of mallowes, ana. *M.* j. wheate meale, quar. j. of the meale ſeed of flaxe ℥ j. freſh ſwines greace, ℔ ß. ſeeth the herbes

Lib. 2. ad Glauco.

Pus mouentia.

Haly Abbas remembreth this cataplaſme.

Aliud.

A common cataplaſme.

herbes in ſufficient quantitie of water, and bray them with the other things in a mortar, and make a cataplaſme. But if, (when the matter is gathered together and diſpatched,) the abſceſſion whereinto *phlegmone* is turned, doth not open of the owne accord: (the members now being free from the inflammation) you muſt go about to euacuate and emptie out the matter which cannot be digeſted, with a penknife, or ſome ſuch inſtrument, or by ſome drawing medicine. Then you muſt bring the vlcer vnto a ſcarre, like vnto other vlcers, which you muſt do by cleanſing the ſore, by filling it with fleſh, and ioyning it together, which at the laſt will cauſe a ſcarre. Moreouer, if the matter be thicke, which bringeth forth the tumor, and very diſobedient to reſolution and digeſtion, and be exceedingly compact in the paſſages of the fleſhe (as is wont to be in continuall inflammation which be naughtely cured, the thinne part of the humor being reſolued, & the thicke part remaining ſtill in the paſſages, then you muſt not be afraid to vſe ſcarification, eſpecially (as Galen admoniſheth *lib. 2. ad Glauc.*) when hardneſſe blewneſſe or blackneſſe do appeare.

Symptomatum correctio.

The fourth intẽtion, which in the cure of *phlegmone* was propounded to the Chyrurgian and Phiſition, is the correction and the remouing of the ſymptomates, which do ſo ſodeinly come vpon the inflãmation, & thoſe are paine, recourſe of the matter, whereof the tumour is raiſed, to the inward parts, putrefaction and corruption of the matterie member, and as it were a certain ſtony hardneſſe remaining behind, by reaſon of ſome mightie drying and digeſting medicines. Therfore if vehement paine ſhall happen to the tumour, you muſt labour by all meanes poſſible to mitigate and aſſwage the ſame, becauſe, (beſides that it weakneth the ſtrength, and hindreth the lawfull duties of the bodie) it prouoketh fluxe and draweth bloud vnto it. If paine therefore doth grieuouſly torment in *phlegmone*, ſtraight way you muſt lay on thoſe medicines, which can lenifie and eaſe the vehemencie of the paine without any hurt, as is this of Galen, which was made of the licour called *paſſum*, of oile of roſes, & a litle waxe melted with them both: but this is to be take in moiſt wool, which hath much oile in it, and to be miniſtred cold in ſommer, and hote in winter. Therfore ſuch a medicine being tẽpered & applied (as is ſaid before) doth rarefie, extenuate, digeſt & euacuate: it maketh the humor that is ſharp, viſcous, groſſe, or plentifull, & which cleaueth to the aggrieued parts, to be equall, cõſtant & moderare, & it diſcuſſeth the thicke vapour which can find no fit iſſue, & ſo it mitigateth paine: it bringeth no hurt with his heat, for it maketh dulor taketh away the heat of the oile of roſes. Wherby it cõmeth to paſſe, that this remedy doth aſſwage paine without doing any hurt, & diſprofiteth not the euill, as hote water, oile, & wheate meale, which things in an inflãmation that happeneth with paine cãnot be profitable (as Galene wineſſeth) For theſe do looſen & releaſe through their heat & moiſture, & do reſolue the ſtrẽgth of the mẽber, wherby it is made more weak, & more prone & apt to interteine fluxe. To the ſame vſe (that is to alay the paine in *phlegmone*) you may applie effectually oile of roſes, yolks of egges, crummes of white bread ſteeped in hote water, & then ſtreine them, & commixe them with oile of roſes. Theſe alſo are a preſent remedy, mallowes ſodden in water, & mingled with branne and oile of roſes, or with oile of violets. But Auicene in mitigating euery paine vſeth ſaffrõ which

Dolor.

Lenifiers of paine in phlegmone.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

Crocum.

which he profitably cõmixeth with asswaging medicines .Furthermore if the sharpnesse of paine be so great & vehement,that it cannot be eased with those things,which becausse they mitigate and lenifie paine,(the succours of nature being stretched out)are properly called *Anodyna & paregorica* (that is) prouokers of sleepe & helpers of paine:you must passe ouer vnto those aides which we call *narcotia*(that is)stupefactiues.Amõgst the which we haue tried by dayly experience besides the authoritie of some writers,that henbane hath profited in this case maruellously , whose leaues you must take,& bake them in the hote embers,then mingle with them fresh swines greace & apply them to the place.This doth pacifie vehement paine,& bringeth plegmonous tumors vnto suppuration.But,while you attempt this thing,you must haue a diligẽt care least you apply to much moisture, becausse it is a thing , which in the beginnings of inflãmations,when fluxe aboundeth with great griefe,is very pernicious(as we said a little before.)But if you feare recourse of the matter,that exciteth *phlegmone*, to the inwarde parts,& that chiefly toward the principall mẽbers:you must cause him to come fourth by some drawing medicines,or else by applying cupping glasses,which do draw vehemently from the inward partes. But if by reason of vehement drying and digesting medicines being rashly applied to the inflammation,the relictes of the tumor do turne into *Scirrhus:* you shall boile in water the rootes of wild cucumber(which is commonly called in herbaries and shops *cucumer asininus*)or of briony or of *Asarum*, seething them oftentimes alone by themselues(as Galen commaundeth) and sometime putting to them fat figges.Then commixe meale with water,to the which also put a little suet,either of a goose or a cocke, but if there be not plentie of these at hand,adde swines greace and make a cataplasme. This doth notablie heale that schirrhous affect which through mightie drying and digesting medicines in the member which *phlegmone* occupied , doth still remaine behinde. Also the aforesaid herbes together with the rootes of *Althea* , being,after a moderate boyling well mingled with bread and suet , and then applied,do discusse and dissolue such hardned tumours : as Galene doth plainely teach *Lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem*. Therefore if you feare , that phlegmonous tumours , which are scarcely digested through their vapour , neither yet are easily concocted, be turned into *Scirrhus* : you must alwayes commixe with digestiues those things which can mollifie and soften. Moreouer if any part of the mattering member shall putrifie , you must straight way cut it out, or else seeke to cure it by many deepe scarifications : afterward you must sprinkle on it salt water,& thẽ lay on it an emplaister made of the meale of beanes or tares sodden in *oxymel*. There be other things also to be proued in this case,which we will by and by set downe in the cure of Gangrena.But now it shalbe more profitable , if we comprehend the Chapters concerning the cure of such phlegmonous affectesin some short sentences.And first we wil begin to declare the sum of the cure of *phlegmone*,being yet but beginning,and not yet vexing with any grieuous paine. 1.Let the whole body be emptied with cõueniẽt purgations,& especially by letting of bloud,if nothing do let it.2.Let the inflamed mẽber be all to washed and annointed with such things, as haue power to driue backe the flowing of the humor. 3.Let the humor, which is conteined in the

Nota de hyesciamo.

Recursus materiæ ad interiora.

Duritiesreliqua.

Galens cataplasme for hard tumours.

Putrefactio.

Galen. lib.2. ad Glau.

1.

2.

3.

4. aggrieued place, be emptied out by drying and digesting medicines. 4. Let the affected part, and those also which are about it be strengthneth and fortified.

The summe of the cure of phlegmone whẽ it afflicteth wit'h much paine.

Now followeth the summe of the cure of the sayd *phlegmone*, when it tormenteth with a more greiuous paine. 1. When as inflammation being causeth through the defluction of humors, doth vexe with great paine, you must mitigate the vehemẽcie of the same without any hurt doing. 2. Then, you must not minister those things, which do strongly bind, or vnlooten through their heat and moisture, or resolue strength. 3. But you must applie to the inflamed place such helpes, as by meanely binding, can repell that which floweth, and euacuate that which infesteth the affected member. 4. Applie to the tumour, a sponge dipped in sharpe wine or *posca*, that so you may preuent the passage of the humour that floweth. 5. If these things shall profit, and yet the matter appeareth not any where, you must vse soft & gentle emplaisters, & those especially, which are made as remedies against fluxe. 6. Amongest those things, which are of power to drie, & repell the fluxe of bloud without paine, you must chuse the best, as is that resolutiõ with oile of roses, which is made of the stone *chalcitis*: then lay vpon it pure woll dipped in sharpe wine. 7. But when matter appeareth in the member, you must often apply the aforesaid cataplasme, or that rather, which is made of barely meale. 8. If the aboundance of thick matter doth exceede the medicines, so that there is no hope of resolution, you must make an issue for that which yeeldeth not vnto digestion in that place especially, where it is highest. 9. After incision, you must drie the wound, if paine be not vrgent, and clense it and scoure it without griefe. 10. If after incision, paine be vehement, you must first asswage it with foments, then with a cataplasme, straight after with some moist medicine, or with such a one as drieth not. 11. If the member, be still enflamed, lay on a cataplasme made of a certaine pulse called chittes, which doth emptie out and driue backe.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11.

CHAP. X.

Of a Carbuncle, and a Cancre, and of the maladie named Sphacelus, all which they call sanguineæ pustulæ, i. bloud pushes.

De Cabunculo.

SEEING that we haue intreated aboundantly, as muchas pertaineth to a Chyrurgian, of *Plegmone*, which is the first differenee of inflammations, & most incident to mans body: it now remaineth that we speake first of *Carbunculus*, which is called in Greeke ἀνθραξ: next of *Gangrena*, the Cancre, and last, of *Sphacelus*, (which with the expounder of Auicene they commonly call *esthiomenon*) for that hath his beginning of a bloudie fluxe, as *phlegmone* hath and doth prouoke a most sharpe feuer, but these are wont oftentimes to accompanie great *Phlegmones*, as Galene *libello de Tumoribus præter naturam*, and in manie other places hath diligentlie noted, A Carbuncle therefore proceedeth of the flowing of bloud, which is blacke, thicke, filthie, burning, and exceedingly hote, with the which if there be mingled but certaine thinne humours: there are raised vp on the out side of the skinne whelkes or pushes, like things that be burned or scalded, & then this inflammation is called *Carbunculus*

ἀνθραξ. γαγγραινα. σφακελος.

Gangrena and Sphacelus do follow great phlegmones.

The generatiõ & description of a Carbũcle.

bunculus cum postula, the Carbuncle with the push, which euill truely doth happen verie often. In the meane time notwithstanding it beginneth (although seldome) without push or pushes: but then is caused a crustie or hard vlcer: I say without push or pushes, because sometime there ariseth with this euill one onely push of some greatnesse, which being broken, the vlcer is brought forth with a scurfe or scabbe: but oftentimes not one push alone doth breake out, but manie little and slender ones, sticking thicke in the member like vnto the seedes of hirse: which being burst forth, there doth likewise arise a certaine crustie vlcer, such as hote iron doth cause. But between their beginning, before that the pushes do appeare, they trouble the member throughly. Now these scales or scurfe do sometime receiue an ashie or earthly colour, sometime blackenesse, and in that place the skinne cannot be eased, but it is, as it were fastened to the inner flesh. The flesh also about it, is brought to an exceeding hote inflammation, which the Greekes call *Phlogosis*, and is blacke in colour, and shineth after the manner of lime or pitch, as though there were a litle blacke commixed with a great quantitie of red. This colour it caused altogether of melancholie. And these truely are the signes & tokens of a Carbuncle drawne from the very affect it selfe, to the which may be added a very grieuous and vehement paine of the afflicted member, as though it were bound with strong chaines. They also which are thus affected do necessarily fall into a feauer, and that sooner then they which are vexed with *Phlegmone Erysipelatosa*. But if any poyson doth lurke within (as oftentimes it chaunceth) the sicke persons are miserably tormented with perbreaking & continuall vomiting, together with a want of appetite and lothing of meate. There are present also with them quaking of the heart, panting or mouing of the stomacke, and an often fainting of courage. This euill is called properly of the Chyrurgians of our age, *Anthrax*, differing from *Carbunculus*, by reason of the malice and crueltie of the euill (as they please.) When as in verie deede ἄνθραξ among the Greeks is the very same, that *Carbo* or *Carbunculus* is among the Latins. Therefore it is superfluous to distinguish, and to handle in diuers Chapters the signes and cure of them (which all Chyrurgians almost do vse at this time.) But these Carbuncles do chiefly arise of violent causes killing the people sodenly, and they follow a pestilent plague. Wherefore there is required a diligent heede or care about them, neither must they in any case be neglected. Moreouer although ἄνθραξ or euery Carbuncle be a sharpe disease, dangerous & contagious: yet the worst of all and the most deadly is that of Auicene, which doth arise in the purest places and neare to the principall members. For it is to be feared, that this venimous matter which exciteth the Carbuncle, doth sodainly returne to the inward parts, and to some principall mẽber which if it shall happen, the sicke is in great danger of his life, especially if any euill signes shall bewray the same. But if the exalation thereof be onely filthy and corrupted with abhominable poyson, it is inough to kill the man. If a Carbuncle chaunceth about the stomacke, or about the cheekes or iawes, it sodainly oftentimes (as *Celsus* saith) bursteth out the stomacke. And lesse deadly is that Carbuncle in Auicene, which appeareth first red, and then yellow, or of orange colour. But if it waxeth blew or black, it killeth almost euery man,

Carbunculus duplex.
Signes of a Carbuncle.
1. *Vlcus crustosum.*
2. *Some great wheikes, some small.*
3. *The colour of the crust either earthie or blacke.*
4. *The flesh blacke about it.*
5. *Grieuous paine.*
6. *A vehement feauer.*
7. *Nausea.*
8. *Vomitus.*
9. *Want of stomacke.*
10. *Cordis tremor.*
11. *Animi deliquium.*
Carbuncles do follow alwayes a pestilent plague.
Iudicia.
1. *Whẽ a Carbuncle, is most deadly, (the iudgemẽt therof being taken from the affected place.)*
2. *Another iudgement taken from the affected place.*
3. *Iudgement of the colour.*

and there is none that is iudged more dangerous of the own nature then it. If the Accidentes, which are wont to accompanie with this diſeaſe, be verie much remitted or releaſed, there is ſome hope of recouerie. But if they be ſtill more and more continually ſtretched out, & made more vehement, then truely the matter is in great diſpaire.

4. Iudgement of the accidentes.

CHAP. XI.

Of the cure of a Carbuncle.

The cure of a carbuncle muſt be begun by bloud letting.

GALENE *Lib. method. med. 14. & ſecundo ad Glauconem,* commaundeth that the cure of a Carbuncle (hauing ſet downe a conuenient order of diet) muſt be begun with bloud letting by and by at the beginning (if none of thoſe things do let it, which are wont to forbid the cutting of a veine) who alſo willeth to drawe bloud euen to the fainting of the heart. For it profiteth much thoſe that be troubled with this euill: and this alwayes is to be marked, that the veine be ſtroken directly againſt the vlcer. But the choiſe of the veyne is manifeſted vnto vs of the affected member (as we haue ſayd in the cure of *Phlegmone.*) Therefore in that matter, euen a skilfull Phiſition muſt take counſell of the Chyrurgian, who hath the knowledge to declare, from what place and how much bloud is to be drawne out. The veine (as it behoueth) being cut, if nothing (as I ſayd) do hinder you, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſcarifie the ſayd tumour, vſing ſomewhat deepe cuts or woundes by reaſon of the thickneſſe of the malicious humour, (that is) ſuch cuttes as are ſomewhat deeper then ordinarie (as it pleaſeth Galene.) There are ſome, which would haue ſcarification made in the cruſtie or hard vlcer onely, and then they ſtraightway ſprinckle thoſe inciſions with hote ſalt water, that bloud might not meete together in them, or increaſe, but that it might be emptied out. Sometime they alſo apply ſome gnawing medicine, as arſenicke, which in this caſe among the reſt hath the greateſt vertue, but ſome do miniſter to the ſcarified place horſe leches or bloud ſuckers. But ſtrong repulſiues are in no wiſe to be vſed or applyed to the aggrieued member (although refrigeration be needefull, which indeede doth belong vnto the inflammation.) For you cannot ſo turne away the fluxe or preuent the malice hereof, becauſe of the thickeneſſe of the humour. And if at any time you ſhall do it, you ſhall finde ſome other naughtie humour (as Galene ſaith) which is ſetled in the depth or inward partes of the bodie: but this humour muſt not be ſuffered to flowe aboundantly (the ſame Galene being our Authour.) Therefore ſuch remedies are to be ſought for, as by a moderate repreſſion can digeſt or diſperſe the humour. Such truely is that cataplaſme, both that which is made of plantaine, and alſo that which is made of lintels twiſe ſodden. But with this you muſt commixe crummes of bread, which haue bene baked in an ouen. Let the bread (after Galens counſell) be neither altogether without branne, nor verie full of it. But this kinde of cataplaſme is called of the latter ſort *Emplaſtrum de Arnogloſſa*, which they make after this ſort, ℞. of plantaine, lintels, bread baked in the ouen, of each a like portion, let them be boyled in water. To theſe Auicene putteth gaules, who alſo for this purpoſe doth allow the cataplaſme which is made of the two pomegranates ſodden either in vineger, or in ſharpe or tarte water, and theſe they

Venæ directio ſecunda.

Deepe ſcarification.

Sprinckling of hote ſalt water

Arſenicum. Sanguiſuga.

Fluxe in a carbuncle can not be turned away, neither ought it, Lib. 14. Ther.

A cataplaſme good for a carbuncle.

Cataplaſme de Arnogloſſa.

A cataplaſme of pomegranates.

they applie both to the affected member, and also to the partes about it. Of this minde also is *Paulus AEgineta*, who saith, that if you will plucke vp a Carbuncle as it were by the rootes, and disseuer it from hauing anie societie with the partes about it, you must seeth in vineger a sharpe pomegranate cut in small peeces: when the sore is corrupted you must wipe it smoothe, and clense it with a linnen cloth, and when it waxeth drie, you must moysten it with vineger. Also the kernell of the olde filberd nut or of the young doth ripen and breake Carbuncles. But the best remedie for the partes lying about it, is the oyntment made of Bole armoniacke, of the oyle of roses or mirtles, and of vineger: which is vsed, because the humour, which hath flowed alreadie, should not returne backe againe within. There are some which doe drawe and allure the poyson, and malicious humour in a Pestilent Carbuncle with sucking or drawing it with cupping glasses, and with medicines that can bring the humour to the place which is beset with *Carbo*. Which thing truely I would also counsell to doe, if ἀνθραξ doth occupie the arteries, and the partes about the lesser veines, and if the fluxe doth moue but slowly. But if it rusheth or breaketh forth strongly and aboundantly, the rage of the humour must be tamed and bridled by medicines that can moderately represse (as of late we recited out of Galene) least that there becaused too vehement paine through the fluxe that floweth so strongly in the affected member, and so the euill be made more painefull and angrie. But vpon this hard or crustie vlcer, especially when the member is putrified, you must lay some strong medicine both which can greatly drie (but not that which can concoct or digest) and also which can moue the matter, (seeing that so you shall fauour the putrifaction of the member,) of this nature is that of *Andron*, *Musa*, *Pasis*, or *Polyida*: and it must be washed in some sweete wine, or in *Sapa*, by reason of the thickenesse of the filthie humour. That Cataplasme also which in Galene is made of the meale of Tares and oximell, is rightly applyed, when as the vlcer is malignant and corrupted. But commonly the oyntment called *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum* is to be applied. But if these things doe little profite, you must come vnto more sharpe remedies, which haue euen a fierie force. Of the which kinde are these, the roote of *Dracunculus* or *Aristolochia* broken and layd in vineger, lime, arsenicke, yellow oker, and other of this sort, which do burne like fire. These do profit sufficiently, if they doe throughly resolue the corrupted member euen from the quicke. This being done, whatsoeuer is corrupted and dead within, you must by and by pull away and plucke it vp by the rootes. But when after these gnawing medicines there followeth a scurfe or scarre, which is drawne euerie way from the quicke flesh, the wound truely, which is raised through them, must be diligently regarded, as in other sores that be burned. But beeing in extreame diseases (as Hippocrates saith) extreme remedies are perfectly the best, we are constrained sometime (our medicines not preuailing with the euill) to roote out a malicious Carbuncle by actuall or manuell instrumentes (as they call it) that is, with a bright knife or some other such thing. But the end of burning is, while there is sense of paine euery way, as *Celsus* hath taught verie well. After these things the cruste or scabbe which is vpon the vlcers, must be resolued by

Paulus.

Nux auellana.

Remedies to draw the poyson in a carbuncle.

What must be applied to a crustie vlcer.

A cataplasme of the meale of Tares and oximell.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Adurentia medicamenta.

When adustion must be vsed.

Finis adurẽdi.

ſuch medicines as are meete for that purpoſe. But if the ſicke ſhall refuſe to ſuffer aduſtion, the helpe of ſome poore and baſe fellow is to be vſed, who by laying hold on the Carbuncle with his teeth may quite extinguiſhe and pull vp the ſame. As were in time paſt certaine people in Italie named *Pſilli*, who did ſucke their wounds, which they receiued by the ſtinging of Serpents, and that without any harme taking thereby Moreouer the Carbuncle being thus taken away, or conſumed any other way, the hollowneſſe thereof (the inflammation now ceaſing) muſt firſt be cleanſed, & afterward being made pure and cleane, it muſt be healed with filling medicines (which the Greekes call *Simulotica.*) Which when it is throughly filled, neither doth there remaine any hollow place at all in it, it is conuenient to vſe thoſe things which can bring it to a ſcarre, as in other vlcers. But if the euill doth not rage very much, but ſhall ſeeme to offer vs truce and peace, it is ripened and opened (as Auicene ſaith) by applying figges commixed well together with leauen and ſalt. And when this Cataplaſme or the like is layd to twiſe or thriſe, the place is wont to appeare altogether blacke and full of chinckes or cliftes, and then the place is to be ſcoured and cleanſed with mundificatiues made of *Apium.* That medicine alſo, which is made of the yolkes of egges and of ſalt, if it be often aplied, it ripeneth and openeth a Carbuncle. (as *Theodoricus* writeth.) For the ſame purpoſe we vſe commonly at this day that medicine, which is made of honie, ſalt, wheate meale, and the yolkes of egges. *Conſolida maior*, (that is) comferie (which the Greekes call *ſymphyton*) being brayed betweene two ſtones, doth heale *Anthrax* verie maruellouſly (as they report) and within the ſpace of one day it quite deſtroyeth it, ſo that it needeth no other curing after any more: beſides alſo it is a common helpe for other woundes. Some alſo do declare wonderfull things of *Scabioſa*: becauſe that, (it being eaten or drunke in wine) it thruſteth out internall tumours to the externall places, and it doth diſſolue and diſcuſſe them without paine.

Pſilli.

Maturatiuum Auicenne.

Mundificatiuum ex apio.

A common cataplaſme vſed in Paris.

Conſolida maior.

Scabioſa.

What things do reſolue the cruſtes of vlcers.

In the vlcers of a carbuncle theſe do reſolue the cruſtes or ſcurfe, freſh butter, ſwines ſuet, and other fat things of that ſort. For this purpoſe alſo this emplaiſter following doth maruellouſly profite: for beſides that it reſolueth the ſcarre, that is, the cruſt, more ſpeedily then the aforeſaid things, is alſo aſſwageth the paine that is cauſed either of the ſharp and burning medicines, or of the bright inſtrument, and it mightily diſcuſſeth the malicious humour, which exciteth the Carbuncle. ℞. of wheate and barley meale. ana. ℥. iij. of the which make a ſolide emplaiſter with the decoction of mallowes, violetes, and the rootes of *Althea*, and put thereunto of butter, and ſwines ſuet melted. ana. ℥. ij. the yolkes of two egges, which muſt be put in, when they are taken off the fire: and all theſe muſt be diligently commixed and incorporate together with the aforeſaid rootes and herbes, which muſt be well beaten and brayed together the one with the other, and then ſifted through a ſearce. As concerning their diet, epithemes, cordials, & other of that kind, which are made to ſtrengthen the heart, alſo Euacuations, if they be needefull, they do altogether pertaine vnto that part of Phiſick, which cureth with diet and medicines. Wherefore in miniſtring thē, you muſt aske the aduiſe or coūſel of ſome learned Phiſition. But cōmonly all mē almoſt do vſe *theriaca*, which is wōt to be miniſtred

Emplaſtrum eſcharem reſoluens.

Theriaca.

to

to the greatneſſe of a beane, made of the water of ſcabios, or if a very ſharpe and vehement feauer be preſent, you muſt make it of roſe water, or water of bugloſſe: which the ſicke muſt take ſixe houres after meate. But becauſe we haue made mention before of the Trochiskes of *Andron*, *Polyida* and *Muſa* (which Galen ſo greatly vſed) it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſet downe here the deſcription of them.

℞. of Cytines (that is) of the firſt flowers or buddes of a Pomegranate. ℥.x. of alume that may be cut. ℥.iiij. of coperous or vitriol. ℥.xij. of mirrhe. ℥.iiij. of frankenſence, *Ariſtolochia*, and gaules. ana. ℥.viij. of ſalt ammoniacke. ℥.iiij. *Andronis Trochiskus.*

℞. of pomegranate rindes. ℥. vj. of mirrhe. ℥.viij. of Alume that may be cut ℥ v. of frankenſence. ℥.iiij. of coperous. ℥.iiij. of the gall of a bul. ℥.vj. let theſe be taken in ſweete wine. *Polyidæ Paſtillus.*

℞. of cut alume. ℥ iij. frankenſence. ℥.iiij. of mirrhe as much, of coperous. ℥.ij. of the floures of pomegranates. ℥.xij. of bulles gall. ℥.vj. *Aloes*. ℥.viij. Take theſe in ſharpe wine. *Polyidæ paſtillus illud.*

℞. of cut alume, *Aloes*, mirrhe, coperous. ana. ℥.vj. of ſaffron, & of the dregs of the oyle of ſaffron ℥.iij. of the floures of pomegranates. ℥. iiij. Let them be taken in *mulſum* made of *Falernum*. *Muſæ trochiſkus.*

CHAP. XII.

Of Gangrena and Sphacelus.

GALENE *lib. 2. ad Glauconem*, calleth them Cankers, which by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the inflammation be made and changed into mortificatiõs, yet they be not throughly engendred and already confirmed. The force and tyrannie of this euill is ſo outragious, that except it be remedied very ſpeedily, the affected member doth eaſilie repreſent the habite of death (that is) it doth verie readily draw together the extinction and quenching both of life ſenſe and mouing. But when the member is ſo corrupted and ſo feeble, that it is altogerher without ſence, and as it were dead, ſo that whether it be ſtroken, or cut, or burned, the ſicke feeleth it not, then the Greekes call this euill no longer *Gangrena*, but *Sphacelus*, the Latins *Syderatio*, the latter ſort call it *Eſthiomenon*: which name alſo they giue vnto *Gangrena*. But Auicene calleth it *Eſthiomenon*, when as the corruption therof doth paſſe to the continuall parts, which terme the Grecians do vſe in an other order. Some call this affect ſometime *Herpeta Eſtiomenon*, ſometime verie improperly, *Cancer vlceratus*. But this affect chanceth alſo to the bones, when as the fleſh being beſet & compaſſed about with them, bringing forth and engendring filthy and ſtinking corruption, doth infect them with this horrible poiſon, and conſumeth them with moſt corruptible rottenneſſe. Therfore when as the member ſhall together appeare voide of life, ſence and mouing, you muſt by and by pare it to the quicke as neare as you can to the ſound fleſhe. *Sphacelus* therefore differeth from *Gangrena*, becauſe the one doth grow vp in the bones (as we haue declared) and not in the fleſh and the veſſelles of the bodie onely: but the other commeth not to the bone. Notwithſtanding it is one kinde of *Sphacelus* but it borroweth a proper and ſingular name beſide the common terme. This kinde of corruption being

what a Canker is, & whẽce it hath his beginning.

Gangrena peſſimus tyrannus

Sphacelus.

Syderatio oſſium.

The benũmed member muſt ſtraightway be pared.

perfect in the affected part, and altogether depriued of sence, is called commonly in France *Ignis Sãcti Antonij*. In another place, *Ignis Sancti Martialis*. But this mortification of the members, or the extinguishing and destroying of the life in them, chaunceth three wayes. One way, when as the member can no longer receiue the life that is sent to it frõ the heart through the Arteries, by reason of the dissoluing of the mixture and consent of the affected member. Which mixture and harmonie of the member is dissolued and destroyed either becausse of too much cold, (as sometime it happeneth in sharpe and boysterous winters) or by reason of immoderate, rash, and vnaduised refrigeration of the inflammation, or else becausse of the exceeding, and vnmeasurable vehement heate, and poyson of the inflammations, and malignant vlcers (as they call them.) Another way *Gangrena* and *Sphacelus* are cauled, when as the life being gotten into the member is choaked & stopped, as it oftentimes happeneth in great inflammations, which sometime do so close vp and stoppe the veines, Arteries, and pores of the skinne, that there the spirites, (the breathing forth of the vaporous streames, and the drawing in of the aire, being altogether hindred) are strangled and choaked. The third way, these mortifications & destroyings of life are cauled in the members, when as the passage and flowing of the vitall breath from the heart to some member is letted and forbidden, and that happeneth either by reason of a vehement and strong binding, or else becausse of some bruse receiued in these passages and pores, through the which the breath is caried. To conclude, *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, which the Grecians call *necrosis* and *Sphacelus* do chaunce vnto mens bodies, destroying either the member, or the vitall facultie, or the naturall heate and temperature of the bodie. But the signes of *Gangrena* and *Syderatio*, Galen in his little treatise of tumors aboue nature declareth to be these. First truly that flourishing colour is extinguished in them, which is wont to be in phlegmonous inflammations, then paine and beating of the pulses (that is) the mouing of the Arteries, which is felt of the sicke, do depart a little aside, yet their naturall disposition not altogether ended, but their sense altogether dead and mortified. Whereupon the member straight way appeareth blacke, and it is verie soft and full of corruption, it breatheth out a filthie sauour and it is like vnto a dead thing without life. Whereby it commeth to passe, that when it is touched with the finger, it easily yeeldeth verie deepely, neither after doth it rise vp againe or returne, but the skinne appeareth as though it were separated from the flesh. But this mortification of the affected member, (which the Grecians call *Gangrena*,) is of so great crueltie and madnesse (as *Paulus* saith) that except you presently secke a remedie for it without all delay, the affected member soone perisheth, and then it inuadeth the other parts that be next vnto it, and killeth the man. But if (as *Celsus* reporteth) it yet hath but small power, but is now a beginning, it is not verie hard to cure, especially in a young mans bodie, and so much the rather if the muscles be sound and whole, if the sinewes be not hurt, or smally affected. But when this euill hath taken deepe roote, and is turned already into *Sphacelus*, it is vncurable, and very many do dye of a cold sweat.

Ignis Sancti Antonij.

Three causes of mortificatiõ.

1. *What things do dissolue the mixture of the member.*

2.

3.

Signes of Gangrena & Sphacelus.

1.

2.

3.

4.

Iudicial lib. 4.

Lib. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the cure of Gangrena caused of great inflammations, and of the destroying or curing of Sphacelus, which is ingendred of Gangrena.

BECAVSE aboundance of bloud doth ingender a canker, the order of the cure thereof must be straightway attempted by a plentifull and copious euacuation of the corrupt bloud, which is packed together in the affected member. But in the meane season, you must not neglect those things which shall seeme to belong vnto diet, medicines, cutting of a veine (if need require) and strengthning of the heart, in which things the Chyrurgian must take the aduise of some learned Phisition, who knoweth how to instruct him therein (as the matter shall require.) But there must be great plentie of that congealed bloud (which causeth mortifications) drawne out from the affected part, either in the veine that is cut, if it appeareth any thing full and swolne about the same member, or in the whole skinne of the part affected, together with his substance either kept downe and made obedient, or cut or diuided by manie deepe scarifications. Some to this end do applye horse-leaches, and they do open little the veines that be next the sore, but those deepe and often sections or scarifications are much more effectuall to cure that euill. But because of the greatnesse of the Canker, we vse very great sections, or often incisions (which we call Scarifications:) the one, when the euill is neare rotten, the other when it onely beginneth to rot. For the greater the euill is, the greater remedie, it requireth (as euerie man may know.) But when you haue drawne out bloud aboundantly by those deepe slashes or cuts, you must wash the place with salt water, that the thick bloud which otherwise would abound there, may be brought forth. Then you must applie some medicine that can let and dissolue putrifaction, as is the meale of tares or darnell, (which the French men call *yuraria*, because it doth prouoke drunkennesse after the manner of wine) or if there be scarcitie of them, you must vse the meale of beanes with *oximell* and *syrupus acetosus*. It shall be profitable also to wash the scarified place twise a day with hote vineger, but especially with *mulsum*. For these by reason of the drinesse, doe consume the filthinesse and corruption, and doe clense it, but because of their coldnesse they doe chalenge of putrifaction that, which is not yet defiled and corrupted. But when this feruent heate is now abated, and the furie of the euil somewhat remitted and slaked, you must lay aboue vpon the sore that oyntment which is commonly called *vnguentum Ægyptiacum*, made of verdigrease, alume, honie, and vineger, of each a like quantitie commixed and boyled together. This doth stop putrifaction and resolue it: and it doth disseuer also the putrified and corrupted humour from the sound and whole partes, and it doth cause it to fall and perish. Moreouer it procureth a crust or scarre, and preserueth and defendeth the whole partes from any infection. But if you will apply a more strong & effectuall medicine, mingle salt with the aforesaid things; or if the euill shall increase yet more and more, minister some of the Trochiskes before mentioned, being throughly

Emptying of corrupted bloud.

After scarification you must wash the place with salt water.

Medicines putrefactiues.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum.

Burning Trochiskes.

brayed and beaten together, and then washed in vineger and wine: as that either of *Andron*, or *Polyida*, or *Musa*: or one of those which are called of the latter sort *calidicon*, *Aldaron*, or that made of *Asphodelus*, which by reason of the burning force do separate the corruption from the sound partes. In this matter before all other things *Arsenicon* is praysed and allowed of, which they call *sublimatum*, *purum* or *correctum*, which must be dissolued either in some powder or in wine, and taken in linnen or cotten (which the French men call *Coton*.) And so applyed betweene the sound and corrupted member. For this doth straight way stay the euill, and that truely without paine. But if necessitie requireth, you must deuide the good from the euill with a certaine instrument called a probe, or sklise. But in ministring such medicines: that the matter may be handled more without care, you must be diligent to know the nature of the sicke bodie, (as Galene hath well taught vs saying.) If the body be rusticall and hard by nature, it requireth verie vehement medicines: but if it be tender and soft, it requireth more gentle and mild medicines. Infantes also or children, and they which loue to liue at their owne pleasure in idlenesse, must haue gentle medicines ministred to them. Moreouer the nature of the partes which are euill affected must be regarded as well as the whole bodie, when you do either cut off, or cut about that which is putrified and corrupted. For there are some sores, which very quickly do come to matter, and corruption, if they be negligently cured: and some verie slowly: some also do slowly feele the force and benefite of medicines applyed, and some verie soone.

Arsenicon sublimatum.

Lib. 2. ad Glauc.

When adustion is to be vsed.

Furthermore if (notwithstanding these burning medicines) the euill shal yet remaine, you must burne that place which is betweene the whole and corrupted member. But all these remedies are wont sometime to profite nothing at all, and then this is the onely helpe, although (as *Celsus* saith) it be a miserable helpe (that is) to cut off the member, which by little and little waxeth dead, that so the other partes of the body may be without daunger. For that which is once corrupted, euen with touching it doth infect and corrupt that part which is whole and sound after the manner of poyson. But if at any time you shall cut off this putrified and dead member, or shall lance of that which is corrupted in any member euen to the sound flesh, then by the counsell of Galen for more quietnesse sake, you must seare or burne with some bright instrument that member, which as a roote is ioyned to the whole and sound body, for so you shall quickly stay the flowing of bloud, and debarre corruption. Now adustion being done and ended, you must vse the iuyce of leekes, or (as Paulus saith) you must applie salt with the leekes, or some of those remedies, which we haue spoken of a litle before. For these do dry and bind the corruption, and do also stoppe the flux of humors. But when by vsing these remedies rottennesse or corruption shal seeme to cease: that the crustes and scurfe may soone fall away, you must vse a Cataplasme made of bread, or barley meale, or wheate meale boyled in *hydræleon*. Also that medicine which they call *Cephalicum*, annointed with hony. These through their cleansing or scouring, do resolue the crust from the flesh which lyeth vnder it. Moreouer that medicine which is called *Tetrapharmacum*, and that also called *macedonicum*, by mouing and

If the canker turneth into sphacelus.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

Lib. 4. Remedies that can losen the crusts from the seared members.

and mollifying the matter do bring the ſcurfs from the partes that lye vnder them, as all other things do, which do bring the ſores vnto ſuppuration. For theſe remedies do both mollifie, and ripen or end the matter vnder the cruſt, which matter doth reſolue it: (I meane that matter which lyeth betweene the cruſt and the fleſh. Bread alſo beaten and brayed with *apium*, or *ocinium*, thorough their clenſing doth mightely drawe the cruſtes from the whole partes without eroſion or gnawing, of the like vertue alſo is *Iris*, or the roote of *panax*, or of *ariſtolochia*, or of *acorus* mixed with honie. But they are commonly wont to vſe butter or ſome other annointing thing to reſolue the cruſtes. But when the cruſt is fallen of, they waſh the place with vineger, and then applie this plaiſter following, which is rehearſed by *Guilielmus de ſaliceto*. ℞. honie. ℔.ß. raw yolkes of egges iij. or iiij. of barley meale. ℔.ß. mingle theſe together and bring them into the foutme of an amplaiſter. But two or three dayes after, that the mundification or cleanſing may be the better accompliſhed, you may adde to this emplaiſter of choſen mirrhe. ℥. x. But in tender and young bodies for the ſeparation of the cruſt, and deterſion of the filthie corruption, the meale of tares mingled with honie, or frankenſence (which was vſed of Galene) doth aboundantly ſuffice. Theſe things being rightlie ordered, ſuch kinde of vlcers muſt ke brought vnto ſome ſoundneſſe of health with ſuch kind of medicines as can draw together the fleſh, and procure a ſcarre: the Grecians call them *ſynulotica* and *epolotica*. 1. Emptie out aboundantly the corrupted bloud, which is ſtuffed in the affected member. 2. After ſcarifications or ſections, waſh the affected place with ſalt water. Then lay on a medicine appointed for corrupted ſores. 3. When the furie of the euill is ſomewhat ſlaked, miniſter *vnguentum AEgyptiacum*. 4. If the euill will not yeeld to theſe remedies, ſeare with a bright and hoate yron that place which is betweene the filthie and corrupted member. 5. But if all theſe things ſhall nothing helpe, and now *Gangrena* is chaunged into *ſphacelus*, cut off that member verie ſpeedily, which is ſo periſhed euen to the whole, ſo that no filthineſſe remaine behinde. 6. When you haue cut off that which was putrified, you muſt vſe ſome hoate burning inſtrument, that ſo you may the more quietly pull vp euen the verie roote of the euill. 7. After exuſtion, miniſter the iuyce of leekes, and other ſuch things, which do drie, bind, and ſtoppe fluxe. 8. Make no great ſpeede to reſolue the cruſt or ſcurfe by vſing burning medicines, or ſome hoate inſtrument from the ſubiect places (for then there is wont to follow abundance of bloud.) 9. When rottenneſſe or corruption is ceaſed, and you feare no more the flowing of bloud, apply thoſe things which can draw of the cruſt. 10. When the cruſtes or ſcurfes be falne from their places, you muſt vſe the ſame cure, as in other places.

Butyrum.

Emplaſtrum Gulielmi à Salicito.

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

The ſumme of the cure of Gangrena and ſphacellus.

1. 2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.
10.

Aphoriſmes.

1. First appoint a thinne and cooling diet for them which are vexed with *Gangrena* and *ſphacelus*. 2. If nothing do let it, turne away the fluxe by letting of bloud: and draw it out aboundantlie, if it floweth plentifullie. 3. Purifie the bloud with the medicine which is called *Catholicon*, or with the blacke pith of *Caſia fiſtularis*, or with the decoction of *Tamarindi*, of hoppes, and fumitorie. 4. Let the ſicke take *Theriaca*, and other of that kinde, which are able to defende the heart, (which is the fountaine and beginning of life) from thoſe cor-

pertaining to a phiſitiõ.

1.
2.
3.
4.

rupted and filthie ſmelling fluxes, which are mounted vp from the putrified member.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Eryſipelas and other tumours cauſed of Choler.

Fleume in the generation of humors is next vnto bloud.

ALthough fleume in generation of humors, doth follow next vnto bloud, & there be greater abundance of that humour in the body next vnto bloud, then of other humors, yet becauſe tumours aboue nature proceeding of choler (which they commōly call cholerike apoſtemes) do in many things greatly cōſpire & agree with bloudy humors, it followeth (after the determination of *phlegmone*, and of other tumours conſiſting aboue nature, which proceede of bloud) that we now ſpeake of thoſe ſwellings, which are cauſed of choler, and are called of the Greekes by this generall name *Eryſipelata*, but of the auncīt Latins *Ignes ſacri*. *Eryſipelas* therfore is the braunch or bud of cholericke fluxe, moſt abiding about both the skinnes (that is) both about that which outwardly couereth all the partes of the body, and alſo about that filmie and thin skin which inwardly compaſſeth the internall partes. But oftentimes alſo it occupieth ſome of the fleſhe that lyeth vnder it, as *phlegmone* (which is the iſſue of bloudy fluxe moſt incidēt to fleſhy bodies) doth alſo poſſeſſe ſome of the skin. Therfore when very thin choler, or hote bloud which is thin alſo in ſubſtance, (called of the latter ſort *cholera naturalis*, but of Gal. χολὴ ξανθὴ) ſpread abroad ouer the skin onely, nothing moleſting the fleſh vnder it, & yet ſomewhat raiſing the member into a tumor with a languiſhing inflammation & yellow redneſſe, & altogether doth yeeld when it is touched. This affect is properly called of Galen, a true & exquiſite *Eryſipelas*. But this is for one conſideration, or (as they ſay) it chanceth vniformely, and without vlceration. Auicene calleth it *ſpina* But when a humour of bitter choler ſhalbe more thicke & ſharpe, then that it cā returne again naturally, it doth exulcerate or fetch off that litle outward skin, (which the Greeks call *Epidermida*) & ſometime that exulceratiō of the skin in proceſſe of time pierceth ſomwhat deepely, ſo that it toucheth the inner fleſh vnder it, & then that affect is called alſo *Eryſipelas* but with vlceration, which (as Galen ſaith) is all one with *Herpes*. But if it be neither a cholerick fluxe, nor a bloudy humour, but equally congealed of them both, it is not then called *Eryſipelas* only, but Galen termeth it a diſpoſition throughly commixed with *Eryſipelas* & the inflāmation. But of that which is predomināt in the mixture, is the title giuen to the euill. For when bloud ruleth, it is called *phlegmone eryſipelatoſa*: but whē choler raigneth, we terme it *Eryſipelas plegmonōſum*. But whē neither hath ſuperioritie, but the accidents of them both appeare equal together in power, then that euill ſhalbe called a meane betweene *phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas*. Now alſo of other mixtures, there ſhalbe the like interpretation, that is, if much choler be mingled with a thin and ſmall humor, either of fleume or melancholie, it ſhalbe called *Eryſipelas ædematōſum* or *ſchirrhoſum*. Moreouer when we ſpeake ſimply of choler, or of a billious humour, after the manner of Galen and other Phiſitions, we meane pale choler, yellow, and bitter, and not that which is ſoure & blacke. And this is called of others, *naturalis & certa cholera*, hauing his generatiō of bloud that is thin & hote. But melancholie we neuer

Eryſipelas quid.

Eryſipelas exquiſitum.

Spina.

Eryſipelas cum vlceratione.

Eryſipelas non legitimum.

Mediū vitiū.

Bilis.

uer absolutely do terme choler, but alwayes with an adiection of the humour which ioyneth the colour of the name. Choler therfore, which is called of the Greekes χολὴ, & commonly *cholera*, is a hote & dry humour, proceeding of the thinner & hotter part of *chylus*, or thin and hote bloud (as we said a late.) And this is two maner of wayes according to the diuisiõ of the new Phisitions, that is to say, naturall and vnnaturall. Naturall choler is a humour of power hote & dry, in substance thin, of colour yellow or red, declining vnto a certaine colour like orenge taunie, but in tast very bitter, & not sharp or soure (as some vntruly haue affirmed.) Vnnaturall choler is sayd to be that which doth degenerate from the aforesayd bilious humour, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the bounds of his circuite, which if it doth once passe or go out of, it is now not to be accounted choler, but rather some other humour. But this (I meane choler) doth happen to transgresse the limites of his liberty or circuite two wayes. 1. One way (as we may say) by it selfe, and in it selfe. 2. The other way by admixtion with others. By it selfe and in it selfe is also two fold. 1. one way, when as that naturall choler doth putrifie, and is burned within, and that is called *adusta per putrefactionem*. i. burnt through putrifaction. 2. The other way, when as vnnaturall choler called *vitellina*, is throughly concocted euen with a fierie heate in the liuer, or in the stomach, or in the veines, and it is made of the colour of leeks, which they also call *prassina*, or it is caused to be rusty or cankred, which truely are extreme griefes. But vnnaturall choler, or choler aboue nature, through admixtion, is caused, whé as another humor doth come vnto it extraordinarily. And this truly happeneth many wayes. For if thin & watrish fleume be mixed with it, it is made yellow & like vnto saffrõ, if thick & viscous fleume be cõmixed therewith, it is made like to the yolkes of egs: but if burned melancholie be ioyned therewith, it is made *bilis adusta per admixtionẽ*. And so after Auicenes minde & iudgement, there are six kindes of naturall choler; with Haly abbas, foure onely, for he maketh no mention at all of two kinds of adusted choler. But Gal. *lib. 2. de virtu. naturalibus* saith that there is no choler besids natuse, but that which is *vitellina*, verie like both in colour & thickneſſe to the yolkes of egs: for he saith that *porracea* and *æruginosa bilis* are engendred oftentimes in the stomach, of naughty & corrupted humours, by reason of the crudities or rawneſſe of meates and drinkes, as are, the herbe called beete, onions, coolewortes. And also sometime, when these things are not well digested, it is engẽdred in the very veynes, by reason of sicknes, or some other euil disposition. By these things therefore is gathered, that there are foure kinds or differences of inflammations engendred of choler (which commonly are called cholericke apostemes.) That is to say. Of true sincere, and laudable choler (which we call thinne and hote bloud) is engendred that kinde of inflammation, which Galene *Lib. 2. ad Glaueonem* calleth a true and exquisite *Erysipelas*, which is as it were a passion of the skinne onely: in Greeke it is called ἄκρισις ἐρυσιπέλατος. But of vnnaturall choler, being mixed with other humours, there do arise three other differences, as *erysipelas phlegmonodes*, *erysipelas ædematodes* and *erysipelas serrodes*. And of choler which besides nature is caused of adustion, by reason of the thinneſſe or thickeneſſe of the substance thereof there are engendred either *herpetes esthiomeni* (that is) *excedentes*, which are of the same

Bilis flaua duplex.

Not naturall.

Choler doth digresse from his owne nature.

Bilis vitellina
Porracea.
Prassina.
Æruginosa.

Crocea.
Auicene.
Haly.

Foure differences of inflammations comming of choler.
Verum erysipelas.
Three vnlawfull erysipelas.
Herpes excedens.

kinde with thoſe *eryſipelaca*, which do chaunce with vlceration, or there are engendred *phagedæne*, which do ſomewhat deepely gnaw the fleſhe together with the skinne, and there are cauſed exulcerat cankers, & other ſuch gnawing euils, there are alſo engendred *cacoëthe* (that is) malignant vlcers, which are called of the late Chyrurgians *puſtulæ corroſiuæ*. Therefore in ſuch kinde of humours, that is truely the moſt thinne, which raiſeth the exulcerated *herpes*: and that moſt thicke, which prouoketh the canker. Then that which pertaineth vnto thickneſſe, occupieth the next place, which doth engender *phagedæne*, as Galene hath noted *Lib.* 14. *meth. med.* The cauſes of a true *eryſipelas* as alſo of a true *phlegmone* are three. *Prægreſſæ*, which are called alſo *primatiue*, 2. *antecedentes*, 3. and *coniunctæ*. But *eryſipelas* is ſeldome cauſed of any primitiue cauſe: notwithſtanding violent frictions, the applying and miniſtring of attractiue medicines do oftentimes excite or cauſe the ſame.

Phagedæna.
Cancri vlcerati.
Cauſæ veri eryſipelatis.

CHAP. XV.

Of the ſignes and tokens of a true eryſipelas.

THE markes and tokens of a true and exquiſite *eryſipelas* are gathered and knowen by conferring the ſame with *phlegmone* according to the doctrine of Galene 14. *Therap.* and 2. ad Glauconem: whereby it plainely appeareth that a true and lawfull *eryſipelas* is a certaine *ſpecies* of *phlegmone* (that is) of an inflammation, as it is generally taken. The ſignes therefore of *eryſipelas* are theſe, a red colour to behold, declining ſomewhat to yellow, which yellowiſh colour doth eaſily yeeld to touching or handling of it, (that is) by thruſting it downe with the fingers, and then it flydeth in againe, a ſmall tumour rather remaining the skinne, then deſcending deepely, vehement heate cauſing a more vehement feauer then that which is aſcended of *phlegmone*: for *eryſipelas* is farre away more hote, then *phlegmone*. No great or ſtrong breaking of the pulſes, which is the proper ſumptomate of a great *phlegmone*. A byting and pricking paine without any extenſion, as it chaunceth in *phlegmone*, and many other like ſignes which do ſignifie the dominion and rule of choler. But that which pertaineth vnto the iudgementes hereof, *eryſipelas* doth chieflie lay hold on the face, and beginneth commonly in that part of the noſe, which is commonly called *lepus*, then ſtraightway it ſpreadeth ouer the whole face, and that through a double occaſion, that is, for the thinneſſe of the skinne, and lightneſſe of the choler. But in the vncouering or laying naked of any bone, *eryſipelas* is a ſodaine and maruellous diſeaſe, as Hyppocrates writeth *Lib.* 7. *Aphoriſme.* 19. that is to ſay, it is an euill ſymptomate, if the fleſh lying round about the naked bone doth ſeeme to be occupied of *eryſipelas*, but this, as Galene witneſſeth, chaunceth verie ſeldome. Againe the ſame Hippocrates writeth in the Aphoriſme following, that of *eryſipelas* there commeth corruption, ſuppuration, together with the diſeaſe, which things (ſaith Galene) neuer doe chance vnto *eryſipelata*, except it be to them, which are very malignant. A true and lawfull *eryſipelas* hath foure times or ſeaſons, as other tumours alſo aboue nature haue: the ſignes whereof are to be ſought out of thoſe things which went before. An exquiſite *eryſipelas* is ſeldome ended by ſuppuration, but chiefly through an inſenſible tranſpiration or reſolution. There happen ſometime

Signes of eryſipelas.
A yellowiſh redneſſe yeelding to the finger, a ſmall tumour, vehemẽt heat.
Small pulſe.
Pricking paine.
Indicia.
Eryſipelas followeth the order of a tertiã feauer.

in

in *Eryſipelas* certaine ſymptomates, which oftentimes by reaſon of their greatneſſe do exceed the verie cauſe of the euill it ſelfe, and therefore they do hinder the order of the cure (that is) they do change and peruert the method of curing (as hath alſo bene ſayed before in *phlegmone*.) Moreouer alſo, *Eryſipelas* followeth the mouing of a Tertian feuer, with whoſe matter it hath a certaine analogie and proportion, for the matter of them both is a cholericke humour. But it is not good to driue or turne *eryſipelas* from the outward partes to the inward, but contrariwiſe from the inward members to the outward partes, as *Hyppocrates* hath written *lib. 6. Aphor. 25.* But thoſe *eryſipelata* which do ariſe about the head, do put vs to more trouble, which (as *Paulus* ſaith) are wont to be ſo dangerous, that except they be holpen with ſome effectuall remedie, they ſometime ſtrangle and choke the ſicke. *Hyppocrates* alſo writeth, that *eryſipelas* is verie mortall and deadly, if it chanceth in the wombe of a woman with childe, for *eryſipelas* being thus engendred in the wombe, the childe of neceſſitie dieth. For truly a ſharp feuer (as *Galen* ſaith in his commentaries) oftentimes deſtroieth it without inflammation.

Eryſipelata about the head are verie hard to be cured.

Eryſipelas in the wombe of a woman killeth the childe.

CHAP. XVI.
Of the cure of Eryſipelas

SEEING that *eryſipelas* (as alſo *phlegmone* whereof we intreated a litle before) is a hote affect, and engendred of the defluxion of humours: the method of the whole curing thereof ſhall alſo be two fold: that is to ſay, refrigeration, and euacuation. And as in *phlegmone* the order of euacuation did ſurmount and ouercome the method of refrigeration: ſo in *eryſipelas*, refrigeration is more needfull then euacuation. For the one doth trouble and moleſt in quantitie, but the other (which is *eryſipelas*) in qualitie. Therefore *eryſipelas* muſt be greatly cooled and litle emptied, wheras contrariwiſe an inflammation ought to be plentifully euacuated, and litle refrigerated. Although there be a common chapter and ſimme of curing both affectes, as *Galen* ſayeth, that is, the vacuation of the troubleſome humour: and therfore after that *eryſipelas* hath bene cooled, we vſe thoſe medicins which can digeſt or diſcuſſe. Furthermore that we may attaine vnto this vniuerſall method which we haue ſayed to be two fold (I meane refrigeration and euacuation of the noyſome humour:) it ſhall not be amiſſe, if we declare this cure by foure other particular orders after the conſent of the Chyrurgians of our time. The firſt ſcope conſiſteth in the right obſeruation of a good diet. The ſecond concerneth the auerſion of the humour that floweth to the affected member, which they call *antecedens materia*. The third conſiſteth in the emptying out of the humour which hath flowed alreadie into the diſeaſed part, which they alſo call *materia coniuncta*. The fourth and laſt is buſied and occupied about the correction and keeping backe of the euill ſymptomates that may happen thercunto. We ſhall eaſily diſpatch the firſt ſcope, if the applying of all thoſe things which they call *Res non naturales* ſhall belong vnto moiſtneſſe and to coldneſſe, as is a feuer tertian, ſeeing that *eryſipelas* hath his beginning of choler, which is of a hote and drie temperature. Therfore chuſe & prepare an aire as neare as you can, that is ſomewhat cold and moiſt. In ſummer let the ſicke be in a verie colde houſe

Two generall orders in the cure of eryſipelas.

Foure particular intentions of curing eryſipelas.

1
2
3
4

Primus ſcopus.

Aire.

ſomewhat within the ground, that is, windie and towards the North. But if there be no ſuch place to be had, and the ayre verie hote, make it readie for him your ſelfe by Art. Powre cold water very often out of one veſſell into another: ſprinkle the pauements of the houſe daily with water that is altogether ycie and cold. Spread vppon the floore roſes and violettes, vine leaues and branches, ſallow boughes, and other floures and buddes, which are of a cold and moiſt faculti'e. Let no great companie of men come into the parlour or place where the ſicke abideth. Let him eſchue all fat, ſweete, ſoure, and hote meates. Let him eate lettuce, gourdes, purſlaine, ſorrell, (which they call *acetoſa*) rice, and other things of that kind which do thicken & refrigerate bloud. Let him altogether abſtaine from wine. Let his drinke be ptyſan broath, or barley water. Let him keepe a temperate dyet. Let his bellie be alwayes ſoft and ſoluble. Let him abſtaine from all exerciſe and mouing, eſpecially that which is vehement and immoderate. Let him eſchue anger, contentions, and all vehement motions and perturbations of the minde as mortall enemies. Let all things be cleene and handſome about him. Let him refraine from carnall copulation. And let theſe things ſuffice concerning the firſt ſcope. But we ſhall alſo bring to paſſe our ſecond intent about the cure of *eryſipelas*, if by conuenient euacuation we take away that humour which is left behind in the bodie. Therefore in a true and lawfull *Eryſipelas* not neceſſarily as in *phlegmone*, we muſt draw bloud out of a veine, but we muſt alſo purge the belly downward with ſome medicine which can expell choler (called of the Greeks *cholalogon*) if that the affect be great, and the bodie doth ſeeme to abound with choler. Therefore when *eryſipelas* doth accend and kindle feuers, and thoſe more vehement then *phlegmone*, thoſe medicines which are exceedingly hote, and the iuyce of *ſcammonium*, (called of the new Greekes *dacrydion*) and that alſo which is commonly called in the ſhoppes *electuarium de ſucco roſarum*, are in no wiſe meete or conuenient for this diſeaſe, and therefore you muſt vſe either rewbarbe, or that potion which of Raſis is called *aqua tamarindorum*, which is made as followeth. ℞. damaske prunes. 24. *tamarindi* that be new. ℥. x. of broken ſugar. quar. ſ. to the which things to make them more effectuall, you may adde rewbarbe that is well waſhed. But if the euill be verie litle & ſmall, theſe medicines called *cholagoga* ſhall not neede, but it ſhall be ſufficient to vſe at that inſtant ſome ſharpe clyſter, (as it pleaſeth *Galen*.) But in a phlegmonous *eryſipelas* your labour ſhall not be fruſtrate, if you ſhall beginne the cure with bloudletting (if nothing doe let it.) For that kinde of *eryſipelas* doth often lay hold on the face, whereupon *Paulus* commaundeth that by and by in the beginning you muſt cut a veine in the elbowe eſpecially chuſing in it the ſhoulder veine. But if that doth not appeare, you muſt take that which is moſt obiect to the ſight. And if any thing do hinder the detraction of bloud, he commaundeth to vſe a purgation made of ſome medicine which is dedicated and appointed to driue out choler, yet *Paulus* doth not contend with *Galen*: for whereas *Paulus* hath commaunded to cut a veine in that *eryſipelas* which doth riſe about the head or face, he meant that of a phlegmonous *eryſipelas*, which verie often moleſteth the face: but *Galen* ſpeaketh of a lawefull *eryſipelas*, wherein he vſed no detraction of bloud. But in *Eryſipelas œdematoſum* or *ſcirrhoſum*,

Cibus.

Potus.

Motus.

Animi affectus.

Venus.

Secundus ſcopus.

2. ad Glaut.

In a phlegmonous eryſipelas, it is good to let bloud.

sum, you must vse a purgation which hath a mingled and manifold force, that is, which can purge, partly choler, partly fleume, or a melancholie humour. And truely in all these things the aduise of some learned and wise Physition is to be asked, from whose counsell and decree the Chyrurgian ought not in any wise to swarue or digresse. And let this be sufficient that once you haue bene admonished, that the Chirurgian ought not to attempt any thing at al in those things which belong vnto purging and bloud-letting, without the counsell and warrant of some cunning Physition, except sometime necessitie shall compell him, and when no Physition is ready at hand. The third intention is finished and performed by cooling and repelling medicines in the beginning of the fluxe, excepting those causes which we haue mentioned in our generall discourse. But the beginning being passed, and fluxe now remayning, you must emptie that which cleaueth fast vnto the member and is compacted therein, by applying outwardlie digestiue or euaporatiue medicines, that is to say, through the transpiration and breathing through to the sense. But of all these kindes of tumours thus consisting aboue nature, there is a double euacuation. *Galen Lib.* 14. *Therap.* one truely of repulsiues to the other parts, the other of outward digestiues, through that vaporous breathing, which doth flie the sence. But because *Erysipelas* doth afflict and molest not onely in quantitie, but also in the verie qualitie, by reason of the vehement inflammation: it doeth require a more often and greater refrigeration then *phlegmone* doeth. Therefore after the emptying of the whole body (as we haue said a litle before, we will vse represstiue remedies, cooling it as it is conuenient) the afflicted member, or that parte which sustaineth the skinne: especially when *Erysipelas* is engendred without anie manifest cause. But the end of refrigeaation is the mutation or change of the colour: for that which is a pure *erysipelas* doth by & by rest and cease with this, but that which is not pure, but after a sort phlegmonous, if you shall refrigerate it much, it maketh the skin blacke and blew, but if you shall desist from seeking to change the colour, it waxeth black, especially in an aged bodie: so that some of those refrigerated tumors cannot perfectly be healed, no truly not with digesting medicins; but that some scirrhous tumour will remaine behind in the member. It is farre better therfore (saith *Galen*) when you see the colour of the affected member altered, to passe ouer from refrigerating and moderating helpes vnto their contraries (that is) vnto dissoluing or digesting and drying remedies, before that the member be altogether blew or blacke. But you must alwaies beware and take good heed, that those things which be annoynted, be verie liquide and moist, and that they be often changed; and that those things which be applyed, be often washed with spunges dipped in some colde liquor. For the great heate of the member quickly bursting forth into a vapour, doth drie vp these things. But amongest those things whiche carie with them a refrigerating and repelling force; very conuenient for this affect, *Auicen* chiefly praiseth among simple remedies the sprinkling on of cold water. But *Galen* commendeth the iuyce of nightshade, of syngreene, of purslaine, of *psillium*, of henbane, of lettuce, of *vmbilicus Veneris* (which herbe is called of the Greekes *Cotyledon*) of endiue and succorie, of fenne lintels, of gourdes, and other of that sort. Also that cerate made of

In phlebotomy & purging, the Chyrurgian must be taught by the Physition.

Tertia intētio.

Hic Guido deprauatè citat Gal.

How much erysipelas is to be refrigerated.

Lib. 14. *Ther.*

Materia refrigeratum ex Gal.

Ceratum.

verie cold water, which conteineth foure times as much of oyle of roſes with white waxe. ℞. oyle of roſes with oyle of vnripe grapes made without ſalt, which being made verie ſoft and pliable in a morter, ſprinckle on cold water as much as you thinke good, with the which if you commix a little vineger that is thinne and very cleare, you ſhall make the medicine more excellent and more effectuall. Moreouer all theſe things muſt be miniſtred cold, and often chaunged, before they be any thing dried or withered. It profiteth alſo very much and that preſently to annoint the member annoyed with *Eryſipelas*, with ceruſe onely, or mingled with vineger and *lycium*, or with *terra cimolia*, or with potters clay, with nightſhade, or with *ſpuma argenti* with oyle of roſes, and with *acatia* with vineger. To this purpoſe alſo this compound following helpeth much.

A compound medicine.

℞. iuice of plantaine. ℥.j. oyle of roſes. ℥.iij. *lithargyri nutriti*. ℥.j. *ceruſa lota*. ℥.iij. of womans milke. ℥ ß. let all be commixed together and brayed in a leaden morter, and make a liniment. But *lythargyrum* and *ceruſa* ought firſt to be beaten, and then the oyle and iuyce aforeſayd muſt be powred on them ſoftlie by little and little, vntill they be throughlie incorporate together the one with the other. But if you deſire greater coolers, you may commixe with theſe and other remedies before recited (according to *Paulus* minde) a little *opium* or *cicuta*, or mandrake. But I thinke it good to abſtaine from applying either of them or the like, which are of a ſtupefactiue nature, except great neceſſitie doeth moue you thereunto. But when the inflammation of the affected member is ſomewhat abated, and the heate of *Eryſipelas* ſlaked, *Galene* (before that any blewneſſe did appeare through refrigeration) did vſe to diſſolue the humour gotten into the member (which they call *coniuncta materia*) by laying on a cataplaſme of barley meale, or of *cruda polenta* (called in Greeke ἄμυλον) and of other things before mentioned in the order of curing *phlegmone*. For euen as the ſignes of *Eryſipelas* were deſumed and knowen by the analogie of the tokens of *phlegmone*: ſo alſo the remedies of the cure of *Eryſipelas* are to be fetched from the proportion of the remedies of healing *phlegmone*. Furthermore of ſuch kinde of medicines, which haue a diſſoluing and breathing qualitie verie neceſſarie in this euill, there are verie many, both ſimples and compoundes, rehearſed of *Paulus Ægineta Lib.4.cap.21.* and of *Ætius Libro 14. de re medica*. But now it ſhall be ſufficient to rehearſe among ſo many, one onely remedie which of all the reſt ſeemeth in my opinion to be moſt excellent. ℞. of the tender leaues of *althæa lib.*j. boyle them in *hydreleum*, and being well boiled, bray them well together, putting thereunto of oyle of roſes, ℥.iiij. *argenti ſpume*, and *ceruſa*. ana. ℥. ij. ß. againe plaine or ſmooth them with the iuyce of coriander, of ſyngreene, or nightſhade, then put thereunto a few crummes of bread and annoint them after the maner of an implaiſter But if peraduenture blewneſſe ſhall now occupie the place, (the skinne being cut before) you muſt lay a cataplaſme aboue vpon it, and ſprinckle the place aboundantly, as *Galene* hath commaunded, with hote water: for it doeth digeſt and waſh the wound. Alſo water and ſalt brine in the meane ſeaſon ſhall auaile to nouriſh or cheriſh the place, when it is ſomewhat thicke and groſſe, which things doe ſcoure and clenſe the thickeneſſe thereof. The fourth intention of the cure of *Eryſipelas*, which is the correction of the accidentes, is perfected, (as we haue ſayd in the

Euacuation of the ioined matter by euaporatiues. ἄμυλον.

Hydreleum is a mixture of water & oyle.

Si liuoriam locum occuparit.

Quarta intentio.

the cure of *phlegmone*) when as we shal returne and driue backe the recourse of the matter, induration, and corruption together with the paine and the heat. For these symptomates are wont to happen as well vnto *Erysipelas*, as vnto *phlegmone*. Moreouer the best remedie to asswage paine and vehement heate, is made of leaues & rootes of henbane, which you must rowle vp in towe and seeth them with prunes: then commixe them with the oyntment commonly called *populeon*, or with swines greace (as is sayd before in the cure of *phlegmone*.) But if *Erysipelas* shall chaunce to be exulcerated, you shall cure it with applying *vnguentum album* or *vnguentum de lythargyro*, with the which if you shall commixe a little *scoria*, which is the drosse of lead molten in the fire, you make the remedie most excellent and effectuall. But it shall be more profitable to comprehend the whole order of the cure of *Erysipelas* in some short sentences, after the manner of an Epilogue, that those things whereof we haue spoken before somewhat at large, may take the deeper roote in our mindes and memories. For this cause therefore we haue taken out of Galene these seuen Aphorismes following, which summarily do containe the whole cure of *Erysipelas*. 1. In an exquisite *Erysipelas* make no detraction of bloud. 2. If the bodie be full of choler and the affect be great, purge the bellie downward with the medicine *cholagogon*. 3. If the disease be little and small and the body without choler, vse no medicine to purge choler, but content your selfe with some sharpe clyster. 4. When you haue purged the whole bodie (as you must) annoynt the affected in the beginning with medicines that can moderately represse and aboundātly refrigerate, euē to the changing of the colour. 5. When you see the colour of the aggrieued member altered, and the heat of *Erysipelas* slaked, and the inflammation ceased, you must passe ouer from refrigerating and adstrictiue medicines before that the member be throughly blew or blacke, vnto their contraries (that is) vnto digestiues or discussiues and drying remedies. 6. Those *Erysipelata* which are caused of vlcers, and other manifest causes you must scarifie, and afterward applie a cataplasme of barley meale. 7. If *Erysipelas* be not exquisitiue or true, but *phlegmonous*: you may let bloud without fearing any thing, especially if bloud do abound in the bodie.

A remedie to mitigate paine and heat.

If Erysipelas be exulcerated.

Seuen Aphor. out of Galene concerning the whole cure of Erysipelas.

1. 2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Tumours which doe associate Erysipelas as Herpes both Miliaris and exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians cholericke pushes.

THose tumours aboue nature, which haue any societie with the aboue mentioned *Erysipelas*, or any way do seeme to pertaine thereunto (for that they haue their proceeding of vnnaturall, and hidden choler (that is) which is not mingled with other humours) both the latter sorte of Phisitions and also of Chyrurgians do call *mala cholericæ pustulæ*: but the Grecians, as Hippocrates, Galene & Paulus do call them *herpetæ*, which word doth almost sounde and agree with the Latines, as *malum quod serpit*, the creeping euill. For ἑρπω in Greeke is all one with *serpo* in Latin, whereupon ἑρπης is called *serpens*, yet *herpes* doth perfectly signifie among the Phisitions *malum quod serpit*, but a cer-

De herpete.

Pustulæ cholericæ vulgo appellatæ herpetes.

taine kinde of diſeaſe whereof we now entreate, therefore the creeping euill extendeth and ſtretcheth further then *herpes*, for *Phagedæna* are alſo called *ſerpentia vlcera*, creeping vlcers. But Auicene called all theſe kindes of puſhes *Formicæ*, and Galene numbreth them among inflammations, but *Celſus* ſeemeth to comprehend them vnder the name of *ſacer ignis*. *Lib.5. Cap.28. herpes* therefore is cauſed, when yellow choler, vnnaturall, alone, and ſecret, that is to ſay, which is commixed with no other humour, doth flow into ſome member, and there remaineth: whoſe ſubſtance if it be any thing thicke and ſharpe, it exulcerateth the whole skinne euen to the fleſh, which lyeth vnder it, and then this euill is called of Hippocrates and other Grecians ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος, but of the Latines *herpes exedens* or *depaſcens*, an eating or feeding *herpes*, and it is called 14. *Therap.* of Galen, by this abſolute name, *herpes*. But if choler be ſomewhat thinne, and not ſo thicke and hote, it exciteth ſmall whelkes outwardly in the ſuperficies of the skinne (for that it doth onely as it were burne and ſcald) like vnto the ſeedes of millet or hyrſe: by reaſon of which ſimilitude and likeneſſe the affect is then termed of the Latines *miliaris herpes*: but of certaine of the Grecians after Hippocrates time, it was called for the ſame reaſon κέγχρια: for κέγχρις in Greeke, is called *milium* with vs. And this kinde of ſpecies of *herpes* (Galene witneſſing the ſame *Libro ſecundo ad Glauconem*) doeth borrow his name or title of the generall worde, ſeeing that the ſame Galene calleth it *herpes* ſimplie and without addition. Notwithſtanding in another place by the name of *herpes*, Galene calleth it *herpes eſthiomenos*, that is, *exedens*, as afterward ſhalbe ſayd. But this kinde doeth not altogether cauſe the vlcer, as the other doeth which is called *excedens*, but as it hath bene ſayd, it exciteth little ſmall puſhes to the likeneſſe of *milium*, which puſhes in proceſſe of time, when they are broken out, doe turne vnto an vlcer. Therefore not without any great reaſon or cauſe did *Oribaſius* and certaine other alſo before Galenes tyme, iudge and thinke, that in this kinde of euill, there was mixed with choler ſome thinne fleume, which did bring forth thoſe little puſhes, whereupon it was called of ſome *puſtuloſus herpes*. But the other which is called *eſthiomenos*, is not ſo mixed with fleume, but ſeemeth to be a pure choler infected with no other humour: and therefore it chanceth with *eroſion*, which continually affecteth the skinne, whereupon this name is attributed vnto it. For *eſthiomenos* is all one with *erodens* or *exedens*. And truely this euill is of one & the ſame kinde with a puſtulous & exulcerate *Eryſipelas*, from the which notwithſtanding it ſomewhat differeth by reaſon of the thinneſſe of that bilious humour (whereof both of them doe take their beginning.) That is that which Galene teſtifieth in theſe wordes, It is (ſaith he) a verie thinne humour which raiſeth *herpes*, and ſo thinne truely that it paſſeth through not onely all the inward members, which are euery where of a fleſhy ſubſtaunce, but alſo through the verie skinne, euen vnto the outwarde little skin (which is called of the Greekes *Epidermida*) which onely becauſe it ſtayeth there, it both gnaweth and feedeth on: but if it ſhould alſo pierce through this, after the maner of a ſweat, it ſhould in no wiſe excite any vlcer, for that is a cõmon thing vnto vlcers which do ariſe of a byting humour, which vlcers they call *Spontanea*, becauſe the humour which cauſeth them,

Formicæ Auicenæ.

When herpes is cauſed.

Two kindes of Herpes.

1. ἕρπης ἐσθιόμενος. *exedens vel depaſcens.*

2. κέγχρια, *ſiue herpes miliaris*

Lib 14. Therap.

Ex Paulo & Gal.

Lib. de tumoribus præter naturam.

Lib. 4. Metho. medendi.

The cholericke humour, which cauſeth herpes is very thinne.

thé, is ſtayed & tarieth ſtill in their going out or iſſue: hither to Galen. When he nameth *herpes* ſimply & without any addition, he meaneth *herpes eſthiomenos*, as it is eaſie to be knowē by the ioyning together therof, by the ſignes & cure, & ſo in that place it borroweth his title of the generall word, when it is ſimply and abſolutely called *herpes*, as in that little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam*, where the ſame Galen writeth thus of that ſame kinde of *herpes* word for word; *Herpes* alſo feedeth and gnaweth vppon thoſe parts which are about it, but the exulceration is of the skinne onely. But almoſt all the barbarous ſort of Chyrurgians, euē they of late time, do comprehend both theſe kinde of *herpes*, viz. *miliaris* & *exedens*, vnder this title of *formicæ*, to whō both in this thing, & in many other alſo, Auicene firſt gaue the occaſiō of errour, who being deceiued by the likeneſſe of the name, becauſe the Greekes call *myrmeciæ*, that is, *formicæ*, a certaine kind of *verrucæ*, hath through a maruellous ouerſight, euē in the ſame Chapter, confounded thoſe *verrucæ* with *herpetes*. Guido notwithſtanding maketh a difference between *herpes* & *formicæ*, & confoundeth the name of *formicæ* ſomtimes with *verrucæ*, which the Greeks cal *myrmeciæ* and *achrochordonæ*, ſometime with *herpes exedens*, which (I meane *herpes comedēs*) is ſomtime named of the ſame Guido *herpeſtes*, ſomtime abſolutely *herpes*, who alſo thought this *herpes* to be nothing elſe but a puſtulous and vlcerated *Eryſipelas*, when this notwithſtāding as we haue alledged out of Galene, doth differ from the other, by reaſon of the thinneſſe of the humor. For that choler which exciteth *herpes* is thinner then that which cauſeth an vlcerate *Eryſipelas*. Furthermore *Eryſipelas*, which chanceth with vlceration, doth not only occupy the skin, but with it alſo, it annoyeth ſome part of the fleſh vnder it. But *herpes*, wherof we now intreat layeth hold on the skin onely, & exulcerateth it. Therfore although theſe euils are of one & the ſame kind, (as Galen thought) yet they are not altogether one, neither are they alike. Thoſe whelkes alſo, which the interpreter of Auicene and the vnlearned company of Phiſitions, do terme *morbili*, Hippo. *lib. 3. Epidemiarū* hath comprehended vnder *herpes*. But theſe *morbili* are cauſed of a more thin & ſléder matter, then thoſe puſhes which are commonly called *Variole*. For theſe (as Auicene writeth) proceede of bloud, but the other are cauſed through the admixtion of choler and bloud. But if any man doth long or deſire to know what name the auncient Phiſitions did bequeath vnto theſe puſtulous vlcers, we haue declared that in Latin they are called of Plinie *Papulæ*, and ſometime *pituitæ eruptiones*, flegmaticke eruptions, but in Greeke of Hippocrates *Libro tertio Epidemiarum*, *Ecthymata*, of Galen *Epanthemata*. But the ſignes, and iudgementes, and cauſes of both kindes of *herpes*, may ſufficiently be knowen by thoſe things which went before. It remaineth therefore that we now declare the cure of them. In curing theſe euilles called *herpetes*, (as in other ſuch like voluntarie vlcers, which haue their originall of a byting and vehement humour) three intentions are to be obſerued and marked. The firſt is, that the confluxion of the humour vnto the affected part be ſtopped and letted. The ſecond is, to make euacuation, of that, whatſoeuer is flowen already into the aggrieued member, and ſticketh faſt in the ſame. The third is, to heale the vlcer. We do finiſh our firſt intēt, by purging the whole body with ſome medicine that can bring forth the humor wherof the euill doth grow, &

Herpes exulcerateth only the skinne.

Auicene confoundeth myrmecia with herpetes.

Herpes eſthiomenos and Eryſipelas vlceratum are not all one.

Morbili ſunt ex herpetum genere.

Variole.

Papularum eruptiones.

Ecthymata.

Epanthemata.

Herpetum curatio.

Three things to be marked in the cure of herpes.

1. 2. 3.

Primus ſcopus

when the bodie is throughlie emptied, by repreſſing and driuing backe the humour that floweth. Therefore in *herpes exedens* we muſt vſe ſome medicine, which can prouoke choler downeward, ſeeing (as we haue ſayd before) a pure and ſincere biluous humour doth procreate this euill. It happeneth therefore that in reſpect of the emptying of the whole bodie, *comedentes herpetes* muſt be cured like vnto *Erypelata*. Therefore becauſe it is a thin and wateriſh humour which cauſeth this euill, Galene hath ſufficiently declared to molliſie and ſoften the bellie gentlie, or to prouoke vrine with thoſe things, which can moderately cauſe the ſame. But in the other kinde of *herpetes*, which by reaſon of the ſimilitude which it hath with *milium*, we haue ſayd to be called in Greeke *miliaris* and *cenchria*, there is required ſome remedie which is of a mixed facultie (that is) which can purge forth both choler and fleume. For ſome haue thought and that not without great reaſon (as Galene ſayth) that in this euill there is ſome fleume commixed with choler. Furthermore that humour which aboundeth in the bodie, and cauſeth the euill, beeing emptyed out (as it is required) you muſt applie thoſe medicines which can repreſſe and keepe backe the flowing of the humour, for then miniſtring of them ſhall be more without daunger, and more conuenient alſo, ſeeing that (as Galene ſayth) if one doe thruſt backe but a little portion of the vicious humour, which after conuenient purging, remaineth yet in the bodie; to the bowelles and great veynes, yet will not cauſe any ſenſible euill at all, that can be felt. But if the quantitie of the humour be great, it ſometime coucheth it ſelfe in ſome principall member, whereas through the force of the purging nature, the whole body is not euacuated either by purging downeward, or by the vrine, or by the skinne, which includeth the whole bodie. But repreſſiues and repulſiues be not onely thoſe which doe binde, but alſo thoſe which can refrigerate without any adſtriction. Of the which nature are theſe, as lettuce, knottegraſſe, fenne or ponde lintels, purcelayne, endiue, ſengreene, and other of that ſorte, which were verie conuenient alſo for *Eryſipelas*. But thoſe medicines, which beſides their cooling, are alſo apt by nature to moyſten, *herpetes* eſpecially *depaſcentes*, do in no wiſe require, but they doe onely admitte thoſe refrigeratiues, which can alſo greatly drie vp. For thoſe remedies which haue but a meane and weake force to coole and dry, as is nightſhade, are not ſufficient for them. Therefore by Galenes counſell you muſt in the beginning lay vppon them the young tender buddes of the vine, bramble leaues of *rubum caninum*, and plantaine. After applie alſo with theſe lintels, ſometime honie and barley meale. Alſo miniſter that cataplaſme *ſine ſemperuiuo*, which is appointed for thoſe phlegmonous tumors which proceede of fluxe, for it doth repell that which floweth, and it drieth vp that which is conteined in the affected member, and it ſtrengthneth the partes about it. The beginning of the being paſt, this remedie auaileth greatly. Make a Cataplaſme of the rindes of pomegranates ſodden in wine, and of *rhu* or *rho* (that is) of the ſeedes of the ſhrub *coriarium* (which of the late Phiſitions is called *ſumach*) and of the meale of barley. But by this cataplaſme you ſhall very well accompliſh the ſecond intention or ſcope of curing *herpes*, becauſe it is of ſufficient power to digeſt that, which is flowen already into the affected place, for

Herpes requireth the medicine cholagogon.

Herpes miliaris requireth a remedie which can purge both choler and fleume.

Reprimendi tempus.

Lib. 14. Therap.

Repreſſiues are not to be vſed if the humour be plentifull.

Reprimentium materia.

Thoſe remedies which do coole & moyſten are not meete for herpes exedens.

Repreſſiues meete for herpes exedens.

Cataplaſma.

Sumach.

Theſe things do accompliſh our ſecõd intẽtion.

for it appeareth euidently, that thoſe remedies which haue a repreſſing faculrie, ought to exceede in the generation of the vlcer, but when the vicious humour doth ceaſe to flow any more into the affected part, then thoſe medicines are requiſite which do digeſt. As cõcerning our third intẽt which declareth the cure of the vlcer, it behoueth you briefly to know theſe things following: viz. That euery vlcer whether it commeth of the owne accord, or be cauſed by ſome accidentall cauſe, doth deſire to be dried vp by ſome medicine (as Hippocrates ſaith) that is not ſharp, byting, or vehemently prouoking, except, when the vlcers be malicious and ful of corruption, for ſuch euils (ſaith Galen) require more ſharpe medicine, and thoſe which haue euen the power of fire, as is, *myſos* and *chalcitis*, and *arſenicum*, and lime, and *ſandaracha*, and other things of that kinde, which burne as hote as fire. Thoſe places therefore that are exulcerated in *herpes exedens*, muſt be tended with pilles, and trochiskes, written for the cure of *herpes* in thoſe bookes, which are called *pharmacentici*: which remedies, when neceſſitie compelleth vs to vſe them, muſt be throughly waſhed in *paſſum* or in ſome other ſweete wine, or if ſweete wine be not ready at hand, in thinne and ſomwhat ſharp wine, which is not too old (that is which for age hath no ſharpe taſt) or elſe in *poſca aquoſa* (which they call *oxycratum*.) Paulus in *herpes*, which annoieth vnder the skinne, vſeth theſe remedies; the ſcourings of lead ſteeped in the iuyce of ſmooth rew, or a cerate of mirtles in ſtead of reet. Another of old wooll, waſhed and burnt about a torch ℥.xij. ß. of wax. ℥. xxv. of the ſcourings of lead. ℥. j. of goates tallow, trimmed and waſhed with water. ℥.xxv. of mirtles. ℥.v. But for thoſe *herpetes*, which do gnaw and byte vehemently called *depaſcentes*, he chargeth to vſe this remedie: ℞. of the ryndes of ſweete pomegranates. ℥.vj. *argenti ſpume*. ℥.vj. of waſhed wooll cleauing to the torch or to ſome ſweete wood, & that burnt. ℥.iij. of waxe. ℥.xij. of ceruſe. ℥.viij. of frãkenſence, alume ſciſſible. ana ℥.j. let them be ſteeped in wine or in oyle of mirtles. But now the vlcers being of long cõtinuance, thoſe trochiskes aboueſaid, and other ſuch like medicines which are appointed to cure *herpetes*, muſt be waſhed neither in ſweete wine, nor in *poſca aquoſa*, but rather in wine that is ſomewhat ſharpe, eſpecially in that which is blacke, and if that be not to be had, you muſt vſe whitewine. But thoſe medicines which are more effectuall and moſt meete at that time, when vlcers be inueterate, are the pilles of *muſa*, *andron*, and *polyida*, whoſe deſcriptions are ſet downe in the ende of the cure of *carbunculus*, and thoſe trochiskes alſo, which of Auicene and the latter ſort of Phiſitions are called *calidicon* and *aldaron*. But thoſe *herpetes*, which doe onely exulcerate the outward skin, as they be which we haue called *miliares*, muſt in no wiſe be enioyned to any of thoſe medicines before rehearſed (if we will credit Galen) for they be verie vehement, and do greatly drie. But thoſe medicines whatſoeuer they be, which haue the nature and force of *glaucium* (that is) of *memytha*, ſhall ſuffice theſe vlcers and you muſt waſhe them with this, but eſpecially with water. But if theſe things ſhall nothing auaile, you muſt alſo commixe vineger therewith. Alſo if you annoynt it with iuyſe of nighſhade, or plantaine, you ſhall helpe it greatly. Hetherto haue we ſpoken of *herpes*. Now becauſe in that which we haue ſaid, we haue not as yet touched by the way any thing concerning the euils called *formice*, which both the

The cure of the vlcer in herpes is our third ſcope.

Enery vlcer muſt be dryed vp.

Lib. 2. ad Glau.

How exulcerated places muſt be looked to.

Poſca.

Remedies take out of Paulus.

Aliud.

Ad herpetes depaſcentes.

For inueterate vlcers.

What is to be done in puſtulæ miliares if they turne into an vlcer.

Lib. ſecundo ad Glauconem.

Arabians, and the latter ſort of Phiſitions do erroniouſly, as we haue ſaid, confound with *herpetes*: this preſent place doth require, that we ſet downe a few wordes both of them and of other tumours and increaſings appearing in the skinne, which the Latins call *verruca*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the euils called Formica, and of other differences of Verruca.

Verruca. Porra.

THoſe little tumours, or low ſwellings, which are ſeene to appeare in the skinne like little hillockes, the Latines, haue fittely called *verruca*, for *verruca* ſignifieth properly the higheſt part of a mountaine or hill: but the common ſort call them *porra*, leekes, becauſe ſometime they haue certaine threads lying betweene them not much vnlike vnto the rootes of leekes. The Greeks haue no name, wherein they may comprehend all thoſe kindes of *verruca*, but they do call a certaine kind thereof by proper names, which be theſe, μύρμηκια, ἀκροχόρδονες, ἧλος, θυμίον. *Verruca* therefore of them be called *myrmecia*, which are of a large foundation, and as it were ſitting iuſt to the grounde, and when they be touched, they are felt painfull like vnto the byting or ſtinging of an ant, whereupon their name is giuen vnto them, for the Greekes do call μύρμηκα, *formica*. Wherfore the Latins applying the name therof to the Greek word, haue called *formica*, *verruca*, and for their forme & faſhion, *ſeſſiles verruca*. Theſe euils ſaith Celſus *Lib.* 5. do grow either in the palmes of the handes or in the ſoles of the feete: but theſe take deeper roote, and are lower & harder then a wart, & do cauſe greater paine: and they ſend forth more ſtore of bloud, & they ſcarce at any time exceede the bignes of a hop. But *acrochordon* is a *verruca* that is as it were hāging, & of a more narrow foundation (that is) a certaine round highnes or growing vp in the skin, which hath the foundatiō (that is) the neather part very ſtraight to the skin. It is ſo called becauſe it ſeemeth to hang as though it were tyed with a ſtring. By this difference therfore, *acrochordones* are diſtinguiſhed frō *myrmecia*, becauſe they are very ſmal at the neather end next the skin, but at the other end are very large and broad: contrariwiſe *myrmecia*, (as hath bin ſaid) are of a large foundation, but at the other end they are very ſmall and ſlender. But theſe oftentimes are equall together with the skin, and *acrochordones* do alwayes appeare aboue the skin, (as Gal. 14. *lib. de morbis curādis* hath manifeſtly declared.) Beſide theſe things, *acrochordones* (as Celſus ſaith) do grow vp thicke and many together, & do moſt trouble children, & oftentimes they fall againe ſodainely, and ſometime they cauſe but meane inflammation: there are ſome alſo, which are turned into corrupted matter, but they ſeldome paſſe the greatneſſe of a beane. They be called of Auicene *claui*, but the Latins do terme *claui*, *verrucæ albæ*, becauſe they be like to the round heades of nayles. Theſe do chiefly happen in the fingers, and the ſoles of the feete, where they doe cauſe great paine, the Greekes call them ἧλοῖ. but Auicene *almiſmar*. Theſe be often cauſed of a bruiſe, and ſometime otherwiſe. But *thymion* or *thymon*, in Engliſh a wart, is called of Celſus and of the Greekes *verruncula*, a little hillocke, appearing aboue the bodie, which at the neather part next the skinne

There be diuerſe kindes of verruca.

Myrmecia.

Seſſiles verruca.

Acrochordon penſilis verruca.

The difference betweene acrochordones and myrmecia.

Claui.

ἧλοῖ.
Almiſmar.
Thymion.

is

is verie ſmall(as *acrochordon* is) but aboue it is more large: it is alſo ſomewhat hard, and very ſharpe in the toppe, which doeth repreſent the colour of the floure time, wherupō the name is giuē vnto it, & alſo it is eaſily ſpread abroad. Oftentimes it giueth forth ſome bloud, and is almoſt as great as an Ægyptian beane, ſeldome bigger, but ſometime leſſer: ſometime there groweth vp one alone, ſometime many together, either in the anckles of the feete, or in the handes, or in the ſoles of the feete. But the worſt *thymia* of all are in the filthie partes of the bodie, where they doe commonly bleede. Auicene ſeemeth to haue named this kinde of *verruca*, *tuſium*, or (as another tranſlation hath) *tarſeum*. Of the kinde of *verrucæ* be thoſe euilles alſo, which Auicene called *cornua*, not much differing from the other ſortes, but that they be ſomewhat long and are turned crooked agayne like vnto hornes. The euils called *calli*, (called of the Greekes alſo Τύλλοι,) do not much differ from the aforenamed *clavi*, but that they be of themſelues without griefe and nothing painefull, and of the colour of the skinne wherein they are reſident, neither doe they ingender of themſelues or of their owne accord, but of the hardneſſe of the skinne cauſed by labour.

Thymij magnitudo.

Thymia in obſcœnis peſſima.

Cornua.

Calli.

Τύλλοι.

CHAP. XX.

The iudgements and cure of verrucæ.

AMONG all theſe euilles *Acrochordon* and *Thymion*, are oftentimes (as Celſus reporteth) ended and doe heale of themſelues, and the leſſer they be, the ſooner they be ended. But *Myrmecia* and *Claui* doe ſcarce at any tyme ceaſe without curing. If *acrochordon* be cut off, it leaueth no roote behinde it, and therefore it groweth not agayne. But where *thymion* and *clauus* be cutte off there riſeth vp vnderneath a little rounde roote, which deſcendeth downe ſomewhat deepe into the fleſhe, and there abyding, it doeth cauſe the aforeſayd euilles to growe agayne. *Myrmecia* doe holde faſt with verie broade rootes, and therefore they cannot be cutte off without great vlceration. It is very profitable to cut off *clauus* and then ſprinckle it ouer with hoate water, for ſo it doth waxe ſoft and tender without any more adoe, and if it doeth bleede, it oftentimes dyeth and ceaſeth. It is alſo taken away, by clenſing it round about, and by laying on it roſen mixed with the beaten powder of *lapis molaris*. But the other kindes (as the ſame Celſus affirmeth) muſt be cured with hoate medicines. Now the fitteſt remedie for the other euils is that, which is made of the dregges of wine, and that medicine is good for *myrmecia*, which is made of alume and yellow oaker. Paulus Ægineta *Lib. 4. cap.* 15. rehearſeth verie many remedies, which doe take away and vtterly abandon theſe *verrucæ*, eſpeciallie thoſe which be *ſeſſiles* and *penſiles*. Of the which kinde are *elaterium* (which is the iuyce of wilde cucumbers) rubbed on with ſalt, the barke of franckenſence with vineger, rathe rype figges, which are rype before their time, with vineger, meale and *nitrum*. Alſo the iuyce or liquor of the aforeſaid figge tree annointed doth greatly helpe, the iuyce of *tythymalus*, in Engliſhe ſpurge, the head of the fiſh *ſmaras* ſalted and burnt, the

Acrochordon. Thymion. Lib. 5. Myrmecia. Clauus.

Myrmecia.

The cure of verrucæ out of Paulus.

ruſt of ſome mettall with quicke brimſtone (that is) which is not throughly burnt in the fire, the leaues of *ocymum* with ſhoemakers bleache, (which the Greekes call *chamealthum*,) the water of the greene twigges of the vine burnt in the fire) ſheepes doung with vineger, goates gall annoynted, the fruite of the great herbe *heliotropium* applyed by it ſelfe, or miniſtred with wine, rewe with *nitrum* and peper, *nitrum* with the vrine of a young boy not yet accuſtomed with venerous actes, oxes doung miniſtred in vineger. But theſe, which we haue mentioned as remedies for the extirpation of *myrmecia* and *acrochordones*, are greatly alſo effectuall for thoſe euilles called *claui* and *thymia*. They doe vſe alſo the head of a lyſard to take away *myrmecia*, *acrochordones*, and *claui*. There are ſome which doe boyle the heades of ſalted fiſhes in that water, which diſtilleth out of the greene braunches, while they be burning: which they doe declare to be a moſt excellent remedy for the aforeſayd euils. Other ſome to extinguiſh theſe diſeaſes doe make a linament of the ruſt of braſſe (which of the late Phyſitions is called *virride æris & flos æris*) of brimſtone, and of the diſtilled water of vine braunches. And this is the onely methode of curing, which they are wont to vſe in racing out of *verrucæ*, (that is) by gnawing and ſcalding medicines. But this one thing is moſt diligentlie to be obſerued in adminiſtring ſuch kinde of medicines, which Celſus doth admoniſh vs of in his fift booke: namelie, that thoſe partes, which are about the euilles, ought to be couered with leaues, leaſt they alſo be exulcerate, for which cauſe ſome doe annoynt the places about the diſeaſes, with oyntment of Bole armoniacke, with *terra ſigillata*, with roſe water and vineger. Furthermore we aboliſhe *achrochordones*, *myrmecia*, and *thymia*, not onely with theſe aforeſayd burning medicines: but alſo with the flame of the fire, or with ſome hoate inſtrument rightlie applyed to them. Oftentimes alſo we cutte them off. But ſometyme we doe take them awaie and vtterlie deſtroie them by a ligature cunninglie made and prepared for them, (as it happeneth in that true diſeaſe called *ficus*) or elſe by ſetting to the foreteeth, as ſome at Rome in Galenes tyme were wont to doe. But if you ſhall apply fire or ſome hote inſtrument to *verruca*, you muſt prouide, that a plate of Iron or ſome ſuch thing beeing bored through be made ready for the burnt ſore, the hole whereof muſt ſo fittely comprehend the ſame, that none of the skinne about it may be ſeene. A duſtion being now made, you muſt reſolue the cruſt with butter, or with ſome other annointing medicine. Afterward you muſt cure the ſore like vnto other vlcers. But how *myrmecia*, which do not appeare out of the skinne, but altogether, equall therewith, ought to be brought forth and cut off: Galene teacheth very well *Lib.* 14. *metho. med.* where he maketh mention of one in his time at Rome, who deuiſed a new order to cure theſe *verrucæ*, firſt he brought out the euils by applying his lips vnto them or by ſucking them, and then (which did ſeeme maruellous) he plucked them from the roote, afterward ſetting to his foreteeth he vtterly deſtroyed thē. But *achrochordones*, appearing aboue the skin, he ſtraight way bitte off with his teeth, & ſo quickly diſpatched them. Galen alſo ſetteth down another double maner to cure the euils, ſaying: but a Chyrurgian being ſomwhat exerciſed in manuell practiſe, may eaſily cut off theſe *verrucæ*, both with

Aqua ex ſarmentis diſtillans.

Stercus bubulum.

Lacertæ caput.

Other orders of curing.

How verrucæ are ſafely burned.

The cure of myrmecia being equal with the skinne.

A new cure of myrmecia out of Galene.

Another cure of myrmecia Lib. 14. metho. med.

Scalprum.

with that instrument made to the forme of a mirtle leafe, and with that also, which the Greekes call *stelopomacherion*: (this alwaies provided) that the sore be kept and separated from the skinne or partes about it. We also bring forth *myrmecia*, by laying some strong and stiffe quill about the compasse or circle therof, the hollownesse of which quill must be equal with the thicknesse of *myrmecia*, that it may pinch it round about in euery place. Which being afterward turned about the sore and enforced downward, it will quickly bring forth the whole *myrmecia* together with the verie roote, but you must marke, that the verie end of the quill which shall cut it in a circle, ought to be not onely thin and slender, but also sharpe and strong. The quill therefore of an old cocke, or rather of an Eagle is verie fit for this purpose. But you must cut it off, onely towardes the roote, seeing the hollownesse of the other part of the quill may easily comprehend *myrmecia*. And truely by this abscession if it be done cunningly, you shall learne great Arte. Hitherto speaketh *Galen*. But the vlcer which remaineth, (*verruca* being thus taken away) must be filled vp & brought vnto a scarre, as other vlcers be.

Scalprum.
Scheloromacherion.
Another cure inuented by a quill.
Prima scitè radicem versus abscindenda.

CHAP. XX.

Of Oedema and other cold flegmaticke and flatuous tumours.

HAVING sufficiently intreated of those tumours which are engendred through hote humours: we are now againe determined to handle those tumors which haue their originall of a cold matter, taking our exordium from that euill which of the Græcians is called *ædema*. For as *erysipelas* is caused of a cholericke fluxe; so *ædema* proceedeth of a flegmaticke humor. *ædema* therfore (*Galen* defining the same) is a certaine loose and vnpainfull tumor: or it is a certaine thinne swelling without paine, rising of a flegmaticke humour that floweth into some member of the bodie, so that the same *Galen in lib. 14. The.* thought of *ædema*, that it was a disease and no symptomate. For truly we know (sayeth he) that *ædemata* doth come otherwise then of the flowing of a flegmaticke humour, (that is to witte) of a flegmaticke humour, or vaporous spirite gathered into some member, and sometime engendred in the same, as in the legges and feete which are troubled with a corrupted water running vnder the skinne, and with the euilles called *phthoe*, and *cachexia*, which are euill habites and deformities of the bodie. For in those dangerous dispositions, *ædema* is an accidentall symptom are of that effect which oppresseth the man (that is) an accident necessarily following, which requireth no seuerall or proper cure, (as afterward it shall appeare.) *Oedema* (as *phlegmone* and *erysipelas* also) is discerned of the Chyrurgians by two differences (that is) by the true, or vntrue or vnlawfull *ædema*. A true *ædema* commeth of naturall choler, which truly is nothing else, but a raw bloud not throughly digested, which is found in a lumpe of bloud, verie fit to nourish flegmaticke members. An vntrue and vnlawfull *ædema* proceedeth of vnnaturall fleume. That we may not deale herein any thing obscurely, naturall choler is a cold and a moist humour, in substance crude or raw, in colour enclining to a certen whitenesse, but in tast,

Oedema quid.
Oedema est symptoma.
Oedema duplex verum.
Illegitimum.
What fleume is

and (if I may speake it) in smell it is sweete and pleasant: vnnaturall fleume is that which doeth degenerate and differ from that fleume before described, and yet it keepeth it selfe within the boundes of his circuit and libertie, which if it shall once passe, it is then no more to be called *phlegma* or fleume, but some other humor. But this fleume chanceth to degenerate from his owne proper nature two manner of waies. One way is (as they say) in it selfe, when in his own naturall and proper substance it is chaunged without any admixtion with any other humour, which truly happeneth verie often, for it is turned either into a wateriſh substance, or into a flatuous substance, or into a verie thin matter, & then it is called *phlegma aquosum, flatuosum* or *tenue*: or it is turned into a thick and viscous substance, which maketh the fleume verie grosse and clammie, and through a greater (or as we may say) through a further induration, it is caused to looke like a plaister, or like glasse, or it doth putrifie and is altered, and then it is made both salt, nitrous, and corrosiue. The other way vnnaturall fleume is caused through admixtion, that is, whenas some other humour doth happen to cóme vnto it extraordinarily: as for example, either bloud, or choler, or melancholie. If bloud be commixed with fleume it is made sweet: if choler be mingled therewith, it is caused to be salt: if melancholie, it is made sowre and sharpe. There are therefore eight kinds of vnnaturall fleume after the opinion of Auicen. Haly Abbas appointeth foure onely. But Galen (sayth Guido) seemeth to assigne vnto it two onely kindes, that is, salt and sowre, although in his second booke of the differences of feuers and in his second booke *De locis affectis*, and in many other places also he maketh mention of the fleume called *vitreum*, which oftentimes doth ioyne himselfe with sowre fleume, by reason of that affinitie and acquaintance that it hath with it. By these things therefore it is gathered, that of fleume there are ingendred eight *species* or differences of tumours besides nature. For first of fleume that is naturall commeth a true and a lawfull *œdema*. Secondly of vnnaturall fleume by reason of admixtion there proceed three other differences of tumors, because that three other humours may be commixed therewith, and these be they: *œdema phlegmonodes, œdema erysipelatodes*, and *œdema scirrhodes*. Thirdly of vnnaturall fleume, through the alteration of his proper substance, there arise foure other differences of tumours. For first of windie and vaporous fleume doth come that tumour, which of the Latines is properly called *inflatio*, but commonly among the Physitions it is termed *apostema ventosum*, a windie aposteme. Secondly, of wateriſh fleume, there proceedeth a wateriſh Aposteme. Thirdly of raw, thicke, and grosse fleume, there are engendred these tumours which some do call *leues nodi*, & there are also ingendred flegmaticke abscessions, which they do commonly call *exituræ phlegmaticæ*. But these are called of the interpreter of *Auicen dubelet frigida*, of which sort are these, *steatomata, atheromata*, and *melicerides, ganglia* also which be called of Auicen, *glandulæ*, & other of that kinde which shalbe spoken of in that which followeth. Nowe of hard or rather of indurated, and (as I may say) of caked fleume, there doe arise all those hard knots, which are most found in the ioynts, and those euils also called *strumæ*, which are commonly called *scrofulæ*. Fourthly of corrupted and putrified fleume, there do come *fistulæ* and other vlcers which they call *scrufulosa*.

What & after what sort fleume doth degenera'e from his owne nature.

Galen appointeth two kinds of fleume.

8. Differences of tumours besides nature comming of fleume.

The

The causes of *œdema*, as also of other tumours besides nature are threefold. First, primitiue causes are these: a fall from some high place, a stripe, a naughtie diet. Secondly, antecedent causes, as the abundance of a flegmaticke humour running downe into some member of the bodie. Thirdly, *Coniuncta causa*, is the verie fleume which is alreadie stuffed and heaped in the member that is beset with a tumour. The signes of *œdema* are these, a loose and soft tumour, which yeeldeth to the weight of the finger, and is hollow after the manner of a caue or denne, it doth not rise vp againe at the remouing of the finger, but it doth retaine the verie footstep or marke of that which presseth it. There is felt verie small paine, or almost none at all. Verie little heate, a verie white colour, or (as some will haue it) a meane betweene whitenesse and paleness, and other such like signes, which do testifie the dominion & power of fleume. *Oedema*, (as other tumours also) hath foure times; the beginning, the augmenting, the state, and the declination of the tumour. This kinde of tumour is most cured by resolution, or exhalation, but seldome by suppuration, verie often by turning and changing them into knots or kernels called *Nodi*, or into other increasing (as they call them) which are termed of the Græcians *Apostemata*, but of the Latines *Abscessus*. But the markes and tokens of the ending and finishing of these kindes of tumours are handled before in our generall discourse of tumours. These œdematous tumors are rather excited in the winter time, then at other seasons, for then verie much fleume is gathered together in mens bodies. These tumours also do greatly and verie often trouble olde men, and them which be giuen to gluttonie.

Three causes of œdema.
1
2
3
Signa œdematis.
Iudicia.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmaticke humor flowing into some member.

BECAVSE *œdemata*, after the manner of other tumors, are raised through the fluxe of humors into some member, the scope and order of their cure shall also be two folde. 1. The one is to dissolue the substance of these humours which nowe do occupie the member. 2. The other is to withstand and restraine the flux. And as the one scope doth excell the other, so the remedies of their cure must be commixed together, the one with the other, either somewhat plentifully or somewhat sparingly. When therefore the order of restrayning shall ouercome that which counselleth vs to vse euacuating and digesting remedies, the force of restrictiues must be augmented. But when there is more need of euacuation then of restriction, the nature and vertue of digesting or discussiue and drying medicines, must of necessitie excell in the mixture. Moreouer both the plentifull fluxe and the small deale of matter in the affected part doth tell vs, that in the mixture the vertue of restrictiue medicins must be more effectual, & of greater force. Contrariwise you must vse a greater measure of drying & digesting remedies, when matter aboundeth in the member very plentifully, & the fluxe very litle. But in an old and inueterat *œdema*, & that which is already ingendred, you shall not vse any lõger this order of curing which hath a mingled power, but you shall apply such things as can

Curandi œdematis scopus duplex cum adhuc gignitur.

The order of curing an olde œdema.

Oedema ita vt ſymptoma eſt curatio.

diſperſe and deuide the matter. Which thing is alſo diligently to be obſerued in all other continuall vlcers. But *œdema*, which is an euill ſimptomat following other dangerous affectes, as leanneſſe of the body, the dropſie and an euill habite of the body, which the Grecians call *cachexia*, doth deſire no proper, peculiar or ſeuerall cure (as we haue before mentioned) for it cannot be cured but by expelling that euill affect whereof it firſt groweth. Yet ſomewhat is to be remitted out of it, if it doth debilitate the ſtrength or increaſe the chief affect, or elſe hinder the cure. It ſhall therefore be ſufficient (if it ſhall neede any cure) to rub diligently the ſwelling place, ſometime with *oxyrhodinum*, ſomtime with oyle mingled with ſalt, or elſe with *Oxyrhodinum* with ſalt. For this kinde of friction doth ſlake the tumour, and doth mitigate paine, if it be prouoked thorow too much diſtention (as ſometime it chanceth) *oxyrhodinum* doth ſtay the fluxe, oyle with ſalt hath power to digeſt and emptie out that which is compact in the member. But *oxyrhodinum* with ſalt, doeth partly digeſt and drie vp, and partly reſtraine and ſtop the affluction of humours. But our generall method being before declared, let vs turne our pen to declare the proper and particular order of curing a lawful *œdema*, which hath his beginning of the flowing of thin fleume: which method, according to the opinion of the Chyrurgians of our time, doth conſiſt of foure things, (as hath bene ſaid of *Phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas*) that is to ſay, 1. In a iuſt order of diet. 2. In preparing of the phlegmaticke humour, which they call *æquatio*, an equal diuiſion, & in purging the ſame. 3. In repreſſing, diſſoluing and drying vp the humour that is flowed already and now doeth occupie the member. 4. And laſt of all in correcting and remouing the ſymptomates or accidents which doe follow *œdema*. Theſe therefore are the foure particular intentions by the which we diſpatch thoſe two generall orders before mentioned. The firſt intention therefore is perfected or finiſhed by the due and iuſt vſage of ſixe vnnaturall things, which ſhall be well and fitly applyed to the ſicke bodie if they ſhall all decline vnto heate and drineſſe with a certaine attenuation or diminiſhing. Therefore chuſe and prepare a thinne and drie ayre. Let him take for his drinke wine that is fined and cleane from dregges, cleare, white, or ſomewhat red, which they call clarret wine, which in his kind muſt be excellent good, and alayed a litle with water. Let his bread be verie well baked, and well handled. Let him eate the fleſh of ſheepe, or the fleſh of the birdes of mountaines and of the plaines, and thoſe rather roſted then ſodden. Let him vſe ſparingly fat brothes, potherbs, and other fat meates. Let him abſtain from things that be vnleauened, raw, and verie moiſt. Let him not eate of any kind of pulſe or cheeſe, nor of vntimely and vnripe fruites, nor of fiſhes (except they be thoſe that liue in grauelly places, and thoſe alſo either roſted, or boiled in wine.) Roſted meates generally are better than ſodden, and better then thoſe things alſo which the induſtrie of the baker can prouide. Let him eate litle, and drinke leſſe. In all his diet let him eſchue lecherie and gluttonie. If the belly be bound, looſe it with figges, or with *Carthamus*. Take therefore fiue or ſixe drie figges, and fill them with the pith of the ſeed of *Carthamus*, and eate them either in the morning, or before dinner. Let the bodie be exerciſed moderately, if ſo be the affected member can permit the ſame without hurt. Let his ſleep be litle & ſhort. Let him altogether auoid bathing, and

Foure particular orders to be kept in curing a lawfull œdema.

Prima intentio.

Aer.
Potus.

Cibus.

Repletio.
Inanitio.
Motus.

Somnus.
Balneum.
Secunda intentio.

and all other moyſtening things. The ſecond intention is accompliſhed by preparatiues, or by remedies equallie deuiding (which they commonlly call digeſtiues) and by medicines which can euacuate that flegmaticke matter, wherewith the bodie of the ſicke doeth abound. Therefore you muſt giue him ſome kinde of *Oximell*, which can cut, and deuide, and purge forth the fleume that lurketh in the bodie. Afterwarde the matter going before the expulſion being thus prepared, at the appointement of ſome cunning Phiſition, muſt be emptied out with ſome medicine, that can purge fleume called *phlegmagogon*. But if (ſayth Guido out of Cauliacus) aboundaunce be preſent in the bodie, you may ſafelie open a veyne, but yet not without the aduiſe of ſome expert Phiſition. But in a plethoricke and full bodie there are ſcarce at anie time ſeene any *ædemata*, eſpecially, theſe which be lawfull, for fleume doth not abounde in it more plentifully then other humours doe. Therefore it being ſimple and alone, not commixed with other humours, it can ſeldome flowe into anie part of a plentifull bodie, wherefore letting of bloud eſpeciallie in a lawfull *ædema* doeth ſeeme to be nothing profitable. The third intention is finiſhed in the beginning by applying repercuſſiues, & not by thoſe remedies, which by binding vehementlie with their naturall coldneſſe doe repell and driue backe, but by thoſe which haue power to drie greatlie, and digeſt well, which they call prouokers of drineſſe and reſolution. But in the increaſe, by vſing diſcuſſiue remedies ſomewhat more forcible. But in the ſtate thereof, eſpeciallie about the ende, the fluxe being alreadie ſtayed, by pure medecines, and by thoſe which doe verie ſtrongly digeſt and reſolue. But in the declination by conſuming and drying helpes if the cure be to be diſpatched by reſolution. But if it doth degenerate and turne into Abſceſſions, which they call *Exitura*, it ſhalbe cured by ripening medicines and by other helpes, which are ſet downe for the cure of Abſceſſions. Moreouer repreſſing remedies enDued with a drying digeſting nature, which do profite in the beginning of *ædema* comming of the influxion of a fleugmaticke humour, are comprehended vnder three ſpeciall rules. The firſt is out of *Galene. Libr. 14. Therapeut. & ſecundo ad Glauconem*, where he ſayth, that if *Oedema* doeth conſiſt of a fleugmaticke humour flowing into ſome member, a ſponge wet in water wherein is a little vineger, ſhall ſometime aboundantly ſuffice. But theſe muſt be ſo well tempered and commixed together, that they may either be drunke, or that they may not haue much vineger vpon it. But you muſt bind the ſponge to the place, beginning at the neather part, & ending aboue. Let the ſponge be very new. And if there be not a newe to be gotten, you ſhall cleanſe and ſcoure the old verie diligently by waſhing it in *nitrum* and *aphonitrum*, and in lye. *Auicene* commaundeth that in ſteade of a ſponge, you ſometime applie a double linnen cloth, or ſome like thing. The ſecond rule is mentioned of *Auicene* himſelfe. ℞. *Baurach* of the decoction of water (that is) of ſalt peter, or of the fome of ſalt peter, of aſhes, of vineger, of ech as much as ſhall ſuffice. The third rule is deſcribed of *Razis* after this maner. ℞. *Aloes*, mirrhe, *licij*, *acatia*, *ſief*, *memitha*. (that is) of *Glaucium*, of *Cyperus*, of *crocus orientalis*, of Bole armoniacke, of ech a little quantitie: powder them, & cõmixe thẽ with the iuyce of coleworts called *Braſſica*, and with vineger, & make an emplaiſter. Furthermore thoſe remedies

Secunda intentio.

Tertia intentio.

Remedies to be vſed in the beginning of ædema.

1.

Poſca aquoſa.

2.

3.

Emplaſtrum Razis.

Remedies to be vsed in the time of increasing.

which were of late rehearsed, doe also helpe much the increasing of this œdematous tumour, if you doe put vnto them a good quantitie of vineger, and a little Alume, especially in strong bodies, which haue a hard skinne, and when as *aqueosior posca* shall not auayle. Therefore if *œdema* doeth not cease or rest with these helpes mentioned a little before, when you binde it to againe, you shall commixe a little more vineger, that the *posca* may be the stronger: or you shall lay on a little alume, and applie a new sponge. For this doth helpe as an excellent medicine, and doth long continue very effectuall, and with his substaunce it doth dry vp the affected member. If there be no plentie of new sponges, it is better (sayth *Galene*) to vse that which the common sorte call *elychnion*. But aboue all things let it be soft, which kinde is vsed at *Tarsi*, whereof if there be any plentie, you may boldly vse: for you shall try it to be more profitable, then the vsing of sponges But let it be wetted in *Posca*, & a little alume therewith Then (as it is set downe already) let it be bound to, and let the binding begin at the neather partes, and end aloft. Let the binding be meane and small, as in the setting of a bone. But truly the first casting about of the swathing band, which must begin beneath, ought to be tied somwhat strait, but all the rest, must be slacked by little & little, but yet not so, that any part of the binding be loose. Now the remedies which are to be ministred after the vigour of the state, when the fluxe is stayd, & in an vniuersall declination (if *œdema* doeth require resolution) are wont also to be described & contained vnder a three fold rule. 1. The first is of *Auicene*, which is a sponge dipped in lye, of the ashes of the figge tree, of the vine, & of the holme, which is a kinde of oke, apply these to the member, for truly in them there is great power and vertue both to dry & to cleanse. 2. The second is of *Brunnus* which *Theodericus* also vsed. ℞. of Alume, brimstone, mirrhe and salt, of each a like quantitie. Commixe all these with oyle of roses, and with vineger, and make a linement, which yet doth dry more strongly then the former remedie. 3. The third is of *Auicene* likewise, whose description is this as followeth. ℞. of cowes dung. ℔. ß. of *olybanum*, of *styrax*, of *Vsnea* (that is) of the mosse of trees, which is called of the Grecians *bryon*, of *calamus aromaticus*, of spikenard, of wormwood. ana. ℥. ß. apply all these with vineger, and with the decoction of colewortes, and make an emplaister. And this truly is the way to cure *œdema*, which is finished by resolution. But if they do not yeeld vnto digestion, but do come vnto suppuration, you may applie and that verie profitablie *vnguentum è succis* called *diachylon*, and that oyntment especiallie which *Rogerius* was wont to make. To the same purpose also this emplaister following is very effectuall. ℞ mallowes, branke vrsine, or *hircina*, which is called *Achantus* and *achanta*, roote of *Althæa*, roote of lillie, rosted onyons, snailes, Ieauen, lineseede, sodden and kneaded, & mingled with swines greace, or with butter, bring them into the forme of an emplaister, or rather of a cataplasma Another for the same purpose verie effectuall. ℞. of the iuyce of elder, of walwort, of sorrell) which our late writers do call *lapatium acutum*) of *leuisticum* or *liguisticum*, & of fennel. of ech of them, as much as you thinke good, yet of an equall weight, boyle them with *dialthæa*, with hony, oyle, & butter, & of thē make a cataplasme. The Apostеme being ripe, do not tary till it open of the own accord, for that happeneth seldom, or peraduenture neuer, but let a-

Lib. 14. Ther. & 2. ad Glau.

Spongia aqua lixiua imbuta. 1.

Linimentum. 2.

Emplastrum Auicennæ. 3.

Vsnea quid.

Concoquentia seu maturatia.

This is giuen to Theodericus.

pertion be made with ſome hotte iron, or ſome burning medicine, wherewith the matter may be purged out, according to the manner and forme before expreſſed. Then let the filthineſſe be clenſed out and wiped away with that ointment commonly called *vnguentum Apoſtolorũ*, or with a mundificatiue of *apium*, and with the iuyce of wormwood, or with this ointment following which doth draw & cleanſe the thicke and groſſe matter. ℞. of *Galbanum*, of *Ammoniacum*, of roſen, *terebinthina*, pitch, of bullocks tallow, of old oile, ana. a like quãtitie: diſſolue the gummes in vineger, and let them melt or boile vpon the fire with the reſt, & make an ointment. Afterward let it be cured like vnto other filthie vlcers. But we diſpatch our fourth intention, according to the nature and qualitie of the accidents that chaunce very ſodenly, as if paine doth happen, it muſt moſt eſpecially be mitigated, by applying moiſt oile of wooll, after the doctrine of *Auicene*) or by boiled wine, or by a cerate made of the oyle of chammomill, of the oile of wormewood, of the oyle of ſpike and of wax. But if hardneſſe be preſent it muſt be diſſolued & mollified with the marrow of the bones of bullockes, or with harts marrow, or with ſome ſuch like thing, as hereafter ſhalbe ſayd. But *Galene* in an inueterate *ædema* did annoynt the ſore with oyle, and then miniſtred a ſponge dipped in lye, and binding it ſomwwhat iuſt or ſtraite did perfectly cure the euill.

Apertio.

A mundificatiue oyntment, which is attributed to Diuus

Quarta intentio.

Li. 2. ad Glau. Oedemate diuturno.

Now it remaineth that we ſet down the ſumme of the cure of *ædema*. 1. Firſt therfore vnto an *ædema*, which is a ſymptomate happening & comming ſodenly with other diſeaſes (as the dropſie, leanneſſe of the body, and that euill called *cachexia*) apply ſuch medicines as cã diſcuſſe & dry vp without grief. 2. Therfore rub the ſwolne place diligẽtly with *oximell*, or with *oxyrhodinũ*, or with oyle & ſalt, or elſe with *oxyrhodinum* & ſalt: for by this frictiõ you ſhall both mitigate the paine (if any be cauſed through diſtention) & remit the tumour alſo. But to an *ædema* which commeth of the influxion of thin fleume, if flux doth not yet ceaſe, apply thoſe medicines, which partly digeſt, & partly conſtraine and reſtraine. 4. Therfore bind a new ſponge, or ſome other dipped in lye, or wetted firſt in alayed, *Poſca*, eſpecially in ſoft and tender bodies, & (if the tumour doth poſſeſſe the members of the body) bind about them ſofily ſome ſwadling band from the neather part to the vpper, as we vſe to do in ſetting of bones. 5. But if by theſe remedies, the tumour doth not ſlake or yeeld, put a litle alume with *poſca*. vidz. with *oxycratũ*. 6. But if the affect ſhalbe of any continuance you muſt not vſe any more theſe remedies which haue a mingled faculty (that is to ſay digeſting and reſtraining) but rather digeſtiues. 7. Therfore, the member being firſt annointed with oyle, you muſt miniſter a ſponge (as we ſaid) dipped in lye, and bind it with ſwathing bandes ſomewhat iuſt and ſtrait.

Capita curationũ ædematũ.

1. *Oedema morbus.*

2.

3.

4.

5.

6. *Oedema inueteratum.*

7.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Tumors aboue nature, vvhich the Latins call inflations but they are commonly called vvindie Apoſtemes, apoſtemata ventoſa.

IT is now verie requiſite for vs to diſpute of the Tumours called *Inflationes*, whoſe cure is diuerſe from the cure of *ædemata*. For they (as *Galene* ſaith *Lib.* 14. *Therap.*) haue their originall of a phlegmaticke humour, and therefore doe

The difference betweene inflatio & ædema.

yeeld vnto touching and handling,& our fingers being layed thereon do descend ſomewhat deepely into them. But *Inflationes* do come of a flatuous ſpirite gathered togethe̅r,breeding ſometime vnder the skinne,ſometime vnder the thinne filmes,which are compaſſed about with the bones, or they do ſhut in & include the muſcles,or elſe ſome part of the bowels. Furthermore ſometime there is alſo not a little of this humor gathered together in the belly & in theinward parts,& alſo in the middle ſpace of them,& of the *Peritoneum*,as in that kinde of water(ſaith *Paulus*) vnder the skinne (which euill we call a Timpany.)Theſe alſo differ frō *ædemata*,becauſe they being touched with the fingers do not retaine any marke,and they do giue a ſound like a tabour,and alſo becauſe ſomtime,they are contained in a ſenſible hollowneſſe,and that oftentimes very great.The cauſe of theſe kinds of inflations,is the weakneſſe of the naturall heat,which is placed in a flegmatike matter to prouoke windines.For truly heat may take vp ſuch a vapour of a moyſt ſubſtāce,but it cannot deuide nor diſcuſſe it. For euen as(ſaith *Galen*)we ſee in outward things,that a very cold conſtitution (eſpecially when the North wind bloweth) doeth make the aire very calme,and a very hote conſtitution in ſommer maketh the ayre pure & cleare,but the middle conſtitutions do cauſe cloudes,ſo it happeneth in liuing creatures.For heat,neither by extreme weakneſſe, nor yet by vehement ſtrength can beget wind,but when it getteth a meane betweene theſe affections.For this vapour is holden in ſome place(as *Auicene* ſaith)either becauſe of the thickeneſſe of the member,or for the groſſeneſſe of the vaporous ſpirite. Which thing alſo *Paulus* after the opinion of *Galen* witneſſeth in theſe words: ſaying,that the thickneſſe of the members,and the groſſeneſſe of the ſpirit or vapour doth cauſe,that the ſame vapour is not diſperſed abroad.

Lib.4.

Inflationum cauſa.

Lib.6. de morbis & ſymptomatis.

Lib.4.

Inflationum notæ.

The ſignes of inflation are theſe,a tumour not yeelding to any touching or handling,it appeareth very cleare and bright,& when it is beaten on,it giueth a ſound like vnto a bottle,or Tympanie. Moreouer there is felt oftentimes windineſſe throughout the whole body,ſometime running this way, ſomtime that way,which cauſeth extenſiue paine.But concerning the iudgements and opinions hereof,a flatuous or vaporous ſpirit,which is not diſſolued & diſperſed,doth procure many diſcommodities. But a breathing and windy vapour, courſing vp and down within the body with paine and great anguiſh,is greatly to be feared,becauſe it doth ſeeme to be drawē frō ſome venemous matter.

Inflationum prognoſtica.

Inflationum curatio.

But now ſeeing theſe three things,vidz.the moiſt matter,the imbecillity of the naturall heate, and the thickneſſe of the pores of the body, do concurre together to the generation of *inflatio* (as hath already bene declared) the order therefore of the cure thereof ſhall be this,firſt to ſtrengthen the ſubſtance of the heat,to extenuate the vapour & flatuous matter,& to preuent or opē the thickneſſe of the pores of the body(wherin this vaporous ſpirit gathered now together,is contained.) Now we make perfect and we finiſhe the two latter things,that is,the rarifying of the thicke body,& the extenuation of the groſſe vapour,by one and the ſame kinde of medicines,which is by vſing thoſe remedies which do profite to the extenuation of the members & by applying thoſe helpes,which cā heat either more or leſſe according to the inflatiō of the afflicted members according to the thickeneſſe or thinneſſe thereof,& according

alſo

alſo to the groſſneſſe or thinneſſe of the vapours. For according to the difference of theſe things, the power or facultie of thoſe medicines which are miniſtred, ought to be intended and remitted. The thin parts therefore, and the vapour or ſpirit which is not verie thicke, are but meanly to be dealt withall: but the groſſe members, and that vapour which containeth much thicke matter, do require medicines which may greatly extenuate and heate them. But if the ſubſtance of naturall heate ſhall periſh or diminiſh, it muſt be repaired againe, regarding the greatneſſe of the loſſe thereof. But if it ſhalbe altered, you muſt bring it vnto a certaine mediocritie. But if griefe there ſhall vexe or moleſt the ſicke, you muſt haſten vnto thoſe helpes which can mitigate paine. Verie well therfore haue the Chyrurgians of our age declared, that the cure of Inflations (which they call *Apoſtemata ventoſa*) is diſpatched by three intentions. The firſt conſiſteth of a iuſt and due obſeruation of diet. The ſecond of a good concoction or digeſtion, and the third dependeth of the diſcuſſing and diſperſing of the windie ſpirite, which is aſſembled in the member. Therefore let the inſtitution of diet be after this manner. Firſt of all you muſt abſtaine from all groſſe, viſcous, rawe, flegmaticke and windie meates: as are ſweete meates, all kind of pulſe, rawe fruit, rape roots, Cheſt-nuts, and other things of that ſort which do ingender a flatuous vapour. You muſt vſe hote and drie things, and thoſe remedies alſo which can attenuate and diſſolue windineſſe, as is, bread made of barley with a litle ſalt and commin ſeed. Let the patient his drinke be ſmall ale or beere. Let him vſe the decoction of Cicers mixed with onyons: let him take *apium hortenſe* (which is commonly called *petroſelinum* parcely) calamint, rewe, commin. Let the fleſh which he eateth on, be rather roſted than ſodden, and eſpecially the fleſh of birdes (as hath bene ſayed in the former Chapter.) But now that you may diſpatch the ſecond intention, you muſt ſtrengthen & corroborate the vertue concoctiue with ſome ſweet and odoriferous ſauours, and by confections, and by electuaries appointed for this purpoſe, as be theſe, *diacuminum*, *diacalamintha*, *Aromaticum roſatum*, and this decoction following, which they call *Drageta*. ℞. of anniſe, of fennell, *Carnus*, *daucus*, commin, of laurell berries beaten together .ana. ℥. j. of liquorice, galingale, white ginger .ana. ℥. ß. of cloues, cubebs, of long pepper, ſeede of rew, ana. ℥. ij. of anniſe ſeede couered ouer with ſugar .℥. iij. of ſugar ℔. ß. make a powder. But outwardly let the ſtomacke be annointed with oyle of ſpike, of *Coſtum*, and oile of rew: or make an Epitheme of thoſe things which can diſcuſſe winde, and which are appointed to helpe concoction, and let it be applyed to the ſtomacke. But theſe things do rather appertaine vnto Phiſicke than vnto Chyrurgerie. The third intention is accompliſhed by applying ſome medicine which hath a double vertue, (that is) which can both concoct, digeſt, and moderately binde, neither will increaſe paine. But to the perfecting of theſe things, there are appointed three manner of remedies in *libro* 14. *Therapeut.* The firſt is mentioned of *Galen* in theſe words. In the arteries (ſaith he) and in the muſcles which are vnder the skin, or vnder the filmes which do couer the bones, when *Inflatio* is riſen, if it be without griefe, ſome liquour applyed to the thinneſt members ſhall profite greatly, of the which nature is lye miniſtred with a newe ſpunge. But if griefe doth alſo trouble

Three intentions of curing inflations.

Prima intētio.

Victus.

Potus.

Secunda intentio.

Drageta helpeth digeſtion.

Tertia intētio

Inflation commeth of a bruse in the arteries, muscles, and filmes which cover the bones.

him, you must annoint the member with some oyle which hath power to mitigate and remit the same. These diseases happen through a stripe or bruse, when as either the muscle, or the filme which compasseth the bone, is bused or hurt, vpon which filme that goeth about the bone, the aforesayed spunge must be layed. 2. The second rule is described also in the same place after this sort: but vnto the muscles (for they sometime are painefull) you must applie some medicine which can mitigate paine in greater measure, so that to them you must applie not onely lie alone, but you must put into it both *Sapa*, and also a litle oyle. But it shall be more profitable in the beginning not to applie lie, but to vse *Sapa* with wine, and a litle vineger, and to put to them a litle oyle, which things when they are mingled together, it is good to heate them, and lay on vnwashed wooll (which they call *succida*) dipped in them. But if there be no plentie of such wool, then the oile of wool is to be vsed with the former mixture: but if oyle of wooll be at hand neither, you shall commixe verie well some Cerate, which is made of the oyle of wooll. For the bused muscles must needs be lenified with some medicine which hath a double strength (that is) which can both concoct, digest, and moderately binde. But if the medicine containeth no astriction, it encreaseth sometime *phlegmone*, and especially in those bodies which are plethoricke and full of humours. Being mindfull therfore of these three indications alreadie declared (that is, of concoction, digestion, and moderate astriction) in the muscles which are inflated by means of some bruse or stripe, when great paine doth afflict, you shall the rather vse a more mitigating remedie, and you shall greatly resist paine, by vsing more oyle and wine, whose force I knowe to be mightie, when as paine together with the inflation doeth speedily hasten to an end. And truly the time is the shorter, if you minister those things which haue a strong and mightie effect, as are these, lie and vineger, and next after them wine hath a mightie operation. As often therfore as you mind not to asswage paine, you shall cast into the mixture, a greater quantitie of lie and vineger. Againe when you intend to repell and driue backe, you must put in more of wine then of other things, which wine shalbe the more effectuall for this purpose if it be black and sharpe. But if you please to digest, you shall minister the greater quantitie of lie. But if you shall mingle vineger with them, the mixture shall be profitable both wayes, because that vineger hath a double and mingled facultie. But when the muscle is not pained, you may lawfully for want of lie vse *Aphronitrum*, but it must not be grauelly, but rather fomie. The third rule is an emplaister made of the filthinesse which is wiped from the bodies of men that wrastle, and of vnslaked lime, boyled together in water and wine. These are the wordes of *Galen lib. 14. Therap.* But those inflations (saith he) which through negligence are inueterate and of some antiquitie, you shall apply to them those helpes which are made of lie (as hath bene saied before:) and secondly you shall minister some emplaister. But I will declare also the example or order how to prepare these things. First the filthinesse that commeth of mens bodies must be heat and throughly strained that it may be cleane and pure: then againe take the lime, which must be brayed as small as meale, and sprinckle it in the vessell where the filthinesse is, and temper it together to the thicknesse of clay.

Sapa.

Lana succida.

Ossipus.
Ceratum ex tesipe.

Pro lixiuio Aphronitrum.
Formula tertia

How an old inflation must be handled.

That

That medicine alſo is verie good for theſe inflations which is made of *Sycomorum*, & other remedies of that ſort do greatly helpe alſo. But if this flatuous ſpirit, which cauſeth the inflation ſhall be ſmokie, wicked, corrupt, & excited of a venemous matter, with intollerable paine, and vehement heate, running vp and downe in the members of the bodie, no more ſafe or better counſell can be giuen then that (when it is reſident in ſome particular member) that member be ſtraightway bound beneath and aloft, and in the middeſt the tumor be opened with a raſor, or with ſome hote inſtrument, ſo that the venemous vapour may eaſily come forth. Afterward the gaping wound muſt be filled with aloës, and with bole armoniacke diſſolued in oyle of roſes and vineger. But within three or foure dayes after, you muſt fill vp the wound with fleſh, and bring it to a ſcarre. But in ſuch venemous inflations, a verie thin diet muſt be obſerued, and the body muſt be emptyed with ſome purging medicine. And if you miniſter *Theriaca* to the ſick, it will helpe him greatly. Now there remaineth the ſumme of the cure of a flatuous tumour, which we mind to declare in theſe wordes following. Firſt, confirme and ſtrengthen the weake ſubſtance of heat that is in the affected member, reſtore the ſame againe, and when it is altered bring it into ſome mediocritie. Secondly, extenuate the vaporous and windie humor which raiſeth the tumour. Thirdly, open the thicke pores of the skinne, and of the whole affected member with medicines that are effectuall for the thinneſſe of the members, afterward ſeeke to diſcuſſe the flatuous vapour. Fourthly, (but according to the difference of the affected parts, and according to the thickneſſe of the flatuous vapor, or thinneſſe of the medicins which are applied,) intend and remit aſwell the matter as the faculties & vertue of them. 5. Furthermore, if ſuch a vaporous tumor ſhall chance with griefe and with inflammation (as it happeneth in the muſcles which through ſome bruſe are ſtuffed out with wind) apply in the beginning mitigating medicines: but in proceſſe of time, vſe ſuch remedies as haue power to diſſolue, increaſing by litle and litle the plentie thereof. Sixtly Inflations, which through negligence are inueterate, firſt annoint them with lie, and then lay to ſome plaiſter, which can mollifie, diſſolue and diſcuſſe them.

If the windie vapour ſhalbe venemous.

Victus ratio.
Theriaca.
The ſumme of curing of a flatuous tumour.

1
2
3
4
5
6

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Tumor cauſed of a thin ſubſtance, which they call aquoſum Apoſtema (that is) a wateriſh Apoſteme.

IF fleume doth vniuerſally abound throughout the whole bodie, that kind of diſeaſe (which is a wateriſh humour running betweene the skinne and the fleſh, called *Leucophlegmatia*) doth accompanie the ſame, as Galen hath noted in his ſixth booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis*. But when this flegmaticke humour doth flow in one onely member, there is engendred *œdema*: for ſo they call a looſe tumour, which is without paine. But if wateriſh excrements do abound, they are woont to bring the dropſie (which they call *aſcites*) which if they ſhall couch themſelues in one onely member, they do raiſe in it *Phlyctæna* (that is to ſay) puſhes or whelkes. Furthermore the latter ſort of Phyſitions

Leucophlegmatia.
Seroſum incrementum.
Phlyctæna.

haue bene accuſtomed to all this kinde of wateriſh tumors, *Aquoſum phlegma*, as alſo they do terme that humour to be fleume which floweth in the feet and legges of them that are troubled with the dropſie, and aboundeth in the leane partes of the bodie, and in other members, which do labour of an euill habit, (which the Græcians call *Cachexia*.) And theſe kindes of tumors which do proceede of watetiſh fleume, or of the aforeſayed ſerous increaſing, they doe alſo call vnlawfull and vntrue *ædemata*. But in thoſe dangerous diſpoſitions or diſeaſes they call it *Tabes*, which name *Hydrops* and *Cachexia* do require: but *ædema* (as hath bene alreadie declared out of *Galen*) doth not deſerue the name of a diſeaſe, but of a ſymptomate, for that it truely needeth no particular or ſeuerall cure. For the onely rubbing of it with *oxyrrhodinum*, or ſometime with ſalt and oyle, or with ſalt and *oxyrrhodinum* doth ſtop it, and many other things of that kind do worke the like effect. But the cauſes of theſe tumors are theſe, the altering of the vertue or facultie of the members through a cold and corrupted intemperature of the bodie, and the naughtineſſe of nouriſhment declining to aquoſitie, as you may eaſily gather out of the ſixth booke *de ſymptomatum cauſis*. The ſignes and iudgements are almoſt all one with a true *ædema*. Yet they differ in this, becauſe in the wateriſh tumors the tumor is more looſe then in a lawfull *ædema*: and therefore it doth not ſo reſiſt touching, neither doth it ſound like winde, but rather as water, and it doth ſeeme to ſhine after a ſort, when one beholdeth it againſt the light. Now concerning the iudgments of this kind of tumor, there is no doubt but that a wateriſh tumor proceedeth of a greater coldneſſe then a flatuous tumor doth, as *Galen* declareth in the eleuenth commentarie of his fourth booke of Aphoriſmes. But it ſeemeth (ſaith he) that a wateriſh *Hydrops*, which they call *Aſcites*, is engendred of great coldneſſe, but a *Tympanie* of leſſe cold, which diſeaſe is named of *Hyppocrates* a drie water running betweene the skin. For a moiſt ſubſtance cannot be changed into a flatuous vapour without ſome heate. Moreouer wateriſh tumours do happen oftener in the feet, in the ſtones & cods, in the head, and in the ioynts, then in any other partes of the bodie, both becauſe ſuch a kinde of humour doth readily ruſh into thoſe partes, and alſo becauſe heate is verie meane and litle in them: for becauſe they be farre off from the hotteſt members. And as a flatuous vapour is ſeldome found without a wateriſh humor: ſo a wateriſh or ſerous humor is ſcarce contained at any time in any member without a windy ſpirit. Hitherto haue we ſpoken of the generation, the cauſes, ſignes, and iudgments of a wateriſh tumour: now we will ſet downe the cure thereof. Seeing that theſe wateriſh tumors are cauſed (as we haue ſayd alreadie) of the flowing of a ſerous humour, there needeth no other meanes, eſpecially no other generall order to cure them, then that method which we haue expreſſed alreadie in the cure of other tumors, which are engendred of the influxion of humors into ſome member. The order therefore of remedying ſuch kind of tumors in the beginning ſhall conſiſt of two pointes, (that is to ſay) 1. to emptie out that which is flowed. 2. and to ſtoppe and inhibite the fluxe of the humour. Wherefore, as in all other diſeaſes, which are yet but in begetting, ſo alſo in theſe affects, the Phiſition muſt be carefull and diligent, as well in curing them, as in foreſeeing the danger following: (that is) both to remedie the diſeaſe, and prouide

Lib. 2. ad Glauconem & 14. Therap.

Cauſæ.
Signa.

Iudicia.
Aſcites is cauſed of more cold then Timpanites.
What parts theſe tumours do moſt occupy.

Aquoſi tumoris curatio.

Curatio duplex.

prouide for the fluxe. The first order therefore is subiect to that part of the Arte of Phisicke which cureth the diseases: but the second belongeth to that part which preuenteth the disease to come. But that we may profit & dispatch this doubt and generall method, it is necessarie to recite fiue other particular intentions, expressed of *Guido* out of Cauliacus for the cure of a waterish tumor, in this manner and order as followeth. The first consisteth in a iust institution and obseruation of a good diet. The second in the helping and furthering of concoction. The third in purging out the waterish humor by the belly. The fourth in bringing out of the waterish humor through the passages of the vrine. The fifth and last consisteth in the euaporation and drying vp of that waterish humiditie which is compact and contained in the aggrieued member. But because the foure first intentions do rather pertaine to the Phisition then vnto the Chyrurgian, for whose profite we haue taken this worke in hand, and also because they may sufficiently be knowne by those things which went before: I haue set downe the cure in the 33. Chap. of my 3. booke: and am determined to handle in this place the last intention onely, which requireth some new intended remedies. The fift intention therefore is ended with those medicines which can drie vp, and resolue those waterish and serous humors which are contained in the affected member. But of these remedies there are commonly set downe three rules or orders. The first out of *Galen lib. 2, ad Glauconem*, and *lib. 14. method. medendi.* which is made of *oxyrrhodinum* and salt (as hath bene before declared) The second is out of the same author, which is a new spunge dipped in lie, and to this purpose serueth those remedies also which we haue before set downe for the cure of *ædemata*: with the which helps (that they may drie vp and discusse the more strongly) you must commix *Aphronitrum*, alume, and brimstone. The third rule is a certaine emplaister described of *Auicen* for the cure of *scrofulæ*, which emplaister he attributed to *Galen in libro suo de compositione medicamentorum κατὰ γένη*. But this emplaister (as he sayeth) within one weeke at the most, and often times within three dayes doth resolue all the hardnesse of the euill. But although this emplaister cannot be found in the booke before rehearsed to belong vnto *Galen*: notwithstanding we may vse the same verie fitly to the dissolution of a waterish and flatuous hardnesse: whose description out of *Auicen* is this that followeth. ℞. of mustard seed, of nettle seed, brimstone, *spuma maris*, *aristolochia rotunda*, and *bdellium*. ana. ℥. j. of ammoniacke, old oile and waxe. ana. ℥. ij. But if the hardnesse of the tumor be not discussed by this emplaister, you can deuise no other more excellent or more present remedie, then to open with some instrument, and then to clense it and scoure it, and afterward to cure it after the manner of other filthy vlcers. The summe of curing a waterish tumor is this. 1. Appoint such a dyet to the sicke as can attenuate heate, and drie vp. 2. Let him vse a moderate exercise of his bodie, let him eate and drinke little, let him not sleepe much, let him oftentimes prouoke his belly and bladder to auoid excrements. 3. Take heed that he digesteth his meate well, and that he begetteth not windinesse. 4. Purge out the waterish humor, wherewith the whole bodie of the sicke doth abound, by the bellie, and by the pores of the vrine. 5. Drie vp, and digest through breathing that serous humor which is included in the affected mem-

Fiue particular intentions in curing a waterish tumor.

1 2

3

4

5

1

2

3

Auicens emplaister to discusse waterish tumors.

Capita curationis aquosi tumoris.

1 2 3

4

5

6 ber. 6. But if it cannot thus be discussed, put some penknife, or some other hot instrument into the tumour, if it occupieth the arteries, and open it in that place where it is most inclined downward, that so the humour may the more
7 easily come forth. 7. Euacuate the humor which did cause the tumour by some emissarie, and then without delay dispatch all other things which do pertaine vnto the cure of other corrupted vlcers of the like nature.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ Excrescentiæ.

Enumeratio abscessuum pituitosorum.

GANGLIA so called of the Græcians, *Chærades* (that is) *Strumæ*, which they also call *Scrofule*, *Brouchocele*, which they name *Bucium*, and *Hernia guttur*, *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, and *Atheromata*: also *Testudo*, *Talpa*, *Nacta* or *Napta*, which names giuen to tumors were inuented of the late Physitions, and are not to be found among auncient writers. Those tumours also which *Auicen* calleth *Fugillæ*, also *Nodi*, and *vulgaris Bubo*, together with many other tumors of that kind, in what part soeuer of the body they do growe, they haue their generation of fleume, and for that cause they are iustly referred vnto phlegmatike tumors. But although certaine of the aboue named Abscessions do degenerate into a stonie hardnesse and into schirrhous diseases: yet the roote and the originall beginning of them for the most part is fleume, (as *Auicennas* declareth) yet we will not denie, but that some other humor may sometime be commixed with fleume, whereof such kinde of Abscessions do come, and so there do growe vp those Abscessions which are both compound and of another kind. But our intent is to speake here of simple Abscessions onely, by whose proportion or analogie the knowledge of compound tumors shall appeare most euidently: for the one must alwayes be referred vnto the other as it were vnto certaine rules or canons (as we haue said else where.) Therefore all the aforesaied tumours are comprehended vnder the kind of flegmaticke Abscessions or (that I may speake after the maner of the cõmon Chirurgians) vnder the *Genus* of phlegmatike increasings, which diseases haue certaine speciall differences among themselues (as it shall afterward appeare.) For *Glandula*, (as *Guido* thought) tooke his title of the likenesse of *Glans* an acorne, which forme he doth seeme to vnderstand in this place. This *Glandula*, saieth he, is euerie where soft, one alone, moueable, & disseuered from the other partes lying about it, oftentimes growing in the cleane & pure parts of the body. But *Glandule* in *Auicen* doth breede either in the hand, or in the foote, or in some other place ioined to the sinewes and cords of the bodie, and these *Glandule* he would not haue destroyed, lest the sicke thereby should fall into *Spasmos*, the crampe. They do hapen also in the palme of the hand, & in the forehead, as *Auicen* sayth, who also calleth them sometime *Glandulosa Apostemata*, sometime *Nodi*: for he doth intreat of those euils verie rashly in diuerse Chapters, as in his Chapter *de Nodu* euen vnto the end, & in his treatise *de Glandulis*. Therfore *Auicens Glandulæ* do seeme to be diuerse from *Guido* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglia* among

Simplicia sunt regula compositorum.

Glandulæ Guidonis.

Auicens glandulæ are all one with Ganglia.

among the Græcians to be all one with *Auicen* his *Glandula*, which thing *Paulus* his words next following do plainly testifie. *Ganglium* (saieth he) is a gathering together of the sinewes which is caused of some stripe or of wearinesse, & that in many parts of the bodie especially in those which are alwaies moving, as in the middest of the hand and in the feete. *Ætius* sayeth, that it seldome possesseth the elbow and the head, and it doth seldome also arise voluntarily. And againe the same *Paulus lib.6.ca.39.* declaring what *Ganglium* is, how it doth grow, in what mẽbers chiefly it doth arise, & what signes or tokens do accompany it, confirmeth those verie words which we spake before saying: *Ganglium* is a conuulsion of the sinewes, caused of some blow or of labour, chancing for the most part in the ioynts of the hands, & of the armes, and in the ankles and ioints of the feet, although also it ariseth in other parts of the bodie. These are the signes of *Ganglium*, the tumor is al of one color, resisting touching or handling, & without paine, but if you do thrust it any thing violently, it is felt painfull, being not deeply rooted, but lying vnder the verie skin next the sides: but againe, if you prouoke it by force it doth so neither before nor after. Hitherto speaketh *Paulus AEgineta de Ganglijs*, now we will discourse of other flegmatike tumors. Those Abscessions which the common sort call *Scrofulæ* are nothing else but hard kernels contained within the litle filmes, *videlicet*, *Glandulæ* chiefly, appearing in the neck, the armeholes, and in the parts aboue the priuie members, where *Glandulæ* are placed by the vessels of the bodie that lie vnder them: yet somtime (although seldome) they are caused by meanes of the flesh of the same places, which through a certaine kind of affinitie is turned into the nature of *Strumæ*, and is increased by the addition of matter (as it pleased *Leonidas*.) The Latines call them *Strumæ*, but the Greeks *Chœrades*, either truely because of the stones called *Chœrades* growing in the Sea, or else because of those beastes called Sowes that bring forth a great companie of pigges at once (for these euilles do rise vp many together) which beastes are often infected with that disease. For *Scrofæ*, that is to say *Sues*, haue thicke & glandulous necks, and cõmonly they be strumous & full of kernels. But *Celsus* saith that *Struma* is a tumor, wherein vnder the congeled place there do arise certen things like *glandulæ* of matter & bloud. But these do not onely possesse the necke, but also the nosethrils, the priuy parts of the body, & the sides. The Chyrurgian *Meges* declareth also that he hath found them in the paps of women. *Paulus* also speaketh thus of them: *Strumæ* saith he, do arise in the fore part of the necke, or in one part or other both at once, either two or more: but all are included within their filmes, as *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, & *Melicerides*. *Lupia* saith *Guido*, is soft & round like vnto a hop, & chiefly chuseth his place in hard & dry places of the body, as in the eie-lids & in other sinowy mẽbers: the Frenchmen call it commonly *vne Loupe*. Therefore if the description and cure of it, (which shalbe afterward handled) be conferred with the description and cure of *Ganglium* amongest the Greekes: the diseases will appeare not much different or vnlike: but they do greatly erre, which do make this euill called *lupia*, to be al one with that disease called *Lupus*. For *Lupus* is a malignant vlcer quickly consuming the neather parts, but specially annoying the thighes & legs, & it is very hũgry like vnto a wolfe (whereof it seemeth to receiue this title) eating vp the flesh that.

Cap. 16. lib. 4.
Ganglium quid.
Signa Ganglij.
Scrofulæ.
Chœrades Græcorum.
Sues.
Struma Celsi.
Lib. 6.
Lupiæ.
Lupus morbus.

lie next vnto it, which cuill without doubt is of the kind of *Phagedæne*. Diſeaſes therefore are farre diuerſe among themſelues the one from the other, al-

Nodi. though in name they be ſomewhat acquainted. *Nodus*, (as the knot of a rope) is ſaid of the ſame *Guido*, to be round, hard, and abiding in one and the ſame

Auicens nodi. place, growing eſpecially about the ſinowy places of the bodie. But *Auicen* in a certaine place defineth *Nodi* to be *dubeleta frigida*, and he compareth this name with *Steatomata*, which are called *adipoſi & adipini nodi*, fat kernels, and with *Meliceride*, which are called *mellitij nodi*, and with *Atheromata*, which conſiſt of a certaine kind of matter like vnto a pulſe, which the Greeks call *Athera*. But becauſe theſe three kinds of abſceſſions, that is to ſay, *Steatoma*, *Meliceris*, & *Atheroma* are moſt incident to mens bodies, and *Galen* alſo maketh mention of them in verie many places: we thinke it conuenient (hauing here gotten ſo fit oportunitie) to intreat of them plainely to declare their nature and their

Atheroma. markes whereby they may be knowne, and in what things alſo they do differ and diſſent, and in what things they doe alſo conſpire and agree. *Atheroma* therefore is a tumor of one and the ſame colour, and without paine, containing within the filme or ſinowy tunicle a ſoft humor like vnto *Athera*, that is, a kind of pulſe which is made of boiled meale. Sometime alſo in *Atheromata* together with a ſoft humor, there are found certaine ſtonie and hard ſubſtances, and other things like vnto ſmall peeces of brimſtone, oftentimes there are found in them certaine things like vnto the chewed bones of a henne, and like vnto haires wound vp together. This tumor *Atheroma*, appeareth in forme and figure verie long, and ſomewhat eleuated in height, which being preſſed with the fingers, by reaſon of the clammiſhneſſe and thickneſſe of the humor, it doth ſlowly yeeld or go backe, and the fingers being remoued, it doth ſlow-

Meliceris. ly alſo returne again. But *Meliceris* is a tumor which is void of pain alſo, but yet it is round, wherein the humor, which is alſo included in ſome ſinowy tunicle, (which they call *Cyſtis*) is found ſomewhat thinne, repreſenting the ſubſtance of honie: whereupon ſome of the Latins do call it *Mellifauium*, a hony comb. *Meliceris* therefore doth differ from *Atheroma* in faſhion, and in the ſubſtance of the humor: for both the forme is more round, and the ſubſtance of the humor more ſlender. This hony tumor therefore is further extended then *Atheroma*, and by preſſing it with the fingers it doth ſpeedily giue place, and when the fingers are remoued, it doth with the like celeritie returne to the former

Steatoma. place. But *Steatoma* is a tumor alſo beſides nature, all of one colour, and verie gentle to be handled, in the beginning truely it is verie ſmall, but in proceſſe of time it increaſeth and becommeth more copious, wherein is contained a humor verie like vnto tallowe, which is alſo comprehended vnder the filmes of the bodie. This is diſtinguiſhed from *Meliceris* and from *Atheroma*, by reaſon of the hardneſſe thereof, for it is both full and plentifull, and it doth reſiſt touching, that it will in no wiſe yeeld to the thruſting of the fingers. But let vs now proceed to declare other kinds of Apoſtemes which are almoſt re-

Teſtudo. duced vnto theſe three whereof we haue now entreated. *Teſtudo* (ſayth *Guido*) is a great Abſceſſion, verie humerall, ſoft, and of a broad faſhion, after the manner of a targer, (whereupon it receiued the name) which euil if it groweth (ſaith he) in the head, it is called *Talparia* or *Talpa*: if in the necke, it is called

Bocium:

Bocium: if in the ſtones, *Hernia*: but ſometime it is found with matter, or with certaine ſcales, or with a *fiſtula* accompanying it. But *Teſtudines* & *Talpæ*, amongeſt the ancient Phiſitions, had neither any proper name, nor yet once entreated of. But ſome of our dayes do define *Teſtudo* to be a ſoft tumour, or not greatly hard, yet ſomwhat big, in the which is contained a groſſe matter lying hid in a certain tunicle, which doth ſo cleaue vnto the whole head of a man (for it is a diſeaſe incidēt to the skin of the head) that it oftētimes corrupteth the ſame. This euill (no doubt) is to be accounted among the number of Abſceſſions, & cōprehended vnder *Meliceris*: or *Atheroma*, but it rather ſeemeth to incline vnto *Meliceris*: but *Talpa*, becauſe it conteineth a white matter, is rather referred vnto *Atheroma*, then vnto *Meliceru*: Notwithſtanding *Guido* affirmeth that it is a kind of *Teſtudo*, yea alſo that it is *Teſtudo* it ſelfe (as we ſayd a late) as *Hernia* alſo and *Bocium*, which he alſo nameth: but theſe affectes haue borrowed there diuerſe names according to the varietie of the places, wherein they are found. But that which the common ſorte call *Bocium*, the Greekes (fetching their title or name euen from the very depth) doe properly call *Brouchocēle*: we call it *Herniam gutturu*, whereupon they alſo call them *Gutturoſi*, which doe labour of that diſeaſe. *Brouchocēle* is a great tumour chauncing in the necke, very round betweene the skin and the wind pipe, wherein there is included, ſometime dead fleſhe, ſometime a certaine humour like vnto honie, or fat, or ſodden meale, or water. Sometime alſo (as *Celſus* ſayth) there are found in ſuch tumours certaine haires mingled with little bones. *Nacta* (as *Guido* writeth) is a great tumour, full of fleſhe, like vnto the fleſh of a mans buttockes, of diuerſe formes and greatneſſe: as are melons and gourdes, and therefore it borroweth ſundrie names according to the varietie of the faſhion and member wherein it is placed. Moreouer this tumour which of the latter ſort is called *Nacta* or *Napta*, is voyde of paine, except peraduenture it be ſo great, that by the continuall drawing of the partes of that member, it bringeth ſome griefe to the parts about it. This alſo is of the number of Abſceſſions, and doth pertaine vnto *Steatomata* (as we ſayd before in the enumeration of tumours beſides nature. *Bubo* (ſayth *Gelene*) is a diſeaſe of the looſe members, or of *Glandule*, (which the Greekes call *Adenæ*) that is to ſay, a ſimple inflammation. Wherfore *Guido* hath either vnfitly here rehearſed it among the number of flegmaticke abſceſſions: or elſe he vnderſtandeth ſome other matter then *Galene* doth. But *Bubones*, which are cauſed through a fall from ſome place, or by other vlcers and diſeaſes, are without any danger: but thoſe which are wont to happen in peſtilent feauers, are the worſt of all (whether they inuade the thighes, or the noſethrils, or the necke. *Fugillæ* (ſaith the interpreter of *Auicene*) is of the kinde of glandulous Apoſtemes, and this terme (ſaith he) is appropriated vnto it, becauſe it is a diſeaſe chauncing behind the eares. By the which deſcription it may eaſily be coniectured, that Fugille, ſo called of *Auicene*, is that tumour, which is called of the Greeks *Parotu*, that is, a glandulous diſeaſe growing vnderneath the eares. But ſome do thinke Fugille to be all one with *Bubo*: but then *Bubo* is farre otherwiſe taken of thē, then of *Galene* and *Paulus*, which i (as they ſay) a tumour that is deepely planted and rooted, and oftentimes not compaſſed with any skinne or filme, it is very hard alſo after the maner of

Talpa.

Bocium.

Brouchocēle.

Nacta.

Nacta or Napta is referred vnto Steatomata.

Bubo.

Fugillæ.

παρωτις.

What Bubo is with Guido & other late Phyſitions.

the euils called *Scrofulæ*, and in that signification (as I iudge) is *Bubo* taken of *Guido*, becauſe he doeth regiſter *Fugillinus Bubo* amongſt the number of fleugmaticke abſceſſions. But there are now found out verie manie titles giuen to theſe kindes of phlegmaticke abſceſſions. But we ought not greatly to ſtand vpon the names of them, ſo that we know and vnderſtand the onely differences of them, becauſe it falleth ſo out, that according to the diuerſitie of their names, their cures and iudgements do varie. Therefore of ſuch kinde of abſceſſions, ſome truly are included within a certain skin or tunicle (which they call *Cyſtis*) and ſome are deeply planted in the fleſh: ſome haue a ſlender foundation, or ſmall roote, & ſome againe are verie large and brode. Alſo ſome are eaſie to be reſolued, and ſome are farre otherwiſe: ſome great and ſome little. Some alſo do come vnto ſuppuration, and ſome do not. To conclude, ſome tumours are ſcalie, fiſtulous and cancerous, but ſome do admit or ſuffer none of theſe things. The cauſes of theſe kindes of tumours are threefold, *videlicet*, 1. Primitiue cauſes, as a fall, a ſtripe, exceſſiue or inordinate liuing, and an euill diet. 2. Antecedent cauſes, as are vnnaturall humours, eſpecially thoſe which be flegmaticke, and true *ædemata*, which do degenerate into abſceſſions. 3. *Coniunctæ cauſæ*, which are the diuerſe ſubſtances, and properly the matters of euerie abſceſſion, contained in the affected member. But in theſe kinds of tumors there are contained certaine humours, which be either ſerous or wateriſh as is vrine, putrified and corrupt, or filthie, or dirtie, or elſe humours like vnto honie, or ſodden meale, or vnto fat. But there are ſomtime found within theſe abſceſſions, phlegmaticke, and wateriſh, and glandulous fleſh, ſometime alſo ſtones, ſand, ſhelles, wood, coales, and other ſuch like ſolide ſubſtances. Notwithſtanding theſe three kinds of tumours do moſt frequent mens bodies (as we haue ſayd before) whereof euerie one hath borrowed in Greeke his proper title: as *Atheroma*, *Steatoma*, and *Meliceris*, which are thus called by reaſon of the ſimilitude of the ſubſtances contained in them. For there is another tumour amongſt theſe, like vnto tallow, or ſome other fat thing, another like vnto honie, another like vnto a thinne kinde of meate, which they call *Athera*. The ſignes and iudgements of ſuch kindes of tumours, which belong vnto fleume, may eaſily be found out by their deſcriptions and differences before declared. But the marke wherby we may know whether they be couered with any veile or not, is this, there is moueableneſſe and inconſtancie of the filme or skinne, called *Cyſtis*, which the auncient Phiſitions haue named *tunica*, and there is a ſeparation of the skinne: but when they be ſurely fixed, that is, abiding in one place, and do cleaue faſt to the fleſh, it is an euident token, that they are garded about with no filme or tunicle at all. Furthermore, thoſe tumors which are new and tractable, may eaſily be diſcuſſed, but they which be hard and inueterate, can in no wiſe be reſolued. Redneſſe, paine, & increaſing of heate do declare that thoſe abſceſſions will either come to ſuppuration, or elſe degenerate into a fiſtula or a cancre. *Strumæ numeroſæ*, which do affect the outward members, & do often change their place, wandring here and there about the body, with a certaine extraordinary heat, do teſtifie & declare verie plainly, that they will beget and breed thoſe inward diſeaſes called *Chærades*, as Arnaldus hath noted in a certaine place. Thoſe remedies therfore, which are out-

The differẽces of flegmatkie abſceſſions.

Of the cauſes, ſignes & iudgments of the aforeſaid tumours.

Cauſes of tumours which pertaine vnto fleume.

The matter of flegmaticke abſceſſions.

14. Therap.

Signa.

Notæ abſceſſus velamento incluſi.

Iudicia abſceſſuum pituitoſorum.

Arnaldus à villa noua.

outwardly appplied to thē,do profit little or nothing.But theſe diſeaſes (as *Auicene* thought)are increaſed and doe multiply by ſome fall, or by ſome hurt or bruiſe in the body. Now theſe ſtrumous tumours are greatly helped by vſing purging medicines,diureticall potions,& electuaries,(as they call thē) which can dry vp.Alſo the change of aire doth greatly auaile in young children. But children, by reaſon of their exceſſiue eating and immoderate diet, and the ſclenderneſſe of body,are very oftē annoyed with *Strumæ*.But old men by reaſon of the contrary cauſes,are ſeldome troubled therewith. Moreouer they which haue a narrow forehead,& ſtraight temples,& great cheekes, are ſubiect to *Strumæ*. For in ſuch,the matter is readily brought downe to the necke, as one *Henricus* among the number of the late Phiſitions,hath noted very wel. But *Strumæ*(as *Celſus* ſayth)are wont commonly to wearie Phiſitions, becauſe they procure feauers alſo, neither doe they at any time rypen eaſilie, and they are cured either with ſome hotte inſtrument, or with medicines, and oftentimes they doe riſe vp againe beſide their ſcarres, and a long time after they require medicines againe,and moreouer it ſo commeth to paſſe that they remaine in the fleſh a long ſeaſon.The inſciſion, & corroſiuing of ſuch tumors is greatly to be feared about the belly,the necke,& the ioints,by reaſon of the affinitie and knitting together of the veines,the arteries,and the ſinewes,and alſo of the internall capacitie. In the inſciſion alſo of great Glandule, it behoueth greatly to eſchew that veine,which lyeth at the roote of them, and doth bring nouriſhment vnto thē.For oftentimes it cauſeth great profuſiō of bloud, wherupō there enſueth ſtraight way no ſmall danger. Theſe euils called *Strumæ*,do greatly differ amōgſt thēſelues both in greatneſſe,nature,place,beginning,multitude, and ioyning together of the veſſels (as *AEtius* hath gathered out of *Leonidas*.)Therefore litle *Strumæ* are ſooner & more eaſily cured then the great,euen as the gentle tumours are more tractable then thoſe which are inflamed.Noyſome Strume cannot be remedied.For ſeeing all ſuch diſeaſes called *Strumæ* are cancerous,and do ſtuffe vp the veſſelles of the body,while they are curing,they muſt needes bring the daunger of profuſion of bloud, beſides that alſo,they are found verie deepe in the fleſh and therfore they cannot any way be cut off.For a malicious & hurtfull *Struma* doth poſſeſſe the beſt veſſels, (that is) the greateſt veines and arteries (which are called *Carotides*) euen as though it ſhould hold by certain rootes. The ſuperficiall *Strumæ* are more eaſie to be cured then the internall by reaſon of their place, & thoſe alſo are curable which doe happen in the necke, where yet you muſt be verie diligent to eſchew the loude and great ſinewes: for many by cutting *Strumæ* about the windpipe, and by cutting other loude ſinewes haue cauſed the ſicke all the time of his life,after to remaine ſpeechleſſe.For beſide the excifion of that ſinew,the great veſſels being layd bare,& cooled in the cure,do hurt the duty of the tōgue.For the multitude of *Strumæ*, it appeareth,that one alone may eaſilier be cured them many together.And concerning the manner of their riſing, it is manifeſt alſo, that they which hang downeward are a great deale ſooner healed, then they which are planted in the fleſh.Thus much of *Struma*,which *Aetius* hath recited out of *Leonidas*.The cure of theſe kinds of Abſceſſiōs,which haue their originall of fleume,is of the late Chyrurgians appointed to be two

In what ages and bodies Strumæ doe raigne.

Celſus.

Magnitudo Strumæ.

Naturæ.

Locus.

Multitudo ortus.

Duplex abſceſſuum pituitoſorum curandi ratio.

1. *Vniuersalis.* fould (that is to say. (1. Generall, and vniuersally common at all, 2. and particular, which is propet in euery difference. Therefore our generall methode of curing these tumours shalbe, to appoint such an ordinarie and conuenient diet to the sicke, as that the matter, which causeth such abscessions, be not heaped vp together in the body, and by all meanes to preuent and turne away the antecedent matter (as they call it) which now is gathered together in the sicke body, least at the length it be vnited to the ioyned cause, that is, vnto that matter, which now bringeth the disease. But we shall accomplish the first intention of our generall cure, if the sicke do diligently obserue that kinde of

Victus ratio. diet, which is prescribed in our former Chapters (this one thing excepted) which is, that they ought to keepe a very thinne diet, and that, which is more conuenient to deuide thicke and clammie humours. Therefore if they will follow the counsell of *Auicene*, let them eschew all those meates which are of a grosse iuyce, the drinking also of cold things, too much satietie & immoderate fulnesse, and those things also which procure vomite and abhorring of meats. But they must abide as much hunger as can be. They must chiefly procure good digestion, and auoyde a moyst house, that is either situated in lowe valleyes, or in fennes, or frequented with corrupted waters. Let his drinke be

Aqua aluminosa vis. wine that is excellent and of the best, or else let it be water of alume, or of brimstone. For such kinde of minerall waters, especially those which do represent in tast the dregs of wine, do not onely diminish and discusse these inward Strumours and flegmaticke abscessions: but those also which doe outwardly

Antecedentis materiæ euacuatio. affect the superficiall partes of the body (as *Arnoldus* affirmeth.) But we doe perfect the other part of our former proceeding (that is to say) to turne away the antecedent matter, least it be mingled with *coniuncta materia*, by foure kindes of euacuations, that is, by some medicine to purge fleume downeward, and sometime by letting of bloud, also by those things which can prouoke vrine, and last of all by those remedies which can through their vapour both resolue and digest the humour which is gathered together in the inwarde

Vacuantia per aluum. partes of the body. To purge the body downeward, the powder of *Turbith* is greatly commended, which is made thus in *Auicene*: ℞. of *Turbith*, ginger, and

Pulvis Turbith. sugar, of each a like portion, but he taketh thereof two drammes, and he affirmeth also, that (besides that it doth resolue grosse fleume) it doth neither

Razes. heate, nor violently wrest the inward members. But *Razes*, who was very bold in declaring and vsing purging medicines, made this kinde of powder, in his ninth Chapter *de doloribus ventris ad Almansorem*, of twentie parts of *Turbith*, of ten of ginger, & thirty of sugar, and ministreth of it at one time. ℥. iij. *Benedicta*

Hierapicrá. also and *Hierapicra*, and *pillulæ de agarico* and *pillulæ maiores de Hermodactylis* do

Prouokers of vrine. greatly helpe these diseases. To prouoke vrine, *Guido* out of *Cauliacus* was wont vse this potion following, which (he sayth) he gathered out of the writings of

Potio Guidonis à Cauliaco. many Phisitions. ℞, of *Scrofularia, partes* iij. of *phylipendula partes* ij. of pimpernell, mouseare, *Tenacetum*, of red coleworts (which of some are thought to be *Brassica maruciua*) of *rubia maior*, ana. *parte* j. of the roote of *Aristolochia*, of *spathula fatida*, of the roote of radish. ana part. ß. put them altogether, and boyle them in white wine and honie, vntill halfe be consumed, then streine them, whereof euery third day in the morning let the sicke take three ounces, and

let

let it be drunk hot. But in the applying of all these remedies, (as also for blood-letting, if at any time it be required) the counsel of some learned phisition is to be vsed, who may prescribe both the quality, quantity & vse of them. But to resolue through breathing, and to digest the humor, which is gathered together in the depth of the body, and doth excite inward Glandule, (which also are the causes of outward diseases) *Galen lib.* 14. *Therap.* willeth vs to minister *Theriaca*, *Athanasia*, *Ambrosia*, and that medicine also which is made of *cretica calamintha*: the Greeks call it *Diacalaminthe*: whose composition is to be sought out in *lib.* 4. *de sanit. tuen.* Many other helps are appointed for the cure of these abscessions, as potions, electuaries, and oiles, which are cast into the eares. There are also very many remedies called *Empirica*, consisting in practise, described & celebrated of the ancient Phisitions, the vse whereof I do not allow, and therfore I thinke it good to pretermit the declaration of them in these our commentaries. Notwithstanding this one thing I stedfastly affirme, that the Christiã king of France is indued as it were by inspiration with so wonderful a gift, that with the onely laying on of the hands he can restore them which be diseased with *Struma* or *Scrofula* to their perfect health againe. *King Edward* also (as histories do report) was wont maruellously to cure Strumous persons only by touching them, which gift immortall doth come as it were by inheritance to the Kings that succeed. For the Kings of England at this day, by laying on of hands, and rehearsing certaine ceremoniall prayers, do heale *Struma*. And these things truly are generally spoken in all the abscessions before mentioned. Now those things which follow do concerne the particular and proper method of curing euerie difference: which method is made not only diuerse, but also it is changed, both by the substance of matter whereof they haue their beginning, & by the quantitie of them, whether they be great or small, and by the nature also of the affected member, & of the whole body. But the continuance of time, although it declareth not the cure, yet sometime it sheweth vs, and it doth insinuate the qualitie of the disposition thereof, (as *Galen* hath set downe *lib.* 4. *de morbis curandis.*) Therefore although many indications and intentions of their cure may be gathered & learned by those things we haue spoken before, yet for our present purpose, we haue reduced them into 6. points, which we haue expressed in these sixe canons following. The first whereof is after this maner: inprimis, let those flegmaticke abscessions that are soft and small, (which are commonly called *Lupiæ*, and of the interpreter of *Auicen*, *Glandulæ*) if they be seated in the strong partes of the bodie, and because they are not yet inueterate, haue their thin *Cystis*, that is, their filme to couer them, let them I say, be appeased, suppressed, consumed, and afterward dried vp. 2. Mollifie, discusse, and consume the great abscessions which be not greatly hard nor inueterate, after the manner of œdematous tumors whereof we haue before intreated. 3. Ripen, open, and clense such flegmaticke, corrupted, and vlcerous Apostemes, which do pertaine vnto suppuration. 4. Those *Strumæ* which are not cured by the former remedies, and yet are moueable, gentle, tractable, & obedient, cut them off, and draw them out. 5. Those which are vnmoueable, deeply rooted, inwardly planted, and wound about the veines and arteries, and broad at the the root within, corrosiue them about, and cleanse them throughly. 6. Those

Quæ per habitum digerant.

The Kings of France do cure Strumæ by applying the hands.

What things do alter the particular cure of abscessions flegmaticke.

Tempus quid insinuet.

1

1

2

3

4

5

6

which are faſtned but to a thin & ſlender root, bind them about and pluck thē out. The firſt canon, according to *Auicen* his opinion is perfected after this manner, if when you do conſume and ſuppreſſe vehemently theſe ſoft and litle abſceſſions (which *Auicen* doth call *Glandulæ*, and the new Phiſitions *Lupiæ*) you do lay on a plate of lead made fit for the tumor, & bind it very ſtrongly in the middeſt leſt it ſlide from the place: for this doth digeſt theſe kindes of tumors. Firſt therfore let *Lupia* be ſoftly rubbed with the hand vntill it wax ſomwhat hote, and vntill it be after a ſort ſofter then it ſelfe. Afterward let the affected member be ſurely laid hold on with the hands, and let it be ſo often, and ſo vehemently ſtricken with the bottome of a ſaucer, or with ſome other ſolide thing, that it may be diſſeuered, and that the inward *Cyſtis* thereof (which is the filme wherein it is included) may be rent and broken, and ſo the matter therein contained may be diſperſed: Which thing being done, apply the plate of lead vpon the place, and let it be bound verie ſtrongly with a ſwathing band that hath two ends, neither let it be remoued for the ſpace of nine or ten daies, but let the plate be of that greatneſſe (as it was ſaid of late) that it may anſwer to the proportion of *Lupia*. But there are ſome which before the application of any plate of lead do miniſter this ointment made of burnt lead, of the bark of the elder tree, or of the figge tree, with oile and vineger. Other do firſt vſe an emplaiſter made of aloës, *acatia*, mirrhe, *olibanum*, *ſcarcocolla* putting to them a litle vineger, or the white of an eg, as much as ſhall ſeeme ſufficient to commixe with the reſt. *Henricus* was wont to lay vpon them litle flakes (as he and other Chyrurgians of that ſect do call them) made of flaxe dipped in the white liquor of an egge with ſalt and alume *Zuccharinum* vnthicked. Moreouer *Philagrius* almoſt after the ſame manner was wont to cure *Ganglia* (as it is in *Ætius*) which diſeaſes are tumors vnequall (as we ſaid before) ſpeaking after this ſort. We denie (ſaith he) the labour of the Chyrurgian, that is bloudletting in *Ganglia*, eſpecially if they chaunce in the handes or in the feete, but we muſt cure them onely by medicines. For we annoint them by the fire with ammoniacke which muſt be made pliant to the thickneſſe of an emplaiſter: afterward we applie a plate of lead equall for the tumor, and leſt it ſhould ſlide away from the place, we bind it in the middeſt with ſtraight bands. But a few daies after, when we know that *Ganglium* is mollified, we take away the bands, & (not ſaying any thing to the ſicke) while the place is yet hot, we faſten the thumbe of our right hand vpon *Ganglium*, and laying faſt hold on the member with our other foure fingers, we violently breake it, and ſo *Ganglium* is preſently diſſolued. Hitherto *Philagrius*. Therefore by this our order of cure, it may eaſily be gathered, that *Lupia* amongſt the late Phiſitions, *Auicen* his *Glandulæ*, and *Ganglion* among the Greeks, is all one diſeaſe, which the former deſcription of thē do alſo manifeſtly declare. *Archigenes* in this diſeaſe, commendeth to lay our lime with the fat of a gooſe, and with roſin *Terebinthina*, which is the right turpentine. The ſame *Archigenes* alſo did oftentimes vſe that medicine made of the ſtone called *Lapis achates*, as *Paulus* reporteth. But *Oribaſius* vſed verie often this medicine. ℞. of ceruce, *reſinæ piceæ*, old oyle .ana. ℥. j. of ammoniacke *Thymiama*, and *Galbanum* .ana. a like quantitie, of waxe .℥. iiij. The ſame medicine is to be ſeene in *Aetius*, but the quantity doth varie in certen things,

Compreſſio & attritio.

Lupiæ curatio.

Lamina plumbea.

Vnguentum Rogerij.

Ganglij curatio ex Philagrio.

Lupia & ganglion is all one euill.

Archigenes lib. 4.

Oribaſius his medicine to mollifie Ganglia.

as

as thus. ℞. of ceruſe, old oile, and *reſine picee*. ana. ℔. j. of waxe. ℥. ij. of *ammoniacum Thimiama*, and of *Galbanum* .ana. ℥. j. boile the ceruſe with oile till it loſe his ſtaining facultie, then bray the ammoniack, and caſt it into the ceruſe with the oile, afterward caſt in the *reſina picea* and the waxe, and laſt of all the *Galbanum*, which firſt muſt be made verie ſoft and tender. Moreouer that famous Phiſition of Greece, I meane *Oribaſius*, did not apply any plate of lead, as *Philagrius*, *Auicen*, and other late Chyrurgians were accuſtomed, but he did lay and bind vnto *Ganglium*, a thick round peece of lead like vnto a wherue, which do hang vpon womens ſpindles to make them turne round, which was more large & ample for the diſeaſe. For truly ſaith he, with the weight thereof, it doth more ſpeedily diſſolue the euill. Therefore in the cure of *Ganglia*, it is far better to vſe ſuch mollifying and diſcuſſing medicines, then the diligence of the Chyrurgian, (with exciſion of the tumors) eſpecially when they do grow in the legges, or in the armes, or in the principall parts of the bodie. For it is to be feared, that if they be cut off, the member is made lame and vnperfect. But thoſe diſeaſes which do occupie the head or the forehead, may ſafely be cured with the hand, that is, may be cut off, or pulled vp by the roots. Therfore diuide the outward skin with a penknife, and then (if the tumors be ſmall) lay hold on the foundation of them with a paire of pinſers, or ſome ſuch like inſtrument, and cut them off frō the root. But if they be great, thruſt them through with a hooke, and lift them vp, and winde them round about vntill you haue plucked and drawne them forth: laſt of all, ſow vp the ſides or brims of them together, and vſe thoſe medicines which are appointed for bloudy vlcers. But theſe things belong vnto the fourth canon. The ſecond canon (becauſe I wilbe ſilent in thoſe medicines which are appointed for flegmatick and œdematous tumors which we haue deſcribed alreadie, and yet together with theſe remedies following, they be verie profitable and expedient for theſe Abſceſſions whereof we now intreate, and alſo for all kind of *Hernia*) is finiſhed by the applying of a certaine emplaiſter, which is deſcribed of *Galen libro ſexto de compoſitione medicamentorum* κατὰ γένη: which emplaiſter (as he himſelfe teſtifieth) doth digeſt through breathing, and doth repell *Phlegmone*, and is effectuall againſt the diſeaſes called *Struma*, *Pani*, and *Parotides*: it is auaileable alſo againſt the goute, and it benefiteth many other diſeaſes. The emplaiſter is this. ℞. of old oile. ℥. 100. *ſpumæ argenti*, *picis ſiccæ*. ana. ℥. 50. of *Ladanum*. ℥. 25. of *æruginis raſæ*. ℥. 8. of *Galbanum*. ℥. 4. let *Argenti ſpuma*, which they call *Lithargirum* be braied and boiled in the oile, and when they are ſomewhat thickned together, put in the pitch & the ruſt of the ſcourings of braſſe commonly called verdigreece, then the *Ladanum*, and *Galbanum*. Afterward powre them into a morter and bray them and mollifie them, and reſerue them to your vſe. Some to make it haue a good colour, and to looke ſomewhat browne, do commixe with them alſo the offall of braſſe. ℥. viij. for otherwiſe it would be very blacke. This emplaiſter is found otherwiſe deſcribed in *Guido* his commentaries vnder this forme, ℞. of olde oyle. ℥. xij. of the ſcourings of braſſe. ℥. xiiij. of drie pitch. ℥. vj. of *Ladanum*. ℥. iij. of *Lithargirum*. ℥. xij. of *Galbanum*. ℥. iij. For the ſame purpoſe *Diachylon* alſo which is called *Commune & ireatum* doth profite much, wherof you muſt take one pound, and commixe therwith the powder of the root of

Verticillum plumbeum.

Ganglionum per Chyrurgiã curatio.

Secundus canon.

Diſcuſſion by digeſtiues.

Emplaſtrum.

Diachylon.

ireos. ℥.j. The ſame effect hath that *Diachylon*, called *magnum Meſues*, whoſe deſcription ſhall afterward inſue. Some counſell vs, for the digeſtion of theſe abſceſſions, to apply vnto the grieued place, the old doung of a goat with hony & vineger, which muſt be het ouer the fire vntil they be wel incorporat together, and then brought to the forme of an emplaiſter: alſo an emplaiſter made of fenugreeke, of the ſeed of flaxe, & of coleworts, with the ſcrapings of the roote of *Althæa*, which medicine, (if there be any hope of ſuppuration) doth ripen it notably. Haly Abbas alſo for the ſame purpoſe doth greatly commend this emplaiſter following. ℞. of beane meale, and of barley meale. ana. ℥.v. of the roote of liquorice, of the roote of *Althæa*, and of pitch. ana. ℥ x. of white waxe, gooſe ſuet. ana. ℥.x. bray them, and mingle them together with old oyle, and with the vrine of a child that hath not yet tryed Venus ſports, and ouer a ſoft fire make an emplaiſter. Another out of *Auicen* which *Guido* vſed. ℞. of oxes doung ℥.ij. of the roote of coleworts, of the roote of capers, of the fiſh called a ſhrimpe, of fat figges ana. ℥.ß. of hops and *bdellium*. ana. ℥.ij. of vineger, hony, ſowes tallow, of the dregs of old oile, of ech as much as is ſufficient, whereof make an emplaiſter. *Brunnus* approueth this remedie following, whoſe opinion *Theodoricus* alſo doth confirme. ℞. of ammoniacke, *bdellium*, *Galbanum* of ech a like quantitie: ſteepe them three daies in vineger, wherto (when they be diſſolued) you may adde of ſmall bran aſmuch as ſhall ſuffice, and make an emplaiſter. *Rogerius* was wont to vſe this remedie for *Strume* (which they commonly call *Scrofulæ*). ℞. of the roote of brakes of daffadill, or of walwort (if you pleaſe) of ech as much as you thinke good, let them be boiled in the beſt wine, and then braied in a morter, and ad to them a litle quicke brimſtone, and make an emplaiſter. *Guido* his maiſter *in monte Peſſulano*, hath often tried this emplaiſter to be moſt effectuall, which is made of xij ſnailes (which they alſo call *Limaces*) boyled in wine, or in lie made of aſhes, commonly called *clauellata*. But that which is more profitable, he did miniſter euerie day to the ſick to be eaten one ſnaile, either drie or otherwiſe prepared, and as they terme it, made readie to chew. *Paulus* alſo was wont notably to diſcuſſe *Strume* with vnſlaked lime, ſteeped in hony, or in the filthineſſe of mens bodies that do ariſe either in exerciſing theſelues, or in bathes, or elſe in oile, or ſowes greace. The like vertue ſaith *Aetius*, hath the filthineſſe of exerciſing places ſcraped from the walles, which muſt be well beaten together and ſpred vpon a linnen colth, and applied after the manner of an emplaiſter. For the ſame purpoſe this helpeth effectually. ℞. of lime & *nitrum*. ana. a like portion, of *Cardamomum* and fenugreeke, foure times as much, with hony, and apply it after the manner of a mollifying plaiſter. Alſo the meale of bitter hops boiled and annointed with *oximel* doth diſcuſſe *Strume*. For the ſame purpoſe alſo oxes doung boiled in vineger and annointed, doth notably auaile, which being applied after the manner of a cataplaſme, doth maruellouſly diſſolue all hard and ſcirrhous tumors. Rathe ripe figs alſo, eſpecially of the wild fig tree, applied with hogs greace, do diſcuſſe all kinds of tumors. Therfore by this our method of curing, you ſhall heale all kind of *Strume* which are but newly begun, and not yet inueterate, as well in children as in them which cannot abide manuall practiſe, euen by the applying of ſuch medicines as can diſſolue, digeſt, & diſcuſſe. But firſt you muſt labor to mollifie, and afterward to diſcuſſe

Stercus capril. lum vetus.

Haly Abbas emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum Auicennæ.

Brumi & Theodorici emplaſtrum ad ſtrumas.

Rogerij emplaſtrum.

Emplaſtrum præceptoris Guidonis ex limacibus.

discusse, or else vse some medicine of a double qualitie, which can worke both these effectes together, of which kind are all those remedies almost, which are before described. Nowe if digestiue medicines shall nothing preuaile in these Abscessions, they must be either brought vnto suppuration, or consumed or else cured by Chyrurgerie, (as it shall be said hereafter.) But here we must not omit that thing, which is recorded of some verie diligently: namely, that they which are diseased with *Strumæ*, and with any leprosie, are maruellously holpen by the vsing of vipers and serpents, and by the drinking of the gumme called *Laser*, euerie day fasting to the quantitie of a chiche pease. Therefore cast the dead serpent into a pot, & stop the mouth thereof verie iust with some plaister, and set it in the fire, then take the ashes of the burned serpent and mingle them with the like quantitie of fenugreeke, and vse them in wine. For this doth excellently helpe them which be strumous. Also in them that labour with *Struma*, you must prouide that the bellie be made soluble, and a slender diet obserued: you must daily prouoke vomiting, & endeuour to purge fleume vpward. you must also drie the head, and apply cataplasmes to the forepart thereof, which can raise litle pushes in the skin, as is the roote of capers, with *polenta*, and other such like things. And you must also vse purging medicines, and fine powders that be of the like vertue. We also do generally dispatch the declaration of the third rule, by the vse of the former remedies: for all mollifying and resoluing medicines, if they find any place or matter disobedient vnto resolution, they doubtlesse do ripen the same matter, and bring it to suppuration: especially if the said matter be gentle & tractable, or commixed with bloud. But Haly Abbas, that he might bring these kinds of abscessions vnto maturitie, ministred a plaister made of barley meale, pitch, and *olibanum*, and of the vrine of a young child all well incorporat together. But *Auicen*, to represse the vehemencie of the heate, willeth to commixe the decoction of coriander with the aforesaid vrine. But if these things doe nothing helpe, and there be required a more effectuall remedie: take of mirrhe, part. j. of *licium*, parts ij. and mingle them with the aforesaid decoction. This medicine vnder written, doth bring *Strumæ* vnto suppuration, which medicine is recorded of *Paulus Ægineta Lib.* 4. ℞ of mirrhe, ℥.x. of *ammoniacum Thymiama*. ℥.vij. of *viscus quercinum* ℥.viij. of *Galbanum*. ℥ iiij. of *propolis* .℥. j. beate them in a mortar. But when these abscessions be ripe, and brought vnto suppuration (which you shall easily perceiue by the tokens of the matter) they must be opened and clensed within, which you shall do very well, if you do clense them after their apertion with that ointment commonly called *Vnguentum Apostolorum*, which is an ointment of great efficacie in malignant and vlcerated *Strumæ*. To this purpose also the ointment called *Vnguentum Ægyptiacum* is verie profitable, and the *Emplastrum de succo* (which they call *Diachylon*) & *Diapalma*, which the Greekes call ποντικὸν, whose descriptions are to be found in other places. But if these Abscessions shall possesse any member, wherein there subsisteth any putrefaction, and corruption of the bones, or any euill symptomate shall haue accesse to them: they must be cured after the maner of vlcers, with which they haue some affinitie & acquaintance. Concerning our fourth canon, you shal cure gentle, obedier, superficiall, and curable *Strumæ*, very cunningly and shortly after this sorte.

The vsing of vipers and serpents doth maruellously helpe them which are strumous.

3
Tertij Canonis declaratio.

Suppurantia, seu maturantia.

Pauli medicamentum ad strumas suppurandas.

Detergentia.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

Vnguentum Aegyptiacum

Diachylon.

Diapalma.

4 *The way to cure and destroy Struma, out of Albucasis and Leonidas.*

First, commaund the sicke to lie downe: for that when he sitteth, his heart will quickly faile him. When he is thus layd, bind his legs surely together, and tie them to the bedsted, and charge the seruants about him to hold his head very hard. Then cut the skin that compasseth the tumour either with a right, or a litle ouerthwart section, but that insicision which is drawne ouerthwart in the necke is altogether vnprofitable, because in it the vesselles and sinewes are extended right foorth. But you shall not cut the whole thickneſse of the skin hastily at one time without ceasing: for our mind is to vse no violent thing in this our worke. And truly in litle tumours, that is, in small *strumæ*, make but a simple insicision, or deuide them with a small line: but in great abscessions cut the skin to the forme of a myrtle leafe: then those vessels which are vncouered (as if the veines and arteries) put them softly & easily aside. After these things, distend & streeth out the sides of the section, or the edges of the diuided skin, with pinsers, or with other such instruments, and plucke out the filmes within, either with yout fingers, or with some other instrument appointed for that purpose, and so by litle and litle picke out *struma*, where it appeareth bare and vnfolded from the tunicles. But if *struma* shall be wound about the vessels, you must handle the cure with great attention, lest through negligence, there followeth a copious profusion of bloud. Therefore in dispatching this cure, draw one onely side of the section at once with the pinsers, and so by litle and litle separate it with the poynt of a penknife from the other partes thereunto adioyned, and when you haue drawne and loosed the connexion on the one side, do the like also on the other side, and then cut out the whole foundation or ground worke, because of the sinewes and vesselles lying vnderneath. But in those *strumæ* which do chaunce about the arme-holes, and about the priuie members, you must make an ouerthwart insicision, by reason of the doubling of the skinne. Moreouer, in that section, which is made in *strumæ* that possesse the neck, you must haue a singular care, least either the arteries, which they call *carotides*, or the quiuering sinewes, be touched and hurt. But if by the cutting of any vessell when you make insicision, the profusion of bloud doth delay and hinder your worke, either take vp the vessell with a small cord, or (if it be not verie great) cut it quite off (as *Paulus* counselleth) or else, (if it bursteth uot out with great violence) apply such remedies as are appointed to stanch the bloud. Afterward returne againe vnto your enterpised labour. Therefore when the foundation of *struma*, is brought into a narrow roome, cut it cleane off cunningly and handsomely, and then put in the forefinger, and search the place diligently, whether there be any other *strumæ* thereunto adioyned or not: which (if there be any found) you must also draw foorth after that manner which we haue before expressed. Moreouer you shall easily represse a meane fluxe of bloud by applying those things which haue power to drie vp, as flaxe, sponges, or liniments made of cotten, infused in cold water, or in vineger, or in a mixture of both, (which they call *oxycraton*) and afterward wrong out. But if the section shall continue without bloud-shead, fill it vppe with the powder of frankensence, and applie linimentes, and for the longer preseruation of the liniments, binde to wooll dipped in wine. But if any full veine worthy the speaking of be connexed within the root or bottome

What is to be done, if a veine be annexed vnto struma.

of

of *Glandula* or *ſtruma*, or ſome ſuch like tumour, it is not conuenient to cut it off at the verie ground, but to take it vp and binde it with a ſmall cord, that it may fall out of it owne accord, peece by peece without any danger. In which fall the cure muſt be followed with linimentes: but the cord muſt be of ſome matter which will not eaſily putrifie, as are thoſe threads which are called *Serica*, or ſmall lute ſtrings: for thoſe bandes which do quickely rot, do ſoone fall from thoſe members whereunto they are tyed. But, if when the worke is finiſhed, ſome of the skinne which couereth the matter of the former Abſceſſions, or ſome other ſtrange thing ſhall remaine behind: *Albucaſis* willeth it to be drawne out, firſt by filling the wound with cotten, or with ſome other like thing dipped in ſalt water. But *Guido*, to draw out thoſe reliques which remayned behinde, did fill vp the gaping vlcer, firſt with the white of an egge, and with Alume ſprinckled ouer it, afterward with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with ſome of thoſe corroſiuing medicines which are deſcribed in the Antidotarie. Moreouer in all theſe operations, you muſt applie ſuch medicines as can lenifie paine: but among all other things, we do commonly lay on flax dipped in the white of an egge, and in oyle of roſes. You ſhall finiſh the ſcope of our fifth rule after this ſort: breake the skin with ſome burning hote medicine according to the greatneſſe of the Abſceſſion: But while you attempt that thing, you muſt giue diligent heede, leaſt that the ſcalding medicine do touch the other partes laying about the tumours. You ſhall notablie diſpatch this labour, by applying ſome hote medicine made of lyme, or ſope, which things do happily execute their effectes within the ſpace of twelue houres: but though they remaine ſomewhat longer, yet there will enſue no daunger or diſcommoditie thereby. The skinne therefore being thus broken by ſome burning medicine, and cruſt procured in the place thereof, you ſhall diuide the tumour with a ſtraight line all along through the middeſt of the cruſt: but you muſt make inſciſion ſomwhat deeply, almoſt to the verie quicke, and then lay vpon the cut or gaping wound, a liniment ſtriked with ſome conſuming or eating medicine, as is, the powder of *Aſphodelus*. Moreouer although many do apply a great number of medicines in theſe abſceſſions: yet Arſenicke in this caſe obtaineth the preheminence, ſo that a man know how to vſe it aright. But the certaine quantitie of vſing the ſame cannot be deſcribed (as *Galen* hath noted in *libro tertio Therapeut.*) It is not therfore to be vſed raſhly, becauſe it is a medicine vehement and violent without meaſure, exciting feauers, and procuting many other vicious ſymptomates. Beſides that alſo the miniſtring of a ſmall quantitie doth performe a maruellous and almoſt an incredible effect: notwithſtanding, the cõmon meaſure or quantitie thereof, is the medietie of one graine of wheate in a ſtrong bodie, and in thoſe members which are farre off from the principall partes: but in weake natures, and in thoſe places which are ſituated neare vnto the principal members, a leſſe quantity muſt be applied. But to be ſhort, it is better, and more ſafe, to miniſter a litle at once and often, then at one time to applie an immoderate quantitie. The operation or effect of Arſenicke remaineth three whole daies, in all which time, the ſicke muſt vſe the diet of them that are feuerous. But the affected member, & the parts lying about it, both for the owne

Cordes made of ſilke.

Albucaſis.

Corroſio & mundificatio.

Caſticum ex calce & ſapone.

Arſenicum.

Quantitas arſenici.

defence, and to ſtop the fluxe,(which immoderate heate may cauſe)ought to be annointed and all to waſhed with the ointment called *populeon*, with water alſo, or with the iuyce of nightſhade,and with vineger, and with other refrigerating remedies of the like kinde. But when you are certainely aſſured, that *Glandula* is deſtroyed and waſted away (which you ſhall know by the hardneſſe and ſwelling of the procured cruſt)then the cruſt muſt be reſolued euen from the quick by waſhing it with butter, & by applying a litle wheat meale thicked together,and by ſome other fat and vnctuous thing that is not ſalted,as ſwines greace and ſuch like. But when the cruſt is fallen from the tumor, if any thing either of *Glandula*, *lupia*, or *ſtruma* do yet remaine behind, it muſt be fetched out with ſome gnawing medicine, as with the powder of *Aſphodelus*, with *Vnguentum Aegyptiacum*, or with ſome ſuch like thing. But if there remaineth no thing behind it muſt be brought vnto a ſcarre after the maner of other vlcers. But now that we may alſo accompliſh the intention of our fixth canon: theſe abſceſſions which haue verie narrow baſes or foundations,muſt be faſt bound either with a cord of ſilke, or with horſe haire, and they muſt be bound daily more and more, either with the former bands, or with other new cordes, vntill they appeare verie dry, and voluntarily do fall away of their owne accord, (as we haue ſayed of thoſe Abſceſſions which are deepely planted, and folded about the great veſſels.)But the band muſt be ayded with ſome conſuming and drying medicine. The paine alſo muſt be aſſwaged with the white of an egge, with oile of roſes,with *vnguentum populeon*,or with ſome other remedie that can mitigate paine. But when the cordes ſhall fall off alone of it owne accord, the tumour muſt be cured after that manner,which we haue before expreſſed. And thus much generally concerning thoſe abſceſſions which vniuerſally conſiſt aboue nature, eſpecially of them that haue their originall of fleume. Now we haue here thought it conuenient to ſet downe the proper and peculiar method of curing *Melicerides*, *Steatomata*, & *Theromata*, which diſeaſes are alwaies and often incident to mens bodies,& do comprehend vnder them other certaine kindes and differences of tumours beſides nature, called of the late Phiſitions after certaine new titles and names, which among the auncient ſorte were neuer heard of, as *Talpa*, *Teſtudo*, *Nacta*, and others of that kind, which we haue expreſſed in our former chapters. In thoſe three kinds of Abſceſſions which do moſt frequent mens bodies, (I meane in *Steatomata*, *Atheromata*, and *Meliceris*) there is one generall order of their cure, namely that the matter which is contained in that tunicle which they call *Cyſtis* may be diſcuſſed, or that the whole tumour together with the verie tunicle may be conſumed by medicines,or taken away by ſection. But ſome of thoſe tumors require a three fold method of curing, as thoſe, which containe a more liquide humour,as is, *Meliceris*. Some againe are cured two wayes,as *Atheroma*, which is deſtroied by ſection, and conſumed by medicines. But *Steatoma* can neither be diſcuſſed, nor conſumed: but it is cured by the onely labour of the hand (that is) by ſection onely. Moreouer of medicines, which in theſe affectes haue power to diſcuſſe and diſperſe,you ſhal find plentie among thoſe remedies which we before haue ſet downe for the cure of *ſtrumæ*. But *Paulus* doth particularly and properly diſcuſſe *Melicerides* with that medicine, which containeth, of preſſed grapes

Quando cruſta à vino reſoluenda.

6 *Ligaturæ & euulſio.*

Curatio Atheromatis, Steatomatis & meliceridis.

How many waies theſe Abſceſſions may be cured.

Lib.4. Curatio per digerentia.

grapes(the kernels being taken out)xx. of the scourings of brasse .℥.iiij.which medicin must not be applied before the member be nourished with foments. Another emplaister appointed for *Melicerides*, which *Aetius* reported vnto *Leonidas*. ℞.of pressed grapes (the kernels being detracted) ℔.j. of commin seed beaten verie small.℥.vj. of *nitrum* ℥.iij. bray all together in a mortar,& bind thē to the tumour. Another discussiue medicine expressed of the same writer,verie profitable against *Melicerides*. ℞. *salis ammoniaci*, of the scourings of siluer, and of Ceruse .ana.℔.j. of waxe *Terebinthina*, *chalbana*,*opoponax*.ana.℥.j. of *rubrica sinopica* ℥.vj. of vineger .℥.vij. ß. boile the scourings of siluer, ceruse, and salt beaten verie small altogether, then cast in the *rubrica sinopica*, which first must be steeped in vineger and melt them together: last of all, when they be all boyled together and cold, commixe therewith *opoponax* and *chalbana*, both dissolued in vineger, and conserue them to your vse. But if in such kind of Absceſſions you mind to wast the humor by applying of gnawing medcins(which the Grecians call *Septica*)it is expedient first to vncouer them (as also in *struma*)by hote burning medicines applied to the skin, whereof (saith *Paulus*) the best remedie is that, which consisteth of quicke lime (that is)which is not yet quenched with water of sope, and of the ashes of lye that are made in a stillatorie. There is another more diuerse remedie which may be kept a long time. ℞. of vnslaked lime .℥.iiij. of *sphecle*, (that is) of the burnt dregs of wine, of liquide *nitrum* parched in the fire .ana ℥.ij. of *nimium* or *rubrica sinopica*.℥.j. Let them be brayed with the distilled ashes of lye, and when you haue brought them to the thickneſse of liquide honie, heate them thrice ouer the fire, that it may be of a meane substance, and lay on *pixis plunubra*, with the distilled lye aboue, least it drie vp too soone. Therefore first breake the skin that is beset with such medicines as can procure a crust: but when the crust is fallen off, apply consuming remedies, among which this remedie following doth notably waste without gnawing and byting .℞.of the offall of brasse .℥.iiij. of *Sandaracha*(that is)of red arsenicke,and of *Helleborus niger*.ana.℥.ij. apply them with oile of roses. Another remedie verie effectuall for the same purpose. ℞. of a burnt hedgehog, of *Testa sepia*, and of orpine or arsenicke .ana. an equall portion: commixe them with oyle of roses. But the partes which lie about the tumour,and are adiacent thereunto, let them be first annointed with ceruse and oyle. But if we purpose to cure these kindes of Absceſſions by making insciſion (hat is) by Chyrurgerie: truely in that method of curing(whether it be a mealy humour, or a hony,or a fat humour, or of what substance soeuer it be,which is contained in them) we must obserue one onely and principall intention, namely to take away the tunicle wherein the humour is included.) But in enterprising the same, we must be verie attentiue and warie(as we haue sayd before of *struma*)that we rashly hurt not and teare in peeces the filme or tunicle, whereupon the humour which was contained therein,gushing out plentifully, doth both hinder our operation,and some portion thereof also remaineth still behinde. For if (when the tunicle is diuided, and the humor issued) the tumor shall sinke downe, the tunicle will hardly be plucked away and cured. But if any remnant of the humour be left behind in the Absceſſion, it is to be feared, that the disease will grow againe (as doth *struma*) when as any portion thereof

Lib.15.

Curatio per excedentia.

Lib.4.

A medicine to waſt without byting.

Curatio per Chyrurgiam.

sticketh behind. But if any such thing doth happen, it is not expedient to sew together the Abscession, but to draw out the relictes thereof either with those consuming medicins which we haue before expressed, or by some such like remedies. Now if *steatoma* hath a verie broad top, and a verie narrow and slender foundation, then (setting aside all other superfluous remedies) you must cut it vp quite euen by the very root, for so the labour of the Chyrurgian shall quickly be ended, the vlcer made plaine and equall with the other partes, and the cure shortly dispatched.

Aetius lib. 15.

CHAP. XXV.

Of hard and Scirrhous tumours, engendred of melancholie.

WE haue hitherto discoursed of those tumors which are caused of bloud, choler and fleume: of *Verrucæ* also, and of those abscessions which are excited through a wateriſh humor, and a flatuous vapour: of those Apostemes also which haue their beginning of a phlegmaticke substance, and of other tumors generally consisting aboue nature. Now it remaineth that we entreate of those Abscessions which doe proceed of a melancholike humour, as are scirrhous, indurated and cancerous tumours, which they call *Cancerosi*, *Apostemosi*. To *Scirrhus* therefore (as also to *phlegmone*, *Erysipelas*, and *œdema*) there is assigned of the late Chyrurgians, a double difference, which notwithstanding is comprehended vnder the same title, *videlicet*: *Scirrhus verus*, & *scirrhus non verus*. But a true and lawfull *Scirrhus* is sayed to proceede of naturall melancholie. Also naturall melancholie, is the dregges of good bloud, and as it were a certaine slimie superfluitie, and verie grosse bloud, whose colour is blacke, but the taste thereof sharpe and soure (as it is not vnknowne to them that do vomite the same) it is lodged in a certaine bloudie corner, wherein all the humors are contained, and appointed of nature to nouriſh the melancholike members. But an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, after the opinion of the late Chyrurgians, is that which is engendred of vnnaturall melancholie. And vnnaturall melancholie is that, which differeth from the former description of the naturall humor, and yet it keepeth within the precincts of his libertie, which if it shall once pretergresse (they say) it is no longer to be called melancholie, but some other humour. But melancholie (to enter into the generall definition thereof) is a colde and drie humour, proceeding (as *Guido* sayeth) of a verie grosse portion of that which we call *Chylus*. But of vnnaturall melancholie there are commonly appointed foure differences. 1. The first is, when as that melancholike humour, which is called naturall, and doeth daylie engender in the bodie, euen when a man is in perfect health, is in his owne proper essence, burned, putrified, and become exquisite melancholie. For that (as *Galen* sayeth) is engendred of a blacke humour that is vehemently burnt, and it glistreth like vnto lime and pitch. But this is sowre, and being powred vpon the ground, it is hote like vineger, and it riseth vp like leauen. It is also verie vnpleasant to all creatures liuing, so that neither mice nor flies will taste thereof. It sheweth likewise, like vnto aboundance of salt, wherein no liuing thing can

Scirrhus duplex.

Melancholia naturalis.

Scirrhus illegitimus.

Melancholia non naturalis.

Differentiæ 4. non naturalis melancholiæ.

Bilis atra exquisitè.

Gal. com. 21.

can vpholde his life, as the ſea which is ſayed to be dead. Furthermore this blacke kinde of choler is then ingendred, when as that ſlimie bloud, (which we haue ſaid to be naturall melancholie) doth continue long in the bodie, and is purged out neither by any ſenſible nor ſecret effluxion: but is transformed, corrupted, aud rotten. For truely this humour (ſayeth *Galen*) when it waxeth vehemently hote, either becauſe of the corruption thereof, or becauſe of a burning feuer, it cauſeth melancholie: which truely is cold becauſe it reſembleth the nature of the earth, but yet it is not voide of heate, as is, aſhes and vineger, and when it is purged downeward (as it happeneth ſometime to them which are diſeaſed with *Dyſenteria*) it appeareth more gliſtering and more blacke then that thicke and blacke bloud, which we do call a melancholious humour. 2. The ſecond *ſpecies* or difference of vnnaturall melancholie is that which commeth through the aduſtion of other humors, as that which proceedeth of choler vehemently burnt, which is of ſo great malice and rancour, that it raſeth the earth, and lifteth it vp on high, after the manner of exquiſite melancholie. But the flyes alſo do abhorre it, as in a true melancholie. If bloud alſo or fleume ſhall be vehemently heated in the bodie, and burnt, there is alſo cauſed a melancholicke humour, which *Auicen* becauſe of the aduſtion, tearmed to be vnnaturall. But theſe two laſt kindes, which do come of the aduſtion of bloud and fleume, *Auicen* hath thought to be verie milde and gentle: yet *Galen* writeth, that that kinde of melancholie which is engendred of burnt choler, is a great deale more dangerous then that which hath his generation of groſſe bloud, which is like vnto the dregs of wine in the bottome of a veſſell, or in proportion reſembling the dregs of oile, for this is more gentle and milde, yea and eſpecially when as it tarieth not long within the bodie with any abundant heate exceeding nature. But before it be changed into exact melancholie, it paſſeth firſt into a yeallowiſh forme, ſecondly into a leekie ſubſtance, and thirdly into a ruſtie colour. 3. The third *ſpecies* of vnnaturall melancholie is that which borroweth his originall of a certaine ſtonie concretion, as when through the ignorance of vnskilfull Phyſitions or Chyrurgians, *Eryſipelas*, and thoſe inflammations which the Grecians call *phlegmone*, or any other tumours proceeding of naturall humours, are too vehemently cooled and bound by the applying of extraordinarie remedies: or elſe when thoſe medicines which do mightily draw and digeſt, are miniſtred to the ſame tumours. For then (the whole ſubſtance which was verie ſmall in them, being diſperſed) the groſſe matter which remaineth, being exceedingly dryed, will reſemble the hardneſſe of a ſtone, and be conuerted into a melancholious humour. 4. The fourth difference of vnnatural melancholy ariſeth, when as ſome other humour is mixed with naturall melancholie, which thing while it happeneth, it is made ſweet, and doth waxe milde, vntill ſuch time as one burnt choler or other be commixed therewith, for then it waxeth ſharpe, and bitter, and is made partaker of immoderat gnawing. We may gather therfore by our former words, that the 4. differēces of tumors aboue nature do proceed of melancholy: for firſt of naturall melancholy (which we haue ſaid to breed daily in ſound bodies) there is cauſed a true & lawful *ſcirrhus*, called of the Arabians *ſephiros*, but of the Greekes σκίῤῥος & σκίῤῥος ἐκ ἀκρίσιος (that is) *ſcirrhus* or *ſcirrhus*

Lib. 4. Apho. Lib. 14. Therapeutices.

2 *Melancholie commeth by the aduſtion of other humors.*

Com. 29. lib. 3. prædict. Hyp.

3 *Bilis atra per congelationem (vt vocant) & indurationem.*

4 *Melancholia through admixtion of other humors.*

Foure differences of tumours cauſed of melancholy.

Verus ſcirrhus non exquiſitus

non exactus seu non exquisitus, which kind of tumour truely is very hard and void of paine, but yet not altogether insensible: *Auicen* calleth it *impurus*. Yet *Galen lib.* 14. *meth. med.* pardoning them which do contend about the names of tumors, calleth it a tumor conflated of a melancholious humor, & then properly *scirrhus*, when as notwithstanding it is expert of any feeling or sense, but if it be not yet made altogether insensible, it is rather to be called a scirrhous tumor, then *scirrhus* it selfe. Secondly of vnnaturall melancholy through the admixtiõ of other humors there do grow three other differences of tumors (that is to say) *scirrhus phlegmonodes*, *œdemtodes*, & *Erysipelatodes*, which diseases are here rehearsed for one onely difference. Thirdly of vnnaturall melancholie caused through a certaine stonie hardnesse and concretion, there is engendred an exquisite *scirrhus*, hard, and void of sense and paine, it is called of *Auicen*, *purus*, which euill admitteth no cure. Fourthly of vnnatural melancholy through deustion, are all the kinds of Cankers ingendred, aswell vlcerate as not vlcerate: of the which kind is *scirrhus cancrosus*. *Scirrhus* therfore properly is a tumor verie hard and without paine, but yet not altogether without feeling, proceeding of a natural melancholie, and vncorrupt humor, which definition the late Chirurgians haue assigned thereunto. The causes of *scirrhus*, as of other tumors besides nature are three. First primitiue, as is an euill diet, ingendring & gathering grosse and melancholike bloud. Second antecedent, as a melancholike humor collected in the bodie, which is drawne from the spleene (whose dutie it is to purge the liuer from that grosse and muddy bloud) and yet is not expelled without the body (as it ought to be.) Third, *Coniuncta causa* is the melancholike humour it selfe, compacted in the affected member. The signes of *scirrhus* his presence (as *Guido* reporteth) are these, a hard tumor, and mightily resisting, a middle colour between a red and a blacke, which is a brown colour. This *scirrhus* when it happeneth in the partes of the bodie, many of the Phisitions (as *Galen* saith) do call it *pelidnon*, that is to say, black & blew. Moreouer if the affected member hath any manifest veines appearing in it, you shall see them puffed vp and swolne by the meanes of thicke and blacke bloud, such as is sometime purged downward in them which labour with the disease of the liuer, but then it is called *scirrhus impurus & cancrosus*. For these signes which *Guido* doth here ascribe vnto *scirrhus*, do properly agree with the signes of Cancer (as *Galen* writeth 14. *meth. med.* And truly they may very fitly be attributed vnto *scirrhus*, if this one thing be excepted, namely, that *scirrhus* hath not such swelling and full veines, as Cancer hath, except *scirrhus* (as we haue said before) chance to be *cancrosus*, for *scirrhus* doth oftentimes degenerate into Cancer, and that not without great cause, seeing that both proceed of one matter (that is) of a melancholike humour. The proper signes therefore of a lawfull *scirrhus* are these: a hard and stony tumor, very obstinate and resisting touching, wherein there is present a very dull sense. There do also appeare many other signes which do testifie the dominion of a melancholie humor in the body. Such tumors as are truly *scirrhi*, in their beginning and first conception are wont to appeare verie small, but in processe of time, they do growe and encrease by little and little, and become great and mightie, whereof some do annoy one onely member, but other some of the sayed tumours do leaue that member which they did first

Scirrhus phlegmonodes, œdematodes. Erysipelatodes.

Scirrhus exquisitus.

Scirrhus cancrosus. Scirrhus propriè quid. Causæ 3. scirrhi legitimi.

Signa.

14. meth. med.

Guido not as Cancri tribuit scirrho.

Iudicia scirrhi

first infest, and afterward do passe ouer into the possession of another, which thing when it happeneth, then *Auicen* calleth the euill *ferinos*. Furthermore, these kinds of melancholious tumors if they be rightly handled, they are commonly cured by resolution; often times they continue indurared and hard, and many times (which is worst of all) they degenerate and change into *Cancer*. *Ferinos.*

But now we will prosecute the absolute cure of these kindes of hard tumors aboue nature, which are called true *Scirrhi*, and not *Exquisiti*, by three speciall intentions. The first prescribeth a conuenient order of dyet. The second admonisheth to take away the antecedent matter, which is readie to procure the disease. The third warneth vs to enterprise the vacuation of that coniunct matter (as they call it) which now causeth the euill. Therefore (to speake generally) you must appoint to them which are diseased with *Scirrhus*, a sober and moderate diet, and such a one as declineth vnto heate and moisture in those things (which they call *res non naturales*) as before. Giue him therfore meates of good iuyce, and which can ingender good bloud. Let his bread be made of wheate, well kneaded, and baked in an ouen with a soft fire, and let it haue some leauen, and salt as much as shall suffice. Let his drinke be small Ale or Beere, giue him rere egges, the flesh of chickens, capons, hennes, and the brothes of them. Let him also eate the flesh of partriches, phesants, quailes, young kids, sucking calues, and of weathers of a yeare olde. For potherbes, let him vse that which the Arabians call *Aspanar*, but we somewhat altering the name do call it spinach: also lettuce, hops, borrage, bugloss, and other herbs of that nature which can purge forth bloud, and make it more pure. To conclude, let him flie and auoid all those things, which naturally do engender melancholike bloud, which things *Galen in libro tertio de affectis capite sexto* hath described vnto vs, as are, the flesh of Goates, and of oxen, and of bulles, but especially the flesh of Asses, and of cammels, of foxes and of dogs, of hares also and of bores. Furthermore, snayles, (if they be accustomed to be eaten) and the flesh of all terrestriall creatures seasoned with salt. The flesh also of fishes, as of Tunie, of the fish called *Balena*, the sea calfe, the Dolphin, the dogfish, & of all kind of Whales. But of potherbs, coleworts, is wont onely to engender this kinde of bloud. The buddes also of trees, when they are seasoned either with brine or with *Oxalme*, especially of the tree called a mastixe tree, of the Terebinth, of the brier, and of the wilde eglantine brier (which the Greekes call *Cynosbatos*.) But of all kind of pulse, lintels chiefly are accounted amongest the number of melancholike meates. Bread also made of branne, and that which is made of Rie and of other corrupt and naughtie seedes, which other Countries do vse in stead of corne. Moreouer, thicke and blacke wines are verie fit to engender a melancholious humor: especially, if one drinking them abundantly, doth by occasion keepe his bodie in great heat. Finally old cheese when as by chance it shall be exceedingly hote in the bodie, doth easily breed this kind of humour. These things haue we hitherto recited out of *Galen*. Furmore you must diligently beware of meates that are burnt, rosted, and fried, which do vehemently drie vp, of salt meats also, and of those which are sharpe and sowre; as onyons, garlicke, pepper, mustard, and of other things of that kinde which do burne the bloud. You must also eschue anger, wrath, sadnesse,

The cure of a true & lawful scirrhus, yet not exquisite, & growne into a stony hardnesse, altogether insensible.

Three intentions.

Victus ratio.

Euchyma.

Panis.

Potus.

Oua.

Carnes.

Olera.

Carnes.

Limaces.

Pisces.

Olera.

Oxalme is made of vinegar and salte.

Leguminum.

panis.

Typha.

Vinum.

Caseus.

Sanguinem adurentia

Animi pathemata.

Exercitatio.

watchings, heauineſſe, carefulneſſe, and immoderate exerciſes. Quietneſſe and tranquillitie of minde, with mirth and gladneſſe is greatly to be deſired: and you muſt diligently endeuour euerie day to emptie the bellie. Hitherto concerning the firſt ſcope. 2. Now that we may accompliſh that which our ſecond intention doth propound: let vs ſomwhat conſider the precept of *Auicen*, who willeth vs to euacuate the whole body both by bloudletting, if too blacke and groſſe bloud ſhall appeare, and alſo by ſome purging medicine, which can expell melancholie, as are thoſe which follow, out of *Meſua*, *Epithymum*, *Sene*, *polypodye*, *fumus terræ* (which of the Græcians is called *Capnos* or *Capnios*, of the Latines *fumaria*) *lupulus*, and the herbe called *volubilis*. Alſo *Caſia fiſtula*, *myrabolani Indi*, *lapis lazuli*, which the Greekes call *Cyaneus*, the Romanes *Cæruleus*, *Diacene*, *diacatholicon*, *hiera*, *Ruphi*, all which things do purge forth melancholike humors. But theſe things which pertaine vnto phiſicke do exceed the bounds of Chyrurgians. Omitting therefore the profeſſors of the Art of Phiſicke, we will haſten vnto the third ſcope, which we ſhall verie ſpeedily diſpatch, if we labour to emptie out all that matter, which vnnaturally is compacted in the aggrieued member. Which truly is the generall and principal indication of all tumours which conſiſt aboue nature: in which that leekie matter (as we haue ſaid before) is not yet engendred. But this is the onely and proper way to euacuate them, about the which the Chyrurgian ought to be verie circumſpect & attentiue. For truly the matter of ſuch kind of tumours, is naturally ſo malignant and ſtubborne, that it will turne into a ſtonie hardneſſe if it be raſhly reſolued. Againe, if it be mollified more then is exquiſite, it is greatly to be feared that it will putrifie and corrupt, and that *Scirrhus* will degenerate into *Cancer*. We muſt therfore in this caſe follow the counſell of *Galen* and *Paulus* (who wrote of this thing long before *Auicen*.) Namely, that in ſuch ſcirrhous affects, we muſt not applie any vehement, hot, and drying medicine, neither any thing elſe which hath the power only to mollifie and moiſten. For that tumor which hath a ſuperfluous humor, it doth nothing at all diſſolue: but that which hath a ſmall fluxe, it doth more drie vp then need requireth. Hereupon *Auicen* did well admoniſh vs, to apply to theſe indurated tumours by turnes, ſometime mollifying, and ſometime digeſting remedies. But becauſe that order was verie tedious, and hard to be done, it pleaſed *Galen* to vſe for the cure of theſe euilles, ſuch medicines as had a mixed and double faculti e, which deuiſe was more ſafe and leſſe dangerous. For by this meanes we ſhall both mollifie and digeſt the indurate and hard ſubſtance all at one time: yet in the beginning we muſt commixe ſomething with them which can moderately repreſſe. For this purpoſe, *Auicen* hath ſet downe many kindes of remedies, which becauſe they are rather appointed for thoſe *Scirrhi* which proceed of *phlegmone* and *Eryſipelas* when they be exceedingly cooled (as we will declare in the chapters following) we will omit them making choice of that medicine which *Razis in libro ſeptimo ad Almanſorem* hath deſcribed: vſing notwithſtanding at the beginning ſome equall repreſſion of the flowing of humours (by applying ſome moderate repelling remedie.) The forme of the medicine is this. Re. of *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*, of each a like quantitie: beate them in a morter with oyle *deben*, which the Greeks call *balauum myrepſice*, the Latines,

2 *Vacuatio materiæ antecedentis.*

3 *Vacuatio materiæ coniunctæ*

Materia ſcirrhorum cautè tractanda. Gal. 2. ad Glauc.

Medicines good for ſcirrhus.

Razis medicamentum ad ſcirrhos emolliendos & diſcutiendos.

Glaus

Glans vnguentaria, or with oyle of lillies. Then take of the filth of fenugreeke, of lineseed, and of figges the weight of all the former things: bray them altogether till they be throughly incorporated the one with the other. *Galen* for this cure doth greatly commend the barke of the roote of *Althæa*, which the common sort (sayth he) doth call *Anaden dromalache*, as though one would say, *arboreſcens malua*, melted with the fat of a gooſe or of a cocke, and then beaten together, and brought into the forme of a cataplasme. But if the tumor doth belong vnto suppuration, you must be verie warie, least the affected member be incended or stirred with hot medicines, or by any other meanes, for so *Cancer* should easily be procured. But if the tumour be opened, and the substance thereof alreadie turned into matter, you must vse the helpe of that ointment which is called *diachylon*. Againe, if it shall degenerate into a stony hardnesse, you must straightway repaire vnto those remedies which shall be described in the chapter following.

Galeni cataplasma. Therap. 14.

If Scirrhus wil matter.

But now when as through the vnskilfulnesse and ignorance of Phisitions, those inflammations which the Græcians call *phlegmonæ* or *Erysipelata* are exceedingly refrigerated, or else rashly resolued through the ministring of such medicines as can vehemently draw and digest by their vapour: then all that substance which is any thing thinne and slender in them, is dissolued, but that which remaineth behind, being as it were congealed together, and maruellously dried vp, doth take vnto it a stonie hardnesse, and at the last commeth to that disease which is called of the Greekes *Scirrhus*. But it chanceth sometime that some member is hardened through extention of the flesh, which commeth by reason of winde or by some waterish humour (as we haue sayed before in our Treatise of flatuous and waterishe tumours.) Oftentimes also there ariseth vp in certaine members a stonie hardnesse, caused of the priuation of the moisture of the bodie, and through too much drynesse, as it happeneth in the hardnesse of the ioyntes, and in the pores of the bodie when the gowt or such like diseases do raigne. But here we will onely discourse of *Scirrhus*, or of other hard tumours, which haue their originall from *phlegmone* or *Erysipelas* or else from *œdema*, when as they be greatly refrigerate and cooled, which tumours we haue termed not without some reason *Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati* (that is) *Scirrhi* proceeding of an vnitie, being as it were a double disease incident both at one time. The signes and tokens of an vnlawfull *Scirrhus*, which is not exquisite or perfect are these: a hard tumour, scarce sensible, that is, as though it were without feeling and paine, perfectly representing the colour of the bodie, drawing his beginning from vnnatural melancholie. This euill is not altogether incurable, and yet it admitteth no easie cure, neither is it easily remedied. For that humour whereupon this euill gathereth his force, is clammish, glewish, and thicke, or (as *Galen* sayth) a partaker of both kindes, which when it is stuffed in the hard members, it doeth obstinately withstand resolution, and when the humiditie thereof is throughly resolued, then that which remaineth behind, is dried vp, and made as hard as a stone. But an exquisite *Scirrhus*, and such a one as is altogether insensible, doth not receiue anie cure. But if it may be holpen anie way, it must be done by some moystening medicine. That hardnesse also which commeth through

Scirrhus illegitimus & non exquisitus. Quomodo generetur.

The causes of hardnesse in the partes of the bodie.

Scirrhi ex coincidentia procreati.

The signes of an vnlawfull Scirrhus.

Iudicia.

Scirrhus ex quisitus curationem non admittit.

too much exciccation, and when the moiſture of the bodie is cleane extinguiſhed, is alſo incurable, for it is ſufficient if you ſtop it, that the drineſſe may proceed no further. But thoſe *ſcirrhi* alſo, wherein there do grow certain haires, and which are great and verie hard, and do reſemble the colour of the bodie, are neither cured, nor yet changed at any time into any other diſeaſe, as *Auicen* hath declared.

Scirrhi incurabiles.

Summa curandorum ſcirrhorum.

The common and generall declaration of curing theſe tumours, is in this order deſcribed: namely, to euacuate all that matter which vnnaturally is cõtained in the member. For the onely way of euacuation (as *Galen* hath noted *lib.* 14. *meth. med.*) is this, euen to clenſe and draw out that corruption, which ſtubburnly doth cleaue vnto the humour. But if any man ſhall aſſay to make euacuation by thoſe medicines which do vehemently drawe and digeſt, neither ſhall mollifie and ſoften with any drying & moiſtning remedies, the cure ſhall ſeeme to him within few dayes greatly to haue preuailed: for *Scirrhus* will manifeſtly appeare to be diminiſhed, but that which remaineth of the diſeaſe will be incurable. For truely when the whole ſubſtaunce which is verie thinne in the tumour, is digeſted or diſperſed, then that which remaineth behinde, is turned into a certaine ſtonie concretion. For this cauſe therefore there is no medicine that doth vehemently heate or drie vp, meete and conuenient for theſe hard and ſcirrhous affects, but ſuch remedies onely, which can fitly both mollifie, and alſo digeſt, as are theſe things following: the marrow of a hart and of a calfe, alſo gotes ſuet, bulles ſuet, the tallow of a lybard and of a Lyon. Among the fat of birds, gooſes greace is greatly commended, next that the fat of a cocke and of a pheſant. Alſo *ammoniacum thymiama*, *vel ſuffimen*, perfume *galbanum*, and *bdellium* of both kindes, but rather that which is called *ſcithicum*, becauſe it is ſomewhat moiſt. *Styrax* alſo, which is ſomthing moiſt and fat. Moreouer the roote of *althæa*, and of the wild mallow, which groweth almoſt euerie where, the leaues whereof muſt be moderately boyled with gooſes or cockes ſuet, or if there be none of theſe at hand, you may vſe ſwines greace; theſe remedies are greatly profitable for this intention. But *Auicen* warneth vs not to commixe any hogges tallow that is ſalted with the former things, and to vſe *Maſtiche*, *ladanum*, oyle of wooll, *ſtrygmenta gymnaſiorum*, (which they call the filthineſſe of bathes) aſſes dung, and the dregs of oile of lillies, of oyle of *alchanna* which they call *cyprinum*, and of *cherua*, which of the Greeks is called *xiviov*, but of the Latines *recinium*. But that cure which is adminiſtred by vineger is profitable for this euill, that is, for *ſcirrhus* which is full growne, and when the member is prepared to receiue mollifying medicines, as *Galen* alſo hath declared: for truly ſaith he, the force of vineger, if it be vſed moderatly & in due time, is verie wholeſome in theſe diſeaſes, becauſe it doth deuide and reſolue the groſſe humors included in them: but if it be applyed immoderatly and out of a conuenient ſeaſon, it violently conſumeth the thinner partes, and maketh that which remaineth behind to become verie hard, alſo if it be vſed long, it will diminiſh and corrupt the verie ſubſtance of the ſinewes. For this cauſe therefore, we muſt not verie often nor at the beginning, nor any long time, apply thoſe medicines to the great ſinewes or cords of the body, which are compounded and made of vineger. Wherefore *Galen* did

Medullæ ſeuũ.

Adipes.

Gal. 14. meth. med.

Auadendromalache.

Oleum recinii

14. Meth. mid.

Vſus Aceti.

did cure the childe of one Cercilius, who through too much cooling and vehement binding of *erysipelas*, had a hard and scirrhus tumour remaining in his thigh, after this maner. First he annointed his thigh, with *oleum sabinum*, which of all oyles is most thin, in stead whereof they vse in these daies *oleum sambucinum*, oile of elder, which the common sort call *iasminum*. When he had thus washed and annointed the member, he applied *ammoniacum thimiama*, which must be grosse and not very olde, commixed with the aforesaide suettes and marrowes. Afterward he annointed his whole thigh round about with very fat *ammoniacum*, dissolued in exceeding sharpe vineger, and commanded the childe to hoppe on the other legge, that so the more nourishment mought be brought vnto it. By such medicines therefore as could release and mollifie the tumour, and by digesting or resoluing remedies also, and by the moderat and right vse thereof, he perfectly cured the childe. But in those great sinewes and ligaments of the body, which are drawen together and couered with *scirrhus*, you must vse vineger after this sort, as *Galen* counselleth vs. Take a stone, and heate it very hote in the fire, and quench it in very sharpe vineger, if it be possible, let the stone be that, which we call *pyrites*, but if there be no plenty thereof, take the stone called *lapis molaris*, which the Greekes call *mylites*, then let the affected member bee holden ouer the hote vapour that riseth vp from the stone out of the vineger, that it may receiue the steeming vapour, which doth dissolue *scirrhus*: and afterward lay on againe some mollifying medicine: yet the affected part must be euery day eué from the beginning throughly annointed with oile and not with water, which oile must not be adstrictiue in any case, but of a thinne substance, as is oile of sauin. But sometime you may boile in oile the rootes of *althea*, and of the wilde cucumber, and other things of that sort. By this methode of curing, many men truely haue bene perfectly healed in a short space, so that some haue thought it (as *Galen* saith) to be done by the art of Magicke. By these things therefore it doth plainely appeare, that with that cure, which is accomplished by mollifying remedies, aswell in the sinewes, as in the ligaments of the body, you must commixe some medicine that can cut, dissolue and diuide, among which number vineger is chiefly the principall. Now as concerning other medicines which can mollifie the hardnesse of these tumours, we haue spoken nothing hoping that they may easily be gathered out of our former discourse. Now followeth the summe of the cure of *scirrhus* tumor, which we haue drawn into a compendious forme hereafter ensuing. 1. That kinde of *scirrhus*, which hauing all his humidity and moisture consumed and wasted, is growen into a stony hardnesse, and is altogether destitute of sence (as is that which *Galen* calleth *exquisitus scirrhus*) of such a *scirrhus*, I say, attempt not the cure, but leaue it as an euill incurable. 2. To *scirrhus non exquisitus*, which is not altogether insensible, and yet scarce feeleth any thing) apply such medicines as cary with them a maruellous heat, and a meane moisture (that is to say) which by mollifying, can also moderatly digest. 3. Vnto such members as are infected with *scirrhus*, minister no remedies which do vehemently digest, & immoderatly dry vp, for in them their small humidity is quickly resolued, and then that which abideth still behinde, is dried vp and turned into a stony hardnesse. 4. In hard and grosse members,

Historia. Lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

Oleum sabinum.

Suffimentum.

The cure of scirrhus, sinewes, and veines, out of Galen and Paulus.

Lapis mylites.

Lapis pyrites.

Oleū sabinum

2. ad Glauconem.

Lib. 6.

The summe of curing scirrhus tumours.

1

2

3

4

which are annoied with *scirrhus* (as are the great vessels of the body) and in other places also, where the euill is inueterate, you must commixe such medicines as haue power to cut and diuide, as is vineger, with those remedies
5 which can mollifie and moderatly digest. 5. Also command, that this *scirrhus* member which is hard and grosse, or any other part besides, which is affected with *scirrhus*, be holden ouer the hote vapour of *lapis molaris* burnt in the fire,
6 and quenched in vineger, and let this be done often. 6. Furthermore let the aggrieued member be euery day annointed with some thinne oile, wherein either the roote of the wilde cucumber, or of *althea*, or greene and fresh dill,
7 or some such like thing hath bene boiled and infused. 7. Apply vnto the aforesaide *scirrhous* members such medicines as can dry, diuide, and resolue the grosse humours moderately (that is to say) neither often, nor any long time, nor out of conuenient season, that is, not at the beginning of the disease, to
8 preuent the vse of mollifying remedies. 8. To conclude, all such *scirrhus* tumours, as are not indurated and of a stony hardnesse, let them be cured with
9 such medicines as can fitly digest and mollifie. 9. Last of all commit the cure of a *scirrhous* splene and a lapidous liuer, to the wisedome of the Phisition.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of a cancerous Tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus.

Cancer pertaineth vnto two kindes of diseases.

1 THe name and title of the disease called *Cancer*, among the Phisitions and Chirurgians hath diuerse and sundry significations: for the notifying or declaration thereof is extended vnto two kindes of diseases (that is to say) vnto a cancerous tumour (which they commonly call *cancer Apostematosus* aswell that which is euident and appeareth in the outward members, as that which is hidden, and lieth in the inward and secret parts of the body, as in the hips, the rouse of the mouth and in the pappes of a woman) the other signification pertaineth vnto an vlcerate cancer. But both these euils are engendred of melancholy (that is to say) of such a humour, as resembleth the dregges of wine,

2 *Of what humour cancer is engendred.* and the filthines of oile, which thing *Galen libro decimo quarto therapeutices*, and in his little booke *de tumoribus præter naturam* doth plainely testifie. Now this aforesayd humour, when it is quiet, milde, and gentle, it engendreth a secret or an inward *cancer* without any vlcer. But if it happeneth to be sharpe, fierce, and malignant, it gnaweth the skinne, and causeth a cancre with an vlcer. But here we will onely discourse of that kinde of canere which hath his residence in the outward parts of the body, and of that which is not yet exulcerate, which also

Cancer sine vlcere.

Cancer cum vlcere.

Cancrosi tumoris descriptio. sometime (as *Galen* affirmeth) is said to be a priuy cancre. That cancre therefore, whereof we here intreate, is a hard tumour, vnequall, round, hauing the veines round about it, swollen and puffed vp, it is blue or browne, and (as *Paulus* saith) it is more blacke in colour then in an inflammation, it is also hote, but yet not so vehement as inflammations are, it sodainely increaseth, and greatly wearieth the sicke, and afflicteth them almost with a continuall griefe: in Greeke it is called καρκῖνος, and καρκίνωμα, which title aswell the Latines as the Grecians haue assigned to this disease of the fishe called a crabbe, because

Cancri nomen à cancro aquatico.

the

the veines about this euill are filled and ſtretched out, very like vnto the feete of crabs, deſcending from the round compaſſe of their bodies. But ſome haue giuen it this name, becauſe it is very hardly pulled away from thoſe members, which it doth lay hold on, as the ſea crabbe doth, who obſtinately doth cleaue to that place which it once hath apprehended. Moreouer this tumor doth alſo repreſent the colour of a crabbe, whoſe hew is very blacke. But the firſt beginnings of theſe cancres are ſometime ſo confuſed and ſo ſmal, that the common ſort may be ignorant thereof: for when they do beginne, they do ſcarce reſemble the greatneſſe of a peaſe or of a beane. Wherefore it is no maruaile (ſaith *Galen*) though the common ſort doe not know them, for they be like vnto the little rootes that ariſe out of the earth, which are not diſcerned but of skillfull husbandmen. But afterward they grow vp into ſuch a huge greatnes, and do bring with them ſo vehement, great, and manifeſt *ſymptomates*, that a childe may eaſily diſcerne them. Let no man therefore doubt of the name thereof, ſeeing all men with one conſent doe terme this kinde of diſeaſe *cancer*, becauſe (as wee haue ſaide) the veines in this euill do ſwell on euery ſide, and are greatly ſtretched out, and they doe repreſent the forme and likeneſſe of a crabbe. A cancerous tumour (as we haue ſayd before) is hard and vnequall, which by the touching of it doth plainly appeare. It hath a blue or browne colour, which is a meane betweene red and blacke, called of the Greekes πελίδνον. About the place where cancre is lodged, there is felt a certaine beating or pulſe, and as it were a pricking: ſometime alſo (as *Celſus* ſaith) the tumour is a ſleepe, and as it were dead. It maketh the veines round about it to ſwell and riſe vp, like vnto the cancre in the armes. Often times alſo in ſome they are ſecretly hidden, & when the place is touched, it is felt in ſome very painefull, but in other ſome it is contrary. This tumour alſo is maruellouſly ſtout, and reſiſteth touching. Moreouer it hath in it a certaine ſtrange, and extraordinary heate. *Cancer or carcinoma* generally is a grieuous and pernicious diſeaſe, for it can ſcarcely be healed any way, by reaſon of the groſnes of the humour, neither can it be repreſſed or diſcuſſed, neither will it yeeld to any purgation, though it be throughout the whole body. The malice alſo of this diſeaſe is ſo great, that it contemneth all gentle and eaſie remedies, putting forth but the middle finger to them (as the prouerbe is) but it muſt be ſtirred and chafed, and ouercome with very vehement remedies (as we wont to doe in the euill called *crabro*.) This diſeaſe is wont to happen in euery part of the body, but eſpecially in the vpper parts about the face, the noſethrils, the eares, the lippes, and about the pappes of women, and of thoſe chiefly, which are not naturally purged of menſtruis. But cancres do alſo commonly haunt men, whoſe accuſtomed purgings are ſuppreſſed through hemorrhoids growing in the fundament: for by them, that groſſe & thicke bloud (whereupon this euill taketh his firſt beginning) is wont naturally to be purged out. Moreouer when this melancholious humor, reſembling in proportion the dregs of wine, doth deſcend & flow into any member, and there abideth compact together: it cauſeth ſometime the diſeaſe called *varices*, and ſometime it breedeth a cancre, as when the ſame is ſomewhat cooled. But when it is thruſt out to the whole skinne, it cauſeth that euill, which they call *elephans*. *Cancer* therefore

Cancri notæ per initia confuſæ, & obſcuræ.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Notæ cancri euidentis non vlcerati.

Iudicia.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Celſus lib. 5.

Gal. lib. 2. ad Glauconem.

is a certaine particular *elephantiasis*, which the common sort call *lepra*, the lepry. But the thicker and the blacker the bloud is, whereof cancre proceedeth, the more daungerous will the disease be. Now when Cancre is full growen, as they say, and inueterate, it admitteth not any cure, except it be plucked vp by the roots, either by section or by adustion: but those cancres, which haue their constitution in the inward partes of the body, doe not desire any such kind of cure, as that auncient *Hippocrates* simply the Prince of Phisitions hath taught vs very well in the Aphorisme following: saying that it is not good to cure all inward cancres: for when they are cured, they doe soone perish againe, but when they are not cured, they remain a long time. For experience hath taught vs, as *Galen* witnesseth in his commentary vppon this Aphorisme, that they which enterprise the cure of these cancres either by section or vstion, doe rather encrease their fury then abate it, whereby they shortly destroy those men whom this euill hath attached. Those cancres therfore are only curable which do sticke in the outward part of the body, and which are exulcerate, and doe so weary the sicke, that they willingly desire the diligence of the Chirurgian: and these tumors also do consist in those parts, which a man may cut and seare off by the rootes. Now when I name the rootes of *Cancer*, I meane as *Galen* affirmeth, those veins which are full of melancholicke bloud, and which euery way are extended toward the places lying about the tumour. But of an vnulcerate cancre, there often proceedeth an vlcerate tumor, when as in processe of time the humor doth putrifie, and the disease is couched in the vessels of the body, or else when it is stirred and made worse by medicines vnaduisedly ministred.

Apho. 38. lib. 6.

What cancre must be rooted out, and what not.

An exulcerate cancre worst of all.

This exulcerate cancre of all others is thought to be most vile, because it doth altogether resist that true cure, which attempteth and worketh all thinges to bring the sicke member vnto health, for this tumour, to cure it perfectly & absolutely, doth require gnawing, sharpe, and vehement medicines: howbeit by such remedies, as we haue said, it is the more prouoked & stirred to anger, and therefore it cannot be, that it should either be lenified, or cured by thē. It shall therfore be sufficient to hinder the encreasing of vnulcerate cancres, which as yet do occupy the outward parts of the body, especially those which be great and inueterate, withdrawing our skill from any perfect cure, which thing *Hippocrates* also hath admonished vs of in his former Aphorisme. For those tumors which doe weary the sicke without exulceration, *Galen* also hath called them secret and inward cancres, wherein both their vehement heat, and their great pulse or beating doe threaten or foretell exulceration to ensue. The cure of a cancre which is not yet vlcerat, but newly begun, hath three principall intentions. 1. The first is to stop the generation of the melancholike humour. 2. The second is to empty out the melancholious humour disperssed throughout the whole body. 3. The third is to digest the humour which possesseth the affected member, and to strengthen, & confirme the diseased place. The first intention is finished by a iust & due obseruation of that kind of diet, which is before prescribed in the chapter *de scirrho legitimo*. But among other things this is chiefly & principally to be obserued, (namely) that such nourishment be giuen to the diseased, as haue vertue to refrigerate and moisten, and which doe engender good and slender iuice: as are these, the iuice of barley steeped in water and

What things doe foretell exulceration.

Curatio cancri non vlcerati.

Primus scopus.

Victus ratio tenuis sit & probi succi.

pressed,

preſſed, fiſhes of grauelly places, birds of all kindes, ſaue thoſe which liue in fenny grounds, the yolkes of egs, but ſpecially of rere egs, (which the Grecians call πόπαλα) and other things of that ſort. But if any extreame heat ſhall infeſt the aggrieued place, and yet without a feauer, you may ſafely giue him bullocks milke, from the which the butter is taken, or elſe the whey of milke. Pot herbes alſo, which haue a coole and moiſt nature, as mallowes, orage, ſpinach, & when time ſerueth gourdes: citrons alſo and borage may be giuen him in meate. The ſecond ſcope (which is to purge the whole body from that melancholy humour, whereof this euill proceedeth) is accompliſhed by the applying of purging medicines, which are appointed to euacuate melancholy, whereof you may finde plenty in the Chapter of *ſcirrhus*: among the which *epithymum* (which the Romaines call *inuolucrum*) as a preſent remedy doth obtaine the preheminence, whereof you muſt take foure drams ſteeped in the whey of milke, or in *mulſa*, (as *Galen* commaundeth *lib.* 14. *meth. med.*) But this quantity of *epithymum*, or ſomwhat more, muſt be offered euery third day, that the melancholicke humour, which is gathered together in the veines, & cauſeth the generation of cancre, may by little and little be emptied and purged out, becauſe it is impoſſible to euacuat all at one time. But we cannot alwaies prohibit the fluxe, leaſt afterward the like humour be engendred in the body, and compact together in the veines. The purging therefore of the antecedent matter muſt be attempted at the beginning, as it were by turnes, by the applying of ſome ſimple medicine: afterward (if the matter ſo requireth and the miniſtring of ſimples doth little auaile) you may vſe the help of ſome compound remedies, as is that medicin of *Galen* dedicated for the purging of melancholy, which conſiſteth of two and thirty ſimples, or *hiera Ruffi*, or *hiera Auicennæ*, which is made of blacke *helleborus*. But you muſt not deſiſt from thoſe former rehearſed purgations, vntill the whole melancholious humor which is ſtuffed in the veines be brought out, and vntill the member which is beſet with this cancrous tumour, be throughly reduced to his naturall ſtate. But if nothing do let it, as age and ſtrength, it ſhall not be amiſſe in theſe cancres to let bloud, and then to purge (as we haue ſaid before:) and if they be women, you muſt labour to purge menſtruis, if they be not aboue fifty years old (as *Galen* hath taught vs *lib.* 2. *ad Glauconem.*) This ſecond indication (ſaith *Galen*) is the firſt and chiefe of all, for that which is put in the firſt place, doth rightly challenge the ſecond degree. The generall manifeſtation therefore (ſaith he) of the cure of a cancre, conſiſteth in the ſpeedy emptying out of that humor wherof this euill groweth, and in the prohibition and ſtopping thereof, and to forſee, (if it be poſſible) that this melancholious humor be not collected in the veins by the meanes of another. But if that thing cannot be brought to paſſe, you muſt euacuate the humour by turnes, now ſome and then ſome, and you muſt alſo endeuour to ſtrengthen the member, leaſt the abundance of the humors do plentifully flow vnto it. 3. The third intention, which is generall to all ſuch diſeaſes comming of the flowing of humors, doth will vs to digeſt the humor, which lurketh in the affected member, and to roborate the ſame, leaſt the humors abundantly haue acceſſe thereunto: moreouer you muſt appoint a conuenient time to repell that which is flowen, and that truely in the beginning,

Secundus ſcopus.

Humoris melancholici vacuatio.

Epithymum.

Hiera Ruffi

Hiera Auicennæ.

Sanguinis miſſio.

Lib. 14. *meth. medendi.*

Tertius ſcopus.

aſwell in the very time of purging, as before, but now, when the whole body is throughly purged, then may you lawfully endeuor to digeſt, and if there went before but a ſmall and meane purging, then you muſt apply ſome remedy which hath a mixed faculty, that is to ſay, which can both repreſſe and digeſt. Now, that we may iuſtly accompliſh theſe intentions, we muſt make choiſe of thoſe medicines, which are of a meane force, and of a gentle quality, for ſuch remedies are moſt conuenient for theſe diſeaſes. For thoſe which cary with them a weake and feeble power do worke no effect (as *Galen* ſaith) but are eaſily ouercome: but ſuch remedies as are ſtrong and mighty, doe vehemently either digeſt or thruſt backe the thinne bloud which lieth in the veines: but the groſſe and melancholicke partes, which we haue likened before to the dregges of wine, they neither purge forth nor repreſſe: but rather doe make them more obſtinate and more hard to be diſſolued and diſcuſſed. Therefore to cure theſe cancres, but yet beginning, you muſt vſe medicines of a meane and moderat ſtrength, which neither their imbecillity can be vanquiſhed, nor for the vehemency can mightily thicken the bloud Furthermore you muſt apply (as it is ſaid) ſuch medicines as are gentle and which doe not gnaw or bite: becauſe the malignity of the euill through ſuch vehement medicins is ſtirred and prouoked, and made more fierce and ſauage (as we commonly terme it.) But when the matter, whereof theſe cancres doe come, is for the moſt part groſſe and thicke and diſobedient to reſolution, and partener alſo with many other vicious humours, we ſhall deale ſufficiently in this caſe (eſpecially, when we feare the daunger of Chyrurgery, and that the euill cannot otherwiſe be cured) if we by the vſe of the former remedies, which are made of burnt and waſhed metals (as *Galen* counſelleth) ſhall ſtop and hinder their growing and encreaſing, eſpecially, if they be great tumors: or elſe after the opinion of *Auicen*, if wee ſeeke to defend them from vlceration. For the which intentions, *Galen lib. 2. ad Glaucon.* doth greatly commend the iuice of nightſhade, and that medicine which is made of *pompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *chalcitis* commonly called *diapalma*. Therefore *Theodoriticus* alſo for the ſame purpoſe, appointed the ointment named *diapompholygos*, which is made of oile of roſes, of white waxe. ana. ℥. v. of the iuice of red pomgranats, and of nightſhade. ana. ℥. iiij. of ceruſe waſhed. ℥. ij. of lead burnt and waſhed, of *pompholygos*, which is commonly called *tuthia*. ana. ℥. j. of frankenſence. ℥. ß. *Galen* alſo reporteth *libro primo de compoſitione pharmacorum ſecundum locos*, which booke is entituled of the auncient interpreter *myamis*, a certaine ointment inuented of *Apollonius* for vlcers appearing in the head, which the Greekes call *achoræ*, which ointment hee affirmeth to be very effectuall againſt theſe cancrous tumours. The medicine is this. ℞. of oile of roſes, or of vnripe oliues, *hemina*, which the Greekes call *cotyle* viz. ℥. vij. ß. which muſt bee infuſed or put into a leaden mortar, and ſtirred vp and downe with a leaden ladle, or elſe brayed with a leaden peſtill ſo long till it waxe thicke and blacke, reſembling the very colour of lead: then beate by it ſelfe alone, of *lythargirum. lib.* 1. of ceruſe as much, and commixe them with the oile, and make an ointment. Moreouer how great the force of lead is in all ſuch cancrous diſpoſitions, eſpecially that which is burnt and waſhed: all men may ſufficiently know, which haue had ſome experience thereof;

Quod aptum medicamẽtum cancris.

Lib. 14. Ther.

Succus ſolani.
Diapompholygos.
Diaphenicon ſeu diapalma.
Vnguentum diapompholygos Theoderitici.
Appolonij medicamentum.

The force of lead is maruelous in cancred tumours.
Paulus lib. 4. ex archigene.

thereof, and which haue ſtudiouſly peruſed thoſe things which *Galen libro nono de ſimplicium medicamentorum facultate* doth write of lead, which hee him ſelfe calleth in Greeke *molybdos*. For this cancrous diſeaſe *Paulus* and *Auicen*, doe greatly commend the emplaiſter made of ſea crabbes, eſpecially if it be mingled with an equall quantity of the ſcourings of braſſe. Take therefore of ſea crabs burned, and of the offall of braſſe an euen portion, beat them to flower, and ſtraw them vpon the tumour, or elſe lay on the aſhes of the crabbes with a ſearce cloath or cerat. But the ſame *Auicen* willeth to plucke vp theſe litle cancres hard by the rootes, or elſe to cut them off, and then to wring and crouſe out the thicke bloud on euery ſide, and afterward ſeare the place with ſome hote inſtrument. For this doth diſſipate the relictes of the matter, and conſumeth them, it ſtrengthneth the member and ſtoppeth the fluxe of bloud. *Galen* alſo before *Auicen* his time, did allow that cancres might ſometime be cured by Chirurgery. But truely although *Galen* and *Auicen* doe permit this manuall cure by Chirurgery: yet to auoide the daunger of immoderate fluxe of bloud, and of vlceration, yea and of the life of the ſicke, omitting thoſe things, we ought to follow that preſcript rule of curing, which is onely accompliſhed by gentle and milde medicines, as a more ſafe way and leſſe troubleſome, and to content our ſelues with that onely methode: becauſe that if ſuch a cancrous tumour, which is growen to a mighty bigneſſe, ſhould be cut round about in thoſe places, which are ioyned to the whole partes, the daunger of immoderate profuſion of bloud woulde ſtraight follow, by reaſon of the greatneſſe of the veſſelles and wideneſſe of the arteries, which partes (ſaith *Galen*) if you ſhould take vp and binde them with cordes, the other members by reaſon of their neare acquaintaunce would be troubled and greatly grieued. Moreouer *Celſus* ſaith, that although *carcinomata* be cut off, and brought to a ſcarre, yet they will returne againe, and giue occaſion of death. But if you intend to ſeare off the rootes of this euill, yet truely you cannot doe this neither without hurting of the next parts, eſpecially if you make exuſtion neare vnto the principall members. Great cancres therefore, and thoſe which are inueterat, muſt neither raſhly be burned with any inſtrument, nor cutte off with a penknife, but rather handled gently and mildly (as we haue ſayd before.) For many men not by the applying of any forcible or vehement medicins to take away this euill, but by the onely miniſtring of eaſie and gentle remedies, which can as it were pleaſe or delight, haue ſo hindred theſe tumours, that they could not attaine vnto any perfect age or ripeneſſe. Now followeth the ſumme of the cure of *Cancer non vlceratus*, which is yet but beginning, and doth occupy the outward partes of the body, briefly in theſe wordes. 1. Inprimis in a Cancre which is but newly begun, and which conſiſteth of no very thicke humour, nor cauſeth the veines to ſwell greatly: purge out the melancholicke humour which cauſeth this euill vniuerſally throughout the whole body. 2. If age and ſtrength doth ſuffer it, cutte a veine in the elbow, and draw out as much bloud as neede requireth. 3. Afterward miniſter to the ſicke ſuch medicines as can purge melancholy downeward: in the beginning let them be gentle and eaſie, but afterward ſomewhat vehement encreaſing their force by litle and litle. 4. If the purging of menſtruis in women before fifty yeares of

Lib. 14. Meth. med.

Chirurgery not raſhly to be vſed in cancres.

Lib. 5.

Capita curationis Cancri non vlcerati.

1

2

3

age, or if hemorrhoides both in them and in men be ſo ſuppreſſed, that bloud aboundeth not at times now and then, you muſt prouoke them by all meanes poſſible. 5. In the meane time appoint vnto the ſicke a thinne diet, which can engender good iuice, and cauſe no melancholicke bloud. 6. If you cannot auoide it, but that a groſſe and melancholious humour be gathered together in the veines: you muſt euacuate the ſame by turnes, both with ſimple and compound medicines. But theſe former Aphoriſmes do pertaine vnto the Phiſition: now we will declare the duty of the Chyrurgian. 7. Apply vnto the affected member both before purging, & in the very time of purging, ſuch medicines as can repell, and driue backe: but when the body is vniuerſally purged, then vſe digeſtiue remedies, but let them be ſuch as are of a moderat ſtrength and of a gentle nature. 8. Therefore miniſter to the aggrieued place iuice of nightſhade, or the medicine made of *Pompholygos*, or that which conſiſteth of *Calcites*, commonly called *Diapalma*, and other remedies of that ſort. 9. But if by the art of Chirurgery you dare enterpriſe the cure of *Cancer*, you muſt firſt (taking the Phiſitions counſell) purge forth the melancholicke humour, and then cut the corrupted tumour cleane off, and ſuffer a good quantity of bloud to come forth, and wring the thicke bloud out of the adioyned parts, and afterward cure the diſeaſe after the maner of other vlcers.

The end of the fift Booke.

THE SIXT BOOKE
CONTAINING THE CVRE OF THE DISEASE CALLED MORBVS GALLICVS.

CHAP. I.

Of the diuerſe names of the griefe which I minde to ſpeake of, and where it had beginning.

HAuing promiſed to write of all the infirmities in mans body, and now ſpying many faults in the firſt Print and in the ſecond, I will performe my promiſe, and amend the faults eſcaped in all the bookes, for the benefit of my countrey: and being preuented by the Printer, this Booke was left out, wherein is contained a grieuous paine and trouble, which doth raigne in all the world at this day, in great fury and raging manner: inſomuch that it ſpareth none of what degree or calling ſoeuer they be of, (if they ſeeke for it) be they Kings, Lords, or Ladies, it ſearcheth them. This griefe hath gotten many names, and ſo many as come to my memory I will rehearſe, and where they were firſt begotten. Firſt, the Spaniardes borrowed it of the Indians, and brought it home in ſtead of their gold, and afterward *Charles* the fift Emperour of Rome, who was a man of great power, and delighted much in ſhedding of bloud, ſpared neither man, woman, nor child, inſomuch that he ſpoiled a great part of Italy, and ſubdued the dukedome of Millan, with great hurt, ruine and ſpoile, to all the commonwealth of Florence: and at the laſt he came to Rome and Naples, with his whole hoaſt, ſpoyling all as he went with great cruelty: and for his hire, this diſeaſe began firſt to ſhew it ſelfe plentifully among his people, and ſpecially becauſe his ſoldiers were much giuen to venery. The frenchmen at that ſiege got the buttons of Naples (as we terme them) which doth much annoy them at this day. But the firſt finding of this grieuous ſickeneſſe, was brought into Spaine, by *Columbus* at his cõming home, ſo that all Chriſtendome may curſe the Emperour and *Columbus*. This griefe at the firſt was ſo extreame, cruell, and ſo mercileſſe, that it moleſted thoſe which were infected therewith, euen the head, eies, noſe, palate of the mouth, skinne, fleſh, bones, ligaments, and all

the inward parts of their bodies. Then *Columbus* trauelled againe, and brought with him little gold, but all his men were well infected with this griefe: insomuch that the Phisitions in those daies did not knowe what to make of the griefe, nor how to helpe the people. So for want of knowledge many were spoiled. After (as I told you before of the siege of Naples) the Spaniards for friendship they bare to the Frenchmen, sent to them of their curtizans infected with this griefe, minding to let them haue some of their iewels, which they brought out of the Indian countrey. The Frenchmen (not knowing their kind hearts) fell in loue with them, and (being rauished with their beauty) dealt with them, to their great cost and trouble to this day. Now to the variety of the names: First, the Italians call it *Morbus Gallicus*, and some call it *Variolam Gallicam*, because it first appeared among the Frenchmen at the siege before named. The French call it *Scabiem*, or *Morbum Italicum*, because they had the victory, and for that they had this sicknes. And they also call it *Scabiem Hispanicam*, because the Spaniards first brought it out of the Indies. The Germans cal it *Menium*, why they should so terme it, I know not well, vnlesse *Menium* do signifie the priuy parts infected with this disease. Some of them call it also *Scabiem Hispanicam*. In Spaine they name it *Morbum Neapolitanum*, the cause I told you before. They of Naples call it also *Patuysa paradneptur*, that is, the proper name at home in India. Some interprete it *Violentum morbum*, or thus; a great, foule, and vehement disease. Other some call it *Pendendagra*, because it first infecteth the priuy partes both of men and women: and we in our countrey call it, the French disease. But howsoeuer it bee called it skilleth not, so that we knowe how to helpe it, which I minde to declare hereafter by Gods grace.

CHAP. II.

Of the signes.

BVt first I meane to declare the signes how you shall know those which are infected with this griefe, and then the nature of this French disease, as by the effects following it may appeare; and after, the cause thereof is shewed to be nothing else but that contagion. It resteth that we now say somewhat of the signes, whereby you may vnderstand and perceiue those which are infected with this disease: and because signes do proceede and are taken either of the nature of the affects, or of the causes of the sicknesse, or also of some symptomates or consequents thereof. And because it chiefly beginneth in the liuer, and cannot be looked into, let vs not looke for any signes as *Analegia morbi*: for all signes that can giue certaine testimony and shew thereof, are contayned vnder the affects, and consequently of the disease. Of these there be two sorts, som are *symptomata*, other som be *morbi*, or affects of nature. *Symptomata* be these falling of haire, ach in the head and members, and small infection of the skin. Those which I called *morbi*, be most sore and vehement vlcers, tumours of the shins, and other partes of the body, with pustules, &c. which followeth this disease, euen as the shadow waiteth vppon the sunne. But because long diseases haue their times, to wit, beginning, increase, state, and declination, and this French disease is one kinde of long disease, great reason there is, why it should haue his distinct times; and according to the diuersity of those times,

there

there happeneth diuerſe *ſymptomata*: For one kinde of *ſymptomates* happen at the beginning of this diſeaſe, another kind to the ſtate or vigor, &c. And therefore I will diuide all *ſymptomates* into two ſorts, to wit, thoſe which follow and properly belong vnto this grief, beginning at thoſe which follow the ſame being inueterat & confirmed; and theſe next enſuing be of the firſt ſort. Straight waies after a yong man is infected, he feeleth in himſelf a certaine laſſitude or wearines come vpon all his members without any outward occaſion, as walking, or mouing, &c: which foreſheweth this cruell diſeaſe, and happeneth vnto them which are moſt ſtrong & luſty before. There is perceiued alſo a lumpiſh heauines in the whole body, a dulneſſe, faintneſſe, lutherneſſe, or ſlownes to moue in all the members. The occaſion of this, is the infection of the naturall ſpirits, which are the immediat inſtruments of the faculty ſuſtaining and giuing liuelines to the whole body: by whoſe infection, the body waxeth more heauy, and weariſome then it was before. Moreouer, there is a certaine paine or ach, which wandreth throughout all the body and parts thereof. After this laſſitude of the body, the head aketh: and againe by & by it leaueth the head, and goeth into the ſhoulders, and from the one ſhoulder into the other. Out of the ſhoulder it fleeteth into the legs, the one of them or the other, & in like ſort may it be ſayd of all other members. The cauſe of this, is a certaine vapor which beginneth to riſe vp from the liuer. The euill humor of this affect is not yet begotte: but by reaſon of that feruent heat of the liuer cauſed by infection, there is engendred a certaine ſmal vapor, whereof do grow theſe wandring or fleeting pains. Thirdly, whē the diſeaſe hath begū, & hath a litle preuailed, the color of the face is changed; yee ſhall ſee the moſt beautifull, liuely, and clean cōplexion of the skin, in three or foure daies ſpace changed into a much worſe courſe then before; and what maner of motion this is, I cannot tell. But certes their face differeth not a litle from that it was before, the colour is altered, the liuely ſpirits in the eies be changed, the mouth, lips, and cheeks ſometimes are changed from their natural comelines. And marke you this (which may much further your iudgement & knowledge therein) there is vnder their eies a wan coloured or blewiſh circle, ſuch as appeareth in women when they haue their naturall purgation, or before it. Noting and finding theſe things in him, conſider with your ſelf whether he paſſed meaſure in drinking, in watching, or ſleeping, or haue vexed his mind with care: & if it happē not through one of theſe, then may you iudge he is taken with this diſeaſe. Fourthly, there is wont to breake out a notable heate in the palmes of the handes, and the ſoles of the feete, yea euen in the Winter time. This appeareth through vaporous ſpirits, taking their beginning of the liuer, which being infected, the face alſo is affected, and the extreame partes or vttermoſt members are ſore diſtempered with heate. Fiftly, you may adde a drowſineſſe, or diſpoſition to ſleepe oftentimes interrupted: and this is cauſed through a turbulent vapour, which is increaſed through the infection and heate. Sixtly, you may adde heauines, and ſadneſſe of the minde: for though a pleaſant and merry nature ſhoulde be infected with this diſeaſe, yet he ſhall ſtraight way be ſadde, and giuen to penſiueneſſe, and euen growen therewith. This infection increaſing, boileth the bloud, which ſendeth vp troublous and miſty vapours vnto the head,

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

7 and ſeat of the minde. Seuenthly, the patient ſometime hath a feauer, becauſe of the heat which is about the diſtempered parts: but this ſeldome chanceth.

8 The eight is the appearaunce of ſome putrified matter, and this is *ſignum pathognomicum*, a ſigne to diſcouer the malady. Therefore as often times as you ſhall ſee this putrified matter, yet ſmall in quantity about the priuy place, and know no occaſiõ to haue gone before, you may pronounce it to be the french diſeaſe. And what is the reaſon? This Caries or matter cannot happen but of two cauſes: either becauſe the corruption of the womans matrice hath eaten and gnawen the fine skinne of the yard; or elſe becauſe the contagion is communicated and imparted vnto the liuer by the naturall ſpirites, and the liuer expelleth thoſe infected ſpirits & ſanious matter vnto the priuy parts. Of this Caries, how it may be knowen when it commeth of *Morbus Gallicus*, and when

9 it is cauſed otherwiſe, I will ſpeake afterwards. In the ninth place ſucceedeth *Bubo*, and thoſe not great, as thus; A yong man had to do with a woman, after which act there came vpon him a heauineſſe of his members, and a ſadneſſe of the mind, and after two or three daies there appeareth *Bubo parum*, that is to ſay, a ſmall tumour in the arme holes or ſhare, which is painefull, not growen to any greatneſſe: this ſignifieth that the diſeaſe is yet gentle, and in the beginning, but the cauſe of this is the greatneſſe by the purging places of the liuer, and therefore the liuer disburdeneth him ſelfe by ſending the diſeaſe vnto them, and hereof commeth *Bubo*. The later ſigne of this diſeaſe at the beginning is *Gonorrhoia Gallica*, which bewrayeth vnto vs the nature of this Proteus. After the firſt comming in of this diſeaſe, for the ſpace of forty yeares, there was not ioyned with it *defluuium capillorum*; but the nature of the diſeaſe, is to be changeable and diuers, for *Gonorrhoia Gallica* hath not bin ſeene aboue theſe fiue and thirty yeares. Therefore we may looke for new and ſtrange *ſymptomates*, I pray God they be light and eaſie to be holpen. Now how this *Gallica Gonorrhoia* is to be diſcerned from that which is not *Gallica*, I will hereafter declare, to auoide tediouſneſſe in this place. The cauſe of this *Gonorrhoia* is *labefactatio ſpirituum*, weakning and ſubuerſion of the ſpirites, which rule the naturall faculties or vertues of the teſticles & ſpermaticke veſſels, by reaſon whereof the ſtrength of thoſe parts is diſſolued: ſo that they cannot keepe their ſeed but it continually droppeth forth. But now let vs ſpeake of thoſe ſignes which are appropriated to the diſeaſe in this progreſſe or confirmation: and firſt, of hard puſtules in the whole body, and the ſame grieuous and deformed in the head and beard, ſometimes with ſanious matter, ſometimes without it. And know yee, the diſeaſe cannot be aboue the age of fiue or ſixe moneths at the moſt when theſe *ſymptomates* appeare. And if the diſeaſe beginneth in the winter, it ſhall bring forth his cruſts in the beginning of Sommer: if it beginne in the ſpring time, his cruſts appeare in Autumne, &c.

CHAP. III.

Of the cauſes of the breaking out of Piſtules.

1 AND the chiefe cauſes of this breaking out of puſtules are theſe: Firſt, be-
2 cauſe the matter infected is ſent thither from the liuer. Secondly becauſe the parts affected do not digeſt and expell (by way of tranſpiration) his excre-

ments,

ments, and therefore they remaine in it ſtill, and grow vnto cruſts. The third 3
ſigne of this diſeaſe confirmed, is callous vlcers about the priuy partes, which either be callous at the beginning, or become callous afterward: and therefore as often as you ſee the *Caries* in the priuy parts healed, and that there remaine *Calli* or hardineſſe about the place, where it was, be yee aſſured that this is *Gallicus Morbus* confirmed. Therefore I wiſhe that you remember this, when you take in hand the cure; for thoſe hardneſſes be moſt manifeſt & certaine ſignes of this diſeaſe confirmed. The fourth is hanging downe of the *vuula*; 4
the *vuula* hanging downe in the further part of the mouth, and if it do ſo, much moiſture commeth to the mouth, by reaſon whereof happeneth *raucedo vocis*, a great horſeneſſe of the voice. Therefore open their mouth when you ſhall heare them ſpeake thus hoarſely, and you ſhall perceiue the *vuula* full of moiſture, and (if the patient haue no catrrich) ſay that it is *Morbus gallicus* confirmed. The cauſe of this humectation or moiſtneſſe of the *vuula*, is the naturall ſpirits infected and chaunged, which is caried with the bloud of the veins, throughout the whole body, and becauſe it is ſo infected and weakned, therefore the function thereof is weake and feeble in the ſtomach, and maketh euill digeſtion. Therefore the ſame ſtomach aboundeth with fleume in the braine, and it dorh not his function. Therefore in the braine there is engendred *Mucus*, that is, a skinned cold moiſture in the veines, by the reaſon of weakeneſſe of the ſpirites, engendred of flegmaticke bloud, with vnnaturall humours. If they bee afterward by exceſſe of heate aduſt, the diſeaſe becommeth very grieuous and vehement. No meruaile therefore, if this aboundance of moiſt humors fall to the *vuula*, and be preſſed downe with moiſture: and if the bloud be ſharper, then the skals breake forth in the skinne, the rootes of the haires be conſumed: ſo that they fall: it exulcerateth the mouth, the palate, and the noſe: it periſheth the ſcalpe of the braine, and is the occaſion of many other *ſymptomates*. The cauſe of hoarſeneſſe of the voice, is humidity and excrements which doe ſtop and let the waies of the voice. Fiftly, you may adde the tu- 5
mors of the glandules in the further part of the mouth; and when you ſee this, be yee out of doubt, that the infection of the diſeaſe is now confirmed. For the infected matter is now ſent vnto the head, which is expelled by his *emmutory* places, that is, glandules. And ſixtly, adde thereunto the corruption of the 6
palate of the mouth, and of the teeth; and when you ſee theſe, looke not to any greater ſignes of the confirmation of this euill. In the ſeuenth place I put 7
outragious and continuall paine, making the patient euen to cry out: this beginneth at the two and twentieth houre of the artificiall day, and continueth not fully vntill midnight; and theſe moſt orgueilous and extreame paines are cauſed of a very moiſt and maligne vapour, which riſeth vppe from the liuer; and from the excrementes be acquired and gathered by euill nouriſhment in euery part, and eſpecially about the *perioſtion*, that is, the rims which couer the bones of euery part. And in the eight place, I remẽber corruption of the bones 8
in the head, and in the armes, before there appeare any vlcer. How you may know the bone to be corrupted, the skinne remaining whole and ſound, I will hereafter ſhew. In the ninth place you may adde tumours *atheromacous*, that 9
is, tumors which yeeld a tough ſlimy matter. Theſe of ſome writers are called

Bumbata or *Gummata*, by a similitude taken of trees. For in *morbo Gallico* tumors do grow like the gummes which issue out of trees, and this happeneth, either because the party him selfe is not well nourished, and heapeth vp vndigested excrements, or else because the liuer communicateth and sendeth vnto it infected matter. We may adde here in the tenth and last place, maligne vlcers in all the partes of the body, which vlcerate the whole skinne, head, and all parts, through abundance of offensiue matter. To conclude, they succeed this disease, sometime their affects as *Asthma*, which when it is come vpon a patient, it declareth him to bee past cure. Therefore neuer put such a one to paine by medicines or other meanes, for you shall neuer heale him. Now will I teach you in processe of time following, the waies how to asswage and cure all the said *symptomates*, which although they be very hard and rebellious to remedy, yet I vndertake vnto you that I haue found out such waies and meanes by medicines, as will assuredly, speedily, and without all daunger (as much as is possible) helpe and cure them by Gods grace.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus.

NOw after we haue declared the names, nature, causes, and signes of this affect, it remaineth that we proceede and declare also the cure. And vnderstand ye, that the waies of curing therof are manifold and diuerse, because the nature thereof is not comprehended in any methode of curing, but was alwaies opened by the experiments of Empericks, for *Hap* & *Hardy* haue giuen vs medicines against this disease. And because diuerse medicines haue bene found out by chance, therefore there be diuerse waies of curing this affect, of the which one is light and easie, that is, great mouing and exercise of the body, which in yong men strong and lusty able to endure sweat, either in wrastling, leaping, darting, dancing or playing at tennise, or such like, hath bin a sufficient remedy for this euill in the beginning, for by it the heat so groweth, and the excrements thereby be so abundantly expelled, that the spirits be renued and made more pure and apt to ouercome the infection: and therefore it is not to be maruelled, if by this meanes, the liuer sometimes purgeth him selfe when the disease hath taken no deepe roote in him. Why doth *febris putrida* cease & take an end without medicine? Because perdy, it is not in the sound parts of the body. But in *febris hectica*, the patients are healed by medicines alwaies which coole and moisten, because the affect consisteth in the sound parts. Semblable, in *Morbo Gallico*, when the disease is in the beginning and not confirmed or fixed in the inward parts, it is possible that the spirits may be restored of them selues; for this affect is in the spirites. Therefore to returne to our purpose, some indeed by procuring a great sweat haue bene cured, but this was in the beginning of the disease, in very strong bodies, and yet it hath not had in all such succesſe neither.

CHAP. V.

Of Fumigations.

THere is another way that Empericks haue vsed to cure this disease, and that is *per Suffumigia*. The auncients vsed indeed diuerse affects by suffumigations.

migations. But the Emperickes trying alwaies to helpe this affect, at length found out an excellent Suffumigation, *ex cinabari*, yet this often times hurteth: albeit it is counted amongst the waies of curing this disease, and sometime doubtlesse it healeth them.

CHAP. VI.

Of purging of Morbus Gallicus.

HAuing thus farre proceeded in this matter, wee will now come vnto the first scope proposed, I meane euacuation of the matter present in *substantia*, wherewith is ioyned feruor, out of the which groweth a hoate distempure and excrementous matter. First therefore naturall, and that when so euer you goe about to cure this disease: for the very Emperickes doe that euer at the beginning of their cure. And because the present humors may offend either in quantity, or in quality, or in both, you ought to vse diligent consideration therein. For if they offend in quantity onely: first, we must giue him a lenitiue medicine either of *cassia*, or *sirup. ros. sol.* and after that open a veine, that the ebullition of bloud in the liuer may be so tempred and asswaged. Secondly, abate and diminish the matter, which requireth first to be altered by medicines, and afterward to be expelled. Thirdly, for as much as the disease happeneth by contagion, which contagion infecteth the liuer, vnto the which their fountaine all the humours haue their recourse; it behoueth reuulsion to be made from the inward partes vnto the outward, as in bloud letting it is. I omit the greatnesse of the disease, which also indicateth *Phlebotomy*: but the three first onely we take as indications of bloud letting, and the veine that is to be opened is *hepatica*, in the right arme, because it is direct vnto the parts affected. But vnderstand that sometime we may not vse this euacuation, because in the beginning of the disease, for the most part, the patient is wont to haue *Bubones*, which *Bubones* because they come from the liuer, expelling the superfluous or vnnaturall matter vnto his emmutory place, if wee should cut the veine, the patient hauing them vppon him, we might happily thereby diuert and turne backe the matter againe vnto the liuer to the danger of the patient. So that in this case it is determined among learned men, that a veine ought not to be opened, least the matter (as I sayd before) should be drawen againe vnto the liuer, and the disease made more dangerous and painefull.

CHAP. VII.

Of the preparation of humours.

AFter the patient hath bene let bloud, as his strength may permit, the time well serueth to prepare his humours, and for as much as in the beginning of the disease, there is not alwaies the same mixture of humours, that is in the end, in which there is *pituita* and *exusta materia*. This *pituita* ought to be prepared first, by those things which haue power to attenuate and scoure, and to open obstructions, of which medicines, you shall finde plenty in the former bookes, for the auoiding of cholericke, flegmaticke and melancholike humors and mixt humours, and then let vs come to the cure.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the certaine and true medicine for the diſeaſe.

IN the cure of this diſeaſe, after euacuation is made, the ſtate and temperature of the inward parts by conuenient meanes altered, the body prepared by the medicins before ſufficiently, and purged, and afterward confirmed and comforted againe as before we haue declared; if we ſee the diſeaſe continue ſtill, and not yeeld to all this miniſtration, we ought then to come vnto that which maketh the true & certaine alteration of the inward parts, and that of it ſelfe hath knowen vertue, both to alter and reſtore the liuer to his naturall eſtate; and this is the decoction of *lignum guaicum*, otherwiſe called *lignum indicum* and *lignum ſanctum*, which medicine was found out by chance, and confirmed by great experience to cure this diſeaſe, the patient obſeruing a very ſlender diet, & drinking the decoction in which there is a vertue to attenuate, and power to ouercome this diſeaſe.

CHAP. IX.

What ſort of that wood is to be choſen as beſt for this purpoſe.

NOw ſithēce it is determined that for this purpoſe to vſe this wood is beſt, it is neceſſary to ſhew alſo the maner of vſing this wood, cōcerning which
1 you ought to obſerue theſe things. Firſt what maner wood, and what manner
2 3 rinde is to be choſen for the beſt. Secondly the preparation. Thirdly the way of
4 giuing it. Fourthly the order of diet to be vſed in miniſtring it. Firſt concerning the election or choiſe of the wood, I ſay it is not to be doubted, alwaies to chooſe that which is of moſt vertue, and that is *lignum ſanctum*, which is yellowiſh and fatte, hauing no blackneſſe in it: and if we cannot haue this, let vs vſe *guaicum*, whereof there is more plenty. Moreouer, in both kindes of this wood, the meane ſort is beſt; we may haue it of a tree that is old, or of a yong tree, or of a tree of middle age. I call that the meane ſort which is not altogether blacke, nor for the greater part white, neither ſlender, nor groſſe. I chooſe this middle ſort, becauſe it hath more vnctuoſitye or oyliſhneſſe in it, then the other which is grown vnto age. For if the ſame vnctuoſity doth more abound in the younger wood, it is more inconcoct and excrementous. Moreouer, we ought to chooſe that which is beſt in reſpect of the diſeaſe; to wit, in a confirmed diſeaſe, the moſt vertufull and efficacious, as is *lignum ſanctum* of middle age, but if the diſeaſe be not ſo greatly confirmed, but light and eaſie, we may vſe that which is of more weaker operation both in *genere* & in *ſpecie*. Furthermore, regard muſt be had alſo of the patient his age, for in an old body, the old plant is moſt conuenient: for one that is yong and ſtrong, the middle ſort
5 is to be choſen. Fifthhly, in chooſing this wood, we muſt conſider of the time of the yeare: for in a cold ſeaſon, as in the winter, we ought to vſe the hotter, ſharper, and bitterer kinde, which we may iudge by our ſences; in the ſommer time, that which is leſſe ſharpe, and leaſt of all bitter, either of an old or yong tree. And the markes, whereby we may diſcerne the beſt from the other, of the wood of the old tree, which hath in it great quātity of blacknes, are theſe: it is very bigge, and hath a groſſe and thicke rinde, which ſo cleaueth vnto the wood,

wood, that vnneath it can with a knife be separated. For as often as you see the rinde to come easily from the wood, it hath bene moistned with salt water, and is of the worst sort. In the middle sort of this wood, all these things appeare in a meane. Besides this, I would wishe you to rape a little of this wood, and if in so doing you perceiue not a smell proceed from it, you may be bold to say, that it is either very old, or else corrupt. The third signe to choose this wood by is, if in raping it appeareth oylish, so that the dust thereof doth somewhat glister. Fourthly, you may tast of that you haue raped in your mouth, and if it biteth the tongue forthwith, and afterward yeeldeth a bitternesse, it is good. Fifthly, take & rape it, and if there appeareth in the substance thereof manifest pores and small holes after you haue raped it, and the superficies remaineth not equall and sound, it is of the worst sort: and if you make your decoction thereof, it is cleare, and neither bitter nor sharpe in taste. Sixtly, it ought to be chosen very ponderous and heauy. Seuenthly, see that it be such as hath not the whitishe colour enclining to dimmednesse, neither hauing the veines of the white part blacke, but greenish, and of dimme pale colour: for if it be otherwise, it is a token of corruption. The last proofe of this wood is, to boile the rapings thereof, and if the decoction be thicke, very bitter, and sharpe, it is good. The signes of goodnesse in the rinde are these; First, that it be taken of a tree which is olde, or of middle age, for that which commeth of a small bough is naught, and we know when it commeth of a middle aged or old tree, for it hath great peeces, and large cauities. Secondly it is required, that the rinde be very thicke. Thirdly that it be very hard. Fourthly that on the inside it seemeth as it were blacke, sprinckled with an ashe colour; and this is the colour of the most excellent barke. If withall in breaking, it appeareth blacke, but not like vnto *Ebenus*, be ye sure it is of the best sort.

CHAP. X.

Of the decoction of Guaicum.

THe wood being thus raped, we come to his boyling, which we call Decoction. And touching that, we shall note that the common vse is, for euery ounce of raped wood, to adde a pound of water. But truth it is, if we deale with a laddo or a stripling of tender yeares, of hote complexion, and that in sommer season, wee must vse for euery ounce of the wood, to take one pound and a halfe of water. But the common custome is (as I said) for euery ounce of the said wood, to take one pound of water. Therfore in making the decoction we are wont to take one pound of the raped wood, and twelue poundes of the water, except in the sommer season when the sirupe cannot be kept; and then we take *lignum* ℥.vj. of water ℔.vj. Also in the winter time we take of the wood raped ℔.j.ß. of water eighteene pounds. In the middle seasons or times betwixt both these, one pound of the wood, and twelue pounds of water. But you must take and macerate or infuse the woode twelue houres before, or sometimes more, sometimes lesse while. Some infuse the wood in cold water, but I like not that way, for if you marke the difference which is betweene the decoction made after the infusion of colde water, and that which is

made after the wood is infuſed in hote water, you ſhall finde the laſt far more ſharper, more bitter, and more thicker. Therefore hardly let it be infuſed in water, which is made euen ſeething hote. Moreouer, I wiſh that you ſtop your pot very cloſely, and ſet it in a place amongſt branne, couering it vp euen vnto the middle part in the ſaid branne: for by this meanes it long time retaineth his heate. Beſides this, encompaſſe it round about with linnen clothes, that it may bee perfectly macerated, and the decoction haue his requiſite ſtrength, and to be boyled in a veſſell of ſtone, or of earth well glaſed within, thoſe veſſels of glaſſe are beſt of all. And I note you furthermore, that this decoction may be made two diuerſe waies, to witte, by dry fire, or in *balneo marie*, which is the more excellent way: for the decoction will be far better, & worke better effect and ſooner. Alſo chooſe your veſſell hauing as ſmall a mouth as may be, and boile your liquor therein, the top being cloſe ſtopped, and keepe it in boiling continually, let it boile till halfe be waſted, as the common vſe is, ſome will boile it till three parts be conſumed, to haue it dry more. This is the rule for boiling this decoction, which when it is boiled, ſometime is ſuffered to coole before it be ſtrained, and ſome ſtraine it whiles it is yet boiling hot, that the wood make not the decoction thicke or groſſe with his ſubſtance. I thinke it no matter whether it be clenſed hote or cold, and this is the making of this firſt decoction. The ſpume or froth thereof muſt be gathered for that purpoſe which hereafter I will declare. The ſecond decoction is made in this wiſe; we take the ſame wood (without macerating it any more) & boile it againe in the ſame quantity of water (as cuſtome is) that it boile vnto the conſumption of the third part: ſo that of twelue pounds, after boiling there remaine eight. But in the ſecõd decoction we vſe to encreaſe the quantity of this water: for ſometime we adde eighteene pounds of water, ſometime fifteene: and this we are accuſtomed to doe, when we haue a patient that is giuen to drinke much. Secondly we encreaſe the *doſis* of the water, if it be in the ſommer ſeaſon, for then the patients are compelled to drinke betweene dinner and ſupper. And this is to be drunk at dinner and ſupper, or (if need be) at any time of the day. Neuertheleſſe ye ſhall vnderſtand, ſome Phiſitions doe giue the firſt decoction euen at dinner & ſupper alſo: and ſo they make but one decoction only, but this vſe is but rare, and when they will dry vehemently. One thing I muſt adde, which is this, that in leane and weake perſons we vſe to prepare this wood to be giuen with the broth of veale, of a chicken, or a bird, ſo that the broth be not fatte. It is boiled after the manner aforeſaide: and this I thought neceſſary to let you vnderſtand. Thus much may ſuffice the ſimple for making of theſe decoctions.

CHAP. XI.

Of the making the compound decoctions of this wood.

THis *Guaicum* is boiled not onely ſingle and by it ſelfe, (as I haue ſhewed before) but alſo diuerſe other things in boiling are mixed and compounded therewith diuerſely. Firſt I will declare vnto you thoſe decoctions which be made of this wood moſt ſingly. Afterwardes others, which becauſe they haue moe things added vnto them, are called compound decoctions of this wood. The moſt ſimple or ſingle decoction, is made of the rind of the wood, and pure water only. And this ſimple decoctiõ the beſt Phiſitions do vſe, when they will

make

make the decoction ſtrong. The forme of making it is this: We take the ſame quantity of the wood of *guaicum*, & the ſome of water which is declared in the chapter before, and we adde vnto the ſame the barke, or rind of *guaicum*, which hath no determinat quantities, for ſomtime we put 2. ſomtime 3. ſometime 4. ounces vnto one pound of the wood, & for halfe an ounce of the rind, we adde 4. pounds of water: as for example, admit the quantity of the wood be 1. pound, the quantity of the rinde ℥.ij. the quantity of the water ſhall be 16. pounds. But when we will haue the medicine of great operation & ſtrength, we take of the wood 1. pound, of the rinde vj. ℥. of water ℔. 18. we beate the rind into groſſe powder, and afterward ſteepe it in the water 24. houres, then boile we it to the conſumptiō of the 3. part, in ſuch wiſe, as is ſaid of the ſimple decoction. In certaine places they prepare & make this decoction with wine. The forme of preparing it is this: *Guaici*. j. pound. *corticis eius*, halfe a pound. water ℔. 18. let theſe be infuſed together according to art, afterward boile them to the conſumption of 2. 3. parts, ſo that 6. pounds only of the decoctiō do remain. This done, they adde thereto of ſtrong white wine, which they boile a litle, and then ſtraine it, and vſe it as before. Sometime it hapneth (by the weaknes or vice of the patient his ſtomach) that the whole decoction is caſt vp againe: therefore that it may pearce the ſooner, we adde wine thereto, but if the patient can receiue & retaine it without wine, it were the better way. Yet haue we another decoction of this wood which is more compounded, which is this: ℞ *ligni guaici*. ℔. j. *corticis eius*. ℔. ß. *aquæ*. ℔. 18. theſe be infuſed according to art, then they boile to the conſumption of the 3. part: then we adde to it *Cardous benedictus*, which is much vſed, *Chamedrios Betonicæ*, of ech of theſe herbes a handfull. Againe they boile it euen til the one halfe be waſted. So that of the whole decoction remaineth no more then 6. pounds. Then we adde thereto againe of wine 3. pintes, and after 1. whalme or 2. boiling we clenſe or ſtraine it. ℞. the ſame wood, the ſame rinde, and the ſame water in quantity, infuſe & boile them after the ſame maner: then adde of roſemary, *fœniculi*, *ſtœchadis*, *betony*. ana. *M*. j. *ſcine*, anniſe ℥. j. let theſe boile to the conſumption of the halfe part, ſo that there remaine of the liquor but 6. pounds, and thereto adde 3. pintes of wine, after the maner aforeſaide. Laſtly, we make yet another way as thus. ℞. the ſame quantity of the wood and rinde, whereof we ſpake before, we adde of the roots of *enula campana*, of the roots of *althæa*, of the dry rootes of *ireos*. ana, ℥. j. of maidenhaire, of liquorice, *ſteitiados*. ana. ℥. ß. Theſe boile together to the conſumption of halfe, then there is put vnto it 3. pints of wine, and ſo the decoction made perfect by boiling, as is aforeſaid. And theſe be the formes & deſcriptions of thoſe decoctions which are vſuall with appractitioners and others. They which vſe to miniſter theſe maner of decoctiōs, make no ſecond decoction, but prepare ſome other liquor for their dinner and ſupper at their decoction. I my ſelfe haue bin wont in this decoction to put in purging medicines, & ſpecially to thoſe which haue ſuch ſtomachs as cannot haue purging medicines. I haue vſed the foreſaid compound decoctions, but not alwaies, but eſpecially in cold griefes, as *Aſthma*, and coldnes of the ſtomach, *ſciatica* & palſey in fiſtulaes, and other foule ſores & paines in the ioints, and in affects of the feet comming of cold diſtempure, in theſe cauſes I haue vſed the ſaid decoctions with good ſucceſſe. But

the moſt ſimple decoction, I ſay doth beſt againſt *Morbũ Gallicum*, ſo that there be no compound diſeaſe ioyned with it, then the compound decoctions are chiefly to be vſed according to the direction of them which do practiſe.

CHAP. XII.

Of the time conuenient to giue this decoction.

BVt at what time is this decoction to be giuen? certes the moſt meete time is the ſpring time, for although we require in the working therof, heat, ſweat, and much digeſtion of excrements, yet the heate of ſommer is too great, the bodies are therby reſolued & made faint. Therfore the mid ſpring, and the beginning of ſommer is moſt conuenient. Next vnto the ſpring is the autumne; as for the ſommer and winter they be ſeaſons vnfit for it, the one for his great heate, and the other for his exceſſe of cold. And if of theſe two I muſt needes chooſe one, yet would I rather chooſe the winter, for in the winter ſeaſon we may haue good fires, the chamber may be made cloſe and warme. Therefore concerning the time remember alwaies the ſpring is beſt, the autumne next, the winter next, and the ſommer worſt of all.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the place where this decoction is to be giuen.

WE may not conueniently giue this decoction in euery place. Our anceſtors the Phiſitions that liued before theſe laſt 40. years, were wont to keepe their patients in darkenes, as it were, in a dungeon for the ſpace of 40. daies, pining them euen vnto bones, and they did well, ſo cruell, ſo fierce and outragious was then this diſeaſe. But now ſithence it is become more meeke and tollerable, Phiſitions ought not to deale ſo hardly withall. Therefore wee keepe our patients in a chamber, where is ſomewhat drier ground, not open vnto the windes, the windowes cloſed in with paper or linnen clothes, the dores not altogether kept cloſe.

CHAP. XIIII.

What quantity of the decoction is to be taken at once.

IN meaſuring the quantity we obſerue theſe things. Firſt, how great the affect is, for if it be great & rebellious, then muſt a great quantity of this potion be giuen: if the affect be not great, the quantity ſhould be leſſe. Vnto a child we miniſter a ſmaller quantity then to one of full growth. Alſo conſideration ought to be had of the complexion, for the patient if his temperament be hot, a litle quantity, if it be cold a great quantity is to be giuen. If the ſtomacke be weake, we giue a very ſmall quantity; if the ſtomach be ſtrong, we giue a great quantity. This qãntity is giuen (when it is large) by 2. ſirupes, but when it is litle by one ſirupe only, our limits are frõ ℥. iiij. vnto ℥. x. In a child frõ 4 vnto 6 ℥. if he be ſtrong and valiant of ſtomack, you may proceed to ℥. viij. In the ſtrongeſt perſon, the diſeaſe alſo being rebellious, we proceede not aboue ℥. x. and that quantity we ſeldome vſe in any. Moreouer you muſt obſerue another rule, that is, to giue a greater quantity alwaies of the ſirupe in the morning, then in the euening, becauſe in the morning the ſtomach is empty: & in the night becauſe of ſleepe, the force therof is greater. Againe, this is to be obſerued, in the 1. and 2. day we giue no more, but each day once of the day, which is in the morning,

and

and likewise in the end of the diet. But after we giue the sirupe twise a day, (to wit) morning and euening, at a certaine without failing or breaking of time.

CHAP. XV.

How many daies this decoction is to be receiued.

THe question hath bene to giue the decoction of *Guaicum*, the space of forty daies, because this *Morbus Gallicus* is *Morbus erronicus*, a long disease, requiring therefore a long cure. But this time serueth when the disease is in a meane betweene confirmed and beginning. If it be but *morbus incipiens*, we scarcely prolong the vse of this decoction til the thirtieth day, or the fiue and twentieth day, but when the disease is inueterate, we cast not to giue it in *veratro*, vntill the 60. day. Whereby shall we know certainely when to leaue the vse of this decoction? truely when we see that all *symptomata* be ceased and gone, and if they be ceased at the sixteene daies end, let vs leaue the vse of the drinke, if not, let vs continue it still, vntill the *symptomata* be all gone. But if after we haue giuen it forty daies, the *symptomata* cease not, yet thereby leaue not off as yet for all that, but continue it still prescribing to the patient *victus nobilum*, and let him till a hundred daies be expired, drinke of the decoction, least the disease returne, or be confirmed more. And ye shall vnderstand, there be two rebellious *symptomates*, which if they remaine, hope ye not for any perfect cure. The one sort of these be certaine callous and hard scarres, we English men terme them the buttons of Naples, for they be certaine scars like indeede vnto Buttons, and except the patient continue this decoction till these be perfectly cured, it is alwaies to be feared, that the disease wil againe return. The other rebellious *symptomata*, is *Gonorrhoia gallica*, which if it ceaseth not through the vse of the decoction or other medicine, of which I will speake hereafter, the disease also endureth. Therefore see that after forty daies, yet they drinke one of the decoctions.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the time of giuing this decoction and things to be obserued therein.

NOw comming to speake of the time of giuing this decoction, I say, that the Phisitions giue it in the morning before dinner, the space of three or four houres, and for the euening after supper three houres. And if it so chanceth that we giue but one sirupe onely, the time is not so much to be regarded. Moreouer, remember that the decoction ought alwaies to be taken very hot, to the end it may prouoke sweat: againe, that it ought to be receiued of the patient lying in his bed. The sirupe being drunke, the patients do vse to sleepe vpon it, and this they must attempt to doe, that it may the better be digested, and distributed into the habite of the body.

CHAP. XVII.

Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction.

CHiefly *Venus* must be shut out of the dore quite, especially while this decoction is in giuing. Some by comitting this act but once in this cure haue

failed of remedy through the ſame. There be diueliſh women deſirous to be handled and dealt withall, who will beautifie them ſelues, to inflame mens hearts to luſt towards them; abandon theſe your company, and thruſt them out of the dores and houſe, let none of that hew be ſeene in your diet; beware againe of perturbation and chafing of the minde, which to auoide, flee cards, dice, and all manner of games, which may prouoke anger, and nouriſh fraud, and couetouſneſſe, which doth inflame the bloud, & ſturre cholericke humors.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of things to be corrected or ſymptomates to be oppugned in this cure.

CErtaine accidents alſo in this cure are to be corrected and holpen, among the which, one is a certaine lothing of the ſtomach, or diſpoſition to vomit, called of the Latines *Nauſea*. This comming vpon the palate, letteth him to receiue his potion. This is reſiſted and helped by mixing pleaſaunt things, with the decoction, as is ſome pleaſant Iulep to be mixed with the decoction according to the humor which is the cauſe therof: ſome hauing a hot ſtomach do abhor it, therfore let them vſe in the decoction cold waters, as *cichorri*, and ſuch like, to make it more thin. Some cannot eate their bisket, in which caſe we permit vnto them, good common bread made of the beſt floure, of the beſt wheat. Moreouer ſharpe and grieuous paines are wont to happen vnto the patients after the fourth day, or the eight day of their begun diet, vntill the fifteenth day be paſt, which we endeuour to qualifie and lighten two waies. Firſt by perſwading with the patient to ſuſtaine them patiently, telling him it is the nature of working of the wood, and that they will ſoone be at an end, to his great commodity and much comfort. Secondly by fomenting the partes, and annointing them, wherof I will ſpeake more at large, when I treat *de dolorib.* An other inconuenience that followeth this cure is Coſtiuenеſſe, and the patient commeth into laſſitude, or wearineſſe: this is holpen by cliſters, giuen euery third day. Againe ſome do abhor cliſters, vnto ſuch we giue once in the day, of the ſirupe *cum duabus radicibus*, or *mellis roſacei*. And if it be ſuch a perſon as will not be ſcoured by common *mell roſaceum*, then in ſtead thereof we adde vnto the ſirupe *roſ. ſolut.* ℥ j. Some vſe to giue pils of *Aloes*, but *mell roſ.* in my iudgemẽt is beſt. Alſo other whiles it hapneth that the patient fainteth or ſwoundeth, and this happeneth after foure and twenty daies, through the ſlenderneſſe of the diet. Then graunt him a larger diet, as an egge euery day morning & euening, or ſome other thing at your diſcretion. And other whiles the cauſe of this their faintneſſe and ſwounding commeth for that they are not nouriſhed, or becauſe they take litle of their bisket, in which caſe (as I ſaid) we helpe them with a draught of ale, or an egge rere. But if their ſtomackes will not digeſt bisket, let them haue good fine bread. And you ſhall know this weakeneſſe of the ſtomackes digeſtion by theſe ſignes. When either the ſaid ſolutiue ſirupe, or cliſters be giuen them (if their ſtomacke be ſo weake) there is brought forth with it a great part of the decoction, yellowiſh, ſomewhat reſembling the colour of the yolke of an egge, and ſomewhat thicke or troubled, in the which ye

may

may ſee crummes and ſmall peeces of the bisket ſwimming whole. And when this appeareth vnto you, vſe a remedy for it betimes, that is, permit vnto the patient a larger diet, and let him haue a leſſe quantity of the decoction, with which if you do mixe alſo ſome Iulep, it is the better. Theſe be the *ſymptomata* and the meanes to remedy them by.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Excrements.

NOw am I come to that parte of my treatiſe, wherein I haue to ſpeake of Excrements. And concerning this matter: firſt you ſhal vnderſtand, there be two kinds of Excrements which are to be regarded and conſidered of. The one is *Excrementum ſiccum*, that is to ſay, the ordure wherof I haue ſpoken. The other kinde of Excrements, whereby the body is purged, being of three ſorts is auoided ſometime by vrine, ſometime by ſweat, ſometime by purging medicines. Although (in this caſe) it be not neceſſary that the matter be purged, but that the inward affected part be altered, yet euacuation is good by the way of vrine, very good it were indeede, but no Phiſition hath attempted that way. For (be it neuer ſo good) they haue thought it inconuenient to ſend ſuch hote matters vnto the reins: eſpecially if the patient haue *Gonorrhoia*, for then aſſuredly the diſeaſe ſhall be exaſperated and more hurt, then commodity will thereupon enſue. To driue forth by ſweat, Phiſitions do their diligence, for a large ſweat diſſolueth the matter of this diſeaſe. Some therfore do further and prouoke this ſweating after the moſt ſimple and common way, that is, by couering the patient wel with clothes, couering the patients head, by laying him in a hot bed, and giuing him his decoction warme to drinke, (the head of the patient being couered, I doubt whether that wil do hurt or nay.) I can cõmend it in ſuch patients, as haue not the head very hot and ſweating already: alſo in ſuch as haue puſtules, & do fear the ſhedding of their hair. Others take bread hot out of the ouen, and apply it to the backe and ſides of the patient, that by the moiſt heat thereof, they might the more eaſily ſweat. I like not this deuiſe, for the bread is infected thereby, & therefore this is not good. Some vſe to lay a warme brick ſprinckled with wine or verituice, and wrapped vp in cloths, and this is a good cõmendable way, obſeruing yet this rule for the vſe thereof, that you omit it in ſuch perſons as haue *Rhagades* in their feete: in ſuch you muſt lay no bricke to their feet in no wiſe. The laſt way of voiding excrements, is to expell them by the ſiege. And the *guaicum* potion is wont ſometime to worke that effect, but ſomtime it doth it not. The moſt part of Phiſitians doth (in this caſe) cõmend euacuation made with conuenient diſtance of time, by purgatiue medicines, wherefore if very great, euacuation be made by ſweats, let them euery eight day be purged, if they ſweat not plẽteouſly, then purge them oftner euery 3. or 4. day, in the name of God: and the purgations which we in this caſe do vſe, be according to the humours which doth moſt abound, as ſometime with pilles, with *ſena Epithymo*, *Hermodactilis*, and ſometime with *Electuaris*, as *confectio Hamech*, *Diacobalicon*, and ſuch other like, as you may find plenty in the firſt and ſecond bookes, if you looke carefully in them for the medicins for the purpoſe which you would haue auoided.

CHAP. XX.

Of diet to be obſerued in this cure.

NOw are we come to ſpeake of the diet to be vſed while this decoction is in taking. This diet is ordained alwaies, ſlender touching the quantity and drying: and it conſiſteth in bisket which we giue vnto the patient firſt and before other things, to the intent the meate taken after, it might the leſſe moiſten, (and ſo it helpeth much to the cure of the tumours, which belong to this diſeaſe) and alſo becauſe this bisket bread tarieth longer in eating, and yet the patients appetite is ſomewhat ſtaied: and if the ſtomach be very weake, permit him to eate common bread of the very beſt. His meat muſt be roſted and excellent good: chickens, rabets, mutton, partriches, and ſuch like. And when he doth purge, let his meate be boiled that day: once, twiſe, or thriſe in the weeke lette him haue to his ſupper breade and great raiſons, as you like his ſtrength. Some doe miniſter corants which I commend. But when the excrements of the body are daily auoided by aboundance of ſweat, ſo that we may hope the patient ſhall that way be perfectly purged: then I thinke beſt to giue no purging medicines, for nature her ſelfe expelleth them to the skinne to be euacuated that way by ſweate, whoſe worke ſhould by purgatiue medicines partly be hindered If his ſweat be not ſufficient, then it is beſt to vſe purging, of what kinde you thinke beſt (as before.) His ordinary drinke at meales and other times, let him vſe the ſecond decoction, whereof let him take as much as he will. But do not you beleeue, the more they drinke the ſooner they ſhall be cured of this diſeaſe: and if they cannot drinke the ſecond decoction we muſt ſuffer them to take ſome ale or beere, but let it not be very ſtrong in no caſe. The time of the diet being expired, we ought forthwith to obſerue whether the liuer be too hoate yea or no, if it be ſo, then preſcribe a medicine to qualifie the diſtempure as thus. Take conſerues of roſes, borage, or of violets, or ſuch like, which you may finde plenty in our former bookes.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the roote of China.

NOw haue we to treat of the roote of China, whereof ſome Phiſitions do make very great account, not onely for *Morbus gallicus*, but alſo for the cure of *pryſis*, vlcers of the lungs, conſumption of the members. In *Lepra Græcorum. i. ſcabbes Elephanteaſie. i. leprie* proceeding of the melancholicke humour, *podagra*, in all which affects they vſe it, the Spaniards do bring ouer this roote, but from what place I cannot learne, I could neuer attaine to try the vertues thereof this way, but vſe it profitably againſt the dropſie: alſo to repreſſe and temper the melancholicke humour, for bleare eies comming of a hote diſtempure: moreouer, in an exceeding hote diſtempure of the ſtomach and liuer. But in the cure of *Morbus Gallicus*, I will not vſe it againe, for I haue proued it three or foure times, and could yet neuer bring any thing to good perfection: to finiſh their cures they take two pounds thereof.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the way of making the decoction of the roote China.

THe decoction is made in this wise, we take this roote and cut it in thinne peeces, afterward we take ℥.ij thereof, and xij. pounds of cleare water, we heate the water, & infuse the China in it, for a whole night space, or foure and twenty houres. Afterwardes we set it to the fire and boile it, to the consumption of halfe, so that sixe pounds and no more remaine. We make but one decoction which forthwith we clense, and spread out the saide thinne peeces vpon a table, that they may be dried in the shadow, because they are reserued to vse againe. The decoction is kept warme in a pot, set either vpon the embers or the hote coles, for if it remaineth not luke warme, it waxeth sower. But obserue that the decoction be made in a vessell with a very narrow mouth, and the same stopped exactly with corke, while it is in boyling. Of this decoction, we giue in manner of a sirupe in the morning, ℥. x or xij. in the euening as much. The stomach liketh well thereof, for it is a pleasant drinke: sometime we permit the patient to drinke wine if he haue bene accustomed to wine, or else to common ale at his meat, if he be weake, or else not. Their diet is common bread of the best, and flesh both sodden and rosted in moderate quantity. No purging medicine is to be giuen before the end thereof, and so the decoction is daily made, for of two pound (which as we told you in the end of the last Chapter, is the full *Dosis* of this roote) we take daily two ounces, and so the whole lasteth twelue daies. Afterward, we take againe of the same roote dried, and boile againe of the same euery day ℥. iiij. & so it lasteth six daies more, till the space of eighteene daies be finished. Now if we will minister it longer, if neede be, we doe as before. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the election of China.

IF you wil choose the best *China*, take that which is rough in colour and ponderous, not wormeeaten, nor corrupted. And be diligent in this, for among a hundred rootes, vnneath you shall finde foure good, for commonly they haue two faults: one, that they be spongeous and light, another that they be corrupt or worme eaten. And if you can haue none without both these faults, (as few there are indeede to be found) rather choose those that be eaten with wormes, so that they are lesse euill of the two. And spongeous rootes soone putrifie, and haue in the decoction no strength to profite the patient any thing at all. And this is the second way or manner, whereby some Phisitions endeuour to vanquish this euill.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of another manner of making of the decoction with salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke.

I Haue alwaies obserued and followed this rule, I take of *salsa periglia*. ℥. iiij. of water, x. pintes. I cut the *salsa periglia* into small parts: afterwardes infuse

it in hote water, by the ſpace of foure and twenty houres. When it is infuſed, it is boiled to the conſumption of the one halfe, afterward it is ſtrained, and this decoction kept for the ſirupe. Then we take the ſame *ſalſa* againe, & put thereto of water fifteene pints, and without any more infuſion, we boile it vnto the conſumption of the third part, and this decoction is good to be drunke at dinner and ſupper. Truth it is, I ſometime make this decoction with wine, in this wiſe. The firſt decoction being made (as I haue before declared) I take of water fifteene poundes or pintes, and the ſame quantity of *ſalſa*, and boile them together till halfe the liquor be waſted, then before I take the veſſell from the fire, I put thereto of white wine not ſtrong, but pleaſaunt in drinking, one quart, and after it hath boyled a little, I cleanſe it out, and this wine I vſe to put vnto it, when I ſee the patient not much infected, and ſo he may walke abrode if it pleaſe the patient, or elſe when his ſtomacke is much infeebled. Moreouer, ſometime I vſe to mixe the wood, and ſometime the rinde, and then I take of *ſalſa*. ℥ iij. of the *Guaicke* wood as much, and ſometime of his rinde. ℥. ij. (but not both at once, very ſeldome.) Sometime I vſe the one, and ſometime the other, after this forme. ℞. *ſalſa*. ℥. iiij. *ligni guaici*. ℥ iij. ß. or elſe of the rinde. ℥. ij. To which I put of water thirteene pintes, and let them boile together till halfe be waſted. Againe to make their drinke for dinner and ſupper, I take of water eighteene pintes, and boile it to the conſumption of the third part; when I vſe the barke, I take euen the ſame quantity of water, although there be of it but ℥. ij. Now when it chanceth me to haue a patient very delicate, and therefore will not giue him theſe decoctions; in this caſe I boile the *ſalſa* in thirteene pintes of water, vnto the conſumption of halfe, and when it is thus boiled, I haue a veſſell either of the raped *guaicum*, or the powder of the rinde, which I beſt like of, and into it I cleanſe the decoction of *ſalſa*, as hote as is poſſible, and ſo it is infuſed for thirteene houres, and then I ſtraine it, and thus I prepare this ſirupe. At dinner and ſupper, I giue onely the ſecond decoction of *ſalſa*. The reaſon why I thus admixe them, is becauſe the decoction of *ſalſa* doth little offend the ſtomach, but ſometime it moueth the belly, therefore I mixe *guaicum* therewith. An other cauſe why I mixe them, is to eradicate the diſeaſe, wherefore *ſalſa* is needefull. Thirdly, when I hath one that haue hadde this diſeaſe long time, I vſe both *guaicum* and *ſalſa*, yea and ſometime the rinde, but that I doe very ſeldome, and I vſe this decoction in all pointes as the other in quantity and time. And ſometimes if the patient be very full of vlcers, I vſe this decoction following: I take *guaicum*. ℥. vij. of *ſalſa*. ℥. iij. and infuſe them in fourteene pintes of warme water, foure and twenty houres, then boile them vntill there be left ſeuen pintes, and towardes the end of the boiling, adde to of licoriſe. ℥. j. raiſons of the ſunne, the ſtones picked out. ℥. ij. the rootes of *conſolida maior*. ℥. ij. ß. of the ſeedes of *Carduus benedictus*. ℥. ß. and when it is colde, ſtraine it. This decoction take for the firſt morning and euening. ℥. viij. at a time warme, and euery morning procure him to ſweat if it be poſſible. For the ſecond decoction, take that which was ſtrained, and adde thereto of freſhe *guaicum*. ℥ iij. of *ſalſa*. ℥. j. put of water ſixteene pintes, let it infuſe thirteene houres, and boile them to tenne pintes, and adde in the end

of

of the boyling barley. ℥. ij. licoriſe and raiſons of the ſunne, the ſtones taken out. ana. ℥. j. violet floures. ℥. ß. and then when it is cold, ſtraine it, and drinke of it at his meate, and at any other time of the day, remembring to purge the body once in foure daies, if there be neede. And let him take this decoction thirty daies, or fiue and twenty daies at the leaſt, as you ſee cauſe, and as the vlcers do heale, remembring to waſh or bath the places grieued, morning and euening with the firſt decoction warme.

CHAP. XXV.

Of other faculties or vertues which this ſalſa hath.

BVt you ſhall vnderſtand, that this *ſalſa* doeth not cure and put away this *Morbum Gallicum* onely, but the ſame is good for many other affectes, as in a catarhe, or diſtillation from the head, being ſharpe and ſalt, in cancres not vlcerate, and in tumors which are hard to be reſolued; and I haue found by mine owne experience, that it yeeldeth good effect in the cure of *ſcrophule*, commonly called the Kings euill. I miniſter it in this wiſe for the ſpace of forty daies, I take of the powder of *Salſa*, and the powder of *Ruſcus*, called of ſome *Bruſchus*, of both a like portion, and euery day I giue of this powder. ℥. j. with white wine, or ale as I ſee cauſe, and it commeth well to paſſe thereby, ſometimes purging the body as I ſee cauſe, and let the patient goe abroad at his pleaſure. I haue proued this powder in the tumour of the ſplene, but I adde thereto the iuſt quantity of *Tamariſcus* which maketh it the better.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of Suffumigations which ſome practitioners vſe.

THis diſeaſe ſomtime is cured of appractitioners by Suffumigation, otherwiſe called perfumes, which way of curing is not to be recommended amongeſt thoſe waies before named. The cauſe is this, often and many times fore inconueniences come thereuppon, and it cureth not with ſo ſmall daunger to the patient. Wherefore, I haue alwaies held it the beſt (as much as may be) to ſhunne this way of curing, for as much as in ſome it is extremely euill and dangerous, as in leane perſons, ſuch as haue a hoate and dry temperament, alſo in thoſe which haue ſtraightneſſe in the breaſt, either through obſtruction of the veſſels, or ſomwhat diſtilling from the head. Moreouer, it is pernicious vnto them which at any time haue ſpitted bloud: furthermore ſuch perſons as haue *peripneumonia*, if they vſe theſe ſuffumigatiõs, it coſts thẽ their liues. To be ſhort, all ſuch as are troubled with *diſentery*, or any other kinde of fluxe, ought to forbeare theſe Suffumigations: I my ſelfe neuer vſed them, but in one caſe or two at the moſt, and maruell ye not thereat, for I vtterly miſlike of them. But I will ſpeake a litle of Suffumigations, they haue in them theſe faculties & ſtrengths: Firſt they open al the cõduits of the body for their nature is ſuch, that immediately they pearce the body, in pearcing they alter it, they

mundifie or ſcoure the inward parts, and firſt the hart. And the braine it ſelfe is altered, for by the lungs it is communicated vnto the heart, by the noſe-thrils vnto the braine, as by the veines the ſame is alſo communicated vnto the liuer. And this appeareth by experience, for *ſuffimenta* alwaies looſen the belly, and bring excrements vnto the bowels, euen as a purgation, therefore it muſt needs be that they pearce or penitrate.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the manner of perfuming the whole body.

FIrſt there is none ſo ignorant, or fooliſh an Empericke, but he purgeth the body, before the vſe of thoſe Suffumigations, by one, two, or three purgations with reſpect of the humour abounding, the habite of the body, and the ſickeneſſe. And if the diſeaſe be confirmed and inueterate, the purgations ought to be ſtrong, which rules of euacuation you may finde before in their conueniẽt place, where we treated of purging the body both in the beginning and the ending. And firſt to begin this worke with him, euen about that houre that the ſunne riſeth, they giue the patient a couple of rere egs, and ſtraight after he hath eaten them, a ſoppe of bread infuſed in Malmeſey, then they let him drinke a little quantity. Laſtly after all theſe, they let him take. ℥. j. of *ſaccharum roſ.* and lie ſtill after that a quarter of an houre. In the meane time they prepare a little chamber which they make very hote, and therein they make a pauilion or tent, which is made of a thicke and cloſe cloth, within the which they ſet a pot full of burning coales, and the patient him ſelfe alſo ſiteth naked vnder this tent on a little ſeat for the purpoſe. And they haue their things ready at hand, which by litle and litle they ſtrow vppon the coales, and the ſmoke thereof being cloſely kept in, flieth about the tent, drying and drawing out of his body. And when that which they haue already caſt vppon the coales faileth, and is gone, the ſtrow on more, and that diuerſe times, and there they let the patient continue if hee can the ſpace of a whole houre, or halfe an houre as he can abide it. But let them alwaies take heed, that ſo long as he is vnder the pauilion, that they talke with him and aske of him how he fareth, for ſomtime they ſwound and fall downe within the tent, which is very daungerous, and if he aunſwereth very faintly, take him out in all the haſt you can, then wrappe him vp in a warme linnen ſheete, and lay him a bed, and there couering him with clothes, let him continue there two houres ſpace. And this is the way which they vſe or ought to vſe: they vſe to perfume them three daies together, and reſt one day, and then other three daies, and ſo to nine daies. Sometime we vſe this ſuffumigation moe daies, euen as the diſeaſe requireth, for if we ſee that the palate of the mouth is exlcerated or ſore in the third day, and that the matter floweth out, forthwith we leaue off, or if a laxe commeth vpon the patient, we ceaſe: yea though it be in the third, fourth, fifth, or ſixth day. If once in the day we vſe ſuffumigation ſtill, and that is in the morning, afterward dry vp the ſweat, and let him eate his meat & drinke thinne ale. In all other things, let his diet be at large and at his pleaſure to his beſt liking.

A good ſigne to know the time to leaue off.

Diet.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Symptomata which sometime happeneth in this way of curing.

THis way of curing by Suffumigations is endangered to certaine euill *symptomata*, as sometime laxe of the belly, sometime corruption of the roofe of the mouth, somtime loosenes and shaking of the teeth. All which are wont to follow the annointing with Quicke siluer, and where we shall come to treat of that way of curing, we shall speake our mind concerning these *symptomata*.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmelesse.

I Told you before that there is two sorts of Suffumigations, one sort is compounded and made of things gentle and benigne, another sort is made of things venimous and maligne. First, let vs speake of those which containe a matter benigne and voide of malice, amongst which this is: (the first forme of one which is mighty indeed of operation, but yet of the gentler sort) ℞. *Thuris masculi, aloes, myrrhæ.* ana. ℥. j. *cinamomi, storacis siccæ, spicanardi, moschatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *ambræ vel charabæ.* ℥. j. *moschi* gra. ij. 1 These are mixed together and lightly beaten vnto powder, and with a litle spoone it is strewed vpon hote burning coales. Another is described thus. *Santal alborum, rubrorum & citrinorum.* ana. ℥ j. *nucis moschatæ, macis, squinanthi, cariophillorum, camphoræ, assari.* ana. ℥. ß. *corticum mali apioli, siccatorum ambræ.* ana ℥. ß. 2 They are mixed and beaten into powder, and with *terebinthine* made into a past, which past is afterward deuided into round bals, which by litle and litle are laid vppon the fiery coales. The third composition being yet more strong is this. ℞. *storacis siccæ, benzoni, ligni aloes, gallæ moschatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *gummi hedere.* ℥. j *ladani.* ℈. ij. *squinanthi, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. ß. *albi anime, carabe.* ana. ℥ ß. *misce.* 3 These are beaten, & with *storax liquida* made into a past, which past also is made into litle round bals, *vt supra.*

CHAP. XXX.

Of maligne Suffumigations.

Morbus Gallicus is ouercome by Suffumigations, which pearcing through the whole body, do dry the braine, the heart, the liuer, and the whole habite: these be of two sorts. The one sort particular, the other commō. Of which some be light and easie, some strong and vehement, some of a matter more benigne, some of a matter more maligne. Which they bee that consiste of a benigne matter, we haue declared in the former chap; now we haue to speake of the composition of those which doe consist of a matter maligne. Of this sort I will set downe three in number which are nowe in vse, and the principall thinges in them be *cinaberis artificialis, sandaracha græcorum*, and *auripigmentum*; and these be those, which (for as much as they be poisons) of there owne nature, doe inspire a certaine venimous vapour into the body. But to bee briefe, you shall vnderstand that the whole effecte consisteth in *hydrargyro*, or in some other matter of like nature vnto it, as is *Arsenicum, sandaracha*, and *cinaberis artificialis*, or *precipitatum*. These things be mixed with

aromatickes to ſtrengthen the inward parts, for otherwiſe they ſhould be much offended by them and hurt; and the chiefe of theſe *aromaticke* things, be *Reſine*
1 and diuerſe kinds of gummes. The firſt forme of this ſort is this: ℞. *cinaberis*, ℥. iij. *myrrhæ thuris maſtiches*. ana. ℥. j. *aloes hepaticæ, ſandaracha arabum, ſtiracis ſiccæ belzuini*. ana. ℥. iij. Theſe be beaten groſly, and thereof is made a powder, which
2 is ſprinckled vpon the fiery coles. The ſecond forme is this. ℞. *cinaberis*. ℥. iij. *ſandaracha græcorum*. ℥. j. ß. *myrrhæ, thuris lignialos, cadani ammoniaci*. ana. ℥. j. Theſe are beaten in groſſe wiſe, and mixed with *terebinthine*, and thereof are made
3 ſmall bals to caſt vppon the burning coales. The third forme of maligne Suffumigations is this. ℞. *cinaberis*. ℥. iij. *Auripigmenti, ſandaracha grecorum*. ana. ℥. ß. *precipitati*. ℥. iij. *thuris, aloes hepaticæ, maſtiches, myrræ, electæ, belzoni, ſtoraici ſiccæ, cadani, ammoniaci*. ana. ℥. ß. *miſcentur*. Of theſe make a groſſe powder which is ſtrewed vppon the burning coales. And theſe be the deſcriptions of thoſe Suffumigations, which haue a venemous faculty, and do expell by the malignity of their nature.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the cure by annointing with Quicke ſiluer.

THe firſt way that experience found out to heale this diſeaſe in Italy, was by *argentum viuum*. For when this diſeaſe began to ſpread in that country, Chyrurgians attempting all things for the cure thereof, becauſe they had read that Quick ſiluer ſhould be of great vertue againſt an old rebellious ſcab (and at the firſt comming in of this diſeaſe, it had alwaies vlcers ioyned therewith, they thought good to try that *Argentum viuum*, and that with good ſucceſſe, for ſome thereby gathered great riches. Many fell into *Maraſmus* by this annointing, many loſt their teeth after it: ſome had the palate of their mouth rotted away, ſome had the bones of their head eaten, which ſo doth continue ſtil, one hath his mouth in like ſort, another his face ſet awry thereby. For if it helaeth not, it driueth the hote channell of vicious humours into the head. I haue taken in hand ſome, who haue bene annointed with this ointment three yeares before, and when they haue had ſores (called *gumata*) vppon their skinnes, whereby the bones haue bin diſcouered, I haue ſeene the *Argentum viuum* gathered within the place: for this cauſe I commend not this medicine. I haue vſed it ſometime when I could not attaine my purpoſe, by the ſaid waies of curing called *Regiæ*. I ſaw once a young ſtripling that had *Morbum Gallicum*, vpon whom all the aforeſayd *Regiæ curationes* had bene practiſed, and hee neuer the better therefore, yet he afterwardes was cured by the waies of annointing. Wherefore in ſuch as haue rebellious affects, and are to be deſpaired of, I vſe it, when I haue proued all waies, and all ſorts of medicines before. And when I vſe it, I obſerue this order. Firſt to purge the humour that doeth abound, and if the humours be mixt then all the body, I giue the *decoctum guaici*, by the ſpace of ten or twelue daies, to ſtrengthē the inward parts, as the head, braine, and liuer, and then the venemous medicine hurteth not ſo much. And after I haue thus prepared my patients, I annoint them in this ſort. Firſt three daies if the *ſymptomates* doe not appeare, then to foure, fiue, ſixe, yea ten daies, till I ſee the *ſymptomates* doe appeare, then I annoint no more. Of theſe *ſymptomata*, ſome

Harmes following the vſe thereof.

ſome happen commonly very much, other ſome very little, it commonly happeneth that after annointing, the patients haue their palate ſwelled, and raw, their tongue growen bigger, ſo that ſometime they can neither ſpeake nor ſwallow downe any meate: their tongue is exceeding ſore, by reaſon of great inflammation, and ſuch abundance of corrupt and ſtinking ſpittle flowing vppon it, all their teeth are looſe in their head, and doe ſhake, ſometime they looſe ſome of them. Finally, ſuch a quantity of corrupt matter, is gathered and brought to the mouth, that ſometime the teeth are quite couered therewith. This medicine of his owne nature flieth altogether to the mouth, and there ſeeketh to breake forth. In this caſe you ought to appoint the patient a diet of things eaſie to be digeſted, as ſome *cullaze* of delicate fleſh. Let the drink which he drinketh be pleaſaunt, and if hee hath vſed to drinke wine let him haue it, and let his diet be large enough of broth, and good ſtore of fine bread in it, and ſo nouriſh him largely and plentifully, for the euacuation which hee ſuſtaineth is great, ſo that I haue bene compelled to cut the *cephalica* veine for the ſwelling of the tongue. *Diet.*

CHAP. XXXII.

To correct the ſymptomata which happeneth in the mouth in this way of curing.

AND amongeſt other things this alſo is to be obſerued as much as is poſſible, to draw out the *Hydragiron* which lieth ſoaked in the palate, and the teeth. The way to doe it is this: Let the patient hold and keepe in his mouth, a ring of fine gold, and draw it forth twiſe or thriſe, and if it chaunce to looke white, lay it on the coales and it will come to his colour as before, and then put it in, and ſo keepe it at his pleaſure. But if the patient haue great paine, we vſe to waſhe his mouth with milke. If the paine continue, I vſe barley water and ſirupe *myrtillis*, or *Diamoron*, or *Memphar*, and ſometime wee vſe *aqua ſolani*, or plantaine. Sometime wee vſe of repercuſſiue iuices, as *ſuccus foliorum, rubi, foliorum plantaginis*, ſome of the iuice of vine leaues. Sometime we vſe barley water, with *mel.roſ.* ſirupe *myrti diamoron ſimplex*, to ſcoure with all the mouth. Another *ſymptoma* yet followeth vppon this way of curing, and that is, immoderate laxe of the belly, for ſomtime the patient voideth by the ſiege pure bloud, or ſtrings of bloud, as we ſee in *dyſenteria*. In this caſe (if the patient his ſtrength may well ſuſtaine it) let vs not ſtay the fluxe but moderate it, and cauſe that the excoriation of the bowels do not thereby encreaſe. Firſt by miniſtring cliſters of milke, wherein haue bene quenched red hote gaddes of ſteele, or little blacke flint ſtones, or by the iniection of the iuice of *pryſan*, pure milke. Sometime (the patient being weake) we come to the vſe of aſtringent things, as *oleum myrtinum*, or *oleum empliatinum in cliſteris*, alſo the iuice of plantaine, or of the hip brier. Sometime we put in our cliſters alſo *bolus armenus*, or *lapis hematitis*. Moreouer, we vſe aſtringent waters, ſometime we open a veine, ſomtime we vſe ligatures and other means, or waies of reuulſion: now if none of theſe *ſymptomata* ſhall come vppon them, we nouriſh them with good meats (as is ſaid) and ſo end the cure.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diuerſe compoſitions of ointments which be vſed in this way of curing.

THere be diuerſe kindes of vnguents, I will ſet forth but two of them. ℞. 1
oleum petrolium. ℥. ß. *olei lumbricorum, olei ſpicanardi, olei tartari albi, olei turpentini.* ana. ℥. j. *vnguentum diaſthæ, vngu. mercurian, axungia toxſion, ſtorax liquide, turpentini* an. ℥. ij. *axungia porcine.* ℔. ß. *armoniace, opoponacis, bdelij, elemnij, ladani, ſtyracis, calaminthæ, belzoni* ana. ℥. j. *Tartari albi combuſtæ, aluminis combuſtæ.* an. ℥. iiij. *vitrioli romani combuſtæ.* ℥. j. quicke ſiluer. ℔. j. *minium.* ℥. ß. mixe all, and beate them in a morter 2. hours at the leaſt, if it be three it is the better. without ceaſing. ℞. *pinguedinis gallinæ, axungiæ porcinæ, axungiæ vrſinæ.* ana. ℥. iiij. *olei liliorum albi, olei laurini.* ana. ℥ ij quicke ſiluer. ℥. viij. In this compoſition, the fats are not melted at the fire, but the ſilmes cleane taken out, they are beaten in a morter very diligently, then by little and little the quicke ſiluer is put into the morter, & the medicine is wrought in the morter, by the ſpace of two or three houres at the leaſt. Afterward put in theſe pouders; *Thuris, maſtiches, myrrhæ, ammoniaci, ſtyracis, pulueris ſaluiæ, pulueris ſtæchados, lythargirij, ceruſſæ.* ana. ℥. ß. Of theſe is made a very fine powder, which by little and little is put into the morter, continually beating till all be well incorporated. Thus theſe two ointments be made, the firſt is ſtrongeſt and beſt. If there be many vlcers, and at the fourth or fifth annointing, commonly the *ſymptomata* will appeare, they vſe no more annointing. 2

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Precipitatum giuen by the mouth.

FVrthermore you ſhall vnderſtand, that ſome practitioners vſe to cure this diſeaſe, not onely by annointing (whereof we haue ſpoken before) but by giuing *precipitatum* by the mouth. Some giue the common *precipitatum* ſo prepared: It is giuen in waight. *gra.* ſeuen or tenne at the vttermoſt: they mixe this quantity with medicine to alter the colour that it may not be knowen. Some mixe it with *aloes, myrrhæ, maſtiches.* gr. iij. Some mixe it with conſerues of roſes, ſome with *Mithridatum*, and ſuch like. But there is a more ſafe curing then this by *Turbith mineralis*, which the *Chymiſtu* haue inuented in ſtead of *precipitatum*, which I better allow of, and it is very daungerous for the better ſort of men: of the which I minde to ſpeake hereafter as followeth. Firſt, the vſe of *Turbith mineralis* is betwixt graines. xviij. and xx. graines, or xxv. graines at the moſt, after the ſtrength of the patient; they vſe it in this manner. Firſt they take the doſe as they themſelues beſt like, and mixe it with *Mithridatum*, one part or two as they will, ſome mixe it with conſerue of roſes, ſo that there be not in all paſt ℥. j. or ℥. j ß. at the moſt. They make it into a ball: ſome make three or foure pils and gild them, other ſome roule it in powder of *Diambre* or ſuch like. The patientes body muſt be prepared by ſome caſie meane, and eate a light ſupper: let the patient receiue it early in the morning, after he hath receiued it, let him lie in his warme bed an houre at the leaſt, and ſleepe after it, if it be poſſible,

Doſis.

The doſis of Turbith mineralis.

possible: then let him arise and apparell him selfe warme, and sit by the fire. Let his chamber be verie warme, so that he may sweate temperately. Within foure houres after he hath receiued the sayd bole, cause him to eate of some warme broth, and let him not come out of his chamber till he be throughly whole or cured. Let his diet be verie good warme meate. Two mornings next following giue him a litle *Mithridatum* in clarified Mace ale, and cause him to sweate an houre or two in his bed. The third morning next following, giue him the Turbith as before, and let him keepe the same order aforesayd; and if his mouth growe not sore in the meane time, giue it him the third time in the third morning next following the second time; doe so till his mouth be sore, then seeke in the former chapters to heale his mouth, as is taught there. Thus haue you all the wayes and meanes to helpe this pernitious griefe.

Libri Sexti finis.

THE VIII. BOOKE TEACHETH THE FORME AND RVLE OF MAKING REMEDIES AND MEDICINES WHICH OVR PHISITIONS DO commonly vse at this day, and to knowe after what sort their proportion and quantitie is distributed and noted, with the names of ech medicine.

CHAP. I.

Of Suppositaries.

A Suppositarie is a remedie, whole, long, and round, which is put into the fundament, that it may auoyd the pricking, and moue & prouoke the vertue expulsiue to the auoiding of the excrements compost, or ordure. We do vse Suppositaries especially for three causes: the first is for bringing out of ordure, which when it lyeth in the right bowell, it requireth no clyster. The second is, when one or two clysters haue bene put into the bodie, and do not come out againe at the fundament, as it doth chaunce in passions of the cholicke, then it is verie perillous to put in other clysters. The third cause is, when the sicke person is so weake that he may better suffer a suppositarie then a clyster. A Suppositarie is made of honie that is boyled so long, till it doth waxe thicke and hard; oftentimes common salt is mixed with the honie: but if you will make it more sharpe and quicke, take salt gemme, the doung of a mouse, agaricke, or else *hiera simplex*. ℞. a Suppositarie made of honie, which if you thinke so weake that it will not moue the compost or ordure, adde too these following. ℞. to make a common Suppositarie of sharpe honie, *sal armoniac*. ʒ. ß. or of salt gemme. ϑ. ß. or of mouse doung. ϑ. ß. or ϑ. 1. or of *hiera simplex*. ʒ. ß. Also make suppositaries of white sope, tallow of beasts, fat of bacon, candles, the stalkes of beets or mercurie, or their rootes annointed with oyle or honie, & strewed with powder of salt specially for children & sucking babes, for whom one corne of salt put in is sufficient. ℞. time, or *cyclaminum*, or wormewood, or sothernwood, stamped in a morter. ʒ. j. or ß. of boyled honie so much as sufficeth, and make a suppositarie. Suppositaries are good against the Palsey made of pellitory, pepper, napy, (that is, a kind of rapes called a nauew) centorie, bitumen (that is, a kinde of lime) the root of *panax*, hysope, *galbanum*, mixed with drie rosin, or pitch & wax. Let a suppositarie be round, & 6. 7. or 8. fingers in length. We do vse no suppositaries to thē ẅ haue the hemorhoids, or any other swellings in the fundamēt.

A suppositarie to bring foorth the ordure.

A suppositarie against the wormes called Lumbrici.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of making Nodulus.

NODVLI be those which are called of *Aetius* in Greeke [illegible], they are good for those which haue clefts and swellings in the fundament. These do auoyd and take away the hardnesse of suppositaries, because sometime we are compelled to vse flockes in their steds: their matter is the same that suppositaries be. ℞. flockes mingled or beaten with honie, and put into the tuell; and truly that *Nodulus* is best and sweetest which is made of salt and the white of an egge in cloth or wooll, made in the forme of a beane, and put into the tuell with a thread hanged at the end, that it may be drawne out againe.

CHAP. III.

Of making Pessaries.

A Pessarie is a medicine which is made of soft wooll, or such like thing, and it is put into the priuities of women. The figure or shape of it is like a suppositarie, but that it is longer & thicker, because it must be put into the wombe. It is made of waxe, or of cloth or cotton, or of lint first dipped and wet in ointment, or in a medicine meete and conuenient for the cure. Afterward winde them in silke, and hang a thread thereon, that it may be drawne out the more easily. It is put into the tuell & into the wombe to cease the inflammations & vlcers of them both. Priuatly it is put into the womb to prouoke the menstruis & the secūdine, or to stop immoderat flux of mēstruis, or to mollifie the hardnesse of the wombe, or to cure other diseases of the wombe. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *vnguentum rosatum*, and put it into the place. To this sometime is added *opium*, that is, where the inflammation causeth great paine. *Opium* by his coldnesse maketh astonied, therefore his quantitie ought to be small, as from halfe a scruple to a scruple, and let it be holden a litle time, least through his coldnesse the partes which are sinewie be hurt. It therefore may be holden halfe an houre. ℞. a pessarie dipped and wet in *vnguentum pompholygos*, put it into the tuell or into the matrice that is grieued. Pessaries to bring forth menstruis are made otherwise. The medicines are taken in silke cloth, that is as thinne as sindall, and let the forme and fashion be thicker, which may bring out with his power, as thus. ℞. *hierapicra composita*. ℥. j. of *euphorbium*, and the apple of *coloquintida*. ana. ℈. ß. mixe them and make a pessarie. Annoint it with *oleum nardinum*, or with the iuyce of herbes that prouoke menstruis. Such pessaries be made oftentimes of brayed herbes prouoking menstruis, as, ℞. mercurie, neppe, or mugwort, or sothernwood, *M*. ß. bray them, and roule them in silke, and make a pessarie. If the menstruis haue endured with swelling and paine, first make a bath, for that doth mollifie and moist, the paunch ought first to be emptied, and the bladder to be vnloden, because the matrice is in the middest betweene them: for these being filled, and pressing the matrice, the menstruis for ouer much straightnesse, may be retained, and made slowe in comming out. If immoderate menstruis doe flowe, doe thus: ℞. a pessarie wet in *vnguentum comitissæ*, and put it into the matrice; or thus. ℞. of

To cease inflammation.

To drie vlcers.

To bring forth menstruis.

To mollifie the hardneſſe of the wombe. plantaine or knotgraſſe, or brier, of mirtle, or other that can ſtop menſtruis. M. ß. bray them, and roll them in ſilke, and make a peſſarie. Peſſaries mollifying may be made of the marrow of a calfe, and a hart, of roſin, terebinthine, fatneſſe of a gooſe, or porke, and of gumme armoniacke diſſolued in water.

CHAP. IIII.

Of Clyſters or Enema.

A Clyſter or *Enema*, is a kind of medicine the which is caſt and put into the bowels by the fundament, liquid and thinne, and it is profitable for eight things. 1. To mollifie the wombe reſtrained with hardneſſe. 2. To prouoke the violence deteſtable and aſtonied. 3. To auoyd any kinde of humours. 4. To put away ventoſities. 5. To ceaſe dolours and paines. 6. To bind and reſtraine the bellie. 7. To make cleane vlcers of the guttes or bowels. 8. To make ſound the ſame. There may be alſo added to alter or chaunge, as here followeth. ℞. of lettuce, ſcarioll, *roſtrum porcinum*, leaues of ſallow. ana. *M.* j. floures of violets, and nenuphar, of each a little handfull: make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtrayning, let one ounce of *Caſia fiſtula* bee diſſolued, oyle of violettes, and of nenuphar, ana. ℥. j. ß. camphire, ϑ. j. and make a clyſter. ℞. the foure kindes of remollitiues, or mollificatiues, pellitorie of the wall. ana. *M.* ß. the rootes of the mallowes called *althea*, and white lillies. ana. ℥. j. ſeede of flaxe, fenugreeke, and aniſe. ana. ℥. ß. of fat figges. iiij. make a decoction of ℔. j. in weight. In the ſtraining thereof diſſolue therein of *Caſia fiſtula*, *mel violatum*, and freſh butter. ana. ℥ j. oyle of violets. ℥. iij. and make a clyſter. If you will make a clyſter mollificatiue lacking the things aforeſayd, doe thus. ℞. of oyle made warme. ℔. j and make thereof a clyſter, or thus. ℞. oyle and freſh butter. ana. ℔. ß. and make a clyſter. ℞. the foure remollitiues. ana. *M.* j. ſeede of *Carthamum* ℥. j. of aniſe, fenell, and *careum*. ana. ʒ. iij. and make a decoction of ℔. j. and in the ſtraining diſſolue *hiera ſimplex*, or *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium de ſucco*, or *electuarium indi maioris*. ℥. ß. of clarified honie, or iuyce of ſquill. ℥. j. or common ſalt. ʒ. ij. or ſalt gemme. ϑ. j. or ʒ. ß. Manie do ad to cliſters ℥. j. of the iuyce of beetes, which doe moue and grieue the belly, or iuyce of beetes and colewortes. ana. ℥. ß. of common ſalt. ʒ. ij. or ʒ. j. which bite and gnaw the bellie, or leſſe, but the iuſt weight muſt be as you coniecture to be eaſie or hard for the ſicke. Alſo ſuch a clyſter expulſing the deteſtable facultie or matter, may verie well be made onely of honie, or hony with iuyce of *ſquilla*, or other things decoct. And if that the vertue expulſiue be aſtonied & dull through the hardneſſe of the ordure, then make a clyſter partly of mollificatiues, & partly of expulſiues aforſaid. Cliſters which auoid humors are made ſo, that they varie according as the humours differ. For when the humour is groſſe and cold, euill diſpoſing the bowels, let it be made thus: ℞. the foure remollitiues. ana. *M.* j. cammomil, the tops of dill, origan, calamint, ſothernwood. ana. *M.* ß. aniſe, *careum*, comin, ameos, ſeſeleos. ana. ℥ ß. berries of lawrell, ſeed of rewe. ana. ʒ. ij. make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *catholicon*, and *diaphenicon*. ana. ℥. ß. or *diaphenicon*, or *benedicta*. ʒ. vi. or of both. ℥. ß. of red ſugar, and *mel anthor*. ana. ʒ. iij. or ℥. ß. oyle of dill and cam-

A Clyſter mollificatiue.

A Clyſter prouoking & making voyde the violence aſtonied.

A clyſter auoyding humours.

cammomill.ana.quar. ß. or oyle of rewe. ʒ. j. oyle of dill. ʒ. ij. or oyle of lillies ʒ ij. make a cliſter. If ventoſitie be preſent, adde calmatiues, if paine be preſent, take a medicine releaſing griefe by prouoking ſleepe, as hereafter ſhall appeare by examples. If a cholericke & gnawing humor muſt be brought out with a cliſter, then let the cliſter be made of ſuch things as will auoyd that humour, and mixe it partly with ſuch helpes as doe ceaſe inflammation, as thus. ℞. mallowes, biſmallowes, violets, pellitorie of the wall, endiue, ſuccorie, lettuce, purſlaine. ana. M j. and if there be ſo much neede of coldneſſe, take the foure great cold ſeeds bruſed. ana. ʒ. iij. or ʒ. ß. of whole barley. p. j. make a decoction of one pound. In the ſtraining diſſolue *caſia fiſtula* and common ſugar. ana. ʒ. j. the white of one egge or two, oyle of roſes, or of violets, or common oile quar. j. make a cliſter. If ſuch a paſſion cometh of a melancholicke humour, make it thus. ℞. the foure mollificatiues, the leaues of bugloſſe and borage, the tops of dill, *lupuli*, and fumitorie. ana. M. j. melilot and cammomill. ana. M. j. ſeede of *charthamum*, and polipodie of the oke. ana. ʒ. j. anniſe, and fennell. ana. ʒ. ß. make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *hiera ruffi*, which is not in vſe, or *confectio hamech*. ʒ. ß. or *catholicon*. ʒ j. red ſugar, or *mel roſarum*, or violets. ʒ j. oile of dill, lillies, and violets. ana. ʒ. j. make a cliſter. ℞. mallowes, biſmallowes, pellitorie of the wall, organie, calamint, cammomill, the tops of dill. ana. M. j. anniſe, *careum*, comin and fennell. ana. ʒ. ß. or ʒ. vj. of lawrell berries. ʒ. iij. or ʒ. ß. ſeede of rewe. ʒ. ij. or iij. and make a decoction. In the ſtraining diſſolue *benedicta*, or *diaphenicon*, or *electuarium indi maioris* which we do not vſe here. ʒ. ß. confection of lawrell berries. ʒ. iij. or ʒ. ß. red ſugar. ʒ. j. oile of dill, cammomill and rewe. ana. ʒ. j make a cliſter. Into theſe cliſters which put away ventoſities, oile of nuts is wholeſome to put in, and alſo (as Galen ſaith) *vinum maluaticum cretenſe* may well be mixed with ſuch a cliſter as is aforeſaid. The ſignes of ventoſities and winde contained in the bowels, be often farting and noiſe in the guttes, becauſe it chaunceth as often as burbles are broken in the bowels. Bowels wherein be burbles (as Galene teacheth *Particula 2. Aphoriſm. ſtrangulati nondũ mortui &c.*) be cauſed of aire ſhut and encloſed with the humour. Cliſters to ceaſe paines are made many wayes, for if the cauſe be a hote gnawing humour, the example is ſhewed afore by cold things, where he intreateth of a cliſter to auoyde humours; if the paine be of a cold cauſe, take the ſame that is giuen againſt ventoſitie laſt before; if the paine doe come of moe cauſes, make a cliſter of manie of thoſe things, which are meete for the cauſes: and when the cauſe of the paine is not knowne, make it thus; ℞. floures of cammomill, melilot, the toppes of dill, ana. pug. ij. make a decoction in milke. In the ſtraining diſſolue therein white ſugar, becauſe the red is byting and pricking. ʒ. j. ß. whites of egges. ij. oyle of dill and cammomill. ana. quar ß. and make a cliſter. Or thus, ℞. oyle of cammomill, dill and violets. ana. ʒ. iij. caſt it in with a cliſter, and when we want ſuch oyle, we make it of quar. iij. or ℔. j. of oyle oliue. ℞. milke ſodden quar. iij. or ℔. j. *amylum ſiue amydum*, halfe a dramme, or a dramme at the moſt, gumme arabibique, or Tragacanth, or both, a litle burnt. ana. halfe a dramme, or a dramme, or two drammes, bole armoniacke, and *Sanguis draconis*. ana. ʒ. ij. oyle of roſes and cammomill ana. one ounce and a halfe: make

A cliſter to put & driue away ventoſities.

A cliſter to ceaſe paines.

A cliſter reſtraining.

A clyſter profitable againſt a hote humour gnawing in the bowels.

a clyſter. ℞. the iuyces of plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, (that is) a kinde of plantaine, knotgraſſe and purſlaine: let theſe iuyces be cleanſed either by ſeething or reſidence, take of all theſe, or of one of theſe as much as ſufficeth for a clyſter, adding of the powder aforeſaid, and with thoſe oyles make a clyſter. Note, that when there is need, then you may make clyſters of thoſe herbes ſodden, or of the waters diſtilled out of them, adding roſe water, as: ℞. the water of *Arnogloſſa*, of plantaine, of roſes, of purſlaine, of knotgraſſe, as much as ſufficeth, and diſſolue ſome of the aforeſaid things therein. It is to be noted that ſometime there are put into the afore ſayed decoctions, ſeedes and fruites that be ſtypticke to make hard, and to binde, ſo that they lacke ſharpneſſe, becauſe elſe they would pricke, prouoke and expulſe, therefore we can mixe together the ſeedes of mirte, ſorrell, of purſlaine, plantaine, cypreſſe, *cauda equina*, horſetaile, and ſuch like. Moreouer, note, that oile muſt neuer be put into clyſters, if the bowels be vlcerate as they be in *Dyſenteria*, (which is a fluxe in the bodie) yet many do neglect that, not knowing that oyle is an enemie to vlcers, (as *Galen* intreateth *tertio & quarto Methodi.*) Truely wine is a ſpeciall friend,

A clyſter to ſcoure and cleanſe vlcers in the guttes.

the creame or curde of a hare or of a goate, in weight ℥. iij. *Sorbus*, proynes, medlars, quinces ana. ℥.ij. more or leſſe do reſtraine and binde. ℞. of whole barley p. ij of red roſes and cammomill, and of plantaine if paine be preſent, ana.p. j. make a decoction. In the ſtrayning diſſolue therein *Mel roſatum*. ℥.j. the white of one egge or two, make a clyſter. Such a clyſter is to be giuen alwayes befor clyſters reſtrayning, binding and conſolidating, by meanes wherof the thing is made prompt and eaſie. A clyſter conſolidating is made when the filthineſſe of the bowels is not purged and tryed out, becauſe that is deadly: and therefore there needeth no clyſter, but that prognoſtication is ſufficient. ℞. of the iuyce of plantaine, *Arnogloſſa*, and purſlaine. ana. ounces three of bole armoniacke, *Sanguis Draconis*, and *Amylum*. ana. dramme one and a halfe: or the tallow of a male or female Goate one dramme or one ounce and a halfe, and make a clyſter. And becauſe goates tallow cannot well diſſolue, but almoſt alwayes it congealeth and hardeneth together in the bowelles of the ſick. Therefore it may be and ought to be diſſolued with a litle oyle of roſes, and then it need not be feared for vlcers. Alſo ointments conſolidating (as is *vnguentum album*) ſometime are made liquid and mixed, and ſpecially, when the vlcers be nigh, or in the great guttes. Sometime in the ſteade of iuyces may clyſters be made of milke verie well for his whey portion, which doth reſtraine and conſolidate. Oftentimes both in theſe and in reſtrayning clyſters, the whites of egges hard ſodden are diſſolued. And thus finiſheth the making and vſe of clyſters or Enema.

A clyſter conſolidating (that is) making ſoūd of vlcers.

CHAP. V.

Of making Syrupes.

A Syrupe is of medicines, a iuyce with ſugar or honie molten therein, decoct and boyled vnto the meaſure of that ſugar. Practitioners do put a double

double vnderſtanding in ſirupes, (that is) *ſimplex*, which is called vſuall, and *compoſitum*, which is called magiſtrall. Simples or vſuals be theſe, ſyrupes of violets, of roſes, of endiue, of nenuphar, of mayden haire, of wormewood, of mynts, *Oximel ſquilliticum*, ſyrupe of eupatorie, of *Epithimum*, and of *byzantijs*. They are called ſimples, as well becauſe they conſiſt in one ſimple medicine, as alſo becauſe they are ordained for one ſickneſſe and one vſe. *Syrupus compoſitus* which is called magiſtrall, is compounded of diuerſe medicines, being good for ſundrie diſeaſes, as in example: if any man compound together ſyrupe of wormwood and ſtæchados being taken in euen portion or quantitie, there would come thereof a ſirupe good for the ſtomach, becauſe of the wormwood, and good for the head becauſe of the ſtæchados. A Syrupe is good and profitable to digeſt humours before a purgation, that they may the eaſier and better obey the purgation. Therefore they are vſed of many Phiſitions to be giuen before medicines, although we haue not read that old practitioners did obſerue it, but they did commit the digeſtion of humours wholly to nature. Looke the comment. *Aphoriſm. 9. Lib. 2.* when anie man will purge the bodie it behoueth to make it flowing. Truely *Hyppocrates* would do thus, ſaying, that the concoct and digeſt matter ought to be healed & moued, and not the crude and raw matter. And *Galen ad Glauconem libro primo*, ſpeaking of the cure of *Tertiana Notha*, would not haue wormewood to be giuen till the ſeuenth day. Therefore it doth appeare for a truth, that ſyrupes ought rather to be giuen for the humours lett after a purgation, then for their digeſtion and coction. But many do obſerue and vſe, that humours being groſſe and clammie, and viſcous, may by ſyrupes that do attenuate, cut, and deuide, be preparate and made eaſie to auoyding and purging, they call this digeſting of humors. Cold and cleauing humours are preparate with ſyrupes that be hote, cutting and ſcouring, as to digeſt rheumie matter, ſuch as is a feuer Quotidian, and to prepare it to the purging. ℞. the fiue rootes apperitiue, made cleane and tempered in vineger foure houres .ana. ℥.ß. or ℥.iij. or the ryndes of the fiue roots, origan, calamynt, hyſope, betonie, and germander .ana. *M.* ß. of anniſe and fennell. ana. ℥. ß. of rayſons the ſtones pulled out, ℥.iij. both the ſtæchados. ana. p.j. make a decoction. In the ſtrayning, diſſolue of good honie quartes. iij. of white ſugar. ℥.iiij. make a ſyrupe perfectly ſodden. Miniſter three ſpoonfull with double as much of water of liquorice, or with ptyſan, or with water of rayſins or anniſe. Humours that be moueable and thin, muſt be preparate to the auoyding and purging by ſyrupes that do make thicke and let the mouing, which humours if they be caried to the wayes of expulſion, or be kept & contained in the wayes and conduites by which an apt and readie expulſion may be made of them, then they may be auoided without any preparatiue. But if thoſe humours be reſtrained and kept out of the places aforeſayed, then they ſhall be rectified and remedied with colde ſyrupes, the making whereof doth followe.

A ſyrupe digeſting of rheumy matter.

A ſyrupe againſt thinne and moueable humours.

℞. ſyrupes of purcelaine, ſorrell, endiue, nenupharis, of rybes, of barberies, of *agreſta*, of quinces, of roſes, take of one of theſe or mo. ℥.vj. miniſter it with double as much of well water ſodden: there may alſo conueniently be made a iulep in this wi e. ℞. ſyrupes of roſes, purſlaine and ſorrell. ana. ℥ j. ß. or

A ſyrupe to make humors groſſe and thicke.

℥.ij. water of roſes, *Arnogloſſa*, ſuccorie or endiue, or purſlaine, or ſorrell ana. ℥.ij. water ſodden or burnt, ſpecially if fluxe of the bellie be preſent. ℥.vj. make a iulep clarified, and aromatized with ℥.ij. of cinamon elect. Furthermore if thoſe humeurs do not make and cauſe fluxe of the bellie, but being inflamed do begin a feauer, then neither ſyrupes ſtipticke nor waters are to be vſed, but rather cold ſyrupes lacking ſtipticitie, as be ſyrupes of endiue, purlaine, violets, of *nymphea* called water lillies, of maidenhaire. But if we do ſuppoſe that there ought to be a greater extinguiſhing and quenching, that the rotten matter may be driuen out the more eaſily, we do vſe colde ſharpe ſyrupes, as be *Syrupus acetoſus ſimplex*, which is put in both cauſes, as well hote as cold. Alſo *oxiſaccharum ſimplex*, and *Syrupus de acetoſitate citri*, and of lymons, which if the fluxe *diarrhœa* be preſent, being raiſed and cauſed of ſuch hote humours, then ſyrupes that be acetoſe and ſharpe are not to be miniſtred, becauſe they excoriate, raſe, and ſlay, but ſyrupes of ribes, barberies, quinces, and iuyce of ſorrell may be ſuffered and giuen, becauſe they haue but meane ſharpneſſe and acetoſitie. But againſt hote humours, make potions or ſyrupes magiſtrall in this wiſe. ℞. Endiue that is young, or new ſet, and not growen long, waſh it not, *adiantum*, maidenhaire, ſuccorie, purſlaine, lettuce, ſingreen, ſcarioll, plantaine, of all, or of ſome of them two or three. ana. M. ij. the foure great cold ſeedes. ana. ℥. iij. the roote of ſuccorie, the roote of ſorrell, of gramen and nightſhade (that is) the leſſe morrell, called *Solatrum*. ana. halfe an ounce, or ℥.iij. make a decoctiõ, to which may be added the iuyce of the herbs afore written, cleanſed ſo much, and halfe ſo much, or halfe as much more as the third part of the decoction. In one pound of the ſtraining diſſolue ſugar taberzet. ℥ vj. of wine of pomegranates ℥.j.ß. of vineger. ℥. ß. make a ſyrupe clarified and aromatiſed with ℈.ij. of white ſaunders, or red, or both. ana. ℈.j. But if thou wilt make the ſirupe perfectly concoct and ſodden, adde to ſugar, and let it be ſodden to the perfection that it may be kept. The vſe and miniſtration muſt be with double as much of ſome liquor as water ſodden, water of liquorace, or the water of ſome of the herbes aforeſaied diſtilled, yet I do not much praiſe and allow the vſe of diſtilled waters. But if the ſirupe be not perfectly boiled (as is ſhewed in the firſt example) it muſt be giuen by it ſelfe, and without the adminiſtration of any thing elſe, neither ſhall the iuyces be put in, which ſhould be put in, in a ſirupe perfectly ſodden. Like formes and vſes may be made of ſirupes, rubifying or digeſting cold matter. Sirupe of *Epithimum*, ſirupe of fumitorie, which is made two waies: one way is of the only decoction or iuyce of fumitorie, and then it is *Sirupus de fumiterræ ſimplex*: another way is according to the deſcription of *Meſuæ*, and ſuch a ſirupe hath mirabolanes, *Caſſia*, and many other things: which ſirupe is called compound, for that cauſe, ſirupe of bugloſſe, ſirupe of borage, ſirupe of harts-tongue, which openeth and looſeth the ſtoppings of the ſpleene, and ſirupe of violets, becauſe it moiſteneth verie much.

Note.

A ſirupe for melancholy humors.

The ſimple medicines wherewith theſe ſirupes are compounded be theſe: Borage and bugloſſe, fumitorie, *Iupulus*, *Epithimum* and ſuch like, that do helpe and aide the digeſtion of ſuch an humor. Out of the aforeſaid things may be made ſirupes, potions, and iuleps, decoct and boyled to the ſatisfying of theſe

intentions

intentions and meanings. Oftentimes there be made ſirupes laxatiue for the purging and auoiding of matter that is rheumie and filthie, and alſo melancholike matter, when long continuing diſeaſes be bred of them, partly to the digeſtion of raw matter or humors, and partly to the auoiding and purging of humors, which be rotten or halfe rotten, as is in long feuers.

℞. the roote of *Apium*, fennell and percely ſcraped and made cleane. ana. ℥ iij, of hyſope, origan and calamint. ana. *M*. ß. of ſeede of *Carthamum*. ℥ iij. greene polipodie of the oke. ℥. ij. of anniſe, fennell, and dill. ana. ℥. j. ß. of liquorice ſcraped. ℥. iij. of raiſons, the ſtones pulled out. ℥ ß. of the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction ſtrained to ℔ j. or ℔ j. ß. in the which infuſe new trochiskes of agaricke. ℥. j. ß. leaues of ſeane clenſed. ℥. ij. after ten houres make a ſtraining, wringing it ſtrongly, whereto adde ſirupe of violets, *ſyrupi de Bizantijs*, and white ſugar. ana. ℥ iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly ſodden and aromizate with. ℥. j. of cinnamon elect, and with one ſirupe. ℈. j. *Chiloaloes*. The droſſe of this ſirupe by meanes of the things that are put into it, may be ℥. j. ß. which alſo the fourth or fifth day, may be giuen with double as much of hydromell (that is) water and honie ſodden together, or *aqua mulſa*, or of ſome other decoction. By like meanes may the laxatiues entring into this preſent ſyrupe be encreaſed or diminiſhed by reaſon of the quantitie making of the ſirupe, for this preſent ſyrupe is ordained for 6. or 7. or mo doſes, therefore the forme & faſhion of the proportions being kept, it may be made for 1. 2. 3. or mo doſes. Moreouer by like reaſon, a ſirupe laxatiue is made: for matter cholericke and filthie (as one would ſay) vitelline, the which cauſeth feuers hard to be eradicate and taken away.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt reumie matters and feuers Nothæ.

℞. the roots of *Apium*, and of fennell cleanſed and ſcraped and tempered in vineger one nights ſpace. ana. ℥ ß. of hyſope, mayden haire, *Adiantum*, *Politricum*, ſome call it wall-ferne, harts-tongue, endiue, ſuccorie. ana. *M*. ß. or *M*. j. the 4. great cold ſeedes bruſed. ana. ℥. ij. or ℥. iij. Raiſons the ſtones pulled out. ℥. ß. the three cordial floures. ana. p. j. make a decoctiō in the which infuſe agaricke newly made in trochiskes. ℥. vj. the leaues of ſeane made cleane ℥. j. in the ſtraining diſſolue ſirupe of maydenhaire and violets. ana. ℥ iij. of white ſugar. ℥. iiij. make a ſirupe perfectly boiled, putting in the end of the ſtraining of it. ℥. ß. of rewbarbe elect infuſed as it ought to be, which thing after it be ſtrained, let it boyle on a ſoft fire without flame or ſmoke vnto the perfection of the decoction: the doſe of it is. ℥ ij. or ℥. j. ß. with double as much of the decoction of endiue, and ſuccorie, or liquorice, or with double as much of whey made of goates milke. This ſirupe is for fiue or ſixe doſes. And if the firſt doſe will not ſatiſfie your intent, then you muſt diſſolue ſomwhat therein that hath power to purge the humour that thou wouldeſt haue brought out: as in example. ℞. of the ſirupes aforeſaid. ℥. j. ß. of whey made of goates milke. ℥ iij. make a doſe. And if thereof do not follow the effect that you looke for, adde thereto either of *caſia fiſtula*. ℥. ß. or of *diaprunis laxatiue*. ℥. j. or ℥. ij. or *diaphenicon*. ℥. j. ß. or alſo ſome rewbarbe. You may alſo do the ſame in the example of the ſirupe made to auoid rheume.

A ſirupe laxatiue againſt filthie cholerik matter.

℞. of the iuyces of *lupuli* (that i) hops, and of fumitorie, but it is vnpleaſant, of bugloſſe, of borage, and of ſweet apples clenſed. ana. ℥. ij or iij. let them be

A ſirupe againſt melancholie.

twiſe clenſed eyther by decoction and clarifying, or by reſidence of greene polipodie of the oke ℥.ij. or. ℥.iij. of fat Tamarindes. ℥.j. *Epithimum Cretenſis* put in the ende of the decoction. ℥.ij. of *adiantum*, harts-tongue and the three cordiall floures. ana. p. j. make a decoction ſtrayned to quarts. iij. in the which infuſe the leaues of ſene made cleane. ℥.iij. make a ſtrayning, and mixe it with the aforeſayd iuyces: afterward adde therto, ſyrupe of violets. ℥ vj. ſyrupes of bugloſſe, and ſugar taberzet. ana. ℥. iij. make a ſyrupe perfectly ſodden, and aromatizate with ℥.j. of cinnamon, and ℈.j of white ginger ſcraped. The doſe is two ounces with water of bugloſſe, or hoppes, or fumitorie, or whey made of milke. And thus much of making ſyrupes.

CHAP. VI.
Of making Iuleps.

A Iulep doeth not much differ from a ſyrupe, but that it is leſſe boyled then a ſyrupe is, and becauſe alſo it is made without the permixtion of any other decoction with it, as ſyrupes are wont to haue when they are made. Iuleps are made either of water of infuſion or diſtillation, or elſe of the iuyce of ſome ſimple medicine, as thus. ℞. of the water of infuſion of roſes, or the water of infuſion of violets ℥ v. ſuger. ℥. iiij. boyle it eaſily and make a iulep: miniſter it with twiſe or thriſe as much of ſodden water made cold againe. Or thus, ℞. water of roſes ℥. viij. of ſuger. ℥.iiij. boyle them eaſily and make a Iulep. Or thus: ℞. the iuyce of roſes, or the iuyce of violets. ℥ vj. ſuger ℥. iiij. boyle them eaſily and make a Iulep. Likewiſe Iuleps may be made of other things, that do either make warme or hote, or that do open and looſe, or that do reſtraine and binde. But yet Phyſitions commonly doe call a ſyrupe, diſſolued in ſodden water, a Iulep: ſaying, ℞. ſyrupe of roſes, or the ſyrupe of violets, or ſyrupe of mayden haire, or of any other ſyrupe. ℥. iij. of ſodden water. ℔. ß. mixe them together, and make a Iulep.

CHAP. VII.
Of Dolis, ſiue Potio.

Dolis, otherwiſe called *Potus* or *Potio*, is a medicine laxatiue diſſolued in ſome kinde of liquor and giuen in drinke. There be of this many differences, becauſe of the diuerſitie of humours that they voyde and purge. The ſimple medicines do purge and bring foorth rheume or flewme, as be theſe, Agaricke, Turbyth, *Carthamus*, *colocynthis*, and other often ſought out by *Meſua*. The compounds be *Diaphœnicon*, *in forma opiatæ*, *Diacarthami* in the forme of lozenges, *Electuarium de Citro*, *Electuarium Indum maius & minus*, *Benedicta*, and *Hiera ſimplex*, *Hiera compoſita*, and ſuch like. But theſe be compounded, not that they auoide onely one humour alone, but being mixed with another humour, as choler mixt with fleume or melancholie. Medicines are miniſtred in diuerſe formes and faſhions. As firſt in the forme of a Potion, for one onely Doſe, or for one time, in the forme of a bole, whereof ſhall be ſpoken hereafter, in the forme of an electuarie liquide, as *opiatæ*, whole in forme, as lozenges

zenges, in the forme of ſyrupes or luleppes. Alſo in the forme of powder and pilles. ℞. *diaphœnicon* .ʒ.ß. or .ʒ.vj if the ſicke be ſtrong, diſſolue it with water of the decoction of liquorice, rayſons and anniſe, as much as ſufficeth. Make a doſe with ſyrupe of violettes .ʒ.vj. or ℥.j. or diſſolue it with common ſtrayning, and make a doſe, or diſſolue it with hydromell, or diſſolue it with certaine diſtilled waters, as waters of hoppes, Bugloſſe, ſuccorie, or ſuch like, or diſſolue it with the decoction or broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke, or thus: ℞. the three cordiall flowres .ana. one handfull, of proynes damaſcene, *Iniubarum* and *Sebeſten* .ana. foure in number, liquorice ſcraped ʒ.j.ß. aniſe ʒ.j. make a decoction ſtrayned for one doſe: in the which diſſolue *Diaphœnicon* .ʒ.ß. or .ʒ.vj. ſyrupe of violettes ʒ.j. and make a doſe. If you will adde to it another electuarie laxatiue, take of one a quantitie away, and adde to as much of another, as where it is ſayde, take of *Diaphœnicon* drammes .vj. you may ſay, take of *Diaphœnicon* and *Carthamum* .ana. three drammes and ſo likewiſe of other.

The forme of a potion.

℞. Rayſons the ſtones pulled out ℥.ß. ſeede of *Carthamum* and polypodie of the oke .ana. ℥.ß. or .ʒ.vj. of anniſe, fennell, and liquorice ſcraped .ana. ʒ.j.ß. leaues of hyſope, ʒ.j. make a decoction, in the which infuſe Agaricke newly trochiſcate .ʒ.j. or .ϑ.iiij. or. ʒ.j.ß. In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Diacarthamum*, or *diaphœnicon*, or *Benedicta* .ʒ.iiij. or ℥.ß. ſyrupe of violettes. ℥.j. and make a doſe. Theſe things auoide choler: iuyce of roſes, violets, Tamarindes, manna, *diagredion*, (that is,) ſcammonie preparate, *Pſidium*, rewbarbe and myrabolanes. *Caſia fiſtula* purgeth as well choler as rheume, iuyce of roſes and Ireos do bring foorth thinne choler and yeallow water. Compounds to auoide choler are theſe, *Electuarium de ſuccoroſarum*, *diaprunis laxatiuum*, *diaprunis ſimplex*, trochiskes of violets which be ſeldome in vſe.

The forme of a potion or doſe, whoſe decoctiō doth auoid certaine rheume and fleume.

Simples to auoide choler.

Compounds.

℞. of fat Tamarinds ℥.j. the three cordiall flowres .ana.p. ß. liquorice ſcraped. ʒ.j.ß. of prunes damaſcene, number.vj. make a decoction in a litle quantitie of water, in the which let the Tamarindes be ſtrongly wrung out. In the ſtrayning diſſolue *Caſia fiſtula* that is new. ℥.j. or .ʒ.x. make a doſe. In the like decoction you may diſſolue .℥.ß. or. ʒ.vj. of *diaprunis ſimplex* with ʒ.j.ß. or ʒ.ij. of *diaprunis* laxatiue. If it be feared that *diagredion* will do hurt, and if the ſicke be rich, in the ſtead of *Diaprunis* laxatiue may be diſſolued .ʒ.j. or .ϑ.iiij. or ʒ.j.ß. of rewbarbe. Take heed and note, that ſuch a potion is good in cholericke feuers, and in thoſe feuers, in which the frenſie is feared, and truly it is excellent good, for by it is eſchued the auerſion, and alſo the refrigeration and cooling. In the ſtead of this preſent decoction and colature, medicines laxatiue may be diſſolued in a common decoction, or with water of fruites, or with hydromell, or with waters diſtilled, either with endiue, ſuccorie, hoppes, or with the broath of a chicken, or with the whey of milke. ℞. rayſons the ſtones picked out .ʒ.iij. liquorice ſcraped, and anniſe ſeeds .ana. ʒ.j. proynes damaſcene. number vj. Tamarindes .℥.ß. the three cordiall flowres, ſuccorie, young ſet endiue. ana. *M*.j. make a decoction boiled for one doſe, in the which diſſolue new *Caſia fiſtula*. ℥.j. or. ʒ.vj. after the ſtrayning, infuſe ʒ.j. or. ϑ.iiij. or ʒ.j.ß. of rewbarb elect as it ought to be, of ſyrupe of violets. ℥.ß. or ℥.j. make a doſe. Giue in the morning before dinner 5. or 6. houres, on that day he is left

The forme of a potion looſing and reſoluing choler.

The forme of a common doſe in the beginning of cholericke feuers eſpecially in tertian feuers.

afflicted. If choler be mixed with fleume, by reason of that mixture, let such things as do looſen choler, and ſuch things as diſſolue rheume be mixed together. Spikenard which is wont alwayes to be ioyned with rewbarbe, is vnpleaſant to the bellie, for it looſeneth oppilations and ſtopping vehemently. Alſo it prouoketh vomit, and in women with child, it prouoketh menſtruis ſtrongly. Therefore many do thinke that it ought not to be mixed with rubarbe in medicines, that are giuen to women with childe, or to thoſe which be apt to vomite. For that cauſe if it be mixed 3. or 4 graines are ſufficient for. ℥.j. of rubarbe. For delicate perſons which do abhorre all medicines, make a doſe vnder the forme of a ſirupe for two or three times, or for one doſe after this ſort, ſpecially for Tertians exquiſite and deintie. ℞. endiue young ſet, and ſuccory, ana. M ß. the three cordiall floures. ana. p. ß. liquorice ſcraped ℥. j. ß. proynes damaſcene vj. in number, fat Tamarindes. ℥. 6. anniſe. ℥. ß. make a decoction boyled to. ℥ .iij. or elſe you may make a decoction for one doſe, in which diſſolue ſirupe of violets, and endiue. ana. ℥. vj. or. ℥. ß. of white ſugar. ℥. j. the wringing and ſtrayning of ℥.ij. of rubarbe elect, infuſed as it ought to be without ſpikenard, make a long ſirupe, that is as it were in the forme of an *Apozema* (which is a decoction ſo called of the Greekes and vſed of them in ſtead of our ſirupes.) Let it be boyled vpon the coles without any ſmoke long time together, wringing the rubarbe ſtrongly, being bound in a peece of linnen cloth, clarifie it, and aromizate it, and make a doſe of. ℥. j ß. it may be multiplied for two or three doſes (the proportion of all being kept and obſerued.) But if you will make a ſirupe to laſt long, ſeeth it to the perfection, and of that ſirupe miniſter ℥.j.ß. or. ℥.ij. with whey of milk, or with the decoction that ſerueth for thy purpoſe. Alſo you may adde ſome Scene in the infuſion, ſpecially if you thinke choler aduſt doth raigne, or if you deſire a more full and quicke effect of the medicine. ℞. of young ſet endiue, of ſuccorie, of *Adiantum*, and of harts-tongue. ana. M. j. the foure great cold ſeeds. ana. ℥. iij. the ſeed of *Carthamum*. ℥. j ß polipodie of the oke. ℥. ij fat Tamarindes. ℥ j. ß. ſeede of endiue, ſcarioll, and liquorice ſcraped ana. ℥. ij. of raiſons the ſtones plucked out. ℥. ij. proynes damaſcene. 12. in number, the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. make a decoction of. ℔. j. or. ℥ viij. in the which infuſe the leaues of ſcene cleanſed. ℥ j ß agaricke newly trochiſchate. ℥ j. In the ſtraining of the decoction diſſolue ſirupe of violets, and maydenhaire ſirupe. ana. ℥ iij. white ſugar. ℥. ij. make a ſirupe boyled vpon a leate fire, without ſmoke, putting into it the ſtrayning of. ℥. vj. of rubarbe elect, infuſed as it ought to be, make a ſirupe perfectly boiled and aromatizate with. ℥. ß of cinamon, and ℈. ij. of red ſaunders, reſerue it in an earthen or glaſſen veſſell. The doſe of the aforeſaied ſirupe ſhall be the fourth part of it (that is to ſay. ℥. ij.) the which may be diſſolued with whey of goates milke, or water of the decoction of the common colature, or with the waters of the decoctions of diſtillations of ſuccory or endiue. But *Igorreus* doth not allow diſtilled waters. And if the aforeſaied doſe do not ſufficiently moue the bellie and cauſe it to be ſoluble enough: an infuſion may conueniently be added to the ſecond doſe. ℈. ij. or. ℥ j. of rubarbe elect, or ſome *Diaprunis laxatiue*, or *Electuarium de ſucco roſarum*, as in examp'e. ℞. of the aforeſaid ſirupe. ℥. ij. the ſtrayning of two ſcruples of rubarbe elect, or *Diaprunis laxatiue*. ℥ j ß or ℥.ij. of

A doſe vnder the forme of a ſirupe for delicate folke.

A doſe againſt baſtardly feuers, eſpecially Tertians.

ʒ ij. of whey made of milke .ʒ .ij. or as much as is sufficient, and make a dose. It is to be noted that the aforesaid sirupe ought rather to be giuen and ministred to those that haue *Tertianæ Nothæ* (that is bastardly Tertian feuers) rather then to those that haue feuers exquisite daintie, and lawfull, for these be of fewer fits, and be ended in a short time. The other be long and of more fits, so that they remaine many times and often from one Equinoctiall to another. To this also the Tertians that be exquisite and pure do come, and are caused of sincere and good choler: and the feuers *Nothæ* and bastardly do come of filthie and vile choler. Here note also that *Carthamus* and *Agaricke* which do auoid and purge reume, the leaues of Scene which do purge melancholie, and also rewbarbe, which doth purge choler, may be put together to the aforesaid sirupe, whereby the matter that causeth feuers *Nothæ* of long continuance is auoided and purged. Also note, that in one day, or in the third or fourth day, one dose ought to be giuen, but more dayes must be let passe according to the doctrine of *Auicen de Cura Tertianarum Notharum*. These do purge melancholie: Hoppes, fumitorie, *Epithimum Cretensis*, polipodie of the oke, the leaues of scene, *lapis lazuli*, *myrabolani nigri* or *Indi*, *lapis armenius*, blacke hellebore, and a thousand other are to be sought out of *Mesua*. The compounds that do purge melancholie be, *Catholicon* or *Diacatholicon*, *diasenæ*, *Catharticon imperiale*, *Hiera Rufi*, *Confectio Hamech*, *pilulæ de fumiteria*, pilles of *lapis lazulus*, pilles of the fiue kinds of myrabolanes, of *Epithimum*, of hellebore pilles, whereof the dose is ʒ .j. We can or do seldome vse the other compound medicines, for the bitternesse that they haue in taste: all electuaries (except *Catholicon*) be euill in tasting, & therefore they are confect and made in forme of potions. ℞. fumitorie, and the tops of hops. ana. *M*. j. ß. the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. of raisons the stones picked out. ʒ .iij. or ʒ . ß. of greene polipodie of the oke .ʒ iij. of *cuscuta*, & *Epithimum*. ana. ʒ .iij. of anise & liquorise scraped. ana. ʒ .j. ß. make a decoctiõ, in which infuse the leaues of Scene made cleane .ʒ. ij. or .ʒ .iij. In the strayning of the decoction, dissolue *diacatholicon*. ʒ .j. or. ʒ .x. sirupe of violets. ʒ .j. make a dose. In this dose sirupe of violets, and the cordiall floures are put in, that they may temperate the drynesse of Scene and *Epithimum*. If we will more diligently purge melancholie, we do put in *hierapicra rufi*, whose dose is. ʒ .ß. in which Hellebore is entred, which is not in vse at Paris. Or else take *confectio hamech*. ʒ .ß. the which is exceeding bitter, for the plentie of *colsquintida* that is therein. Remember and note, that medicines losening and purging choler, or rather melancholie, may conueniently be dissolued with the whey of goates milke, or with the water of the decoction or infusion of the things aforesaid, putting in the dose before written as in example: ℞. of all those or of part of those good things which be written in the dose aforesayed, afterward make a decoction in the whey of goates milke, and in the decoction infuse the leaues of Scene, &c. And with some of the aforesaid electuaries confect and make a dose, according to the nature and strength of the sicke person: or thus. ℞. the leaues of Scene made cleane. ʒ .iij. infuse them in the whey of goates milke all one night, and in the strayning of the decoction dissolue *Catholicon* .ʒ .j. or. ʒ . x. or .ʒ .i. ß. and make a potion. Note that *Epithimum* doeth sustaine and maintaine a decoction: and therefore we may write thus. ℞. *Epithimum cretensis* .ʒ .j.

Simples to purge the melancholike humour.

The forme of a dose against melancholie.

let it boyle with whey of goates milke, afterward ſtraine it, and wring it out ſtrongly, and with ℥. j. of ſyrupe of violets make a doſe, which if it ſeeme not to be ſufficient, adde to it ſome *catholicon*. Galene doth counſell to take this potion, *lib.* 13. *Therapeut.* in which place he conſidereth, that cankers, and all melancholicke diſeaſes ought to be taken heed of before hand, & to be eſchued: but he putteth in but ℥. iiij. which drammes do ſhew to be of none effect, becauſe (as I thinke) we haue not the good *epithimum*, and therefore we take an ounce for the quantitie, whereby the working of it may be the quicker and the better. All authours do follow this ſentence, which in their bookes of practiſes or abridgements haue remembred this againſt the *Elephantia*, which is cõmonly called the Leprie, and is now made for the cure of *Elephantiaſis*. Manie do thinke and iudge, that the decoction of an old cocke is verie good & wholſome for diſeaſes growen and begun, as well of melancholie, as alſo of reume and fleume. The chiefe vſe of it is againſt the paines of the cholicke, cauſed of reume, and partly of wind, and alſo againſt diſeaſes of the breaſt, as difficultie in breathing, and moreouer againſt diſeaſes of the ioynts cauſed of cold matter. It is prepared and made againſt the cholicke, cauſed partly of reume, and partly of ventoſitie and winde. It is thus, as followeth. ℞. of hyſope, calamint, ana. *M.* j. raiſins the ſtones picked out. ℥. j. ß. of aniſe, fenell, and *carui*, ana. ℥. vj. of the ſeed of *carthamum*. ℥. ij. of greene polipodie of the oke. ℥ j ß. the three cordiall flowers, ana. p. j. of the flowers of cammomill. p. ß. and make a decoction, putting all together into the bellie of an old cocke preparate as it ought to be, infuſe in the ende of the decoction, the leaues of Senna made cleane. ℥. ij. ß. of agaricke newly trochiſcate. ℥. x. make a decoction of two pound, and reſerue it to your vſe. ℞. of the aforeſaid decoction. ℥. iiij. ſyrupe of violets. ℥. j. ß. make a doſe. Note that if the ſicke perſon be ſtrong and ſtubburne, there may be put in the diſſoluing ſome *diaphenicon*, as ℥. j. ß. or ℥. ij. or as much *benedicta*. Take heede alſo: for agaricke (as many do thinke and iudge) is ſuſpected, and thought to be hurtful to thoſe that haue the cholicke: becauſe that if the ſubſtance of it be throwne in with a clyſter, the lightneſſe of his ſubſtance cleauing to the guttes, doth pricke them and grieue them, and doth prouoke a fluxe alſo, and oftentimes doth cauſe one to deſire to ſit long on the ſiege, becauſe that it hath vertue and power to draw downe humours from the farre partes of the bodie, and therefore *Democritus* (as *Meſue* doth witneſſe) called it *Medicinam familiæ*, the medicine of his familie or houſhold. Therefore it may not well be giuen to thoſe that haue paine in the bowels, becauſe it maketh a fluxe, that would not be except that cauſed it, and therefore I counſell in ſuch caſes, to take away agaricke. Furthermore note, that cammomill may aptly and well be put into theſe decoctions, although the vſe of it is rare, and ſeldome ſeene among Phiſitions, yet it is manifeſt, that the onely decoction of it in the broth of a chicken or capon, is excellent profitable againſt all inward griefes, and ſpecially for thoſe which haue the cholicke and the freneſie, (as manie haue proued it, to the great preſeruation of their health.) The water of the diſtillation of cammomill is miniſtred for the ſame purpoſe, but yet the decoction thereof is of more & better effect then the diſtillation of it. The bitterneſſe of the decoction may be mitigated with ſugar,

The decoction of an old cocke.

gar, if it be for delicate persons. Also the decoction of a cocke may conueniently bee giuen for diseases in the breast and of *dispuras*, if medicines pectorall be decoct with it: as, ℞. of hysope, of *Enula campana*, of each, the third part of a handfull, of Sauorie the fourth part of a handfull, horshoofe, called *vngula caballina*, which is an herbe called of some, little clote, whereof you may take a good handfull; seede of *Carthamum*, and greene polipodie of the oke. ana. ℥. ij. of anise and liquorice scraped, ana. ℥. ß. rootes of ireos, and rootes of *Enula*. ana. ʒ. iij. or ℥. ß. of fat figges not putrified foure or sixe in number, of fat dates, the skinnes and filmes taken away, foure in number, of Iuiubes and sebesten. ana. twelue in number, of raisins the stones picked out. ℥. j. the three cordiall flowers. ana. p. j. make a decoction in the bellie of an old cocke, that is hunted, preparate and dressed as it ought to be, putting into it at the ende, of Agaricke and of the leaues of senna, as much as you thinke will bee sufficient for your purpose: but note, that here agaricke may conueniently be vsed and ministred. There are other medicines also which be made against all superfluities in other formes (that is to say) in the forme of liquide electuaries: that is, *ad formam opiatæ*: or in forme whole, that is, like an electuarie made in lozenges or tables.

CHAP. VIII.

Of making Bolus.

BOLVS in English is called a morsell. It is a medicine laxatiue, in forme and fashion it is meanely whole, and it is swallowed by little gobbets. It is made of diuerse things, by reason of auoyding and purging diuerse humours: but the plainest and simplest way of making it, is of *Medulla*, *Casia fistula*, newe drawne out of a fat cane or reede, sixe drammes or an ounce, of sugar so much as sufficeth: and make a bole. But if it be feared that *Casia* will doe hurt, as if great paine be in the bowelles, whereby manie times is prouoked swounding, as some do that haue but weake and tender bowelles: to such *Casia* is not to be ministred, neither by bole nor by clysters. And for that cause the sicke person must be asked howe he feeleth him selfe before *Casia* be ministred vnto him. Truely manie authours doe thinke that this hurt which *Casia* may bring, may be taken away, if there be added to it some graines of barberies, or sugar roset: for they are of this minde, that through their stipticitie the bellie and the bowelles are strengthened, and the paine impedite and letted, which *Casia* doeth cause by his clammines and mollifying softnesse. There be others that do mixe some laxatiue with *Casia*, that it may quicken the slowness of his operation, and that it descending may the sooner slide away and be auoyded. Boles chiefly are thus ordained and made, being verie profitable remedies against the diseases of the reynes. ℞. *medulla casiæ fistulæ* newly drawne ℥. j. or ℥. x. the graines, that is, the kernels, of barberies, ϑ ß. and with sugar roset make a bole. Other do adde ϑ. ii. or ʒ. i. or ʒ. ii. of *diaprunis laxatiuæ*, or *electuarium de succo rosarum*: as in example following. ℞. *medullæ casiæ fistulæ* newly drawne. ʒ. vi. of *diaprunis laxatiuæ*. ʒ. ii. of sugar roset:

tabulate as much as ſufficeth, make a bole. Note that many, becauſe of the ventoſitie which caſia doeth ingender in the bowels, they adde to the bole powder of aniſe. ℈.j. or ʒ ß. which auaileth much. ℞. *caſiæ fiſtulæ* newly drawn out of a fat cane or reede ʒ.iij or. ʒ j. the ſoft matter of fat *Tamarindes*. ʒ.j.ß. of choſen rewbarbe. ʒ.ß. or ℈.ij. or ʒ.j. ſugar as much as ſuffiſeth, make a bole. If the ſicke perſon be poore, in ſteed of rewbarbe, make a bole with. ʒ ß. or ʒ. vj. of *caſia*, and ʒ.ij. of *diaprunis laxatiuæ*, and with ſugar. ℞. *catholicon*. ʒ.j. or ʒ.x. and with white ſugar make a bole: or thus, ℞. *catholicon*. ʒ ß. or ʒ. vi. of *confectio Hamech*. ʒ.j or ʒ.j.ß. and with ſugar make a bole.

The forme of a bole purging choler.

The forme of a bole againſt melancholie.

CHAP. IX.

Of making Pilles.

PILLES are miniſtred for the auoyding of euerie humour: vidz. againſt reume or fleume raigning, and alſo againſt *Cholera Notha*, which is vile and filthie choler hauing dominion in man. *Pilulæ aggregatiuæ* after the deſcription of Meſua, *de agarico*, *de rhubarbaro ſtomachicæ*, *de hiera ſimplici*, *de hiera compoſita*, which reſpecteth the head. *Cocciæ* or *cocchiæ*, which is ſo called of *granis cocci*, and not of the head, as ſome thinke. *Pillulæ aureæ*, *Elephanginæ*, *ſine quibus*, *de Hermodactilis maior & minor*, *de Serapina*, *de Sarcocolla*. Truely the foure kinds of pilles laſt recited, are moſt appropriate and agreeing againſt corrupt and ſtinking humors: of the which vertue alſo be *Arthreticæ maiores* & *minores* when reume raigneth, but theſe when choler raigneth in the diſeaſes of the ioynts: then alſo the pilles of *Hermodactilis maior* and *minor* are dedicated & miniſtred. Pilles that do onely voyd pure choler and purge it, there are a thouſand to be found, but many of them haue more reſpect to the auoyding of filthie and baſtardly choler, or that which is greatly mixt with reume: as, *Pillulæ de Rheubarbaro*, *de Hiera ſimplici*, *Aggregatiuæ*, *de Agarico*, *Ante cibum*, *Imperiales*. In a maner the chiefe doſe of pilles is one dramme and a halfe, of which make nine pilles, and with ſome conuenient ſyrupe, as ſyrupe of Endiue, ſyrupe of maidenhaire, ſyrupe of ſtæchados, or alſo with *Oximel* or *Hydromel*, or with ſome other licour.

CHAP. X.

Of making Apozema.

AN *Apozema* is a decoction of medicines gently made for the concoction and digeſtion of humours, or for preparation of them, and ſometime for euacuation and purging. It may be made diuerſe, and for diuerſe intents and purpoſes: as to make hote and to make cold, to make moiſt, and to make drie, to looſen and open, to reſtraine and binde, to attenuate and make thinne, to make groſſe and thicke, to prouoke menſtruis and vrine. Of medicines particular and conuenient, and of their rootes, fruicts, ſeeds, (and other, as it ſhall ſeeme meete and expedient for your purpoſe.) In effect an *Apozema* doth not differ from a ſyrupe, but in boyling: for ſyrupes are wont to be boyled long,

and

and to the perfection, but an *Apozema* is boyled easily and litle. Therefore syrupes may be long kept, and Apozemes may be kept but a few daies. ℞. of succorie, endiue, *Cuscuta* and *Adiantum*. ana. *M*. ß, of the roots of sorrell, and of gramen. ana. ℥. ß. the foure great cold seeds made cleane. ana. ʒ. j. of the three cordiall flowres. ana. p. j. make a decoction of. ℔. ß. In the strayning dissolue syrupe of violers, or *Syrupus aceteſus*, or syrupe of limmons, or also white sugar. ℥. iij. and make an *Apozema*, clarifie it, and aromatizate it with. ϑ. ij. or. ʒ. j. of cinnamon elect for two doses. Likewise *Apozema* may be made against other humors, the matter and effect whereof must be sought out of the head of the syrupes. Note that in the confection and making of *Apozema*: for. ℥. ij. or at the most for. ℥. iij. of the decoction it is sufficient to adde. ℥. j. of sugar or syrupe. Also there be made Apozemes laxatiue, as there be syrupes laxatiue, adding to laxatiue things in that decoction, or infusing them in it after the decoction is made. Looke in the title of syrupes for the example, for they be like them, (this onely excepted as we said before) that an *Apozema* after the dissoluing of the sugar or syrupe in it, ought not to be boyled any longer.

The forme of an Apozeme against cholericke humors.

CHAP. XI

Of making Mulsio.

MVLSIO is made of seeds cleansed or of fruites, or of both sometime to quench the thirst, and the inflammation of the breast and loungs, and against diseases of the reines and the bladder, or against *Ischuria* (that is) retention and withholding of vrine, and for the strangurie, (that is) the voyding of humours by causing the vrine to issue out by droppes with burning in the yard. ℞. of the foure great cold seeds & new cleane. ana. ʒ. iij. or. ℥ ß. of sweet almonds blanched in cold water. ℥. j. beate all together in a stone morter with well water first sodden, and make a decoction of. ℔. j. and reserue it and keepe it in a glassen vessell. The aforesaid *Mulsio* is good against the burning of the vrine, or the strangurie, if. ℥. iiij. or. vj. be giuen in the morning three or foure houres before dinner, and two or three houres before supper, the same quantitie of the premisses, or a litle lesse with one Lozenge of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, in which are put in the aforesayed seedes, and gummes, and many other things. But if in the aforesayed cases we thinke that there be greater need of infrigidation and cooling: mixe with your *Mulsio* the seedes of purcelaine, of lettuce, and of white poppie. But in the diseases of the breast, adde to new pine apples, sweete almonds, and fresh figges that be not putrified, with one Lozenge of *Electuarium Diarii simplicis*, or *Diarii Solomonis*, let it be ministred straight way without delay. Also with the aforesaid *Mulsio*, there may conueniently be mixed some quantitie of Sugar, or some syrupe apt and meet for the purpose: (as *Ruellius* was wont to make against the filthie matter, and corrupt bloud in the vrine of man:) as thus: ℞. the seed of white poppie and the foure great cold seedes, or sweete almonds. ana. ℥. ß. stampe all these in a morter with as much water of the decoction of liquorice as sufficeth. In the strayning dissolue of syrupe of violets, of maydenhaire, and of mirtles. ana. ℥. j.

The forme of Mulsio.

make a *Mulsio* for two times, and let the grieued person take it in the morning foure houres before dinner.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Powders.

A POWDER is made of seedes, rootes and minerals powdred and beaten finely, and sugar put to them that they may be the more pleasant. Powders be ministred for many causes and intents, whereof their most common ministration is after meate to helpe digestion, or to stoppe and keepe downe vapors which ascend and are caried vp into the braine, or else for both causes as it often chanceth. ℞. the seedes of annise, and fennell .ana. ℥.j. the seede of citron, cinnamon, liquorice, and roses .ana. one scruple, of chosen pearles and the scraping of yuorie. ana. ℥.ß. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a fine powder, whereof minister after meate one spoonefull: and looke what powder is so made to stoppe and keepe downe vapours, euen the same is good to helpe digestion: as is this that followeth. ℞. Coriander preparate. ℥.j ß. the scraping of yuorie, red corall, the horne of a Hart burned .ana. ℈. j of cinnamon .℈ ß. of sugar rosate as much as sufficeth: make a powder which may be giuen after meate. Also they are good for many other things, as for wormes in children, for binding in the bellie, and for strength, and against the plague comming of the owne proper matter. These powders are to be ministred before meate, some alone, some with wine or vpon tostes of bread wet in wine. Sometime they are giuen for the corroboration and strengthening of all vertues, in malignant feuers, and in great imbecilitie and weakeneffe of strength ℞. the scraping of an vnicornes horne graines foure, fiue, or sixe; the scraping of yuorie, of chosen pearles, and of Harts horne .ana. graines sixe, seede of citron, and *Carduus Benedictus*. ana. gra. 4., and make a fine powder, which may be giuen with conuenient liquour, as with white wine, distillation restoratiue, water of Scabious, of Bugloss, or of some other such like. And such powders for the most parte are ministred about mid-night, or early in the morning. There may also be made powders laxatiue (as is) Diascene, and Diaturbith, and the powder of *Electuarium Diacarthami*, to the which ought to be added three times, or foure times as much sugar, and they may be ministred being dissolued in the decoction of a chicken, or of liquorice or of ptysan. But yet these powders are seldome vsed among practitioners.

A powder to helpe digestion.

CHAP. XIII

Of Electuaries, and Conserues: Of Lozenges, and Manus Christi.

AN Electuarie is ordained and made two wayes, (that is) either liquide, as in *Forma opiata*, or whole as in tables or lozenges, or in fashion four square, and long which they call *manus Christi*. Electuaries truly are ministred to corroborate

roborate and ſtrengthen, and for that cauſe they be called *Ionica*, as affording ſtrength to the members (that is to ſay) they roborate and ſtrengthen the vertues naturall, vitall, and animall. If they be confect and made to ſtrengthen the naturall faculties and vertues, then they muſt be adminiſtred to a faſting ſtomack. If the vertue digeſtiue be weake through coldneſſe, miniſter them after meate. But if any matter ariſe through moiſtneſſe, then miniſter one houre or two before meate, that they may alter the temperature, and drie vp the vnwholſome ſubſtance. But if the vertue vitall requireth ſtrengthening, you may miniſter them verie well in a manner at all houres. But if you intend to ſtrengthen the vertue animall, you may conueniently miniſter in the houre of ſleepe or about midnight. The formes of electuaries are in this order as followeth, and firſt, of a liquide electuarie which is profitable to ſtrengthen the naturall vertue when the ſubſtance of the belly is made feeble by coldneſſe & moiſtneſſe. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium Aromatici maioris* (which Gabriel deſcribeth) ℥.ij. powder of *Electuarium Aromaticum Diacalaminthi*. ℥.j. of Diatrion piperon. ℥.ij. of *Conſerua Anthos* (that is) of flowres of roſemarie, and of Roſes, ana. ℥.ß. of ſugar taberzet ℥.j ß. of ſyrupe of mintes as much as ſufficeth, make a liquide electuarie in *Forma Opiata*, and miniſter it before dinner or breakfaſt an houre or an houre and halfe, or two houres: the doſe is ℥.ß. or rather ℥.ij. *Electuarium Aromaticum Roſatum*, being miniſtred faſting taketh away all corrupt and rotten humidities, and being miniſtred after meate, it ſtrengthneth the vertue digeſtiue. Now followeth the forme of a whole or hard Electuarie made in Lozenges, or faſhioned like *Manus Chriſti*, againſt hote diſtemper of the liuer, and againſt obſtructions of the ſame, as thus, ℞. of the powder of *Tria Sandalorum* ℥.ij. the powder of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*. ℥.j. of Conſerues of ſuccorie and roſes. ana. ℥.j. ß. of ſugar taberzet or white ſugar diſſolued in water of ſuccorie, or endiue, as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges of the weight of ℥.ij or. ℥ ij. ß. or. ℥. iij. miniſter one before meate. Many times conſerues are not put in, but onely powders. The Apothecaries are wont for euerie draghme of powder, to put to. ℥.j. of ſugar. But if you will make the Electuarie more ſtrong, you may well take a draghme and a halfe of powder, for. ℥.j. of ſugar. If the ſtomach be troubled with the preſence of Melancholie abounding & flowing to it, either through the vice of the liuer that multiplieth it, or by diſeaſes of the ſpleene, as be ſtoppings which hinder the receipt therof: then make an hard Electuarie, or in *Forma Opiata* with things following, as in example. ℞. of the powder of *Electuarium letificans Galeni*. ℥. iij. the powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton calidum*. ℥.j. the powders of the Electuaries of *Aromatibus*, or of *Gemmis*, or *Dirmuſchi dulcis*, or *Diambræ* may be put in, ſeing that they haue the ſame vertue: of conſerues of bugloſſe, and Borage, and Violets. ana ℥.j. ß. the barke of Citron ſeaſoned. ℥.j. of as much white ſugar diſſolued in water of Bugloſſe or Borage as ſufficeth: make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or in litle gobbets, or like *Manus Chriſti*: in weight ℥.iij. or. ℥.ß. And if you will make it in the forme of a liquide Electuarie, put to it twiſe or thriſe as much more of the conſerues, and ſome powder of white ſugar, or ſugar roſate (that is to ſay) ℥ ij. as is ſhewed in the example aforeſaid, with ſome ſyrupe hauing reſpect to the melancholike humor (as is) ſyrupe

An Electuarie ſtrengthening the naturall vertue.

An Electuarie againſt hote diſtempure of the liuer.

An Electuarie againſt Melancholie.

of Bugloſſe, of Borage, of roſes, of Hartes-tongue, of *Epithimum*, of Fumitorie, of which adde to as much as ſufficeth: my meaning is, that it may be in a liquide forme.

An electuarie for the ſtrong ſtopping of the liuer or the ſpleene, wherein there is danger of the dropſie, or in the breeding of *Cachexia*, (that is) a ſpice of conſumption: ſuch an Electurie (I ſay) is made of the powders of the Electuaries *Diagalange*, *Diacucumeris*, *Diacapparu*, *Dialacca*, and of conſerues, which if you will commixe together, conſerues of ſuccorie may conueniently be mixed with them. Note alſo that electuaries be made of Trochiskes, or of powder of Trochiskes, hauing reſpect to the diſeaſe, as in a hote cauſe take *Trochiſchi Diarrhodon*, Trochiskes of *Carolus*, Trochiskes of Bole armoniacke, of *Terra ſigillata* (ſpecially if we would reſtraine or bind) Trochiskes of *Carabe*, if we would ſtop the fluxe of bloud. But if we would open or looſen the obſtructions of the liuer or ſpleene, we muſt bring this to paſſe with Trochiskes of rewbarbe, or of *Capparu*. Electuaries reſpecting the vertue vitall, if it be aggrieued with cold, may be made of *Electarium Diambræ*, *Diamuſci dulcis*, *Electuarium de Gemmis*, and *Aromaticum nardinum*, *Aromaticum muſcatum*, *Aromaticum Roſatum*, *maior Gabrielis*, *Letificans Galeni* or *Raſis*, *Electuarium Concialitoris*, of Alkermes confection and making. Conſerues for the ſame intent be theſe: Conſerues of Roſes, Bugloſſe, Borage, Anthos, barkes of Citron, ginger condite, orenges condite, and other of that ſort. If the vertue vitall be wearied, and laboureth of heate, take the Electuarie *Roſata nouella*, *Electuarium trium Sandalorum*, and *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, vſe them often. Theſe be the Conſerues that be good, Conſerues of Roſes, of Violets, of Bugloſſe, and of borage, and alſo of *Nimphea* or *Nenuphar* (that is) water lillies. If the cough be preſent, and if the humour contained in the breaſt be hote, flowing and thinne, if you will cauſe it to auoid and come forth, miniſter *Diatragacanthum frigidum*: if the humour be clammiſh and thicke, miniſter *Diatragacanthum calidum*, and *Diairis ſimplex*, or *Diairis Salomonis*. And if there be ſuſpition of venemous ſubſtance, then with the powders of Electuaries colde or hote, which doe reſiſt poyſon, wee doe commixe maces, and muske, *Zedoaria*, ſaffron, Cinamon, and *Xiloaloes* in colde cauſes. But in hote cauſes there may conueniently be mixed pearles, corall, criſtall, roſes and *Camphora*. In cauſes mingled one with another either hote or colde, by a certaine propertie, theſe doe corroborate and ſtrengthen, and defend, pearles, ſeede of Citron, roote of Tormentill, *Tunici* and *Dictamus*, the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, or if you will, weigh it. ℈.j. or ℥.ß. as in this example following againſt a peſtilentiall feauer. ℞. the powder of the Electuarie of *Diamargariton frigidum*. ℥.j ß. or white ſhining pearles elect and powdred in a marble morter. ℈.j. of *Camphora*. Gr.ij. or elſe Trochiskes of *camphora*. ℈.j. or. ℈ ß. the rootes of *Dictamus*, of Tormentill, and of *Tunici*, and the barkes of Citron. ana. ℈.j. of Conſerues of Bugloſſe, Borage, *Nimphea*, and Roſes, take of theſe, either one, two, or three, or all, to the quantitie of two or three dragmes: of white ſugar diſſolued in water of Roſes, or of Bugloſſe, or Borage as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in Lozenges, or make a liquide Electuarie in the forme aforeſaid. ℞. the three kindes of ſaunders, and *Diarrhodon*

An electuraie for the vertue vitall.

An electuarie againſt a peſtilent feuer.

rhodon Abbatis. ana ℈.j. the bone of the Hartes heart one in number, ſugar *roſate tabulate*, or white ſugar diſſolued in roſe water as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie, gild it with leaues of pure golde in weight ℥. ß. Alſo there be made Electuaries laxatiue againſt all ſuperfluities and diſeaſes, that together with the purging we may alſo ſtrengthen, as in example, againſt long diſeaſes comming of rheume, or of ſome clammiſh humour breeding the cough. ℞. *Caſſia* that is new .℥.ij. ß. *Diacarthami*.℥.vj. new *Penidios*, and *Diatris ſimplex*. ana. ℥. ß. of conſerues of violets .℥. iij. of ſweete aniſe powdred, and powder of liquorice. ana. ℥.ß. ſyrupe of violets as much as ſufficeth: make a liquide Electuarie, in *forma Opiate*. The doſe is. ℥ j. or .℥.x. or at the moſt .℥.j. ß. the which may be miniſtred an houre, or an houre and a halfe, ſwallowing it, or he may take it foure houres before dinner, becauſe it may not conueniently be giuen a litle before meate, becauſe of the *Diacarthamum* which hath *Diagredium* in it. Alſo you may diſſolue it in the broth of a chicken, or in ptyſan, or in a common pectorall decoction, and make a potion, and miniſter it foure or fiue houres before meate. And this note, that you muſt appoint the wayes and meanes of the miniſtration of Phyſicke, according as you ſee the nature and condition of the ſicke perſon. Such Electuaries which may be brought into a powder, are made in Lozenges or Boles of laxatiue medicines that be pleaſant in taſte, the forme and faſhion whereof may be knowne in taking *Diacarthamum*, and *Electuarium de Succo Roſarum*, after which faſhion you may make other verie meete and ſeruing for your purpoſe.

An Electuarie for the vertue animall, in a hot cauſe.

An Electuarie againſt diſeaſes of the breſt, and againſt the cough.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of making Conditum, and Conſerua.

CONDITA be made as Electuaries be made, to ſtrengthen the might and the primitiue and worthieſt members. They rather haue reſpect to the ſubſtance and matter of breathing, then to the beautie and ſoundneſſe of the fleſh. But foraſmuch as the weakeneſſe of ſtrength, cauſeth ſores and diſeaſes to grow in their inſtruments, therefore it is miniſtred to them that begin to recouer and waxe ſtrong. ℞. *Conſerua Anthos* (that is) of roſemarie, conſerue of Borage, Bugloſſe, maidenhaire, and ſuccorie. ana. ℥.ij. the barke of citron condite. ℥.j. ß. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Electuarium ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*. ana. ℥.ß the leaues of golde in number vj. of white ſugar as much as ſufficeth, make a *Conditum*. Of the ſame powders of Electuaries is made a whole and a hard *conditum*, as thus. ℞. the powder of *Electuarium pliriſarcoticon*, the powder of *Dianthos*, the powder of *Ducis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Triaſandali*. ana. ℈.ij. conſerues of roſes and ſuccorie. ana. ℥.j.ß white ſugar diſſolued in roſe water as much as ſufficeth, make an Electuarie in lozenges or morſels like vnto *manus chriſti*, of the weight of .℥.ij. In like proportion may condites or Electuaries be made to ſtrengthen all kind of vertues: as in example. If onely the vertue vitall be weake, then take Electuaries and conſerues either hot or cold, hauing reſpect to the vertue, according as the owne diſtempure or the cauſe of it deſireth: now there followeth

A conditum to ſtrengthen all vertues and powers.

Hote Electuaries respecting the vertues vitall.

these hote Electuaries hauing respect to the vertue vitall: as *Electuarium diambræ, Diamargariton calidum, Diamuscum amarum, Diamuscum dulce, de Gemmis, lætificans Galeni.* Cold Electuaries, *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis* which be temperate, *Tria sandali.* Conserues respecting both the distempures (that is) hote and colde: as *Conseruæ Rosarum, Boraginis, Buglossæ, Violarum.* Cold conserues, *Conseruæ Nymphææ, Violarum.* Hote *Condita* respecting the vertue vitall, as *cortex citri conditus,* which may be ministred in both causes, *confectio de cinamomo, confectio de Xiloaloe, confectio Alkeruces,* which is common to the Physitions: of *Montispessulari,* ginger condite, peares condite, apples condite, and so of other. Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall be these: *Pliri-sarcoticon, dianthos, Diamuscum dulce* and *amarum, Mithridatum* and *Triacle,* which be *opiatæ* (that is) liquid. Hot conserues respecting the vertue animall be these, *conserua Anthos, Acori,, Rosarum,* which is temperate, almost all *Opiatæ* (that is) liquid things, as *Mithridatum, Triacle,* and *aurea Alexandrina.* Hote Electuaries for the vertue naturall be these, *Diacalaminthum, Diacuminum, Diatrion pipereon, Aromaticũ rosatum maioris* (which Gabriel describeth) *Diarrhodon Abbatis,* which is temperate, and necessarie in both causes, *Diairis Salomonis,* or *simplex Dialacca,* and *Diacucurma,* the which are good against opilations in the liuer, and against the dropsie. Hote conserues respecting mightily the vertue naturall, be these: *Conserua Eringiorum, conserua Satyrij, Zinziber conditum, cortex citri conditus,* meate of quinces condite, peares condite, and such like. Cold Electuaries be these: *Tria sandali, Diatragacanthum frigidum, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Diamargariton frigidum.* Cold conserues be these: *Conserua Violarum, cichoreæ, Nymphææ, &c.*

Hote Electuaries for the vertue animall.

Hot conserues.

Hote Electuaries for the vertue natural.

Hote conserues respecting the vertue natural.

Cold Electu.

Cold conserues.

℞. The powder of *Electuarium trium sandalorum.* ℥.ij. the powder of *Diamargariton frigidum,* and *Diarrhodon Abbatis* .ana. ℈.ij. conserues of succorie, & violets. ana. ℥ j. ß. white sugar dissolued in water of endiue, or succorie, or roses as much as sufficeth. Make a condite in lozenges in weight. ℥.ij. or. ℥.iij. or thus: ℞. conserues of succorie, of violets, of *Nymphææ,* and of Buglosse .ana. ℥.ij. ß. conserue of Roses. ℥.j. ß. powder of *Tria sandali,* and of *Diamargariton frigidum.* ana. ℈.iiij. the leaues of gold. viij. numb. white sugar asmuch as sufficeth, make a condite: the dose is one siluer spoonefull. Many in these condites, where there is suspection of some venemous matter: as in pestilent feauers, or in swounding, they do adde to the seed of citron, the seed of *Carduus Benedictus,* the roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill. And for rich folke of the scraping of Vnicornes horne (although there is no author that maketh mention of it) but onely the opinion of the common people: as in example, in the aforesayd *conditum* take away some portion of the aforesayd Electuaries (that is to say) the third or fourth part, and then let it be in this order as followeth. ℞. of the seed of *Carduus Benedictus,* of the seed of Citron, of the root of *Dictamus* and Torn entill. ana. ℈. j. or. ℥ ß. two or three of these may be added. Furthermore Trochiskes are added to Electuaries and condites, as in example: to stoppe the fluxe, take Trochiskes or *Diacorallus, Diarrhodon,* of *Terra sigillata,* of bole Armoniacke, and of *curabe.* And to keepe the temperature of the heart, take Trochiskes of *Camphora,* of the which take as much in quantitie, as the powders of the Electuaries be, when there is no sugar put into them.

Condites respecting the vertue vitall.

A Conditum against the hot distemper of all kindes of veines.

Another for the same distemper.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.
Of making Pasta Regia or Mazapane.

PASTA *Regia* is a confection, so called by the Physitions of late time, which is specially ordained for diseases of the breast, or to driue away the causes of leaneneſſe: the forme and making whereof doth follow, being verie effectuall against both the causes: (that is) the diseases of the breſt, and the lungs, and against leaneneſſe: as thus, ℞. sweete almonds blanched. ℥. iij. of new pines cleansed, and tempered tenne houres in water of Scabious, or of *Enula Campana*, or in some other meete for this purpose. ℥ ß. of *Pistacium*, (that is) a kind of nuttes, let them be new cleansed, and tempered one day in some of the aforesayed waters. ℥. j. *Amylum*, *Diatragacanthum*, and of gumme Arabicke. ana. ℥. ß. of the meate of dates, prunes damascene, and sebesten, and raisons, one or else more of these to the quantitie of one ounce, white sugar dissolued in well water, or in rose water, or in water of *Enula* as much as sufficeth, make a *Passa Regia*, and cut it in fashion like a wafer, or else make it in litle gobbets. Also sometime the great cold seeds (the barks being picked off) are put into them.

CHAP. XVI.
Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.

A LOHOCH or *Ecligma* is a medicine that must not be eaten or chewed, but it must melt in the mouth, and distill downe to the stomach by litle and litle. It is good against diseases of the breast and the loungs, (as is) *Dispneas*, *Apneas*, short and hard breathings, sighings, and coughes whether it commeth by heaping of matter together, or by falling downe of some moist substance (as be catarres, and rhumes, which chance oftentimes.) ℞. *Electuarium Diairis Salomonis*, and *Diairis simplex*. ana. ℥. vj. Lohoch *de pino*. ℥. j. conserue of *Enula campana*. ℥ ß. *Oxymel Scilliticum* as much as sufficeth. Make a Lohoch and let the sicke vse it with a liquorice sticke, licking or swallowing a litle at once. If there be greater need of detersion and scouring then there is of insision and cutting, you must augment & increase the quantitie of the scouring receipts, and in stead of *Oximel Scilliticum* put to syrupe of liquorice, or of Horehound called *Prassium*, or of iuiubes, or else of hysope: many do thinke syrupe of hysope to be absterſiue, onely for the saying of *Auicene*, which (*Mesua* declareth) is vnlike to be true. Lohoch *Compositum*, Lohoch *de Pino*, Lohoch *de caulibus sanum* and *expertum*, Lohoch de *Scilla*, these may conueniently be ministred by themselues. But when a feuer is present (as in the Pleurisie) then to auoide and bring out from the breast, the materiall cause that floweth, and partly for the matter that is alreadie flowne, we may make a Lohoch after this sorte and fashion. ℞. of *Electuarium diatragacanthi frigidi*. ℥. x. new penidies, and white pilles. ana. ℥ iij. syrupes of violets, or of luiubes, or of both as much as sufficeth, make a Lohoch and vse it with a liquorice sticke, swallowing it by litle and litle. If the matter be partly flowed, and partly flowing, you shall make a Lohoch to correct both after this fashion. ℞. *Electuarium Diairis simplex*. ℥ j. *Diatragacanthum frigidum*. ℥. vj. new penidies, ℥. iij. syrupe of luiubes,

A Lohoch against rheume congeled together, clammish, hard & thicke.

A Lohoch in the beginning of the pleurisie where the matter floweth.

of Iuiubes, or Hyſope, euen as you thinke good, the more to enforce the matter now flowed or flowing, and make a Lohoch. A Lohoch alſo may be made againſt defluxions and flowings of humours that be hote and ſharpe, or gnawing, cauſing the cough: that the heate and gnawing of the humour may be ſtopped, and alſo that the thinneſſe and ſubtilitie thereof may be made thicke and groſſe, and the partes to the which the fluxe commeth being ſubiect and obedient, they may be made ſafe from any nocument or hurt (as in example). ℞. *Electuarium Diatragacanthi frigidi* ℥ j. Bole armoniack waſhed in roſe water ℥ ij. Trochiskes of *Terra ſigillata* ℈ ij. ſyrupe of poppy as much as ſufficeth and make a Lohoch. In ſtead of *Diatragacanthum* may be taken *Diapapauer*, or of each a like quantitie. Alſo Trochiskes of *Carabe* in the which is put ſome *opium* may be added to them, if there be no cauſe that *opium* be ſuſpected to do hurt. Theſe Lohoches are giuen againſt the Ptiſicke in the houre of ſleepe, *Electuarium Diapaueris*, *Lohoch* of poppie. All the pilles of *Meſua* for this vſe againſt diſeaſes of Catarre and Rheume, may be mixed & giuen the ſame houres, and for the ſame intent.

CHAP. XVII.

Of making Balneum, and Semicupium.

BALNEVM is a baine: the vſe whereof was common and often among olde practitioners, but now it is rare and ſeldome, and not at all vſed almoſt, except it be in certaine diſeaſes, as in an vniuerſall gowte, in the palſey and in conſuming feuers. But againſt the gowt and the palſey naturall baines are conuenient, in the which, although there be penurie and lacke of things, yet we may make things artificially, and cunningly prepared with boyling together in water, herbes, rootes, ſeedes, flowres, and alſo many mettalles, as it ſhall ſeeme requiſite for the diſeaſe. But Semicupium, which in Latine is called *Inceſſum*, is a particular Bath, which is applyed for paines of the nefreſie, for the cholicke, and for the Iliacke, ſo that they come not by reaſon of an impoſtume. It is profitable againſt diſeaſes of the belly and wombe, for it is a conuenient aide and defence to prouoke menſtruis, and to amend the diſtempure of the wombe. Now followeth the forme of Semicupium, when we would in the Nefreticke diſeaſe, haue the pores and paſſages of the bodie enlarged and made ſoft and plyant, and alſo to ceaſe the paine, as thus. ℞. the rootes of *Althaea* ℥. iiij. the leaues of *malua*, *Biſmalua*, and *Parietarie*, the flowres of cammomill and melilote, the toppes of dill .ana. *M.* ij. of origan, calamint, betonie & ſothernwood. ana. *M.* j. ſeeds of flaxe and fennell. ana. ℥ ij. of leane bran .p. iiij. boile all theſe in a bag in ſufficient water, for a Semicupium. Note alſo that one that hath the Nefreſie may enter a Bathe before he hath receiued a Clyſter. If the paine of the cholicke or the Nefreſie ſeeme to come of much ventoſitie, or of a cold humour, which ſeemeth to haue neede of calefaction, and attenuation or thinneſſe with inſciſion and cutting, make a Semicupium thus. ℞. origan, calamint, toppes of dill, and of cammomill. ana. *M.* iiij fenugreeke, carawayes, aniſe and fennell. ana. ℥ ij. laurell berries. ℥ ß. And if there be more ſickneſſes and cauſes wrapped in with the aforeſayed griefes

The forme of Semicupium.

Aliud Semicupium.

griefes, you may adde to ſuch medicines as be meete for your purpoſe, as if there be any neede of mollifying and making ſoft, the leaues of *Malua*, *Biſmalua*, *Paritarie*, and violets will worke that effect. If you iudge it neceſſarie to make inciſion, or to open the pores and paſſages of the bodie, adde to, of the roote of ſpinach, *Bruſcus* and *Apium*, knit them in a litle bagge and ſeeth them for a Semicupium. Likewiſe to prouoke menſtruis, make *Inceſſus* or *Semicupia*, putting in medicines meete and apt to prouoke menſtruis, as Mugwort, Sauien, Horehound, Nex, Cypreſſe and Iuniper berries, of all theſe there may be put in two handfulles.

CHAP. XVIII.
Of Epithema or Fotus.

EPITHEMA is a medicine ordained to lay to the heart or liuer to coole it: and *Fotus* is a medicine noriſhing or keeping warme. They are made for many intents & purpoſes, but chiefly to correct the hot diſtemper of the liuer, the making wherof is this as enſueth. ℞. the waters of endiue, ſuccory, roſes, & petymorrell and nightſhade. ana. ℥ iij. of vineger. ℥. j. the powder of *Electuarium triaſandali*. ℥. ij. or ℥. j. ß. mixe them for an Epitheme of the liuer with a felt, or a peece of linnen or wollen cloth, or a ſpunge infuſed in the aforeſaid liquer, and layd againſt the liuer before meate an houre or an houre and halfe. Alſo there is made for the ſame purpoſe the like decoction of the herbs, as is of the aforeſaid waters. If there be ſtoppings of the liuer, together with his hote diſtemper, make an Epitheme after this ſort. ℞. ſuccorie, both the roote and the herbe, young ſet endiue, agrimonie (which is) cupatorie. ana. *M*. j. flowres of ſuccorie. p. j. the foure great cold ſeeds, and litle cold ſeed. ana. ℥ ß. of cipreſſe ℥ ij. of lupines ℥. iij. all the ſaunders. ana. ℥. j. of ſquinant. ℥. ß. the toppes of wormewood. *M*. ß. make a litle bagge, and boyle it in foure parts of water, and one of wine, and a litle vineger, with one onely great heate in an earthen veſſell, and make a fomentation in the manner aforeſayed, ſuch an Epitheme is verie good for diſeaſes depending vpon opilation or ſtopping, and miſfortune comming by opilation and ſtopping, as is a fluxe, and for him that is diſeaſed in the liuer, and for thoſe diſeaſes for the moſt part which come and goe by courſes. Alſo it is good againſt conſumptions, which cauſe diſtempures and ſtoppings of the liuer. Moreouer againſt the beginnings of knobbes and kernelles, to which (if they be come forth) there muſt be applyed mollificatiues, and things that do looſen and vnbinde. Alſo there be Epithemes that be made for many purpoſes of the ſtomach: firſt to ſtrengthen the ſtomach that it receiue not the ſuperfluities comming from other places, & then the Epitheme is made of ſtipticke things. Secondly to correct and amend the diſtempure of the ſtomach: And thirdly they ſerue to ceaſe the paines that are cauſed by the nature and condition of that griefe: miniſtring duely to the contrarie of the matter as the cauſe ſhall require. The making of the firſt intent, that the ſtomach may be deliuered from flowings of humours to it, and may be preſerued ſafely, that it ſhall not ſuffer inflammation, or courſe of euill humours. ℞. red roſes. p. ij. of Arnogloſſa and plantaine. ana. *M*. ß. the tops of wormwood

Epitheme.

M. j. the third part, all the ſaunders. ana. ℥. ij. red corall. ℥. iij. put all theſe in a litle bagge, and make a decoction in ſufficient quantitie of water with a litle vineger, to which may be added a litle rheniſh wine and make a fomentation. Corall (although it be *Achymum*) yet it is not put into the decoction without great cauſe, for it profiteth naturally againſt all diſeaſes of the ſtomach, and therefore it ought rather to be beaten into powder. Epithemes for all other intentes and purpoſes may be deſcribed by particular and proper medicines, after the forme of the late deſcribed Epitheme. There be Epithemes good for the ſtomach made of oile, as oyle of roſes, cammomill, wormwood, maſticke and mirtles. Note that in all Epithemes, for what intent ſoeuer they be miniſtred, you muſt mixe ſome thing with them that may preſerue and keepe the eſſence and ſtrength of the member, that the Epitheme is layd to, as *Galen* commaundeth and teacheth in many places, to be obſerued and done likewiſe in medicines taken inwardly. But *Epithema* and *Fotus* be all one, yet ſome do make a difference, ſaying that *Epithema* is onely that, which is made of diſtilled waters and powders mixed together: and *Fotus* is a more generall thing, which is made of the decoction of any kind of herbes and roots.

CHAP. XIX.

Of making Sacculus.

SACCVLVS *videlicet*, a litle bagge. It is miniſtred for the ſame cauſes that *Fotus* be vſed for. It is made of herbes, flowres, ſeedes, and other ſuch like things. They be layed to either drie, or elſe wet in ſome liquour. The drie be chiefly made of ſeedes and herbes: the wet muſt firſt be preſſed before it be laid to the place. ℞. *milij vſtulati*. p. iiij. of *orobum*, (which ſome think to be tares) and of leane branne. ana. p. ij. flowres of cammomill, and the tops of dill. ana. p. j. of commin and caraway. ana. ℥. ij. of laurell berries. ℥. iij. make thereof two litle bags, and ſew them in, into two linnen clothes of a competent bigneſſe, and baſt them throughly. Let them be ſo bigge that they may couer the belly and let one after another be layed hote to the bellie againe and againe. Now followeth the forme of a moiſt bagge for the digeſting, mollifying and diſſoluing of raw humors as thus: ℞. the flowres of cammomill. p. ij. the tops of dill, melilote and origan. ana. p. j. fenugreeke and flaxe ſeed. ana. ℥. j. the leaues of *maluæ*, *biſmaluæ*, and violets. ana. *M.* ß. make a litle bagge, or make two bags, and boyle them in water or in cowes milke, and of the decoction make a fomentation with a ſpunge, or a felt, or wollen clothes, or two bagges, let them be layed to the grieued places one after another. According to this forme, you may make & apply bags, partly of things that can mollifie, and partly of things that can remoue and diſcuſſe, and lay them to knobbes, kernelles, and hardneſſe of the fleſh. But if the perſon be ſtrong, take other remollitiues, or diſcuſſiues, euen as you ſhall find the matter, that cauſeth the hardnes to require.

A drie bagge againſt the windy cholicke or Timpanites.

A moiſt bagge.

CHAP. XX.

Of making Scutum.

SCVTVM in Engliſh is a target or buckler. *Scuta* are miniſtred to the ſtomach, and made for the ſame cauſes that ointments & Epithemes be. They

are

are often made of the drie powder of medicines, to correct some distempure of the stomach, and to adde strenth to it. Furthermore they serue in steed of ointments or emplaisters, when the patients do refuse and abhorre them for their tediousnesse. ℞. mints, maioram and wormewood dried, ana. p. j. or ℥. j. ß. of cloues, galingale, and Xiloaloes, ana. ℈. ij. of comin and red corall, ana. ℥. j. make a powder, wherewith make a *Scutum* with a little cotton, sewed in betweene two little clothes, with stitchings betweene, & bands as it ought to be, let it be bound to the stomach. Powders to *Scutum* ought not to be past an ounce and a halfe at the most, manie times an ounce or sixe drammes is enough.

A Scutum against the cold distẽpure of the stomach, with ventositie and other substance.

CHAP. XXI.

Of making a Cataplasme.

CATAPLASMA is a plaister, &c. *Cataplasmata* be made of herbes, rootes, seedes, and meale sodden in water or milke, with some greace or oyle added to them as the matter requireth. *Cataplasmata* be made for diuerse intents, sometime to cease paines, sometime to resolue and vnbind, sometime to make ripe, sometime to mollifie or make soft, somtime to consume, & somtime to drie vp humours and vapours. In commixed affects and causes, diuerse intents and purposes are mixed together in *cataplasma*, as remollitiues with discussiues, and discussiues with such things as cease paine, as the example following shall declare. And first of the forme of a Cataplasme for the cure of *œdema* (which is a botch of flegmatick matter, or an impostem without grief,) in the which euill it is necessarie to haue remollition with discussion, or (as they say) resoluing, loosening and ceassing of paine, as thus, ℞. the leaues of *malue*, *bismalue*, and violets, ana. *M*. j. or *M*. ß. the roote of *Althæa*, the roote of white lillies, & the roote of ireos, that is, floure de luce. ana. ℥. ß. or ℥ j. floures of cammomill, melilot, and tops of dill, ana. p. j. seede of flaxe, and of fenugreeke, or rather, meale of flaxe seede, meale of fenugreeke, and meale of barley, ana. ℥. ß. or ℥. j. or you may measure it by litle handfuls, comin. ℥. j. laurell berries. ℥. ij. saffron. ℈. j. or ℥. ß. of duckes greace, goose greace, the marrow of calues shancks, fresh butter, oile of lillies, and oile of ireos. ana. as much as sufficeth; make a Cataplasme. In this plaister are contained three intents and purposes: that is, mollifying, dissoluing, and ceassing of paine, as may be knowne by the matter contained in it. The quantitie of mollificatiues ought to be most, if there be greatest neede of mollifying, and the quantitie of dissoluers ought to be most, if there neede to be great dissoluing, and so likewise of ceassing of paine. Therefore in the beginning of *Oedema*, as also in the beginning of euery abscession or course of ill humors, you must commixe together with mollificatiues some repercussiue remedie, wherwith the member may be comforted. In the beginning of the augmenting, take most remollitiues, and fewest discussiues. In the end of the augmenting and state of the disease, take of both a like much. In the declination, take and apply onely dissoluers and loosener. In the making of this present plaister, you must put into it no stipticke thing: but if you do put in anie, put it in at the beginning of the flowing of the humour. But what medicines they be that haue stipticke vertue, and

which do comfort the member, and also which do mollifie, and dissolue, you must seeke them in the tables of Authors, as *Arnoldus* and *Sauanorolla*, and such like. Also there be plaisters made without oyle or greace, as is that common thing of crummes of bread steeped in cowes milke, & a litle sodden together, with whites of egges, oftentimes mixed with a litle saffron, as tenne or twelue chiues. And this Cataplasme we often vse for the cure of the gowt.

CHAP. XXII.
Of making Emplastrum.

EMPLAISTERS are ordained & made for diuerse purposes, and the making of them is common as well to Physitions as Chyrurgians. They are made of gummes, oiles, greace, and drie medicines, commixed with some sufficient quantitie of waxe, or without waxe, if that the materiales can thicken, and gather together of themselues. Emplaisters are applied to all parts of the bodie, but chiefly to the stomach, for the same cause that ointments, Cataplasmes, and *Scuta* are ordained. Now followeth the forme of an Emplaister for the stomach when it is afflicted with a cold distemper, by reason of the flowing of some cold substance, as thus. ℞. *Ceratũ stomachi cõfortatiuũ Galeni*. ℥.ij. of galingale, cloues, and red coral. ana ℥. ß of wax dissolued, braied altogether in a mortar with oile of masticke, or of wormwood as much as sufficeth. Commixe them and make a plaister spred vpon leather like a buckler with a double linnen cloth, well stitched and basted as it ought to be. Also an Emplaister may be made of simples for the aforesaied intents, in this manner. ℞. pure *Lapidanum*. ℥. vj. masticke. ℥.ij. frankencense. ℥.j. coriander preparate, red corall, drie mintes and galingale. ana. ℈.ij. *Xiloaloes*, and maces. ana. ℥.j. turpentine. ℥.ij. waxe dissolued with oile of spikenard, or wormwood, or masticke, or roses, or of two or three of these as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe together, spread it vpon leather, and make it like a *Scutum* of double linnen with stitches and bandes, and lay it to the stomach as it is requisite. Warne the Apothecarie to dissolue the gummes with wine and oile, afterward let him commixe the rest without the vse of any fire. *Ceratum stomachi confortatiuum Galeni* is made of roses, wormewood, masticke, spikenard, waxe and oile of roses. In hote causes and cholericke vomites, you may likewise make *Scuta* of cold simples, as in mirtles, coriander, coral, mastick, which is temperat, *Pssidiæ*, *balaustia*, also oiles, as of roses, mirtles, quinces, and of mastick. There are made Emplaisters for the liuer, for the alaying of euerie distempure of it, to loosen the obstructions thereof, and to strengthen it also, as in this example following. ℞. *Ceratum sandalinum*. ℥.ij. meate of quinces. ℥.j. of masticke. ℥.ß. of coral. ℥ j. of waxe dissolued with oyle of roses as much as sufficeth. Make it in a lumpe, and spread it vpon leather, like a Moone when she is beginning to encrease, with a double linnen cloth, and with bandes, as it ought to be, and apply it to the liuer. Emplaisters also are made to cease paines, and partly to ripen Apostemes, and partly to resolue them, as in example. ℞. *Muscilaginis*, of the seede of *Althæa*, fenugrecke, and seed of flaxe. ana. ℥. iij. barley meale. ℥. iiij. oile of white lillies, and the fatnesse of a henne. ana. ℥. ij. ß. butter. ℥.j. saffron. ℈.j. the

A plaister for the hote distempure of the liuer.

the whites of egges in number ij. boyle the *Muscilagines* with a soft fire, and with the meale, and put in the whites of egges in the end. It doth soften and ripen all Apostemes congealed of a hote and colde matter, and it ceaseth their paine, in what part soeuer of the bodie they be resident. If you will appropriate this Emplaister to all kinds of cold Apostemes, then adde to it *Ammoniacum, Bdellium, storax liquida.* ana .ʒ.j. and it will worke a maruellous and profitable effect.

CHAP XXIII
Of making Vnguenta.

VNGVENTA in English oyntments: And those which appertaine vnto Physitions, are made to lenifie and asswage paine, to represent, shew, and assigne alteration and chaunging, to mollifie and dissolue knobbes and kernels, specially in the liuer, in the spleene; and in the stomach. The vertue of ointmentes for other purposes and for other members belongeth to surgerie, the forme and making whereof is to be sought out of the Antidotaries. The forme of an oyntment to mitigate the paine of the stomach chased of cold, or by the presence of some such like substance, is in this manner. ℞. oile of mastick, spike and wormwood ana.ʒ ß. cloues, *Xiloaloes*, maces, and *Calamus Aromaticus.* ana. ϑ.j. *gallia muschata.* ʒ.j. or ʒ.j.ß. if he be rich, because of the deare. nesse thereof, of new waxe as much as sufficeth, make an ointment for the stomach, and a *Scutum* with cotten, and with bands, as it ought to be, and lay it vpon the stomach after the annointing. But to cease the paine in the stomach comming of a hote cause, as of the flowing of choler, which often chanceth in feuers, vse this ointment. ℞. oile of roses .ʒ.j. oile of mittles, or else of quinces. ʒ ß. white sanders and red .ana. ϑ.ij. or ʒ.ß. new waxe washed in endiue water, or in rose water asmuch as sufficeth, and make an ointment for the stomach. Also make a *Scutum* of cotten, and apply it to the stomach after the annointing. In ointments we do exceed or passe the quantitie of .ʒ.j. It is also to be noted, that some do wash oiles with the iuyce or the water of distillation of cold herbes in a hote cause, or in hote iuices in a cold cause or disease. Moreouer note, that many do thinke, that there should be no ointment nor cerate applyed to the stomach without galingale, neither to the heart without mace or saffron, neither to the braine without *Spica Arabica*, nor to the liuer without *Spodium*, or sanders, or wormwood, or other such like things, thinking verily, the nature of the member to be preserued with restrainers, but yet not alwaies in the fore named medicines. For that law and method is to be kept in all causes of contrarietie, which should be broken in medicines, if galingale were added to the aforesaid medicine, because galingale is hote. For truely the nature of the stomach is strengthened sufficiently by the commixing together of stipticke things which are put into the aforesaid ointment, because truly they be temperat in heat, as it appeareth by their nature. Now followeth an ointment very profitable for hardnesse and knobs of the liuer or splene, wherewith these two members are most in danger, in this forme. ℞. the roots of *Althæa*, and the roots of white lillies .ana ʒ.j. leaues of *Malue*, *Bismalue*, & violets. ana. *M.*j. of the flowres of cammomill, melilote, and the tops of dill. ana. *M.* ß. meale of fe-

An ointment for the stomach

Aliud.

Vnguentum.

of flax seed ana. ℥.j. gumme ammoniaci, called *Serapini*. ℥.j. *Bdellium* that is soft and whitish. ℥.ß. turpentine. ℥.iij. gumme of pine tree. ℥.ß. *Storax liquida*. ℥.ij. or. ℥.iij. the marrowe of calues or Hartes-shankes, if you can get it, hennes greace, and duckes greace, oyles of sweet almonds and of Ireos. ana. ℥.j. ß. or ana. as much as sufficeth. Dissolue the gummes with wine and a litle vineger, and to the aforesaied oiles, adde to new waxe as much as sufficeth, then afterward take the said greaces and powders, or meales, or herbes first sodden and brayed, and mixe them altogether, and make an ointment: in this sayd oyntment there be more things that doe mollifie, then there be that dissolue, because the matter of scirrhous knobs doth chiefly require the same. If you will minister the aforesaid ointment for the hardnesse of the liuer, you may adde to it of the branches of wormwood, of roses, of squinance, or of spikenard to preserue the strength and nature of the member. If you will minister it to the spleene, you may mixe with it some *Tamariscus* barke, the roote of capers, or such like. If you minister to the hardnesse of the stomach, adde to wormwood, red roses, *Calamus aromaticus*, mintes and galingale.

CHAP. XXIIII
Of making a Liniment.

LINIMENTVM is an ointment that is soft and liquid, which hath in it litle waxe or none at all. It is also made for the same vse that ointments be made for. The forme of a liniment to cease paine, (as in the pleurisie) is after this manner. ℞. oile of cammomill, and capons greace. ana. ℥. ß. fresh new butter without salt. ℥.ij. a litle waxe washed, and make a Liniment.

CHAP. XXV.
Of making Frontale.

FRONTALE or *Splenium*, be plaisters made to apply to the forehead, either to cease paine in the fore part of the head, or to cause and prouoke sleepe, or to cease paine in the head caused of a hot distemper, as it oftentimes chanceth in feuers. Against cold causes make a *Frontale* (as *Galen* teacheth) of red roses steeped and soked in vineger, laid betweene two linnen clothes, of three fingers breadth, and in length from one care to another: or make it for the same intent, after this fashion. ℞ red roses. p.j. ß. flowres of water lillies and violets. ana. p.j. betonie and melilote. ana. p ß. put all betweene two fine linnen clothes, (if the patient be rich) or betweene two course linnen clothes if he be poore: and make a *Frontale* well sewed (as it ought to be) for the forehead, and the temples: if you will prouoke sleepe, adde to the aforesaid *Frontale*, the leaues of lettuce, or of new white poppie, or of *mandragoras* in the places & times, that you may haue it, but there is but small store of these colde things. At all times you may put in the seedes of white poppie, or the barkes of the heades of white poppie, or lettuce seed, or hanbane seede, as in example. ℞. flowres of water lillies, violets, and melilote. ana. p.j. flowres of lettuce, or white poppie. ana. the 3. part of, *M*. j. or of each of them *M*. j. ß. seed of white poppie ℥.ij.

℥.ij. lettuce ſeed, dill ſeed, and white henbane ſeed.ana.℥.ß.bray all togethe and make a *Frontale* betweene the courſe or fine linnen clothes well ſewed and baſted in right order. To the former *Frontale* melilote and dill ſeed is added to comfort the braine, that it be not hutt with cold things. In the diſeaſes called *Cephalalgia* comming of a cold cauſe, make *Frontalia* of hote herbs and flowres, as ſage, roſemarie, cammomill, bettonie, briony, melilote and ſuch like. *Frontalia*, before they be layed to the forehead, are wont to haue ſome liquor powred vpon them, or to be ayred with ſome vapour, as in example. ℞ the waters of roſes, beronie and balme.ana. ℥.j. of vineger. ℥.ß. commix them, and of the aforeſayed waters, powre a litle portion vppon a burning tyle, or ſome ſuch like thing, and hold the aforeſaid *Frontale* ouer the ſteeme & ſmoke of the ſayd waters. The forehead is oftentimes annointed with many ointments ſeruing for the ſame vſe and purpoſe, that *Frontalia* do ſerue for, as in a hote cauſe, *vnguentum populeon, rubea trochiſchata* diſſolued in water is verie meet for this purpoſe, & yet it is ſeldome in vſe with them at Paris. Many Phyſitions in the old time, in a cold cauſe did annoint with *Mithridatum* and *Aurea Alexandrina*, and ſuch like. In all cauſes (ſaith *Galen* 12. *libro Therapeutices*) you may conueniently annoint with *Oxyrrhodinum*, which is made of oyle of roſes, and ſixe times ſo much vineger, as in example: ℞. oyle of roſes. ℥.j. vineger. ℥.ij. commixe them, ſtirring them in a plate: or elſe thus in hotter cauſes, when as without foreſight the frenſie will breed, then we commixe cold things, as thus. ℞. oile of roſes. ℥.j. oyle of nenuphar. ℥.ß. oyle of poppie. ℥.iij. iuyce of *Solatrum*, or lettuce, or white poppie, water of roſes and of vineger .ana. halfe an ounce, commixe them together, ſtirring them verie long in ſome peece of plate: and annoint the fore part of the head therewith, yea all the head, if there be inflammation of the braine.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of making Cucufa, and Semicucufa.

CVCVFA is made for the cure of the euill called *Cephalalgia*, which is a paine in the head comming of cold, and many times alſo to ſtop reume, as in example. ℞. *Sampſucus*, (that is) marioram, roſemarie, ſtechados both of Araby, and yealow .ana.p j. of redde roſes .p. j. drie citron barkes, graines of Alkermes.ana. ℥.iij. maces, long pepper, quibibes and cloues .ana.℥.ß. Make a powder, and make a *Cucufa* betweene two fine linnen clothes, with a litle cotten baſted betweene, or with flax, or ſcarlet ſcraped, and giue it according to the meaſure. And if the paine lyeth moſt in the fore part of the head, put moſt of the powders or ſpices in that place: likewiſe if it be in the hinder part, do ſo alſo, and if the *Cephalalgia* be in all parts of the head, then commix them equally. But it is called *Semicucufa*, when we prouide but for one part of the head. If we will ſtoppe reumes, then we mixe with it ſtipticke things, or we make a *Cucufa* onely of ſtipticke things, either cold or hote as the cauſe requireth. Therefore we make a *Cucufa* with *milium* burned, or not burned, mirtles, cipreſſe nuts, and *ſandaracha* (commonly called vernice) *viz.* yealow oker, the barke of frankenſence, and ſuch like ſtipticke things.

CHAP. XXVII.
Of making Suffitus.

Vffitus (in Engliſh a perfuming) is made of drie things, to ſtop diſtillations which fall from the braine into the lower partes, and it is made of reſtraining medicines, as thus for example. ℞. red roſes. p. j maſticke. ℥. ß. vernice, that is, yellow oker. ℥. j. mixe them, and make a perfuming for the head, or thus, ℞. *Milium*. p. j. red roſes. p. ß. of vernice and *Olibanum*. ana. ℥. ß. Commixe them and make a perfume for the head. Note that when the diſtillation falleth to the loungs, and thereof commeth ſpittle, then take no perfume by the mouth, becauſe it ſhorteneth the breath, and letteth the ſpitting, and maketh the humours groſſe & thicke: but you muſt perfume the couering of the head, or elſe perfume ſome wooll, and apply it to the head.

CHAP. XXVIII.
Of making Collirium.

Collirium is a medicine that is miniſtred in a liquid forme to heale the eyes. Wherefore, becauſe there be diuerſe euils in the eyes, the Colliries are made of diuerſe faſhions: for you muſt vſe one kind in the beginning of *Ophthalmia*; and another in the ſtate of it, and another in the declination thereof, as it is alſo commonly vſed in the inflammations of other members. Therfore in the beginning you muſt make it of cold and ſtipticke repercuſſiues, as the whites of egges, the ſappe of quince ſeed, and *Pſyllium*, and other things of like vertue: miniſter them alone, or elſe let them be firſt diſſolued with conuenient waters, and afterward applyed, as in this example following: ℞. the white of one egge, and ſtirre it with roſe water, or plantaine water, or with water of balme, or with all theſe waters, make a Collirie, and put into the eye that is pained. Or thus: ℞. the ſappe of quince ſeede drawne out with plantaine water, or roſe water. ℥. j. and mixe them with the white of an egge, and ſtir it a long time with a ſpater, and make a *Collirium*. But if there be no paine nor redneſſe in the eyes, but a certaine vncleanneſſe which ought to be dried vp, then it is good to make Colliries of tutty preparate, and of Aloës waſhed, & of *lapis calaminaris*, & other ſuch like things, which ought to be taken with ſome conuenient licour, except it rather liketh you better to put into the eye the powders of them: for ſo they dry vp and wipe away the filthineſſe the cleaner.

A Collirium in the beginning of Ophthalmia.

CHAP. XXIX.
Of making Naſale or Erthinum.

NAsale and *Erthinum* be medicines which be caſt into the noſe for many cauſes and intents, as to ſtoppe bleeding at the noſe, to prouoke ſneeſings, to cauſe child-birth, or to bring forth the Secundine which is retained within after the birth, and furthermore it purgeth the braine. It may be made many wayes, as in drie powders, which muſt be ſnuffed or blowne vp into the noſe, or it may be made liquide, and then you muſt annoint the noſtrilles within, or you may make it whole & hard, and then it muſt be put vp into the noſe. ℞. the haires that be in a Hares bellie. p. ß. the ſaw-duſt, or mooſineſſe of willow.

A Naſale to ſtanch bleeding at the Noſe.

willow. p. ß. bole armoniacke and *Sanguis Draconis* powdred, ana. ℥. j. cut the haires very smal and mixe them all together, and blow them vp into the nose, or dissolue them al with some stipticke water, or with the iuice of some hearb, or with the white of an egge, and adde to them also (if you please) *Balaustia*; or the rindes of pomegranates, or *Acacia*, all powdred, and with a linnen cloath, make a *Nasale*, and dip it in the aforesaid medicines, and put it into the nose. *A Nasale to prouoke sneesing.*

Sneesings are prouoked by dry powders, snuffed or blowne into the Nose, which be sharpe and biting, as be these, pepper, pellitory, stauisacre, and root of floure deluce powdred. You may commixe the said things with some liquor, annoint the nosethils, or take cloth or silke wound vp together, and dippe it in the aforesaid liquor, and put it into one nosethrill, or into both.

CHAP. XXX.

Of making Apophlegmatismus.

APOPHLEGMATISMVS is a medicine which causeth one to vomite vp fleume: it prouoketh reume out of the braine into the mouth, & it is good to purge the braine. Masticke is commonly vsed in this case, which being long holden in the mouth and chewed, it bringeth forth reume and fleume. Also Sage leaues holden in the mouth doe likewise purge reume by the mouth. Also make *Noduli* of pellitory, pepper, stauisacre, roote of Ireos, and *Panax*, and hold them in the mouth. Furthermore make gargarismes of the same medicines. Also there are ointments made of the same things, wherewith the roofe of the mouth must be annointed, for they by reason of their heat and tartnesse, doe draw fleume and reume into the mouth.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of making Distillations Restoratiue.

DISTILLATIONS be made to sustaine strength and might, when the sicke is so weake, that he cannot digest any hard nourishment. Distillations are of a mixed kind, (that is to say) they are partly food, and partly medicines. They are made for many intents and purposes: for some be made to restraine, as in the fluxe of the belly, some to alter or change, as when they are ministred for feauers to refrigerate, or in cold diseases to make hote: and some doe resist poyson and malignant humors, as in pestilent feauers, and they are made after this manner. ℞. conserues of succory, of roses, of *Simphytum* (that is) cumfrey, of *Cornelus*, of *Mirta*, and of quinces, ana. ℥. ij. powder of Electuaries, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, and *Tria Sandali*, ana. ℥. ij. trochiskes of *Carabe*, of Barberies, and of *Terra sigillata*, ana. ℥. ß. of red corall, and *Lapis hæmatitis*, ana. ℥. j. water of the decoction of one capon or of two, altered with plantaine, knot grasse, moleyne, lettuce, seede of Barberies, *Sumach*, and *Omphacium*. ℔. viij. put all together in a Lembecke with the flesh of two chickens, or of two partriches, or of two turtle doues, or of one capon, or of mo of these, and with the crummes of one white loafe, or of two wet in rose water, and make a distillation in *balneo Mariæ* with a soft fire. ℞. of the aforesaid distillation. ℔ ß iuice of pomgranats. ℥. j or ℥. j. ß. sugar roset. ℥. ij. cinnamon elect. ℥. straine them (as *Hippocrates* *A distillation restoratiue restraining.* *Another.*

teacheth) through a fleaue, and let the ſicke vſe it euery houre. But if you will make a diſtillation to haue a cooling vertue, alwaies obſerue the ſame order and portion that is ſpoken of before, and for the reſtraining conſerues, adde to ſuch as do coole, as conſerues of water lillies, of violets, of roſes, ſuccory, and balme, and likewiſe cold Electuaries, as *Diamargariton frigidum*, and Trochiskes of *Camphora*, alſo alter the decoction of the fleſh with lettuce, ſorrell, purcelaine, ſcarioll, and ſuch like. Moreouer you ſhall make a diſtillation reſtoratiue againſt malignant and peſtilent feauers in this ſort, ℞. conſerues of violets, water lillies, balme, borage, and bugloſſe. ana. ℥.ij. barke of citron condite. ℥.j. roote of *Dictamus* and Tormentill, roote of *Angelica*, and roote of gentian. ana. ℥. ß. powder of *Electuarium Diamargariton frigidum*, all the Sanders, bole Armoniacke, trochiskes of *Camphora*, wood of Aloes. ana. ℥ij. ſcraping of yuory, and harts horne, maces, cinnamon, cloues, and ſeed of *Carduus benedictus*. ana. ℥. j. of old Triacle. ℥.iij. the water of the decoction of two chickens, or of capons altered with ſorrell, ſcabious, lettuce, borage, bugloſſe, quar.iij. put all together in a glaſſen Limbecke, with the fleſh of ſome thinges, and with the crummes of two white loaues infuſed in white wine, and make a diſtillation with a lente and ſoft fire, in conuenient order as is requiſit, or thus. ℞. of the foreſayd diſtillation. ℔.ß. *Syrupus de acetoſitate Citri*. ℥.ij. commixe them together, and let the ſicke vſe it euery houre.

A diſtillation reſtoratiue cooling.

Againſt malignant & peſtilent feauers.

Another.

The end of the ſeuenth Booke.

THE

THE VIII. BOOKE OF COMPOVND MEDICINES.

The Preface.

We haue found by experience, that notable men in times past which haue become famous in the practise & exercise of Phisicke and Chyrurgery, haue bestowed chiefe care and great diligence to store vppe for their vse (as treasures) certaine peculiar remedies for euery hard malady, both to encrease and preserue the worthinesse and renownednes of their good name, by the prosperous successe of their labours. The which remedies, although euery of them prouided to be made at home, and tooke them for secrets, yet notwithstanding in space of time and number of yeares, either by death, or entreaty, or for money, or through change, or other manifold meanes, they haue bene made knowen and published. Whereuppon others the rather minding the publicke vtility of men, thought good to gather together the dispersed compositions of medicines then euery where knowen, and indeuoured themselues to transfer out of the most famous authors, the best and most receipts into their bookes of Phisicke. And by these means truely did Seribonius Largus, Actuarius, Nicolaus Nerepsus, *and* Nicolaus Præpositus, *make their workes. By this industry it could not but come to passe, that out of diuerse authors many receiptes not much vnlike were taken tending to one end, as syrupes of like effect, and many medicines of* Aloe, *nor fewer of* Scammonie *or* Colocynthide, *or* Turpetho, *all which differ onely in way of composition, or for the variety of certaine simples. And softning and scouring Electuaries, also there be many, whose chiefest force is of* Aerugo, *and which differ by a sole change of other simples, as is granted to euery authors iudgement. So then many things haue bene heaped together, the most part whereof haue bene to no vse. It were much better in euery kind, to choose out*

the best, the other vnprofitable and vnnecessary omitted. But euen in this heaping together of remedies, many diseases remaine voide of all helpe, for the which no fit remedies were inuented: for that diligent care which many haue to gather together euery where medicins (after a sort an imitator and follower of practicke) without choise or method had, doth apply neither fit remedies, nor medicines to the diseases, nor to the sensible griefe ioyned to the sickneſſe, or to their causes, neither doth set downe the kindes of remedies according to the diuersity of diseases: neither at any time weyeth what euery composition hath, either profitable or to no vse, neither pleasant or vnsauory, but receiueth and alloweth for the most part such receipts as haue bene vsed of vnlearned men, commonly without regard of iudgement. And many of those likewise diuerse haue peruerted and depraued, euery man according to his iudgement, so that now there remaineth scantly any certaine kinde or trade of composition for Apothecaries, and that part of Phisicke (as it is not ratified and established) which is most necessary for the cure of diseases: & whereas many haue iudged well of the reformation of that part, I haue done mine endeuour, that the composition of medicines might be set downe in writing according to art, as the simples haue bin in the bookes before. And whatsoeuer of them were profitable and easie for practise, might keepe their old forme: and whatsoeuer were amisse, by vpright iudgement might be brought to better perfection, so that nothing were neither redounding or wanting, necessary to take away the diseases affection incident thereto and cause thereof. Therefore I doe not take out all the compositions vsuall in old writers, but the best only: and oftentimes I put to new, to fill my worke with all kind of medicines, and I cut off many, which contained vnder those, make a confused heap: I haue kept their common names, but yet not with the same simples and dosis euery where, for as much as certaine in many thinges were to bee changed, to make the receipts more fit and pleasaunt for the cure of the malady: and at length, to doe the Apothecaries pleasure, I haue sorted and set in one place the sirupes, in an other the Electuaries, in an other the potions, and whatsoeuer else in their proper place, out of which they may bee easily taken againe, and applied to the practise and vse of curing.

Of

Of Sirupes.

Syrupus acidus simplex: that is, the sharpe simple sirupe, doth prepare all humours, as well hot as cold, and with a certaine force doth attenuate them, doth withholde or restraine the corruption, doth mittigate the heate of choler, and asswage the burniug of agues and thirst, sitteth at liberty, and scoureth the passages through the body obstructed, and doth piercingly enter into all partes, as also after a purgation it moueth sweat and vrine. ℞. *aquæ purissima*. ℔. iiij. *Sacchari albi*. ℔. v. Boile them so long as they cast out fome or skumme, and to the consumption of halfe the water: and then poure to them *Aceti vini albi*. ℔. iij. Boile them then againe to the thickenesse of a syrupe.

In Syrupum acidum Scholia Guil. Plantij.

THe barbarous titles and names, doe apparauntly argue, that Sirupes and Iuleps and many other as well simple as compound medicines, were the inuentions of the Arabians. But many yeares before them, the old Grecians had of the same matter, and for the same vse their *Apozemata*, (that is, decoction of water and herbes) in stead of sirupes, which because they were fitly applied, as well to prepare the bodies as humours to purging, were of them termed *propotismata*, as if you would say, potiõs before purging, because that according to the direct order of curing, they make a way for purging medicins. So *Galen* in *mulso*, that is, wine and hony sodden together, and *Oximellite*, that is, hony, vineger, and water boiled together, doth incoct *Origanum*, hysope, peniroyall, and calamint, to the preparing of the body to be purged. And if he be an author of credite, *Archigenes*, *Antonius Musa*, and many other auncient Phisitions did make such like sweete confections of potions for sicke folke of the iuice of cicory, dill, flouredeluce, and celidony, and such like herbes, tempred together with wine and hony by decoction, for diuerse diseases of the liuer and other parts affected. And *Dioscorides* did boile the rootes, leaues, and toppes of plantes, and did straine the liquor boiled, and then ministed it either alone, or else sweetned with *mulsa* or hony, or to bring it out of knowledge did decoct it to the thickenesse of hony. So that these three *Apopozema*, *Syrupus*, and *Iulepus*, differ onely in the manner of conditure, that is, making them pleasaunt to the taste. For in *Apozemate*, because that vppon occasion sodainely and out of hand, for the most part it is ordained to be disseuered into three or foure parts, to bring it to a seasonable sweeteneſſe, it shall be sufficient if he take the third part of sugar or hony, or somewhat more then the third part of sugar, in respect of the strained decoction and purified iuice. But the sirupes, to the intent they may be longer kept, require a perfect coction, and therefore it is meete to haue so much, or very litle lesse sugar or hony, as there is of the strained decoction or purified iuice. But because the Iulep is more thinner, penetrating and pleasaunt then the two before, it shall be sufficient enough if it haue the sixth part of sugar, or in stead thereof the like quantity of a conuenient sirupe, so that there be somewhat more then two parts of the sugar, in respect of the decoction prepared, or distilled waters. To all these potions made of decoctions and the iuice of plants, and frutes, sugar, and hony

be mingled, not onely for their preſeruation, or for their ſweeteneſſe and pleaſauntneſſe in taſte and ſauour, but alſo for the proper force of hony and ſugar, which they impart vppon theſe decoctions. For ſith theſe two be almoſt daily vſed, and familiar vnto vs, not onely for ſauce, but alſo as meates, both waies the potions to which theſe ſhall bee mingled, doe quicken and ſtirre vppe the naturall ſtrength, aſtonied, or dulled and languiſhing in the ſickeneſſe, and doe comfort the naturall heate, which alone doth concoct and mitigate diſeaſes, and by extenuating groſſe matter, ſcouring ſlimy, and making a riddaunce of obſtruction, they cauſe eaſie purgations: and theſe faculties come to the decoctions or potions of the ſugar and hony, which decoctions notwithſtanding of them ſelues doe much auaile to diuerſe vſes, the commodities whereof I will declare in deſcribing eache of them, by obſeruing that order which both the trade of compounding doeth require, and the methode of curing doth preſcribe. For ſimple is by nature before the compound, and the right order of miniſtring medicines well, beareth by order one thing to be propounded and to bee vſed before an other. We beginne this Booke of more ſimple medicines, and of ſuch as by direct order of curing are vſed before others, minding to obſerue the ſame order in all this booke, beginning with the ſharpe ſimple ſyrupe; for in this place we ſpeake not of *Apozemata* and Iuleps, but onely of ſuch as are kept a long time of Apothecaries; and further, *Apozemata* agreeing to the diſeaſes of euery part, haue bene handled before. And although *Condita*, commonly called conſetues, and of herbes and fruites certaine well ſeaſoned iuices, called of the Grecians ἀπόχυλα, be more ſimple then ſyrupes, and therefore might ſeeme the rather to be ſpoken of before, yet becauſe for the moſt part they be ordained after purgations, to the keeping or getting of the ſtrength of the partes, therefore my minde was to deferre them to another place, the methode of curing ſo requiring: and ſyrupes were inuented to haue in a readines ſo oft as occaſion chaunceth, becauſe that herbes and other rootes, and frutes alwaies be not ready at hand, and ſometime when they be at hand, neceſſity ſo vrgeth, that there is no leyſure to make of them *Apozemata*, and Iuleps. In the firſt place the compoſition of ſyrupes is ſet downe, which are fit to prepare humours for purging, then after, ſuch as be meet to purge the remnants of the parts, and to keepe or preſerue their ſtrength. And this generally of ſyrupes. Particularly the ſharpe ſimple ſyrupe was not to be made only of vineger and ſugar, as other ſharpe ſyrupes bee, but alſo of water, to mitigate the ſtrength and ſharpneſſe of vineger. Heed muſt be taken that in ſtead of white vineger, diſtilled be not put in, which being moſt ſharpe doth pierce and pinch the other parts to no ſmall annoyance of the receiuer. Heed likewiſe muſt be taken that no more quantity of vineger be put in: for this meaſure was thought meet and equall. But if any ſuſpect the ſharpneſſe of the vineger (leaſt through his piercing cold bodies of tender conſtitution, as children and women, and in women chiefly, their wombe ſhould bee harmed, for according to *Hippocrates*, vineger is noiſome to the wombe) they may when they vſe it by mixture of ſome ſweete or diſtilled water, or ſome meet decoction, make the ſyrupe more delaied, or in ſtead of that vſe *Oxy. ſaccharo*, a ſyrupe of vineger and ſugar. The

ſharpe

ſharpe compound ſyrupe is not here deſcribed, leaſt I ſhould burthen the Apothecaries with vaine loſſe, for by putting to a portion of ſyrupes to rootes, it will be a compound ſeruing for the ſame vſe. This was my purpoſe, to propound the beſt compoſitions of all other to euery chiefe kinde of diſeaſe, and cauſe that nothing ſhould be wanting of remedy. But to heape together a vain friuolous heape of medicines euery where, after the faſhion which doe fill vnconſiderately papers, with vnknowen and vnapproued remedies, I thought it too much a burthen for Apothecaries, and a worke not plaine, but full of confuſion for ſtudents.

Syrupus è ſucco limonum.

THe ſirupe of the iuice of Limons, doth leſſe then the ſharpe ſirupe extenuate and pierce, and yet the vehemency of choler and heat of the bodie and thirſt, it more aſſwageth and doth more reſtraine the corruption of hoate feuers, and the malady of peſtilent agues, it defendeth likewiſe the ſtrength of the mouth, of the ſtomach, and heart, and principall parts, it expelleth lotheſomneſſe, vomiting, defection of the minde, and ſwouning for feebleneſſe, peculiarly it purgeth the kidneis, and prouoketh vrine. ℞. *ſucci Limonum* purified, and going through a wollen ſtreiner without compulſion freely. ℔. vij. *ſacchari albi* fined. ℔. v. Boile theſe with a ſoft fire into a ſyrupe.

Plantivs.

Syrupe of Limons of the ſharpnes of orenges or citrõs, of tart pomgranats, of *auramus*, of vnripe grapes, of the iuice of ſorrell, of the iuice of barberies and of *ribes*, & al other tart or ſharpe ſirupes be made of iuices, which either by ſeething or by ſtreining be made more cleare and pure. And to the iuices is added like quantity of ſugar or ſomewat leſſe without mixture of any water, becauſe the ſharpe tartnes of the ſirupe, is nothing noiſome but pleaſant, & comfortable to the heart, and it ſhould be delaied likewiſe with leſſe ſugar (as in Iuleps) if the iuices could be long preſerued. There be ſome which purify the iuices by ſeething, or by ſetting them in the heat of the ſun, and fining them with the foming whites of egs, or elſe only by wringing them out lightly, as in wine comming of the grapes before they be preſſed, called in latine *vinum protopum*. And then with fined ſugar. i. boiled with the like quantity of water, & after clarified, and at the laſt concocted to a Iulep, mixing by little and little the one with the other, they ſtir thẽ with a ſpatter vntill they come together, & become as one, or they boile it a litle with ſugar throughly and wel ſod, or els with the beſt ſugar, ſuch as the *maderanũ* is, they boile it ſo long, vntill the ſugar be melted and diſſolued altogether. And hereof the ſirupe of the iuice of Limons, of Citrons, the ſharpe ſimple ſirupe, and the roſate Iulep become very white. As for the ſimple ſirupe of pomegranats, barberies, of (*ribes*) of red vineger to keepe the finenes of their natural colour, muſt not ſo long for mixture ſake be beaten together with a peſtel. And this order of cõpoſition in the iuices, chiefly of tart frutes taketh place, for other iuices of herbs, of roots, &c. require more perparatiõ to the making of a ſirupe, for they muſt be boiled twiſe, once by thẽſelues almoſt to the conſumption of the 3. part, after when they haue beene purified with ſtreining & ſetling, they muſt be concocted with the beſt ſugar to a ſirupe otherwiſe they doe ſoone corrupt and become filthy. The ſirupes that follow

made of ſharpe iuices are in force like the former, as the ſirupe of the Tart, iuice of Citrons, the ſirupe of ſharpe pomegranates, the ſirupe of *Aurantijs*, the ſirupe of *Omphacio*. i. vnripe grapes, the ſirupe of the iuice of ſorrell. But peculiarly the ſirupe of ſharpe citrons doeth quench the heate of a ague, and reſtraineth the corruption and malady thereof. The ſirupe of pomegranates doth corroborant the ſtomach, and the chiefe entrals of a man, as the ſplene, the liuer, the loong, &c. it reſtraineth vomiting and mitigateth ſwouning. The ſirupe (*de Aurantijs*) doth more comfort the heart, and is more pleaſant. The ſirupe (*de Omphacio*) doth more quench thirſt. The ſyrupe of the iuice of ſorrell doth allay choler and open obſtruction. The ſirupe of *Rines* is more ſweete in taſt and more aſtringent. The way or order of making them all is alike, for in the iuice of euery one of them purged, a litle leſſe ſugar muſt be diſſolued, and theſe two put in a tinne veſſell, muſt be ſet on the fire, and boiled by little and little to a ſirupe.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex.

Oxyſaccharum ſimplex, hath a mixed nature or force, both to attenuate, to abate, to dull, to corroborate or comfort, and is good againſt a diuerſe mixture of humours, and vnſtable agues ariſing thereof. ℞. *Succi mali punici acidi*. i. ſowre pomegranates. ℥. viij. *Aceti*. ℥. iiij. *Sacchari albi & puri*. ℔. j. Boile them to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

Oxyſaccharum hath the ſame vertue that the ſowre ſirupe hath, but not in like force, ſauing it excelleth to comfort and roborate, and therefore the vſe thereof is more ſafer in diſeaſes chaunсing in ſommer and tender bodies, then of the ſharp ſirupe. Leaſt ſo great variety of ſirupes ſhould be retianed in vain. I omit, *Oxyſaccharum compoſitum*, *Oximeli compoſitum*, and *Oxymeli Scylliticum*. i. made of *Scylla*, for when they are thought good to be vſed, the Phiſition may make and preſcribe them ſpeedily and fitly, *Oxyſacchary*. ℥. j. *ſirupi maioru è radicibus*. ℥. ij. *vel ſirupi adianti*. ℥. j. ß.

Oxymell ſimplex.

Oxymell ſimplex, doth extenuate groſſe humours, and doth ſcoure out ſlimy matter, doth open old obſtructions, doth expell from the cheſt thicke matter, and is good againſt *Aſthma*. i. obſtructions of the lungs with fleume whereof ariſeth ſhortneſſe of winde, and rebellious agues. ℞. *aquæ puriſſimæ, mellis optimi*. ana. ℔. iiij. Boile them vntill with exhaling halfe the water bee conſumed, and then poure in of *Aceti Acerrimi*. i. very ſharpe vineger. ℔ ij. and let them be boiled againe by euaporation to a meet conſiſtaunce. That which is made more liquide, hath *aquæ puriſſimæ*. ℔. j. *mellis optimi*. ℥. iiij. *aceti*. ℥. j. ß. Let theſe be boiled by foming out eaſily their corruption.

Oximell Scyllyticum,

Oxymell Scyllyticum, doeth more forceably attenuate groſſe matter, and is good for all things we haue ſpoken of, and it is made of vineger of *Scylla*, which

which is put to hony boyled and clarified by foming and ſodde as the other, both become compound by putting to double portion of the ſirupe *è radicibus maioris, Plantius.* We haue leſſe vſe of *Oximell*, that is, ſweete vineger, then the auncient Phiſitions had, who then hadde not inuented the ſharpe ſirupe, (the power of cleanſing onely excepted wherein hony excelleth) ſugar hath other vertues not much inferior to *Oximell*, and beſides other effectes, is very good againſt agues. But ſweet vineger which euery where is in vſe in Apothecaries ſhoppes, is very vnſauery, whether it be full of the too much groſneſſe, comming of ouer ſeething thereof, or of the too much ſharpeneſſe which is not ſo much qualified and dulled with the mixture of our hony as of ſugar. For although you delay and diſſolue that thicke *Oximell*, with ſweete water, or ſome ſet decoction, yet you ſhall neuer make it ſo pleaſaunt to drinke as the ſowre ſirupe. That which is made of many more thinner for preſent occaſion, and is called *Oxymell Galeni*, is more pearcing into euery part, and more pleaſaunt. For whereas for the little boiling it doth not thicken, but the thinneſſe of the water is therein retained which the thinneſſe of the vineger doth further, and all the filthineſſe of the hony partly by skumming, partly by clarifying is taken away: therefore it becommeth moſt thinne and moſt cleare, eſpecially if it haue bene made with white vineger and white hony, and with the little ſharpeneſſe of vineger, it becommeth nothing vnpleaſaunt to the taſter, but it is found by experience, that by too much vſe, & too great a draught, thereof, the ſtomach is annoied chiefly in thoſe, whoſe mouth of the ſtomach is by nature feeling and ſenſible. Wherefore there is no ſafe vſe thereof in agues, whether you make it ſowrer or ſweeter. Chooſe good hony which is betwixt thicke and thinne, moſt ſweete and ſharpe in taſte, and therewith making a ſweet taſte and biting the tongue (as it were) with pulling, in colour pale or ſomewhat red and cleare, moſt fragrant and new, and which taken out and handled, for his cammy humour is not diſſeuered or pulled into parts, heauy in weight or ponderous. Wherefore that which is in the bottome of the veſſell is better then that which ſwimmeth aboue, and it doth caſt vp litle skum in boiling. But in our daies there hath bene brought the white and ſweeteſt hony, and *aromaticke* indeede moſt liquide and fluent, and making a white and hard cruſt vpon it out of *Luſitania*, and *Gedano* to Andwerpe: hony as good as either the *Atticke* or *Siculum*, but they counterfaite that hony (as many other things elſe) and forge another in ſtead thereof, by often waſhing and whiting, which deceit of theirs you may eaſilie find out by the vnſweetnes of ſmelling, and vnſauorineſſe of taſting, then next this both in goodneſſe and in colour, is the *Narbonenſe* hony, and in thoſe regions alſo our country hony, that which commeth out of the combes freely, and is commonly called Virgine hony, is beſt. The worſer hony by boyling is made better, and the vſe of the skummed is alwaies fitter, except by long abiding in the ſtomach it ſwell it, and become vehement hote and augment choler. Hony is good for children that haue no wormes, and for old men, for it cauſeth order and ſtate, and ſtirreth vp and preſerueth naturall heat, it prolongeth old age, and is euill for cholericke and young men, becauſe it is eaſily turned to choler.

Syrupus è Cichorio.

SYrupus è Cichorio doth coole moderately, doth comfort all the *viscera*, that is, principall partes within, as the heart, liuer, and loong, with an easie binding, and doth set at liberty the obstructions of the liuer, and other parts by scouring and opening, it doth quench choler, and maketh it meete for purgation, in the beginning of hot pestilent and vehement feuers, it is meete and holesome. ℞. *totius intubi agrestis*. i. of the whole Cichory. ℥. iiij. *radicum oxalidis graminis, & asparagi*, bruised. ana. ℥. ij. *lichenis, eupatorij, intubi satini*, commonly called Endiue, *seriolæ, cicerbitæ, lactucæ, satinæ & agrestis, adianti albi, adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, saxifragi, luporum cassitæ*. ana. *M*. j. Boile them in x. ℔. of water, vntill it come to vj. in the streined decoction, dissolue *saccharis albissimi*. ℔. vj. and boile all these together to a clarified sirupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the sirupe of *Cichory*, of the description of *Nicolaus Florentinus* is oft in vse, and both their sirupes do consist of a confused heape of simples as well cold as hote without order, and of reubarbe, that it is hard to tell to what vse they may be applied: not without good reason, the description is here chãged & framed to those ends which be here expressed in the title, to the which neither of the other can be applied for the hot rootes. If it be desired to be somewhat tart or sharpe, there may be mixed to it the third part of *acetosus sirupus*, or *oxy. saccharum*, or if it must be somewhat hotter, or more piercing, as against many diseases heaped together, so much or half so much of the sirupe of roots, if reubarbe must bee at any time put to it, it rather seemeth meet to be put thereto in, at the time of vsing then making therof, because the vertue of reubarbe to purge, both by boiling & long keeping, vanisheth away, and this sirupe made rather for preparation then purgation, and there is more strength of roborating in reubarbe, then that well doth agree to a preparatiue potion. But neither in the time of ministring reubarb can cõmodiously be intermixed, *viz.* the grosnesse of the sirupe hindring the operation of purging, either by making it very litle or else none at all: and for the same thickenesse the sirupe it selfe is not so effectual for those purposes, for which it was described, as if it were dissolued and made more sweeter with some conuenient decoction, therfore they worke not for any commodity of the sicke, but onely of losse which to euery pound of the sirupe doe employ ℥. j. of Rewbarbe, and do not only double and triple, but also mixe by measure foure or sixe times so much, contrary to the credite of all bookes which for euery pound do bid and will only ℥. iiij. to be mingled. And they also be farre wide which doe affirme that this sirupe must be made of the only iuice of Cichory, no otherwise then the sirupe of the iuice of Citrin, for although therein they haue the trueth, when they account a heape of compound simples contrary one to an other, to be reiected in the composition of medicines, and therefore do refuse the compositions of *Ghuil. hel. placenti & Nicola. fioren.* of Cichory as contrary, and made rashly, and without reason, yet notwithstanding the composition of the iuice of Cichory must not take place in stead of them, when as it cannot truely be ordained for that vse, to the which the sirupe of Cichory by experience is found to auaile, for whether

whether when choler muſt bee prepared to purgation or the ſtopping of the liuer and other parts muſt be opened or you haue occaſion to coole, and moderatly roborate, as in the beginning of vehement and peſtilent agues; which of theſe I pray you can this ſirupe doe or bring to paſſe, which firſt by much and long beating and hard ſtraining is made thicker, and then after by it ſelfe boiled to the conſumption of the 3 part, and after concocted with ſugar to the groſneſſe of a ſirupe, by euaporation hath almoſt loſt all the vertue, as much almoſt becommed as meere ſugar? It is farre otherwiſe in the decoction and iuice of fruites, eſpecially ſharpe, as the iuice of Orenges, Citrons, Limons, Pomegranates, and ſuch like, for they ſhed their whole force vppon ſirupes, whereas neither by preſſing their tenuity, neither by concoction, they leeſe their faculty, as we haue noted in other places aboue. And decoctiõs becauſe they haue the force of many ſimples, and for the water be more thin and fluxible doe not thicken, and leeſe their vertue in boyling: whereupon the ſirupes conſiſting of theſe decoctions, be more meet and amiable to prepare the body to purging, but they which be made of their iuices after purgation (the body being now open pliant) be better adiudged to thoſe vſes, (which I thinke) doth repeate in deſcribing euery one of them.

Syrupus Intubi domeſtici.

Syrupus Intubi domeſtici, doth allay choler, doth coole the liuer, and purge and ſtrengthen it, and cureth the iaundies & diſeaſes comming of the obſtructions of the liuer, very commodious after purgations: and when the matter of an ague and other diſeaſes is after a ſort well and throughly digeſted, ℞. *Endiuiæ recentis, ſeriolæ, lachenis, lactucæ, agrimonij, cicerbitæ, hieracij*. ana. *M*. j. ß. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum*. ana. ℥ j. *ſandali albi & rubri, contuſarum roſarum rubrarum* ana. ℥. ij. Boile them in viij. pound of water to the halfe, to the ſtrained liquor put of white ſugar iiij. pound. Seeth them together all againe, and skum and fine them as they boile, adde therto of the iuice of Endiue purged by ſetling ℔. j. afterward of the pure iuice of pomegranats without dregs ℥. iiij. Boile them all together to the hight of a ſirupe

Plantius.

The Author thought this ſirupe of Endiue meete to be made and retained, although it were the inuention of an vncertaine Author, becauſe it ſeemed to be deſcribed vpon good ground of reaſon, and therefore will be more effectuall, then if it were made of the ſole iuice of Endiue, as many would haue it. After the body be purged, it auaileth all the diſeaſes of the liuer, and to purge the reſidents of cholericke malladies, and chiefely neceſſary for the ſcab and the itch.

Syrupus Byzantinus.

Syrupus Byzantinus hath a mixed vertue both to addreſſe and purge the liuer and ſplene, and that after purgation. For the yellow and blacke Iaundies, and the remnants of agues eſpecially good. ℞. *Succi intubi ſatini & apij*. ana. ℔. ij. *ſucci lupi ſalicſtarij & bugloſſi*. ana. ℔. j. In ſeething cleanſe them till they waxe cleare, and make a ſirupe with iij. pound of ſugar.

PLANTIVS.

The Interpreter of *Mesue* denieth the vse of the sirupe *Byzantine* in agues, before the seuenth day, for commonly immediatly at the beginning of compoũd agues, the Phisitions vse *Syrupus acetosus simplex*, with the decoction of fennell, and the third part of hony *rosat*, but after purgation, because it mightely scoureth the relickes of the diseases *Hepaticke* and *Splenaticke*. This sirupe *Byzantinus* is good to cure all maladies of both the forenamed intrals, which be hard to be dissolued and rebellious to be cured, as the blacke and yellow iaundies, especially by putting thereto sirupe *è radicibus*, the compound is omitted because it doth depraue the force of the simple, and hath too much vineger.

Syrupus Scolopendrij.

Syrupus Scolopendrij doth extenuate, mollifie, and make fluent, grosse, and earthy melancholy, it openeth the stopping of the splene, and doth abate the swelling thereof, and is speciall good for melancholy quartanes, and continuall agues. ℞. *Polipodi è quercu, radicum vtriusque buglossi, corticis radicum capparis, corticum thamarisci, singu.* ℥. ij. *scolopendrij veri. M.* iij. *lupi salictarij, cassuthe, capilli veneris, melissophilli, singulo. M.* ij. *Coquantur in aque.* ℔. ix. vntill there remaine v. put to the streined decoction of white sugar. ℔. iiij. Boile them to a fined and cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus Scolopendrij, the author here to this place hath referred well and for great vse made, because there was no sirupe of the old Phisitions description meete to prepare earthy and massie melancholy. The true harts tongue is *Asplenium Dioscoe, & officinarum ceterache.*

Syrupus è radicibus.

Syrupus è radicibus doth scoure, extenuate, and prepare slimy and grosse fleume, it openeth the obstructions of the liuer, and all the other entrals, it asswageth swellings, taketh away the euill colour of virgines, prouoketh vrine, and doth quite make an end of agues hardly dissolued and olde diseases. ℞. *radicum apij, fœniculi, ruscí & asparagi.* ana. ℥. iiij. *radicum capparis & rubie.* ana. ℥. ij. *Coquantur in* ℔. x. *hydromelytis diluti*, that is, dissolued vntill they become to ℔. vj. *& cum sacchari* ℔. v. make a cleare sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there be confected of rootes two sirupes, one of the two rootes pearcely and fennell, he omitted of set purpose as nothing effectuall and easie to be come by, if neede require, and thought meete to retaine the other as of greater vertue: To which he hath vppon good consideration added the rootes of *Capparis & rubie*, that it might be more effectuall for diuerse vses. He omitteth vineger, because for the most part it is desired without it, and if need require, a portion of the sharpe sirupe may easily by prescript be mingled therto, and somewhat likewise it may be temperated with the mixture of other sirupes.

Syrupus

Syrupus Adiantinus.

Syrupus Adiantinus doth with a moderate heat easily and gently deuide and scoure all humours alike, in what part of the body soeuer they be agreeable to euery disease beginning, euery nature, age, region, and women with childe. ℞. *Adianti albi. M.* iij. *Adianti nigri, adianti simplicis, saxifragi, betonicæ, pimpimellæ, asplenij.* ana. *M.* ij. *Coquantur in aquæ.* ℔. viij. vntill they consume to v. And in the pressed decoction, dissolue or melt *sacchari albi* ℔. iiij. *mellis optimi expurgati.* ℔. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Sith there is no artificiall description extant of maidenhaire, there is commodiously intermingled amongst the other which is compoũd of chosen simples auailing altogether to diuers effects by their temperature. Wherfore this sirupe of all other for his manifold and diuerse vse, is of most operation, *polichrestus.* i. very good for the diseases of all parts, especially of the brest, the liuer, the splene, the kidneis, and al diseases of the wombe in all ages & natures. And the prerogatiue also therof is sueh, that it doth make soluble whosoeuer vseth it any space, and it doth not only prepare humors, but also purge them when they be prepared, and especially grosse fleum and choler, as certaine new Phisitions and we also haue obserued in practise oftentimes: the which effect likewise the decoction *omnium adiantorum*, but especially the white hath, although contrariwise *Dios.* teacheth that it bindeth, but they which doe mingle either raisons or liquorice *cum adiantis* into the sirupe, do restraine the large & ample nature there for diuers vses to some peculiar effect, and by mixture doe dull the force therof in extenuating and scouring. They should therfore more fitly make this sirupe of the sole decoction of *adiantinorum* which might be reserued as a common matter for euery kinde of griefe, and then the might apply it as need required to the diseases of this or that part. As for example, to the breast affected with raisons and liquorice decocted, for the liuer with the decoction of *agrimony* or *cichory*, for the splene *asplenij aut tamarasci*, for the kidneis such things as prouoke vrine and breake the stone, for so by a fit and meet decoction, the common nature of the sirupe may likewise be applied to some one part, and his strength augmented with the sole sirupe described is very much effectual. These compositions of sirupes haue bene meet to prepare bodies to purgation: now we must teach what sirupes be good to purge the relickes of euery part.

Syrupus è stœcade.

Syrupus è stœcade is good against the cold diseases of the braine, and nerues or sinewes, as *Paralysis*, the palsey, *Epilepsia*, the falling euill, *Conuulsio*, the crampe, *tremori.* i. quaking and distilling out of the head when it lieth. ℞. *florum stœcados.* ℥. iiij. *thymi, calamynthes, origani.* ana. *M.* j ß. *saluiæ, betonicæ, florum rorismarini.* an. ℥. ß *seminis rutæ, peonæ, feniculi* an. ℥. iij. Boile thẽ in x ℔. of water till the halfe be consumed: when the decoction is strained, boile it againe with hony & sugar, of ech ij. pound, and condite it with cinnamon, ginger, *calamus aromaticus*

of each ℥. ij. which being bound vp in a course cloth with open threds, must be hanged in the sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus è stœcade, because it was not good in working for the head, he hath not without cause put other certaine things, as sage, betony, rosemary, the seedes of rue, piony, and fennell, very profitable for sundry diseases of the braine and sinewes, otherwise I see not wherefore this sirupe ought much to be applied or ordained for the diseases of the braine, sith *stœcados* which is the chiefe in this discription, and is as it were the *basis*, that is, the ground of the sirupe, is rather *hepatica*, that is, good for the liuer, or *splenica*, that is, good for the splene, then *cephalica*, that is, good for the head, for it is chiefly commended for the stopping of all the intrals, the which with his thinne and hot substance, it doth easily open and with the other somwhat astringing earthy quality, doth corroborate all the inward parts. If you want *Calamus aromaticus* for to make it sweete in taste, in stead thereof may be vsed *nux muschata*, which hath singular force to comfort the braine.

Syrupus rosarum succarum.

THe sirupe of dry Roses doeth mitigate the hotte diseases of the braine, it asswageth the thirst, strengthneth the stomacke, causeth sleepe, and stayeth thinne defluxions, ℞. *aquæ simplicis*. ℔. iiij. in the which being made blood warme, soke xxiiij. houres red roses dried ℔. j and after this be strained, dissolue therein white sugar ℔. ij. this done, boile them to the substaunce of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

Certaine Phisitions thincke good to renue the infusion of dry roses twise or thrise, to the intent as they suppose, the force of the sirupe might bee augmented: whereas notwithstanding one onely infusion is for that purpose as effectuall, for in three infusions it is necessary that great store of water be vsed, as for a pound of roses, viij. pound of water, otherwise with manifold maceration the water will either be drunke vp, or with forcible straining will become too thicke, and as for the vertue and strength of the roses, the sirupe will as much draw and drinke vp, by one infusion as by many, as it chaunceth by salt when it is dissolued in water. This sirupe is auaileable in euery fluxe of the belly, and it is of like operation in comforting and strengthning the partes of the body, in agglutinating vlcers, and in mundifying them mildely, both by it selfe, and also ministred with other things.

Syrupus Nymphæa.

THis sirupe of *Nymphæa* mitigateth the heate of the head, frensies, & watchings, procureth sleepe, and lastly asswageth the sharpenesse of distillations, ℞. *Florum Nymphæa recentium*. ℔ ß. *florum violarum* ℥. ij. *foliorum lactucæ*. *M*. ij. *semi lactucæ*. ℥. ß. Adde these before the boiling, *portulacæ*. ℥ ß. *& cucurbitæ*. Boile them in iiij. pound of water till one be consumed, and when it is strained, put thereto of distilled rose water ℔. ß. white sugar ℔. iij. and boile them to a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

The simple sirupe of *Nimphea* is omitted as nothing commodious, and as for the compound sirupe, according to the description of *Franciscius Pedomontanus*, by reason of sundry seedes, vineger, and the iuice of pomegranates, it is nothing conuenient nor commodious to worke these thinges, for which it is required. Wherefore vpon good occasion, here is described another very easie and profitable to those vses which are compounded in the inscription. The floures of that *Nimphea* which hath yellow floures and white root, is to be preferred in the composition of this sirupe.

Syrupus de papauere.

SYrupe of poppy hath the same vertue that *Nimphea* hath, but peculiarly it staieth a grieuous cough and such distillation as doe exasperate the iawes and throte, ℞. *capitum papaueris albi* not throughly riped and new. ℥. viij. *Capitum papaueris nigri recentium* ℥ vj. *Aquæ cœlestis.* ℔. iiij. Boile them to the consumption of halfe, and put thereinto *Sacchari & penidiorum.* ana. ℥. viij Boile them to the consistance of a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

In the simple sirupe of Poppy, there be foure heades of the blacke poppy put in, because it cannot so safely be vsed as the white: as for the compound sirupe of poppy, hauing many lenitiue things, it is therefore omitted and not put in practise, because when necessity requireth it may easily be prepared, by putting to this sirupe, of the sirupe of *imbebino* or *violacco.*

Diacodion.

Diacodion as it procureth sleepe, so it abandoneth the distillations of the braine whithersoeuer it prefieth, it staieth the disentery and other fluxe of the belly. ℞. *Capita papaueris albi* meanely great and meanely ripe *numero* xij. *Aquæ cœlestis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the third part, and when it is strained, put thereto of the best *Sapa*, that is, new wine. ℥. iiij. boiled to the third part, *mellis optimi.* ℥. ij. Boile all these together, put in the end of the decoction, *rosarum rubrarum, valanstiorum, acatiæ, rois culinari tritorum.* ana. ℥. ij. *seminis portulacæ coralli albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

Diacodion is brought into a better fourme, seruing to stay distilations by reiecting certaine vnnecessary and vnpleasant things, *Dios.* to the same purpose boileth the heads of poppy alone in water, to the consumption of halfe, and putting thereto hony and the iuice of *Hypocistis*, hee reduceth it to the consistance of an *oglegma.* As for the heads of the poppy, they must neither be too greene, nor through drinesse too much voide of iuice, but when they beginne through a greene kinde of ripenesse to rattle, they must be gathered for this composition. Whereuppon they be tearmed of the Grecians Κωδεια & Κωδια

that is, the whiskling heades of the poppy, for that this compoſition through too much thickneſſe may be vnpleaſant to ſome: when it is to be taken, it may be delaied with the decoction of barley, or ſome other thing of like conueniency: and alſo if ſleepe muſt bee procured or daunger be imminent of a ſharpe and thinne fluxion of exaſperation both, to ſtay and aſſwage that, you may lawfully augment the force of *diacodion* with a freſh decoction of the ſeeds of poppy, or with the thicke iuice ſtrained out of the decoction of barley. Neither is it to bee dredleſt harme ſhould betide to the body by poppy, notwithſtanding it be recorded by authors to be cold in the fourth degree, ſith that ſundry nations do vſe with meats after the faſhion of herbes the tender ſprings of poppy, and doe feede of an oile preſſed out of the ſeeds thereof: and in preparing dainties, they ſprinckle the ſeeds thereof vpon tarts and cakes made to pleaſe the taſt without any annoyaunce or heauineſſe through ſleepe. And in ſuch like order the Ægyptians vſe to make the taſte pleaſaunt, *Oleum ſeſaminum & ſeſamum* and *petronius*, grounding vppon that cuſtome vſed in the latine tong, for an eloquent and pleaſaunt oration compoſition of wordes, All his ſayings and doings are as it were ſprinckled with poppy and *Seſamus*, for both the liquor of poppy, called in Greeke *Opium*, and the iuice wrung out of the leaues, and heades tearmed in Greeke *mecqnium* conſiſt not of an vniforme, but of manifold ſubſtance, one watery and very cold, another airy temperate, the third hote, bitter, and ſweet ſmelling. The firſt is more apparant in greene and tender poppies, the two laſt in dry. As for the *opium* or rather *meconium* which is brought to vſe, it is altogether counterfaite, and through a ſecrete quality is noiſome, and therefore in no caſe to be vſed, though it be neuer ſo artificially corrected. For whereas *opium* is by great labour in like quantity confected of the milke of the ſeedes of wilde poppy and *meconium*, without any trouble is abundantly preſſed out of the leaues. The factors which ſeek after gaine and lucre, may eaſily counterfaite *opium*, or in ſtead thereof bring out of *Apulia* and *Spaine*, *meconium*.

Syrupus violarum.

THe compound ſirupe of violets doth mitigate a ſharpe diſtillation, doeth aſſwage horſeneſſe, grieuous cough and roughnes of the arteries, the pluriſie, and doth quench thirſt. ℞. *florum violarum recentium.* ℥. ij. *Seminis Cydoniorum, & maluæ.* ana. ℥. j. *Zezipha, mixaria.* ana. ℥. x. *decocti cucurbitæ vel ſeminis eius.* ℔. v. Boile them to the halfe, and with ℔. ij. of ſugar, compound them to a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

In this compound ſirupe there is nothing chaunged, becauſe hee thought it compounded artificially, ſeruing commodiouſly by ſmoothing, cooling, moiſtening, againſt all the heate and roughneſſe of the arteries, as alſo it appeaſeth the vehement burning of the vrine, and the vehement torments of the raines, for the herbe and leaues of the violet boiled, haue a piping faculty in them, the ſeede is good to purge choler in ſuch wiſe as reubarbe doeth: in the midſt of the flowre there is a thing ſomewhat yellowiſh, which is recorded

to

to be helpefull for the *Anguia* and the *Epilepsia* in children if it be drunke with water. The flowre of violet and a simple sirupe made of it, by infusion once or twise, doeth mitigate, asswage, and scoure, and therefore is very necessary in a Pleurisie, and bringeth vnder blacke burnt choler, and the noysome vapours arising thereof, and thereby doth set at quiet the *Symptomata* arising thereof, namely, the headach, watchings, and dreaming, and expelleth the heauinesse of the heart, it temperateth hotter and drier medicines by mitigating them commodiously. Whereas then these qualities be singular, the sirupe confected of the infusion of fresh violettes, may bee iustly registred amongst the sirupes seruing to many vses. This infusion wrung out of pleasaunt or well smelling violettes dried somewhat in the shadow as it behoueth, and soaked in luke warme water, if it be boiled to the consistency of a sirupe, may be kept the continuance of a yeare and more without any filth or corruption, to the vses tofore repeated, and is to be taken both before & after purgation. As for those which reiterate the soaking of the violettes and roses nine times in the confection of the sirupe of violets and roses, they labor in vaine, for they cannot become lesse effectuall in working, though they vse (at the most) infusion but foure times, as wee will declare to Apothecaries in the forme of making medicines. As for the sirupe of liquorice, it seemeth nothing commodious, because it is of little vertue, and for that it is contained in the sirupe of hysope; and such great variety of sirupes bringeth rather confusion then commodity to students.

Syrupus Zizyphorum.

SYrupus Ziziphorũ, accomplisheth the same which the sirupe of violets doth, but with more efficacy: both of thé are conuenient in the beginning of the disease. ℞. *Ziziphorum nume.* lx. *mixaria nume.* xx. *florum violarum, adianthi albi, hordei à cortice liberi, glycyrrhizæ.* ana ℥. vj. *semi. maluæ, cydoniorum, semi. papaueris albi, melonum & lactucæ, tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. iij. The seedes of *cydoniorum*, of mallowes, and tragacanth bound vp in a course cloth, must be boiled with the rest in. ℔. v. of water, to the consumption of halfe with. ℔. ij. of white sugar to the substance of a sirupe.

Syrupus de Hyssopo.

SYrupus *de Hyssopo* by a gentle and light mitigation, doeth purge and aridde the breast and lungs of all hot and cold maladies, doth concoct the spittle or fleame, and maketh it more easie to be auoided, by attenuating and scouring it. And lastly, is good as well for the aggreeuances, as approaching or inclination of *peripneumonia à pleuritu.* ℞. *Hyssopi arefacti.* ℥. j. ß. *radicum polypodij quercini, fœniculi, glycyrrhizæ, semi. carthami.* ana. ℥. j. *hordei expurgati, adianthi albi.* ana. ℥. ß. *passularum purgatarum.* ℥. j. ß. *ficus siccas, palmulas pingues.* ana. x. *nume.* Boile them in. ℔. vj. of water to the consumption of halfe, and boile the strained iuice thereof into a sirupe, with a pound and a halfe of hony and *saccbari.* ℔. j. ß. make a sirupe.

PLANTIVS.

The deſcription of the ſirupe of hyſope, remaineth vnuaried, ſaue that in ſtead of the roote of ſmallage, there is ſubſtituted the roote of *polypodij*, and for the roote of percely, the ſeed of garden ſaffron, which be much more fitte and commodious. Certaine mitigatiues be abſtracted which be ſufficient enough in the ſirupe of violettes and *iuiubes*, the rather to make the force of the ſirupe more ſcouring.

Syrupus de praſſio.

SYrupe of horehound cutteth mightily, attenuateth, ſcoureth, and purgeth the diſeaſes of the breaſt and the liuer, it is excellent good againſt inueterate diſeaſes of groſſe and ſlimy fleume, as for *aſthma*, *tuſſis vetus*, *empyrema*, and alſo is auaileable for *peripneumonia* and *pleuritis*, already inclined. ℞. *Praſſij albi recentis.* ℥. ij *glycyrrhizæ*, *polipodij quercini*, *radicum apij & fœniculi*. ana. ℥. ß. *adyanthi albi*, *hyſſopi*, *origani*, *calaminthæ*, *ſtœues*, *ſatureiæ*, *tuſſilaginis*. an. ℥. vj. *ſemi. aniſi*, *& bombacis*. ana. ℥ iij. *vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum*. ℥. ij *ficus paſſas pingues*. x. *numer*. Boile them in viij. pound of *Hydromel* delaied, to the conſumption of the halfe, boile the ſtrained iuice into a ſirupe with hony ℔. ij. and whit ſugar. ℔. ij. Seaſen and ſweeten it with an ounce of the powder of the root of the Florentine Flowredeluce.

PLANTIVS.

The ſirupe of horehound ſeemed confuſed of ſo great a mixture of lenitiue, ſcouring, and cutting ſimples, that it was difficile to declare to what vſe it ſerued, which may be alſo affirmed of many other ſirupes, whichbee g athered out of diuerſe Authors without any methode or reaſon. Wherefore ſith before hath bene propunded the ſirupe of violets and *iuiubes*, for moiſtning and ſufficient lenitiue, and the ſirupe of hyſope for ſcouring moderately, cutting and purging the diſeaſes of the breaſt, the Author thought it neceſſary vppon good ground, to annect this ſirupe of Horehound being of a very good deuiding and ſcouring faculty, thereby the rather to cure extreame and rooted diſeaſes, which notwithſtanding who ſo will, may temper with the mixture of the other.

Syrupus Symphriti.

SYrupus *Symphriti*, doth purge mildely and eaſily the quitture and filthineſſe of conſuming and vlcerated lungs, without feare of any iſſue out of bloud, and doth alſo corroborate the lungs. ℞. *radicum & cymarum ſymphriti maioris & minoris*. ana. *M*. iij. *roſarum rubrarum*, *betonicæ*, *plantaginis*, *pimpinellæ*, *poligoni*, *ſcabioſæ*, *tuſſilaginis*. ana. M. ij. All being bruiſed freſhe, you muſt ſtreane out a iuice, which muſt be boiled and skummed to. ℔. iij. and make a ſirupe thereof by putting thereto of white ſugar. ℔. ij. ß.

PLANTIVS.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas there was no ſirupe yet extant at any time, or ſet out in vſe for the conſumed and purulent lungs: in ſo great ſcarcity this profitable ſirupe of Cumfrey was vppon good ground of Art here to be placed.

Syrupus è ſucco Bugloſſi.

SYrupe of the iuice of Bugloſſe, doth eſpecially comfort and chere the hart, and maketh a riddaunce of the quiuering and ſwowning thereof, and is very good for melancholy and mad perſons. ℞. *Succi Bugloſſi defæcati*, that is, purified. ℔. iij. *Sacchari albi*. ij. Boile them to the conſiſtaunce of a ſirupe. The ſirupe of the iuice of garden Bugloſſe, of the iuice of violettes, of the iuice of Peaches, be all cordyall and are made all one way.

PLANTIVS.

Nothing was to be changed either in the ſirupe of wild or garden Bugloſſe, or in the ſirupe of the iuice of violettes, or in the iuice of Peaches, or of the barke of Orenges, but there was great occaſion to adde the ſirupe of Balmenint, becauſe there was none in vſe which did make a riddance of the diſeaſes of the heart, and take awaye the annoyaunce of peſtilent and of venimous diſeaſes.

Syrupus è cortico Cytrij.

THe ſirupe of the barke of the Orenge, doeth reuiue and exhilarate the heart being heauy, and the trembling thereof of any cold cauſe, and drieth away ſorrow. ℞. *Corticum cytriorum malorum recentium*, infuſed or prepared in. ℔ j. of water. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till iiij. be conſumed, and with iij. ℔. of white ſugar, make a ſirupe, and condite it with Gr. vj. of muske.

Syrupus Meliſſophylli.

SYrupe of Balmemynt is of all other the beſt, for the trembling and ouercaſting of the heart, and of a peculiar power, it abateth the malignity of peſtilent and venimous diſeaſes, and maketh a riddance thereof. ℞. *radicum dictamni, pentaphilli, betonicæ, doronici romani*. ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum meliſſophylli, ſteues, & morſus, florum Bugloſſi vtriuſque & roriſmarini*. ana. *M*. j. *Semi. oxalydis, cytrij mali, fæniculi, attractilidis*, that is, *cardui benedicti & ocymi*. ana. ℥ iij. Boile them in. ℔. iiij. of water, to the conſumption of halfe, and being ſtrained, put thereto. ℔. iij. of white ſugar, of the iuice of balme and roſe water. an. ℔. ß. Boile all this into a ſirupe, condited of Cinnamon and red Saunders. ana. ℥. ß.

Syrupus è menta.

SYrupe of Mint doth heat the ſtomach moderatly, and doth corroborate it with an eaſy adſtriction, it helpeth concoction, abateth lothſomnes, vomit, chincough, and lyentery. ℞. *Succi cydoniorum dulcium, ſucci cydoniorum acidodulcium*, that is, tarty-ſweet, *ſucci granatorum acidorum, ſucci granatorum acidodulcium*. ana. ℔. j ß. Mixe theſe together and infuſe. ℔. j. ß. of dry mint in them xxiiij.

houres, of red roſes. ℥. ii. Boile them to the halfe, and when they bee ſtrained, put to them. ℔. iiij. of white ſugar, and to condite the ſirupe, boile ʒ. iij. of *gallia moſchata* bound in a cloth.

PLANTIVS.

In the greater ſirupe of Mint, nothing was to be varied, neither was the other leſſe ſirupe to be ſet downe, for that it is comprehended vnder the greater, and in the ſirupe of wormewood nothing is to be changed.

Syrupus Abſinthij.

THe ſirupe of wormewood either purgeth or conſumeth the relickes in the ſtomach, and doth recouer a chearfull colour, and get a ſtomach to thoſe that be recouered of a diſeaſe: it riddeth the liuer of weaknes, & expelleth the iaundies. Laſtly it corroborateth all the inſtruments of concoction. ℞. *abſinthij roma.* ℔. ß. *roſarum rubrarum.* ℥. ij. *ſpicæ nardi.* ʒ. iij. Bruſe them and infuſe them xxiiij. houres in old & well ſmelling white wine, and the iuice of quincepeares ℔. ii. ß. Boile them with a lent fire to the conſumption of the halfe, then boile them againe with. ℔. ij. of white ſugar to the thickneſſe of a ſirupe.

Cydoniorum Miba, that is, the iuice decocted to thickneſſe.

Cydoniorum Miba, doth roborate the ſtomach and the liuer, furthereth concoction, procureth appetite, ſtaieth vomit and lientery. ℞. *ſucci cydoniorum defæcati* ℔. vj. Boile it with a lent fire to the conſumption of the half, by foming little and little, then poure in of olde and good red wine. ℔. iij. and boile them againe to the thickneſſe of hony, condite it with one dramme and a halfe of cinamon, of cloues, and ginger. ana. ϑ. ij.

PLANTIVS.

This *Miba cydoniorum* is a meane betwixt the ſimple and the compound, and hath the vertue of them both.

Syrupus mirtinus, that is, of the mirtle.

Syrupus mirtinus corroborateth the ſtomach and the intrals, ſtaieth an old iſſue of the belly, all eruption of bloud, and euery diſtillation of the braine. ℞. *Baccarum mirti.* ℥. ii. ß *ſantali albi, rhois culinarij, balauſtiorum, baccarum oxiantæ, roſarum rubrarum.* ana. ʒ. j. ß. *meſpilorum.* ℥ ß. Bruſe them all, and boile them in viij. ℔. of water to the third part, and to the ſtrained decoction, put of the iuice of quince peares and pomegranates. ana. ℔. ij. ſugar. ℔. v. Boile them together according to Art.

PLANTIVS.

Syrupus mirtinus retaineth the old compoſition: and the ſirupe *Byzantinus*, for that after purgation, it ſcoureth all the relickes of the hepatike diſeaſes, may commodiouſly be referred to this place.

Syrupus

Syrupus fumariæ.

SYrupe of Fumitory, ſcoureth from bloud, ſalt and exuſt humours, it taketh away itch, skabbe, tetters, leproſie, and all the diſeaſes of the skin, aſſwageth maligne and fiſtulous vlcers, the canker and Elephantiaſis. ℞. *Endiuiæ, Abſinthij roma. lupuli, caſſuthæ, Scalopendrij veri.* ana. *M.* j. *Epithimi.* ℥. j. ß. Boile them in ℔. iiij. of water to the conſumption of halfe, and put to the ſtrained decoction, of the puriſied iuice of Fumitory. ℔. j. ß. *Succi vtriuſq; Bugloſſi.* ana. ℔. ß. *Saccheri albi.* ℔. iiij. Boile this ſirupe to a good ſubſtaunce.

Plantivs.

Whereas there be many deſcriptions of the ſirupe of Fumitory, there ſeemeth none more fitter or more eaſy to be practiſed then this to purge impure bloud. The ſirupe of the iuice of both the Bugloſſes, of the iuice of violets, and the ſirupe of balmemint do alſo appertaine to the ſplene.

Syrupus è malis odoriferis.

THe ſirupe of mellow apples, abateth the noyſome vapours of melancholy, pacifieth and aſſwageth feare, ſorrowe, and madneſſe, and exhilarateth the patient. ℞. *Succi malorum acidodulcium, & fragrantium.* ℔. iiij. *Succorum violarum, bugloſſi domeſtici & ſilueſtris, aquæ roſarum ſtillatitiæ.* ana. ℔. j. Boile them together, skumme them and ſtraine them, and adde thereto white ſugar. ℔. vj. boile them vnto a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

It were riduculous to haue the ſirupe of apples onely made thereof, without addition of other iuices ſeruing for melancholy or blacke choler.

Syrupus Althææ.

THe ſirupe of the water mallow, doth cleanſe mildly and gently the groſſe obſtructing fleume of the kidneis, the ſlimy and purulent quitture, and their ſandy grauell without ſenſible heate: further it aſſwageth the inſenſible heate of the vrine. ℞. *Radicum althææ.* ℥. ij. *Cicerum rubr.* ℥. j. *paſſerum maiorum expurgatarum, radicum graminis & aſparagi, glycyrrhizæ mundatæ.* ana. ℥. ß. *Cymarum*, that is the tender croppes, *Althææ, malua, helxines, pimpinellæ, plantaginis, adianti vtriuſque.* ana. M. j. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum & minorum.* ana. ℥. iij. Boile them in vj. ℔. of water till ℔. ij. be conſumed, and with ℔. iiij. of ſugar make it a ſirupe.

Plantivs.

Whereas the ſirupe of water mallowes was tofore neuer deſcribed, and yet according to euery mans opinion there is great vſe thereof, it could not more commodiouſly be made for the vſes for which it is propounded.

Syrupus Raphani.

THe ſirupe of Radiſh, doth more forcibly ſcoure the kidneis and the bladder, breaketh the ſtone, forceth out grauell, and prouoketh vrine ſup-

preſſed. ℞. *raphani domeſtici & ſylueſtris.* ana. ℥.j. *radicum ſaxifragi, ruſci, leuiſtici, Eryngij, auonis, petroſelini, fæniculi.* ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum betonicæ, pimpinellæ, pulegij, cymarum vrticæ, naſturtij, crithmi, callytrichi.* ana *M.* j. *fructus halycacabi, ziziphæ.* ana. *num.* xx. *ſemi. ocymi, bardanæ, petroſelini macedonici, ſeſelios, carui, dauci, lithoſpermi, corticum radicis lauri.* ana. ℥. ij. *vuarum paſſarum expurgatarum, glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥.vj. Boile them in a decent order in x. ℔. of water, till the conſumption of foure, of the which with ſugar. ℔. iiij. purified hony. ℔. ij. a cleare ſirupe muſt be made, conduit it with cinnamon. ℥. j. and *nux muſchata.* ℥. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Whereas no ſirupe is founde deſcribed to breake the ſtone and expell grauell, this ſirupe of Radiſh is ſubſtituted to great vſe, which is aptly and conuenientlie compounded of theſe ſimples, which haue great faculty to breake the ſtone, with an intermixture of other lenitiue and ſcouring things.

Syrupus Artemiſiæ.

THe ſirupe of Mugwort doth prouoke mightely the ſuppreſſed floures, or auoyding more ſparingly, which alſo the ſirupe of *Adiamhum* doeth but more mildely, this ſirupe aſſwageth the ſtrangling and ouercaſting of the wombe. ℞. *Artemiſiæ M.* ij. *radicum iridis, helenij, rubiæ, peoniæ, leuiſtici, fæniculi.* ana. ℥. ß. *pulegij, origani, calaminthes, nepitæ, meliſſophilli, ſambinæ, ſambuci, hiſſopi, praſij, chamedrios, camepitheos, hiperici, parthenij, betonicæ.* ana. *M.* j. *ſemi. aniſi, petroſelini, ſaniculi, ocymi, dauci, ruæ nigellæ.* ana. ℥ iij. Bruſe them and infuſe them foure and twenty houres in eight pound of *Hydromel* till three bee conſumed, and then after boile it with ſugar. ℔. v. into a ſirupe, condite it with. ℥. j. of cinnamon and ℥. iij. of *ſpicæ.*

PLANTIVS.

Whereas in the ſirupe of Mugwort without conſideration confounded, many things nothing apt for diſeaſes of the wombe were contained, and ſundry things which could not be gotte, or whoſe ſtrength by boiling waſted, the author cut off ſuch ſimples as vnneceſſary and vnprofitable, leauing onely the chiefeſt and beſt.

Purging receiptes.

MEdicines preſcribed for purgations of humours, although they be made in diuerſe formes, yet it is much better then to reduce all into one place, orderly beginning at thoſe which bee moſt gentle.

Electuarium è prunis

THe Electuary of prunes is maruellous lenitiue, mollifying the coſtiue belly, purging mildely and gently ſundry humours, very commodious in extreame

creame heat of weather, and to all ages in burning of agues and thirſt. ℞. *radicum althææ, polypodij è quercu, paſſarum expurgatarum*, ana. ℥.ij. *glycyrrhizæ mundatæ, ſemi. cniſi.* ana. ℥ j. *maluæ, violæ, helxines, mercurialis.* ana. *M.* ij. Boile them in ten pound of water to the remnant of vj. In halfe of the ſtrained decoction boile ſweet prunes, *iuiubes, ſebeſten.* ana. *nume.* xx. *ficus paſſæ pingues nume.* x. Then let the pulpe paſſe through a ſiue. In the other halfe of the ſtrained decoction, boile *foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ℔.j. ß. & this being ſtrained, mixe it with the pulpe with *ſacchari & mellis exſpumati.* ana. ℔. ß. then boile them to the conſiſtance of an Electuary, ſprinckling in the end *cinamomi tenuiſſimè triti.* ℥.j. *Zinziberis.* ℥. iij. The Doſe is ℥.j. the whole compoſition is ℔.iij. The Doſes be about xxviij. or xxx. The ſolid Electuary of prunes hath the ſame vertue. ℞ *pruna dulcia nume.* x, *maluæ, violæ, mercurialis, helxines.* ana. *M.* j. *polipodij è quercu, ſemi. carthami, radicis althææ, paſſarum purgatarum, glycyrrhizæ.* ana. ℥ ß. *foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ℥. x. Boile them in v. ℔. of water till ij. remaine, then preſſe it in a preſſe, put *ſacchari rubri.* ℔.j ß. Boile them againe with a lente fire to the conſiſtaunce of a ſolide Electuary, in the end ſprinckling powder *aromatici electuarij roſati maioris.* ana. ℥.iij. make *tabellæ* in weight. ℥.ß. The whole compoſition is about ℥.xx. the Doſes be about xxx. Compound both theſe Electuaries together, and it will more forcibly purge from the furtheſt parts of the body all humors eſpecially both the chollers in this order. ℞. *Electuarij è prunis ſimplicis & recentis, & adhuc ealentis.* In the which diſſolue *diagredij.* ℥. iij. The Doſe is from ℥. iij. to ℥ ß. In one pound of the compoſition, the Doſes be about xxxij.

Solide Electuary.

Plantij ſcholia in purgantes compoſitiones.

AS the ſirupes of the compoſitions of purging medicins be taken out euery where without all Art, and put in bookes of Phiſicke, ſo that you may find two, three, or mo of like effect, nothing aptly applied to the cure of diſeaſes: whereof it is that the Author vppon good conſideration, hath very much altered the compoſitions of purging medicins, the rather thereby to afford a conuenient and commodious receipt for euery malady. How much thoſe receipts which he hath ſet downe, retaining the auncient names of antiquity, do differ from the ancient receipts? for how much they be more auaileable for the propoſed diſeaſes, euery man may vnderſtand by eſtimation had of the faculty of the ſimples. For wheras *Diaprunis* both ſimple and compound deſcribed *à Nicolo.* ſhould greatly haue refrigerated and beene appliable vnto agues, it containeth many vehement hote *Aromates*, which alſo in the compound doth exaſperate the ſharpneſſe of ſcammony.

Catholicum ſimplex.

Catholicum ſimplex doth deduce and purge frō euery part of the body mildely and gently all humors alike, nothing noyſome eyther to children, olde folke, or women with child, whether with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *radicum hellenij, bugloſſi, cichorij, althææ, polipodij quercini, ſemi. cucici contuſorum.* ana. ℥.ij. *ſtœcados, hiſſopi, meliſſophilli, eupatorij veri, aſplenij, betonicæ, artemiſiæ*, ana. *M.* ij. *passularum paſſarum expurgatarum.* ℥. iij. *quatuor ſemi. frigidorum maiorum. ſemi. anſi.*

glycyrrhyze. ana. ʒ. iij. Boile all these according to art in x. ℔. of *Hydromel* till vij. be remanent, in the strained decoction macerate vij. houres *foliorum sennæ mundatorum.* ℔. j. ß. *Agarici albi.* ℔. ß. *Zinziberis.* ʒ. j. Boile them a little in the pressed liquor, dissolue of the pulpe of *sebestens.* ℔. ß. *Foliorum sennæ mundatorum tenuissime tritorum.* ʒ. iiij. *Syrupi infusionis rosarum pallidarum.* ℔. j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. ij. Boile them with a lente fire to the thicknesse of hony, in sparging in the end, *rheubarbari electi, cinamomi electi.* ana. ʒ. j. *Sandali citrini.* ʒ. j. *nucis muschatæ.* ʒ. ij. the dose is. ʒ. j. the whole composition is. ℔. iiij. the doses bee about 50. This may be truely tearmed *Catholicum*, that is, vniuersall, for that it containeth medicines purging all humors and very agreeable, especially for all the inward parts purging mildly and gently, it doth draw either nothing or very little from the extreame partes. But the greater *Catholicum* doeth worke that effect forcibly and mightily, the composition whereof consisteth of all kinde of medicines, which draw as well from the nigher as further celles aptly confused and represſed. In the auncient *Catholicum*, the reubarbe is not fitly boiled, neither the *cassia* which is put in with the *thamarynde*, and almost corrupteth the whole composition.

Catholicum maius.

Catholicum maius doth also draw all the humors vniuersally, and that more forcibly, not onely from the places nigh, but also farther off, without disturbaunce of the body or losse of strength. ℞. *quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum mundatorum, semi. papaveris albi.* ana. ʒ. j. *tragacantha.* ʒ. iij. *rosarum rubrarum, santali citrini, cinamomi.* ana. ʒ. ij. *Zinziberis.* ʒ. j. *rheubarbari selecti, dyadacrydij.* ana. ʒ. ß. *agarici, turpethi.* ana. ʒ. vj. *sacchari albi, soluti in aqua rosarum*, in the which ʒ. ij. of the leaues of *sene* hath bene incocted. ℔. j. let tables bee compounded of weight. ʒ iij. the dose is one table, the whole composition is ℔. j. ß. the doses be about 50.

Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarum.

SYrupe of infusion of white roses, doth easily draw from the principallest intrals thin choler & scirrhous humors, conuenient in easie diseases for children, for old folke, and such as be enfeebled. ℞. *aquæ infusionis rosarum pallidarum.* ℔. ß. *Sacchari expurgati.* ℔. iiij. Boile them with a lent fire to the thicknesse of a sirupe. Soke ℔. ij *rosarum pallidarum recentium in* ℔. vj. of Tepide water twelue houres and couer the vessell, and in stead of this likewise, substitute other fresh roses and these cast away, put in the water other new roses, the third, fourth, eight, or ninth time, vntill the liquor haue imbibed much strength of the roses, in the which the sugar must be dissolued. Neither truely the sirupe of bruised roses, or of their iuice, will be so effectuall as this. There is also made a sirupe, which draweth and purgeth likewise choler and water, and killeth wormes, of the floures of the Peach macerated in water, as I haue told you before.

PLANTIVS.

The sirupe *rosarum pallidarum*, the Electuary of the iuice of roses and *dyacydonion*,

sion, keepe their old order of compoſition without any manifeſt mutation, but in the Electuary of *diacarthamum*: for that the adiection of *manna grumata*, *mollis roſati*, and *ſaccharigeminati* preuerted the perfect order of compoſition, the way of making it in this place is vpon good conſideration omitted.

Electuarium è ſucco roſarum.

Electuarium è ſucco roſarum doth draw forcibly from places far diſtaunt, choler, thinne and aquous humors, very commodious and eaſie to be vſed of thoſe which be troubled with the gout, in caſe they haue not a vehemēt ague. ℞. *Succi roſarum ſiccarum recentium, ſacchari albi.* an. ℔. j. ß. Boile them into a ſolid Electuary with a lente fire, and in the end ſprinckle *trium ſantalorum, maſtiches, cinamomi exquiſitè triterum.* ana. ʒ. ij. *dyadagerydij.* ʒ. j. ß. *caphuræ.* ℈. ß. make tables in weight. ʒ. ij. ß. The Doſe is one table, the whole compoſition is xxij. ʒ. The Doſe is about 70.

Dyacydonion.

Dyacydonion worketh the ſame that the Electuary of the iuice of roſes doth, but more moderately and eaſily. ℞. *Pulpæ cydonyorum expurgatæ cocta & cribre tranſmiſſæ.* ℔. j. ß. *Succi cydonyorum.* ℔. ß. *Sacchari albiſſimi.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the thickeneſſe of hony, ſprinkling in the end *cinamomi triti.* ʒ. j. *Zinziberis, maceris, charophillorum.* ana. ʒ. ij *dyadacrydij.* ʒ. ij. The Doſe is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ ß. the whole compoſition is ℔. iiij. the Doſes be about 90.

Electuarium dyacnicu.

Electuarium dyacnicu, doth draw and purge from the furtheſt places, *phelgme* and ſcirrhus, & alſo choler, and is eſpecially good for paine of the heade, ſinewes and ioyntes. ℞. *Pulueris electuarij dyatraganthæ frigidi medullæ, ſemi. cnici, hermodactyllorum.* ana. ʒ. ß. *roſarum rubrarum, ſucci glycyrrizæ, cinamomi.* ana. ʒ. ij. *turpethi.* ʒ. j. *dyadacrydij.* ʒ. ß. *ſacchari albi, aquæ roſarum ſoluti.* ℔. j. make tables thereof the weight of ʒ. iij. ß. the Doſe is one table.

Diaphœnicon.

Diaphœnicon doth mildly purge choler, crude, and ſlimy fleume, agreeable and conuenient in compound and continuall agues, and diſeaſes ariſing of crudity, and alſo for the cholericke and flatulent paine. ℞. *pulpæ palmularum mundatarum* boiled in *Hydromel*, and fined in a ſiue, *tenidiorum recentium.* an. ℔. ß. *amigdalarum expurgatarum.* ʒ. iiij. ß. when they be bruſed and mingled altogether, put into them *mellis expumati.* ℔. ij. Boile them a little, and then ſprinkle, *Zinziberis, piperis, maceris, cinamomi, foliorum rutæ ſiccorum, ſemi. fœniculi & dauci.* ana. ʒ. ij. *turpethi tenuiſſimè triti.* ʒ. iiij. *dyadacrydij.* ʒ. ß. The Doſe is from ʒ. iij. to ʒ. ß. the whole compoſition is about ℔. iiij. the Doſes about 130.

PLANTIVS.

In *Diaphœnicon*, *palmulæ* be rightly ſoaked and boiled in *Hydromel*, for that the

ancient infusion which was prescribed to be done three daies in vineger, procureth a horrible sauor, many things also be subtracted, as the seed of louage, *pinei nuclei, galanga, xylaloe*, for that there were many of the same faculty and operation, and the quantity of dates, penydaies, and other gentle medicines is augmented, that thereby the whole composition might become more pleasant and easie to be vsed.

Benedicta.

Benedicta, draweth forth grosse and flegmaticke humors, and also schirrous from any part, it reuelleth the matter of the stone, and displaceth the stones themselues, abateth paine of the reines, is very good for cold natures, and in cold weather. ℞. *turbith.* ℥.x. *dyadacrydu, hermodactyllorum, rosarum rubra,* ana. ℥.v. *chariophillorum, zinziberis. saxifragi, semi. apij, salis gemmei, galange, macerij, carui, fœniculi, acetosarum, asparagi & ruscj, semi. milij solis, quatuor semi. frigidorum maiorum, glycyrrhyze.* ana. ℥. j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔ j. ß. confect them according to Art. The Dose is from ℥. iij. to ℥ ß the whole composition is almost. ℔. ij. the Doses be about 50.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath vppon good occasion subtracted out of *Benedicta*, because it was too hot, and could not be easily & safely vsed in an ague, *spicam nardi macropiper, cardamomum & crocum*, and hath placed in stead of those the foure greater cold seedes and liquorice.

Confectio hamech.

Confectio hamech purgeth blacke choler, and burnt choler, and salt fleum, it is a peculiar remedy for the leprosie, the cancre, the tetter, the *Elephantiasis & psora*. ℞. *corticis myrabolanorum cytrinorum.* ℥. ij. *ceuularum, & nigrarum violarum, colocynthidis, polypodij quercini.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *absinthij, thimi.* an. ℥. ß. *anisi, fœniculi, rosarum rubra.* ana. ℥. iij. Bruse them all and soake them in whey ℔. ij. then boile them to a pound, rubbe them in your hand and wring them. To the strained decoction adde the iuice of fumitory, the pulpe of prunes and raisons, ana. ℔. ß. *sacchari albi, mellis expumati.* ana. ℔. j. Boile them to the thicknesse of hony, sprinckling in the end *agarici, sennæ tritorum.* ana. ℥. ij. *rheibarbari triti.* ℥ j. ß. *epithimi.* ℥. j. *dyadacrydii.* ℥. vj. *cinamomi.* ℥. ß. *zinziberis.* ℥. ij *semi. fumariæ & anisi, spicæ nardi.* ana. ℥. j. The Dose is from ℥. iij. to halfe an ounce, the whole composition is ℔. iij. and ℥. viij. The Doses be about 80.

PLANTIVS.

In the confection of *Hamech*, the *mirabolanes* be twise put into one effect, first in the decoction, and after bruised, reubarb leeseth his strength and vertue being boiled, *Cassia, manna & thamaryndis* being boiled, do turne to putrefaction. The force of *scammony* being boiled wasteth, and is not with facility mixed with others. Wherefore the author hath set downe a much more conuenient, commodious and easie to be vsed: this composition of all other is the best, and the most safest, for that in them the sharpenes and feruency of *turbith & scammony*, is notably well abated, either by the mixture of the pulpe of prunes or raisons,

or

or by *hermodactilis* and *amygdalis*, or with roſes and their iuice, or *myrobalanes*. There be other receipts extant not ſo ſafe to be vſed: as *Electuarium indum veriſque, electuarium elechof, electuarium de pſillio, diaturbith*. In the which the ſharpnes of *ſcammony*, and other ſtronger medicins is litle abated, yea rather by the mixture of the other hote things is quickned. Further, they containe nothing, or are of power to worke nothing which here deſcribed, other receipts doe not bring to paſſe with ſucceſſe. Wherefore to take away the cauſes of all affectes, theſe receipts be auaileable enough.

Hiera ſimplex.

Hiera ſimplex by purging choler and fleume from the ſtomach, intrals, *hypochondrium*, and meſintery veines impacted, and arridding forcibly and mightily of redundancy, doeth mildly helpe all diſeaſes proceeding of crudity and obſtruction of veines. ℞. *cinamomi, macerᵘ, aſari, ſpicæ nardi, cr ci, maſtiches* ana. ʒ. vj. *aloes non lotæ.* ʒ. 100 or ℔. j. ß. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. iiij. conſect them according to Art, the powder alone is miniſtred from. ʒ. ij. to ʒ iij. but being receiued in hony from ℥ j. to ℥. j. ß.

Hiera diacolocynthidos.

Hiera diacolocynthidos which hath beene in ſtead of all other deſcribed of the ancient Phiſitions, by purging ſafely and gently all groſſe and viſcous humours, eſpecially blacke choler and citrin waters, it is eſpeciall good againſt the palſey, quiuering, crampe, gout, and inueterate diſeaſes of the nerues, and alſo for the dropſie. Secondly, for melancholy, *mannia, epilepſie*, ſcabbe, leproſy, maligne vlcer, cancre, and *Elephantiaſis* which diſeaſes do expugne gentle medicines. ℞. *ſtæcados, marubii, chamedryos, hiperici, ſcyliæ aſſatæ, pulii, calamynthes montanæ, cinamomi, ſpicæ nardi, epithimi, polypodii quercini aridi, quatuor ſeminum frigidorum, maio. mundatorum.* ana. ʒ. j.ß. *pulpæ colocynthidis, ſcamonii, hellebori nigri præparatorum.* ana. ʒ. ij. *Euphorbii præparati, aloes, myrrhæ, ammoniaci, oppoponacis, ſagapeni, caſtorei.* ana. ʒ. j. *mellis coſti in ſucco cydoniorum & expumati.* ℔. j. ʒ. iij. thereof are miniſtred *colocynthis, ſcammony*, blacke *hellebore* and *euphorbe*, being bruſed, muſt be rubbed with oile of ſweet almondes, and then are two daies to be ſoaked in a muſcelage of *tragacanthum* and *gumme arabicke* depromed out of roſe water, till they haue drunke vp the muſcelage.

PLANTIVS.

The ancient compoſition of *Hiera ſimplex* is retained, and nothing is altered thereof, ſauing *xylobalſan*, which we cannot come vnto. Many compoſitions do conſiſt of ſtronger ſimples, ſome of *ſcammony*, as *Electuarium de prunis, dyacydonion & electuarium è ſucco roſarum.* Others beſide be compounded of *Turbith*, as *Diaphœnicon:* others be confected of *hermodactyles*, beſide the two former, that is, *turbith & Scammony*, as *Dyaphœnicon* and *Benedicta:* others admit to their compoſition *Colocynthis*, as the confection of *Hamech:* others likewiſe doe further take to their compoſition, *Helleborum nigri, & Euphorbium:* as *Hiera Colocynthidos*, which is a peculiar remedy of certaine diſeaſes, but no vſuall. Hereby then

it may be gathered, that there is no ſimple purging medicine practiſed or put in vſe, of which there is not ſome receipt extant, ſo that for ſuch purpoſe more are not requiſite.

Hydragogum minus.

HYdragogum minus, drawing out the water of dropſie ſicke perſons mildelie without agreeuaunce, may be ſafely vſed both of children, old folke, infeebled perſons, and women with childe, whether they be agrieued with an ague or without an ague. ℞. *ſucci roſarum pallidarum.* ℔. ß. *ſacchari albi, mellis optimi.* ana. ʒ. xv. Boile them till they caſt a ſome and become thicke, and then put into them, *ſucci radicis ebuli.* ℔. j. *praſij ſicci, ſem. faniculi triti.* ana. ʒ. ij. *acetoſæ ebuli & ſambuci.* ana. ʒ. ij. *cinamomi.* ʒ. vj. *macerin, galanga.* ana. ʒ. iij. Boile them with a lente fire to the thickneſſe of hony. ʒ. ß. thereof is miniſtred in whay of milke, decoction of barley or of raiſons. It will be more effectuall by putting thereunto of the iuice of wilde Cucumber, ʒ. ß. of the roote of wilde Cucumber dried and bruſed. ʒ. vj. or of the iuice of the root of our flowerdeluce. ℔. ß.

Hydragogum maius.

HYdragogum maius of Laur. mightely expelling water. ℞. *ſeri lactis.* ℔. ij *ſacchari albi, carnis cydoniorum ex aceto coctorum.* ana. ʒ. x. *mamæ calabrinæ.* ʒ. v. Boile them with a lente fire to the thickneſſe of hony, when they be ready to be taken off the fire, put into them of the leaues of Laureolle prepared in vineger, and oile of ſweete almondes. ʒ. ij. it is miniſtred in the Doſe of ʒ. ß. the manner of preparing it is in this wiſe. *Foliorum laureolæ.* ʒ. ij macerate them foure and twenty houres in vineger of pomegranats or purcelane, boile them ſoftly, ſtraine them, dry them, and bruſe them, and then put into them of roſe water. ℔. ß. of the oile of ſweete Almonds. ʒ. ß. Boile them againe vntill the water be conſumed, and the water mixed with the oile remaining, is to be added to the conſumption.

Plantivs.

That there ſhould be nothing wanting in theſe receipts, in the laſt place he hath adioyned to the precedent receipts, certaine compoſitions to expell the water, notwithſtanding more ſtronger ſimples ſpecially *ſcammoni & euphorbium* doe purge, yet the author his meaning was to haue ſome peculiar receipts extant of ſuch ſimples as haue a proper and accuſtomable vertue againſt ſuch redundancy of water, the one whereof is more gentle in working, the other of the leaues Laureole is more forcible in operation, which leaues tofore haue not beene applied to the compoſition of any thing: any man may make coniecture by the mixture of the ſimples, how fitly ſuch kind of compoſitions be applied to the expelling of ſuch water.

Vnguentum latheride.

VNguentum *latheride* ſoftneth and prouoketh the body, and draweth out vehemently the water of hydropicall perſons, aſſwageth the ſwelling or diſtention

ſtention of the outward parts of the body, betwixt the nauell and the priuites called *Abdomen*, all which redundancy it doeth ſcoure downeward from the womb, if the nauell and the lower part of the body, and the part about the priuities and the thighs be therewith annointed, and it arriddeth all ſuch matter vpward by vomit, if the ſtomach therewith be madefied. ℞. *Succi lathoridu* ℔ß. *ſuccj èſule.* ℥iij. In the which diſſolue *radicis ciclamini.* ℥ij. *ſcammoni.* ℥ß. *granorum recini & latheridis expurgatorum.* an. ℥j. ß. *Se. feniculi, rutæ, anethi, baccarum lauri.* an. ℥j. Bruſe them al, and macerate thē a day in the iuice; after that take *aſſungie.* ℥viij. & *ceræ.* ℥iiij. liquefie them, and diſſolue all the reſt in them by little and litle, and boile them with a lente fire vntill the conſumption of the whole water, and vntill they all become to the temperature of an ointment. If the ſame matter be boiled in. ℥. xv. of oile, to the conſumption of the liquor, the ſtrained oile will retain the ſame vertue. If either gumme *armoniacke*, or waxe, be concorporated with the ſame ointment to the conſiſtency of an emplaſter, that wil cauſe iſſue of the water, being laid vppon the belly, but not ſo forcibly.

Electuarium diaſarum.

Electuarium diaſarum doth by vomite expell all kind of humours about the ſtomacke and midriffe, not by a continuall inſult, but hauing intermiſſion ſafely, & with facility to bee vſed both of aged perſons & of women with child. ℞. *Syrupi menthæ & violarum.* ℥ viij. Boile them to the thickeneſſe of hony, after they haue boiled (draw away the fire) inſperſe in *radicis peponis arefacti, Semi. raphani & vrticæ* macerated in roſe water, dried and pownded. ana. ℥j. *radicis aſari, contritæ & cretæ.* ℥ij. *Cinamomi, ſemi. fæniculi.* ana. ℥. iij. confect them to a liquide Electuary, and let. ℥. iij. thereof be miniſtred either out of barley water, *mulſa*, or whey of milke.

Plantivs.

The Author ſeemed much to haue furthered Phiſick by theſe laſt receipts, eſpecially by that which is allotted to procure vomite, for that in no Author there was any extant wherewith we might ſafely purge the humours vpward. Whereas notwithſtanding that kinde of euacuation is moſt neceſſary to the curing of any diſeaſes. Whereas tofore we haue applied Electuaries both liquide and conſiſtent: ſo now let vs referre pils to all kinde of cauſes and diſeaſes. *Pillulæ è hiera ſimplici* bee confected with. ℥. j. of powder tempred *cum melle roſato.*

Pillulæ ſtomachicæ.

Pillulæ ſtomachicæ, which taken before meate, purge the ſtomach, help concoction, cary the meate downe, and doe mildely purge. ℞. *Aloes.* ℥. vj. *maſtiches, roſarum rubrarum.* ana. ℥. ij. make them coherent with *ſyrupo roſato*, or *Abſynthij.*

Plantivs.

Whereas there be vj. deſcriptions extant of the pils of the ſtomach, all (this

onely receipt excepted) doe hurt the ſtomach, and can not conueniently bee vſed before meat, becauſe they retaine in their confection *Scammony* and *Turbith*, wherwith the whole body (but eſpecially the ſtomach) is much agrieued.

Pillulæ ruffi.

Pillulæ ruffi, which be tearmed alſo *Pillulæ communes* being often vſed, helpe concoction, and doe not ſuffer any putrefaction of the meate, do preſerue the humours and body from corruption, whereuppon they do much auaile againſt the peſtiferous ague. ℞. *Aloes optimæ*. ℥. ij. *mirrhæ electæ, croci ſinceri*. ana. ℥. j. mixe them with *Aromaticke* wine.

Plantivs.

Taking by little and little, and as it were coaugmenting compoſitions from pilles, which conſiſt of ſole *Aloe*, after he addeth other vnto them which conſiſt of *Aloe* and *reubarbe*, and immediatly ſuch as do conſiſt of *Aloe* and *Agarick*, then ſuch as be confected of *agaricke, aloe*, and *reubarbe*. And of thoſe he compoundeth other of *Agaricke, reubarbe, aloe*, and *ſenna*: to which in fine he hath annexed *Pillulas ſine quibus*, in the which beſide the foure precedent, the vertue and infuſion of *Scammony* rather then the ſubſtaunce is contained. In confection whereof he hath witholden a portion of *myrabolanes*, for that the portion thereof being retained, there would bee ſome redoundancy, eſpecially with other ſo many aſtringent ſimples.

Pillulæ aſſaieret.

Pillulæ aſſaieret for that they containe more *Aloe*, then *Hieræ*, be more effectuall in working. ℞. *Pulueris hieræ ſimplicis*. ℥. j. *aloes*. ℥ iij. or according to *Valerius Cordus*. ℥. ij To whom I rather encline, *maſtiches, myrabolanorum, cytriorum*, ana. ℥. ß. reduce them to a maſſe with ſirupe of *ſtæcados*.

Pillulæ de Eupatorio.

Pillulæ de Eupatorio do purge choler mildely, and doe aridde the liuer of ſtuffing, and corroborat it, and are to be had in more price then the pils which be deſcribed to be made of reubarbe. ℞. *Succi Eupatorij, ſucci abſinthij, myrabolani, citrio*. ana. ℥. ij. *rheubarbari electi*. ℥. iij. ß. *maſtiches*. ℥. j. *croci*. ℥. ß. *aloes*. ℥. v. *Succi endiuiæ*, in quantity ſufficient to incorporate them.

Pillulæ maſtichinæ.

Pillulæ maſtichinæ, for that they containe *Agaricke*, doe more forcibly purge choler and groſſe fleume, then they which conſiſt of ſole *Aloes*. ℞. *maſtiches*. ℥. ij. *aloes*. ℥. iiij. *agarici trochiſcati, pulueris hieræ ſimplicis*. ana. ℥. j. ß. Incorporate them with Malmeſey, *Pillulæ ex tribus* be confected of the ſame ſimples by addition of *reubarbari ſelecti*. ℥. ij. *cinamomi*. ℥. ß. and incorporate them with ſirupe of Cichory.

Pillulæ

Pillulæ imperiales.

Pillulæ imperiales do mildely and moderatly purge out of the intralles all humours, and therewithall comfort and ſtrengthen them, ridde them of obſtruction, and helpe the concoction of all parts, ſeruiceable to nouriſhment. ℞. *Aloes optimæ.* ℥ij. *rheubarbari electi.* ℥.j. ß. *agarici trochiſcati, foliorum ſennæ mundatorum.* ana. ℥. j. *cinamomi.* ℥ iij. *zinziberis.* ℥.ij. *nucis muſchatæ, caryophillorum, ſpicæ nardi, maſtiches.* an. ℥.j. moiſten it with the ſirupe of violets, and bring them into a maſſe.

Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo.

Pillulæ ſine quibus eſſe nolo, doe draw choler, fleume, and melancholy out of all partes of the body, but eſpecially out of the head, eies and ſences, they aſſwage ſuffuſions of the eies, and preſerue ſight, they take away paine & noiſe of the eares. ℞. *Aloes optimæ.* ℥. xiiij. *myrabolano. cytri. chebularum indarum, rheibarbari, maſtiches, abſinthij, roſarum, violarum, ſennæ, agarici, caſſuthæ.* ana. ℥.j *ſcammony.* ℥. vj. ß. Diſſolue the *Scammony* in the iuice of fennell, as much as will ſuffice, and ſtraine it through a cloth, and with the ſame iuice incorporate the fine powders.

Pillulæ è fumaria.

Pillulæ è fumaria doe extract bilious, ſalt, and ſharpe humours, and doe correct what ſo is vicious or vnſeemely in the skinne. ℞. *myrabola. cytri. chebula. & inda.* ana. ℥. v. *dyadacrydij.* ℥.v. *aloes.* ℥ vij. When all theſe be bruſed, imbrue them in the iuice of Fumitory, and permit them to dry three times, and in fine bring them to a maſſe.

Pillulæ Aureæ.

Pillulæ Aureæ be more effectuall in working then *Pillulæ è fumaria,* for *colocynthis* which they containe: they ſcoure the heade, ſences, but eſpecially the eies, and recouer the quickneſſe of ſight, they expell bilious, and alſo flegmaticke humours. ℞. *aloes, dyadacridij.* ana. ℥. v. *roſarum rubræ. ſem. apij.* ana. ℥ ij. ß. *Sem. aniſi & fœniculi, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *croci, pulpæ colocynthidos.* ana. ℥.j. *muſcilaginis, gummi tragacanthæ.* q. ß. and confect thereof a maſſe.

Pillulæ de agarico.

Pillulæ de agarico doe mightily draw choler and ſlimy humours, from all the partes of the body, but eſpecially from the head and breaſt, peculiarly ſtanding in ſtead againſt diſtillations and *Aſthma.* ℞. *agarici, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. iij. *radicis iridis, praſcij.* ana. ℥. j. *turbithi.* ℥. v. *pulver. hieræ picræ.* ℥. ß. *pulpæ colocynthidis, ſarcocollæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *mirrhæ.* ℥. j. *ſapæ quan. ſuff.* the rather to reduce them to a conſiſtent ſubſtance.

PLANTIVS.

In the pilles of *Agaricke,* there be orderly diſpoſed all ſuch excellent ſimples

as auaile to draw out of the body groſſe fleame, as well from the nigh parts as from the parts farre diſtant, in confecting whereof, the Author thought good to alter nothing.

Pillulæ cocchiæ.

Pillulæ cocchiæ, doe from all parts of the body purge choler, but groſſe fleame more effectually, yet peculiarly out of the braune and nerues, whoſe diſeaſes eſpecially they doe cure. ℞. *Pulue. hieræ ſimp.* ʒ. x. *pulpæ colocinthidis.* ʒ. iij. ℈. j. *diadacridÿ.* ʒ. ij. ß. *turpethi, ſtæcados.* ana. ʒ. v. and confect a maſſe of thoſe with ſirupe of *ſtæcados.*

Plantivs.

Pillulæ cocchiæ notwithſtanding they doe forcibly purge choler and fleume, yet they doe not purge all humours at once, as thoſe pilles which be tearmed *Polycreſtæ*, and commonly *aggregatiuæ maiores*. The compoſition whereof differeth nothing from the auncient receipt, ſauing for reſpect of the Doſe certaine ſimples be altered. The confection of thoſe pilles is much more conuenient then *pillularum de octo rebus*, or then the pilles of fiue kinds of *myrabolanes*, which notwithſtanding containe the ſame ſimples. The deſcription therefore of thoſe pilles in this place, ſeeme vppon good occaſion to be omitted, for that they ſeeme to be contained vnder thoſe, as *Pillulæ de Euphorbio* be comprehended vnder *Pillulæ de Hermodactilis.*

Pillulæ ex hermodactilis.

Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis, doe draw out groſſe & ſcirrhous humors mightily frō the furtheſt parts, eſpecially from the ioyntes, moſt agreeable in colde diſeaſes of the braine, nerues, and ioyntes. ℞. *Hermodactilorum, aloes, myrabolano. cytri. turpethi, colocinthidis, bdellij mollis, ſagapeni.* ana. ʒ. vj. *Caſtorei, ſarcocollæ, opoponacis, ſemi. rutæ agreſtis & apÿ.* ana. ʒ. iij. *croci.* ʒ. j. ß. *Succi braſſicæ quan. ſuff.* to the confection of a maſſe.

Plantivs.

Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis doe retaine the ancient compoſition, and be of them ſelues more effectuall againſt the inueterate diſeaſes of the ioynts, then thoſe which be tearmed *arthriticæ*, and more ſafely to bee vſed then thoſe which bee called *Fælidæ*, or with the cōfected *de opoponaco, de ſagapeno*, or *de ſarcocolla*, ſo that it were needeleſſe to ſet downe their receipts.

Pillulæ polycreſtæ.

Pillulæ polycreſtæ bee very auaileable againſt all diſeaſes of the head, the ſtomach, the liuer, and other ſundry compound diſeaſes of the other intrals, for it draweth out of theſe partes fleame and both the cholers. ℞. *mirabolano. cytri. rheubarbari.* ana. ʒ. ß. *ſuccꝰ eupatorÿ, ſuccꝰ abſinthÿ, mirabolano. chebulorum & indorum,*

Indorum, agarici, colocinthidis, polipodij, ana. ʒ.ij. *dyadacridij, turpethi*, aloës, ana. ʒ. vij. *Mastiches, rosarum rubrarum, Salis gemmei, epithimi, anisi, Zinziberis*. ana. ʒ.j confect them with syrupe of roses: they be ministred from ℈.ij. to ʒ.j.

Pillulæ è lapide Cyaneo.

Pillulæ è lapide Cyaneo, do excellently purge blacke choler and phlegme, especiall good against *Melancholia*, sadnesse and madnesse: against the canker: *Elephantiasis* and blacke morphew. ℞. *lapidis cyanei abluti*. ʒ.vj. *Epithimi, polypodij*, ana. ʒ. viij. *diadacridii, hellebori nigri, Salis indi*. ana. ʒ.ij. ß. *agarici*, ʒ. viij. *Caryophillorum, anisi*, ana. ʒ.iij. *pulueris hieræ picræ simplicis*. ʒ.xv. and confect a masse of them with the iuyce of endiue or succorie.

Plantivs.

Pilulæ è lapide Cyaneo for the blacke helebore vsed, be more practised then *Pillulæ indæ*, which containe also hellebore: wherfore he hath described those, omitting others, and for that they be more effectuall against melancholike diseases then *pillulæ de lapide armeno*, for that occasion he omitteth them.

Pillulæ è Thymelea.

Pillulæ è Thymelea do mightily draw out of the bodie scirrhous humors, and water of hydropical persons. ℞. *foliorum thymeleæ exciccatorum & aceto maceratorum* ʒ. v. *myrabolano. flauorum*. ʒ.ß. *myrabolanorum cepulorum*. ʒ.iij. *mannæ & thamarindorum* dissolued in water of succorie so much as sufficeth for the forme of pilles.

Plantivs.

Nothing is altered in *pillulis è Thymelea*, and to them is added certaine, aptly confected of *Esula*, and which are verie effectuall to draw out water. I suppose he omitted aswell *Pillulas lucis maiores* as *minores*, for that they be confusedly made of a great and vnnecessarie heape of simples, and for that *Pillulæ sine quibus* be effectuall enough for the eyes hauing any affect.

Pillulæ ex Esula.

Pillulæ ex Esula do purge from the wombe the dropsie-sicke water with great aggrieuance, and therefore agree onely to strong bodies, and then onely when they be free from agues. ℞. *Corticis radicis, esulæ minoris* macerated in vineger xxiiij. houres, and in the iuyce of purslaine ʒ.ij. *grana recini* purged and brused xj. *myrabolanorum cytrinorum*. ʒ.j. ß. *camedrios, chamepityos, Spicæ nardi, cinamomi*. ana. ℈. ij bruse them all finely and incorporate them in ʒ.j. of tragacanth dissolued in rosewater, and so reduce them to a masse. They be ministred in the dose of ℈ ij.

Pillulæ è Cynoglosso.

Pillulæ è Cynoglosso were not prouided to purge, but to stay distillations:

whether they issue to the breast and lungs with a cough, or into the teeth or else where. ℞. *mirrhæ*. ʒ. vj. *thuris masculi*. ʒ. v. *opij*, *hyoscyami semi. radicis cynoglossi aridæ*. ana. ʒ. ß. *croci*, *castorei*, ana. ʒ. j. ß. and confect a masse thereof with distilled rose water. They be ministred from. ϑ. j. to ʒ. ß.

PLANTIVS.

Very fitly is *Castoreum* added *Pillulis è cynoglosso*, which with saffron hath a singular vertue to correct the malignity of *Opium*, which tofore in this receipt hath bene inconsiderately omitted.

Pillulæ astrologiæ.

Pillulæ astrologiæ hauing great power to deuide and scour, are very auaileable against *Epilepsia*, *paralisis*, *asthma*, and veterated cough, the beginning of *Scirrhus* in the liuer and reines, *Nephritis*, suppressing of the floures, it expelleth the childe and seconds, they be more meete in winter, and for moist natures when the bodies be purged. ℞. *Radicis astrologiæ rotundæ* ʒ. j. *radicis gentianæ*, *mirrhæ electæ*. ana. ʒ. iij. *aloes*, *cinamomi*. ana. ʒ. ß. *Zinziberis*. ʒ. j. when they be all exquisitely powned, put in new oile of sweete almondes. It is ministred in Dose. ʒ. j. ß. and the broth in which they be dilayed is all at once to be supped.

PLANTIVS.

Pillulæ astrologiæ be last of all, commodiously added to the rest, and bee excellently described, because they haue great opening vertue. They may bee made in such forme that they may bee drunke, but because they bee very bitter, they be more easily deuoured in the fourme of *Catapotium*.

Of Antidotaries: And first of such as bee made in a solide forme, by taking where- of the principall partes of the body be comforted and strengthened.

Diamhon.

Dianthon doth comfort the infeebled braine, doth stay the distillations thereof, doth mitigate excessiue melancholy, and extreme sadnesse, it taketh away quawlming and ouercasting of the hart. ℞. *foliorum roris marini*. ʒ. ß. *rosarum*, *violarum*, *glicirrhizæ*. ana. ʒ. iij. *cariophillorum*, *spicæ nardi*, *nucis muschatæ*, *galangæ*, *cinamomi*, *Zinziberis*, *maceris*, *ligni aloes*, *cardomomi*, *anisi*, *sem. anethi*. ana. ϑ. ij. *Sacchari albi aquæ salviæ vel betonicæ soluti*. ℔. j. ß. make thereof an Electuary in tables.

Electuarium pleres archonticon.

Electuarium pleres archonticon, doth maruellously comfort and strengthen the braine, quicken the sences, recouer the decaied memory, and is very commodious

modious for such as haue the falling euill, and difficulty of breathing, it comforteth such as bee sadde, or annoied with *melancholia*, or disturbed with idlenesse of the braine, it restoreth and recouereth such as be consumed through some long sickenesse. ℞. *Cinamomi, cariophillorum, ligni aloes, galangæ, spicæ nardi, nucis muscatæ, Zinziberis, spodij, scænanthi, cyperi, rosarum, violarum.* ana. ℥. j. *folij aut macerij, glycirrhizæ, mastiches, styracis, calaminthæ, sampsuci, balsamitæ, acymi, cardamomi, macropiperis, myrtillorum, corticum mali cytry.* ana. ℥. ß. & Gr. vj. *margaritarum splendidarum, beeri albi & rubri, corallij, serici combusti.* ana. Gr. xviij. *moschi* Gr. vj. *Camphoræ.* Gr. iiij. *Sacchari albi aquæ melissæ soluti.* x. or xij. times so much.

PLANTIVS.

That Antidotaries be ordained to comfort and strengthen the parts principall: therefore he doth very fitly institute their compositions, according to the order of the parts of the body, beginning at those which be good for the braine, and after annexing such as be meete for the breast and other parts.

Diatragacanthum frigidum.

Diatragacanthum frigidum is very cómodious in all distempures of the lungs, and breast, and is good for the *peripneumonia* and pluriſie, a consumption and hote cough with an ague. Lastly for the roughnesse and sharpnesse of the iawes and arteries. ℞. *Gummi tragacanthi albissimi* ℥. j. *Gummi arab.* ℥. v. *amili* ℥. ij. *glicyrrhizæ, sem. papaueris albi, quatuor sem. frigido. maio. corticis liberorum.* ana. ℥. j. *Camphoræ.* Gr. v. *pondiorum.* ℥. j. ß. *Sacchari albissimi aquæ violarum soluti.* ℔. j. Make thereof an Electuary in *Tesseras.*

PLANTIVS.

Diatragacanthum is good for cold diseases, and hath the vertue of another composition tearmed *Diapapaver*, which therefore was here vpon good occasion omitted.

Diaireos simplex.

Diaireos simplex doth by a milde attenuation arid the breast and lungs of all distempures, and maketh more easie vttering of spittle, meete for hoate diseases increasing, and such cold diseases as be not extreme. ℞. *Radicis iridis florentini,* ℥. j. *Pulueris Electuarij diatragacanthi frigidi, sacchari candi.* ana. ℥ ß. *sacchari albi.* ℔. *hyssopi aquæ soluti.* ℥. viij. Compound thereof a solide Electuary.

Electuarium Diaireos compositum.

Electuarium diaireos compositum, auaileth much in hote diseases beginning to bracke, and in inueterate cold diseases, as the cough, *asthma*, and hoarsenesse. ℞. *radicis iridis.* ℥. ß. *pulegij, hyssopi, glicirrhizæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *tragacanthæ, amigdalarum amararum, pinearum, cinamomi, Zinziberis, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *semi. lini, althææ & fenigraci.* ana. ℥. ij. *sacchari albissi. aquæ tussilaginis soluti.* ℔. j. or ℥. xiiij.

PLANTIVS.

The compound electuarie of *diaireos* is here placed in steed of *diatragacanthum calidum* and *diapenidion*, and therefore they cannot here be put in but in vaine, and to the losse and hinderance of the Apothecaries. In this composition the Author did for *caricis, passulis, palmulis & styraco*, which were vnmeete for this composition, ordaine *seminis lini, althea & fenugraci*, which do preuaile exceedingly in inueterate distempures of the breast.

Diacalaminthes.

Diacalaminthes doth attenuate rebellious & inueterate distempures of the breast and loungs, and the grosse and viscous humours in these parts. It doth scoure and cast out the same, dispatch winde, furthereth concoction and distribution of the aliment, and in fine, prouoketh the floures, vrine & sweat. ℞. *Calaminthes montanæ, pulegii, petroselini, seselios, origani.* ana. ℥. ij. *seminis apii, Cymarum, thymi.* ana. ℥. ß. *leuistici, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. *Sacchari albissimi, aquæ violarum aut rosarum soluti.* ℔. ij. ß. make an Electuarie.

PLANTIVS.

In this composition of *Diacalaminthes*, *origanum* seemeth verie aptly added. In the other simples the Author hath imitated Galens composition, and the weights and doses, saue onely in louage and in pepper: for the Author taketh of louage halfe so much, and of pepper the sixt part of so much as Galen did, for that the whole composition is but the fourth part of that which is described of Galene in the fourth booke *de tuenda valetudine*. And whereas in other Electuaries before described, which were gentle and not vnpleasant either in tast or taking, he receiued and tempered the powders with sixe or eight times so much sugar. In this composition truly which is verie hote and vnpleasant to be taken, he hath allotted a doses of twelue times so much. Further this composition of *Diacalaminthes* may stand of these which be termed *diahyssopus* and *diaprassiu*, which may by good right grow out of vse as vnnecessarie, least the multitude should be troublesome.

Diamargariton frigidum.

Diamargariton frigidum asswageth the burning heate of agues, fortifieth & comforteth the heart, and preserueth it from an infectious contagion, deliuereth the affected from quawlming and swowning, and lastly abandoneth sorow. ℞. *quatuor seminu. frigido. maio. mundatorum, seminis portulacæ & papaueris albi, seminis endiuiæ, oxalidis & citrii, trium santalorum, ligni aloes, zinziberis, rosarum rubrarum, florum nymphææ, buglossi, violarum, baccarum mirti, ossis de corde cerui, eboris, doronici Romani, cinamomi.* ana. ℥. j. *corallii albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. ß. *margaritarum splendidarum.* ℥. iij. *ambaris, caphuræ.* ana. gr. vj. *moschi.* gr. ij. *Sacchari albi, aquæ buglossi vel rosarum soluti.* ℔. ij.

PLAN-

PLANTIVS.

The rather that this Electuary *Diamargariton* might become more excellent and effectual, the Author hereof ouer and aboue the vulgar description, hath added (being made of an vncertaine Author) the seedes of endiue and sorrell, *cytrij ebur, os è corde cerui, doronicum roma.* and *cinamomum:* all which be apparantly good for the heart. There be diuerse Phisitions which haue put into this Electuary, certaine portions of precious stones, but yet to no vse, for that all what so is comprehended in the Electuary *de gemmis*, which at any time may commodiously be mixed in the description therof, this Electuary containeth, except a fewe hote Aromates and many colde simples, the rather to make a more safe vse thereof.

Electuarium de gemmis.

Electuarium de gemmis, doth excellently comfort and strengthen the heart, and preserueth it in agues from maligne and pestilent putrefaction, doeth release the affected of quawlming, beating of the heart, and voluntary sadnes. ℞. *Margaritarum splendidarum.* ʒ j. ß. *saphiri, hyacinthij, Sardij*, that is, *corneolæ, granatorum, smaragdi.* ana. ϑ. ij. & Gr. v. *Zedoariæ, doroniti, corticum cytrij mali maceris, seocymi cariophillati.* ana. ʒ. j. *corallij rubri, succini, eboris.* ana. ϑ. ij. ß. *Been albi, been rubri, cariophyllorum, Zinziberis, piperis longi, spicæ indicæ, folij croci, cardamomi maioris.* ana. ʒ. ß. *trochiscborum diarrhodon, ligni aloes.* ʒ. ij. ß. *cinamomi, galangæ.* ana. ϑ. ij. Gr. v. *foliorum auri, foliorum argenti.* an. ϑ. j. *ambræ.* ʒ. j. *moschi.* Gr. xv. *sacchari albi aqua rosarum soluti.* ʒ. xx. which is eight times as much as the rest of the receipt.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium è gemmis, comprehendeth almost all the kindes of the hote Aromates, and they bee not much dulled or restrained with the fragments of the precious stones. Therefore it were much better to take from this Electuarie, some part of the Aromates, especially *Been album, & rubrum, cardomomi maioris, piper longum & folium* which seldome can be gotten.

Electuarium diambræ.

Electuarium diambræ, comforteth and fortifieth the hart, the braine, and the principall parts, and quickeneth the naturell heate in old folkes, chiefely in feebled persons and cold natures, it doth not onely further the concoction of alimentes, but also of cold humours, and it drieth away all the coldnesse of the body and of the wombe, and therefore it is good for conception. ℞. *cinamomi, doronici* ℞. *cariophyllorum, maceris, nucis muschatæ, folij, galangæ.* ana. ʒ. iij. *spicæ nardi, cardamomi maioris & minoris.* ana. ʒ. j. *Zinziberis.* ʒ. j. ß. *santali citrini, ligni aloes, piperis longi.* ana. ʒ. ij. *ambaris.* ʒ. j. *moschi.* ʒ. ß. euery ounce of the powder is receiued and mixed with. ℔ j. of sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Diambrae seemeth to consist of all kinde of Aromates generally heaped and confused without any choise, as *diacyminum* and *dianison*, *diacinamomum*, *diazinziber*, *diatrion pipereon*, *diaxiloaloes*, *diamargariton calidum*, *diamoscu dulce*, & *diamoscu amarum*. All which be vehemently hoate consisting of hoate simples no whit represſed, so that all these seeme to be of like power and effect. Wherefore the Author omitting the rest, hath here placed the onely composition of *Diambrae*, which may supply the want of the rest, least the student in Phisicke should bee ouercharged with multitude, and the Apothecary sustaine great losse. But in this composition which is vehemently hoate, as the rest be in my opinion, it were best to take out of the receipt both the *cardomomum* and the long pepper, and to substitute in stead thereof *rosarum rubra*. ℥. iij. for otherwise it can scarcely be vsed in hoate natures, when the weather is hoate and in other hoate seasons, in agues and hoate diseases, and the excessiue heate also of these simples hath beene occasion, that the vse thereof hath beene vnpleasant, and that it hath waxen out of vse as vnprofitable, euen as *Diatrion pipereon Galeni*, and *Diacalaminthes*. The Author thereof perceiuing this, hath vpon good occasion commaunded, that the powders should bee tempred in twelue times so much sugar, thereby minding to make it more pleasant to the receiuer.

Puluis cordiacus.

PVluis cordiacus, doth maruellously comfort and fortifie the heart, and preserue it from contagion in a pestilent constitution, and may be safely taken in a burning ague, and in hote weather, for that it is of a moderate heate. ℞. *Radicum tormentillae, dictamni, tunicu & scabiosae, se. acetosae endiuiae, coriandri praparati, se. citrij, rutae, cardui benedicti.* ana. ℥. j. *trium santalorum, beeu albi, beeu rubri, doronici* ℞. *ligni aloes, zedoariae, cinamomi, cardamomi, macerij, croci, rosarum rubra. florum bugloſſi vtriusque, florum nimphaea.* ana. ℈. ij. *rasurae eboris, spodij*, that is, *eboris vsti, ossis è corde cerui, coralij albi, coralij rubri, succini, margaritarum splendidarum, smaragdi, hyacinthi, granati.* ana. ℈. j. *serici crudi torrefacti, boli armeni, terrae lemniae.* ana ℥. ß *caphurae, moschi, ambaris.* ana gra. vj. reduce them to powder and make thereof tables, with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

Aromaticum rosarum maius.

ARomaticum rosarum maius, comforteth the stomach with a moderate heat, and furthereth the concoction of all the intrales, correcteth crudity, consumeth vnnecessary humours, dispatcheth winde, and is most meete for such as stand in state of recouery of a sickneſſe. ℞. *rosarum rubra.* ℥. xv. *glicirrhizae rasae.* ℥. vij. *ligni aloes, santali citrini.* an. ℥. iij. *cinamomi electi, macerij, cariophillorum.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *gummi arabi, tragacanthae.* ana. ℥. ij. ℈. ij. *nucis moschatae, cardamomi, galangae.* ana. ℥. j. *spicae nardi, ambrae.* ana. ℥. ij *moschi.* ℈. j. and make tables with eight times so much sugar.

PLANTIVS,

PLANTIVS.

The vsuall composition of *aromaticum rosarum* the Author liked of.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis.

Electuarium diarrhodon abbatis, mitigateth the heate of the stomach and midriffe, & yet notwithstanding furthereth their concoction, asswageth paine, and dispatcheth winde. ℞. *rosarum rubrarum.* ℥. j. ß. *santali albi & rubri.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, eboris vsti.* ana. ℈. ij. *masticbes, spicæ nardi, cardamomi, succi, glicirrhizæ, croci, xyloaloes, cariophillorum, gallia muschatæ, anisi, feniculi, semi. ocymi, acimorum berberis, sem. scariolæ, pretulacæ & papaueris albi, quatuor semi. frigido. maiorum, rheibarbari electi, cinamomi.* ana. ℈. j. *margaritarum, ossis è corde cerui.* ana. ℈. ß. *Caphuræ.* gr. vij. *moschi.* gr. iiij. make thereof tables with eight times so much sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

From the Electuary of *Diarrhodon*, the Author hath subtracted *asarum*, for that it doeth ouercome the stomacke, notwithstanding it bee powned lightly: and sugar candy likewise for that it hath no more efficacy or vertue then white sugar. The Electuary of *Diagalangæ*, notwithstanding it be commended of many against the crudity of the stomacke, yet it is not in vse for the excessiue heate; in place whereof if neede so require may bee substituted *Diambræ* or *Diacalaminthes.*

Electuarium diatrion santalon.

Electuarium diatrion santalon, correcteth the hoate intempure of the liuer, and arriddeth it of the remnantes of obstructing matter, cureth the iaundies, it comforteth the liuer and stomach. ℞. *trium santalorum, albi, rubri, & citrini, rosarum rubra.* ana. ℥. iij. *rheibarbari electi, eboris vsti, succi glicirrhizæ, semi. portulacæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *gummi arabici, tragacanthæ, quatuor semi. frigido. maio. mundatorum, sem. intubi.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *caphuræ.* ℈. j. and eight times so much white sugar dissolued in rose water.

PLANTIVS.

Amilum is subtracted and exempted from the Electuary *Diatrion santalon*, as vnnecessary, neither is the Electuary *Diacucubi* here repeated amongst the Electuaries, notwithstanding it be commended of diuerse against cold affectes, and obstructions of the liuer, for that it hath no more effect then this Electuary *Diatrion santalorum.*

Diacrocu.

Diacrocu which is also commonly tearmed *Diacucurma*, dissolueth inueterat affectes of the liuer and splene, and maketh quite ariddance of rebellious obstructions, and a hard tumour lately begunne. And lastly, it cureth ill habite of the body proceeding thereof, and the originall matter of the dropsie. ℞. *croci, asari, petroselini, macedoni. dauci, anisi, semi. apij.* ana. ℥. ß. *rheibarbari, mei, spicæ nardi.* ana. ℥. vj. *costi, mirrhæ, cassiæ lignea, scænanthi, carpobalsami,*

radicis rubei, ſucci abſinthij, ſucci eupatorij arefacti, olei balſami. ana. ℥. ij. *calami aromatici, cinamomi,* ana. ℥. j. ß *ſcordij, ſcolopendrij, ſucci glycirrhyzæ.* ana. ℥. ij and ten times ſo much white ſugar diſſoued in Endiue water.

PLANTIVS.

Diacrocu containeth certaine rare ſimples and hard to bee commed by, as *Caſſia lignea, carpobalſamum,* and *opobalſamum,* which notwithſtanding if they be omitted, the receipt ſhall bee as effectuall to the purpoſe, wherefore it is inſtituted.

Dialacca maior.

Dialacca maior is more effectuall then *diacrocu,* againſt inueterate obſtructions of the liuer and ſplene, againſt an euill habite, and the beginning of a dropſie. ℞. *Laccæ præparatæ, rheibarbari.* ana. ℥. iij. *ſpicæ indicæ, maſtiches, ſtirpium ſcænanthi, abſinthij roma. ſucci eupatorij, meſuæ, ſabinæ, amigdalæ. amararum, coſti, myrrhæ, rubeæ, ſem. opij, ammeos, feniculi & aniſi, aſari, ariſtolochiæ longæ, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, gentianæ, croci, cinamomi, hyſſopi, caſſiæ lignea, ſummitatum, ſcænanthij, bdellij.* ana ℥. j. ß. *piperis, zinziberis.* ana. ℥. j. *ſacchari albi* twelue times ſo much.

PLANTIVS.

Electuarium dialaccæ maior, plires archonticon, and the exhilarating Electuarie, do retaine the old order of compoſition, for that they ſeeme to be moſt fitte for ſuch affectes as they be ordained for.

Electuarium exhilarans.

Electuarium exhilarans, the exhilarating Electuary is falſely aſcribed vnto *Galen,* it driueth away ſadneſſe, melancholy, and euill cogitations, it quickeneth all the ſpirites, it helpeth concoction, augmenteth naturall heate, and preſerueth the receiuer from hoareneſſe of haires. ℞. *Florum ocymi cariophillati, croci, zedoariæ, xilobalſami, aut ligni aloes, cariophillorum, corticum citrij mali, galangæ, macerij, nucis muſchatæ, ſtyracis, calaminthæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *aniſi, ſeobis eboris, thimi, epithimi.* ana. ℥. j. *caphuræ, moſchi, ambaris, margaritarum ſplendidarum, oſſis è corde cerui.* ana. ℥. ß. *foliorum auri & argenti.* ana. ℈. ß. of white ſugar eight times ſo much.

Electuarium diaſpermaton.

Electuarium diaſpermaton refrigerating and comforting the kidneis, and the conduites of the vrine and ſeede, doth mildly purge them from all corruption of humours. ℞. *Quatuor ſemi. frigido. maio. & mino. ſem. aſparagi, pimpinellæ, ocimi, & petroſelinii, granorum halicacabi.* ana. ℥. ij. *milij ſolis, ſucci, glycirrhizæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *cinamomi, macerij,* ana. ℥. ij. *ſacchari albi* eight times ſo much, diſſolued in the water of mariſh mallow.

Electuarium

Electuarium λιθων θροπτικον.

Electuarium λιθων θροπτικον, that is, *lithon thropticon*, asswageth the paines of the lungs, displaceth the grauell of the kidneis and bladder, easeth the paine of the kidneis, and redresseth the restraint of the vrine, and wasteth and breaketh the stone by little and little. ℞. *Spicæ nardi, zinziberis, cinnamomi, melanopiperis, cardomomi, cariophillorum, maceris.* ana. ℥. ß. *costi, glycirrhizæ, cyperi, tragacanthæ, chamedryos.* ana. ℈. ij. *sem. apij, ammeos, asparagi, ocimi, vrticæ, cytrii mali, saxifragi, pimpinellæ, cardui dauci, fenículi, ruscí, petroselini, macedoni bardanæ & seselios, asari.* ana. ℥. j. *lapidis spongiæ, lapidis lincis, lapidis cancri, & lapidis iudaici.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *sanguinis hircini præparati.* ℥. j. ß. make thereof a powder, and temper it with ten times so much white sugar, dissolued in water of Betony, but when extremity of paine forceth, and the vrine is restrained, the sole powder is ministred, *ex passo cretico*, from ℈. ij. to ℥. j.

Plantivs.

Electuarium diaspermaton we haue read, described for many and sundry diseases, this notwithstanding which is very aptly compounded vnder the same name, seemeth to auaile much against the heate of the kidneis, the scalding of the vrine, and other affectes to which it is assigned. These simples bee withdrawen and expuncted out of that Electuary, which they terme *Lithon dridhon*, which in no place be found sincere and pure, and other astringing be added in their stead which doe hinder the breaking of the stone, and the displaying of the sand: sundry seedes and many stones, and the prepared bloud of the Goat is added, all which haue a singular power and force against the stone, and against all the *Symptomata* which arise thereof, and if in any respect the heat be feared, it may be tempred with *Diaspermaton*.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum.

Electuarium diacalaminthes compositum, doth mightily prouoke the flours, and all purgations of the wombe. ℞. *Pulueris electuary diacalaminthes simplicis,* ℥ ß. *foliorum prasij, sampsuci, melissophylli, artemisiæ, sabinæ aridorum.* ana. ℥. j. *cyperi, sem. rutæ & rubiæ, maceris, cinamomi.* an. ℈. ij. and twelue times so much of white sugar, dissolued in the water of Feuerfew or Pillitory of the wall.

Plantivs.

The compound Electuary of *Diacalaminthes*, seemeth fitly added in the last place to the other Electuaries, for that there was no other meete receipt extant to purge the corruption of the wombe.

Of moist Antidotaries.

ANtidotus analeptica recouerth all the powers of the body infeebled and wasted, it taketh away the griping of the heart, and the quawlming and swowning, it restoreth the body extenuated either by profusion of bloud, or by any excessiue euacuation, it helpeth such as be consumed and wasted, for that it humecterh, nourisheth, strengtheneth, and comforteth. ℞ *rosarum rubrarum, glicirrhizæ.* an. ʒ. ij. gr. v. *gummi arabici & tragacanthæ.* ana. ʒ. ij & ℈. ij. *santali albi & rubri.* ana. ʒ. j. & ℈. j. *succi glicirrhizæ, amyli, sem. papaueris albi, protulacæ, lactucæ & seriolæ.* ana. ʒ. iij. *quatuor seminum frigidorum maiorum, sem. cydoniorum, sem. maluæ, sem. bomberis, sem. violarum strobilorum, pistaciorum recentium, amigdalarum dulcium, pulpæ sebestem.* ana. ʒ. ij. *cariophillorum, spodij, cinamomi.* ana. ʒ. j. *croci.* Gr. v. *penidiorum.* ʒ. ß. when they be all powned, temper them with sirupe of violets.

PLANTIVS.

In the antidotary analepticke, which they tearme *resumptiuam*, the Author thought good to alter nothing besides the order of the simples, and that for the graines of Berberies, *pistacia*, be put in the receipt.

Antidotus diasaterion.

ANtidotus *diasaterion*, augmenteth the genitall seede, procureth a lust to Veneric, and doth as it were quicken and reuiue the dull desire thereto: and it is a singular help and comfort against the imbecillity of the kidneis and spermaticke vessels, whereby it availeth much for procreation of children. ℞. *radicis saterij recentis & solidæ, radicis pastinacæ satinæ, radicis eringij, nucis indicæ, strobilorum, pistaciorum.* ana. ʒ. j. ß. *cariophillorum, zinziberis, anisi, sem. eruce, linguæ auis quæ semen est fraxini.* ana. ʒ. v. *cinamomi, candarum scincorum, sem. bulbi.* ana. ʒ. ij. ß. *moschi.* Gr. v. *mellis optimi despumati.* ℔. iij. The rootes being bruised are boiled in hony, and tempred, and after *nux indica, strobuli* and *pistacia* being bruised are also put to them, and the other simples in the end being exquisitely powned.

PLANTIVS.

There be three compositions set downe of *diasaterion*, but this is the most effectuall of all, and therefore may stand in stead of all the rest.

Antidotus è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio.

ANtidotus *è cocco baphico seu grano infectorio*, which the Arabians terme *kermes*, cheareth the heart, and driueth away sorrow comming without occasion,

it

it restraineth and brideleth *melancholia* and *mania*, and recouereth the rauished spirites and powers of the body. ℞. *succi malorum fragrantium, aquæ rosarum*, ana. ℔. ij. *In quibus macera horis.* xxiiij. *serici staminis crudi.* ℔. j. Let it boile easily and then streine it, and in the streined liquor, boile *granorum infectoriorum.* ℥. ij. the decoction then will become red, in the which dissolue *saccharj albi.* ℔. j. ß. Boile them then againe till the thickneſſe of hony, in the end put in *ambræ crudæ contusæ.* ℥. ß. and when it is liquified or melted, sprinckle in these powders, *ligni aloes crudi, cinamomi.* an. ℥. vj. *lapidis cyanei loti & præparati.* ℥. j. ß. *margaritarum non perforatarum.* ℥. ij. *foliorum auri purissimi.* ℥. j. *moschi.* ℈. j.

PLANTIVS.

Antidotus è cocco baphico, tearmed *confectio alkermes*, cannot be safely prepared with silke already died, and as they tearme it *Karmesino*, for that such kinde of silke vsually is not died without Gaule, Alume, and Arsenicke, which is altogether venimous, therefore this way of composition is much better.

Antidotus è baccis lauri.

ANtidotus *è baccis lauri*, doth mightily dissipate winde through heat and tenuity, and is especiall good as well for paine in the great guttes as in the small. ℞. *foliorum rutæ.* ℥. x. *ammeos, cumini, nigellæ, lebistici seminis, origani, carui, amigdalarum amararum, piperis longi, montasiri, dauci, acori, baccarum lauri, castorei*, ana. ℥. ij. *sagapeni.* ℥. ß. *opoponacis.* ℥. iij. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. j. ß.

Philonium.

PHilonium ministred with *Opium* after sixe monethes, doeth take away vehement and grieuous paines, either in the great guttes or in the kidneis, or in *splena*, prouoketh sleepe, staieth distillation, asswageth cough, and restraineth spitting of bloud. ℞. *croci.* ℥. v. *piretri, euphorbij, spicæ nardi, mirrhæ, castorij.* ana. ℥. j. *piperis albi, hiosciami.* ana. ℥. xx. *opij.* ℥. x. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. ij. the Dose hereof is from ℈. j. to ℥. j.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath preferred aboue the rest this description of *Philonium* approued both by authority of *Galen*, and by experience, for that this Alume is sufficient to lay vehement torments, and yet notwithstanding the Author following *Mesue* hath put in mirrhe and castorie (neither of which *Galen* improueth) that the mixture might the rather be the safer, for that they haue a peculiar vertue to correct *Opium*. If the manner of composition in this receipt be considered, the weight of *Opium* is almost twise so much as in *Philenio Romano*. The greater *Philonium* which they tearme *Romanum* (for that it hath but halfe the weight of *Opium*) may bee ministred in a double Dose, namely from ℈. ij. to ℥. j.

Antidotus tearmed requies.

ANtidotus tearmed *Requies* without *Opium*, doth allay the extreme heate of burning feauers, asswageth thirst, represseth madnesse, procureth sleepe, and causeth ease. ℞. *rosarum, violarum.* ana. ℥. iij. *corticum radicum mandragoræ, seminis hyoscyami albi, & papaueris albi, seminis seriolæ, lactucæ, portulacæ & psillij, nucis muschatæ, cinamomi electi.* ana. ℥ j. ß. *trium santalorum, spodij, tragacanthæ,* ana. ℈ ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum.*

Plantivs.

ANtidotus tearmed *requies*, hath lesse *opium* then anie kinde of *philonium* or of *opiatum*: yet it cooleth mightily through the mixture of other simples which be almost all cold, notwithstanding the vse thereof is scarcely safe, for that the *opium* is not sufficiently corrected by mixture of hote simples. But if the composition be proued without *opium*, truly it doth not a litle auayle to asswage the burning heate of agues and dottage, thirst, and whatsoeuer *symptomata* doe proceed of the feauerous heate. The other compositions of *philonii* are to be abandoned as nothing necessarie, as both the antidotarie *diaolibanum* and *athanasia*, and *musa ænea, requies cum opio, trifera magna*, and *Esdiæ magna*, of what author soeuer it was inuented. For such compositions as haue *opium*, if they be ordained to asswage paine, *philonium* described by this author may supply the want. But if it be ordained either to strengthen the principall partes, or to expell poyson and many other sundrie diseases, *triphera magna, Esdiæ magna, aurea Alexandrina* and *Athanasia*, *theriace* and *mithridatum* may therefore stand in their steed. The confection *Anacardina* is also omitted, being flat contrarie to those which I haue repeated. For notwithstanding it be commended for many diseases, yet for the great exuperant heate thereof it is verie dangerous, for that it doth speedily inflame the spirits and humours, and forthwith doth procure an ague.

Theriace Diatessaron.

THeriace *Diatessaron* is excellent good against Epilepsie, conuulsion, palsey, cruditie of the stomach, ill habite, dropsie, and other cold diseases. Further it auayleth much against venime receiued, against the byting of virulent beasts, and a pestilent constitution. ℞. *radicis gentianæ, baccarum lauri, mirrhæ, aristolochiæ rotundæ.* ana. ℥. ij. and when they be verie seriously powned, receiue and mixe with *mellis optimi expumati*, ℔. ij.

Theriace Andromachi senioris.

THeriace *Andromachi senioris* preuayleth against the stinging of poysonous beasts, it helpeth the falling euill, the apoplexie, the resolution of the bodie, *Cephalalgia, Asthma, hæmapton*, aggrieuance in the stomach, iaundies, dropsie, paines of the kidneyes, cholicke, gowt, melancholicke and lunatick men: and lastly the leprosie, it expelleth the floures & a dead child: it maruellously comforteth and fortifieth the heart, the braine, the liuer, the stomach, and

the

the whole bodie, and preſerueth it from a peſtilent contagion. ℞. *trochiſcorum ſcilliticorum.* ℥.vj. *trochiſcorum theriacorum, magmatis hædycroi, piperis longi, opij,* ana. ℥.iij. *roſarum rubrarum, ſeminis napi ſylueſtris, ſcordij, opobalſami, cinamomi, Agarici* .ana. ℥.j.ß. *mirrhæ, coſti, croci, caſſiæ lignea, nardi indicæ, ſcænanthi, thuris maſculi, piperis albi & nigri, dictamni, marrubij, rheibarbarij, ſtachadis, ſemi. petroſelini macedo. calamites, terebinthinæ, zinziberis, radicis pentaphylli.* ana. ℥. vj. *polij montani, chamæpiteos, ſtyracis calamitæ, mei, amomi, nardi celticæ, ſigilli lemnij, phuponticis, chamædrios, foliorum malabatri aut macis, chalcidis toſtæ* (which may be commodiouſly pretermitted) *radicis gentianæ, aniſi, ſucci hypociſchidis, carpobalſami, gummi Arabici ſplendidi, ſemi. fæniculi, cardomomi minoris, ſeſelios, acaciæ, thalaſpios, ſem. hyperici, ammeos.* ana. ℥. ß. *caſtorei, ariſtolochiæ longæ, ſentonus, ſemi. dauci, bituminis Iudaici, opoponacis, centaurij minoris, Galbani*, ana. ℥. ij. *mellis optimi expumati triplum, id eſt,* ℔. xiiij. ℥ iij. *Vini optimi odorati* ſo much as ſhall ſuffice to diſſolue the liquors and iuyces. The greateſt doſe is ℈. iiij. or ℥. ß. for ℈. j. of the powder, or ℈. iiij. of the compoſition containe gra. j. of *opium*.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath therefore imitated the compoſition of triacle ſet foorth by Andromachus ſenior, in an Elegiacall verſe, for that neither the number nor the weight of ſimples can in verſe be eaſily changed. Certaine Authors afterward framed this receipt in other order of ſimples, and peraduenture more conuenient: to the which alſo they added ſothernwood & gladine, and altered the doſes of certaine ſimples, and therefore their receipt is not to be accounted ſo certaine. Wherefore without all controuerſie we are to inſiſt to this deſcription only. Whereas the Author doth admoniſh vs of *chalcitide id eſt,* vitriol not to be put in this compoſition, therein imitating Valerius Cordus, that ſeemeth verie conuenient, for whereas that medicine, eſpecially being burnt, is maruellous cauſticke, *eſcharoticum*, and hurtfull to the intrailes, and hath bene experienced nothing to auaile for any externall diſeaſe, there is no cauſe why with ſo great inconuenience and vnpleaſauntneſſe of taſt, it ſhould be admitted into this compoſition. For if it be (as ſome men thinke) therefore added to make the compoſition blacke, it ought not for colour ſake, by taſte and operation ſo much annoy the bodie. Finally by taking it away, the whole receipt will be more commodious, leſſe ſharpe and hote, and will become more pleaſant to the receiuer.

Mitridatum.

Mitridatum doth nigheſt reſemble the power of triacle, and is vſed againſt the ſame diſeaſes with a great deale more facilitie & leſſe extremitie of heate, according vnto the deſcription of *Andromachus* allowed of *Galen*, and other auncient Phyſitions. ℞. *myrrhæ, nardi.* ana. ℥. j. ℈. ß. *croci, Cinamomi, ſcordij, zinziberis*, ana. ℥. vij. ß. *opij.* ℥. iiij. graines. xxv. *ſtyracis, Seſelios, abrotani, libanotidis* .ana. ℥. x. *Caſtorij.* ℥. vj. ℈. ß *ſcænanthi, polii, coſti, piperis longi, ſem. dauci ſcænanthi, Galbani, terebinthinæ* .ana. ℥. vj. ß, *piperis albi*, ℥. v. ℈. j. *petroſelini, ſeminis nardi celticæ, ſeminis fæniculi, folii Indi aut maceris, gentianæ roſarum ſiccarum, mei athamantici* .ana. ℥ . iiij. *caſſiæ lignea*, ℥. v. ß. *Thuris* ℥ .vj. ℈ .j.

ſucci hypociſtidis. ℥.vj. gr.xv. *acori aut calami aromatici, phu, pontici, ſagapeni, fructus balſami, hyperici, iridis, acaciæ, gummi, cardamomi, pelicini*, that is, ana. ℥. ij. *terræ lemniæ, lumborum ſciuri, cypheos, opoponacis.* ana. ℥. vj. *thlaſpij.* ℥.vj. ℈. ij. *aniſi, biſſopi, chamepiteos.* ana. ℥. iij. *opobalſami, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, marrubij.* ana. ℥. j. *mellis optimi expumati.* ℔. vij. ſ.

PLANTIVS.

There bee foure ſundry and very diuerſe compoſitions of *Mithridatum* extant, one (and that the greateſt) is the inuention of *Nicolaus Mirepſius*, deſcribed by *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*, and vſed of all Apothecaries euery where, which euery man doth daily experience to be very effectuall againſt maligne and peſtilent agues, venime, vomites, crudities, lienteries, and many other diſeaſes, and whatſoeuer firſt Author or inuentor it had, it is now euery where much practiſed. The ſecond is of *Democritus* an auncient Greeke Author, practiſed of *Auicenna*, and ſet out in the Apothecarie Booke of *Nicolaus Præpoſitus*, which as it is found to bee both in compoſition and in vſe, more facile then the other: ſo in vertue it is no whit inferior to the ſame, but rather more excellent and effectuall againſt all maligne and contagious diſeaſes. The third was diſcribed by *Andromachus*, and the fourth which *Galen* and *Aetius* & other Greeke Authors tooke out of the workes of *Antipater* and *Cleophantus* auncient Phiſitions. The two later be not much vnlike, for they conſiſt of the ſame ſimples, notwithſtanding placed in diuerſe order, whoſe Doſes doe differ in a certaine few halfe ſcruples onely, ſo that they two may ſeeme fitly to be applied to the ſame vſe, yet notwithſtanding, becauſe this laſt is ſomewhat more copious compounded of 52. ſimples, and corrected and approued according to the diligent iudgement of *Galen*, is is to bee eſteemed the beſt of the reſt, and moſt effectuall againſt the diſeaſes tofore repeated. Wherefore the Author hath repeated this onely, becauſe he would haue it vſed onely of all Phiſitions, and therefore he hath altred the order of the ſimples reducing into one place all ſuch as were of one Doſe, that thereby the Apothecaries might haue leſſe labour in compounding and confecting the receipt.

De Trochiſcis, ſeu Paſtillis.

Trochiſci è vipera.

Trochiſci è vipera, which vſed in the compoſition of the great Triacle, the fleſh of choſen and prepared vipers is boyled in pure water, with greene dill and ſalt from the bones, then being taken out it is grinded on a marble ſtone, and it is ſprinckled by little and little, with like weight of crummes of wheaten breade dried, pouring in in the meane time (if neede ſo require) the owne broth of the vipers, and a little *opobalſami aut ſuccidanei*, whereof *Trochiſces* be made the weight of ℥. j. and bee diligently dried in the ſhadow.

Trochiſci

Trochiſci ſcillitici.

Trochiſci ſcillitici be referred to the ſame compoſition of Triacle. ℞. *Medullæ ſcillæ aſſatæ.* ℔. j. *farinæ erui.* ℥. viij. and being well bruiſed they be tempred into *Trochiſces*, and be dried in the ſhadow.

Trochiſci hedricoi.

Trochiſci hedricoi be likewiſe applied to the compoſition of Triacle. ℞. *mari aut balſamitæ, amaraci, aſari, aſpalathi calami odorati aut galangæ, phu, pontici, xylobalſami, opobalſami, aut ſuccidaneorum, cinamomi, coſti.* ana. ℥. iij. *mirrhæ, folij, nardi, indicæ, croci, caſſiæ.* ana. ℥. vj. *amomi.* ℥. xij. *maſtiches.* ℥. j. ſo much wine of the beſt as ſufficeth to the making of *Trochiſces.*

Trochiſci cypheos.

Trochiſci cypheos be requiſite to the compoſition of Mithridate. ℞. *pulpæ vuarum paſſarum, terebinthinæ coctæ, mirrhæ, ſcenanthi.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *calami aromatici.* ℥. ix. *cinamomi.* ℥. ß. *bdellij, anicij*, that is, *blattæ byzanthij, ſpicæ nardi, caſſiæ ligneæ, cyperi, arcenthidum*, that is, *baccarum iuniperi.* ana. ℥. iij. *aſpalathi.* ℥. ij. ß. *croci.* ℥. j. *mellis expumati & vini optimi.* ana. ſo much as is ſufficient to the tempering of *Trochiſces.*

Plantivs, *in Trochiſcos.*

There is no alteration made of the Trochiſces which bee commended by the iudgement of all Authors, as auaileable to the great compoſition, leaſt that in the alteration of them there ſhould be ſomwhat changed in the greater compoſition which be by vſe approued.

Trochiſci è capparibus.

Trochiſci è capparibus doth take away the hardneſſe of the ſplene, groſſe melancholy, and diſſipateth winde. ℞. *corticum radicum capparis, ſemi. agri.* ana. ℥. vj. *amoniaci.* ℥. ß. *ſemi. nigellæ, calamitæ, ſucci eupatorij, amigdalarum amararum, foliorum rutæ, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ, ſem. naſturtij.* ana. ℥. ij. *cyperi, ſcolopendrij*, that is, *ceterachi.* ana. ℥. j. receiue and temper the powders in *ammoniacum* diſſolued in vineger and make thereof Trochiſches.

Plantivs.

Trochiſci è capparibus bee very wiſely deſcribed, and yet notwithſtanding, if you adde vnto them *Gummi laccæ ſeu caucami & rubei tinctorum*, ana. ℥. j. they ſhall become more effectuall, neither be other Trochiſces of *Lacca* to bee admitted for this purpoſe, for that theſe of Capars be ſufficient enough againſt obſtructions, and inueterate diſeaſes of the ſplene.

Trochiſchi de Eupatorio.

TRochiſchi *de Eupatorio* do diſſolue the obſtructions and tumours of the liuer eſpecially, & doth cure daylie agues ariſing therof, the iaundies, and beginning of dropſie. ℞. *mannæ electæ, ſucci Eupatorii* ana. ℥. j. *roſarum.* ℥ ß. *ſpodii.* ℥. iij. ß. *ſpicæ nardi indicæ.* ℥. iij. *rheibarbari, aſari, aniſi* ana. ℥. ij. ß. and being all receiued and tempered with the iuyce of agrimonie and *Manna* are to made into Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſchi ex Eupatorio, be ſubſtituted alſo in the ſtead of Trochiskes of rewbarbe and wormwood, for that they be of great affinitie and like vertue.

Trochiſchi Alkakengi ſeu Halycacabi.

TRochiſchi *Alkakengi ſeu halycacabi*, do mitigat the exulceratiõs of the kidnies & bladder, difficultie of vrine ariſing of thoſe parts, and piſſing of bloud.

℞. *Baccarum halycacabi* ℥. iij. *ſem. cytrulli, melonum & cucurbitæ mundatorum*, ana. ℥. iij. ß. *boli armeni, gummi Arabi, thuris, ſanguinis draconis, papaueris albi, amigdalarum amararum, ſucci glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, amili, ſtrobylorum*, ana. ℥. vj. *ſemi. apii, ſuccini, terræ lemniæ, ſem. hyoſciami, opii.* ana. ℥. ij. and with the iuyce of winter cherries, make Trochiskes of theſe ſimples. There be other Trochiskes without *opium* compounded like vnto theſe.

Trochiſchi è Myrrha.

TRochiſchi *è myrrha*, do mightily bring downe the flowres, and do cure the diſeaſes ariſing of their ſuppreſſiõ, & laſtly do expell the ſecõds or a dead childe. ℞. *Myrrhæ* ℥ iij. *lupinorum.* ℥. v. *foliorum rutæ, mentaſtri, pulegii, cumini, rubeæ, aſſæ fœtidæ, ſagapeni, opoponacis.* ana. ℥. ij. and of theſe be made Trochiskes with the iuyce of mugwort.

Trochiſchi è terra Lemnia.

TRochiſchi *è terra Lemnia* do ſtay courſing and outragious humors; eſpecially being thinne, do reſtraine the exceſſiue flux of the bellie inwardly taken, and being outwardly applyed, they doe ſuppreſſe profuſion of bloud, iſſuing either out of the noſe, or wombe, or hemerhoides, or any other part.

℞. *ſanguinis draconis, gummi Arab. Aſſali, ſpodii, acaciæ, hypociſchidos, lapidis hæmatitæ, balauſtiorum, boli armeni, terræ lemniæ, corallii rubri, ſuccini* ana. ℥. ij. *margaritarum, tragacanthæ, papaueris nigri.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *ſeminis portulacæ toſti, cornu cerui vſti, thuris, nucum cupreſſi, croci* ana. ℥. ij. and confect Trochiskes thereof with the iuyce of diſtilled water of plantaine.

PLANTIVS.

Trochiſchi è ramich be ſubtracted of the Trochiskes of *terra lemnia*, for that they

they comprehend the greateſt parte of them. Theſe Trochiskes *è terra lemnia* comprehend great ſtore of aſtringing and cooling ſimples, that therefore other aſtringing compoſitions be not requiſite. And ſith this receipt is of all other moſt effectuall and leaſt dangerous, all the other be ſuppreſſed, as *trochiſci ramich, trochiſci Diarrhodon, trochiſci oxyacantha, trochiſci è ſuccino ſeu carabe, & trochiſchi è ſpodio*, for that the compoſition of all thoſe is nothing apt nor neceſſarie. The Trochisches of *Diarrhodon* which do conſiſt of roſes, *Spodion*, redde and white ſaunders, of ſaffron and Camphire may ſupplie the place of theſe, eſpecially if they ſeeme to be vnpleaſant in taſte.

Trochiſci è Caphura.

Trochiſci è Caphura do aſſwage the heate of burning agues, the feruencie of bloud and choler, the inflammation and hote intempure of the intrailes, and whatſoeuer thirſt ariſeth thereof. ℞. *Roſarum rubrarum* ℥.ß. *ſpodij, Glycyrrhiræ* .ana. ℥.ij. *quatuor ſeminum frigidorum maiorum, Tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, croci, Spicæ nardi, indicæ*. ana. ℥.j. *ſantali citrini*. ℥. ij. ß. *Ligni aloes, cardamomi, amyli, caphuræ* .ana. ℈. ij. *ſacchari albiſſ. manne electæ* .ana. ℥. iij. *muſcilaginis, ſſllij*, depromed out of roſewater, as much as ſufficeth to make Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ.

Trochiſci Galliæ Moſchatæ do maruellouſly corroborate the hart, the braine, and the other intrailes, and doe giue a good ſmell to the mouth and the reſt of the bodie. ℞. *Ligni aloes crudi* ℥. v. *ambræ*. ℥. iij. *moſchi*, ℥.j. *muſcilaginis tragacanthæ*, made in roſe water, ſo much as ſufficeth for trochiskes.

Trochiſci aliptæ Muſchatæ.

Trochiſci aliptæ moſchatæ haue the ſame effect, either inwardly receiued, or by ſuffumigation, and further ariddeth the bodie of difficultie of breathing. ℞. *Ladani puriſſimi* ℥. iij. *Styracis calaminthæ* ℥.j.ß. *ſtyracis rubræ* ℥.j. *ligni aloes* ℥.ij. *ambræ*, ℥.j. *caphuræ*. ℥.ß. *moſchi*, ℈.ß. and diſtilled roſe water, as much as need requireth.

Trochiſci Bechichi albi.

Trochiſci Bechichi albi, which be alſo termed *Pillulæ albæ*, do mitigate a ſharpe diſtillation, and do aſſwage hoarſneſſe and continuall cough. ℞. *Sacchari albiſſimi* ℔.j. *ſacchari candi, penidiorum* ℥.iiij. *radicis iridis florentini* ℥.ij. *amyli* ℥.j. ß. the muſcilage of tragacanth made in roſe water, ſo much as ſufficeth to the conformation of Trochiskes.

Trochiſci Narcotici.

Trochiſci Narcotici being ſafely applied, do aſſwage the paine of the head & teeth, do procure ſleepe in the burning of feauers, do extinguiſh *Eryſipelas*

and inflammations, and being dissolued in other medicines do mitigate the paine of all the externall parts. ℞. *Gummi arabici & tragacanthæ, amyli,* ana ʒ.ß. *cerussæ lotæ aquâ rosarum.* ʒ.vj. *styracis calaminthæ, mirrhæ, castorij, opij Sapa soluti* .ana. ʒ.iiij *croci.* ʒ.ß and when they be all brused they are to be receiued and mingled with the muscilage of fleewort taken out of rose water, and thereof confect Trochiskes.

PLANTIVS.

The Author hath brought in to the order of Trochiskes in this last place, *Narcoticss trochiscos* against extreame torments: the composition whereof is verie apt, and the vse verie necessarie, and the rather, because there be none extant which can serue for that purpose.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis nucleis.

Ecligma è Pineis nucleis do extenuate and deterge grosse humors of the brest and lungs, verie conuenient and commodious against *Asthma*, difficultie of breathing & inueterate coughes. ℞. *Nucleorum pineorum recentium.* ʒ.ʒo. *pulpæ palmularum.* ʒ.xxxv. *amigdalarum dulcium & amararum, abellanarum assatarum, tragacanthæ, gummi arabici, Glycyrrhizæ, amyli, capilli veneris, iridis florentini* .ana. ʒ iiij. *pulpæ passularum, butyri recentis, sacchari albissimi.* ana. ʒ.iij. *mellis albi expumati.* ℔.ij. *fiat Ecligma.* A wholesome and approued Ecligme more effectuall then the former against the same diseases. ℞. *Cinamomi, Hyssopi, glycirrhizæ.* ana. ʒ.ß. *Reripha, & mixaria* .ana.xxx. *numero: Vuarum passarum purgatarum, ficuum aridarum, palmularum pinguium* .ana ʒ.ij. *fenugraci* .ʒ.v. *capilli veneris.M* .j. *sem. anisi, fœniculi & lini, radicis iridis, foliorum calaminthæ.* ana. ʒ.ß. boile them all in ℔.iij. of water to the consumption of two, and boile againe the streined iuyce with ℔.j. *penidiorum* to the thicknesse of hony, and then put in *pinearum expurgatarum* .ʒ.v. *amigdalarum dulcium mundatarum, Glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ, gummi arabi, amyli* .ana. ʒ.iij. *iridis* .ʒ.ij.

Ecligma è Scylla.

Ecligma è scylla auaileth against the same diseases. ℞. *Succi seu mucoris scyllæ & mellis optimi expumati.* ana. ℔.j. boile thē to the consistence of an ecligme.

Ecligma ad asthma.

Ecligma ad asthma is an Ecligme which of all other before propounded is most effectuall against *asthma*. ℞. *Scyllæ assatæ* ʒ.ß. *radicis iridis, hyssopi, prassii, marcubij,* ana. ʒ.j. *myrrhæ, croci* .ana. ʒ.ß with sufficient quantitie of hony let the compound Ecligme of *Scylla* be confected.

Many simples be condited with sugar, that they may the longer continue with

with their full vertue, whereof ſome be whole, ſome be bruſed: ſuch as be whole be boyled in thrice ſo much ſugar vntill the whole moiſture conſumed, there remaineth the perfect conſiſtencie of a ſyrupe, as for example: *Acorus* is condited againſt the cold diſeaſes of the braines and nerues, and to recouer their ſtrength.

Zinziber is condited againſt the cruditie of the ſtomach and ſlimie fleame in the loungs.

The roote of Bugloſſe is condited againſt the palpitation of the heart and quaulming.

Peaches, fragrant apples, the rinde of the citrine be condited againſt *Cardialgia*, and *Melancholia*.

Quince peares, and *Diacydonion*, and peares, be condited to ſtrengthen & corroborate the ſtomach.

Wallnuttes, *mirabolani, emblici & Cepuli*, and nutmegs bing condited, do further the concoction of the ſtomach, do get an appetite and encreaſe ſtrength.

Cheries and the ſlippes of endiue, purſlane and lettuce condited, do refrigerate, aſſwage thirſt, and procure appetite.

Berberies and Ceruiſes being condited, do alay thirſt and the feruencie of choler, and reſtraine fluxe of the wombe.

Saterion and *Eringium* condited, do encreaſe the ſeed, and ſtirre vp a deſire to carnalitie, and further conception.

Conſeruæ.

BVT ſuch as cannot well be boyled, let them be bruſed and mixed with twice ſo much ſugar, and ſo be ſet in the ſunne and conſerued, and retaine the name of compounded ſugar, as Ioſacchar, Rhodoſacchar. But of all other kindes of compound ſugar, theſe ought eſpecially to be in a readineſſe. Sugar of roſemarie, of the flowres of ſage, of the flowres of Betonie, and of ſtcæhados, of the flowres of Piony, for that they be eſpeciall good againſt the colde diſeaſes of the braine and nerues, to comfort and ſtrengthen them againſt the Epilepſie and Apoplexie.

The ſugar of the flowres of flowredeluce, of maidenhaire, and of the roote of Enula, doth mildly purge the breaſt, and eaſe the lungs.

The ſugar of Comferie doth ſtay ſpitting of bloud.

The ſugar of violets, and the flowres of Bugloſſe doth refrigerate and chere the heart.

Sugar of roſes ſtrengtheneth the ſtomach, ſtayeth diſtillations and reſtraineth eruption of bloud.

Sugar of the ſlowres of Cichorie cooleth the liuer, and openeth the obſtructions thereof.

Further, there be ſundrie medicinable iuyces reſerued to vſe, whereof ſome be ſimple and pure, others mixed with ſugar, which for that by boyling they come to the thickneſſe of *ſapa*, be therefore termed of the Arabians *robuo*, that is, *ſapales*. Theſe iuyces being ſtrained, be permitted to ſettle vntill they waxe cleare, and then the purer portion thereof is boiled to the thickneſſe of hony, and then is ſet in the ſunne, and ſo is kept. If ſugar be therewith to be mingled, it muſt be in weight halfe ſo much as the iuyce is.

Succus è nucibus.

Succus è nucibus, termed *Dyacaryon*, auaileth againſt ſharpe diſtillations and *angina*, and hath of the iuyce of young wallnuts .℔.iiij. *mellis optimi*, ℔.ij. and be boiled to the thickneſſe of honie.

Succus è moris.

Succus è Moris termed *Dyamoron*, is good againſt the fretting vlcers of the mouth and iawes, and ſharpe diſtillations .℞. *Succi mororum domeſticorum* ℔ ß. *ſucci mororum rubri, mellis optimi expumati* .ana. ℔.j. *ſapæ*.℥.iij. boile them to the conſiſtence of hony.

The iuyce of wilde plumbes be boyled vntill they become thicke, and then they be vſed in ſtead of *Acacia*.

Of Medicines applyed outwardlie, and firſt of Oyles.

Oleum Roſarum.

Oleum Roſarum doth quench inflammations and burning in the ſtomach, it doth ſtrengthen, thicken, and ſtay fluxes. ℞. *Gummarum roſarum rubrarum recentium* bereft of the prickes, and bruſed, *ſucci roſarum* ana. ℔.j. macerate them in .℔. v. of *Oleum Omphacinum* which is without ſalt, in a veſſell of glaſſe cloſely ſhut, then ſet them ſeuen daies in the ſun, after boile them three houres in a double veſſell, and the leaues being ſtrained and caſt away, put in new, & change them twiſe or thriſe: in fine the leaues being againe ſtrained and caſt away, ſet it in the ſun, and boile it in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed. If you want *oleum omphacinum* without ſalt, the common oile muſt be often times ſtirred and waſhed in the iuyce of ſowre grapes.

Oleum Violarum.

Oleum violarum quencheth heate, abateth hote inflammations, eaſeth the pleuriticke, and aſſwageth the diſeaſes of the lungs and breſt: it is made of common oile being old, or of oile of almonds being new and vnſauorie, or which at the leaſt is waſhed with cold water, then freſh purple violets be put into the oile in a veſſell well couered, and be ſet to ſun vntill ten daies, and euerie third day the violets be changed, and in the end drie violets be put in.

Oleum Nymphæa.

Oleum Nymphæa doth more refrigerate, and doth eſpecially aſſwage the heat of the

of the kidneyes, bladder, and head, mitigateth madneſſe, procureth ſleepe: it is made as oile of violets, of the white flowres of water lillies macerated in laued oile, but it is ſet in the ſunne twenty daies: in the which ſpace the flowres be chaunged thrice.

Oleum Papaueris.

Oleum Papaueris worketh the ſame effectes that *Oleum Nimphæ* doth, but more effectually and properly, it appeaſeth paine of the head, madneſſe, and procureth ſleepe. The flowres, leaues, and heads of white poppie being bruſed, be macerated in laued oile, and it is made as *oleum Nymphæ*, yet it may be mildly in a double veſſell: there be which do preſſe out the oile of the ſeeds of poppie, as out of almonds.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi.

Oleum Hyoſcyami albi is prepared in like order as oile of poppie, both by maceration and expreſſion, and is as effectuall as oile of poppie for all the repeated purpoſes.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex.

Oleum Mandragoræ ſimplex doth more apparantly refrigerate, aſſwageth paine proceeding of inflāmation & procureth ſleep, it is confected of the apples of mādrag bruſed & macerated in oile, & eaſily boiled as *oleum Nymphæ*.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum.

Oleum Mandragoræ compoſitum, doth of all other moſt effectually refrigerate, and doth aſſwage the paines comming of inflammation, and other aggrieuances whatſoeuer: being annointed it doth mitigate the ach of the head, and freneſie, and put to the noſe thrilles, forthwith it procureth ſleepe. ℞. *Olei* ℔ ij. ß. *ſucci pomorum mandragoræ* ℥ iiij. *ſucci hyoſcyami albi* ℥ ij. *ſucci capitu papaueris albi* ℥ iij. *ſucci violarum, ſucci cicutæ tenerrimæ*. ana. ℥ j. *Opii, ſtyracis, calamintha*. ana. ℥ ß. all which muſt be mixed together, and ſtand in the ſunne ten dayes, and after be boiled in a double veſſell vntill the iuyce be conſumed: in the end the oyle muſt be ſtrained and ſet vp vntill need require.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum.

Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum refrigerateth, aſtringeth, is verie good for the ſtomach, intrailes and liuer being feebled, for that by annointing it reſtraineth vomite, laske and ſweate. ℞. *Cydoniorum cum cortice & ſemine tuſorum, ſucci Cydoniorum*. ana ℔ ß mingle them in a veſſell of glaſſe, and powre in of *Oleum omphacinum* ℔ j ß. ſet them in the ſunne fifteene dayes, then boile them foure houres in a double veſſell, and the quince peare being ſtrained, other freſh are likewiſe to be incocted the ſecond time, and alſo the third time vntill the humour be wholly conſumed. In fine preſſe out the oile and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum myrtinum.

Oleum myrtinum refrigerateth, aſtringeth and comforteth, but properly the heart, ſtomacke, braine and nerues, it is madeas *Milium* of the berries & leaues of Mirtle, by adding the iuice alſo when they cānot be come by.

Oleum Maſtichinum.

Oleum maſtichinum, doth by aſtriction corroborate the braine, ſinewes, ſtomach and liuer, very commdious againſt Lientery, vomit, and crudity. ℞. *maſtiches*. ℥. iij. *aquæ roſarum*. ℥. iiij. *olei omphacini vel roſacei*. ℔. j. Boile them in a double veſſell to the conſumption of the water. Wine in ſtead of roſe water is put in, when as the wearineſſe or the vnluſtineſſe of the ſinewes is to bee aſſwaged.

Oleum menthæ.

Oleum menthæ doth by annointing corroborate the ſtomach & other parts, furthereth concoction with a moderate heate, and it is confected in this wiſe. The leaues of ſowen Mintes bruiſed with the iuice be macerated in oile of *Omphacinum*, ſet in the ſunne, boiled, and oftentimes chaunged as hath beene ſhewed in the oile of roſes.

Oleum Abſinthij.

Oleum Abſinthij doth moderately calefie and corroborate, doeth further concoction, procure appetite, open obſtructions, kill wormes. The tops and leaues of wormewood bee bruiſed and macerated in *Oleo omphacino*, and it is abſolued as oile of Mint.

Oleum chamemelinum.

Oleum chamemelinum, doth with an eaſie obſtruction corroborat the ſinews and membranes, and doth excellently aſſwage paine. ℞. *Foliorū chamemeli recentium & tuſorum* ℔. j. infuſe and macerate them in ſweete mature oile, and let them ſtand in the ſunne twenty of the Canicular daies, and ſtraining and caſting away the leaues, reſerue the oile.

Oleum liliorum.

Oleum Liliorum aſſwageth the paine of the breaſt, ſtomacke, wombe, kidnyes, bladder, and ſinewes, and doth eaſe and concoct them. ℞. *Florum Liliorum alborum integrorum*, caſting onely away the yellow filaments. ℔. j. macerate them in ſweete and mature oile, and ſet them in the ſunne twenty daies. There is alſo another compound oile made hereof more effectuall to all the purpoſes which I haue tofore repeated, which receiueth *maſtiches, calami aromatici, roſti, olei pirethri, carpobalſami*. ana. ℥. j. *cariophillorum & cinamomi*. ana. ℥. ß. *croci*. ʒ. iij. Bruſe them all and macerate them in water foure and twenty houres. After let them boile a little, and being taken from the fire, powre in of ſweete oile. ℔. ij. of the leaues of lillies. ℥. viij. ſet them forty daies in the ſunne, then ſtraine out the oile and keepe it to your vſe.

Oleum leucoij lentei.

Oleum Leuci lentei, asswageth the paines of the breast, kidneis, sinewes, and iointes. ℞. *Florum leucoii.* ℔. j. macerated in ℔. j. ß. of sweete oile, set in the sunne tenne daies, changing the floures thrise, and the oile expressed is kept, by putting thereto if you thinke good. ℥. ij. of the dry floures.

Oleum iasminum.

Oleum iasminum worketh the same effect which *Leucoij* did, but more forcible. Further it is an especiall mollifying and lenitiue oile, it is made as the oile of Lillies was of the flowres of Iasmine.

Oleum anethinum.

Oleum anethinum doth moderatly calefie and digest, asswageth pain of the head, and ache of the sinewes, procureth sleepe, it is made of the leaues of dill, which be macerated in sufficient quantity of sweete oile, and set in the sunne one day, or concocted in a double vessell, and the oile being strained from the leaues is reserued.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium.

Oleum amigdalarum dulcium, doth mitigate paine, comfort the exasperated partes, especially the lungs and kidneis, it mollifieth dry and hard matter, and is very meete for such as haue the Hecticke feuer, and bee consumed: it is made in this wise; Sweete Almondes being diligently purged, be much bruised, and then there is powred vppon them a little rosewater; after put into a vessell, they are kept and fostered as it were in hote water, that they may become somewhat hote. Lastly put in a little bagge, they are pressed in a presse vntill the oile issue out.

Oleum lumbricorum.

Oleum lumbricorum doth mollifie with a moderate heat, and asswage paine, very conuenient for such as be bruised, and haue paine in the ioynts. ℞. *Lumbricorum terrestrium lotorum & praparatorum.* ℔. ß. *vini albi.* ℥. ij. *olei dulcis.* ℔. ij. Boile them to the consumption of the wine, and the washing of the wormes, then straine the oile and reserue it to your vse.

Oleum Irinum.

Oleum Irinũ doth concoct, extenuate, and dissolue, it asswageth pain of the liuer, wombe, & ioints, it concocteth likewise the offending matter of the lungs and breast. ℞. *radicum iridis tunsarum.* ℔. ß. *florum integrorũ.* ℔. j. *decocti*, or if

you wish to haue it work more effectually, take of the iuyce of another floure-deluce .℔.j. *Olei dulcis* ℔.ij.ß boile them in a double vessell till the water euaporate: and straining the rootes and leaues preserue the oile.

Oleum Rutaceum.

Oleum Rutaceum calefieth and attenuateth grosse humours, dissipateth winde more forcibly then dill, it auaileth against the cholicke, palsey, crampe, and coldnesse of the wombe and bladder. ℞. *foliorum rutæ modici succorum, succi eiusdem* .ana. ℔. ß. macerate them three dayes in .℔. iiij. of sweete oile: boyle them in a double vessell vntill the iuyce be consumed, and then straining the rew, change it 3. or 4. times: in fine reserue the oile expressed.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum.

Oleum Amigdalarum amararum doth mightily attenuate and diuide, doeth dissipate winde, especially the noise of the eares, and openeth the obstructions of the liuer and other intrailes by attenuating and deterging, it mollifyeth hardnesse but especially of the sinewes, it is confected of bitter almonds dried and purged, brused and calefied in hote boyling water, and pressed in a presse vntill the oile come out.

Oleum è Capparibus.

Oleum è Capparibus by extenuation and detersion doth dissolue euerie hardnesse and obstruction, but especially of the spleene, it asswageth the aggrieuances, and easeth euerie disease of the same. ℞. *Corticis radicum tamarisci, foliorum tamarisci, sem. agni, scolopendrii seu asplenii, Cyperi* .ana. ℥.ij. *aceti, vini optimi* .ana. ℥. ij. *Olei maturi* .℔ j. boyle them in a double vessell to the consumption of the wine and vineger: then straine the oile and store it.

Oleum Nardinum.

Oleum Nardinum doeth calefie, attenuate, digest and strengthen, and as well the simple as the compound doth redresse the cold and flatulent diseases of the braine, stomacke, liuer, spleene, kidneis, bladder and wombe. ℞. *Spicæ nardi* .℥.iij. *vini optimi, aquæ rosaceæ* .an. ℥.ij. ß. *Olei dulcis* .℔.j.ß. boile them three houres in a double vessell with no verie quicke fire vntill the wine and the water do euaporate.

Oleum Nardinum compositum.

Oleum Nardinum compositum. ℞. *Spicæ nardi.* ℥.iij. *sampsuchi* .℥.ij. *Xiloaloes, Enulæ, folii aut maceris, Calami aromatici aut galangæ, foliorum lauri, Cyperi, scænanthi, cardamomi.* ana. ℥.j. ß. these being brused powre into them *vini, aquæ rosaceæ* .ana. ℔. j. *Olei dulcis* .℔.v. macerate them foure and twentie houres, and then boyle them in a double vessell fiue houres, stirring it now and then vntill the wine and water be consumed.

Oleum laurinum.

Oleum Laurinum is hote and extenuating, doeth dissipate the winde of the stomach, the cholicke, and dissolueth cold diseases of the head, intrailes, wombe, kidneyes and ioynts. The ripe berries of Laurell be bruised and boyled a good space in water, and the salt that swimmeth aboue the strained decoction when it is cooled, must be gathered together and stored vp for oyle.

Oleum vulpinum.

Oleum vulpinum attenuateth and somewhat digesteth, it auaileth against the goute and all paines of the ioynts at all times of the sickneſſe. Boyle a foxe vncased, and vnboyled cut into little gobbers, and in like portion of fountaine and sea or salt water, and when it is boyled to the halfe, put in *Salu.* ℥ iij. *olei veteris puri.* ℔.iiij. *thymi, anethi, origani.* ana. ℔.ß. Boile them till one ioynt fall from another, and till the consumption of the water; and then presse out the oyle.

Oleum è Scorpionibus.

Oleum è Scorpionibus doth so forcibly extenuate, that being annointed vpon the loynes, it is thought to breake and disturbe the stone of the kidneyes, and being annointed vpon the share, or on the peritoneum, or iniected into the bladder. ℞. *radicis aristolochiæ rotundæ, gentianæ, cyperi, corticum radicum cappariis.* ana ℥.j. Bruse them al & macerate them in ℔.j.ß. of oyle of bitter almonds, and set them to sunne twentie dayes: then boyle them in a double vessell with a lent fire. In the end put in xv. Scorpions, and set them in the sunne againe xxx. dayes, then straine the oile and keepe it to your vse.

Oleum Terebinthinæ.

Oleum Terebinthinæ is hote and extenuating, and more penetrating then turpentine it selfe. Wherefore it doeth mollifie and extenuate hard tumors, and doth take away cold diseases of the nerues & ioynts, and notwithstanding comfort and strengthen them. ℞. *Terebinthinæ lucidæ.* ℔. iiij. put it in a cucurbite of glasse, and set it in sand, and by making a fire vnder it, by alchymie, first you shall distill out the water, secondly a moist cleare oyle, and lastly a yellow oyle.

Oleum recinium.

Oleum recinium, which they call *Oleum de Kerra*, doth mightily extenuate and digest, and therfore doth dissipate the paine and noise of the eares, doth scoure the issuing vlcers of the head, and ariddeth the bodie of *Psora, Lepra*, and grisly scarres, and ministred in a clyster, it bringeth out wormes & water: it is made thus. ℞. The seedes of the greater spurge being bruised, oile is pressed out of them in such force and maner as out of almonds.

Oleum balaninum.

Oleum balaninum doth diſſolue paine and noiſe of the eares, doeth waſhe away the ſpeckles, pimpels, ſpottes, and blacke ſcarres, prouoketh the belly, and procureth vomite; it is made of *Balanum mirepſica*, which the Arabians call *Been*, and it is bruiſed, calefied, and oile is preſſed out of the ſame in ſuch wiſe as out of Almondes.

Oleum è caſtoreo.

Oleum è caſtoreo auaileth much againſt the cold diſeaſes of the nerues and braine, againſt deafeneſſe and noiſe of the eares, and the extreme coldneſſe of agues. ℞. *caſtorij in aqua vitæ ſoluti.* ℥. j. *olei.* ℔. j. Boile them in a double veſſell till the conſumption of the third part.

Oleum euphorbij ſimplex.

Oleum euphorbij ſimplex worketh the ſame effect, but more forcibly, and put into the noſethrils, it bringeth downe fleame. ℞. *Euphorbij.* ℥. ß. *leuceij lentei, vini oderiferi*, an. ℥. v. Boile them to the conſumption of the wine.

Oleum de lateribus.

Oleum de lateribus which is alſo tearmed the Philoſophers oile, doth calefie, penetrate, and mollifie hard matter, reſolue and diſſipate colde humours, and eaſeth the Crampe, epilepſie, palſey, the goute, and all cold affects of the iointes and nerues; the making thereof is in this wiſe. Breake an old red tile ſtone to litle peeces, burne thoſe in hot coales, vntill they become altogether as hote as fire, then take them out and extinguiſhe them in cleare old oile, and let them ſo continue vntill they bee repleniſhed with oile, after take them out of the oile, and bruſe them into fine powder, and put the powder in a cucurbit of glaſſe: diſtill an oile thereof according to art, and ſtore it to your vſe.

Petroleum.

Petroleum, that is, naturall oile of ſtones, is extreme hoate and extenuating, penetrating, drying, and digeſting, it conſumeth cold water whatſoeuer in any part of the body, it diſſolueth the Epilepſie, palſey, crampe, paine of the ſinewes and iointes, of the ſplene, kidneis, bladder, and all cold affectes of the womb. This oile commeth not by art but by nature, and in many places it iſſueth out of ſtones and rockes.

Plantivs in Olea.

The Author imitating the vſuall and auncient compoſition of oiles, thought good to alter nothing in them, neither was there any ſuch neceſſity to alter them for pleaſure of the affected, for that they bee outwardlie applied; hee made choiſe and hath ſette downe the moſte effectuall oiles againſt all kinde of cauſes and diſeaſes, with omitting the other which were

were of litle vertue, or seemed vnnecessarie: for he accounteth *Oleum Nimphea citrina* superuacuous, for that it is contained vnder the other, and *Oleum populeum*, for that vnguentum *populeum* is of greater vertue: and he omitteth likewise the oile of the other mandrag, *Oleum costinum*, *oleum de piperibus*, and *Oleum maiorani*, and *Irinum compositum*, for that there be many other sufficient extant, which may be vsed with more facilitie and yet haue a greater power to calefie, attenuate and digest.

Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans.

VNguentum *Galeni refrigerans* is effectuall against *phlegmonæ*, *Erysipelata* and tetters, and against euerie hote intempure. ℞. *Ceræ albæ* ℥. viij. *Olei rosati* ℔. j. and when they be molten in a double vessel, powre them into another, and by powring cold water by litle and litle, and now and then changing are to be tempered a good space: in the end, the strained iuyce of housleeke or of morrell is powred and tempered therewith, especially if it be applied to affects not exulcerated, or else vineger affused, if the skinne continue hot and not exulcerated.

PLANTIVS, *in Vnguenta.*

Notwithstanding *Galen* his refrigerating oyntment according to the vsual description hath neither the iuyce of nightshade, nor houseleeke, yet by adiection of them it becommeth effectuall against the affectes which require refrigeration.

Vnguentum Rosarum.

VNGVENTVM *Rosarum* is applyed vnto the same affectes, but truely it is not of such efficacie. The making thereof is in this wise. Swines greace purified from the membranes must be washed nine times in hote water, and as oft in cold water, then like weight of redde roses bruised must be mingled therewith, and so must stand seuen daies to putrifie, then melt the greace with a lent fire and straine it: and againe macerating so much of bruised roses seuen dayes, infusing together halfe of the iuyce of roses, and oile of almondes sixe parts, then againe boile them with a lent fire vntill the whole iuyce be sucked vppe.

Vnguentum Populeum.

VNguentum *populeum* asswageth phlegmones, burning of agues, feruent heat of the head & kidneis, and annointed vpon the temples procureth sleepe. ℞. *Germinarum populi recentium* ℔. j. macerated in ℔. iij. of fresh swines greace prepared vntill all the simples w in order do followe may in summer be come by. ℞. *Foliorum papaueris rubri, foliorum mandragoræ, foliorum hyosciami, cymarum rutæ tenerrimarum, solani, lactucæ, semperviui, maiorus & minorus bardanæ, viola, vmbilici, veneris*, ana ℥. iij. bruse them and mixe them with the greace and the buds of the

poplar, and after ten dayes infuse lb. j. of rosewater. Boyle them with a lent fire, vntill the water and whole liquor be consumed, then straine it, and presse it, and if neede so require, boyle it againe vntill it come to the temperament of an ointment.

Vnguentum album.

VNguentum *album* refrigerating and mildly astringing, doth assuage inflammation and exustions, and doth allay the heate of scabbes and itch, and all out-breakings of choler. ℞. *ceruſa.* ℥. iiij. *lytargiri.* ℥. ij. lay them in rosewater a good space, then cast away the rosewater, and put them in a morter, and then by litle and litle poure into them so much rose oile as they can drinke vp, continually stirring and tempering them vntill they appeare in forme of an ointment: in conclusion adde thereunto a little white vineger, and ℥. j. ß. of camphire.

PLANTIVS.

This kinde of white ointment which is here described, is alone sufficient in steed of those which be termed *vnguentum de lythargira, vnguentum nutritum, vnguentum de ceruſa crudum, & vnguentum de ceruſa coctum*, which is tearmed also *Emplaſtrum de ceruſa*: for this one ointment containeth the vertue of them all.

Vnguentum aſtringens.

VNguentum *aſtringens*, the astringing ointment bringeth together the open parts of the bodie, doth compact the conduites and poares, doth intercept and driue backe fluxes, restraineth the going out of the mother, of the wombe, of the *anus*, and of the gut, and being applied doth stay issue of blood. ℞. *gallæ immaturæ, nucum cupreſſi, bacarum myrti, balauſtiorum, mollis corticis glandium, acaciæ, rhois, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. Bruse them all exquisitely, and macerate them about foure dayes in the iuyce of vnripe medlers *& ſorborum immaturorum*. Then dry them with a lent fire, and confect thereof an ointment with lb. j. of oyle of roses often laued in allume water, and ℥. iiij. of white waxe.

PLANTIVS.

This astringent ointment for that it is verie forcible, and easie to be come by, it is to be vsed *pro vnguento comitiſſæ* or any other astringing ointment.

Vnguentum diacalcyteos.

VNguentum *diacalcyteos* which they terme *Palmeum*, doth stay all fluxes lately begunne, and doth resolue such as be inueterate, doth agglutinate maligne vlcers *& dyſepulotica*. ℞. *adipis ſuillæ vetustiſſimi ſine ſale & fibris* lb. ij. *olei veteris, lythargiri veteris & triti.* ana. lb. iij. *calcitidos læuigatæ*, ℥. iiij. The greace and the oyle be molten with a lent fire, and the Litharge and Vitriol must be then cast vpon them; stirring it continually with three greene boughs *Palmæ aut ſaltem*

ſaltem mirti, ſorbi or *meſpilini*, and when it is come to the thickneſſe of a cerate, the tender boughes (cut in peeces) muſt be put in by little and little as it is in boyling. Then boyle it againe vntill it ſtaine not the fingers, & become to the conſiſtencie of an emplaiſter.

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum diacalciteos (according to this deſcription of Galen) is to be vſed in ſteed of thoſe foure which *Meſues* hath deſcribed, two vnder the title of *vnguentum diaphenicon*, and the other two vnder the title of *vnguentum palmeum*.

Vnguentum diapompholygos.

VNguentum *diapompholygos* refrigerateth, aſtringeth, and reſtringeth fluxe, filleth hollow vlcers, and bringeth maligne vlcers to a ſcarre. ℞. *Olei roſacei* ℥. x. *ſucci ſolatri.* ℥. xiiij. *bulliant ad ſucci conſumptionem. Adde ceræ albæ.* ℥. v. *ceruſæ lotæ.* ℥. ij. *plumbi vſti & loti, pompholigis, thuris.* ana. ℥. j. *coquantur in vnguenti formam.*

Vnguentum rubrum exſiccans.

VNguentum *rubrum exſiccans*, the red drying ointment worketh the ſame effect. ℞. *Olei roſarum.* ℔. j. *ceræ albæ.* ℥. v. *liquatis inſperge lapidu calaminaris, terræ lemniæ exquiſitè tritorum.* ana. ℥. iiij. *Lythargiri, ceruſæ.* ana. ℥. iij. *caphuræ.* ℥. j. boile them into an ointment.

Vnguentum dialtheos.

VNguentum *dialtheos* is of a moderate calefying, mollifying, humectiue and lenitiue vertue. ℞. *altheæ radicum recentium & contuſarum.* ℔. ij. *ſeminis lini & fenugræci contuſorum.* ana. ℔. j. *macerentur in aquæ.* ℔. viij. *deinde leuiter coquãtur, & exprimatur muſcilago de hac.* ℔. ij. *& olei.* ℔. iiij. *bulliant dum muſcilago ſit abſumpta: tum adde ceræ.* ℔. ß. *reſinæ.* ℔. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *percoquantur in vnguenti craſſitiem.*

PLANTIVS.

Vnguentum dialtheos ſimplex is here deſcribed, for that the cõpound through *Colophonium, Galbanum and Gummi hederæ*, was too filthie, and there were other receipts extant of a more diſſoluing vertue.

Vnguentum reſumptiuum.

VNguentum *reſumptiuum dictum*, hath great power mildly to mollifie without anie manifeſt heate, and therefore may be ſafely applyed to ſuch as haue *Aſthma* or *Hecticam febrem*, a conſumption, Pleuriſie, or an ague. ℞. *ſeminis lini, altheæ & fenugræci, gummi Arabici, tragacanthæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *macerentur & bulliant in* ℔. ß. *aquæ roſarum.* Straine out the muſcilage, and therein diſſolue *adipis ſuilli, gallinæ, anſeris & anatis.* ana. ℥. ij. *eſipi.* ℥. ß. *olei violarum, chamemeli &*

amigdalarum dulcium. ana. ℥. ij. *medullæ vituli, butiri recentis, ceræ albæ.* ana. lib. ß. *coquantur in vnguentum.*

PLANTIVS.

This ointment which is entituled *resumptiuum*, is described so excellently well, that it is preferred before all the other which be compounded either to mollifie, asswage, or to relaxe. For neither the ointment *diadipibus*, neither the double pectorall vnguent, & *vnguentum philagrij*, neither anie other hath bene at any time inuented more excellent to mollifie, & to the fore repeated purposes.

Vnguentum Agrippæ.

VNguentum *Agrippæ* doth not only mollifie, but also mightely attenuate and deuide and dissipate *ædemata corporis*, cureth inueterate affectes of the sinewes, easeth paine of the kidneyes, and by annointing prouoketh the bellie, and thereby helpeth the dropsie-sicke. ℞. *radicis brioniæ.* ℔. ij. *radicum cucumeris agrestis.* ℔. j *scyllæ.* ℔. ß. *radicis ireos recentis.* ℥. iij. *radicum filicis & ebuli, tribuli marini.* ana. ℥. ij. *tunsa omnia recentia macerentur diebus sex vel octo in olei veteris non rancidi.* lib. iiij. *parum deinde feruefiant, & in expresso olei ceræ citrinæ.* ℥. xv. *liquefiant in vnguento consistentiam.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour doth vpon good occasion admonish, that in the oyntment of *Agrippa* all the simples should be fresh, and that they must not be boyled much. For notwithstanding being crude, they haue a mollifying and attenuating vertue, yet by boyling that vertue perisheth and is lost: wherfore the Author did in another place verie wisely commaund, that no especiall effectuall cataplasme should be confected to mollifie scirrhous and hard matters of these rootes bruised, and crude with greace and waxe.

Vnguentum Aregon.

VNguentum *Aregon*, that is, the helping ointment, doth mightely extenuate and digest, and is verie commodious against cold affects of the bodie, but specially of the sinewes, and is very conuenient against conuulsion, resolution, paine of the loungs, ioynts and great guts. ℞. *rorismarini, maioranæ, radicum iari, serpilli, rutæ, radicis cucumeris agrestis.* ana. ℥ iiij. ß. *foliorum lauri, saluiæ, sabinæ, pulicariæ maioris & minoris, radicis brioniæ.* ana. ℥ iij. *laureolæ.* ℥ ix. *foliorum cucumeris, agrestis & nopitæ.* ana. ℔. ß. *omnia Maio mense collecta & expurgata tundantur recentia, & macerentur diebus septem in olei optimi.* ℔. vj. *affusa aqua vitæ* ℔. j. *deinde coquantur dum contabescant & absumpta sit aqua, oleum percolatur in quo ceræ.* ℥. xvj. *liquantur & adipis vrsini, olei laurini.* ana. ℥ iij. *olei moschelini.* ℥. ß. *petrolei.* ℥. j. *butyri.* ℥. iiij. *agitando bi puluercs inspergantur masticbes, olibani.* ana. ℥ vij. *piretbri, euphorbij, zinziberis, piperis.* ana. ℥. j. *omnia vnguenti forma coeant.*

Vnguentum

Vnguentum merciatum magnum.

VNguentum merciatum magnum is especially good against colde affectes of the braine, sinewes and iointes, against quiuering, conuulsion, palsey, and the goute, and is effectuall to mollifie hard tumours especially of the splene. ℞. *ceræ albæ.* ℔. j. *olei.* ℔. iiij. *roris marini, foliorum lauri.* ana. ℥. iiij. *tamarisci.* ℥. iij. *rutæ.* ℥ iij. ß. *ebuli, sauinæ, balsamitæ,* that is, *menthæ aquaticæ, ocymi, salinæ, polij, calaminthes, artemisiæ, helleny, betonicæ, acanthæ, quæ est vrsa branchina, asparagulæ, quæ est aparinæ anemones quæ herba venti dicitur, pimpinellæ, agrimonij, absinthij, flerui minoris, qui & herba paralisis, costi herbæ hortensis, quæ herba dicitur sanctæ Mariæ, cimarum sampsuci, semperuiui minoris quod Crassula appellatur, mellefolij, semperuiui maioris, chamedrios, plantaginis seu quinque nerui, centauri minoris, fragrariæ, quinque folii, tetrahit, id est, herbæ indaicæ.* ana. ℥ ij. ℥ ij. *radicis althææ, cumini, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥ j. ß. *fænugræci.* ℥ vj. *butyri.* ℥ v. *semi. vrticæ, violarum & papaueris rubri, mentastri, seu mentæ agrestis, mentæ satinæ, oxylapati, polytrichi, cardiobatani, id est, cardui benedicti, periclementi, id est, caprifolii, seu matris syluæ, maratri, herbæ moschatæ, quæ est prima geranii species, trifolii acetosi, quod alelu̯a dicitur, scolopendrii, quod est ceterach, crispulæ, id est buphthalini, caphoratæ herbæ, id est abrotani, styracis, medullæ ceruinæ.* ana. ℥ ij. *adipis vrsini, adipis gallinacei, mastiches.* ana. ℥ ß. *thuris.* ℥ ij. *olei nardini.* ℥ j. The herbes must be gathered in the moneth of May, and being fresh and greene, must be bruised and macerated seuen daies in the best fragrant wine, and the eight day they must be boiled together, vntill the halfe be consumed, and then the oile must be powred in, then they must bee againe boiled vntill the herbes be wasted and the wine whollie consumed. After straine and presse out the oyle, in which (calefied againe) put, in the order prescribed, *styrax, butirum, adipes, mastiche, thus, oleum nardinum & cera,* and when they are dissolued with continuall stirring, take them off the fire, and keepe to your vse the ointment then concrete.

Plantivs.

Of *vnguentum Merciatum* there be three descriptions described in other authors truly not verie necessarie against the cold affects of the sinewes & other parts, sith that *vnguentum Aregon* tofore described is effectuall enough against them: but whosoeuer desireth to haue this *vnguentum Merciatum*, let him follow this description taken out of *Nicolaus Mirepsius* and corrected.

Vnguentum Basilicum minus.

VNguentum *Basilicum minus* which the auncient Physitions tearmed *Tetrapharmacum*, doth calefie, humect and mitigate paine, procureth atter, and is verie commodious against increasing Phlegmons. ℞. *resinæ, picis, ceræ.* ana. ℔. ß. and oile as much as sufficeth.

Vnguentum basilicum magnum.

VNguentum *Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers. ℞. *ceræ albæ, resinæ, seui vaccini, picis, terebinthinæ, olibani, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥. j. *olei quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these ointments, namely *vnguento basilico, aureo, Apostolorum, AEgyptiaco & æmulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine & depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of *ceruse*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine maner of putting in the oringes or citrines, whose pulpe & iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much more better then the rinde.

Vnguentum aureum.

VNguentum *aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate & safely cure them. ℞. *ceræ citrinæ.* ℔. ß. *thuris, mastiches*, ana. ℥. j. *olei non rancidi.* ℔. ij. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *resinæ, colophoni.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *croci.* ℥. j. the waxe is melted in oyle, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to them.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

VNguentum *Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, & in steed thereof restoreth new. ℞. *terebinthinæ, ceræ albæ, ammoniaci.* ana. ℥. xiiij. *opoponacis, floris æris.* ana. ℥. ij. *aristolochiæ rotundæ, thuris masculi, bdellij.* ana. ℥. vj. *mirrhæ, galbani,* ana. ℥. iiij. *litargiri.* ℥ ix. *olei si æstas fuerit.* ℔. ij. *si hyems.* ℔. iij. *bdellium, ammoniacum, opoponax* and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and waxe, and boyled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Ægyptiacum.

VNguentum *Ægyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, in veterate and fistulous vlcers doth exiccate and eate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. ℞. *æruginis.* ℥. j. *mellis optimi.* ℥. xiiij. *aceti fortis.* ℥. vij. all these be boyled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum *ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is maruellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist, and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. ℞. *radicis enulæ ex aceto coctæ, tusæ & cretæ* ℔. j. *axungiæ porci,*

porci, olei ana. ℥. iij. *cerae nouae* ℥. j. *argenti viui extincti, terebinthinae lotae.* ana. ℥. ij. *salis vulgaris bene tritae.* ℥ ß. the waxe and the greaſe be liqueſied in oyle, and to them is added *Enula*, and after quicke ſiluer and ſalt, and laſt turpentine. It ſhalbe with more ſafetie vſed, if in ſteed of quicke ſiluer, of the iuyce of fumitorie and lymons. ana. ℥. j. be put in, and both of them muſt be had ſeuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum *Citrinum*, or more truly *Citreum*, doth repreſſe pimples ſhooting out of the ſkinne, eſpecially in the face, either by meane of choler or of ſalt fleame, and doth exterge ſpeckles, tetters, blewneſſe, ſikhie ſcarres, and redneſſe of the eyes. ℞. *Boracis.* ℥. ij. *Caphurae.* ℥. j. *Coralli albi.* ℥. ß. *Amianti, id eſt, aluminis plumoſi, vmbilici marini ſeu bellirici, tragacanthae, amyli, cryſtalli, eutbali, dentali, thuris albi, nitri.* ana. ℥. ij. *ceruſae ex radice dracuntij factae.* ℥. j. *ceruſae vulgaris.* ℥. vj. *adipis ſuilli recentis, ſalis expertis & puri.* ℔. ß. *ſem. caprini.* ℥. j. ß *adipis gallinacei.* ℥. j. Liqueſie the fattes in a double veſſell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two orenges cut in ſmall peeces, ſtraine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other ſimples finely bruſed, and temper them with a ſplatter. Laſt of all let the *borax* & camphire finely bruſed be ſtrewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, ſtore it to your vſe.

Of Emplaiſters.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon ſimplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, ſpleene and externall partes, and likewiſe diſſolueth and by little and little diſſipateth anie ſcirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *Mucilaginum ſeminis fenugraeci, ſeminis lini, radicis althaeae.* ana ℔. j. *olei veteris puri.* ℔ iij. *lytharg iri purgati atque triti.* ℔. j. ß. The lytarge muſt be diſſolued in a morter with oyle by little and little, vntil they be exquiſitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them ſtill with a ſplatter vntill they become thicke. After put in to them leaſurely the muſcilages depromed, and boyle them to the ſubſtance of an emplaiſter, and if neede ſo require, that it ſhould be more forcible in working, for euery pound of ſimples put in ℥. j. of the roote of floured cluce powned.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euerie the affects tofore repeated, for that it conſiſteth of more mollifying and digeſting ſimples. ℞. *Lytharg iri puri triti & creti.* ℔. j *olei irini, chamemilini & anethini* ana. ℥. viij *muſcilaginum ſeminum lini, ſenugraeci, ficuum pinguium & vuarum paſſarum, ſucci iridis & ſcillae, ſipi, icathiocollae,* ana. ℥. xij. ß. *terebinthinae.* ℥ iij. *reſinae pini, ceracis rubrae.* ana. ℥ ij reduce them all to an emplaiſter in like order as hath bene deſcribed in the ſimple.

Vnguentum basilicum magnum.

VNguentum *Basilicum magnum* worketh the same effect, and doth purifie and fill vlcers. ℞. *ceræ albæ, resinæ, seni vaccini, picis, terebinthinæ, olibani, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥. j. *olei quod satis est.*

PLANTIVS.

The Authour thought good to alter nothing in these ointments, namely *vnguento basilico, aureo, Apostolorum, AEgyptiaco & æmulato*, but he corrected the vncertaine & depraued doses of the simples in *vnguento citrino*; and he thought good to put in more *radicis dracuntij* (which hath great vertue against the propounded affects of the skinne) then of *ceruse*, or of any other simple. And in the order of composition he hath expressed a certaine maner of putting in the oringes or citrines, whose pulpe & iuyce is no lesse commodious against those malignities of the skinne, yea rather much more better then the rinde.

Vnguentum aureum.

VNguentum *aureum* doth mildly deterge wounds, agglutinate & safely cure them. ℞. *ceræ citrinæ.* ℔. ß. *thuris, mastiches*, ana. ℥. j. *olei non rancidi.* ℔. ij. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *resinæ, colophoni.* ana. ℥. j. ß. *croci.* ℥. j. the waxe is melted in oyle, and the other simples being exquisitely bruised be put in to them.

Vnguentum Apostolorum.

VNguentum *Apostolorum* doth by detersion purge wounds and rebellious vlcers, and also fistulaes, wasteth fungious and dead flesh, & in steed thereof restoreth new. ℞. *terebinthinæ, ceræ albæ, ammoniaci.* ana. ℥. xiiij. *opoponacis, floris æris.* ana. ℥. ij. *aristolochiæ rotundæ, thuris masculi, bdellij.* ana. ℥. vj. *mirrhæ, galbani,* ana. ℥. iiij. *litharg iri.* ℥ ix. *olei si æstas fuerit.* ℔. ij. *si hyems.* ℔. iiij. *bdellium, ammoniacum, opoponax* and *Galbanum* macerated in vineger, and dissolued with the other bruised simples to liquefied oyle and waxe, and boyled and stirred into the forme of an ointment.

Vnguentum Ægyptiacum.

VNguentum *Ægyptiacum* doth more forcibly exterge then *vnguentum Apostolorum*, in veterate and fistulous vlcers doth exciccate and eate out (not without feeling of paine) excrescent and dead flesh. ℞. *æruginis.* ℥. j. *mellis optimi.* ℥. xiiij. *aceti fortis.* ℥. vij. all these be boyled together vntill the ointment become thicke and of purple colour.

Vnguentum ex Enula.

VNguentum *ex Enula*, which is called *Enulatum*, is maruellous effectuall against the itch or scabbes, either drie or moist, and also against other filthinesse of the skinne. ℞. *radicis enulæ ex aceto coctæ, tusæ & cretæ* ℔. j. *axungiæ porci,*

porci, olei. ana. ℥. iij. *ceræ nouæ* ℥. j. *argenti viui extincti, terebinthinæ lotæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *salis vulgaris bene tritæ.* ℥ ß. the waxe and the greafe be liquefied in oyle, and to them is added *Enula*, and after quicke filuer and falt, and laft turpentine. It fhalbe with more lafetie vfed, if in ſteed of quicke filuer, of the iuyce of fumitorie and lymons. ana. ℥. j. be put in, and both of them muſt be had ſeuerall.

Vnguentum Citrinum.

VNguentum *Citrinum*, or more truly *Citreum*, doth repreſſe pimples ſhooting out of the ſkinne, eſpecially in the face, either by meane of choler or of falt fleame, and doth exterge ſpeckles, tetters, blewneſſe, fikhie ſcarres, and redneſſe of the eyes. ℞. *Boracis.* ℥. ij. *Caphinæ.* ℥. j. *Coralli albi.* ℥. ß. *Amianti, id eſt, aluminis plumoſi, vmbilici marini ſeu bellirici, tragacanthæ, amyli, cryſtalli, eutbali, dentali, thuris albi, nitri.* ana. ℥. ij. *ceruſæ ex radice dracuntij factæ.* ℥ j. *ceruſæ vulgaris.* ℥. vj. *adipis ſuilli recentis, ſalis expertis & puri.* ℔. ß. *ſem. caprini.* ℥. j. ß *adipis gallinacei.* ℥. j. Liquefie the fattes in a double veſſell, then macerate in them and with a lent fire boile two orenges cut in ſmall peeces, ſtraine the fat, and then iniect thereto all the other ſimples finely bruſed, and temper them with a ſplatter. Laſt of all let the *borax* & camphire finely bruſed be ſtrewed in, and after it hath boyled and become thicke, ſtore it to your vſe.

Of Emplaiſters.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon ſimplex* doth mollifie the hard tumours of the liuer, ſpleene and externall partes, and likewiſe diſſolueth and by little and little diſſipateth anie ſcirrhous matter, if it be applied in the beginning. ℞. *Mucilaginum ſeminis fenugræci, ſeminis lini, radicis althææ.* ana ℔. j. *olei veteris puri.* ℔ iij. *lytharg iri purgati atque triti.* ℔. j. ß. The lytarge muſt be diſſolued in a morter with oyle by little and little, vntil they be exquiſitely mixed. Then boile them with a lent fire, and temper them ſtill with a ſplatter vntill they become thicke. After put in to them leaſurely the muſcilages depromed, and boyle them to the ſubſtance of an emplaiſter, and if neede ſo require, that it ſhould be more forcible in working, for euery pound of ſimples put in ℥. j. of the roote of floured deluce powned.

Emplaſtrum Diachylon magnum.

EMplaſtrum *Diachylon magnum* is more effectuall for all and euerie the affects tofore repeated, for that it conſiſteth of more mollifying and digeſting ſimples. ℞. *Lytharg iri puri triti & creti.* ℔. j *olei irini, chamemilini & anethini* ana. ℥. viij *muſcilaginum ſeminum lini, ſenugræci, ficuum pinguium & vuarum paſſarum, ſuccorum iridis & ſcillæ, & ſipi, icathiocollæ.* ana. ℥. xij. ß. *terebinthinæ.* ℥ iij. *reſinæ pini, cerati trinæ.* ana. ℥ ij reduce them all to an emplaiſter in like order as hath bene deſcribed in the ſimple.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus.

Emplastrum è Mucilaginibus doth also mightely mollifie and digest hard tumours, it doth ripen an abscesse of humours, and when it is burst, it scoureth the quitture and attute. ℞. *Mucilaginum seminis lini, althææ, fenugraci, & mediani, cortices vlmi.* ana ℥. iiij. ß. *olevum chamemili, liliorum & anethi.* ana. ℥. j. *ammoniaci, galbani, opoponacis, sagapeni.* ana. ℥ ß. *croci.* ʒ ij. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. ij. *cerę novæ.* ʒ. xx. make an emplaister in order before prescribed.

Plantivs in emplastra.

The auncient Physitions haue described many mollifying emplaisters, and foure of these they intituled vnder the name of *Diachylon*, whereof these two be the best. And as for this emplaister of the muscilages it worketh more forcibly against all the foresaid affects then that which is ascribed vnto the sonne of *Zacharie*, wherefore the Author thought it not good to mention that.

Emplastrum è Meliloto.

Emplastrum è Meliloto doth mightily mollifie also and digest, and mitigateth paine, and is verie conuenient in hard tumours of the stomacke breast, and splene, and the outretching *hypochondria*. ℞. *Melilоti.* ℥. vj *foliorum chamemili, seminis fenugraci, radicis althææ, baccarum lauri, absinthy, sampsuci.* ana. ʒ. iij. *cardamomi, ciperi, irios, spicæ nardi, ammeos, cassiæ lignææ, seminis pij, anisi.* ana. ʒ. ij. ß. *ammoniaci.* ʒ. x. *styracis, bdellij*, ana. ʒ. v. *terebinthinæ.* ℥. j. ß. *ficus pingues.* xij. *sem. vrsini, resinæ.* ana. ℥. ij. ß. *cerę.* ℥. vj. *olei maiorani & nardini*, so much as sufficeth, make thereof an emplaister, liquefie the goates suet, the rosin and the waxe in oyle, and put into them *ficus pingues tritas & cretas*, then *ammoniacum* and *bdellium* dissolued in vineger, and lastly the powders of the other simples searced.

Plantivs.

Emplastrum è meliloto, è baccis lauri, ceroneum, and *oxicroceum* seeme to be sufficient against all affectes and paines which require digestion and resolution, so that other be not necessarie, namely, neither *emplastrum è sinapi*; nor *varia emplastra è fermento*, nor *emplastrum ex allijs*, nor the emplaister which is imputed to *Aristarchus*.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri.

Emplastrum è baccis lauri doth maruellously asswage the torments of the stomacke, midriffe, intrailes, wombe, bladder and other partes, especially taking their originall of anie cold cause or of winde. ℞. *Thuris, masticches, myrrhæ*, ana. ℥ j. *baccarum lauri.* ℥. ij. *ciperi, costi.* ana ℥ ß. *mellis colati* so much as sufficeth to thicken them. And some there be that suppose it a maruellous emplaister for the dropsie if the dose of Ciperus be ℥. j ß. and lib. ß. of dried goates doung be put thereto.

Emplastrum

Emplastrum Ceroneum.

EMplastrum Ceroneum doth mollifie the hardneſſe of the ſplene, doth releaſe the cold affects of the wombe, and eaſeth the paines of the breaſt and ſhoulders proceeding of cold. ℞. *picis nauali colati, ceræ.* ana. ℥. ij. ℥. iij. *ſagapeni.* ℥. ij. *ammoniaci, terebinthinæ, colophonij, croci.* ana. ℥. j. ℥. iij. *aloes, thuris, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥. j. *opoponacis, ſtyracis, galbani, maſtiches, aluminis, fenugræci, ſtyracis rubri, bdellij.* ana. ℥. iij. *lythargiri.* ℥ j. ß. & the emplaiſter muſt be made in this wiſe; *Sagapenum ammoniacum, opoponax, galbanum, & pix* muſt be liquefied in wine and ſtrained, then put too the *colophoniam colatam, deinde ſtyracem, maſtichon, thus, mirrham, bdellium, crita cretáque.* Forthwith iniect turpentine, allume, lytharge, and fenugreeke. The emplaiſter which is made of this, is put into cold water, and wrought with the hands, by addition of the powder of aloes and ſaffron, alwayes annointing your hands with oyle of laurell, and thereof concinnate *magdaleæ.*

Emplastrum Oxicroceum.

EMplaſtrum Oxicroceum doth mollifie and diſſipate alſo euerie kind of hardneſſe, doth aſſwage and driue away the paine of the ioynts, and the paine about the membranes of the bones. ℞. *Ceræ, picis nauali, croci, colophoniæ.* ana. ℥. iiij. *terebinthinæ, ammoniaci, galbani, mirrhæ, thuris, maſtiches.* ana. ℥. j. ℥. iij. *galbanum* and *ammoniacum* muſt be liquefied and ſtrained in vineger, then the pitch muſt be ſtrained and put thereto: after that the waxe, forthwith *colophonia* and the turpentine, a little while after the maſticke and the mirrhe. The emplaiſter being decocted muſt be put in cold water, and being ſtrained out, muſt be wrought with powder of ſaffron, annointing your hand with oyle.

Emplastrum de Ianna.

EMplaſtrum de Ianna is maruellous effectuall in wounds and greene vlcers, it pacifieth an inflammation, it detergeth, agglutinateth and incarnateth, and alſo cicatrizeth. ℞. *Succorum apij, plantaginis & betonicæ, ceræ, picis, reſinæ, terebinthinæ.* ana. ℔. ß. Let three of the ſimples be concocted in the iuyces, ſtirring them eaſily to the conſumption of the iuyces, then take them off the fire, and put thereto *terebinthina.*

Emplastrum gratia Dei.

EMplaſtrum gratia Dei conſiſteth almoſt of the ſame ſimples, and ſerueth to the ſame vſe. ℞. *Terebinthinæ.* ℔. ß. *reſinæ.* ℔. j. *ceræ albæ.* ℥. iiij. *maſtiches.* ℥. j. *betonicæ, borbenæ, pimpinellæ recentium.* ana. *M.* j. Bruſe the herbes, & boyle them in white wine till they conſume. Then ſtraine out the liquor, in which concoct the waxe, roſin and maſticke to an apt conſiſtencie of an emplaiſter, and when they are taken off the fire, mingle with them the turpentine.

Emplastrum diuinum.

EMplaſtrum diuinum is farre better againſt maligne vlcers, for it detergeth and conſumeth quitture and corruption, and ingendreth new fleſh, and

bringeth them to an aſcarre. ℞. *Galbani, mirrhæ.* ana. ℥. j. ℥. ij. *ammoniaci.* ℥. iij. ℥. iij. *opoponacis, maſtiches, ariſtolochiæ longæ, æruginis.* ana. ℥. j. *lythargiri, olei communis.* ana. ℔. ß. *cereæ nouæ.* ℥. viij. *thuris.* ℥. j. ℥ j. *bdellÿ.* ℥. ij. *magnetis.* ℥. iij. The lytharge by ſtirring is mingled with the oyle after it is boyled, vntill it become thicke. Then the waxe cut in ſmall peeces is added, which being liquefied is taken off the fire, and forthwith be iniected *galbanum, ammoniacum, opoponax* and *bdellium* diſſolued in vineger and wine, boyled and ſtrained after the powder *mirrhæ, maſtiches, thuris, ariſtolochiæ rotundæ & magnetis* is ſprinckled in: in fine, *puluis æruginis*, leaſt that if it ſhould be boyled anie long ſpace the emplaiſter become red.

Plantivs in emplastrvm divinvm.

Theſe emplaiſters *de Ianna, gratia Dei, & Diuinũ* which be deſcribed againſt wounds and vlcers, be alſo ſufficient enough, ſo that it were vnneceſſarie in this place to repeate anie other. For *emplaſtrum Oribaſij duplex & emplaſtrum Apoſtolorũ* be all comprehended vnder this Diuine emplaiſter, all which ſerue for the ſame purpoſe, but yet with leſſe efficacie.

Emplaſtrum ad Herniam.

EMplaſtrum ad Herniam. ℞. *Gallarum, nucum cupreſſi pſidÿ, balauſtiorum, acatiæ, ſeminis plantaginis, ſeminis pſillÿ, ſeminis naſturtÿ, cupularum glandium, fabarum torrefactarum, ariſtolochiæ longæ & rotundæ, mirtillorum.* ana. ℥. ß. Bring all theſe to powder, and macerate them foure dayes in vineger of roſes, then torrefie and drie them.

Aliud.

EMplaſtrum aliud ad Herniam. ℞. *conſolidæ maioris & minoris, caudæ equinæ, glaſti, ſcolopendrÿ, radicis oſmundæ regalis & ſilicis.* ana. ℥. j. *thuris, mirrhæ, aloes, maſtiches, mummiæ.* ana. ℥. ij. *boli armenæ lotæ in aceto, lapidis calaminaris præparati, lythargiri auri, ſanguinis draconis.* ana. ℥. iij. *picis nauali.* ℔. ij. *terebinthinæ,* ℥. vj. or as much as ſufficeth to make an emplaiſter.

Plantivs.

There be omitted here alſo other emplaiſters aſtringing and corroborating the ſtomacke, kidneyes and wombe, which be not in vſe, and in ſteed whereof certaine other receipts be vſually ordained for preſent neceſſitie, ſo that this number of emplaiſters and compoſitions ſeemeth enough both to ſtore the Apothecaries ſhop, and to cure the chiefe kindes of diſeaſes, cauſes and ſymptomates, neither was it neceſſarie to ſtuffe this Medicamentarie booke with vnuſuall and vnneceſſarie compoſitions, which can not but vainely be repeated to make vp a confuſed number. And as for ſuch compoſitions as auaile to their peculiar effects (becauſe they be ſeldome put in vſe) be deſcribed as conuenient and peculiar to the diſeaſes and partes in the proper curation of euerie part and diſeaſe.

The end of the eight Booke.

A GENERAL TABLE OF ALL THE PRINCIPAL MATTERS CONTAINED IN THIS VOLVME.

The Table of the first Booke.

Chap.		Fol.
1.	Of paine in the head.	1
2.	Of headach caused of heate.	2
3.	Of headach caused of cold.	5
4.	Of headach caused of drinesse and moistnesse.	6
5.	Of headach caused of bloud.	7
6.	Of headach caused of choler.	8.9
7.	Of headach caused of fleame.	10
8.	Of headach caused of windinesse.	11
9.	Of headach caused of the stomach.	12.13
10.	Of headach caused of drunkennes.	13.14
11.	Of headach caused of seauers.	14.15
12.	Of headach caused of old paine inueterate in the head.	15
13.	Of headach called the Migrime.	17
14.	Of giddinesse in the head called Vertigo	18.19.
15.	Of the Freneſie.	21
16.	Of the Lethargie.	24.25.
17	Of the losse of memorie.	26.27
18.	Of dead sleepe called Carus or Subeth.	9
19.	Of congelation or taking.	29
20.	Of profound sleepe called Sopor or Coma	30.31.
21.	Of the losse both of mouing and sense, called Apoplexie.	31.32
22.	Of the Palsey in halfe the bodie.	33.34
23.	Of the Palsey in one member only.	38.39
24.	Of the falling sickneſſe.	40.41
25.	Of the Crampe.	42.43
26.	Of the Mare.	43
27.	Of Madneſſe.	44.45
28.	Of Melancholie.	45.46
29.	Againſt trembling and shaking, called Tremor.	48.49
30.	A Treatiſe of the worthines of the eyes.	49.50.
31.	Of the Cataract, what it is, and how to helpe it.	51.52
32.	Of the three kindes of Cataracts vncurable.	53
33.	Of diſeaſes which chaunce to the eyes, by bloud, choler, fleame and melancholy, and their cures.	53
Ead.	The making of an excellent water called a Collirium.	Eadem
34.	Of Pannicles.	54.55
35.	Of the maladies in the eye proceeding of choler.	57
36.	Of the infirmities of the eye caused of melancholie.	58.59
37.	Of diſeaſes happening to the eyes by outward causes, as by blowes with stickes, staues or stones.	60
38.	Of diſeaſes which come by skipping in of stones or chips by chaunce into the eyes.	61.
39.	Of paine in the eares.	62
40.	Of sound or noiſe in the eares.	63
41.	Of deafneſſe and slow hearing.	64
42.	Of Impoſtumes breeding in the eares.	65.
43	Of vlcers in the noſe.	66
44.	Of bleeding at the noſe.	66.67
45.	Of diſtillation, rewme, and hoarceneſſe.	68.
46.	Of paine in the teeth.	70
47.	Of teeth that be blacke and looſe.	71
48.	Of vlcers in the mouth.	71
49.	Of a ſtinking mouth.	72

The Table of the second Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. Against inflammation of the Celumella.	74
2. Of a loose Columella.	75
3. Of inflammation of the tonsils.	76
4. Of malignant vlcers of the tonsils.	77
5. Of the Squinancie.	78
6. Of the Cough.	80
7. Of the Asthma.	82
8. Of the Pleurisie.	83 84
9. Of the Inflammation of the lungs.	85.86
10. Of spitting of blood.	87 88
11. Of spitting of matter.	90
12. Of the Phthisicke.	91.92
13. Of panting of the heart.	93
14. Of Swowning.	95 96
15. Of lacke of milke.	98
16. Of abundance of milke.	99
17. Of milke that is curded in the breastes of of women	100
18. Of inflammation of the paps in women.	101.

The Table of the third Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. Of weaknesse of the stomacke.	101.102
2. Of yelking and vomiting.	104
3. Of immoderate thirst.	105
4. Of paine in the stomake.	106
5. Of inflammation of the stomacke.	107
6. Of abhorring of meate.	108
7. Of a doglike appetite.	110
8. Of great famine.	112
9. Of euill digestion.	113
10. Of windinesse of the stomacke.	115
11. Of yelking or hicket.	117
12. Of Choler.	119
13. Of the fluxe Diarrhœa.	120.121
14. Of the fluxe Lienteria.	123
15. Of the fluxe Disenteria.	125
16. Of Tenasmus.	127
17. Of the Cholicke.	129
18. Of Iliaca passio.	132
19. Of wormes.	134
20. Of the Hemorhoides.	137
21. Of the falling out of the tuell.	139
22. Of clestes of the fundament.	140
23. Of the weakenesse of the liuer.	ead.
24. Of the obstructions of the liuer.	143
25. Of inflammation of the liuer.	144
26. Of distempure of the spleene.	147
27. Of the inflammation of the spleene.	149
28. Of hardnesse of the spleene.	150
29. Of obstructions of the spleene.	151
30. Of the Iaundies.	eadem
31. Of the euill state of the bodie.	154
32. Of the Dropsie.	155
33. Of the dropsie Anasarca.	157
34. Of the dropsie Ascites.	159
35. Of the dropsie Timpanites.	ead.
36. Of the reines that send forth bloudie vrine.	160
37. Of inflammation of the reines.	161
38. Of the stone in the reines.	163
39. Of vnmeasurable pissing.	167
40. Against vlcers of the reines.	168
41. Of the stone in the bladder.	170
42. Of bloud broken out of the bladder, or curded in it.	ead.
43. Of inflammation of the bladder.	173
44. Of vlcers of the bladder, and in the necke of the same.	173
45. Of the Strangurie.	175
46. Of difficultie of pissing.	176
47. Of stopping of the vrine.	177
48. Of exulceration of the priuie members.	178.
49. Of the continuall standing of the yard	179.
50. Of shedding of sperme or seede.	180
51. Of losse of carnall copulation.	182

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
52. Against burstling or ruptures.	183	60. Of windinesse in the wombe.	198
53. Of stopping of Menstrues.	185	61. Of exulceration of the wombe.	199
54. Of flowing of menstrues.	189	62. Of straightnesse of the matrice.	200
55. Of womans fluxe.	190	63. To take away barrennesse.	201
56. Of strangling of the wombe.	191	64. Of sore trauell in child-birth.	204
57. Of falling out of the wombe.	194	65. Of the Sciatica.	205
58. Of the Mole in the matrice.	195	66. Of the Goute in the feete and ioynes.	210.
59. Of inflammation of the wombe.	198		

The Table of the fourth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. A Nexposition of Feauers. A table of Feauers.	215 219	7. Of a pure intermitting Tertian.	232
2. Of one day Feauer.	220	8. Against a Bastardly Tertian.	236
3. Of a Diarie lasting moe daues.	224	9. Of a Quartaine Feauer.	238
4. Of a rotten Feauer called Synochus.	225	10. Of a Quotidian Feauer.	241
5. Against continuall Feauers.	228	11. Of a Feauer Ethicke.	242
6. Of a burning Feauer.	230	12. Of a Hemetrice Feauer.	245
		13. Of the Pestilence.	246

The Table of the fifth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.	Chap.	Fol.
1. WHat swellings happen besides nature, commonly called Apostema.	255	iudgements thereof. 269. Foure kindes ortimes of tumours besides nature. 270 Signes of putrefaction. 271. What abscessions may easily be digested.	273
2. Of the differences of those tumours which happen besides nature. 257. From whence the difference of tumours aboue nature. 258. of hote humours. ead. of cold humours. ead. Tumores complicati, one euill seemeth to haue affinitie with the other. ead. of the chiefe tumours that are caused of flowing of humors. 259. What tumours do associate Phlegmon. eadem. of Erysipelatosi tumores. ead. of Testudo and Talpa. 260. of Scirrhosi tumores & Cancer. ead. of Lepra. 261. Foure kinds of Impetigo. ead. of white pustules.	265	5. The common order of curing of tumours. ead. Foure things to be considered chiefly in the nature of affected members. 274 The finding out of the causes, the beginning of the cure of tumours aboue nature. 275. The common ingendring of euerie Phlegmone. ead. Cases in which we may not vse repelling or repressing remedies. 276.	
3. Of the causes of tumours aboue nature appearing vniuersally on the out side of the bodie.	265	6. Of Abscessions generally. 278. The best order of curing is declared three wayes. 279.	
4. Of the signes of tumours besides nature generally appearing, together with the		7. Of a true Phlegmone, and of other tumours ingendred of bloud. 282. foure differences of tumors caused of bloud. ead	
		8. Of the causes, signes, and iudgements of Phlegmone.	283

Chap. Fol.

9. The order of curing Phlegmone caused of the defluxion of humours affecting the outward parts of the bodie. 284. Foure intentions in the cure of Phlegmone. 285
10. Of a Carbuncle and a Cancre. 292
11. Of the cure of a Carbuncle. 294
12. Of Gangrena and Sphacelus. 297
13. Of the cure of Gangrena. 299
14. Of Erysipelas and other tumours caused of choler. 302
15. Of the signes and tokens of a true Erysipelas. 304
16. Of the cure of Erysipelas. 305
17. Of tumours which do associate Erysipelas, as Herpes both Miliaris and Exedens, which are called of the late Chyrurgians, cholericke pushes. 309
18. Of the euils called Formicæ, and of other differences of Verrucæ. 314
19. The iudgements and cure of Verrucæ. 315.

Chap. Fol.

20. Of Oedema and other cold, flegmatick, and flatuous tumours. 317
21. Of the cure of Oedema caused of a flegmatick humour flowing into some member. 319
22. Of Tumours aboue nature, which the Latins call Inflations, but they are commonly called windie Apostemes. 323
23. Of a tumour caused of a thin substance, which they call Aquosum apostema, that is, a waterish Apostem. 327
24. Of the diseases called Glandulæ, Nodi, and Strumæ, together with other Abscessions, which they call Phlegmaticæ excrescentiæ. 330
25. Of hard and scirrhous tumours, engendred of Melancholie. 346
26. Of a Cancerous tumour, which they commonly call Cancer Apostematosus. 354.

The Table of the sixth Booke.

Chap. Fol.

1. OF the diuerse names of Morbus Gallicus, and where it had beginning. 361
2. Of the signes thereof. 362
3. Of the causes of the breaking out of Pustules. 364
4. Of the cure of Morbus Gallicus. 366
5. Of Fumigations. ead.
6. Of purging of Morbus Gallicus. 367
7. Of the preparation of humours. ead.
8. Of the certaine and true medicine for the disease. 368
9. What sort of that wood is to be chosen best for this purpose. eadem.
10. Of the decoction of Guaicum. 369
11. Of the making of the compound decoction of this wood. 370
12. Of the Time conuenient to giue this decoction. 372
13. Of the Place where this decoction is to

Chap. Fol.

be giuen. eadem
14. What quantitie of the decoction is to be taken at once. eadem.
15. How many dayes this decoction is to be receiued. 373
16. Of the time of giuing this decoction, and things to be obserued therein. ead.
17. Of things to be eschued of him that receiueth this decoction. ead.
18. Of things to be corrected, or symptomates to be oppugned in this cure. 374
19. Of Excrements. 375
20. Of Diet to be obserued in this cure. 376
21. Of the roote of China. ead.
22. Of the way of making the decoction of the roote of China. 377
23. Of the election of China. ead.
24. Of another maner of making the decoction with Salsa and the wood, and without the wood, and sometime with the barke

Chap.	Fol.
barke.	eadem.
25. Of other faculties or vertues which this Salsa hath.	379
26. Of Suffumigations which some practitioners vse.	ead.
27. Of the maner of perfuming the whole bodie.	380
28. Of the Symptomata which sometime happen in this way of curing.	381
29. Of Suffumigations made of a matter benigne and harmeleſſe.	ead.
30. Of making Suffumigations.	ead.
31. Of the Cure by anointing with quicke ſiluer.	382
32. To correct the ſymptomata which happen in the mouth in this way of curing.	383.
33. Of the diuerſe compoſitions of ointments which be vſed in this way of curing.	384
34. Of Præcipitatũ giuen by the mouth.	ead.

The Table of the ſeuenth Booke.

Chap.	Fol.
1. Of Suppoſitaries.	386
2. Of making Nodulus.	387
3. Of making Peſſaries.	ead.
4. Of Cliſters or Enema.	388
5. Of making Sirupes.	390
6. Of making Iuleps.	394
7. Of Dolus ſiue Potio.	ead.
8. Of making Bolus.	399
9. Of making Pilles.	400
10. Of making Apozema.	ead.
11. Of making Mulſio.	401
12. Of making Powders.	402
13. Of Electuaries and Conſerues, of Lozenges and Manus Chriſti.	ead.
14. Of making Conditum & Conſerua.	405
15. Of making Paſta Regia or Mazapane. 407.	
16. Of making a Lohoch or Ecligma.	ead.
17. Of making Balneum, and Semicupium. 408.	
18. Of Epithema or Fotus.	409
19. Of making Sacculus.	410
20. Of making Scutum.	ead.
21. Of making a Cataplaſme.	411
22. Of making Emplaſtrum.	412
23. Of making vnguenta.	413
24. Of making a Linimẽt.	414
25. Of making Frontale.	ead.
26. Of making Cucufa and Semicucufa.	415
27. Of making Suffitus.	416
28. Of making Collirium.	ead.
29. Of making Naſale, or Errhinum.	ead.
30. Of making Apophlegmatiſmus.	417
31. Of making Diſtillations reſtoratiue.	ead.

The Table of the eight Booke.

Of Syrupes.

Sirupus Acidus ſimplex.	421
Syrupus è ſucco limonum.	423
Oxiſaccharum ſimplex.	424
Oximel ſimplex.	ead.
Oximel ſcilliticum.	ead.
Syrupus è Cichorio.	426
Syrupus Intubi domeſtici.	427
Syrupus Bizantinus.	ead.
Syrupus Scolopendrij.	428
Syrupus è radicibus.	ead.
Syrupus Adiantinus.	429
Syrupus è Stœchade.	ead.
Syrupus roſarum ſiccarum.	430
Syrupus Nymphæa.	ead.
Syrupus de Papauere.	431
Diacodion.	ead.
Syrupus Violarum.	432
Syrupus Ziziphorum.	433
Syrupus de Hyſſopo.	ead.

Syrupus de Prassio. 434
Syrupus Symphytri. ead.
Syrupus è succo Buglossi. 435
Syrupus è cortice Citrij. ead.
Syrupus Melissophylli. ead.
Syrupus è Menta. ead.
Syrupus Absynthij. 436
Cydoniorum miba, that is, the iuyce decocted to thickneſſe. ead.
Syrupus Mirtinus. ead.
Syrupus Fumariæ. 437
Syrupus è malis odoriferis. ead.
Syrupus Althææ. ead.
Syrupus Raphani. ead.
Syrupus Artemisiæ. 438

Of Purging receipts.

Electuarium è Prunis. 438
Catholicum simplex. 439
Catholicum maius. 440
Syrupus infusionis rosarum pallidarũ. ead.
Electuarium è succo rosarum. 441
Diacydonien. ead.
Electuarium Diacuico. ead.
Diaphœnicon. ead.
Benedicta. 442
Confectio Hamecis. ead.
Hiera simplex. 443
Hiera Diacolocynthidos. ead.
Hydragogum minus. 444
Hydragogum maius. ead.
Vnguentum Latheridæ. ead.
Electuarium Diasarum. 445
Pillulæ Stomachicæ. ead.
Pillulæ Ruffi. 446
Pillulæ Assaieret. ead.
Pillulæ de Eupatorio. ead.
Pillulæ Mastichinæ. ead.
Pillulæ Imperiales. 447
Pillulæ sine quibus esse nolo. ead.
Pillulæ è Fumaria. ead.
Pillulæ Aureæ. ead.
Pillulæ de Agarico. ead.
Pillulæ Cochiæ. 448
Pillulæ ex Hermodactilis. ead.
Pillulæ Polycrestæ. ead.
Pillulæ dè lapide Cyaneo. 449
Pillulæ de Thymelæa. ead.
Pillulæ ex Esula. ead.
Pillulæ è Cynoglosso. ead.
Pillulæ Astrologiæ. 450

Of drie Antidotaries.

Dianthon. 450
Electuarium pleres archonticon. ead.
Diatragacanthum frigidum. 451
Diaireos simplex. ead.
Electuarium Diaireos compositum. ead.
Diacalaminthes. 452
Diamargariton frigidum. ead.
Electuarium de Gemmis. 453
Electuarium Diambræ. ead.
Pulus Cordiacus. 454
Aromaticum rosarum maius. ead.
Electuarium Diarrhodon abbatis. 455
Electuarium Diatrion santalon. ead.
Diacrocu. eadem
Dialacca maior. 466
Electuarium exhilarans. ead.
Electuarium Diaspermaton. ead.
Electuarium λιθων προπλινον. 457
Electuarium diacalaminthes compositũ. ead

Of moist Antidotaries.

Antidotus Analeptica. 458
Antidotus Diasaterion. ead.
Antidotus è cocco Baphico, seu grano infectorio. ead.
Antidotus è baccis Lauri. 459
Philonium. ead.
Antidotus tearmed Requies. 460
Theriace Diatessaron. ead.
Theriace Andromachi senioris. ead.
Mitridatum. 461

De Trochiscis seu Pastillis.

Trochisci è Vipera. 462
Trochisci Scillitici. 463

Trochisci

Trochisci Cypheos. ead.
Trochisci è Capparibus. ead.
Trochisci de Eupatorio. 464
Trochisci Alkakengi siu Halycacabi. ead.
Trochisci è Myrrha. ead.
Trochisci è Terra lemnia. ead.
Trochisci è Caphura. 465
Trochisci Galliæ muschatæ. ead.
Trochisci Aliptæ muschatæ. ead.
Trochisci Bechici albi. ead.
Trochisci Narcotici. ead.

De Ecligmatis & Conditis.

Ecligma è pineis nucibus. 466
Ecligma è Scylla. ead.
Ecligma ad Asthma. ead.
Certaine Condites. 467
Of Conserues. ead.

Of Oyles,

Oleum Rosarum. 468
Oleum Violarum. ead.
Oleum Nymphæa. ead.
Oleum Papaueris. 469
Oleum Hyosciami albi. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ simplex. ead.
Oleum Mandragoræ compositum. ead.
Oleum Melinum, quod & Cydoniorum. ead.
Oleum Mirtinum. 470
Oleum Mastichinum. ead.
Oleum Menthæ. ead.
Oleum Absinthij. ead.
Oleum Chamamelinum. ead.
Oleum Liliorum. ead.
Oleum Leucoij Lentei. 471
Oleum Iasminum. ead.
Oleum Anethinum. ead.
Oleum Amigdalarum dulcium. ead.
Oleum Lumbricorum. ead.
Oleum Irinum. ead.
Oleum Rutaceum. 472
Oleum Amigdalarum amararum. ead.
Oleum è Capparibus. ead.
Oleum Nardinum. ead.
Oleum Nardinum compositum. ead.
Oleum Laurinum. 473
Oleum Vulpinum. ead.
Oleum è Scorpionibus. ead.
Oleum Terebinthinæ. ead.
Oleum Recinium. ead.
Oleum Balaninum. 474
Oleum è Castoreo. ead.
Oleum Euphorbij simplex. ead.
Oleum de lateribus. ead.
Petrolcum. ead.
Vnguentum Galeni refrigerans. 475
Vnguentum Rosarum. ead.
Vnguenim Populeum. ead.
Vnguentum album. 476
Vnguentum astringens. ead.
Vnguentum Diacalciteos. ead.
Vnguentum Diapompholygos. 477
Vnguentum rubrum exsiccans. ead.
Vnguentum Dialtheos. ead.
Vnguentum Resumptiuum. ead.
Vnguentum Agrippæ. 478
Vnguentum Aregon. ead.
Vnguentum Mercuriatum magnum. 479
Vnguentum Basilicum minus. ead.
Vnguentum Basilicum magnum. 480
Vnguentum Aureum. ead.
Vnguentum Apostolorum. ead.
Vnguentum Ægyptiacum. ead.
Vnguentum ex Enula. ead.
Vnguentum Citrinum. 481

Of Emplaisters.

Emplastrum Diachylon simplex. 481
Emplastrum Diachylon magnum. ead.
Emplastrum muscilaginis. 482
Emplastrum è Meliloto. ead.
Emplastrum è baccis lauri. ead.
Emplastrum Ceroneum. 483
Emplastrum Oxicroceum. ead.
Emplastrum de Ianna. ead.
Emplastrum Gratia Dei. ead.
Emplastrum Diuinum. ead.
Emplastrum ad Herniam. 484
Aliud ad Herniam. ead.

FINIS.